

Wheelock's Latin, 6e, Revised

韦洛克拉丁語教程

（插图修订第6版）

(美) F. M. 韦洛克 (Frederic M. Wheelock)　著

(美) R. A. 拉弗勒 (Richard A. LaFleur)　修订

张卜天　译　(奥) 雷立柏 (Leopold Leeb)　审阅



世界图书出版公司

作者简介

F. M. 韦洛克 (Frederic M. Wheelock, 1902—1987) 是美国著名的古典学家，拉丁语教学权威。他在哈佛大学获得博士学位，先后任教于哈佛大学、纽约市立大学、布鲁克林学院等名校，并以其在文本批评、古文书学和拉丁语等领域的研究而蜚声古典学界。韦洛克教授是美国古典学联盟、美国语言学会和大西洋国家古典学会的成员。本书是他毕生最具代表性的杰作。

R. A. 拉弗勒 (Richard A. LaFleur) 曾任美国古典学联盟主席 (1984—1986)。他在杜克大学获得古典学博士学位，从 1972 年起任教于佐治亚大学，并在那里担任北美洲最大的古典学项目之一的负责人长达 21 年。拉弗勒教授著有《21 世纪拉丁语：从概念到课堂》等多部著作，并于 1984 年获得美国语言学会"古典学杰出教育奖"。

译者简介

张卜天，北京大学哲学系科技哲学博士。现为中科院自然科学史研究所助理研究员。有《大问题——简明哲学导论》等十余部译作。

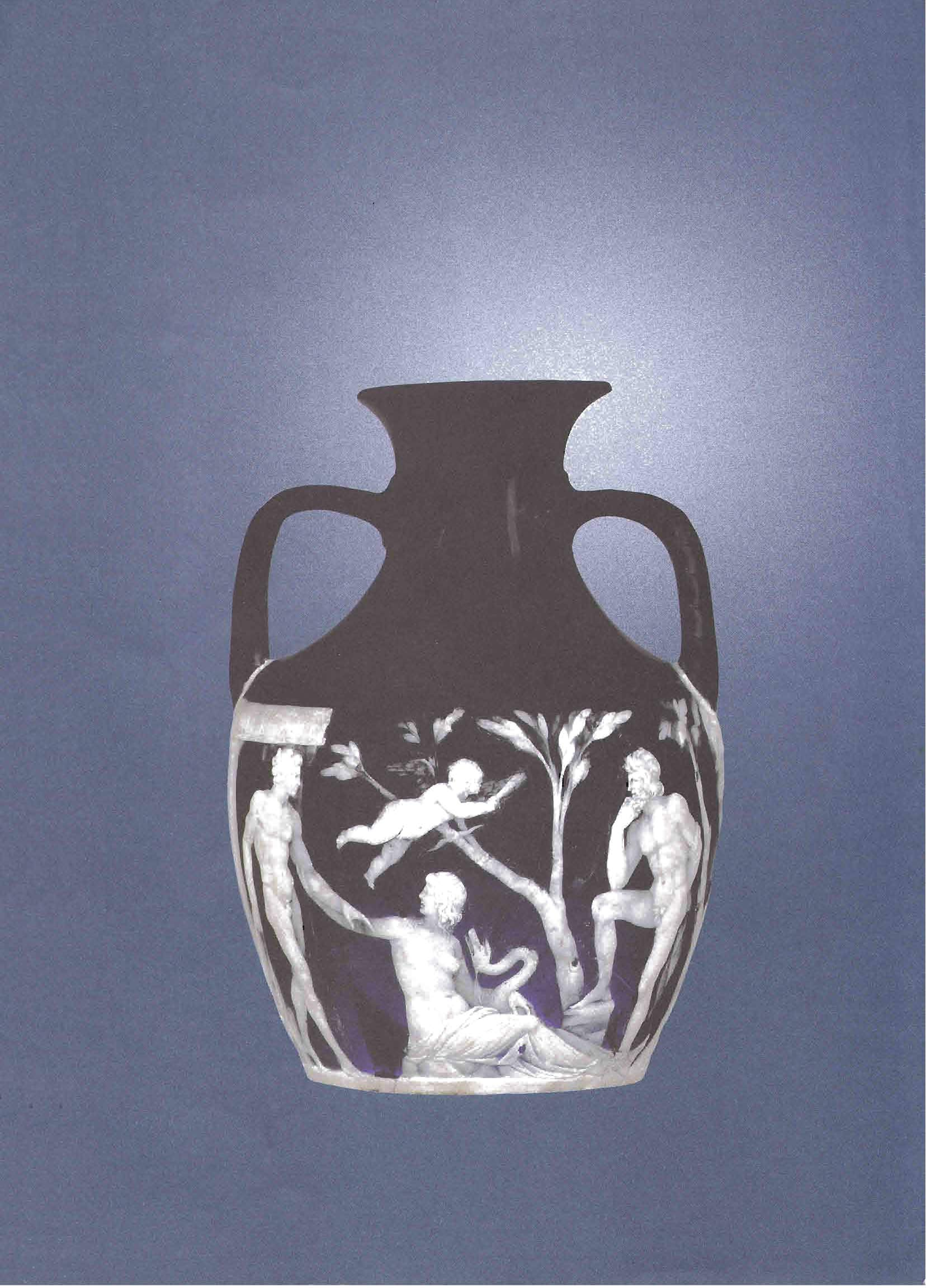
审阅者简介

雷立柏 (Leopold Leeb, 1967—)，奥地利古典学家。现任教于中国人民大学文学院。中文著作有《张衡、科学与宗教》、《古希腊罗马与基督宗教》等，编著有《拉丁成语辞典》。

内容简介

《韦洛克拉丁语教程》是 20 世纪后半期以来英语世界最受欢迎的拉丁语教材，初版于 1956 年，很快就因其严密的组织结构、清晰的叙述讲解、循序渐进的设计安排、适中的难易程度以及其中收录的丰富的古代文献而被誉为"拉丁语学习的标准著作"，其"拉丁语学习首选教材"的地位无可撼动。

全书共分四十课，以简洁而不学究气的语言，系统讲解了拉丁语的基本词形、句法，并通过丰富的词汇学习、众多的英语词源研究、英拉句子互译和古典拉丁语作家原文赏读，来锻炼拉丁语学习者使用单词的灵活性和精确性，培养其观察、分析、判断和评价的能力，加强对语言形式、清晰性和美的感受；并通过探讨战争、友谊、未来、生老病死等发人深省的主题来学习古典作家的思想和技艺，分享他们的人文主义传统。第 6 版更是增补了课后的词汇表，修订了拉丁语的背景介绍、语言演变和一些词源学知识，从而使自学拉丁语变得更加容易。





“**大学堂**”开放给所有向往知识、崇尚科学，对宇宙和人生有所追问的人。

“**大学堂**”中展开一本本书，阐明各种传统和新兴的学科，导向真理和智慧。既有接引之台阶，又具深化之门径。无论何时，无论何地，请你把它翻开……



大学堂012

主编：李峰

副主编：张跃明　郭力　执行主编：吴兴元

Wheelock's Latin, 6e, Revised

韦洛克拉丁語教程

（插图修订第6版）

(美) F. M. 韦洛克 (Frederic M. Wheelock)　著

(美) R. A. 拉弗勒 (Richard A. LaFleur)　修订

张卜天　译　(奥) 雷立柏 (Leopold Leeb)　审阅

世界图书出版公司

北京 · 广州 · 上海 · 西安



I love the language, that soft bastard Latin, Which melts like kisses from a female mouth.

George Noel Gordon, Lord Byron

Beppo

I would make them all learn English: and then I would let the clever ones learn Latin as an honor, and Greek as a treat.

Sir Winston Churchill

Roving Commission: My Early Life

He studied Latin like the violin, because he liked it.

Robert Frost

The Death of the Hired Man

简　目

作者简介

弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克(Frederic M. Wheelock,1902—1987 年)在哈佛大学获得了文学士、文科硕士和博士学位。他的教学生涯漫长而成绩斐然,包括在 Haverford College,Harvard University,the College of the City of New York,Brooklyn College,Cazenovia Junior College(担任院长),the Darrow School for Boys (New Lebanon,NY),the University of Toledo(1968 年作为正教授退休)任教,以及在 Florida Presbyterian(现在是 Eckerd)College 做访问教授。他在文本批评、古文书学和拉丁语研究领域发表了多篇论文和评论;除了《韦洛克拉丁语教程》(*Wheelock's Latin*,以前名为《拉丁语教程:基于古代作家的导论课》[*Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors*],他的著作还有《韦洛克拉丁语教程读本》(*Wheelock's Latin Reader*,以前名为《拉丁语文学读本》[*Latin Literature: A Book of Readings*])和《教育家昆体良》(*Quintilian as Educator*,H. E. Butler 译,韦洛克教授导读并注释)。韦洛克教授是美国古典学联盟、美国语言学会和大西洋国家古典学会的成员。布里格斯(Ward Briggs)教授撰写的韦洛克教授传记参见他的《美国古典学家传记辞典》(*A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists*,Westport,CT: Greenwood Press,1994) 以及《古典学展望》(*Classical Outlook*)2003 年冬季号。

理查德·A·拉弗勒(Richard A. LaFleur)在弗吉尼亚大学获得拉丁语文学士和文科硕士学位,在杜克大学获得古典学博士学位。从 1972 年起,他一直在佐治亚大学教书,在那里担任北美洲最大的古典学项目之一的负责人长达 21 年,从 1998 年起担任古典学富兰克林教授主席。他有诸多关于拉丁语、文学和教育学的著作出版,比如《美国学校的拉丁语教学:一个危机中的职业》(*The Teaching of Latin in American Schools: A Profession in Crisis*)、《拉丁语诗歌入门》(*Latin Poetry for the Beginning Student*)、《爱与变形:奥维德读本》(*Love and Transformation: An Ovid Reader*)、《21 世纪拉丁语:从概念到课堂》(*Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom*)、《战争之歌:维吉尔<埃涅伊德>选读》(*A Song of War: Readings from Vergil's Aeneid*,与 Alexander G. McKay 合著)、《韦洛克拉丁语教程》(修订第五版、第六版)、《韦洛克拉丁语教程读本》(修订第二版)以及《韦洛克拉丁语教程学习手册》(*Workbook for Wheelock's Latin*,与 Paul Comeau 合著,修订第三版)等等。拉弗勒教授担任过《古典学展望》的编委(1979—2003 年)以及美国古典学联盟的前任主席(1984—1986 年)。他曾获得"人文学科国家基金"等机构提供的逾一百万美元的奖金,因教学和专业研究获得过州、地区和国家的各种奖励,其中包括 1984 年获得的美国语言学会的古典学杰出教育奖。

序一：拉丁语在中国

听说 Wheelock（韦洛克）的著名拉丁语教程将要在中国出版，我感到非常兴奋与欣慰。2002 年以来，我在北京教授拉丁语和古希腊语，但始终没有找到令我满意的拉丁语语法教材、文选和拉汉词典。《韦洛克拉丁语教程》终于能满足这个迫切的需要。对学习西方哲学、文学、法律、历史或宗教的大学生和学者来说，这部教科书的出版是一件重大的事，因为拉丁语是一切西方知识的“大门”，而韦洛克也算是自学拉丁语的最好的资料之一，它具备很多语法表格，并附有一部小的拉丁—英语词典。它使用很多古代作者的名言警句来全面地说明和解释拉丁语的种种语法形式，这样在讲解语法的同时，也可以使学生品尝古人思想的滋味。另外，作者也经常指出某个拉丁语词和英语、西班牙语、法语、意大利语的关系，即拉丁语的“现代性”——很多西方语言的共同“母语”就是拉丁语。一句话：韦洛克不仅介绍拉丁语法，而且介绍拉丁文化，我很高兴可以推荐它，希望它能成为大学生们所喜爱的读物。

拉丁语是了解欧洲文化的“大门”。无论是在文学、历史学、哲学、法学、宗教学、伦理学，还是在心理学、医学、自然科学或教育学的领域中，西方古代、中世纪和近代的经典著作都是用拉丁文写成，或是从古希腊语译成拉丁语的，所以这些知识领域的术语和研究方法都和拉丁语有关系。如果不能阅读这些知识体系的原文著作，就无法在研究和理解上“更上一层楼”，并且还会错过很多重要的因素。比如，14 世纪的 Boccaccio（薄迦丘）的意大利语名著《十日谈》就是在模仿古罗马 Apuleius（阿普雷乌斯，公元 2 世纪）的拉丁语著作《变形记》——这种关系有谁去分析呢？薄迦丘的晚期著作都不是用意大利文而是用拉丁文写的——谁去把它们引入中国学术界的视野呢？欧洲的科学史和思想史具有连续性，如果不研究 11 到 13 世纪，也就无法了解后来的文艺复兴时代及近代的发展，但在中国很少有人深入地研究中世纪，因为欧洲中世纪的文献 99%都是用拉丁文写成的。作为学术语言的英语、法语和德语在 17 和 18 世纪才开始逐渐取代拉丁语。康德、叔本华和马克思都曾经写过一些拉丁语著作或文章。今天许多欧洲的大学和高中要求学生学习拉丁语，由此可见这个语言的影响力不会消失，它贯彻古今，沟通中外，所以中国的学者也应该“借拉丁文以沟通泰西学术

之源流"(马相伯语，参见方豪"拉丁传入中国考",《方豪六十自定稿》，台北，1969年,24页)。

欧洲各国的语言——尤其是所谓的"罗曼语系"的语言(即意大利语、西班牙语、葡萄牙语、法语、罗马尼亚语等)——都受了拉丁语的深刻影响。在"牛年"我们自然想到这样的例子:拉丁语的taurus(牛)成了西班牙语的toro和法语的taureau,而意大利北部Turino(都灵)城的名字也同样来自"牛"。英语的bull(公牛)和意大利语的bue(公牛)都来自拉丁语的bos(牛)。因为希腊语和拉丁语都属于印欧语系,这两个语言有很多共同的词根:拉丁语的taurus和bos就是希腊语的tauros和bous,差别不大;但如果和第三个重要的古代语言(古希伯来语)比起来,差距就大多了,因为希伯来语属于闪族语系(semitic language)。古希伯来语中的"牛"被称为par、shor、alaphim,与taurus和bos没有关系。这三种古代语言(拉丁语、古希腊语和古希伯来语)在一个漫长的历史过程中共同塑造了所谓的"欧洲文化",进而影响着全世界。实际上,许多西方"人文主义者"——从Jerome(哲罗姆)开始——注意到了这三种语言的重要性,并且愿意同时学习这三门语言。在文艺复兴的时代,比利时人就曾于1517年在Louvain(鲁汶)城建立了一所"三语学院"(Collegium Trilingue),以培养这方面的人才,使尽可能多的学生有能力阅读古代经典的原文。这些经典就是犹太人的《旧约》、希腊人的哲学著作和拉丁语的经典，从Cicero（西塞罗）到Augustinus（奥古斯丁)和Thomas(托马斯)。我想国内青年学者对这些语言的兴趣也越来越大,因为大家都想知道"德先生"和"赛先生"到底为什么叫"德"和"赛",这两个概念建立在什么思想传统之上,又是从什么文化母体中生长出来的。

在很多方面,古希腊语和拉丁语是现代思想概念的基础,所以任何想深入了解西方语言和西方文化的人都必须关注拉丁语。比如英语的culture(文化)来自拉丁语的cultura(原义是"培养"、"耕种"等),英语的science(科学)来自拉丁语的scientia(知识)和希腊语的episteme(知识)及mathesis(学科),而英语的religion(宗教)来自拉丁语的religio(曾被解释为"再理解"或"再约束")。当然,一代一代的拉丁语作家在使用这些概念时逐渐澄清、加深和丰富了它们的内涵,使它们一步一步演变成近代和现代的含义,比如Cicero曾经说明religio(宗教)和superstitio(迷信)的差别,而Augustinus写过关于"真正的宗教"(vera religio,即基督信仰)的著作,从一个新的角度去理解传统的概念。因此,学习拉丁语会有这样的功能:它让我们这些现代的人意识到,我们每天用的基本概念或术语似乎都有2000年甚至2500年的文学传统和思想传统。在我们之前已经有无数的伟大学者、思想家、文学家、历史学家和哲学家使用过同样的概念和术语。根据20世纪文学理论的intertextuality(跨文本性)观点来说,当我们用"文化"、"科学"和"宗教"等概念时,我们就已经和Aristoteles(亚里士多德)、Cicero、Augustinus等人有了关系,因为他们的话语潜移默化地影响着我们今天的语境和思想。

学习拉丁语应该让我们意识到这些潜在的、无意识的关系。实际上，拉丁语的影响是无所不在的。为了说明这一点，我曾改写了陈子昂的诗："前不见古语，后不见来者，念拉丁之悠悠，独欣然乐无涯。"在奥古斯丁那里我们能找到类似的感叹："O aeterna veritas, et cara aeternitas!（永恒的真理啊，心爱的永恒！）"从这个角度来看，学习拉丁语简直是追求永恒，是参与一个不朽的语境！

一般人也许会认为，拉丁语离中国很遥远，但只要意识到50%到80%的英语单词来自拉丁语，情况就不同了（越是学术性的文献，其拉丁语成分越高）。

有的汉语名词是比较明显的外来语，比如每当我坐公交车刷卡时，我就想到"卡"（英语的card）来自拉丁语的charta（最早来自希腊语），"charta"是一张纸，也代表一个文献。最有名的"卡"也许是*Magna Charta Libertatum*（《英国大宪章》，1215年），这个"卡"令所有的英国人感到自豪，因为它第一次保障平民的人权。我用"卡"坐上"巴士"（bus），而这个称呼来自19世纪的法国，他们称公交车为omnibus（拉丁语："给一切人的"、"公用的"）。

另一些现代汉语中的说法虽然没有明显的"外国味"，但实际上也离不开拉丁语。比如说"我热爱中国的首都北京"："热爱"来自英文的ardently love（来自拉丁语的ardenter amare），在古代汉语中这样的词是找不到的。另外，"首都"（英语的capital）来自拉丁语的caput（头），在古人那里，"头"也有"领导"和"最重要的城市"的意思，所以汉语的"首脑"、"首领"和"首都"也与拉丁语共享同一个隐喻（metaphor）。韦洛克在本书的开头引用了哥德的名言："不懂外语的人也不会了解母语"。我想学习拉丁语肯定能使中国人更深入地了解自己的母语汉语。

第一位从一个新的角度来观察汉语的华人也许是马相伯（1840—1939年）和他的弟弟马建忠——他们于1897年撰写了第一部由中国人编写的汉语语法书，即《马氏文通》。他们能够完成这部伟大著作是因为两个人都精通拉丁语语法（以及法语、古希腊语等西方语言）。然而，拉丁语和汉语之间的对话并不是从1897年开始的。比马氏兄弟早100年，有一位曾在意大利留学的华人也非常精通拉丁语，他就是甘肃武威人李自标（Jacobus Li，1760—1828年）。他于1773年到意大利，成功地学习了拉丁语和意大利语，因此他被邀请于1792—1794年间陪同英国大使Macartney（马嘎尔尼，1737—1806年）到中国当译员。李自标曾经在英国使者与乾隆皇帝进行谈判时起了重要的作用。在17世纪有相当多的华人学习拉丁语，其中包括康熙皇帝与中国第一位天主教主教罗文藻（1615—1691年），后者曾经于1638—1654年在澳门和菲律宾学习拉丁语和神学。同时，17世纪也是拉汉互译的高峰时期。意大利人Buglio（利类思，1606—1682年）将许多拉丁语的著作译成汉语，其中包括托马斯·阿奎那的《神学大全》，这就意味着他介绍了无数的西方哲学、神学、法学和伦理学观念以及创造了很多新的名词（比如"人类"、"行为"等，参见拙作"清初汉语神学术语辞典"，见《汉语神学术语辞典》，北京，2007年）。另一些外国传教士也首次将中国的经典译成西方语言

（当然是拉丁语），比如意大利学者 Intorcetta（殷铎泽，1625—1696 年）曾经将《中庸》译成拉丁语（参见北京外国语大学的罗莹于 2008 年 5 月提交的硕士论文《殷铎泽之〈中国政治道德学说〉初探》）。

上海人徐光启（1562—1638 年）对于拉丁语也曾经有热切的兴趣，并在他的著作中谈论"亚尼玛"（即 anima，"心灵"）的概念。他的老师 Matteo Ricci（利玛窦，1552—1610 年）曾经于 1579—1581 年在印度教授拉丁语和古希腊语，并且首次用拉丁文拼写汉字（参见他的《西字奇迹》，1606 年），因此，重视汉语拼音的人（比如中国人民大学原校长吴玉章）视他为汉语拼音的"鼻祖"。1951 年在江苏扬州出土了一座元代拉丁墓碑，来自拉丁语的碑文说某个 Antonius（安托尼）安眠在此，而这位来自欧洲的基督徒于 1344 年在扬州去世（碑文使用了拉丁文的年代记法："MCCCXXXXIIII" = 1344 年）。

我在 2000 年以后开始在北京教古代语言，但最早在北京当过拉丁语老师的人大概是 Giovanni de Montecorvino（孟高维诺，1247—1328 年），他在 1294 年来"汗八里"（即北京）传教并（根据他的报告）曾经教 40 个男童教规和拉丁语。由此可见，拉丁语和中国早就"结缘"。20 世纪的著名历史学家方豪（1910—1980 年）曾经写过一篇《拉丁文传入中国考》（参见他的《方豪六十自定稿》，台北，1969 年），其中指出，明、清文献曾用 40 多种"拉丁文之异译"："大西字"、"红毛字"、"番字"、"喇提诺"、"腊底诺"、"辣第诺"、"拉替努"、"赖丁"、"罗典"等等。这一切都证明拉丁语在中国和欧洲之间的文化交流上曾经起了非常关键的作用，但遗憾的是，在 20 世纪中国的新兴学院和大学中（无论是 1900 年后、1949 年后或 1979 年后建立的学院），很少有正规的拉丁语文学方面的课程，而且缺乏拉丁语教师、教材或词典。这就严重地影响了中国学者对"西方文化"的了解，因为很多古代的、中世纪的或近代的文献被拒之门外——没有人看得懂这些文献，也没有人翻译它们。

说到"西方文化"——"文化"这个词的拉丁词根是 colere（"培养"、"耕种"、"修饰"、"敬仰"），我经常告诉我的学生：真正的文化修养只能是慢慢培养的，它是"长出来的"，不可能是"制造出来的"或"速成的"。近年来，我看到中国大学生和学者对拉丁语的兴趣越来越浓，在这种逐渐走近西方古典文化的过程中，《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的出版将是一座重要的里程碑！我希望中国的教育界和学术界重视这部大作，进一步"培养"（colere-culture）对西方古典语言和文化的"热爱"(ardenter amare)！

雷立柏

中国人民大学文学院

2009 年 2 月

序二：我们的父亲韦洛克

《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的缘起是1946年的“美国退伍军人教育法案”，这个法案旨在为退伍的二战老兵提供高等教育。“如何让一个在欧亚战场上受过训练的老兵想学拉丁语？”父亲提出了这样的问题，那时他还是布鲁克林学院的古典学教授。这种语言能够给那些阅历已经如此丰富的人带来什么？作为教师，怎样才能使一门已经死去的语言变得生动起来，让人觉得它与我们息息相关，而且完全可以掌握？如何不把拉丁语仅仅当成一种已经过时的工具，而是作为文化和哲学的一种活生生的反映来教授？这就是父亲当时面临的挑战。

于是，弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克（Frederic M. Wheelock）开始编写一本拉丁语教材，试图用一种人文主义的养料在语言和哲学上滋养学生。本书始于他为布鲁克林学院的学生们专门开设的课程。小时候，我们经常会闻到胶版誊写机的那种刺鼻的油墨味，那时他经常不辞辛劳地为每一位学生在凝胶衬垫上一页页地复制那本教材的部分内容。1950年，利用弗雷德里克六个月的休假年，韦洛克一家到遥远的墨西哥San Miguel De Allende村旅行。在那里，弗雷德里克兢兢业业地编写着那本教材，我们勤劳的母亲多萝西（Dorothy）在一台旧式手提打字机上细心地打印着手稿，我们则淘气地跑来跑去，与当地的孩子和毛驴嬉戏打闹。

历经12年的精心构思、修改和试用，本书的第一版终于问世。当学生们需要学习语法时，他们会去阅读伟大的古代作家的训诫和文学作品，这些作家往往会在一种意味深长的语境下使用语法。父亲试图把罗马人思想感受的血肉与词形、句法和词汇的基本骨架紧密结合起来，以期学生们不是“死啃”拉丁语，而是通过文学和哲学的内容使头脑更加敏锐。

在我们的记忆中，家里的古典传统是很深厚的。一个词的词源可能会激起长时间的讨论，这对于我们年轻人来说往往是枯燥乏味的，然而我们长大后，却又会使我们受益匪浅。经常有人提醒我们，了解拉丁语有助于学习英语，60%的英语词汇都源于拉丁语。学过拉丁语的学生对SAT(学术能力评估考试)的词汇部分会更加得心应手，得到的分数也会更高。商业界早就认识到了拥有较大词汇量的重要性，认为它预示着管理方面的潜力和成功。了解一个词的词源史会让使用者觉得这个词更有色彩和力量，更具鲜活性和精确性。而且我们所掌握

的语词形象越清晰,数量越多,我们思想的力量似乎就越大。《韦洛克拉丁语教程》中包含着为数众多的英语词源研究以及丰富的词汇。我们自己的经验表明,学生们在理解词源之后,不仅能够更持久、更好地记忆词汇,而且也能在一种更为精准的含义上使用它们,体味出其中的微妙差别。

那么,为什么还要去练习翻译拉丁语呢?弗雷德里克·韦洛克认为,“准确地翻译拉丁语可以培养我们的观察、分析、判断和评价的能力,加强我们对语言形式、清晰性和美的感受,对我们提高自己的英语表达水平大有裨益”。通过翻译,我们可以学习到一种准则和精确性,它可以被移植到任何思维推理过程,比如数学家的那种推理过程。事实上,父亲在 Barnes & Noble 公司的编辑 Gladys Walterhouse 博士就是那里的数学编辑,他对拉丁语及其精确性很是欣赏。

父亲挚爱着古典作家和思想家的人文主义传统。对于这种爱,他不仅通过本书的“古代名言”部分与学生分享,而且也在平日里同家人和朋友们分享。当我们还是小姑娘的时候,父亲就教给我们古人的许多至理名言,告诉我们这些真理和训诫为何直到今天仍是那么鲜活有力。在本书中,读者将会捕捉到不少哲言的吉光片羽,比如 *carpe diem*(抓紧时机或及时行乐),*aurea mediocritās*(中庸之道;黄金分割),*summum bonum*(至善),“morality”(道德)源于 *mōrēs*(习惯)。(“好习惯造就好性格,”父亲经常这样告诫我们。)

不仅学习拉丁语和翻译过程很重要,了解贺拉斯、奥维德、维吉尔等罗马作家的思想和技艺也同样重要。围绕着一些发人深省的主题,比如面向未来而生活、追求卓越、人的生老病死、友谊等等,韦洛克为我们提供了这些古典作家的部分作品。弗雷德里克·韦洛克写道:“拉丁语研究的至善就是阅读、分析和欣赏原汁原味的人文主义拉丁语经典作品,我们的文明深深地植根于它,它在20世纪使我们受益良多。”

在弗雷德里克·韦洛克任拉丁语教授的45年中,他以幽默而谦逊的方式,从语言和文学两方面培养了学生们对拉丁语的热爱。他对教学工作怀有深深的眷恋,因为他对自己所教授的东西充满热忱。他非常尊重自己的学生,总是以高标准去要求他们。他希望学生们能够像他本人一样热爱和学习拉丁语,把它当作世代相传的火炬,照亮我们今天的路途。

1987年,弗雷德里克·韦洛克在即将走完85年丰满富足的人生时,还吟诵着荷马、贺拉斯和爱米莉·狄金森的名言。和古人一样,他秉承着献身学术的传统,坚信我们应当站在古人的肩上。如果他地下有知,今天有许多学生正在满怀热情地分享他深爱的拉丁语所带来的激动和乐趣,他一定会感到欣悦的。

玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒

Filiae amantissimae(**您最亲爱的女儿们**)

前言

既然已经有了那么多拉丁语入门教材，为什么还要出一本新的呢？问这个问题不无道理，不过这里还是能够给出几点理由。

众所周知，每一年都有越来越多不具备拉丁语知识的学生进入大学。如果他们想了解拉丁语，就只能在大学阶段才开始学习这门语言，而且通常是作为选修课来学习。虽然有些学校的学生有机会在两到三年的时间里学习拉丁语，但更多的学生却只有一年时间学习。这些学生主要分为三个群体：罗曼语专业的学生、英语专业的学生以及认识到拉丁语（哪怕只是初步的拉丁语知识）具有文化和应用价值的学生。[1] 如果让这些高年级学生（他们当中有许多人其实已是大三和大四的学生！）使用在思想和进度上只适用于高中生的入门教材，那么必定无法取得好的效果，结果反而得不偿失。而另一方面，我们也应秉持适度温和的古典精神，避免走到另一个极端，把入门教材编写得过于严肃高深，那样有可能会挫伤一些有上进心的学生通盘掌握拉丁语的积极性。

有鉴于此，笔者尝试编写一本供初学者使用的教材，力求内容周详，富于人文气息，有挑战性和启发性，同时要求也比较适度。当然，这并不是说拉丁语可以变得简单，无须努力就能掌握。不过，就先前的这份油印教材而言，根据笔者多年的使用经验，拉丁语尽管繁难，却可以变得活泼有趣。即使是对初学者和只修习一年的学生，拉丁语也可以带来愉悦和教益。只要方法步骤得当，学习拉丁语可以使人获得一种进步感和文学上的成就感，其效果甚至不亚于那些罗曼语专业的学生。因此，笔者的目标就是编写一本教材，帮助那些在整个教育阶段只修一年拉丁语的学生打下牢固的拉丁语基础，使他们至少能够享用某些文学果实，同时为那些打算继续在这一领域进行研究的人提供适当的引导和鼓励。为此，本书采用了一些较为独特的方法和设计。

---

[1] 还有一些研究生希望听我的课，因为他们忽然发觉自己需要掌握一些拉丁语知识，并希望自学——就像当我决定到墨西哥旅游时，根据 E. V. Greenfield 的《西班牙语语法》（*Spanish Grammar*, College Outline Series of Barnes & Noble）自学西班牙语那样。他们实际上组成了第四个群体，即希望在正规的学术课程之外学一点拉丁语的成年人。

1. “古代名言”(SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE) 和“古文选编”(LOCĪ ANTĪQUĪ)

几乎毋庸置疑，学习古老的拉丁语，最有益且最能鼓舞人心的途径就是借助古代作家的拉丁语原作来学习。带着这种信念，笔者认真审读了一些古代著作，[1] 摘出适当的句子和段落作为这本入门教材的材料。选择的主要标准是，材料本身应当有趣，而不仅仅因为能够说明词形和句法就被选用。这些内容丰富的文本是拉丁语文学的一个极好缩影，词形、句法和本书中的词汇都可以在此基础上建立起来。“古代名言”部分构成了每一课中固定的阅读练习，其中所有句子都选自这些拉丁语原文，每一句话后面都标注了古代作家的名字。在书中各处以及“古文选编”部分中出现的段落也是如此。根据我们的经验，本书的正式内容大致可以在一个半学期内讲授完毕，在剩下的半个学期里，可以不拘形式地阅读补充的古代拉丁语原文。[2] 这些内容涉及许多有趣的主题，比如爱情、传记、哲学、宗教、道德、友谊、慈善、游戏、战争、逸事、幽默、讽刺等等。这些基本的练习都选自原始的拉丁语文学作品，[3] 而非人工炮制出来的拉丁语。事实上，这些内容不仅是为了说明词汇、词形和规则，而且也是对罗马人思想和经验的介绍。

2. 词汇表和词汇设计

每一课都有一个词汇表，其中的内容需要牢牢掌握。每一个条目都由以下几个部分组成：拉丁词及其若干形式（比如动词的几个主要部分）、重要的语法信息（比如名词的性、介词支配的格）、英语释义（通常基本含义排在第一位）、括号里列出的有代表性的英语派生词。词条中的每一项都需要记住。随着课程的进行，在笔记本或电脑文件中做一个不断更新的词汇表，或者使用词汇卡片（一面是拉丁词，另一面是词条中的其余部分）会很有帮助。考虑到“重复是记忆之母”（*repetītiō māter memoriae*），某一课的词汇通常会在接下来的课程中或其他地方反复出现。

不太常见或者在本书中不常出现（有时只出现一次）的拉丁词会在“古代名

---

[1] 我有意没有选用恺撒的著作，因为他的著作不大适合在头两年的课程中学习，我们可以找到更合适的阅读材料。

[2] 其中包括拉丁晚期和中世纪作家的六段作品，以说明拉丁语在中世纪的连续性。

[3] 当然，有时不得不对这些拉丁语做一些编辑调整，以避免原先的单词、形式或句法过于困难，以致超出了学生的能力。在大多数情况下，这种调整只涉及省略一些不重要的内容，对词序稍作简化，或者用较为简单的单词、形式或句法来代替。然而，其基本思想和表达方式依然是古代作家的。

言”和阅读材料后面的括号中标注出来，以免每一课的词汇负担过重。这些注释通常不如正规的词条完整，而且课程越往后进行，注释可能就越简略，不过已经能够为翻译相关的文本提供足够的信息。对于那些可以很容易地从英语派生词推断出含义的拉丁词，通常不给出英文释义。教师对这些词条的要求可以因人而异，但一般而言，学生们应当至少能够“被动地”掌握这些词，即如果在类似的语境（比如在后续课程中）或考试中碰到它们，他们应当能够辨识出这些词，其完整词条大都可以在书末的词汇表中找到。

3. 句法

尽管前面提到的作品摘选构成了本书应当进一步介绍的句法概念的逻辑向导，但正如我们已经说过的，不愠不火、张弛有度才是常识之道。已经介绍过的句法概念应当足以用来阅读“古文选编”的成熟段落，并为那些希望在一年之后继续学习拉丁语的人打下坚实的基础。事实上，如果已经具备了在处理这种成熟拉丁语过程中所获得的技能，并且掌握了附录中所补充的句法，学生就可以跳过第二年阅读恺撒的传统课程，而直接进入到第三年的课程去阅读西塞罗等作家的作品。在对句法的解释方面，本书力争做到尽可能简洁和没有学究气，每一个概念都通过大量例子进行了说明，其中既有必要的重复，也包括了自学素材。最后，鉴于即使英语专业的学生也可能不具备足够的语法知识，书中对大多数语法术语都作了补充解释(通常是借助词源)。这些解释没有被归入某个一般的概要性章节(学生们通常会回避这些部分)，而是当术语首次出现时自然地加入。

4. 词形及其展示

对于一本入门教材来说，各种屈折和非屈折形式都是共通的。然而在本教材中，讲解名词或形容词形式的课程单元与讲解动词形式的课程单元一般会交替出现，这有助于减少因单调而导致的厌倦。基于同样的考虑，笔者也把位置格、副词和大多数不规则动词放在了本书的较后部分，它们可以暂缓虚拟式以及其他复杂句法所造成的负担。

笔者力图把具有类似形式的词形变化表列在一起，以便在同一课中互为参照，[1] 并把新的词形自然地安排在熟悉的相关词形之后（比如把第三变格法形容词安排在 **i**–词干名词之后）。

掌握句法和词形的速度显然与班级的性质和水准有关，教师应当根据实际情况对任务做出调整。虽然每一课都构成了一个逻辑单元，但我们发现，对于大多数内容较多的课，至少需要分配两项任务：首先是正文、词形变化表、词汇表、

---

[1] 附录中也采用了这样的设计。

“练习与复习”以及某些“古代名言”;其次是复习、完成“古代名言”、阅读材料以及词源部分。这两项任务显然有利于对内容进行不断反复。

5. 练习与复习

“练习与复习”中的句子旨在确保对形式、句法和词汇进行重复,这对于学习语言至关重要。如果教材的作者能够以预先确定的一系列词汇和句法开始,并且在此基础上自由地构造句子,那么让后续课程单元中的句子重复前几课的内容,就会比较容易,尤其是在不太关注句子思想内容的情况下。而如果受制于第一节中所谈的那些限制,那么这种重复显然就更难做一些。实际上,在某一课中介绍的内容大都会在接下来几课的“古代名言”以及其他地方多次出现,不过笔者还是编写了“练习与复习”中的句子[1]来填补空隙,以保证出现更多的重复,并为复习提供练习。由于阅读拉丁语是学习重点,所以英译拉的句子数量并不多,但也要定期加以练习。其他练习则不需要预先布置给学生。只要时间允许,它们当堂就可以轻松地完成,也可以在学过四五课之后用作复习课的材料。

6. 词源点滴

在每一课的词汇表中,我们都在单词后面的括号里列出了许多英语派生词,以帮助学生记忆拉丁词,了解拉丁语对英语的影响,并扩展学生的词汇量。我们偶尔也会加入一些英语同源词。每一课的结尾都有一个名为“词源点滴”的部分,它包含了句子和阅读材料中的某些词汇,以及其他一些单凭词汇表难以言说的有趣之处。学生应当在学习开始时先查阅附录中“词源帮助”部分的词缀表。有时我们也会列出一些罗曼语派生词,以激发罗曼语专业学生的兴趣,同时表明拉丁语对于这些学科的重要性。

7. 导言

除了讨论罗马字母表和发音,本书的综论性导言还简要介绍了拉丁语的语言学、文学和古文书学背景。这些背景以及“古代名言”和“古文选编”中的拉丁语原文有助于学生深入理解罗马人的文学、思想、表达方式和感受,并且体现了罗马传统与我们这个时代的连续性。但愿导言,尤其是教材本身的特色,能够使本书不只是又一本拉丁语语法书,而且也能成为一部阅读原汁原味拉丁语的人文主义导论。

本书的雏形是油印的课堂教材,当时编写的动机就是序言开头所表达的那种不满。尽管由于编写仓促而存在着各种显而易见的缺陷,但课程还是取得了

---

[1] 其中有些句子是由古代的拉丁语句子联想而来的。

良好的效果。感谢亨特学院的 Lillian B. Lawler 教授仔细阅读了油印材料，并提出宝贵建议。感谢布鲁克林学院的学生和同事的耐心，他们对油印的内容提出了许多有益的反馈和建议。基于已有的经验，我又对教程进行了彻底修订和重写。我很感谢布鲁克林学院的 Joseph Pearl 教授，他详细审读了修改后的四十课手稿，提出了许多有益的建议。还要感谢波士顿学院的 Joseph M.-F. Marique 牧师对修改稿的鼓励和评论。衷心感谢东北大学的 Thomas S. Lester，他才华横溢，与我意气相投，拥有健全的心灵和乐观的精神，从我还是个古典学专业的本科生时就一直是我亲密的朋友，他经常耐心地倾听我的问题。我还要对我的妻子多萝西表示诚挚的谢意，她不仅毫无怨言地打印了这份非常困难的文稿，而且还提出了许多有益的建议，这些建议使得本书内容更为清晰，更能设身处地为学生着想。最后要感谢 Gladys Walterhouse 博士和她在 Barnes & Noble 公司编辑室的同事们，他们在许多事情上都给予了友好的帮助，这些帮助往往重要而及时。当然，任何尚存的错误和不当之处均由笔者本人负责。

第二版和第三版

有些人发现自己需要比"古文选编"更多的阅读材料，有鉴于此，我准备了本书的第二版，新加入了一个题为"古代文选"(*Locī Immūtātī*)的部分。在这些段落中，除在个别地方作了省略之外，原始的古代拉丁文本没有作任何变动。脚注格式与"古文选编"中的保持一致。希望这些阅读材料能够使一门导论课也能接触到足够广泛的材料，对自学者也能构成一次饶有兴味的挑战，并为使用关于古典作家的常规注释文本提供直接的途径。

由于重复对于建立语言反射具有无可争议的价值，我们在第三版中新加入了一个自测练习部分。它由语法和句法问题以及句子翻译组成。所有问题和句子翻译都备有答案。

第二版和第三版的改进仰赖于许多人的热情鼓励、意见和修改建议。这里我要对他们表示深深的谢意。我特别感谢大阿尔伯特学院的 Josephine Bree 教授，奥克兰城市学院的 Ben L. Charney 教授，叶史瓦学院的 Louis H. Feldman 教授，印第安纳大学的 Robert J. Leslie 教授，东北大学的 Thomas S. Lester 先生，Glenmary Home Missioners 的 James R. Murdock 牧师，华盛顿大学的 Paul Pascal 教授，哈佛大学的 Robert Renehan 教授，科尔盖特大学的 John E. Rexine 教授，摩拉维亚学院的 George Tyler 教授，亨特学院的 Ralph L. Ward 教授，Barnes & Noble 公司编辑室的 Gladys Walterhouse 博士。最后，我要再一次特别感谢我的妻子。

弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克

第六版修订前言

弗雷德里克·韦洛克教授的《拉丁语教程》(*Latin*)于1956年首次面世,随即以其周详的内容、清晰的结构和简洁的行文而广受赞誉。有评论预言,该书很可能会成为指导大学生和成年人学习拉丁语基础知识的标准教材。现在半个世纪过去了,事实证明,这一预言是正确的;第二版于1960年出版,更名为《拉丁语教程:基于古代作家的导论课》(*Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors*),并且新增了直接选自拉丁语文学的"古代文选";第三版于1963年出版,书中新增了针对四十课教学内容的自测练习和答案,大大增强了教材的实用性。1984年,作者于去世前三年补充了"古代名言"的原始出处,以方便教师和学生查阅和研究感兴趣的材料;1992年,在新的HarperCollins出版公司支持下,本书又出了第四版,整个文本采用了大字体,阅读起来更加赏心悦目。

第五版出版于1995年,书名恰当地改为《韦洛克拉丁语教程》(*Wheelock's Latin*)。三十多年来,这是第一次做真正实质性的修订。我所做的修订并不是要改变教材的基本理念,而是为了强化它。事实上,一些关键性改动乃是基于韦洛克教授本人的建议,这些建议保存在他由家人保管的笔记里。还有一些改动则反映了全国同行们的意见。他们中有许多人和我一样,在至少二十年里一直使用这本书,对它赞赏有加,并且在这一过程中逐渐就某些基本方法达成共识,也许这些方法可以使本书得以更臻精进。

第五版所做的改动反映了韦洛克教授本人的意愿,也了却了我和长期使用本教材的许多同行的心愿,那就是在每一课中加入古代作家所写的拉丁语材料。在前面几课中,这些材料比较简短,而且会作一些改动,不过随着课程的进行,材料的量会不断增加,而且经常是从各种散文诗作中原封不动地摘引下来。有些材料曾经在前几版的"古文选编"和"古代文选"中出现过,不过大多是在第五版中首次加入。我们对"练习与复习"和"古代名言"中的一些句子进行了改换(有时是将其扩充成更长的阅读材料),这在一定程度上也是基于韦洛克教授本人的建议。

每一课的词汇大都被扩充为20到25个。这些词汇表使用起来很方便,既包括新词,也有以前作为"古代名言"注释出现的许多词汇。根据全国同行的一

致意见，所有动词从一开始就给出了完整的主要部分。学生们不会再像以前那样，看着第十二课中给出的列表而心生畏惧。

语法只做了略微改动，主要是将未完成时与第五、八、十课中的将来时一起讲解，以使过去时可以尽早用于阅读。原先第四十课中的数词移到第十五课中进行介绍。以前在“句法补充”中介绍的大约六种重要的语法结构，现在放到第四十课和它前面几课中介绍。我们重新编写了不少语法说明，并把脚注中的一些重要信息放在正文中，同时也删去了一些不太重要的脚注。

最后，我们在第五版每一课的结尾新增了一个部分——“欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语”(*Latīna Est Gaudium— Et Ūtilis*)，它特意以一种不太正式的风格，为学生们介绍各种拉丁语格言、名言警句、常用的缩略语、有趣的词源、奇闻趣事，甚至还有少数令人不快的双关语，所有这些都旨在以较为轻松的方式表明，拉丁语的确可以给人带来愉快和教益。

第六版

第五版取得的巨大成功鼓励我们所有人——韦洛克教授的女儿玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒，我们的编辑 Greg Chaput 及其在 HarperCollins 出版公司的同事，以及我本人——根据我的建议做进一步修订，出版这一最新的第六版。我们希望教师和学生都能从这种修订中获益。其中较为明显的改动有：封面换成了一幅出自突尼斯的漂亮的罗马镶嵌画，描绘的是膝上放着《埃涅阿斯纪》(*Aeneid*)的维吉尔，身旁站立着代表其作品灵感的两个缪斯女神；[1] 加入了三张描绘古代意大利、埃及、爱琴海和地中海区域的地图，它们业已经过专门设计，除少数与罗马帝国相距遥远的地区之外，包含有书中阅读材料和注释中提到的所有地名；增加了古典时代以来的许多欧洲艺术图片，以说明阅读材料中涉及的那些文学历史形象以及古典文化和神话学方面的内容。有些改动不大显眼，但我们希望同样有所助益：对阅读材料，特别是“练习与复习”中的句子进行了修订，使之更为清晰，并且巩固最新介绍的词汇；扩充每一课词汇表中的派生词以及与其他教学单元中相关词的对照；扩充书末的英拉词汇表等等。

2005 年问世的第六版还对导言部分和某些句子、阅读材料、注释做了少量修改，并对英拉词汇表做了进一步扩充，以使辅助教材《韦洛克拉丁语教程学习手册》(*Workbook for Wheelock's Latin*，修订版第三版由 Paul Comeau 和我编写，与《韦洛克拉丁语教程》同时出版)更具实用性。第六版同时推出了精装本，这也是多年以来的第一次。所有课程单元的词汇表和其他一些朗读部分的音频现在都可以在网上找到。教师指导用书也已经编写完成，只要提供了教师身份验证，教师们就可以在网上阅读(需要密码)。

---

[1] 此幅画在本次中译本中已被挪至扉页后。——译者注

最后需要提醒教授、教师和广大自学者的是，由于在一学期的课程中，实际分配给每一课的时间一般为两三天（高中大概一周左右），《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的这个修订版所包含的翻译材料很可能会超出在这段时间所能完成的任务量。教师可以有选择地安排任务：我建议，前一两天仅从“练习和复习”和“古代名言”的句子中选择需要布置的书面作业，而把其余的部分（或者事先认真挑选出一些）留到课堂上做口头翻译；后两天的任务则包括“古代名言”后面的阅读材料，它们将使学生获得更多的经验。应当经常鼓励学生在课下结合自测练习和答案阅读新的材料。练习中的句子也是为此目的而精心挑选的，通过在课堂上做口头翻译，有助于掌握新的概念。

不少教师也希望学生们使用《韦洛克拉丁语教程学习手册》，其中有许多补充练习，包括了每一课的详细教学任务，为了熟练掌握新语法而设计的问题，各种句子变形，单词、短语和句子翻译，关于词源、同义词、反义词的问题，新词汇项的类比，阅读理解问题等等，所有这些都旨在检验学生们对每一课的阅读材料的理解。

对于那些也许没有时间完成《手册》中所有练习的读者，建议你们至少能够做到：了解每一课的 *Intellegenda*（课程目标），回答所有的 *Grammatica*（语法复习）问题，完成每一个 *Exercitātiōnēs*（练习）中的至少一两项（即从 A 部分练习中选出一两项，再从 B 部分练习中选出一两项等等），*Vīs Verbōrum*（词源和英语词汇）中的所有项，*Lēctiōnēs*（阅读材料）A 部分中的一两项拉译英，以及 *Lēctiōnēs* B 部分（关于每一课阅读材料的问题）中的所有项。

还有许多材料可以作为《韦洛克拉丁语教程》和《韦洛克拉丁语教程学习手册》的补充，比如补充阅读、各种电脑软件以及许多网络资源。通过《韦洛克拉丁语教程》进行学习和讲授拉丁语的进一步建议以及不少网络资源，都列在了韦洛克拉丁语官方网站 www.wheelockslatin.com 上，在我的《21 世纪拉丁语：从概念到课堂》（*Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom,* Prentice Hall Publishers）一书中也有介绍。

许多人对《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的第五版和第六版都给予了热情的支持和帮助，我在此深表感谢：我的孩子 Jean-Paul, Laura Caroline 和 Kimberley Ellen 给我带来了无穷的欢乐；我的同事 Jared Klein，也是著名的印欧语言学家，阅读了我的修订稿，并提出了很多颇有见地的看法；我的研究生助手 Cleve Fisher, Marshall Lloyd, Sean Mathis, Matthew Payne 和 Jim Yavenditti 努力而出色地协助完成了各项任务；我的老朋友 Mary Wells Ricks，也是《古典学展望》（*Classical Outlook*）杂志的前资深副总编，曾就一系列编辑问题提供了专业解答；我们系的秘书 JoAnn Pulliam 和 Connie Russell 在誊写文稿方面提供了慷慨的帮助；HarperCollins 的编辑 Erica Spaberg, Patricia Leasure，特别是 Greg Chaput，热情地

支持我关于修订版的主张；纽约艺术资源库的 Tim MaCarthy 及其同事 Jim Anderson，Bob Curtis，Timothy Gantz 和 Frances Van Keuren 在图片方面给予了大力协助；感谢 Tom Elliott 和古代世界绘图中心在设计第六版地图方面的工作；佐治亚大学的学生和同事们，比如 Bob Harris 和 Richard Shedenhelm，不仅实地试用了新教材，而且提供了其他帮助；全国有许多同行都提出过修订建议，特别是南卡罗莱纳大学的 Ward Briggs（他撰写的韦洛克教授生平收录于他主编的《美国古典学家传记辞典》[*A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists*], Westport CT: Greenwood Press, 1994 和 Winter, 2003, *Classical Outlook* 中），Rob Latousek，John Lautermilch，John McChesney-Young，Braden Mechley，Betty Rose Nagle，John Ramsey，Joseph Riegsecker，Cliff Roti，Les Sheridan，David Sider，Alden Smith，Cliff Weber 和 Stephen Wheeler；感谢系主任 Wyatt Anderson 对我本人和整个古典学系工作的鼓励；感谢我的"拉丁语姐妹"玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒对我修订工作的坚定支持，并慷慨地允许我查阅她们父亲的笔记；最后，感谢弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克教授本人锻造了这样一部经典教科书，能有机会对它进行修订是我莫大的荣幸。

理查德·A·拉弗勒

佐治亚大学

2004 年秋

目　录

导 言

不懂外语的人也不会了解母语。（歌德）

学习一门语言，就获得了一次新生。（法国谚语）

只要具备一点点背景知识，就可以使学习拉丁语的兴趣大增，本篇导言的目的便是提供这种背景知识。我们打算从语言学的角度介绍拉丁语在语言史中的位置，对拉丁语文学作一简要回顾，同时介绍一些作家，他们的部分作品构成了本书中的“古代名言”和“古文选编”部分。这一回顾虽然简要，却也提供了某种难得的文学视角。关于字母表的叙述也是如此。当然最后还要介绍一下字母发音，从而使整部导言更加完整。

拉丁语在语言史中的位置

当我们说出“I”（我［主格］）、“me”（我［宾格］）、“is”（是）、“mother”（母亲）、“brother”（兄弟）、“ten”（十）这些词时，我们实际上是在以某种方式言说欧洲人和亚洲人已经说了上千年的词。事实上，我们并不清楚这些词到底有多么古老。如果说它们的拼写和发音因时空的差异而有所不同，这并不奇怪；真正令人惊讶的是，这些人类思想符号的基本要素竟然能够越过这样的时空跨度，一直留存到今天。从下面这个简表就可以看出这一点。[1]

英语	*I*	*me*	*is*	*mother*	*brother*	*ten*
梵语[2]	aham	mā	asti	mātar-	bhrātar-	daśam
希腊语	egō	me	esti	mētēr	phrātēr[3]	deka
拉丁语	ego	mē	est	māter	frāter	decem
盎格鲁-撒克逊语[4]	ic	mē	is	mōdor	brōthor	tīen

[1] 这张表中省略了一些可有可无的成分。除了表中列出的词汇，可举的例子还有许多。

[2] 梵语是古印度圣典所使用的语言，它是南亚次大陆现代诸印欧语系语言的母语。

[3] 虽然与这一列中的其他词同源，但古典希腊词 phrātēr 的意思是“部族成员”。

[4] 日耳曼语族中的一支，该语族的其他成员还包括哥特语、德语、荷兰语、丹麦语、挪威语、瑞典语、冰岛语、英语。

古爱尔兰语[1]		mé	is	máthir	bráthir	deich
立陶宛语[2]	aš	manè	esti	motė	broterėlis	dešimtis
俄语[3]	ja	menja	jest’	mat’	brat	desjat’

由这张表格我们可以看出,这些语言相互之间是有关联的。[4]然而在它们当中,除英语是从盎格鲁-撒克逊语派生出来[5]的以外,没有任何一种语言是直接从另一种语言派生出来的,而是都可以回溯到一种共同的源始语。这种语言现已消亡,但根据留存下来的语言证据,乃有此推断。语言学家们称这些语言为“同源语”(cognate,拉丁语,意为“相关的”,字面意思是“共生的”,即来自同一祖先)。所有这些“亲戚语言”或同源语的源始语(现已消亡)一般称为原始印欧语,因为它的派生语既出现在印度附近(梵语、伊朗语),也出现在欧洲(希腊语、拉丁语、日耳曼语、凯尔特语、斯拉夫语、波罗的语)。[6]据文献考证,这些语言中最古老的是梵语、伊朗语、希腊语和拉丁语,这些文献均可追溯到公元前。

为了更清楚地说明派生语与同源语的区别,我们可以考察一下罗曼语与拉丁语的关系,以及罗曼诸语言之间的关系。这时的历史都有文字记录可查,我们看到,随着罗马在政治上征服了高卢(法国)、西班牙和达契亚(罗马尼亚),语言上的征服也悄然出现。越来越多的普通人(**vulgus**,所以是“通俗”[vulgar]拉丁语)开始讲古拉丁语,从这种语言中慢慢发展出了罗曼诸语言,如法语、西班牙语、葡萄牙语、罗马尼亚语、意大利语等等。因此我们可以说,意大利语、法语、西班牙语等语言都是从拉丁语派生出来的,它们彼此同源。

前面已经谈到,英语是从与拉丁语同源的盎格鲁-撒克逊语中派生出来的,但这远远不是事情的全部。盎格鲁-撒克逊语早先从拉丁语中借用过一些

[1] 凯尔特语族中的一支,该语族的其他成员还包括高卢语、布列塔尼人的凯尔特语、苏格兰语(盖尔语)。列表中的古爱尔兰语 mé 其实是主格,在含义和用法上等同于“I”,在形式上却等同于“me”。

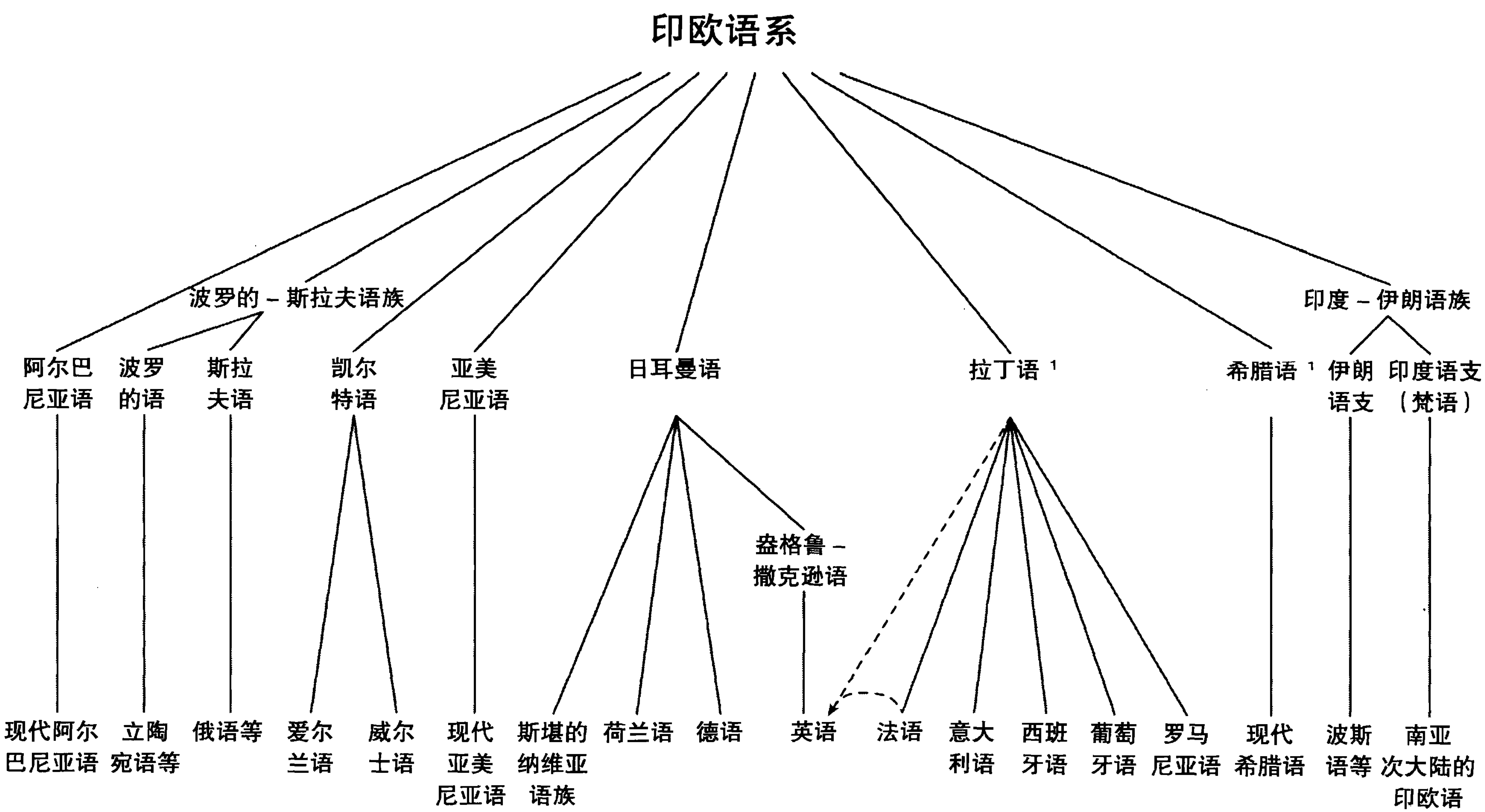
[2] 波罗的语族中的一支,该语族的其他成员还包括拉脱维亚语和古普鲁士语。

[3] 斯拉夫语族中的一支,该语族的其他成员还包括波兰语、保加利亚语、捷克语。

[4] 这个庞大的语系还显示了屈折变化方面的关系,但这里无意考察这一点。屈折语是指这样一种语言,它的名词、代词、形容词和动词都有可变词尾,通过这些词尾来表示句子中词与词的关系。需要注意的是,和拉丁语一样,盎格鲁-撒克逊语也是一种屈折语,但其后代英语却失去了它的大部分屈折变化。

[5] 英语与拉丁语的关系将在后面给出。

[6] 请注意,许多语言(如闪语族、埃及语、巴斯克语、汉语以及非洲和美洲的土著语言)都不属于印欧语系。



[1] 实际上，拉丁语只是若干种意大利方言（比如奥斯肯语和翁布里亚语）中的一种，过了很久之后才脱颖而出。类似地，在希腊语中也存在着不少方言（如伊奥利亚方言、雅典方言、爱奥尼亚方言、多利斯方言）。

母语	同源的罗曼语派生词			
拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语	英语含义
amīcus	amico	amigo	ami	friend
liber	libro	libro	livre	book（在古典拉丁语中是 cheek）[1]
tempus	tempo	tiempo	temps	time
manus	mano	mano	main	hand
bucca	bocca	boca	bouche	mouth
caballus[2]	cavallo	caballo	cheval	horse
fīlius	figlio	hijo	fils	son
ille	il	el	(le)[3]	the(在古典拉丁语中是 that)
illa	la	la	la	the(在古典拉丁语中是 that)
quattuor	quattro	cuatro	quatre	four
bonus	buono	bueno	bon	good
bene	bene	bien	bien	well(副词)
facere	fare	hacer	faire	make, do
dīcere	dire	decir	dire	say
legere	leggere	leer	lire	read

词汇。公元 7 世纪时，又有更多的拉丁词[4]被吸收进来，这主要是由于坎特伯雷的圣奥古斯丁(不是那个著名的希波的圣奥古斯丁)著作的影响，他曾受教皇格列高利差遣，力图使盎格鲁人皈依基督教。在征服者威廉[5]于 1066 年取得胜利之后，诺曼法语成为上流语言，盎格鲁-撒克逊语被看作是战败者和农奴讲的劣等语言。盎格鲁-撒克逊语不再是文学语言，而是成了日常生活中的土话。然而，又过了大约两个世纪，随着诺曼人的后裔最终与当地英国人融合，盎格鲁-撒克逊语又重新得到了肯定。但是由于自身的贫乏，它在成为文学语言之前，不得不在文学、思想和文化上借用数百个法语词。到了 13、14 世纪，随着这种借用的不断增多，中古英语慢慢发展出来，其代表人物便是于 1400 年去世的乔叟(Chaucer)。除了这些含有拉丁词根的法语词被吸收进来，还有一些词是直接从

[1] 在古典拉丁语中，bucca 是“面颊”的意思，对应于 *mouth*(口)的词是 **ōs, ōris**。

[2] 在古典拉丁语中，对应于 *horse*(马)的词是 **equus**。

[3] 由 **ille** 派生，但实际上与 *il* 和 *el* 并不同源。

[4] 其中有许多词其实源于希腊语和希伯来语，只是都被拉丁化了。拉丁文《圣经》起了重要作用。

[5] 征服者威廉(William the Conqueror, 1027–1087)，英国国王(1066–1087)。原系法国诺曼底公爵。1066 年，英王爱德华(忏悔者)死而无嗣，大贵族哈罗德(Harold)被贵族会议拥戴即位。威廉借口前王遗嘱，救济诺曼底封建主和骑士，在教皇支持下渡海侵入英国，哈斯丁(Hastings)一战击毙哈罗德，自立为英王。——译者注

拉丁语借过来的。到了16、17世纪，文艺复兴重新唤起了人们对于古典作品的兴趣，从而使这一过程得到加强。从那以后，拉丁语一直是许多新词特别是科学语汇的来源。[1]

既然英语经由盎格鲁-撒克逊语而与拉丁语同源，而且英语从拉丁语中直接或间接地借用了许多词汇，所以我们很容易用自己的词汇来说明同源和派生现象。例如，"brother"（兄弟）一词与拉丁词 frāter（兄弟）同源，而"fraternal"（兄弟的）显然是由 frāter 派生出来的。这样的例子还有很多：

英语	拉丁语同源词[2]	英语派生词
mother	māter	maternal
two	duo	dual, duet
tooth	dēns，词干 dent-	dental
foot	pēs，词干 ped-	pedal
heart	cor，词干 cord-	cordial
bear	ferō	fertile

我们的词汇为什么会如此丰富，由此也就不难理解了。我们学习拉丁语的时间越长，就越能真切地体会到，如果没有拉丁语的基本要素，我们的语言将会是多么贫乏。

这一概述尽管简略，但还是可以帮助我们理解拉丁语在欧洲语言史中的大体位置，领会拉丁语对于我们现代人的重要性。拉丁语是许多语言的同源语，[3]也是许多语言的源始语。它甚至称得上是我们自身语言的母语。第14页的简表可以说明这一点。[4]

拉丁语文学简述

本书选用的拉丁语材料主要出自文学作品，这里有必要对拉丁语文学做一番概述，以彰显其特征和范围。为了帮助记忆，我们将拉丁语文学做如下的历史分期。不过，虽然这一分期有一定的道理，但我们要时刻记住，时期的名称和年

[1] 显然，如果不借助拉丁语词汇和一般的古典文学作品，即使是20世纪的广告设计者也会黔驴技穷，束手无策。

[2] 格里姆定律（Grimm's law）提出了日耳曼语中某些辅音（塞音）的音变规律，这表明一些看上去如此不同的词，比如英语的 *heart* 和拉丁语的 **cor, cord-**，其实都起源于同一个词。

[3] 需要特别注意的是，拉丁语只是与希腊语同源，而不是由它派生出来。

[4] 出于简洁和明晰的考虑，这里省去了一些语言和中间环节。需要特别注意的是，这里无意说明希腊语对英语的影响。印欧语系中有两支——安纳托利亚语和吐火罗语——现已消亡，表中没有列出。

代并不是绝对的。

一、早期(约公元前 80 年以前)

二、黄金时代(公元前 80 年—公元 14 年)

1. 西塞罗时期(公元前 80 年—公元前 43 年)

2. 奥古斯都时期(公元前 43 年—公元 14 年)

三、白银时代(公元 14 年—约公元 138 年)

四、教父时期(公元 2 世纪末—公元 5 世纪)

五、中世纪(公元 6 世纪—公元 14 世纪)

六、文艺复兴(约公元 15 世纪)至今

一、早期(约公元前 80 年以前)

公元前 5 至 4 世纪,希腊文明达到了顶峰,文学艺术空前繁荣。而相比之下,这段时期的罗马则乏善可陈。根据目前散见的证据,当地只出现了一种粗糙的、强调重音音节排列的萨图尔努斯格律(Saturnian meter),本地的一些幽默讽刺短剧,以及用于记录和说话的一种粗陋的实用散文。

然而,到了公元前 3 世纪,罗马的扩张使罗马人接触到了希腊文明。不知为什么,讲求实际、崇尚政治和法律的罗马人竟然被自己所看到的一切迷住了,作家们纷纷到学校学习希腊文学。从这时起,希腊文学的形式、格律、修辞技巧、题材和观念对罗马文学产生了深远的影响,甚至当罗马文学已经颇具自己的风格和原创性时也是如此。

事实上,罗马人自己毫不隐讳这一点。虽然罗马人接着也创作诗歌、悲剧、讽刺文学和发表演讲,但在这段向希腊学习的时期里,流传至今的最伟大成就是普劳图斯(Plautus,约公元前 254 年—公元前 184 年)和泰伦提乌斯(Terence,公元前 185 年—公元前 159 年)的喜剧。这些剧目基于一种关于风俗和生活方式的希腊戏剧,即所谓的"新戏剧"。直到今天,它们仍然拥有大批读者。事实上,其中有些剧目对现代剧作家产生了影响。例如,普劳图斯的《墨奈赫穆斯兄弟》(*Menaechmi*)就曾启发莎士比亚创作了《错中错》(*Comedy of Errors*)。

二、黄金时代(公元前 80 年—公元 14 年)

公元前 1 世纪,罗马作家完善了他们的文学语言,使拉丁语文学成为世界上最伟大的文学之一。它尤以优美而严整的古典形式和真实的材料内容而著称。如果说卢克莱修曾经抱怨过拉丁语词汇的贫乏,那么西塞罗则对词汇及其用法进行了锻造,使得拉丁语在 1300 多年的时间里一直是一种灵活而精妙的语言工具。[1]

---

[1] 参见下面中世纪拉丁语和文艺复兴拉丁语。

1. **西塞罗时期(公元前 80 年—公元前 43 年)**

西塞罗时期的文学作品是在罗马共和国末期产生的。这一时期内战频仍，君主独裁专断，宪法权利随时可能遭武力践踏。整个社会自私自利，炫耀浮华，道德败坏，宗教衰微。本书中出现的这一时期的杰出作家有：

卢克莱修(Titus Lūcrētius Cārus，约公元前 98 年—公元前 55 年)：写出了《物性论》(*Dē Rērum Nātūrā*)，这是一篇教导人通过伊壁鸠鲁哲学获得幸福的长诗。这种哲学建立在快乐[1]的基础之上，背后有一种原子论作支撑，这种原子论认为，宇宙受制于自然法则而不是神的法则，从而使人们对神的畏惧以及宗教专制得以消解，卢克莱修认为这些东西破坏了人的幸福。

卡图卢斯(Gāius Valerius Catullus，约公元前 84 年—公元前 54 年)：抒情诗人，罗马文学的罗伯特·彭斯[2]。他出生在意大利北部，富于激情，生性敏感。他疯狂地迷恋上了一个被他称作"勒斯比娅"(这是她的笔名，其真名叫克洛狄娅)的精于世故的女子，最终痛苦地幡然醒悟。他有一百多首诗歌留存下来。

西塞罗(Mārcus Tullius Cicerō，公元前 106 年—公元前 43 年)：最伟大的罗马演说家。他的雄辩挫败了公元前 63 年破产贵族喀提林[3]的阴谋，也使他本人在 20 年后反抗安东尼高压政策的过程中丢掉了性命。他被誉为罗马雄辩术的权威，曾向国民阐释希腊哲学，写过《论友谊》(*Dē Amīcitiā*)、《论老年》(*Dē Senectūte*)等著作，还留下了不少显露性情的非正式的书信。西塞罗对拉丁语本身也做出过重大贡献，这一点我们已经说过。

恺撒(Gāius Iūlius Caesar，公元前 102 或 100 年—公元前 44 年)：演说家，政治家，将军，执政官，作家。最著名的著作是军事回忆录《高卢战记》(*Bellum Gallicum*)和《内战记》(*Bellum Cīvīle*)。

涅波斯(Cornēlius Nepōs，公元前 99 年—公元前 24 年)：卡图卢斯和恺撒的朋友，传记作家，其作品主要不是因其历史文献价值而著名，而是因为相对平易而通俗的风格。

叙鲁斯(Publilius Syrus，盛年为公元前 43 年)：被卖到罗马的奴隶，因其哑剧而著名，但现在只有一些格言性警句最为人称道。

2. **奥古斯都时期(公元前 43 年—公元 14 年)**

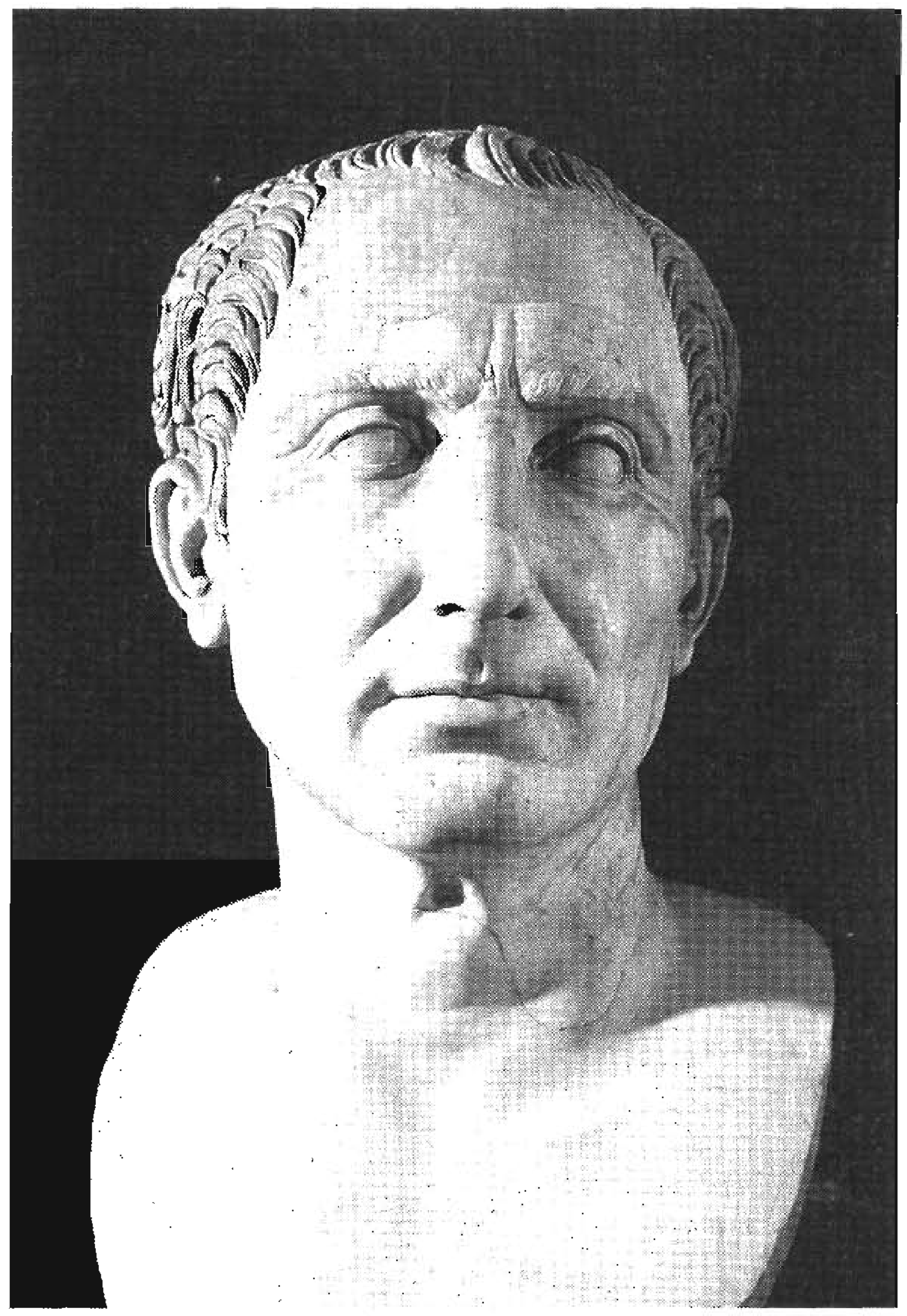
奥古斯都(Augustus)是罗马帝国的开国皇帝，这一时期正是以他的名字命

---

[1] 然而，认为快乐仅仅意味着吃喝玩乐实乃俗见。

[2] 罗伯特·彭斯(Robert Burns，1759—1796)，苏格兰诗人。他主要用苏格兰方言写抒情诗，曾长期搜集整理民歌。——译者注

[3] 参见第十一课"Cicero Denounces Catiline"以及第三十课的"Evidence and Confession"的注释介绍。



Julius Caesar
1st century B.C.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

名的。他希望通过稳定的政府来消除时代的罪恶，建立国内和平，赢得罗马人对其新政权的支持。为此，奥古斯都和他的亲密谋臣麦凯纳斯（Maecenas）试图使文学也能为国家效力。在他们的资助下，维吉尔和贺拉斯被授予"桂冠诗人"称号。现代的一些评论家认为，这件事情损害了这些诗人的高尚情操；另一些人则在贺拉斯那里看到了一种独立精神和真正的道德关切，认为维吉尔通过史诗英雄埃涅阿斯（Aeneas），并不仅仅是在歌颂奥古斯都，而是在向皇帝暗示应当怎样做一国之君。[1]

维吉尔（Pūblius Vergilius Marō，公元前 70 年—公元前 19 年）：生于意大利北部，出身卑微。他热爱自然，对人类抱有深刻的同情，同时也是一个伊壁鸠鲁主义者和神秘主义者。他严于内省，是语言和文学的建筑师，"语言之王"（lord of language）。其作品《牧歌》（*Eclogues*）以及歌颂农业生活的教诲诗《农事诗》（*Georgics*）久负盛名。维吉尔最著名的作品是《埃涅阿斯纪》（*Aeneid*）这部伟大的民族史诗。[2]它固然有其他目的，但也有着普遍的人性诉求，这使它在 20 世纪依

[1] 参见 E. K. Rand, *The Builders of Eternal Rome* (Harvard Univ. Press, 1943)。

[2] 人们总是将《埃涅阿斯纪》与荷马的《伊利亚特》（*Iliad*）和《奥德赛》（*Odyssey*），但丁的《神曲》（*Divine Comedy*）以及弥尔顿（Milton）的《失乐园》（*Paradise Lost*）相提并论。维吉尔得益于荷马甚多，但丁和弥尔顿也得益于维吉尔甚多。

然读者甚众。

贺拉斯(Quīntus Horātius Flaccus,公元前 65 年—公元前 8 年):一个获释奴隶的孩子。幸亏父亲慧眼识珠,再加上他自己的禀赋,使其荣膺“桂冠诗人”的称号。他写过一些自我剖析式的真诚的讽刺作品,也写过不少极为出色的抒情诗(既有轻快的,也有严肃的)。其谨慎细心的语言技艺尤为人所称道(**cūriōsa fēlīcitās**,斟酌后精妙的表达)。他将伊壁鸠鲁的 **carpe diem**(及时行乐)和斯多亚派的 **virtūs**(美德)结合在了一起,同时也倡导和实践 **aurea mediocritās**(中庸之道)。

李维(Titus Līvius,公元前 59 年—公元 17 年):奥古斯都的朋友,也是一位共和国和古老美德的赞美者。他写过一部具有史诗精神的里程碑式的《罗马史》,刻画了(在他看来)处于全盛时期的罗马帝国。

普洛佩提乌斯(Sextus Propertius,约公元前 50 年—公元 2 年):写过四卷富于浪漫色彩的哀歌体诗集,奥维德对其推崇备至。

奥维德(Pūblius Ovidius Nāsō,公元前 43 年—公元 17 年):写过许多有违奥古斯都初衷的爱情诗。今天,奥维德主要以《变形记》(*Metamorphōsēs*)的作者而著称,这是一部以六音步诗行写成的长篇神话著作,是后世诗人汲取养料的宝库。就像蒲柏那样,奥维德也能“绮丽诗章,脱口而出”(lisped in numbers, for the numbers came)[1]。

三、白银时代(公元 14 年—约公元 138 年)

在白银时代涌现出了优秀的文学作品,但也不乏虚情假意和矫揉造作之作。不少人热衷于追求效果,对铭辞趋之若鹜,这些特征往往暗示出对文学感受和能力的一种不自信——因此才有了“黄金”与“白银”的传统区分(尽管这一区分经常被过分夸大)。在这一时期,几位皇帝的性情也或多或少对当时的文学产生了影响。

塞内卡(Lūcius Annaeus Seneca,公元前 4 年—公元 65 年):来自西班牙的斯多亚派哲学家,担任过尼禄的老师。他写过许多富有斯多亚精神的高贵的道德短论,写过悲剧(虽然因过多的修辞和矫揉造作而受人诟病,但对欧洲近代早期的戏剧产生了极大影响),还写过《变瓜记》(*Apocolocyntōsis*),这是一部机智诙谐(尽管有时显得残忍)的诗文间杂的讽刺作品,描写的是皇帝克劳狄乌斯死后

[1] 这是 18 世纪英国诗人蒲柏(Alexander Pope)16 岁时写下的诗句(*Epistle to Dr. Arbuthnot*, line 128)。字面意思是“我咬舌吟出诗节,因为诗节已经产生”。它暗指诗的韵律对于他来说犹如天然的本能。其精确含义很难用汉语表达,这里姑且译为“绮丽诗章,脱口而出”。——译者注

不成神反成南瓜。

佩特罗尼乌斯(确切的身份和生卒年份不详,可能是卒于公元65年的Titus Petrōnius Arbiter):尼禄的廷臣和执政官。著有《萨蒂利孔》(*Satyricon*),它类似于一部诗文间杂的讽刺小说，最出名的就是对暴发户和获释奴隶特里马尔基奥(Trimalchio)穷奢极欲的宴会的描写。

昆体良(Mārcus Fabius Quīntiliānus,约公元35年—公元95年):教育家,著有《演说术原理》(*Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria*)。这是一部著名的教育学著作,讨论了一个人要想做演说家应当受怎样的教育。他非常推崇西塞罗的风格,对他那个时代修辞手法的泛滥批判有加。

马提雅尔(Mārcus Valerius Mārtiālis,公元45年—公元104年):以其1500多首铭辞以及惯用的讽刺手法而著称。正如他本人所说,他的作品也许不是伟大的文学,但的确受人喜爱。

小普林尼(Gāius Plīnius Caecilius Secundus,约公元62年—公元113年):认真尽责的公众人物,作品以《书信集》(*Epistulae*)最为著名,这些书信反映了帝国时期罗马人生活的光明面和阴暗面。

塔西佗(Pūblius Cornēlius Tacitus,公元55年—公元117年):拥护元老院的历史学家,以讽刺性的笔调记述了从奥古斯都去世到图密善(Domitian)去世这一时期的历史。

尤维纳利斯(Decimus Iūnius Iuvenālis,约公元55年—公元127年之后):非常注重修辞的讽刺诗人。他无情地讽刺了那个时代的罪恶,认为人唯一能够祈望的就是**mēns sāna in corpore sānō**(健全身体中的健全心灵)。他的讽刺作品启发塞缪尔·约翰逊[1]博士写出了诗集《伦敦》(*London*)和《人类欲求之虚妄》(*Vanity of Human Wishes*),还造就了刻薄的"尤维纳利斯式"讽刺手法。

古风时期

从公元2世纪中叶到2世纪末或可看成一段古风时期(archaizing period),在这段时间里逐渐发展出了一种对于早期拉丁语词汇和风格的喜好,通俗拉丁语中的用词不断得到吸纳。这一时期的典型作家有:修辞学家弗隆托(Fronto),以札记《阿提卡之夜》(*Noctēs Atticae*)而闻名的革利乌斯(Aulus Gellius)。.

四、教父时期(公元2世纪末—公元5世纪)

这一时期之所以被称作"教父时期",是因为此间的重要著作多出自基督教教父之手,比如德尔图良(Tertullian)、西普里安(Cyprian)、拉克坦修(Lactantius)、哲

---

[1] 塞缪尔·约翰逊(Samuel Johnson,1709—1784),英国著名诗人、散文家、文学批评家、词汇学家,编纂了世界上第一部英文字典。——译者注

罗姆(Jerome)、安布罗斯(Ambrose)和奥古斯丁(Augustine)等人。他们均受过良好的教育,对优秀的古典作家了如指掌,对其作品往往珍爱有加。在为教会服务之前,他们中的许多人都做过教师或律师。开始时,古典风格主要用来影响异教徒,但是渐渐地,随着基督教福音向普通民众(**vulgus**)的传播越来越受到重视,通俗拉丁语很自然地再度复兴,[1] 对这一时期的文学作品产生了重要影响。圣哲罗姆的书信仍是西塞罗式的,但在拉丁文《圣经》(*Vulgate*,公元 383 年—公元 405 年)中,他却使用了民众的语言。类似地,圣奥古斯丁虽然热爱并教授过罗马古典作品,但他也乐于使用任何可能通达民众(**ad ūsum vulgī**)的习语,并且说,即使野蛮人征服了罗马也没关系,只要他们是基督徒就可以。

五、中世纪(公元 6 世纪—公元 14 世纪)

在中世纪的前三个世纪里,通俗拉丁语迅速发生改变,[2] 以致很难说还能称得上是拉丁语。根据地域的不同,它变成了某种罗曼语。

而另一方面,作为或多或少受到拉丁文《圣经》等因素影响的书面语,拉丁语在整个中世纪仍然是教会和思想界使用的活语言。虽然无论是在特征上还是在性质上,拉丁语都发生了巨大改变,但它仍然是一门国际性的语言。因此中世纪拉丁语文学有时被称为"欧洲文学",而不是早先的"罗马文学"。许多生动的文学作品(宗教著作、传奇故事、奇文轶事、戏剧诗歌)都是以中世纪拉丁语写成的。比如本书的第二十九课摘录了公元 7 世纪作家塞维利亚的伊西多尔(Isidore of Seville)的段落,"古文选编"也收入了其他作家的作品。直到 14 世纪初,但丁(Dante)还用拉丁语写出了政治专论《论君主制》(*Dē Monarchiā*)以及《论俗语》(*Dē Vulgārī Ēloquentiā*),他试图通过后一著作来证明,自己把意大利民族语言用于文学是正当的。在拉丁语田园诗中,但丁并不接受放弃民族语言(他正在用这种语言写作《神曲》)而改用拉丁语进行创作的劝诫。这些事实都证明了拉丁语强大的生命力。[3]

六、文艺复兴(约公元 15 世纪)至今

随着彼得拉克(Petrarch)重新激发了对西塞罗的赞美,中世纪拉丁语开始成为文艺复兴学者嘲弄的对象,他们特别把西塞罗当作完美的典范。虽然这种朝

---

[1] 我们已经提到,通俗拉丁语是普通民众的语言,它发端于早期。事实上,普劳图斯的语言与这种后来的通俗拉丁语有颇多共同之处。我们知道,在整个黄金时代和白银时代,通俗拉丁语都是民众的方言口语,但却一直没有成为书面语和有教养者的谈话用语。

[2] 比如大量变格词尾慢慢失去,介词的使用渐渐增多,助动词得到广泛使用,虚拟式和直陈式使用混乱。

[3] 与此同时,鉴于但丁等人在使用本国语方面大获成功,必须承认,拉丁语正在开始打一场无望取胜之仗。

着优雅的西塞罗用语的回归乃因巨大的热情而生，而且成绩斐然，但这是一种人为的运动，与中世纪的那种自发的、活生生的语言相比，它使得拉丁语变得日趋僵化和做作。不过直到近代，拉丁语仍被广泛使用，[1] 教会拉丁语依旧是罗马天主教会和神学院的语言（尽管在20世纪60年代初不再被强调）。不仅如此，古代拉丁希腊文学中纯正的人文主义精神被重新发现，古典作品中的文学修养和形式重新受到重视，所有这些都对新时期的本族文学有莫大的益处。

这里仅就拉丁语文学从公元3世纪的连续发展作了浮光掠影的介绍，旨在简单地勾勒出一个轮廓。拉丁语文学不仅有着漫长而可敬的历史，而且也激发、砥砺和丰富着包括英语文学在内的西方文学，其程度之深也许超出了我们的想象。此外，鉴于拉丁语本身广泛而深刻的影响，我们不得不说，拉丁语仅仅在一种技术意义上死去了。哪怕掌握有限的拉丁语知识，也会使英语和罗曼语语言文学的研究者和爱好者受益匪浅。

字母表和发音

我们现在所看到的字母已经有数百年的历史。它们可以追溯到公元9世纪法国图尔圣马丁修道院的修士们沉稳而清晰的加洛林手书体，加洛林文艺复兴使之得以完善，后来通过11、12世纪的精美手稿以及15世纪最古老的意大利印本 [2] 流传下来。这些修士根据隽秀而清丽的半安色尔字体发展出了小写字母，而半安色尔字体又源于罗马帝国时期的安色尔字体 [3] 和方块大写字。今天，我们习惯于将罗马字母与希腊字母区分开来，但事实上，罗马人从伊特鲁里亚人那里学会了书写，而伊特鲁里亚人又是从公元前8世纪定居于那不勒斯附近的希腊移民那里学会了书写。因此，罗马字母实际上只是希腊字母的一种形式。但在这方面，希腊人自己也受惠于他人，因为此前，他们的字母是从闪米特人的一支即腓尼基人那里得到的。[4] 而再往前追溯，早期闪米特人似乎又受到了埃及象形文字的启发。字母形式的这一历史再次表明我们在何种程度上受惠于古代。

---

[1] 比如16世纪的伊拉斯谟（Erasmus）和莫尔（Thomas More），17世纪的弥尔顿、培根（Francis Bacon）和牛顿（Issac Newton），以及后来的植物学家、古典学者和诗人。

[2] 这些印本被称为“摇篮刊本”（incunabula），因为它们都制作于印刷术的“摇篮时代”（cradle days）。后人称其为“罗马字体”，以区别于北欧所使用的“黑花体字”（与德国字体进行比较）。意大利印刷工根据当时的一些最为精致的手稿设计出了罗马字体，抄写这些手稿都是受命于文艺复兴时期那些唯美而苛刻的富有主顾。为了取悦其主顾，手稿抄写员们苦苦寻觅着最诱人的手稿，终于，他们在最好的加洛林印本手稿中找到了它。

[3] 安色尔字体与方块大写字类似，只是有角字母的尖角变圆了，所以可以书写得更快（见本书第78页图）。相关说明可参见《韦伯斯特大学词典》中的 *uncial* 词条。

[4] 22个腓尼基字母只代表辅音。在用这些字母表示元音方面，希腊人显示出了自己的原创性。



Portrait of a young woman with stilus and tabella, fresco from Pompeii
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

罗马字母与我们的字母非常相似，只是其中缺少字母 **j** 和 **w**，而且字母 **v** 最初既相当于元音 **u**，也相当于辅音 **w**。[1] 虽然直到公元 2 世纪，圆底的 **u** 的形式才出现，但是为了方便，现在的版本大多 **v** 和 **u** 并用。字母 **k** 比较罕用，仅在少数几个词中出现于 **a** 之前。到了罗马共和国晚期，字母 **y**[2] 和 **z** 开始被用于拼写源

[1] 请注意，我们的字母 **w** 其实就是两个 **v** 形的 **u** 的合写。

[2] **y** 实际上是希腊语的第二十个字母 **u**——upsilon (Y)，这是一个发音介于 **u** 和 **i** 之间的元音，就像法语中的 **u**。

于希腊的词。

下列各表列出了拉丁语的大致读音，以及古典时期的罗马人是如何用这些字母来表示这些读音的（中世纪拉丁语和教会拉丁语的读音不尽相同）。

元音

拉丁语中元音的发音有长和短两种。长元音的持续时间一般是短元音的两倍（就像音乐中的二分音符之于四分音符），在本书中以长音符号标出（比如 ā），这也是大多数初级教程的体例；没有长音符号的元音就是短元音。应当把长音符号当作拼写的一部分来记忆，因为它所指示的发音区别往往对于含义极为关键（例如，**liber** 是名词，意为“书”，而 **līber** 则是形容词，意为“自由的”）。元音的发音大致如下：

长元音	短元音
ā 的发音如同在 *father* 中：**dās, cārā**	**a** 的发音如同在 *Dinah* 中：**dat, casa**
ē 的发音如同在 *they* 中：**mē, sēdēs**	**e** 的发音如同在 *pet* 中：**et, sed**
ī 的发音如同在 *machine* 中：**hīc, sīca**	**i** 的发音如同在 *pin* 中：**hic, sicca**
ō 的发音如同在 *clover* 中：**ōs, mōrēs**	**o** 的发音如同在 *orb, off* 中：**os, mora**
ū 的发音如同在 *rude* 中：**tū, sūmō**	**u** 的发音如同在 *put* 中：**tum, sum**

y 可长可短，发音如同在法语词 **tu** 或德语词 **über** 中

双元音

拉丁语有以下六个双元音，即两个元音的声音合为一个音节：

ae 的发音如同 *aisle* 中的 *ai*：**cārae, saepe**

au 的发音如同 *house* 中的 *ou*：**aut, laudō**

ei 的发音如同在 *reign* 中：**deinde**

eu 的发音如同拉丁语 **e+u**，要像单音节那样快速读出：**seu**。这个音在英语中并不存在，在拉丁语中也很少见。

oe 的发音如同 *oil* 中的 *oi*：**coepit, proelium**

ui 的发音如同拉丁语 **u + i**，要像一个单音节那样读出，就像西班牙语的 **muy**（或像英语的 *gooey*，像一个单音节那样快速读出）。这个双元音只见于 **huius, cuius, huic, cui, hui**。在其他地方，这两个字母要分开发音，比如 **fu–it, frūctu–ī**。

辅音

拉丁语辅音和英语辅音发音基本相同，只是有以下例外情况：

bs 和 **bt** 发 *ps* 和 *pt*（例如 **urbs, obtineō**）的音；在其他地方，拉丁语字母 **b** 和

我们的字母发音相同(例如 **bibēbant**)。

c 总是像在 *can* 中那样发硬音，而不要像在 *city* 中那样发软音：**cum, cīvis, facilis**。

g 总是像在 *get* 中那样发硬音，而不要像在 *gem* 中那样发软音：**glōria, gerō.** 当它位于 **n** 之前时，字母 **g** 相当于鼻化的 *ng* 音，就像在 *hangnail* 中那样：**magnus**。

h 是一个送气音，就像在英语中那样，只是在发音时没有那么刺耳：**hic, haec**。

i (也是一个元音) 用在词首元音之前时，通常充当辅音，发音为 *y*，就像在 *yes* 中那样(**iūstus** = yustus)；用在两个元音之间时起两个作用：既作为元音 *i* 与前一元音构成双元音，同时也作为辅音 *y*（**reiectus** = rei-yectus, **maior** = mai-yor, **cuius** = cui-yus)；在其他情况下通常是一个元音。这种所谓的"辅音性的"**i** 在英语派生词中一般以 *j* 出现(*j* 这个字母直到中世纪才被加入字母表中)：**maior** = *major*, **Iūlius** = *Julius*。

m 和在英语中一样发闭口音：**monet**。不过在某些情况下，元音之后的词尾 **m** 发音时双唇不闭合，从而造成它之前的元音的鼻音化：**tum, etiam**。

q 和英语中一样，后面总是跟着辅音性的 **u**，其组合发 *kw* 的音：**quid, quoque**。

r 发颤音；罗马人称它为 **littera canīna**（狗的字母)，因为它的声音会让人想起狗吠：**Rōma, cūrāre**。

s 总是像在 *see* 中那样发清音，而不是像在 *ease* 中那样发浊音：**sed, posuissēs, mīsistis**。

t 的发音如同 *tired* 中的 *t*，而不像 *nation* 中的 *sh*，或者 *mention* 中的 *ch*：**taciturnitās, nātiōnem, mentiōnem**。

v 的发音如同我们的 *w*: **vīvō = wīwō , vīnum = wīnum**。

x 的发音如同 *axle* 中的 *ks*，而不像 *exert* 中的 *gz*：**mixtum, exerceō**。

ch 相当于希腊语中的 *chi*，发音如同 *block head* 中的 *ckh*，而不像 *church* 中的 *ch*：**chorus, Archilochus**。

ph 相当于希腊语中的 *phi*，发音如同 *uphill* 中的 *ph*，而不像 *philosophy* 中的 *f*：**philosophia**。

th 相当于希腊语中的*theta*，发音如同 *hot house* 中的 *th*，而不像 *thin* 或 *the* 中的 *th*：**theātrum**。

罗马人非常恰当地将双辅音按照两个分开的辅音来发音，而我们往往将它们急促地读成单辅音。例如，拉丁词 **currant** 中的 **rr** 听起来就像是 *the cur ran* 中的两个 *r*(只不过在拉丁语中，每一个 **r** 都要发颤音)；**admittent** 中的 **tt** 听起

来就像是 *admit ten* 的两个 *t*。

音节

和英语一样，在拉丁语中，一个词的音节数等于它的元音和双元音的个数。

音节划分：在把一个词划分成各个音节时，

1. 两个临近的元音，或者一个元音和一个辅音，要分开：**dea, de–a; deae, de–ae**。
2. 两个元音之间的单辅音附属于第二个元音：**amīcus, a–mī–cus**。
3. 当两个元音之间有两个或多个辅音时，一般只有最后一个辅音从属于后面那个元音：**mittō, mit–tō; servāre, ser–vā–re; cōnsūmptus, cōn–sūmp–tus**。然而，一个塞音 **(p, b, t, d, c, g)** + 一个流音 **(l, r)** 通常算作单辅音，它们都从属于后面那个元音：[1]**patrem, pa–trem; castra, cas–tra.** 此外，**qu** 和送气音 **ch, ph, th** 也算作单辅音，它们在音节划分时不能分开：**architectus, ar–chi–tec–tus; loquācem, lo–quā–cem**。

音节音量[2]：如果一个音节中包含有长元音或双元音，那么该音节就是天然(by nature)为长；如果一个音节中包含有短元音，而且该元音后面跟着两个或多个辅音，[3]或者跟着 **x**（它是一个双元音，= *ks*），那么该音节就是凭借位置(by position)为长。在其他情况下，音节都是短的。这里的区别也很类似于二分音符与四分音符的区别。

天然为长的音节（以下划线标出）：**<u>lau</u>–<u>dō</u>, <u>Rō</u>–ma, a–<u>mī</u>–cus**

凭借位置为长的音节（以下划线标出）：**<u>ser</u>–vat, sa–pi–<u>en</u>–ti–a, <u>ax</u>–is** (= *ak–sis*)

带有各种长音节（无论以上二者之中的哪一种，以下划线标出）的例子：
<u>lau</u>–<u>dā</u>–te, mo–ne–ō, <u>sae</u>–pe, <u>cōn</u>–<u>ser</u>–<u>vā</u>–tis, pu–<u>el</u>–<u>lā</u>–rum

即使在英语中，音节也有这种时间音量，即一些音节要比另一些发音时间长（比如“enough”这个词，它的第一个音节很短，发音很干脆，而第二个音节则较长），但我们并不很关注这个现象。然而，这在拉丁语中却相当重要，理由至少有两个：首先，音节音量是决定拉丁语诗歌节奏的主要因素，这一点我们以后便会了解；其次，音节音量决定着一个词的主重音的位置，这对目前来说是更为重要

[1] 但在诗歌中，这两个辅音可以根据双辅音规则分开。

[2] 音量(quantity)，即元音或音节的长短。——译者注

[3] 但是不要忘了，一个塞音(**p, b, t, d, c, g**) + 一个流音(**l, r**)，以及 **qu** 和送气音 **ch, ph, th** 通常都算作单辅音，比如 **pa–trem, quo–que**。

的，下面我们将给出说明。

重音

和英语一样，在读拉丁词的时候，也要对一个音节（或多个音节，如果这个词较长的话）格外强调；在拉丁语中，这一主重音的位置（与英语不同）遵循着严格而简洁的规则：

1. 双音节词的重音总是落在第一个音节上：**sér–vo, saé–pe, ní–hil**。
2. 对于三音节词或多音节词的情况：①如果它的倒数第二个音节是长的，那么重音落在倒数第二个音节上(**ser–vā–re, cōn–sér–vat, for–tū–na**)；②否则，重音就落在倒数第三个音节上 (**mó–ne–ō, pā–tri–a, pe–cū–ni–a, vó–lu–cris**)。

由于这些重音规则十分严整，所以在写作拉丁语的时候，重音符号（与长音符号不同）通常并不标出；不过在本书中，"词形变化表"（变格和变位的例示）和每一课的词汇表中都标注了重音符号，以帮助纠正发音。

虽然在拉丁语课堂上，有时并不太强调听说训练和会话技能（这实在令人遗憾！），但"正确的"或至少是一致的发音对于掌握任何一门语言都是至关重要的。如果能够根据本篇导言所介绍的规则大声朗读拉丁词句，那么每当我们想起一个词时，我们也能在心里正确地"朗读"和拼写它。

别忘了，我们所学的拉丁语并不仅仅是一些需要默读的文本（事实上，罗马人自己几乎总是大声朗读的！），而是数百年来的一种口头语言——不仅著名的演说家、诗人和政治家，而且罗马的孩子们都在使用它，就像我们小时候学习母语一样。在每天的学习中，我们应当听说读写四种语言学习技巧并用；*一定要大声朗读词形变化表和词汇项，特别是要大声朗读你所碰到的每一个拉丁语句子或段落*；而且要带着理解去阅读，然后再试着翻译成英语。

第一课

动词；第一和第二变位法动词：现在时主动态的不定式、直陈式和命令式；翻译

动词

在一个句子中，描述主语活动或存在状态的动词（verb，源于拉丁语 **verbum**，*word*）可以说是最重要的，所以学习拉丁语最好从考察这一词类开始（和英语一样，其他词类还包括名词、代词、形容词、副词、介词、连词、感叹词等等）。

和英语一样，拉丁语动词也有以下五种特征：

人称（**persōna**, *person*）：主语，即从说话者的角度看，动作的执行者（或者在被动的情况下，动作的承受者）。第一人称：*I, we*；第二人称：*you*；第三人称：*he, she, it, they*。

数（**numerus**, *number*）：主语的数目，一个或多个。

时态（**tempus**, *tense*）：动作发生的时间。拉丁语有六种时态：现在时，将来时，未完成时，完成时（或现在完成时），将来完成时，过去完成时。

语气，式[1]（**modus**, *mood*）：指示动词动作或存在状态的方式。像英语一样，拉丁语也有直陈式[2]（陈述事实）和命令式[3]（发出命令），这两种语气我们在本课介绍；还有虚拟式[4]（主要描述假想的或可能的动作），我们将在第二十八课介绍。

语态（**vōx**, *voice*）：对于及物动词（可以带直接宾语的动词）而言，指示主语是执行动作（主动语态，以下简称"主动态"）还是承受动作（被动语态，以下简称"被动态"）。

---

[1] 除极个别情况外，以下均译为"式"。——译者注

[2] 亦称"陈述式"。——译者注

[3] 亦称"祈使式"。——译者注

[4] 亦称"假定式"。——译者注

变位

将一个动词进行变位(**coniugāre**, *join together*),就是根据人称、数、时态、语气、语态的不同列出动词的所有形式。比如英语动词 *to praise* 的现在时主动态直陈式变位就是:

	单数	复数
第一人称	I praise	we praise
第二人称	you praise	you praise
第三人称	he (she, it) praises	they praise

在这六种形式中,有五种形式的人称和数在英语中需要由代词 *I, you, we, they* 来确定。只有在第三人称单数的情况下,代词 *he*(*she, it*)才可以省略,因为借助动词的特殊词尾就可以表明,*praises* 是第三人称单数。

人称词尾

拉丁语可以通过"人称词尾"在所有六种形式中清楚地显示动词的人称、数和语态(英语则只能在第三人称单数中显示)。由于这些人称词尾经常会遇到,我们最好现在就将它们牢记于心。其主动态形式如下:

单数

第一人称	**–ō** 或**–m**,对应于 *I*
第二人称	**–s**,对应于 *you*
第三人称	**–t**,对应于 *he*,*she*,*it*

复数

第一人称	**–mus**,对应于 *we*
第二人称	**–tis**,对应于 *you*
第三人称	**–nt**,对应于 *they*

下一步就是要找到一个动词"词干",把这些词尾加上去。

现在时主动态不定式[1]和现在时词干

本书所使用的第一、第二变位法范例动词的现在时主动态不定式分别是:

laudāre,*to praise*　　　　monēre,*to advise*

我们看到,**–āre** 是第一变位法的特征,**–ēre** 是第二变位法的特征。

---

[1] 不定式(*infinitive*, **īnfīnītus**, **īnfīnītīvus**,*not limited*)只是给出了动词的基本观念;其形式虽然指示出了时态和语态,但不受人称和数的限制。

从不定式中去掉**-re**，便得到了"现在时词干"：

laudā-　　　　monē-

给这个现在时词干加上人称词尾（并稍作改动，后面会解释），我们就已经能够开始阅读或讲说拉丁语了。例如，**laudā-s**，*you praise*；**monē-mus**，*we advise*。

这样，我们就得到了一张词形变化表（paradigm）。"Paradigm"一词源于古希腊词 **paradeigma**，意为"样式"（*pattern*）、"例子"（*example*）。在本书的正文和附录中会经常用词形变化表来总结各种形式。当然，就像我们今天学习英语一样，古罗马人也是借助一些直接的方法，从父母那里或者从与他人的日常交往中来学习各种屈折变化形式的。然而，由于我们缺少这种自然的拉丁语环境，而且通常是在较晚时才开始学习拉丁语，时间不够充裕，所以尽管通过分析词形变化表来学习拉丁语有些死板和乏味，但一般认为，这是最有效的学习方法。

在记忆所有词形变化表时，一定要大声朗读它们，因为这将同时有助于视听。对一门语言进行听说，听它基本的发音和节奏，能够极大地帮助我们掌握这门语言。

Laudō 和 Moneō 的现在时主动态直陈式

单数

1.	laúdō, *I praise, am praising, do praise*	móneō, *I advise,* etc.
2.	laúdās, *you praise, are praising, do praise*	mónēs, *you advise,* etc.
3.	laúdat, *he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise*	mónet, *he (she, it) advises,* etc.

复数

1.	laudā́mus, *we praise, are praising, do praise*	monḗmus, *we advise,* etc.
2.	laudā́tis, *you praise, are praising, do praise*	monḗtis, *you advise,* etc.
3.	laúdant, *they praise, are praising, do praise*	mónent, *they advise,* etc.

请注意，拉丁语的现在时直陈式主动态形式只有这些，我们可以根据语境把它们翻译成一般时、进行时或强调句。例如，**mē laudant** 可以译成 *they praise me*，或 *they are praising me*，或 *they do praise me*。

词形变化表中的重音符号只是为了方便我们发音，它遵循导言中所介绍的严格的重音规则，在对拉丁语动词进行变位时不必将其包括进去（除非老师要求）。

但长音符号却不能省去，在记忆词形变化表或者对其他第一、第二变位法动词进行变位时，必须考虑它所指示的元音读音。请注意，在有些形式中，词干元音并不带有长音符号（如 **moneō**，**laudant**）。以下规则有助于解释这些看似任意的长音符号：

长元音通常会变短，如果该元音之后紧跟着另一个元音(因此是 **moneō**，而不是 ***monēō**[1])，或词末的**-m**，**-r**，**-t**(因此是 **laudat**，而不是 ***laudāt**)，或处于任何位置的 **nt** 或 **nd**(因此是 **laudant**)。

对于第一变位法或-**ā**-变位法动词（与第二变位法或-**ē**-变位法动词不同），词干元音不仅会变短，而且还会与词末的-**ō** 缩约，在第一人称单数中完全消失(所以是 **laudō**，而不是 ***laudāō**)。

现在时主动态命令式

命令式用于发出命令。单数命令式的形式与现在时词干相同，复数命令式(用于向两人或多人发出命令)则只需给现在时词干加上-**te**：

第二人称单数	laúdā, *praise!*	mónē, *advise!*
第二人称复数	laudā́te, *praise!*	monḗte, *advise!*

例如 **Monē mē!** *Advise me!* **Servāte mē!** *Save me!*

阅读和翻译拉丁语

以下简单规则将有助于翻译本课中的句子和阅读材料，后续课程还会提供别的帮助。首先，把每一个句子从头到尾朗读出来。要为了理解而朗读，同时考虑每一个单词的意思和整个句子的可能含义。在拉丁语句子中，动词往往出现在最后。请记住，如果动词词尾是第一或第二人称，那么主语就已经知道了(“我”，“我们”或“你们”)；如果动词是第三人称，那么就可能需要寻找一个能够作主语的名词(往往是这句话的第一个词)。主语—宾语—谓语(SOV)是常见的结构。现在，如果你已经记住了上面的词形变化表以及下面列出的词汇，并且对其中的某些动词做了变位练习，那么就请阅读和翻译本课结尾的句子和段落吧。**BONAM FORTŪNAM!**（祝你好运！）

词汇表

别忘了，在记忆词汇表时，一定要在学习单词含义的同时大声朗读出它们。请注意，就像英语动词那样，拉丁语动词也有几个“主要部分”(principal parts，拉丁语动词通常有四个，英语动词有三个)。必须记住它们，才能对动词进行所有形式的变位。下表中列出的动词的第一个主要部分是其第一人称单数的现在时主动态直陈式，第二个主要部分是现在时主动态不定式，其余部分的含义将在后续课程中解释。

---

[1] 此处以及本书中其他地方出现的星号是指，这种形式在古典拉丁语中实际上并不出现。

mē, pronoun, *me, myself*
quid, pronoun, *what* (quid pro quo)
níhil, noun, *nothing* (nihilism, annihilate)
nōn, adverb, *not*
saépe, adverb, *often*
sī, conjunction, *if*
ámō, amā́re, amā́vī, amā́tum, *to love, like;* **amā́bō tē,** idiom, *please* (lit., *I will love you*) (amatory, Amanda)
cṓgitō, cōgitā́re, cōgitā́vī, cōgitā́tum, *to think, ponder, consider, plan* (cogitate)
dḗbeō, dēḗre, dḗbuī, dḗbitum, *to owe; ought, must* (debt, debit, due, duty)
dō, dáre, dédī, dátum, *to give, offer* (date, data)
érrō, errā́re, errā́vī, errā́tum, *to wander; err, go astray, make a mistake, be mistaken* (erratic, errant, erroneous, error, aberration)
laúdō, laudā́re, laudā́vī, laudā́tum, *to praise* (laud, laudable, laudatory)
móneō, monḗre, mónuī, mónitum, *to remind, advise, warn* (admonish, admonition, monitor, monument, monster, premonition)
sálveō, salvḗre, *to be well, be in good health;* **sálvē, salvḗte,** *hello, greetings* (salvation, salver, salvage)
sérvō, servā́re, servā́vī, servā́tum, *to preserve, save, keep, guard* (observe, preserve, reserve, reservoir)
cōnsérvō, cōnservā́re, cōnservā́vī, cōnservā́tum (con-servō), a stronger form of **servō,** *to preserve, conserve, maintain* (conservative, conservation)
térreō, terrḗre, térruī, térritum, *to frighten, terrify* (terrible, terrific, terrify, terror, terrorist, deter)
váleō, valḗre, váluī, valitū́rum, *to be strong, have power; be well;* **válē (valḗte),** *good-bye, farewell* (valid, invalidate, prevail, prevalent, valedictory)
vídeō, vidḗre, vī́dī, vī́sum, *to see; observe, understand* (provide, evident, view, review, revise, revision, television)
vócō, vocā́re, vocā́vī, vocā́tum, *to call, summon* (vocation, advocate, vocabulary, convoke, evoke, invoke, provoke, revoke)

句子翻译[1]

1. Labor mē vocat. (**labor,** a noun, and one of hundreds of Latin words that come into English with their spelling unchanged; such words are often not defined in the chapters but may be found in the end Vocab., p. 470–90 below.)
2. Monē mē, amābō tē, sī errō.
3. Festīnā lentē. (a saying of Augustus.—**festīnō, festīnāre,** *to hasten, make haste.*—**lentē,** adv., *slowly.*)
4. Laudās mē; culpant mē. (**culpō, culpāre,** *to blame, censure.*)

[1] 所有这些句子都取自古罗马原作,但大多数句子不得不作一定修改,以配合第一课的学习内容。

5. Saepe peccāmus. (**peccō, peccāre,** *to sin.*)
6. Quid dēbēmus cōgitāre?
7. Cōnservāte mē!
8. Rūmor volat. (**volō, volāre,** *to fly.*)
9. Mē nōn amat.
10. Nihil mē terret.
11. Apollō mē saepe servat.
12. Salvēte!—quid vidētis? Nihil vidēmus.
13. Saepe nihil cōgitās.
14. Bis dās, sī cito dās. (**bis,** adv., *twice.*—**cito,** adv., *quickly.*—What do you suppose this ancient proverb actually means?)
15. Sī valēs, valeō. (A friendly sentiment with which Romans often commenced a letter.)
16. What does he see?
17. They are giving nothing.
18. You ought not to praise me.
19. If I err, he often warns me.
20. If you love me, save me, please!

THE POET HORACE CONTEMPLATES AN INVITATION

Maecēnās et Vergilius mē hodiē vocant. Quid cōgitāre dēbeō? Quid dēbeō respondēre? Sī errō, mē saepe monent et culpant; sī nōn errō, mē laudant. Quid hodiē cōgitāre dēbeō?

(For Horace, and the other authors cited in these chapter reading passages, review the Introd.; the patron Maecenas and the poet Virgil were both friends of Horace, and this brief passage is very freely adapted from autobiographical references in his poetry.—**et,** conj., *and.*—**hodiē,** adv., *today.*—**respondeō, respondēre,** *to reply, respond.*)



Roman portrait medal of Horace
Museo Nazionale Romano delle Terme
Rome, Italy

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

（LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM — ET ŪTILIS）

Salvēte！在本书中，每一课的结尾都会有一些拉丁语的趣闻花絮，希望能够给你带来乐趣和启迪！（顺便指出，**Gaudium** 是拉丁语名词，意为 *joy* 或 *fun*，**ūtilis** 则是形容词，意为 *useful*）。我们"第一天"的拉丁语对话是：

Salvē, discipula or **discipule!** *Hello, student!*（**–a/–e** 分别指女生和男生）

Salvēte, discipulae et discipulī! *Hello, students!*（女生复数和男生复数）

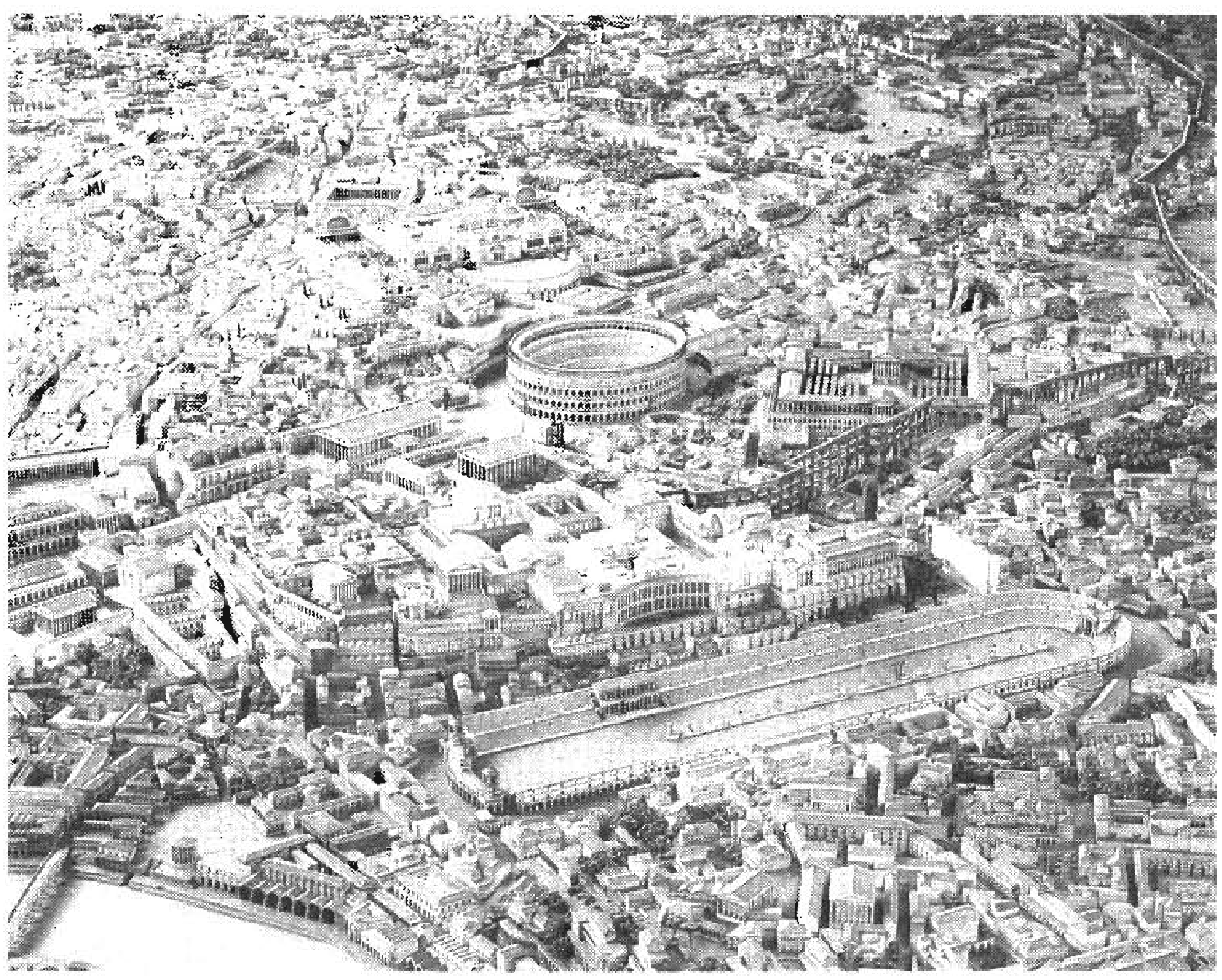
Salvē, magister or **magistra!** *Greetings, teacher!*（男老师或女老师）

Valēte, discipulī et discipulae! Valē, magister (magistra)! *Good-bye, students..., etc.*

Quid est nōmen tibi? *What's your name?*

Nōmen mihi est "Mark". *My name is Mark.*（或者取一个拉丁语名字：**nōmen mihi est "Mārcus."**）

有许多拉丁词原封不动地进入了英语，前面"古代名言"句 1 中的 **labor** 只是其中一个，句 8 中的 **rūmor** 和词汇表中的 **videō** 也是。然而，**amō** 的意思并不是"bullets"，**amat** 的意思也不是"a small rug"，所以要谨防闹出……**iocī terribilēs**（*terrible jokes*）：**valēte！**



Model of Rome in the 4th century A.D.
Museo della Civilta Romana, Rome, Italy

第二课

名词和格;第一变格法;形容词的一致;句法

名词和格

就像动词有各种屈折变化或词尾来表明它的语法意义一样，名词（源于 **nōmen**, *name*）也有各种词尾来显示它在句中是作主语还是作动词宾语,是否表示属有关系等等。名词的各种屈折形式称为“格”(cases),它的常见用法和含义见下。在后续课程中,我们还会碰到其他几种格,所有这些都必须能够辨识出来。建议从现在开始为每种格都列出一张表,记下它们的定义和例子。为了把这一点说得更清楚,请看以下几个英语句子,[1] 它们将在本课后面的内容中被译成拉丁语以作进一步分析。

1. The poet is giving the girl large roses (*or* is giving large roses to the girl).
2. The girls are giving the poet's roses to the sailors.
3. Without money the girls' country (*or* the country of the girls) is not strong.

主格 (Nominative Case)

在通常情况下,罗马人用主格来指示一个限定动词[2]的主语,类似于句 1 中的 *poet*,句 2 中的 *girls*。

---

[1] 这些句子都没有超出第一、二课的范围,所以当它们被译成拉丁语时很容易理解。

[2] “限定动词”(finite verb)是动词的一种形式,它在时间上受时态的限制,同时在许多语言中表现出人称和数的一致关系。比如在英语中，动词 be 的限定形式为 am, is, are, was , were。——译者注

属格[1] (Genitive Case)

当用一个名词来修饰[2]另一个名词时，罗马人把修饰名词写成属格形式，类似于句 2 中的 *poet's* 和句 3 中的 *girl's*。属格通常表示属有关系，虽然除此之外还有其他一些用法，但属格的意思一般都可以用介词 *of* 来翻译。属格的拉丁语名词通常位于它所修饰的名词之后。

与格 (Dative Case)

罗马人用与格来表示间接受到动词动作影响的人或事物，类似于句 1 中的 *girl*(*to the girl*)和句 2 中的 *to the sailors*。这两个名词都是间接宾语，这是与格最常见的用法。在大多数情况下，与格的含义可以通过把 *to* 或 *for* 与名词连用来确定。

宾格[3] (Accusative Case)

罗马人用宾格来表示动词动作的直接宾语，即受到动词动作直接影响的人或事物。它也可以用作某些介词[4](例如 **ad**, *to*; **in**, *into*; **post**, *after, behind*)的宾语。在句 1 和句 2 中，*roses* 便是 *is* (*are*) *giving* 的直接宾语。

夺格[5] (Ablative Case)

夺格有时又称状语(adverbial[6])格，罗马人在用下述观念修饰或限制动词时会使用夺格：手段(或工具)、施事者、伴随、方式、地点、时间。罗马人有时把夺格与介词连用，有时不连用。翻译这个复杂的格没有什么简单规则可循。不过，如果有拉丁语介词(**ab**, *by, from*; **cum**, *with*; **dē** 和 **ex**, *from*; **in**, *in, on*)出现，问题就不大。一般而言，我们总可以把夺格与 *by, with, from, in, on, at* 等英语介词联系起来。[7] 更复杂的夺格用法将在后续课程中陆续讲述。

---

[1] 亦称"所有格"、"生格"。——译者注

[2] "修饰"(modify)源于拉丁词 **modus**，其含义是"限制"，意为用一个词来限制另一个词。例如，句 2 中的 *roses* 给出的是一种一般观念，而加入 *poet's* 就修饰或限制了 *roses*，也就是说，作者希望表达的是一些特定的 *roses*。如果加入 *red* 一词，则又会进一步地修饰或限制 *roses*，因为它排除了白色、黄色等其他颜色的 *roses*。

[3] 亦称"受格"、"对格"。——译者注

[4] "介词"(preposition)是指被置于名词或代词之前(**prae–positus**, 前–置)的词，表示这个名词或代词与句中另外一个词的关系，这个名词或代词即为"介词宾语"。介词短语可以起形容词("a man *of wisdom*")或副词("he came *from Rome*")的作用。

[5] 亦称"离格"。——译者注

[6] 拉丁语 **ad verbum** 意为 *to* 或 *near the verb*。副词(adverb)修饰动词、形容词或另一个副词。

[7] 例如，**pecūniā**, *by* 或 *with money*; **ab puellā**, *by* 或 *from the girl*; **cum puellā**, *with the girl*; **cum īrā**, *with anger, angrily*; **ab**(**dē, ex**) **patriā**, *from the fatherland*; **in patriā**, *in the fatherland*; **in mēnsā**, *on the table*; **ūnā hōrā**, *in one hour*。

呼格 (Vocative Case)

罗马人用呼格(有时与感叹词[1] **Ō** 连用)来直接呼唤(**vocāre**, *to call*)某人或某物。例如,(**Ō**)**Caesar**,(*O*)*Caesar*;**Ō fortūna**,*O fortune*。在现代的标点符号中,呼语(或直接称呼的名词)用逗号与句中其余部分隔开。除了第三课中将要学到的一个主要例外,呼格的形式与主格相同,所以通常不列入词形变化表。

第一变格法[2]——名词与形容词

将名词——或形容词——的每一个格都列出来,称为"变格"。就像通过给动词词干(stem)加词尾来对动词进行变位一样,我们也可以通过给"词根"(base)加词尾来对名词和形容词进行变格。在词汇表词条中列出的是名词的单数主格和单数属格形式(必须牢记),词根可以通过去掉属格词尾来得到。形容词的情况与此类似,我们将在第三课和第四课中介绍。下表列出了名词/形容词短语 **porta magna**(*the large gate*)的变格情况:

词根	**porta,** *gate* **port-**	**magna,** *large* **magn-**		词尾
单数				
主格	pórta	mágna	*the (a)*[3] *large gate*	**-a**
属格	pórtae	mágnae	*of the large gate*	**-ae**
与格	pórtae	mágnae	*to/for the large gate*	**-ae**
宾格	pórtam	mágnam	*the large gate*	**-am**
夺格	pórtā	mágnā	*by/with/from,* etc., *the large gate*	**-ā**
呼格	pórta	mágna	*O large gates*	**-a**
复数				
主格	pórtae	mágnae	*the large gates* or *large gates*	**-ae**
属格	portā́rum	magnā́rum	*of the large gates*	**-ārum**
与格	pórtīs	mágnīs	*to/for the large gates*	**-īs**
宾格	pórtās	mágnās	*the large gates*	**-ās**
夺格	pórtīs	mágnīs	*by/with/from,* etc., *the large gates*	**-īs**
呼格	pórtae	mágnae	*O large gates*	**-ae**

[1] 感叹词(interjection)源于拉丁语 **interiectiō**,字面意思是"把某种东西扔进",即与句子的其余部分没有句法上的联系。

[2] 变格(declension)与动词 **dē-clīnāre**, *to lean away from* 有关。古代语法家的想法是,其他格都偏离于主格,也都来源于主格。

[3] 在古典拉丁语中,由于没有什么词能够精确对应于我们的定冠词 *the* 或不定冠词 *a*,所以 **porta** 既可以翻译成 *gate*,也可以翻译成 *the gate* 或 *a gate*。

第一变格法名词的性 = 阴性

拉丁语区分了三种性：阳性、阴性和中性。那些指示雄性事物的拉丁语名词自然是阳性的，指示雌性事物的名词是阴性的，但大多数名词的性却是语法概念，而不是自然概念，所以名词的性必须当作词条的一部分死记下来。

第一变格法名词通常是阴性的，比如 **puella**, *girl*; **rosa**, *rose*; **pecūnia**, *money*; **patria**, *country*。有极少数第一变格法名词指示这样一些人，他们从事着罗马人认为应当由男人从事的职业，这些名词也是阳性的，比如**poēta**, *poet*; **nauta**, *sailor*; **agricola**, *farmer*（本书中没有涉及的这类名词还有：**aurīga**, *charioteer*; **incola**, *inhabitant*; **pīrāta**, *pirate*）。

在本书中，如果符合一般规则，名词的性将不再特别标注阳性(m.)、阴性(f.)或中性(n.)。

形容词的一致

形容词通常与名词连用，在大小、颜色、质地、特征等方面修饰或限制名词。与名词一样，形容词也需要变格。所以很自然地，形容词要在性、数、格上与名词保持一致（修饰多个名词的形容词通常与距它最近的名词的性保持一致，虽然有时阳性优先）。形容词（**adiectum**, *set next to, added*）是指*被加到*名词上的词。正如其拉丁语词根所暗示的，形容词通常要紧靠名词（诗歌中除外，那里的词序要自由得多）。在大多数情况下，形容词位于名词之后，这是一种逻辑上的安排，因为一般来说，被命名的人或物要比属性更为重要。指示大小或数目的形容词属于例外，它们和指示词（**hic**, *this*; **ille**, *that*）一样，通常会前置，说话者或作者希望强调的形容词也是如此。

句法

希腊语动词 **syntattein** 意为"排列"，特指将军队排成有秩序的队列。类似地，在语法术语中，"句法"(syntax)是指根据语词在一个句子中所起的作用对它们进行有秩序的排列。要解释一个给定名词或形容词的句法，就应当说明它的形式，它最从属于哪个词，以及为什么会有这样的形式（即它在句中的语法使用或功能）。前面给出的例句（这里都译成了拉丁语）提供了一些例子。我们由主语和动词词尾可以注意到这样一条规则，即*动词必须在人称和数上与它的主语保持一致*；此外，像**-ae** 这样的名词词尾有可能表示多种格，这时词序和语境会为我们理解句义提供必要的线索（于是 **puellae** 是句 1 中的间接宾语，是句 2 中的主语）。

1. Poēta puellae magnās rosās dat.
2. Puellae nautīs rosās poētae dant.
3. Patria puellārum sine pecūniā nōn valet.

其中一些词的句法可以方便地表述如下：

词	形式	从属	理由
句 1			
Poēta	单数主格	dat	主语
Puellae	单数与格	dat	间接宾语
magnās	复数宾格	rosās	修饰名词并与之一致
句 2			
Puellae	复数主格	dant	主语
nautīs	复数与格	dant	间接宾语
rosās	复数宾格	dant	直接宾语
poētae	单数属格	rosās	属有
句 3			
pecūniā	单数夺格	sine	介词宾语

试着解释一下这些句子中所有名词和形容词的句法，然后阅读下面的段落。

词汇表

fā́ma, fā́mae, f., *rumor, report; fame, reputation* (famous, defame, infamy)
fṓrma, fṓrmae, f., *form, shape; beauty* (formal, format, formula, formless, deform, inform, etc.; but not formic, formidable)
fortū́na, fortū́nae, f., *fortune, luck* (fortunate, unfortunate)
ī́ra, ī́rae, f., *ire, anger* (irate, irascible; but not irritate)
naúta, naútae, m., *sailor* (nautical)
pátria, pátriae, f., *fatherland, native land, (one's) country* (expatriate, repatriate)
pecū́nia, -ae,[1] f., *money* (pecuniary, impecunious; cp. peculation)
philosóphia, -ae, f. (Greek **philosophia,** *love of wisdom*), *philosophy*
poéna, -ae, f., *penalty, punishment;* **poénās dáre,** idiom, *to pay the penalty* (penal, penalize, penalty, pain, subpoena)
poḗta, -ae, m., *poet* (poetry)
pórta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance* (portal, portico, porch, porthole)
puélla, -ae, f., *girl*
rósa, -ae, f., *rose* (rosary, roseate, rosette)
senténtia, -ae, f., *feeling, thought, opinion, vote, sentence* (sententious,

---

[1] **pecūnia, –ae = pecūnia, pecūniae**；这种缩略形式今后将用于所有规则的第一变格法名词。

sentencing)
vī́ta, -ae, f., *life; mode of life* (vital, vitals, vitality, vitamin, vitalize, devitalize, revitalize)
antī́qua, -ae, adjective,[1] *ancient, old-time* (antique, antiquities, antiquated, antiquarian)
mágna, -ae, adj., *large, great; important* (magnify, magnificent, magnate, magnitude, magnanimous)
méa, -ae, adj., *my*
múlta, -ae, adj., *much, many* (multitude, multiply, multiple; multi-, a prefix as in multimillionaire)
túa, -ae, adj., *your,* used when speaking to only one person
et, conjunction, *and; even;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and*
sed, conj., *but*
Ō, interjection, *O!, Oh!,* commonly used with the vocative
síne, preposition + abl., *without* (sinecure, sans)
est, *is*

古代名言[2]

1. Salvē, Ō patria! (Plautus.)
2. Fāma et sententia volant. (Virgil.—**volāre,** *to fly, move quickly.*)
3. Dā veniam puellae, amābō tē. (Terence.—**venia, -ae,** *favor, pardon.*)
4. Clēmentia tua multās vītās servat. (Cicero.—**clēmentia, -ae,** *clemency.*)
5. Multam pecūniam dēportat. (Cicero.—**dēportāre,** *to carry away.*)
6. Fortūnam et vītam antīquae patriae saepe laudās sed recūsās. (Horace.—**recūsāre,** *to refuse, reject.*)
7. Mē vītāre turbam iubēs. (*Seneca.—**vītāre,** *to avoid;* do not confuse this verb with the noun **vīta.**—**turba, -ae,** *crowd, multitude.*—**iubēre,** *to order.*)
8. Mē philosophiae dō. (Seneca.)
9. Philosophia est ars vītae. (*Cicero.—**ars,** nom. sg., *art.*)
10. Sānam fōrmam vītae cōnservāte. (Seneca.—**sāna, -ae,** adj., *sound, sane.*)
11. Immodica īra creat īnsāniam. (Seneca.—**immodica, -ae,** adj., *immoderate, excessive.*—**creāre,** *to create.*—**īnsānia, -ae,** *unsoundness, in-*

---

[1] 这里给出的是形容词的主格和属格形式,后者的缩略形式同第一变格法名词。我们在下面两课还会学到形容词的阳性和中性形式,在那之后,形容词词条将只给出三种性的主格词尾(例如第四课词汇表中的 **bonus, -a, -um**)。

[2] 这些句子都是古罗马人的原话,所以每一句古代拉丁语名言的作者都会注明。作者名字之前的星号表示该句是逐字引用。没有星号表示对原句作了修改,以适应当前学过的有限的拉丁语知识,但并没有改变这位古代作家的思想和表述。如果对它的上下文有兴趣,并且愿意作进一步阅读,可以参见书末的“古代名言出处”,那里标明了每一句话的原始出处。

sanity.)

12. Quid cōgitās?—dēbēmus īram vītāre. (Seneca.)
13. Nūlla avāritia sine poenā est. (*Seneca.—**nūlla, -ae,** adj., *no.*—**avāritia, -ae,** *avarice.*)
14. Mē saevīs catēnīs onerat. (Horace.—**saeva, -ae,** adj., *cruel.*—**catēna, -ae,** *chain.*—**onerāre,** *to load, oppress.*)
15. Rotam fortūnae nōn timent. (Cicero—**rota, -ae,** *wheel.*—**timēre,** *to fear.*)
16. The girls save the poet's life.
17. Without philosophy we often go astray and pay the penalty.
18. If your land is strong, nothing terrifies the sailors and you ought to praise your great fortune.
19. We often see the penalty of anger.
20. The ancient gate is large.

CATULLUS BIDS HIS GIRLFRIEND FAREWELL

Puella mea mē nōn amat. Valē, puella! Catullus obdūrat: poēta puellam nōn amat, fōrmam puellae nōn laudat, puellae rosās nōn dat, et puellam nōn bāsiat! Īra mea est magna! Obdūrō, mea puella—sed sine tē nōn valeō.

(Catullus 8; prose adaptation. For this 1st cen. B.C. poet, see the Introd., and for unadapted excerpts from the original poem, see Ch. 19.—Note the poet's shift from first person, to third, and back to first; what is the intended emotional effect?—**obdūrāre,** *to be firm, tough.*—**bāsiāre,** *to kiss.*—**tē,** *you.*)

词源点滴

"词源(学)"(etymology)一词来自希腊词 **etymos**, *true, real* 以及 **logos**, *word, meaning*。因此,一个词的词源追溯该词的来源,显示其原初含义。在"词源点滴"中,我们将会介绍词汇表派生词中没有包括的词项。不过,每一课都包含有许多这样的内容,要想完全涵盖是不可能的。

Pecūnia 与 **pecus**, *cattle* 相关, 就像英语的 *fee* 与德语的 **Vieh**, *cattle* 相关一样。

Fortūna 源于 **fors**, *chance, accident*。

根据句子中的拉丁词,解释下面英语词的含义。如果需要,可以查阅一本好的字典。《韦伯斯特新世界词典》(*Webster's New World Dictionary*)和《美国传统辞典》(*American Heritage Dictionary*)特别有助于了解词源。

volatile (2)	tenet (10)	onerous (14)
venial (3)	creature (11)	rotary, rotate (15)
turbulent (7)	nullify (13)	obdurate ("Catullus")
insane (10)	concatenation (14)	

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae！根据词汇表，**sub rosā** 地做某事就是秘密地做某事（在古代，玫瑰是秘密的象征）；**aqua vītae**，字面意思是 *the water of life*，这是一个古老的拉丁语短语，指"威士忌酒"；"sinecure"源于 **sine** + **cūra**（*care*），意指在很大程度上没有责任或"没有任务"的部门或职位。

以下是另一些拉丁语会话：

Quid agis hodiē? *How are you today?*

Optimē！ *Great!*

Pessimē！ *Terrible!*

Bene！ *Good!*

Satis bene. *So-so* 或 *Okay.*

Nōn bene. *Not well.*

Et tū? *And you?*

Discipulae et discipulī, valēte!

第三课

第二变格法：阳性名词与形容词；同位语；词序

第二变格法

第二变格法也遵从第一变格法的"词根+词尾"规则。不过，除了复数与格和复数夺格，第二变格法的词尾均与第一变格法不同。第二变格法名词通常为阳性或中性，本课介绍阳性名词，中性名词将在第四课介绍。大多数第二变格法阳性名词的单数主格词尾都是**-us**，但也有少数以**-er** 结尾(在下一课中我们将会看到，第二变格法中性名词以**-um** 结尾)。

以-us 结尾的阳性

词根	**amīcus,** *friend* **amīc-**	**magnus,** *great* **magn-**		词尾
单数				
主格	amī́cus	mágnus	*a/the great friend*	**-us**
属格	amī́cī	mágnī	*of a great friend*	**-ī**
与格	amī́cō	mágnō	*to/for a great friend*	**-ō**
宾格	amī́cum	mágnum	*a great friend*	**-um**
夺格	amī́cō	mágnō	*by/with/from a great friend*	**-ō**
呼格	amī́ce	mágne	*O great friend*	**-e**
复数				
主格	amī́cī	mágnī	*great friends*	**-ī**
属格	amīcṓrum	magnṓrum	*of great friends*	**-ōrum**
与格	amī́cīs	mágnīs	*to/for great friends*	**-īs**
宾格	amī́cōs	mágnōs	*great friends*	**-ōs**
夺格	amī́cīs	mágnīs	*by/with/from great friends*	**-īs**
呼格	amī́cī	mágnī	*O great friends*	**-ī**

以-er 结尾的阳性

在以-er 结尾的第二变格法阳性名词中,有少数像 **puer** 这样的词在词根中保留**-e-**,而大多数像 **ager** 这样的词都要去掉**-e-**,因此,将属格作为整个词条的一部分来掌握非常重要(虽然"puerile"和"agriculture"等英语派生词也有助于我们记住词根)。**Vir**, **virī**, *man* 这一特殊的**-ir** 阳性名词也是如此。

词根	**puer**, *boy* **puer-**	**ager**, *field* **agr-**		词尾
单数				
主格	púer[2]	áger[2]	mágnus[3]	(none)
属格	púerī	ágrī	mágnī	**-ī**
与格	púerō	ágrō	mágnō	**-ō**
宾格	púerum	ágrum	mágnum	**-um**
夺格	púerō	ágrō	mágnō	**-ō**
呼格	púer	áger	mágne	(none)
复数				
主格	púerī	ágrī	mágnī	**-ī**
属格	puerṓrum	agrṓrum	magnṓrum	**-ōrum**
与格	púerīs	ágrīs	mágnīs	**-īs**
宾格	púerōs	ágrōs	mágnōs	**-ōs**
夺格	púerīs	ágrīs	mágnīs	**-īs**
呼格	púerī	ágrī	mágnī	**-ī**

关于格词尾的说明

我们注意到,某些第二变格法的词尾与第一变格法相同(如复数与格和复数夺格的词尾均为**-īs**),还有一些则类似(如单数宾格**-am/-um**,复数属格**-ārum/-ōrum**,复数宾格**-ās/-ōs**)。和第一变格法一样,某些第二变格法词尾也被用于不同的格(例如,**amīcī, amīcō** 和 **amīcīs** 可以分别表示哪些格?)。在这些情况下,词序和语境将为阅读理解和翻译提供重要帮助。

需要特别注意的是,只有在以**-us** 结尾的第二变格法名词和形容词的单数情况下,呼格的拼写才与主格不同。例如,单数是 **amīcus, amīce**,复数则是 **amīcī, amīcī**。以**-ius** 结尾的名词(如 **fīlius**,*son*;**Vergilius**,*Virgil*)以及形容词 **meus**,*my* 的单数呼格词尾就是一个**-ī**:**mī fīlī**,*my son*;**Ō Vergilī**,*O Virgil*。

---

[1] 请记住,这只是一种表示夺格的权宜之计。介词通常与夺格连用,特别是当名词指人的时候。在英语翻译时,几乎总要用到介词。

[2] 下划线是为了提请注意。

[3] 加入这个词是为了进行对比。请注意,**puer magnus**,*a big boy*;**Ō puer magne**,*O big boy*。

同位语

Gāium, fīlium meum, in agrō videō.

I see Gaius, my son, in the field.

在这句话中，**fīlium** 是 **Gāium** 的同位语。同位语是指一个名词“被置于另一个名词旁边”[1]，作为对它进行解释的等价词。处于同位关系的名词通常会在性、数、格上保持一致。同位语与它之前的名词往往用逗号隔开。

词序

在一个简单的拉丁语句子或从句中，典型的词序是：(1) 主语及其修饰语；(2)间接宾语；(3)直接宾语；(4)状语(副词或副词短语)；(5)动词。在正规作品中，动词之所以常常位于句子末尾，可能与罗马人喜好尾重句文体(periodic style)有关，这种文体试图使读者或听者处于悬而未决的状态，直到句中最后一个词出现。此外，形容词和属格名词通常跟在所修饰词的后面。不过，尽管这些规则应当牢记，但为了变化和强调，罗马人往往并不遵守这些规则。事实上，在像拉丁语这样的高度屈折的语言中，同语义相比，词序相对而言并不重要，因为屈折词尾可以指明句中词与词的相互关系。而在英语中，屈折变化相对而言要少得多，语义一般要依赖于更严格的词序约定。

例如，考察下列英语句子和四个拉丁语句子，尽管词序不同，但它们的意思是一样的。

(1) *The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.*

(2) Puer puellae bellae rosam dat.

(3) Bellae puellae puer rosam dat.

(4) Bellae puellae rosam dat puer.

(5) Rosam puer puellae bellae dat.

无论拉丁语句子的词序如何变化，它的意思都是一样的(尽管侧重点有所不同)。而且根据词尾，无论处于什么位置，**bellae** 都必须修饰 **puellae**。但是如果改变英语句子的词序，意思就会随之而改变：

(1) *The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.*

(2) *The pretty girl is giving the boy a rose.*

(3) *The girl is giving the boy a pretty rose.*

(4) *The girl is giving the pretty boy a rose.*

---

[1] 同位语(apposition)源于 **ad** (*to, near*) + **pōnō, positus** (*put*)。

(5) *The rose is giving the boy a pretty girl.*

所有这些句子使用的词都一样，但是根据英语词序的约定，每句话的意思都不同。而且，第 5 个英语句子是无意义的，而第 5 个拉丁语句子尽管词序与它一样，却是有意义的。

词汇表

áger, ágrī, m., *field, farm* (agrarian, agriculture, agronomy; cp. **agricola**)
agrícola, -ae, m., *farmer*
amī́ca, -ae, f., and **amī́cus, amī́cī,** m., *friend* (amicable, amiable, amity; cp. **amō**)
fḗmina, -ae, f., *woman* (female, feminine, femininity)
fī́lia, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **fīliā́bus,** *daughter* (filiation, affiliation, affiliate, filial, hidalgo)
fī́lius, fī́liī, m., *son* (see **fīlia**)
númerus, -ī,[1] m., *number* (numeral, innumerable, enumerate)
pópulus, -ī, m., *the people, a people, a nation* (populace, population, popularity, popularize, populous)
púer, púerī, m., *boy;* pl. *boys, children* (puerile, puerility)
sapiéntia, -ae, f., *wisdom* (sapience, sapient, sage, savant)
vir, vírī, m., *man, hero* (virtue, virile, triumvirate; *not* virulent)
avā́rus (m.), **avā́ra** (f.), adj., *greedy, avaricious* (avarice)
paúcī (m.), **paúcae** (f.), adj., usually pl., *few, a few* (paucity)
Rōmā́nus (m.), **Rōmā́na** (f.), adj., *Roman* (Romance, romance, romantic, romanticism, Romanesque, Roumania)
dē, prep. + abl., *down from, from; concerning, about;* also as a prefix **dē-** with such meanings as *down, away, aside, out, off* (demote, from **dēmoveō**; decline, descend)
in, prep. + abl., *in, on*
hódiē, adv., *today*
sémper, adv., *always* (sempiternal)
hábeō, habḗre, hábuī, hábitum, *to have, hold, possess; consider, regard* (inhabit, "hold in"; ex-habit, "hold forth"; habit, habitat)
sátiō (1),[2] *to satisfy, sate* (satiate, insatiable, satiety, satisfaction; cp. **satis,** Ch. 5)

练习与复习

1. Fīlium nautae Rōmānī in agrīs vidēmus.

---

[1] 在以后的词汇表中，以-us 结尾的规则的第二变格法名词将以这种缩略形式表示（即 **numerus, -ī = numerus, numerī**）。

[2] 对于动词主要部分为 **-ō/-āre/-āvī/-ātum** 的规则的第一变位法动词，今后将不再标出其他三个部分，而仅以(1)来表示。

2. Puerī puellās hodiē vocant.
3. Sapientiam amīcārum, Ō fīlia mea, semper laudat.
4. Multī viri et fēminae philosophiam antīquam cōnservant.
5. Sī īra valet, Ō mī fīlī, saepe errāmus et poenās damus.
6. Fortūna virōs magnōs amat.
7. Agricola fīliābus pecūniam dat.
8. Without a few friends life is not strong.
9. Today you have much fame in your country.
10. We see great fortune in your daughters' lives, my friend.
11. He always gives my daughters and sons roses.

古代名言

1. Dēbētis, amīcī, dē populō Rōmānō cōgitāre. (Cicero.)
2. Maecēnās, amīcus Augustī, mē in numerō amīcōrum habet. (Horace.—**Maecēnās,** a name in nom. sg.; see Ch. 1 reading passage.—**Augustus, -ī.**)
3. Libellus meus et sententiae meae vītās virōrum monent. (Phaedrus.—**libellus, -ī,** *little book.*)
4. Paucī virī sapientiae student. (Cicero.—**studēre** + dat., *to be eager for.*)
5. Fortūna adversa virum magnae sapientiae nōn terret. (Horace.—**adversus, adversa,** adj. = English.)
6. Cimōn, vir magnae fāmae, magnam benevolentiam habet. (Nepos.—**Cimōn,** proper name nom. sg.—**benevolentia, -ae** = Eng.)
7. Semper avārus eget. (*Horace.—**avārus** = **avārus vir.**—**egēre,** *to be in need.*)
8. Nūlla cōpia pecūniae avārum virum satiat. (Seneca.—**nūllus, nūlla,** adj., *no.*—**cōpia, -ae,** *abundance.*)
9. Pecūnia avārum irrītat, nōn satiat. (Publilius Syrus.—**irrītāre,** *to excite, exasperate.*)
10. Sēcrētē amīcōs admonē; laudā palam. (*Publilius Syrus.—**sēcrētē,** adv., *in secret.*—**admonē** = **monē.**—**palam,** adv., *openly.*)
11. Modum tenēre dēbēmus. (*Seneca.—**modus, -ī,** *moderation.*—**tenēre,** *to have, observe.*)

THE GRASS IS ALWAYS GREENER

Agricola et vītam et fortūnam nautae saepe laudat; nauta magnam fortūnam et vītam poētae saepe laudat; et poēta vītam et agrōs agricolae laudat. Sine philosophiā avārī virī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant: multam pecūniam habent, sed pecūnia multa virum avārum nōn satiat.

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 1.1; free prose adaptation.)

词源点滴

下面是一些罗曼语词，我们可以通过本课的词汇表来辨识它们。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
amīcus	amico	amigo	ami
fīlius	figlio	hijo	fils
numerus	numero	número	numéro
populus	popolo	pueblo	peuple
paucī	poco	poco	peu
semper	sempre	siempre	
habēre	avere	haber	avoir
dē	di	de	de

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, amīcae et amīcī! **Quid agitis hodiē?** 如果你在海岸警卫队工作，那么你就要 **semper parātus**，*always prepared*。如果你是一个美国海军陆战队队员，那么就要 **semper fidēlis**，*always faithful*。这只是显示各种现代组织机构特质的无数拉丁语格言中的两条。**Valēte et habēte fortūnam bonam!**



Augustus of Prima Porta
Late 1st century B.C.
Vatican Museums
Vatican State

第四课

第二变格法中性词;形容词;Sum 的现在时直陈式;谓语性名词和谓语形容词;形容词作名词

第二变格法——中性词

第一变格法没有中性名词,但在第二变格法中却为数不少。其变格如下,也是通过词根加词尾得到的:

	dōnum, *gift*	**cōnsilium,** *plan*	**magnum,** *great*	
词根	**dōn-**	**cōnsili-**	**magn-**	**词尾**
单数				
主格	dṓnum	cōnsílium	mágnum	**-um**
属格	dṓnī	cōnsíliī[1]	mágnī	**-ī**
与格	dṓnō	cōnsíliō	mágnō	**-ō**
宾格	dṓnum	cōnsílium	mágnum	**-um**
夺格	dṓnō	cōnsíliō	mágnō	**-ō**
复数				
主格	dṓna	cōnsília	mágna	**-a**
属格	dōnṓrum	cōnsiliṓrum	magnṓrum	**-ōrum**
与格	dṓnīs	cōnsíliīs	mágnīs	**-īs**
宾格	dṓna	cōnsília	mágna	**-a**
夺格	dṓnīs	cōnsíliīs	mágnīs	**-īs**

我们注意到,除了主格、宾格和呼格的词尾相同,第二变格法的中性词尾与

[1] 在西塞罗时期,以-**ius** 或-**ium** 结尾的第二变格法名词的单数属格均以单个-**ī** 结尾(如 **fīlius**,属格 **fīlī**;**cōnsilium**,属格 **cōnsilī**)。不过,由于在奥古斯都时期确立了属格形式-**iī**(**fīliī, cōnsiliī**),而且-**iī** 一直是形容词的规则(**eximius,** 属格 **eximiī**),所以本书将使用这种形式。

阳性词尾完全一致：单数都以**–um** 结尾，复数都以**–a** 结尾（这对于所有变格法的中性词都成立）。词序和语境可以帮助我们区分用作主语和宾语的中性名词（当然，呼格更容易区分，因为它们通常用逗号与句子隔开）。复数词尾**–a** 有可能会被误认为是第一变格法的单数主格，所以一定要记住包括名词的性在内的词条的所有内容。在词汇表中，规则的第二变格法中性词将以如下缩略形式表示：**dōnum, –ī**（= **dōnum, dōnī**），n。

形容词的变格和一致

由第二课到第四课 **magnus** 的词形变化表，我们可以看出，虽然形容词的词根保持不变，但是根据所修饰名词的性的不同，形容词有阳性、阴性或中性词尾，而且在数和格上要与名词保持一致。下面列出了 **magnus** 的完整变格，以帮助我们复习前两种变格法。

	阳性	**阴性**	**中性**
单数			
主格	mágnus	mágna	mágnum
属格	mágnī	mágnae	mágnī
与格	mágnō	mágnae	mágnō
宾格	mágnum	mágnam	mágnum
夺格	mágnō	mágnā	mágnō
呼格	mágne	mágna	mágnum
复数			
主格	mágnī	mágnae	mágna
属格	magnṓrum	magnā́rum	magnṓrum
与格	mágnīs	mágnīs	mágnīs
宾格	mágnōs	mágnās	mágna
夺格	mágnīs	mágnīs	mágnīs
呼格	mágnī	mágnae	mágna

在词汇表中，这类第一、第二变格法形容词今后将写成如下形式：

méus, –a, –um　　　múltus, –a, –um　　　paúcī, –ae, –a（pl. only）

Sum：现在时不定式和现在时直陈式

英语动词 *to be* 是不规则的，拉丁语动词 **sum** 也是如此。虽然人称词尾还可以辨认出来，但词干却已经变得面目全非，最好还是老老实实记住这些十分常见的形式。请注意，**sum** 是一个不及物的系动词，我们不说它的语态是主动态还是被动态。

Sum 的现在时不定式：esse, to be

Sum 的现在时直陈式

单数	**复数**
1. sum, *I am*	súmus, *we are*
2. es, *you are*	éstis, *you are*
3. est, *he* (*she, it*) *is, there is*	sunt, *they are, there are*

谓语性名词和谓语形容词

作为不及物动词，**sum** 不能带直接宾语。它（以及今后要学到的其他系动词）就像火车上连接两节车厢的车钩一样，将一句话的主语和谓语[1]中的名词或形容词连接起来。这些谓语性名词和谓语形容词通过系动词与主语相连接、甚至相等同，所以自然地，它们在数和格（当然，通常是主格）上要与主语保持一致，在性上也要尽可能地一致。如果主语中包含有不同的性，那么谓语形容词的性通常要与距它最近的词保持一致，虽然阳性往往占支配地位。考察以下例句，为辨识本课中的谓语性名词和谓语形容词做准备。

Vergilius est amīcus Augustī, *Virgil is the friend of Augustus.*
Vergilius est poēta, *Virgil is a poet.*
Vergilius est magnus, *Virgil is great.*
Fāma Vergiliī est magna, *the fame of Virgil is great.*
Amīcae sunt bonae, *the girlfriends are good.*
Puerī dēbent esse bonī, *the boys ought to be good.*
Puer et puella sunt bonī, *the boy and girl are good.*
Dōnum est magnum, *the gift is large.*
Dōna sunt magna, *the gifts are large.*
Sumus Rōmānī, *we are Romans* (*Roman men*).
Sumus Rōmānae, *we are Roman women.*

形容词作名词

罗马人经常把形容词用作名词，即用它来取代名词，就像在英语中那样（“The meek shall inherit the earth”——即“the meek *people*”）。这样的形容词一般将译成名词，根据数和性的不同，通常要加上 *man* 或 *men*，*woman* 或 *women*，*thing* 或 *things*，比如下面的例子：

---

[1] 主语和谓语是一句话的两个主要部分。谓语由动词及其附属词和附属短语组成。

Bonās saepe laudant, *they often praise the good women.*
Multī sunt stultī, *many (men) are foolish.*
Puerī mala nōn amant, *the boys do not love bad things.*
Paucī dē perīculō cōgitant, *few (men) are thinking about the danger.*

词汇表

básium, -iī (= **básiī**), n., *kiss*
béllum, -ī, n., *war* (bellicose, belligerent, rebel, rebellion, revel)
cōnsílium, -iī, n., *plan, purpose, counsel, advice, judgment, wisdom* (counsel, counselor)
cúra, -ae, f., *care, attention, caution, anxiety* (cure, curator, curious, curiosity, curio, curettage, sinecure; cp. **cūrō,** Ch. 36))
dónum, -ī, n., *gift, present* (donate, donation, condone; cp. **dō**)
exítium, -iī, n., *destruction, ruin* (exit; cp. **exeō,** Ch. 37)
magíster, magístrī, m., and **magístra, -ae,** f., *schoolmaster* or *schoolmistress, teacher, master* or *mistress* (magistrate, magistracy, magisterial, maestro, mastery, mister, miss; cp. **magnus**)
móra, -ae, f., *delay* (moratorium, demur)
níhil, indeclinable, n., *nothing* (see Ch. 1)
óculus, -ī, m., *eye* (ocular, oculist, binoculars, monocle)
offícium, -iī, n., *duty, service* (office, officer, official, officious; cp. **faciō,** Ch. 10)
ótium, -iī, n., *leisure, peace* (otiose, negotiate)
perículum, -ī, n., *danger, risk* (peril, perilous, imperil, parlous)
remédium, -iī, n., *cure, remedy* (remedial, irremediable, remediation)
béllus, -a, -um, *pretty, handsome, charming* (belle, beau, beauty, embellish, belladonna, belles-lettres). Do not confuse with **bellum,** *war.*
bónus, -a, -um, *good, kind* (bonus, bonanza, bonny, bounty, bona fide)
hūmánus, -a, -um, *pertaining to man* (**homō,** Ch. 7), *human; humane, kind; refined, cultivated* (humanity, humanitarian, humanism, the humanities, humanist, inhuman, superhuman)
málus, -a, -um, *bad, wicked, evil* (malice, malicious, malign, malignant, malaria, malady, malefactor, malfeasance, malevolent; mal-, a prefix as in maladjustment, malnutrition, maltreat, malapropos)
párvus, -a, -um, *small, little* (parvovirus, parvule, parvicellular)
stúltus, -a, -um, *foolish;* **stúltus, -ī,** m., *a fool* (stultify, stultification)
vérus, -a, -um, *true, real, proper* (verify, verisimilitude, very, veracity)
iúvō (or **ádiuvō**), **iuváre, iúvī, iútum,** *to help, aid, assist; please* (adjutant, coadjutant, aid, aide-de-camp)
sum, ésse, fúī, futúrum, *to be, exist* (essence, essential, future, futurity)

练习与复习

1. Ōtium est bonum, sed ōtium multōrum est parvum.
2. Bella (from **bellum, -ī,** n.) sunt mala et multa perīcula habent.
3. Officium nautam dē ōtiō hodiē vocat.
4. Paucī virī avārī multās fōrmās perīculī in pecūniā vident.
5. Sī multam pecūniam habētis, saepe nōn estis sine cūrīs.
6. Puellae magistram dē cōnsiliō malō sine morā monent.
7. Ō magne poēta, sumus vērī amīcī; mē iuvā, amābō tē!
8. Fēmina agricolae portam videt.
9. You (sg.) are in great danger.
10. My son's opinions are often foolish.
11. The daughters and sons of great men and women are not always great.
12. Without wisdom the sailors' good fortune is nothing and they are paying the penalty.

古代名言

1. Fortūna est caeca. (*Cicero.—**caecus, -a, -um,** *blind.*)
2. Sī perīcula sunt vēra, īnfortūnātus es. (Terence.—**īnfortūnātus, -a, -um,** *unfortunate.*)
3. Salvē, Ō amīce; vir bonus es. (Terence.)
4. Nōn bella est fāma fīliī tuī. (Horace.)
5. Errāre est hūmānum. (Seneca.—As an indeclinable neuter verbal noun, an infinitive can be the subject of a verb.)
6. Nihil est omnīnō beātum. (Horace—**omnīnō,** adv., *wholly.*—**beātus, -a, -um,** *happy, fortunate.*)
7. Remedium īrae est mora. (Seneca.)
8. Bonus Daphnis, amīcus meus, ōtium et vītam agricolae amat. (Virgil.—Daphnis is a pastoral character.)
9. Magistrī parvīs puerīs crūstula et dōna saepe dant. (Horace.—**crūstulum, -ī,** *cookie.*)
10. Amīcam meam magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.—**magis quam,** *more than.*)
11. Salvē, mea bella puella—dā mihi multa bāsia, amābō tē! (Catullus.—**mihi,** dat., *to me.*)
12. Īnfīnītus est numerus stultōrum. (Ecclesiastes.—**īnfīnītus, -a, -um** = Eng)
13. Officium mē vocat. (Persius.)
14. Malī sunt in nostrō numerō et dē exitiō bonōrum virōrum cōgitant. Bonōs adiuvāte; cōnservāte populum Rōmānum. (Cicero.—**nostrō,** *our.*)

THE RARITY OF FRIENDSHIP

Paucī virī vērōs amīcōs habent, et paucī sunt dignī. Amīcitia vēra est praeclāra, et omnia praeclāra sunt rāra. Multī virī stultī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant, paucī dē amīcīs; sed errant: possumus valēre sine multā pecūniā, sed sine amīcitiā nōn valēmus et vīta est nihil.

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 21.79–80.—**dignus, -a, -um,** *worthy, deserving.* **amīcitia, -ae,** *friendship.*—**omnia,** *all* [*things*].—**praeclārus, -a, -um,** *splendid, remarkable.*—**rārus, -a, -um** = Eng.—**possumus,** *we are able.*)

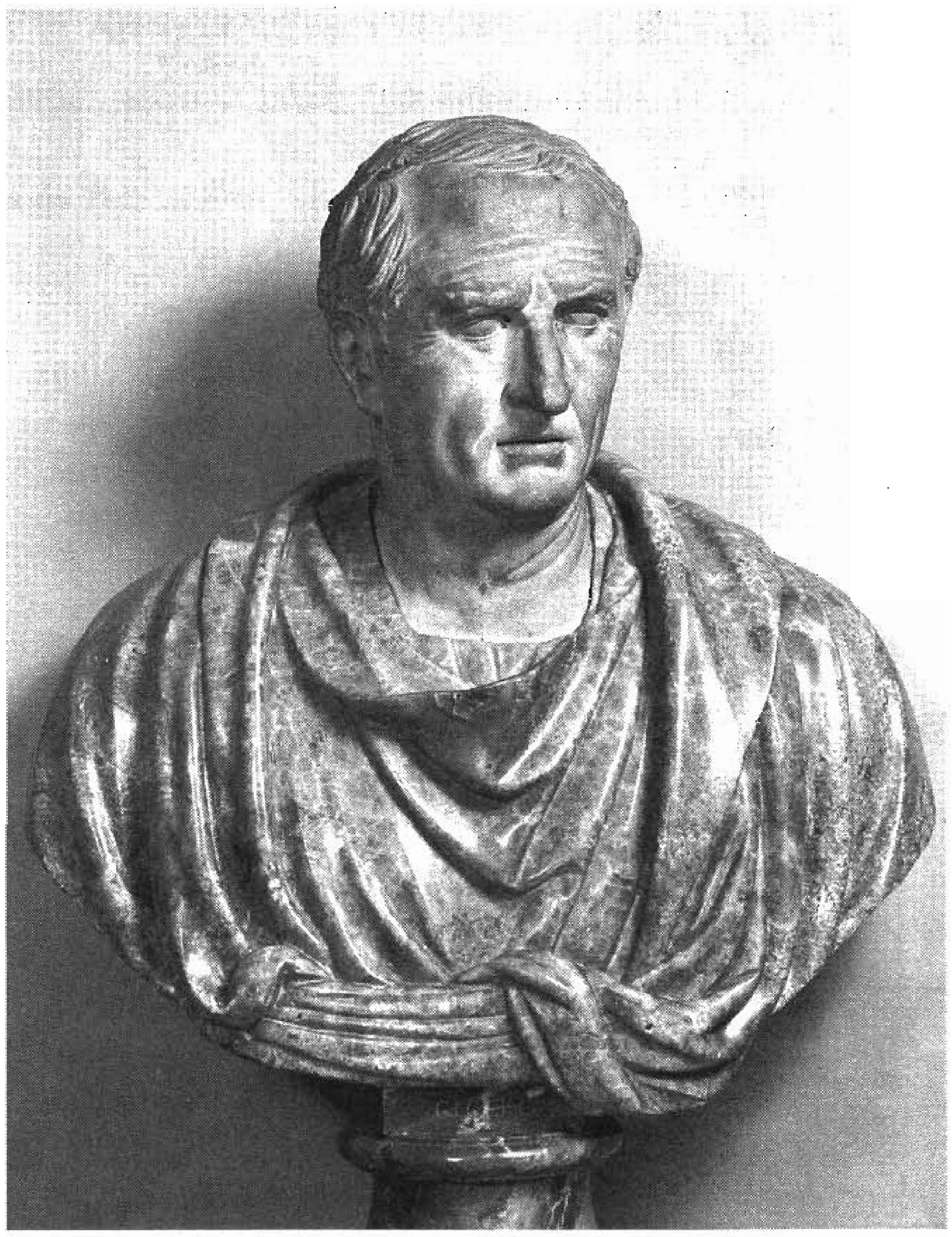
词源点滴

下面是一些罗曼语派生词：

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
oculus	occhio	ojo	œil
ōtium	ozio	ocio	oisiveté
perīculum	pericolo	peligro	péril
officium	officio	oficio	office
bonus	buono	bueno	bon
vērus	vero	verdadero	vrai
magister	maestro	maestro	maître
bellus	bello	bello	belle
hūmānus	umano	humano	humain
beātus	beato	beato	béat
bāsium	bacio	beso	baiser
rārus	raro	raro	rare

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvē, amīce! 当前的英语用法中有大量拉丁语表达（还记得 **sub rosā** 吗？）。在本课中，我们遇到了一个与形容词有关的表达 **rāra avis**，字面意思是 *a rare bird*，但却用来指不寻常的人或罕见的事物。在 20 世纪六七十年代，美国学习拉丁语的学生正在成为 **rāra avis**，但此后却出现了明显的复苏。**Ergō**, *therefore* 是另一个直接进入英语的拉丁词；因此(ergo)，你现在知道笛卡儿在《方法谈》(*Discourse on Method*)中说 **cōgito ergō sum**（“我思故我在”）的意思了。**Semper cōgitā, amīce, et valē!**



Cicero
Uffizi
Florence, Italy

第五课

第一和第二变位法动词：将来时和未完成时；以 –er 结尾的形容词

将来时和未完成时

对于第一、第二变位法动词而言，罗马人通过在现在时词干和人称词尾之间插入将来时标志（在大多数形式中是**–bi–**）来表示将来时。类似地，（在所有四种变位法中）**–bā–**是未完成时的标志。未完成时是一种过去时态，一般来说对应于英语中的过去进行时。从下列词形变化表可以看出将来时和未完成时的词尾：

Laudō 和Moneō 的将来时和未完成时直陈式主动态

将来时	未完成时
单数	
1. laudā́-bō, *I shall praise*	laudā́-ba-m, *I was praising, kept praising, used to praise, praised*
2. laudā́-bi-s, *you will praise*	laudā́-bā-s, *you were praising,* etc.
3. laudā́-bi-t, *he, she, it will praise*	laudā́-ba-t, *he was praising,* etc.
复数	
1. laudā́bimus, *we shall praise*	laudābā́mus, *we were praising,* etc.
2. laudā́bitis, *you will praise*	laudābā́tis, *you were praising,* etc.
3. laudā́bunt, *they will praise*	laudā́bant, *they were praising,* etc.
单数	
1. monḗ-bō, *I shall advise*	monḗ-ba-m, *I was advising, kept advising, used to advise, advised*

2. monḗ-bi-s, *you will advise*	monḗ-bā́-s, *you were advising,* etc.
3. monḗ-bi-t, *he, she, it will advise*	monḗ-ba-t, *he was advising,* etc.

复数

1. monēbimus, *we shall advise*	monēbā́mus, *we were advising,* etc.
2. monēbitis, *you will advise*	monēbā́tis, *you were advising,* etc.
3. monēbunt, *they will advise*	monēbant, *they were advising,* etc.

请注意,第一人称单数和第三人称复数的将来时词尾发生了元音变化(请记住 **bō/bi/bi/bi/bi/bu**——听起来像是婴儿的咿呀学语！),未完成时的第一人称单数、第三人称单数和第三人称复数的词尾也变成了短音**–a–**(请记住,元音在词末的**–m**, **–r** 和**–t** 之前通常要变短,在任何位置的 **nt** 或另一个元音之前也要变短)。

作为将来时和未完成时的标志,"中缀"**–bi–**和**–bā–**(区别性特征为**–i–**和**–ā–**)记忆起来并不困难,因为我们可以将它们与通常用来翻译这两个时态的英语助动词"will"和"was"(拼写中也包含*-i-*和*-a-*)联系起来。请注意,要想表达 *he will praise* 或 *he was praising*,英语需要三个不同的词,而拉丁语只需一个词就可以表达了。这个词由词干+时态标志+人称词尾三部分组成(**laudā+bi+t** = *praise–will–he*, **laudā–ba–t** = *praising–was–he*)。

翻译

对于将来时的翻译,通常在第一人称情况下用 *shall*,在第三人称情况下用 *will*,这一般没有什么问题:**dē amīcō cōgitābō**, *I shall think about my friend*; **multam sapientiam habēbunt**, *they will have much wisdom*。

未完成时一般表示在过去正在继续或正在进行的动作,就像"未完成的"(imperfect,源于 **imperfectum**, *not completed*)一词所暗示的那样。下面所有的翻译都是可能的,这要取决于句子出现的具体语境:

> Nautam monēbam, *I was warning* (*kept warning, used to warn, tried to warn, was beginning to warn*) *the sailor.*
> Poētae vītam agricolae laudābant, *poets used to praise the farmer's life.*
> Magister puerōs vocābat, *the teacher kept calling* (*was calling*) *the boys.*

未完成时偶尔也可以翻译成简单过去时,特别是在有副词指示持续的动作时:**nautam saepe monēbam**, *I often warned the sailor*。

以–er 结尾的第一、第二变格法形容词

r 之前出现 **e** 的问题不仅见于像 **puer** 和 **ager** 这样的名词(第三课),而且也见于形容词。如果我们记得词汇表中所给出的形容词形式(阳性、阴性、中性

的主格形式），那么就没有什么问题，因为不论是否包含**-e-**，词根都完整地出现在阴性和中性形式中，如下面的例子所示；同样，与**-er**名词类似，英语派生词可以帮助我们记忆词根（“liberal”来自**līber**，“pulchritude”来自**pulcher**，“miserable”来自**miser**，等等）。

līber	līber-a	līber-um	*free*
pulcher	pulchr-a	pulchr-um	*beautiful*

词形变化表中的其余部分都是由词根加上规则的词尾构成的：

	阳性	**阴性**	**中性**	**阳性**	**阴性**	**中性**
主格	lī́ber	lī́bera	lī́berum	púlcher	púlchra	púlchrum
属格	lī́berī	lī́berae	lī́berī	púlchrī	púlchrae	púlchrī
与格	lī́berō	lī́berae	lī́berō	púlchrō	púlchrae	púlchrō
		(etc.)			(etc.)	

这些例子完整的变格形式参见书末的“词形总结”部分。复习变格和变位的时候，我们需要经常查看它。

词汇表

adulēscéntia, -ae, f., *youth, young manhood; youthfulness* (adolescence, adolescent)
ánimus, -ī, m., *soul, spirit, mind;* **ánimī, -ṓrum,** *high spirits, pride, courage* (animus, animosity, magnanimous, unanimous, pusillanimous)
caélum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven* (ceiling, celestial, Celeste, cerulean)
cúlpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame* (cp. **culpō** below; culpable, culprit, exculpate, inculpate)
glṓria, -ae, f., *glory, fame* (glorify, glorification, glorious, inglorious)
vérbum, -ī, n., *word* (verb, adverb, verbal, verbiage, verbose, proverb)
tē, abl. and acc. sg., *you; yourself;* cp. **mē**
lī́ber, lī́bera, lī́berum, *free* (liberal, liberality, libertine; cp. **lībertās,** Ch. 8, **līberō**, Ch. 19)
nóster, nóstra, nóstrum, *our, ours* (nostrum, paternoster)
púlcher, púlchra, púlchrum, *beautiful, handsome; fine* (pulchritude)
sā́nus, -a, -um, *sound, healthy, sane* (sanity, sanitary, sanitation, sanitarium, insane)
ígitur, conj., postpositive,[1] *therefore, consequently*
-ne, enclitic or suffix added to the emphatic word placed at the beginning of a sentence to indicate a question the answer to which is uncertain. (For other types of direct questions, see **nōnne** and **num** in Ch. 40.)
própter, prep. + acc., *on account of, because of*
crās, adv., *tomorrow* (procrastinate, procrastination)
herī, adv., *yesterday*

---

[1] 后置(postpositive)词不作为句中的第一个词出现；它被置于第一个词或短语之后(**post-pōnō**)。

quándō, interrogative and relative adv. and conj., *when;* **sī quándō,** *if ever*
sátis, indecl. noun. adi., and adv., *enough, sufficient* (*-ly*) (cp. **satiō;** satisfy, satisfactory, satiate, insatiable, sate; assets, from **ad,** *up to* + **satis**)
tum, adv., *then, at that time; thereupon, in the next place*
cḗnō (1), *to dine* (cenacle; cp. **cēna,** Ch. 26)
cúlpō (1), *to blame, censure* (cp. **culpa** above)
remáneō, remanḗre, remā́nsī, remā́nsum, or **máneō, manḗre, mā́nsī, mā́nsum,** *to remain, stay, stay behind, abide, continue* (permanent, remnant, mansion, manor, immanent—do not confuse with imminent)
súperō (1), *to be above* (cp. **super,** adv. and prep. + abl. or acc., *above*), *have the upper hand, surpass; overcome, conquer* (superable, insuperable)

练习与复习

1. Officium līberōs virōs semper vocābat.
2. Habēbimusne multōs virōs et fēminās magnōrum animōrum?
3. Perīcula bellī nōn sunt parva, sed patria tua tē vocābit et agrico adiuvābunt.
4. Propter culpās malōrum patria nostra nōn valēbit.
5. Mora animōs nostrōs superābat et remedium nōn habēbāmus.
6. Multī in agrīs herī manēbant et Rōmānōs iuvābant.
7. Paucī virī dē cūrā animī cōgitābant.
8. Propter īram in culpā estis et crās poenās dabitis.
9. Vērum ōtium nōn habēs, vir stulte!
10. Nihil est sine culpā; sumus bonī, sī paucās habēmus.
11. Poēta amīcae multās rosās, dōna pulchra, et bāsia dabat.
12. Will war and destruction always remain in our land?
13. Does money satisfy the greedy man?
14. Therefore, you (sg.) will save the reputation of our foolish boys.
15. Money and glory were conquering the soul of a good man.

古代名言

1. Invidiam populī Rōmānī crās nōn sustinēbis. (Cicero.—**invidia, -ae,** *dislike.*—**sustinēre,** *to endure, sustain.*)
2. Perīculumne igitur herī remanēbat? (Cicero.)
3. Angustus animus pecūniam amat. (Cicero.—**angustus, -a, -um,** *narrow.*)
4. Superā animōs et īram tuam. (Ovid.)
5. Culpa est mea, Ō amīcī. (Cicero.)
6. Dā veniam fīliō et fīliābus nostrīs. (Terence.—**venia, -ae,** *favor, pardon.*)
7. Propter adulēscentiam, fīliī meī, mala vītae nōn vidēbātis. (Terence.)
8. Amābō tē, cūrā fīliam meam. (Cicero.—**cūrāre,** *to take care of.*)
   Vīta hūmāna est supplicium. (Seneca.—**supplicium, -iī,** *punishment.*)
10. Satisne sānus es? (Terence.)

11. Sī quandō satis pecūniae habēbō, tum mē cōnsiliō et philosophiae dabō. (Seneca.—**pecūniae,** gen. case.)
12. Semper glōria et fāma tua manēbunt. (Virgil.)
13. Vir bonus et perītus aspera verba poētārum culpābit. (Horace.—**perītus, -a, -um,** *skillful.*—**asper, aspera, asperum,** *rough, harsh.*)

HIS ONLY GUEST WAS A REAL BOAR!

Nōn cēnat sine aprō noster, Tite, Caeciliānus:
bellum convīvam Caeciliānus habet!

(*Martial 7.59. This is the first of several selections included in this book from the *Epigrams* of Martial, a popular poet of the late 1st cen. A.D., briefly discussed in the Introd.; these poems are generally quite short, like this two-verse elegiac couplet, satirical, and targeted at a specific, but usually fictitious, character, here the glutton Caecilianus.—**Titus,** the poem's addressee, but not its victim.—**aper, aprī,** *boar, pig.*—**convīva, -ae** one of a few masc. first decl. nouns, *dinner-guest.*)

THERMOPYLAE: A SOLDIER'S HUMOR

"Exercitus noster est magnus," Persicus inquit, "et propter numerum sagittārum nostrārum caelum nōn vidēbitis!" Tum Lacedaemonius respondet: "In umbrā, igitur, pugnābimus!" Et Leōnidās, rēx Lacedaemoniōrum, exclāmat: "Pugnāte cum animīs, Lacedaemoniī; hodiē apud īnferōs fortasse cēnābimus!"
(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.42.101; an anecdote from the battle of Thermopylae, 480 B.C., in which the Persians under king Xerxes defeated the Spartans under Leonidas.—**exercitus,** *army.*—**Persicus, -ī,** *a Persian.*—**inquit,** *says.*—**sagitta, -ae,** *arrow.*—**Lacedaemonius, -ī,** *a Spartan.*—**respondēre** = Eng.—**umbra, -ae,** *shade, shadow; ghost.*—**pugnāre,** *to fight.*—**rēx,** *king.*—**exclāmāre,** *to shout.*—**cum** + abl., *with.*—**apud** + acc., *among.*—**īnferī, -ōrum,** *those below, the dead.*—**fortasse,** adv., *perhaps.*)

词源点滴

与 **animus** 有关的是 **anima, -ae,** *the breath of life*；animal, animated, inanimate 皆由此而来。

"Envy"经由法语间接地来自 **invidia**（sent. 1）；"invidious"是直接从拉丁语借来的。"Expert"和"experience"都与 **perītus**（13）有关。这里的 **ex** 是强调成分（= *thoroughly*），词干 **perī-**的意思是 *try, make trial of*。那么，"experiment"指的是什么？显然，所有 experiment（实验）都会带有某种危险（**perī-culum**）。

In sent. 13：asperity, exasperate（**ex** 同样是强调成分）。In "Thermopylae"：sagittate; umbrella（经由意大利语而来，带有指小词尾[diminutive ending]），umbrage, adumbrate; pugnacious, pugilist.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, et amīcī et amīcae meae! Quid agitis hodiē?事实上，我希望你们同时在身体和精神上 **sānī et sānae**；如果是这样，那么你已经获得了公元 1 世纪的罗马讽刺作家尤维纳利斯所说的生活中的至善——**mēns sāna in corpore sānō,** *a healthy mind in a healthy body*（以后我们会遇到 **mēns** 和 **corpus** 这两个第三变格法名词，在此之前，我们可以 **in mente** 记住这句著名的引语）。顺便说一句，有传言说，体育用品品牌 ASICS 是 **animus sānus in corpore sānō** 的首字母缩略词；根据所学的词汇，这个短语的意思我们应当可以明白。ASICS 的竞争者 NIKE 源于表示“胜利”（victory）的希腊词，它所对应的拉丁词是 **victōria**，这往往是某个女王或有权势的女士常使用的带有获胜意味的名字（其阳性的对应词应该是“Victor”，源于拉丁词 **victor**）。

你以前也许见过 **verbum sap** 和 **mea culpa** 这两个短语。如果没有，那么你以后会见到的。前者是 **verbum satis sapientī est** 的缩写：**sapientī** 是第三变格法形容词 **sapiēns,** *wise* 的与格形式，这里用作名词（还记得我们在第四课中讲的形容词作名词吗？）现在，你应当已经明白这个短语的意思是 *a word to the wise is sufficient* 了。如果没能做到，请你大喊一声“**mea culpa!** ”然后（这里是 **verbum sap**）回过头去复习一至五课的词汇。**Valēte!**

第六课

Sum 的将来时和未完成时直陈式；Possum 的现在时、将来时和未完成时直陈式；补充不定式

Sum 的将来时和未完成时直陈式

对于不规则动词 **sum, esse,** 学习其将来时和未完成时的最好方法就是记住下面这张词形变化表；不过，它们比现在时形式更为规则，均由词干 **er-**加上我们已经熟悉的现在时系统的人称词尾（**-ō/-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**）所构成。

	将来时直陈式	未完成时直陈式
单数	1. érō, *I shall be*	éram, *I was*
	2. éris, *you will be*	érās, *you were*
	3. érit, *he* (*she, it, there*) *will be*	érat, *he* (*she, it, there*) *was*
复数	1. érimus, *we shall be*	erā́mus, *we were*
	2. éritis, *you will be*	erā́tis, *you were*
	3. érunt, *they* (*there*) *will be*	érant, *they* (*there*) *were*

不规则动词 Possum, Posse, Potuī: *To Be Able, Can, Could*

常用动词 **possum, posse, potuī** 是源于不规则形容词 **potis**（*able, capable*；与"potent"，"potential"比较）的 **pot-**和 **sum** 的复合词。在以 **s-**开头的 **sum** 前，**-t-**会变成或"同化为"**-s-**（所以 **possum** 来自 ***potsum**）；在其他情况下**-t-**保持不变。不规则的现在时不定式 **posse** 是从遵循这一规则的较早形式 **potesse**发展而来的。

	现在时直陈式	将来时直陈式	未完成时直陈式
	I am able, can	*I shall be able*	*I was able, could*
单数	1. pós-sum	pót-erō	pót-eram
	2. pót-es	pót-eris	pót-erās
	3. pót-est	pót-erit	pót-erat
复数	1. pós-sumus	pot-érimus	pot-erā́mus
	2. pot-éstis	pot-éritis	pot-erā́tis
	3. pós-sunt	pót-erunt	pót-erant

Sum和 **possum** 的将来时和未完成时词尾分别是**–ō/–is/–it**⋯, **–am/–ās/–at**⋯,而我们在上一课中介绍的第一、第二变位法动词的将来时和未完成时词尾是**–bō/–bis/–bit**⋯, **–bam/–bās/–bat**⋯,它们之间的相似之处有助于我们记忆。

补充不定式

就像英语词 *to be able* 或 *can* 那样,**possum** 通常要求有一个不定式来补充它的含义。于是,我们就有了“补充”(complementary)不定式这种说法,意思是使不定式“完整”。我们已经见过 **dēbeō** 带出的补充不定式,以后还会见到其他动词带出的补充不定式。

Our friends were able to overcome (could overcome) many dangers.
Amīcī nostrī poterant superāre multa perīcula.

My friend is not able to remain (cannot remain).
Amīcus meus nōn potest remanēre.

You ought to save your money.
Dēbēs cōnservāre pecūniam tuam.

请注意,补充不定式自身并没有独立的主语,它的主语就是它所从属的动词的主语。

词汇表

déa, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **deābus,** *goddess,* and **déus, -ī,** m., voc. sg. **deus,** nom. pl. **dī,** dat. and abl. pl. **dīs** (the plurals **deī** and **deīs** became common during the Augustan Period), *god* (adieu, deify, deity)
discípula, -ae, f., and **discípulus, -ī,** m., *learner, pupil, student* (disciple, discipline, disciplinary; cp. **discō,** Ch. 8)
īnsídiae, -ā́rum, f. pl., *ambush, plot, treachery* (insidious)
líber, líbrī, m., *book* (library, libretto); not to be confused with **līber,** *free*
tyránnus, -ī, m., *absolute ruler, tyrant* (tyrannous, tyrannicide)
vítium, -iī, n., *fault, crime, vice* (vitiate, vicious; but not vice in vice versa)
Graécus, -a, -um, *Greek;* **Graécus, -ī,** m., *a Greek*

perpétuus, -a, -um, *perpetual, lasting, uninterrupted, continuous* (perpetuate, perpetuity)
plḗnus, -a, -um, *full, abundant, generous* (plenary, plenteous, plentiful, plenitude, plenty, replenish, plenipotentiary)
sálvus, -a, -um, *safe, sound* (cp. **salveō**)
secúndus, -a, -um, *second; favorable* (secondary)
véster, véstra, véstrum, *your* (pl., i.e., used in addressing more than one person, vs. **tuus, -a, -um**), *yours*
-que, enclitic conj., *and.* It is appended to the second of two words to be joined: **fāma glōriaque,** *fame and glory.*
úbi: (1) rel. adv. and conj., *where, when;* (2) interrog. adv. and conj., *where?* (ubiquitous)
íbi, adv., *there* (ib. or ibid.)
nunc, adv., *now, at present* (quidnunc)
quā́rē, adv., lit. *because of which thing* (**quā rē**), *therefore, wherefore, why*
póssum, pósse, pótuī, *to be able, can, could, have power* (posse, possible, potent, potentate, potential, puissant, omnipotent)
tólerō (1), *to bear, endure* (tolerate, toleration, tolerable, intolerable, intolerance; cp. **tollō,** Ch. 22, **ferō,** Ch. 31)

练习与复习

1 Oculī nostrī nōn valēbant; quārē agrōs bellōs vidēre nōn poterāmus.
2. Sine multā pecūniā et multīs dōnīs tyrannus satiāre populum Rōmānum nōn poterit.
3. Nōn poterant, igitur, tē dē poenā amīcōrum tuōrum herī monēre.
4. Parvus numerus Graecōrum crās ibi remanēre poterit.
5. Magister puerōs malōs sine morā vocābit.
6. Fīliae vestrae dē librīs magnī poētae saepe cōgitābant.
7. Quandō satis sapientiae habēbimus?
8. Multī librī antīquī propter sapientiam cōnsiliumque erant magnī.
9. Glōria bonōrum librōrum semper manēbit.
10. Possuntne pecūnia ōtiumque cūrās vītae hūmānae superāre?
11. Therefore, we cannot always see the real vices of a tyrant.
12. Few free men will be able to tolerate an absolute ruler.
13. Many Romans used to praise the great books of the ancient Greeks.
14. Where can glory and (use **-que**) fame be perpetual?

古代名言

1. Dionȳsius tum erat tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum. (Cicero.—**Dionȳsius, -iī,** a Greek name.—**Syrācūsānus, -ī,** *a Syracusan.*)
2. Optāsne meam vītam fortūnamque gustāre? (Cicero.—**optāre,** *to wish.*—**gustāre,** *to taste.*)
3. Possumusne, Ō dī, in malīs īnsidiīs et magnō exitiō esse salvī? (Cicero.—Can you explain why the nom. pl. **salvī** is used here?)

4. Propter cūram meam in perpetuō perīculō nōn eritis. (Cicero.)
5. Propter vitia tua multī tē culpant et nihil tē in patriā tuā dēlectāre nunc potest. (Cicero.—**dēlectāre,** *to delight.*)
6. Fortūna Pūnicī bellī secundī varia erat. (Livy.—**Pūnicus, -a, -um,** *Punic, Carthaginian.*—**varius, -a, -um,** *varied.*)
7. Patria Rōmānōrum erat plēna Graecōrum librōrum statuārumque pulchrārum. (Cicero.—**statua, -ae,** Eng.)
8. Sine dīs et deābus in caelō animus nōn potest sānus esse. (Seneca.)
9. Sī animus īnfīrmus est, nōn poterit bonam fortūnam tolerāre. (Publilius Syrus.—**īnfīrmus, -a, -um,** *not strong, weak.*)
10. Ubi lēgēs valent, ibi populus līber potest valēre. (Publilius Syrus.—**lēgēs,** nom. pl., *laws.*)

"I DO NOT LOVE THEE, DOCTOR FELL"

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.
　Hoc tantum possum dīcere: nōn amo tē.

(*Martial 1.32; meter: elegiac couplet. **amo:** final -ō was often shortened in Latin poetry.—**Sabidius, -iī.**—**nec** = **et nōn.**—**dīcere,** *to say.*—**hoc,** *this,* acc. case.—**tantum,** adv., *only.*)

THE HISTORIAN LIVY LAMENTS THE DECLINE OF ROMAN MORALS

Populus Rōmānus magnōs animōs et paucās culpās habēbat. Dē officiīs nostrīs cōgitābāmus et glōriam bellī semper laudābāmus. Sed nunc multum ōtium habēmus, et multī sunt avārī. Nec vitia nostra nec remedia tolerāre possumus.

(Livy, from the preface to his history of Rome, *Ab Urbe Conditā;* see Introd.—**nec . . . nec,** conj., *neither . . . nor.*)

词源点滴

英语单词"library"显然与 **liber** 有关。然而，它在许多欧洲语言中的对应词却源于 **bibliothēca** 一词。这是一个源于希腊语的拉丁词，意思与我们的"**library**"是一样的。那么，你认为 **biblos** 在希腊语中是什么意思？试与 *Bible* 进行比较。

In the readings[1]

2. option, adopt.—gusto, disgust. 5. delectable, delight. 10. legal, legislative, legitimate, loyal.

如果我们知道法语词 **y** 源于 **ibi**，那么像 **il y a**（*there is*）等短语中的 **y** 就

[1] 为了简洁，我们今后将用这个短语来提请读者注意一些词，它们都与"古代名言"中相应的词有词源关系。

更好理解了。

以下法语词均源于所给出的拉丁词：**êtes = estis; nôtre = noster; vôtre = vester; goûter = gustāre**。那么，法语的这个音调符号标示出了什么？

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae! Quid hodiē agitis, amīcī? Cōgitātisne dē linguā Latīnā? 现在，我想你的词源知识已经可以使你懂得 **lingua Latīna** 是什么意思了。不错，这就是你最喜欢的科目——*the Latin language*，或者直接就写做"Latin"。相信你对这门语言已经有了一定的鉴赏力，而且你一定是带着极大的"gusto"（"兴致、热忱"）去学习的！（如果你忘记了这个词的词源，请参见上面的词源点滴。）新词 **deus** 出现在短语 **deus ex machinā,** *god from a machine* 中，它通常（在戏剧和其他语境中）指某个人或某种机制挽狂澜于既倒，使几乎毫无希望的局面发生逆转。

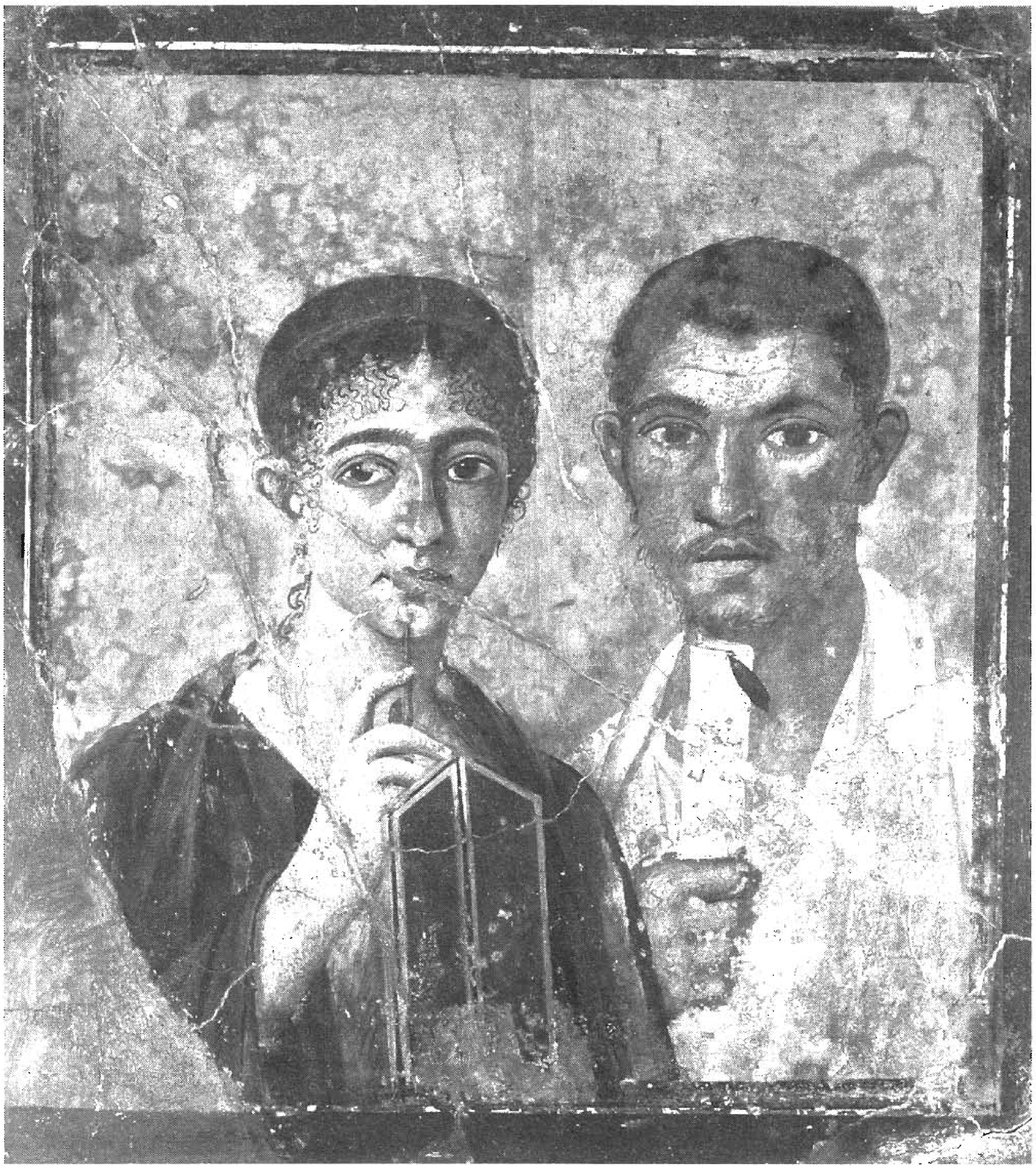
如果你知道，**sub** 是一个介词，意为 *under*，比如在"subterranean"（under the **terra,** *earth*）中，那么你会为下面这句古老的话捧腹的：**semper ubi sub ubi!** [1]（注意卫生，防止皮疹！）说到 **ubi**，它问的问题应由 **ibi** 来回答；由 **ibi** 和强势后缀 **-dem,** *the same*（参见第十一课 **-dem** 的类似用法）构成的复合词 **ibidem** 使我们有了 **ibid.,** *in the same place cited*，这是英语中基于拉丁语的诸多常用缩写之一。类似的还有：

cf. = **cōnfer,** *compare*
cp. = **comparā,** *compare*
e.g. = **exemplī grātiā,** *for the sake of example*
et al. = **et aliī/aliae,** *and others* (of persons)
etc. = **et cētera,** *and others* (of things)
i.e. = **id est,** *that is*
n.b. = **nōtā bene,** *note carefully* (i.e., pay close attention)
v.i. and v.s. = **vidē īnfrā** and **vidē suprā,** *see below* and *see above*

在这一课中，你是否既 **Semper ubi sub ubi**，又从学理上弄懂了 **ibid.**？正如我们的标题所说：欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！ **Valēte!**

---

[1] 这是一个因谐音而起的拉丁语双关语，"Semper"是"always"，"ubi"是"where"，谐音为 wear，"sub"是"under"，连在一起就是 Always wear underwear!（永远要穿内衣裤！）——译者注



Paquius Proculus (?) and wife
Wallpainting from Pompeii, house at region VII.ii.6, 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

第七课

第三变格法名词

拉丁语五种变格法中的第三变格法包括所有三种性的名词，而且单数主格词尾有多种形式，不过所有第三变格法名词的单数属格词尾均为**-is** 由于第三变格法名词的性各有不同，主格形式多种多样，所以记住完整的词条(在每一课的词汇表中将包含完整的、未经缩写的属格形式，缩写形式只用于注释)是非常重要的。变格本身遵循着与第一、第二变格法名词相同的规则：找到词根(去掉单数属格的**-is**[1])，加上词尾。由于呼格总是与主格相同(只有以**-us/-ius**结尾的第二变格法名词是例外)，所以它不出现在词形变化表中。

第三变格法名词

	rēx, m. *king*	**virtūs**, f. *merit*	**homō**, m. *man*	**corpus**, n. *body*	**格词尾**	
词根	**rēg-**	**virtūt-**	**homin-**	**corpor-**	**阳性/阴性**	**中性**
单数						
主格	rēx (rēg-s)	vírtūs	hómō	córpus	—	—
属格	rḗg-is	virtū́tis	hóminis	córporis	**-is**	**-is**
与格	rḗg-ī	virtū́tī	hóminī	córporī	**-ī**	**-ī**
宾格	rḗg-em	virtū́tem	hóminem	córpus	**-em**	—
夺格	rḗg-e	virtū́te	hómine	córpore	**-e**	**-e**

[1] 正如我们已经指出的，英语派生词也有助于记住词根；如 **iter, itineris**, *journey*: itinerary; **cor, cordis**, *heart*: cordial; **custōs, custōdis**, *guard*: custodian.

复数

主格	rḗg-ēs	virtū́tēs	hóminēs	córpora	**-ēs**	**-a**
属格	rḗg-um	virtū́tum	hóminum	córporum	**-um**	**-um**
与格	rḗg-ibus	virtū́tibus	homínibus	corpóribus	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
宾格	rḗg-ēs	virtū́tēs	hóminēs	córpora	**-ēs**	**-a**
夺格	rḗg-ibus	virtū́tibus	homínibus	corpóribus	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

性

虽然有不少第三变格法名词的性可以借助一些规则来记忆，但除了指人的名词是阳性或阴性以外，其他大部分规则都有许多例外情况。[1] 最保险的方法就是在第一次碰到名词时就记住它的性。[2]

翻译

在翻译(和变格)的过程中，要非常注意这样一个事实，即第三变格法名词可能会被一个第一或第二变格法形容词所修饰，如 *great king* 在拉丁语中就是 **magnus rēx, magnī rēgis,** etc.，*true peace* 是 **vēra pāx, vērae pācis,** etc.。虽然形容词和名词必须在性、数、格上保持一致，但其词尾的拼写却不一定相同。

由于第三变格法名词的某些词尾与其他变格法名词的不同格的词尾相同(如单数与格的**-ī** 与第二变格法的单数属格和阳性复数主格相同)，所以在阅读和翻译的时候，不仅要注意词序和语境，还要辨认出是哪种名词的变格。在这里，认真细致地学习词汇同样是成功的关键。

---

[1] 不过，以下规则没有或几乎没有例外：

阳性：

-or, -ōris (**amor, -ōris; labor, -ōris; arbor,** *tree* 是主要例外)

-tor, -tōris (**victor, -tōris; scrīptor, -tōris,** *writer*)

阴性(包括大量抽象名词)：

-tās, -tātis (**vēritās, -tātis,** *truth*; **lībertās, -tātis**)

-tūs, -tūtis (**virtūs, -tūtis; senectūs, -tūtis,** *old age*)

-tūdō, -tūdinis (**multitūdō, -tūdinis; pulchritūdō, -tūdinis**)

-tiō, -tiōnis (**nātiō, -tiōnis; ōrātiō, -tiōnis**)

中性：

-us (**corpus, corporis; tempus, temporis; genus, generis**)

-e, -al, -ar (**mare, maris,** *sea*; **animal, animālis**)

-men (**carmen, carminis; nōmen, nōminis**)

符合这些规则的名词的性将不在注释中给出。

[2] 通过了解某个形容词(如 **magnus, -a, -um**)与名词连用的正确形式，也能有所助益。这一方法可以使名词的性更容易记忆，类似于在罗曼语中借助名词来学习定冠词。例如：**magna virtūs, magnum corpus, magnus labor**。

词汇表

ámor, amṓris, m., *love* (amorous, enamored; cp. **amō, amīcus**)
cármen, cárminis, n., *song, poem* (charm)
cīvitās, cīvitā́tis, f., *state, citizenship* (city; cp. **cīvis,** Ch. 14)
córpus, córporis, n., *body* (corps, corpse, corpuscle, corpulent, corporal, corporeal, corporate, corporation, incorporate, corsage, corset)
hómō, hóminis, m., *human being, man* (homicide, homage; homo sapiens, but not the prefix homo-; cp. **hūmānus** and **vir**)
lábor, labṓris, m., *labor, work, toil; a work, production* (laboratory, belabor, laborious, collaborate, elaborate; cp. **labōrō,** Ch. 21)
líttera, -ae, f., *a letter of the alphabet;* **lítterae, -ā́rum,** pl., *a letter* (*epistle*), *literature* (literal, letters, belles-lettres, illiterate, alliteration)
mōs, mṓris, m., *habit, custom, manner;* **mṓrēs, mṓrum,** pl., *habits, morals, character* (mores, moral, immoral, immorality, morale, morose)
nṓmen, nṓminis, n., *name* (nomenclature, nominate, nominative, nominal, noun, pronoun, renown, denomination, ignominy, misnomer)
pāx, pā́cis, f., *peace* (pacify, pacific, pacifist, appease, pay)
rēgī́na, -ae, f., *queen* (Regina, regina, reginal; cp. **regō,** Ch. 16)
rēx, rḗgis, m., *king* (regal, regalia, regicide, royal; cp. rajah)
témpus, témporis, n., *time; occasion, opportunity* (tempo, temporary, contemporary, temporal, temporize, extempore, tense [of a verb])
térra, -ae, f., *earth, ground, land, country* (terrestrial, terrace, terrier, territory, inter [verb], parterre, subterranean, terra cotta)
úxor, uxṓris, f., *wife* (uxorial, uxorious, uxoricide)
vírgō, vírginis, f., *maiden, virgin* (virgin, virginal, virginity, Virginia)
vírtūs, virtū́tis, f., *manliness, courage; excellence, character, worth, virtue* (virtuoso, virtuosity, virtual; cp. **vir**)
nóvus, -a, -um, *new; strange* (novel, novelty, novice, innovate)
post, prep. + acc., *after, behind* (posterity, posterior, posthumous, post mortem, P.M. = post meridiem, preposterous, post- as a prefix, postgraduate, postlude, postwar, etc.; cp. **postrēmum,** Ch. 40)
sub, prep. + abl. with verbs of rest, + acc. with verbs of motion, *under, up under, close to* (sub- or by assimilation suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sus-, in countless compounds: subterranean, suburb, succeed, suffix, suggest, support, sustain)
aúdeō, audḗre, aúsus sum (the unusual third principal part of this "semi-deponent" verb is explained in Ch. 34), *to dare* (audacious, audacity)
nécō (1), *to murder, kill* (internecine; related to **noceō,** Ch. 35, and **necro-** from Gk. **nekros**).

练习与复习

1. Secundās litterās discipulae herī vidēbās et dē verbīs tum cōgitābās.
2. Fēminae sine morā cīvitātem dē īnsidiīs et exitiō malō monēbunt.

3. Rēx et rēgīna igitur crās nōn audēbunt ibi remanēre.
4. Mōrēs Graecōrum nōn erant sine culpīs vitiīsque.
5. Quandō hominēs satis virtūtis habēbunt?
6. Corpora vestra sunt sāna et animī sunt plēnī sapientiae.
7. Propter mōrēs hūmānōs pācem vēram nōn habēbimus.
8. Poteritne cīvitās perīcula temporum nostrōrum superāre?
9. Post bellum multōs librōs dē pāce et remediīs bellī vidēbant.
10. Officia sapientiamque oculīs animī possumus vidēre.
11. Without sound character we cannot have peace.
12. Many students used to have small time for Greek literature.
13. After bad times true virtue and much labor will help the state.
14. The daughters of your friends were dining there yesterday.

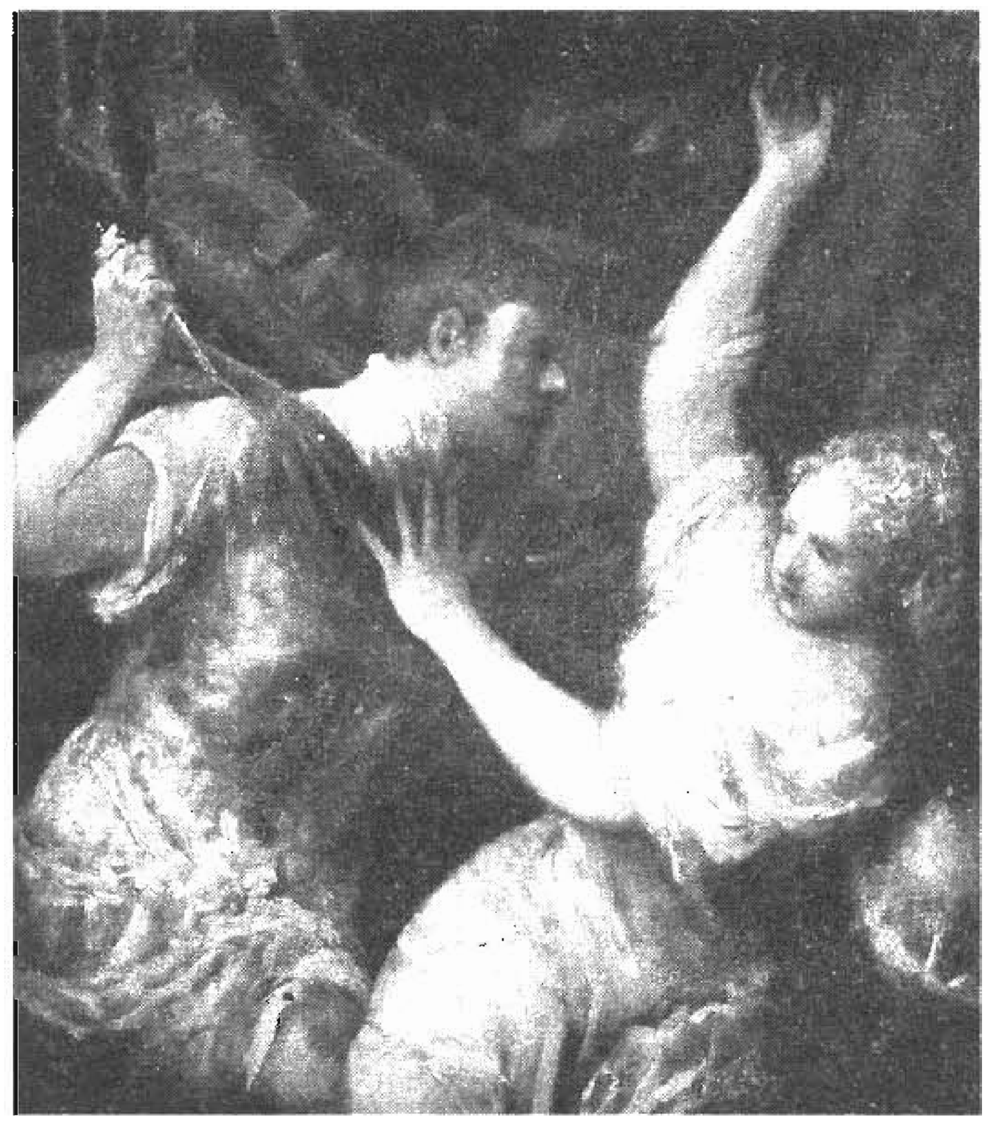
古代名言

1. Homō sum. (*Terence.)
2. Nihil sub sōle novum (*Ecclesiastes.—**sōl, sōlis,** m., *sun.*—**novum:** sc. **est.**)
3. Carmina nova dē adulēscentiā virginibus puerīsque nunc cantō. (Horace.—**cantāre,** *to sing.*)
4. Laudās fortūnam et mōrēs antīquae plēbis. (*Horace.—**plēbs, plēbis,** f., *the common people.*)
5. Bonī propter amōrem virtūtis peccāre ōdērunt. (Horace.—**peccāre,** *to sin.*—**ōdērunt,** defective vb., 3d per. pl., *to hate.*)
6. Sub prīncipe dūrō temporibusque malīs audēs esse bonus. (Martial.—**prīnceps, -cipis,** m., *chief, prince;* **dūrus, -a, -um,** *hard, harsh.*)
7. Populus stultus virīs indignīs honōrēs saepe dat. (Horace.—**honor, -nōris,** *honor, office.*—**indignus, -a, -um,** *unworthy.*)
8. Nōmina stultōrum in parietibus et portīs semper vidēmus. (Cicero.—The desire to scribble names and sentiments in public places is as old as antiquity!—**pariēs, -etis,** m., *wall of a building.*)
9. Ōtium sine litterīs mors est. (*Seneca.—**mors, mortis,** f., *death.*)
10. Multae nātiōnēs servitūtem tolerāre possunt; nostra cīvitās nōn potest. Praeclāra est recuperātiō lībertātis. (Cicero.—**nātiō, -ōnis** = Eng.—**servitūs, -tūtis,** *servitude.*—**praeclārus, -a, -um,** *noble, remarkable.*—**recuperātiō, -ōnis,** *recovery.*—**lībertās, -tātis** = Eng.)
11. Nihil sine magnō labōre vīta mortālibus dat. (Horace.—**mortālis, -tālis,** *a mortal.*)
12. Quōmodo in perpetuā pāce salvī et līberī esse poterimus? (Cicero.—**quōmodo,** *how.*)
13. Glōria in altissimīs Deō et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae voluntātis. (*Luke.—**altissimīs,** abl. pl., *the highest.*—**voluntās, -tātis,** *will.*)

THE RAPE OF LUCRETIA

Tarquinius Superbus erat rēx Rōmānōrum, et Sextus Tarquinius erat fīlius malus tyrannī. Sextus Lucrētiam, uxōrem Collātīnī, rapuit, et fēmina bona, propter magnum amōrem virtūtis, sē necāvit. Rōmānī antīquī virtūtem animōsque Lucrētiae semper laudābant et Tarquiniōs culpābant.

(Livy 1.58; Tarquinius Superbus was Rome's last king, Collatinus a Roman nobleman; according to legend, the rape of Lucretia led to the overthrow of the Tarquin dynasty, the end of monarchy, and the establishment of the Roman Republic in 509 B.C.—**rapuit,** *raped.*—**sē,** *herself.*—**necāvit,** a past tense form.)



Tarquin and Lucretia
Titian, 1570–75
ildenden Kuenste, Vienna, Austria

CATULLUS DEDICATES HIS POETRY BOOK

Cornēliō, virō magnae sapientiae, dabō pulchrum librum novum. Cornēlī, mī amīce, librōs meōs semper laudābās, et es magister doctus litterārum! Quārē habē novum labōrem meum: fāma librī (et tua fāma) erit perpetua.

(Catullus 1, prose adaptation; see L.I. 1. Catullus dedicated his first book of poems to the historian and biographer Cornelius Nepos.—**doctus, -a, -um,** *learned, scholarly.*)

词源点滴

猜一猜,[意]**uomo**,[西] **hombre**,[法]**homme** 和 **on** 都源于哪个拉丁词?

"Tense"(时态)意为一个动词的"时间",它经由古法语 **tens** 源于 **tempus**;但表示"stretched tight"的"tense"却源于 **tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsum,** *to stretch*。

在晚期拉丁语中,**cīvitās** 逐渐开始意指 *city* 而不是 *state*, 于是它成了罗曼

语中表示“城市”的母词:[意] **città**,[西] **ciudad**,[法] **cité**。

In the readings

2. solar, solstice.—novel, novelty, novice, novitiate, innovate, renovate. 3. chant, enchant, incantation, cant, recant, canto, cantabile, precentor. 4. plebeian, plebe, plebiscite. 5. peccant, peccadillo. 6. dour, duration, endure, obdurate. 13. volunteer, involuntary.

以下是本课 p.42 注释 1 中三种后缀的罗曼语和英语对应词。

拉丁语	**意大利语**	**西班牙语**	**法语**	**英语**
-tās, -tātis	-tà	-dad	-té	-ty
vēritās	verità	verdad	vérité	verity (truth)
antīquitās	antichità	antigüedad	antiquité	antiquity
-tiō, -tiōnis	-zione	-ción	-tion	-tion
nātiō	nazione	nación	nation	nation
ratiō	razione	ración	ration	ration
-tor, -tōris	-tore	-tor	-teur	-tor
inventor	inventore	inventor	inventeur	inventor
actor	attore	actor	acteur	actor

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, et discipulī et discipulae! Quid nunc agitis? 现在你已经看到,拉丁语在我们的语言中比比皆是;事实上,现在认为拉丁语是一门死语言的人是 **rāra avis**。对于持这些观点的人,你可以报以讽刺:**quot hominēs, tot sententiae**——这是公元前 2 世纪的喜剧作家特伦斯的一句谚语,意为 *there are as many opinions as there are men*。

注意词汇中的 **terra**:在上一课中我们见到了“subterranean”,现在你是否想起了 E.T.[1]? 20 世纪 80 年代,这个小家伙是人们最喜爱的外星人(*Extra Terrestrial*,源于 **extrā**, prep. + acc., *beyond* + **terra**)。在熟悉地球之前,他还处于 **terra incognita** 状态;而一旦了解了这个地方,他就感觉自己处于 **terra fīrma** 之上。说起电影,斯蒂芬·斯皮尔伯格最卖座的影片《侏罗纪公园》使我们想起,“霸王龙”(Tyrannosaurus rex)既是一个“暴君”(tyrant),又是一个“王”(king)(斯皮尔伯格的“迅猛龙”[velociraptor]则是可怕的“swift-snatcher”,它源于拉丁语形容词 **vēlōx**, *fast* [如在“velocity”一词中] + **raptor**, 后者是一个第三变格法名词,基于动词 **rapere**, *to seize, snatch, grab*)。**Latīnam semper amābitis—valēte!**

[1]《E. T.》是 1982 年出品的一部深受人们喜爱的美国科幻电影,由斯蒂芬·斯皮尔伯格制作,讲述一个外星生物来到地球的故事。——译者注

第八课

第三变位法动词:现在时不定式,现在时、将来时和未完成时的直陈式,命令式

第三变位法是四种拉丁语变位法中最困难的一种,尤其是在现在时系统(现在时、将来时和未完成时)中。与其他三种变位法的词干元音(第一变位法中的**-ā-**,第二变位法中的**-ē-**,第四变位法中的**-ī-**[我们将在第十课介绍]——与 **laudā́re, monḗre, audī́re** 和 **ágere** 比较)不同,第三变位法的词干元音是短音**-e-**,而且一般不重读。所以到了古典时期,第三变位法发生了一些读音和拼写变化。在这里,最保险的方法依然是记住下面这张词形变化表;现在多花一些功夫,对学习后续课程有莫大的帮助。

现在时直陈式主动态			将来时直陈式主动态	
	1. ág-ō	(*I lead*)	1. ág-am	(*I shall lead*)
单数	2. ág-is	(*you lead*)	2. ág-ēs	(*you will lead*)
	3. ág-it	(*he, she, it leads*)	3. ág-et	(*he, she, it will lead*)
	1. ágimus	(*we lead*)	1. agḗmus	(*we shall lead*)
复数	2. ágitis	(*you lead*)	2. agḗtis	(*you will lead*)
	3. águnt	(*they lead*)	3. ágent	(*they will lead*)

未完成时直陈式主动态

	1. ag-ḗbam	(*I was leading, used to lead,* etc.)
单数	2. ag-ḗbās	(*you were leading,* etc.)
	3. ag-ḗbat	(*he, she, it was leading,* etc.)
	1. agēbā́mus	(*we were leading,* etc.)
复数	2. agēbā́tis	(*you were leading,* etc.)
	3. agḗbant	(*they were leading,* etc.)

现在时命令式主动态

2. **单数** áge (*lead*)　　2. **复数** ágite (*lead*)

现在时不定式

正像**-āre** 和**-ēre** 分别指示着第一变位法和第二变位法一样，**-ere** 也指示着第三变位法。我们又一次看到，一定要认真细致地学习词汇，连长音符号也要留心：我们必须格外小心地区分以**-ēre** 结尾的第二变位法动词和以**-ere** 结尾的第三变位法动词。

现在时词干和现在时直陈式

根据寻找现在时词干的规则，我们去掉不定式的词尾**-re**，就得到了现在时词干 **age-**。这时，我们很自然地期待着加上人称词尾，构成它的现在时直陈式形式。但事实上，第一人称单数中的非重读词干元音完全消失，它在第二、第三人称单数和第一、第二人称复数中变成了**-i-**，在第三人称复数中变成了**-u-**。因此，最实际的方法还是老老实实地记住这些词尾。[1]

将来时直陈式

第三变位法（以及将在第十课学习的第四变位法）将来时的突出特点是，它没有将来时的时态标志**-bi-**。在这里 除第一人称单数以外，**-ē-**是所有形式中将来时的标志 词干元音通过缩约消失了。

未完成时直陈式

第三变位法动词未完成时的构成规则与前两种变位法相同（现在时词干 + **-bam, -bās,** etc.），只是词干元音变成了长音**-ē-**，所以形式与第一、第二变位法类似。

现在时命令式

根据我们已经学过的规则，现在时命令式的第二人称单数就是现在时的词干，比如 **mitte**（源于 **mittere**, *to send*），**pōne**（**pōnere**, *to put*）。而在复数命令式中，我们又一次看到，非重读短音**-e-**变成了**-i-**，所以是 **mittite** 和 **pōnite**（而不是***mittete** 或 ***pōnete**）。

---

[1] 下面这条技巧也许可以帮助我们记忆：(1)对于现在时，用 IOU(四种形式中是 **i**，第一种形式中是 **o**，最后一种形式中是 **u**)来记忆；(2)对于将来时，用剩下两个元音 **a** 和 **e** 来记忆。我们还注意到，元音的变化情况与第一、第二变位法动词将来时词尾的变化情况一致(**-bō, -bis, -bit, -bimus, -bitis, -bunt**)。

Dūcere 的单数命令式最初是 **dūce**，这一形式可见于早期作家普劳图斯的作品。但是后来，**dūce** 中的**-e** 丢掉了。类似的还有另外三个常用的第三变位法动词：**dīc**（**dīcere,** *say*），**fac**（**facere,** *do*），**fer**（**ferre,** *bear*）。其他第三变位法动词都遵循着 **age, mitte** 和 **pōne** 所阐明的规则。四种不规则形式 **dīc, dūc, fac** 和 **fer** 应单独记忆。

词汇表

Cícerō, Cicerṓnis, m., (*Marcus Tullius*) *Cicero* (Ciceronian, cicerone)
cṓpia, -ae, f., *abundance, supply;* **cṓpiae, -ā́rum,** pl., *supplies, troops, forces* (copious, copy, cornucopia)
frā́ter, frā́tris, m., *brother* (fraternal, fraternity, fraternize, fratricide)
laus, laúdis, f., *praise, glory, fame* (laud, laudable, laudation, laudatory, magna cum laude; cp. **laudō**)
lībértās, lībertā́tis, f., *liberty* (cp. **līber, līberō,** Ch. 19, **līberālis,** Ch. 39)
rátiō, ratiṓnis, f., *reckoning, account; reason, judgment, consideration; system; manner, method* (ratio, ration, rational, irrational, ratiocination)
scrī́ptor, scrīptṓris, m., *writer, author* (scriptorium; cp. **scrībō** below)
sóror, sorṓris, f., *sister* (sororal, sororate, sororicide, sorority)
victṓria, -ae, f., *victory* (victorious; see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 5, and cp. **vincō** below)
dum, conj., *while, as long as, at the same time that;* + subjunctive, *until*
ad, prep. + acc., *to, up to, near to,* in the sense of "place to which" with verbs of motion; contrast the dat. of indirect object (administer, ad hoc, ad hominem). In compounds the **d** is sometimes assimilated to the following consonant so that **ad** may appear, for instance, as **ac-** (**accipiō: ad-capiō**), **ap-** (**appellō: ad-pellō**), **a-** (**aspiciō: ad-spiciō**).
ex or **ē,** prep. + abl., *out of, from, from within; by reason of, on account of;* following cardinal numbers, *of* (exact, except, exhibit, evict). The Romans used **ex** before consonants or vowels; **ē** before consonants only. Like **ad** and many other prepositions, **ex/ē** was often used as a prefix in compounds, sometimes with the **x** assimilated to the following consonant; e.g., **excipiō, ēdūcō, ēventus, efficiō** from **ex** + **faciō,** etc.
númquam, adv., *never* (cp. **umquam,** Ch. 23)
támen, adv., *nevertheless, still*
ágō, ágere, ḗgī, ā́ctum, *to drive, lead, do, act; pass, spend* (life or time); **grātiās agere** + dat., *to thank someone,* lit., *to give thanks to* (agent, agenda, agile, agitate, active, actor, action, actual, actuate)
dēmṓnstrō (1), *to point out, show, demonstrate* (demonstrable, demonstration, demonstrative; see the demonstrative pronouns in Ch. 9)
díscō, díscere, dídicī, *to learn* (cp. **discipulus, discipula**)
dóceō, docḗre, dócuī, dóctum, *to teach* (docent, docile, document, doctor, doctrine, indoctrinate)
dū́cō, dū́cere, dū́xī, dúctum, *to lead; consider, regard; prolong* (ductile, ab-

duct, adduce, deduce, educe, induce, produce, reduce, seduce)

gérō, gérere, géssī, géstum, *to carry; carry on, manage, conduct, wage, accomplish, perform* (gerund, gesture, gesticulate, jest, belligerent, congest, digest, suggest, exaggerate, register, registry)

scrī́bō, scrī́bere, scrī́psī, scrī́ptum, *to write, compose* (ascribe, circumscribe, conscript, describe, inscribe, proscribe, postscript, rescript, scripture, subscribe, transcribe, scribble, scrivener, shrive)

tráhō, tráhere, trā́xī, tráctum, *to draw, drag; derive, acquire* (attract, contract, retract, subtract, tractor, etc.; see Etymology section below)

víncō, víncere, vī́cī, víctum, *to conquer, overcome* (convince, convict, evince, evict, invincible, Vincent, victor, Victoria, vanquish)

练习与复习

1. Tempora nostra nunc sunt mala; vitia nostra, magna.
2. Quārē soror mea uxōrī tuae litterās scrībit (scrībet, scrībēbat)?
3. Tyrannus populum stultum ē terrā vestrā dūcet (dūcit, dūcēbat).
4. Ubi satis ratiōnis animōrumque in hominibus erit?
5. Cōpia vērae virtūtis multās culpās superāre poterat.
6. In lībera cīvitāte adulēscentiam agēbāmus.
7. Rēgem malum tolerāre numquam dēbēmus.
8. Post parvam moram multa verba dē īnsidiīs scrīptōrum stultōrum scrībēmus.
9. The body will remain there under the ground.
10. Write (sg. and pl.) many things about the glory of our state.
11. Does reason always lead your (pl.) queen to virtue?
12. We shall always see many Greek names there.

古代名言

1. Frāter meus vītam in ōtiō semper aget. (Terence.)
2. Age, age! Iuvā mē! Dūc mē ad secundum fīlium meum. (Terence.—**age, age** = *come, come!*)
3. Ō amīcī, lībertātem perdimus. (Laberius.—**perdere,** *to destroy.*)
4. Nova perīcula populō Rōmānō expōnam sine morā. (Cicero.—**expōnere,** *to set forth.*)
5. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
6. Ex meīs errōribus hominibus rēctum iter dēmōnstrāre possum. (Seneca.—**error, -rōris.**[2]—**rēctus, -a, -um,** *right.*—**iter, itineris,** *n., road, way.*)
7. Catullus Mārcō Tulliō Cicerōnī magnās grātiās agit. (Catullus.—See "Thanks a Lot, Tully!" Ch. 27.)
8. Eximia fōrma virginis oculōs hominum convertit. (Livy.—**eximius, -a, -um,** *extraordinary.*—**convertere,** *to turn around, attract.*)

---

[1] 今后在注释中，如果一个拉丁词很容易让人想起英语派生词，其英语含义将不再注出。



;old funerary mask of "Agamemnon"
Mycenae, 16th century B.C.
'haeological Museum, Athens Greece

9. Agamemnon magnās cōpiās ē terrā Graecā ad Trōiam dūcet, ubi multōs virōs necābit. (Cicero.—**Agamemnon, -nonis.**)
10. Amor laudis hominēs trahit. (Cicero.)
11. Auctōrēs pācis Caesar cōnservābit. (Cicero.—**auctor, -tōris,** *author.*—**Caesar, -saris.**)
12. Inter multās cūrās labōrēsque carmina scrībere nōn possum. (Horace.—**inter,** prep. + acc., *among.*)
13. Dum in magnā urbe dēclāmās, mī amīce, scrīptōrem Trōiānī bellī in ōtiō relegō. (Horace.—**urbs, urbis,** f., *city.*—**dēclāmāre,** *to declaim.*—**Trōiānus, -a, -um.**—**relegere,** *to re-read.*)
14. Nōn vītae, sed scholae, discimus. (*Seneca.—**vītae** and **scholae,** datives expressing purpose; see S.S., p. 443—**schola, -ae,** *school.*)
15. Hominēs, dum docent, discunt. (*Seneca.)
16. Ratiō mē dūcet, nōn fortūna. (Livy.)

CICERO ON THE ETHICS OF WAGING WAR

Cīvitās bellum sine causā bonā aut propter īram gerere nōn dēbet. Sī fortūnās et agrōs vītāsque populī nostrī sine bellō dēfendere poterimus, tum pācem cōnservāre dēbēbimus; sī, autem, nōn poterimus esse salvī et servāre pātriam lībertātemque nostram sine bellō, bellum erit necessārium. Semper dēbēmus dēmōnstrāre, tamen, magnum officium in bellō, et magnam clēmentiam post victōriam.

(Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* 1.11.34–36 and *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 3.23.34–35, and see L.A. 7 for a fuller adaptation.—**causa, -ae.**—**dēfendere.**—**autem,** conj., *however.*—**necessārius, -a, -um.**—**clēmentia, -ae.**)

词源点滴

与 **trahō** 相关的词还有：abstract, detract, detraction, distract, distraction, distraught, extract, protract, portray, portrait, retreat, trace, tract, tractable, intractable,

traction, contraction, retraction, trait, treat, treaty, train, training 等等。

In the readings

6. rectitude; 与英语同源词“right”比较。—itinerary, itinerant。 11. kaiser, czar。 14. “School”源于拉丁词 **schola**，后者又源于希腊词 **scholē**, *leisure*。“Waging War”: causation; defense, defensive; necessary; clement, clemency。

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 本课出现了大量新词，你的语言储备已经变得十分丰饶(cornucopia，a “horn of plenty”，源于 **cōpia+cornū,** *horn*，它与“cornet”同源)。**Scrīptor** 属于一大类阳性第三变格法名词，它们由后缀**-or** 取代动词第四个主要部分中的**-um** 而构成。后缀**-or** 意为执行动词动作的人。于是，**monitor, -tōris** 指的就是 *one who advises*，即 *an advisor*；**amātor** 指的是 *a lover* 等等。那么，由 **docēre** 和 **agō** 而来的有着类似结构的名词是什么？查看一下本课介绍的其他动词以及前几课的词汇，你还能构成和辨识出哪些**-or** 名词？

如果懂得一个拉丁根词，那么你往往就能推断出整个词族的含义，比如动词 **discere** 与 **discipulus** 和 **discipula** 有关，也与名词 **disciplīna** 有关。我常常指出，“discipline”并不是“punishment”，而是“learning”。如果你看过 1993 年的影片《无脸的男人》(*Man Without a Face*)，你就会听到大量拉丁语，包括英格兰温彻斯特学院古老的箴言：**aut disce aut discēde,** *either learn or leave*(我把这句话贴在了办公室的门上)。我绝对相信，你会一直学习下去，而不会离开。不过现在，**valēte, discipulī et discipulae!**

第九课

指示词 Hic, Ille, Iste；特殊的 –īus 形容词

指示词

拉丁语指示词(demonstratives，源于 **dēmōnstrāre**, *to point out*)可以起代词或形容词的作用，对应于英语中的 *this/these* 和 *that/those*，变格一般遵循 **magnus, –a, –um** 的变格方式(参见第四课)，例外情况在下列词形变化表中用下划线标记了出来(和往常一样，词形变化表应当从左到右大声朗读出来，以帮助记忆，如 **hic, haec, hoc; huius, huius, huius;** …)。

	ille, *that, those*			**hic,** *this, these*		
	阳性	**阴性**	**中性**	**阳性**	**阴性**	**中性**
单数						
主格	ílle	ílla	íllud	hic	haec	hoc
属格	illī́us	illī́us	illī́us	húius	húius	húius
与格	íllī	íllī	íllī	huic	huic	huic
宾格	íllum	íllam	íllud	hunc	hanc	hoc
夺格	íllō	íllā	íllō	hōc	hāc	hōc
复数						
主格	íllī	íllae	ílla	hī	hae	haec
属格	illṓrum	illā́rum	illṓrum	hṓrum	hā́rum	hṓrum
与格	íllīs	íllīs	íllīs	hīs	hīs	hīs
宾格	íllōs	íllās	ílla	hōs	hās	haec
夺格	íllīs	íllīs	íllīs	hīs	hīs	hīs

变格

Iste, ista, istud, *that* (*near you*), *that of yours*, *such* 遵循着 **ille** 的变格方式：

主格 íste, ísta, ístud;属格 istíus, istíus, istíus;与格 ístī, ístī, ístī,等等。我们应当能够随口说出所有形式。

所有这三种指示词的形式都非常接近于 **magnus, -a, -um**。除中性的 **haec** 以外,复数形式与之完全一致。最显著的区别是单数属格和单数与格形式(下面还要介绍其他九个类似的特殊形容词),以及 **hic** 的几种形式中的**-c**,它是指示性非重读后接成分**-ce** 的缩略形式。请注意,**huius** 和 **huic** 属于少数几个 **ui** 起双元音作用的词;关于 **huius** (= **huí-yus**)的特殊发音,参见导言部分。

用法和翻译

一般来说,指示词或者指距离说话者很近的人或事物(**hic liber**, *this book = this book of mine, this book here*),或者指距离听者很近的人或事物(**iste liber**, *that book, that book of yours, that book next to you*),或指与两者都很远的人或事物(**ille liber**, *that book = that book over there, that book of his or hers*)。**Ille** 和 **hic** 有时分别等价于 *the former* 和 *the latter*,有时其确切含义类似于英语中的人称代词 *he, she, it, they*;**ille** 也可意指 *the famous . . .* ;**iste** 有时最好翻译成 *such*,偶尔含轻视之意,比如 **ista īra**, *that awful anger of yours*。

指示词在修饰名词时,起形容词的作用;由于指示词表强调,所以一般位于所修饰名词之前。下面是一些例子。

hic liber, *this book*
ille liber, *that book*
illīus librī, *of that book*
illī librī, *those books*
illī librō, *to that book*
illō librō, *by that book*
istīus amīcī, *of that friend (of yours)*
istī amīcī, *those friends (of yours)*
istī amīcō, *to that friend (of yours)*

hanc cīvitātem, *this state*
huic cīvitātī, *to this state*
illī cīvitātī, *to that state*
illae cīvitātēs, *those states*
haec cīvitās, *this state*
haec cōnsilia, *these plans*
hoc cōnsilium, *this plan*
hōc cōnsiliō, *by this plan*
huic cōnsiliō, *to this plan*

指示词在单独使用时起代词(pronouns,源于拉丁词 **prō**, *for, in place of*+ **nōmen**, *name, noun*)的作用。根据性、数和语境的不同,它们一般可以译成 *this man, that woman, these things* 等等。

hic, *this man*
hanc, *this woman*
hunc, *this man*
haec, *this woman*

ille, *that man*
illa, *that woman*
illa, *those things*
huius, *of this man or woman*[1]

[1] 作为规则,中性指示词只有在主格和宾格的情况下才能用作代词。对于属格、与格和夺格,罗马人倾向于把指示词用作与表示"事物"的名词相一致的形容词,例如 **huius reī**, *of this thing*。

haec, *these things*
istum, *that man*
istārum, *of those women*
illī, *to that man or woman*[1]
illī, *those men*

特殊的-īus 形容词

有九个第一、第二变格法形容词的单数形式是不规则的，其单数属格词尾是**-īus**，单数与格词尾是**-ī**，遵循着 **illīus** 和 **illī** 的变格方法。其他单数形式和所有复数形式则符合规则的第一、第二变格法形容词，遵循着 **magnus, -a, -um** 的变格方法。[1]

	sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*			**alius, alia, aliud,** *another, other*		
单数						
主格	sṓlus	sṓla	sṓlum	álius	ália	áliud
属格	sōlī́us	sōlī́us	sōlī́us	alterī́us[3]	alterī́us	alterī́us
与格	sṓlī	sṓlī	sṓlī	áliī	áliī	áliī
宾格	sṓlum	sṓlam	sṓlum	álium	áliam	áliud
夺格	sṓlō	sṓlā	sṓlō	áliō	áliā	áliō
复数						
主格	sṓlī	sṓlae etc.	sṓla	áliī	áliae etc.	ália

借助于首字母缩略词 UNUS NAUTA，可以很容易地记住这九个形容词。它的每一个字母都代表着其中一个形容词的首字母（同时还包括了其中一个形容词 **ūnus**，甚至还可以使我们想起 **nauta** 虽然是第一变格法名词，却是阳性的，所以用阳性形式 **ūnus** 来修饰它）。还要注意，九个词中的每一个都指示数的某个方面：

UNUS:

ūnus, –a, –um (ūnīus, etc.), *one*

nūllus, –a, –um (nūllīus, etc.), *no, none*

ūllus, –a, –um, *any*

sōlus, –a, –um, *alone*, only

NAUTA:

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither*

alius, –a, –ud, *another, other*

---

[1] 除了中性单数形式 **aliud**（与 **illud** 比较）。

[2] 这种借自 **alter** 的形式要比规则形式 **alīus** 更为常见。

uter, utra, utrum, *either, which* (*of two*)

tōtus, –a, –um, *whole, entire*

alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (*of two*)

词汇表

lócus, -ī, m., *place; passage in literature;* pl., **lóca, -ṓrum,** n., *places, region;* **lócī, -ṓrum,** m., *passages in literature* (allocate, dislocate, locality, locomotion)
mórbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness* (morbid, morbidity)
stúdium, -iī, n. *eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study* (studio, studious; cp. **studeō,** Ch. 35)
hic, haec, hoc, *this; the latter;* at times weakened to *he, she, it, they* (ad hoc)
ílle, ílla, íllud, *that; the former; the famous; he, she, it, they*
íste, ísta, ístud, *that of yours, that; such;* sometimes with contemptuous force
álius, -a, -ud, *other, another;* **áliī . . . áliī,** *some . . . others* (alias, alibi, alien)
álter, áltera, álterum, *the other* (*of two*), *second* (alter, alteration, alternate, alternative, altercation, altruism, adulterate, adultery)
neúter, neútra, neútrum, *not either, neither* (neutrality, neutron)
nū́llus, -a, -um, *not any, no, none* (null, nullify, nullification, annul)
sṓlus, -a, -um, *alone, only, the only;* **nōn sṓlum . . . sed étiam,** *not only . . . but also* (sole, solitary, soliloquy, solo, desolate, sullen)
tṓtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire* (total, totality, factotum, in toto)
ū́llus, -a, -um, *any*
ū́nus, -a, -um, *one, single, alone* (unit, unite, union, onion, unanimous, unicorn, uniform, unique, unison, universal, university)
úter, útra, útrum, *either, which* (*of two*)
énim, postpositive conj., *for, in fact, truly*
in, prep. + acc., *into, toward; against* (also **in** + abl., *in, on,* see Ch. 3). In compounds **in-** may also appear as **il-, ir-, im-;** and it may have its literal meanings or have simply an intensive force. (Contrast the inseparable negative prefix **in-,** *not, un-, in-.*)
nímis or **nímium,** adv., *too, too much, excessively*

练习与复习

1. Hic tōtus liber litterās Rōmānās semper laudat.
2. Hī igitur illīs deābus herī grātiās agēbant.
3. Illud dē vitiīs istīus rēgīnae nunc scrībam, et ista poenās dabit.
4. Neuter alterī plēnam cōpiam pecūniae tum dabit.
5. Potestne laus ūllīus terrae esse perpetua?
6. Labor ūnīus numquam poterit hās cōpiās vincere.
7. Mōrēs istīus scrīptōris erant nimis malī.
8. Nūllī magistrī, tamen, sub istō vēra docēre audēbant.

9. Valēbitne pāx in patriā nostrā post hanc victōriam?
10. Dum illī ibi remanent, aliī nihil agunt, aliī discunt.
11. Cicero was writing about the glory of the other man and his wife.
12. The whole state was thanking this man's brother alone.
13. On account of that courage of yours those (men) will lead no troops into these places tomorrow.
14. Will either book be able to overcome the faults of these times?

古代名言

1. Ubi illās nunc vidēre possum? (Terence.)
2. Hic illam virginem in mātrimōnium dūcet. (Terence.—**mātrimōnium, -iī.**)
3. Huic cōnsiliō palmam dō. (Terence.—**palma, -ae,** *palm branch* of victory.)
4. Virtūtem enim illīus virī amāmus. (Cicero.)
5. Sōlus hunc iuvāre potes. (Terence.)
6. Poena istīus ūnīus hunc morbum cīvitātis relevābit sed perīculum semper remanēbit. (Cicero.—**relevāre,** *to relieve, diminish.*)
7. Hī enim dē exitiō huius cīvitātis et tōtīus orbis terrārum cōgitant. (Cicero.—**orbis, orbis,** m., *circle, orb;* **orbis terrārum,** idiom, *the world.*)
8. Est nūllus locus utrī hominī in hāc terrā. (Martial.)
9. Nōn sōlum ēventus hoc docet—iste est magister stultōrum!—sed etiam ratiō. (Livy.—**ēventus,** *outcome.*)

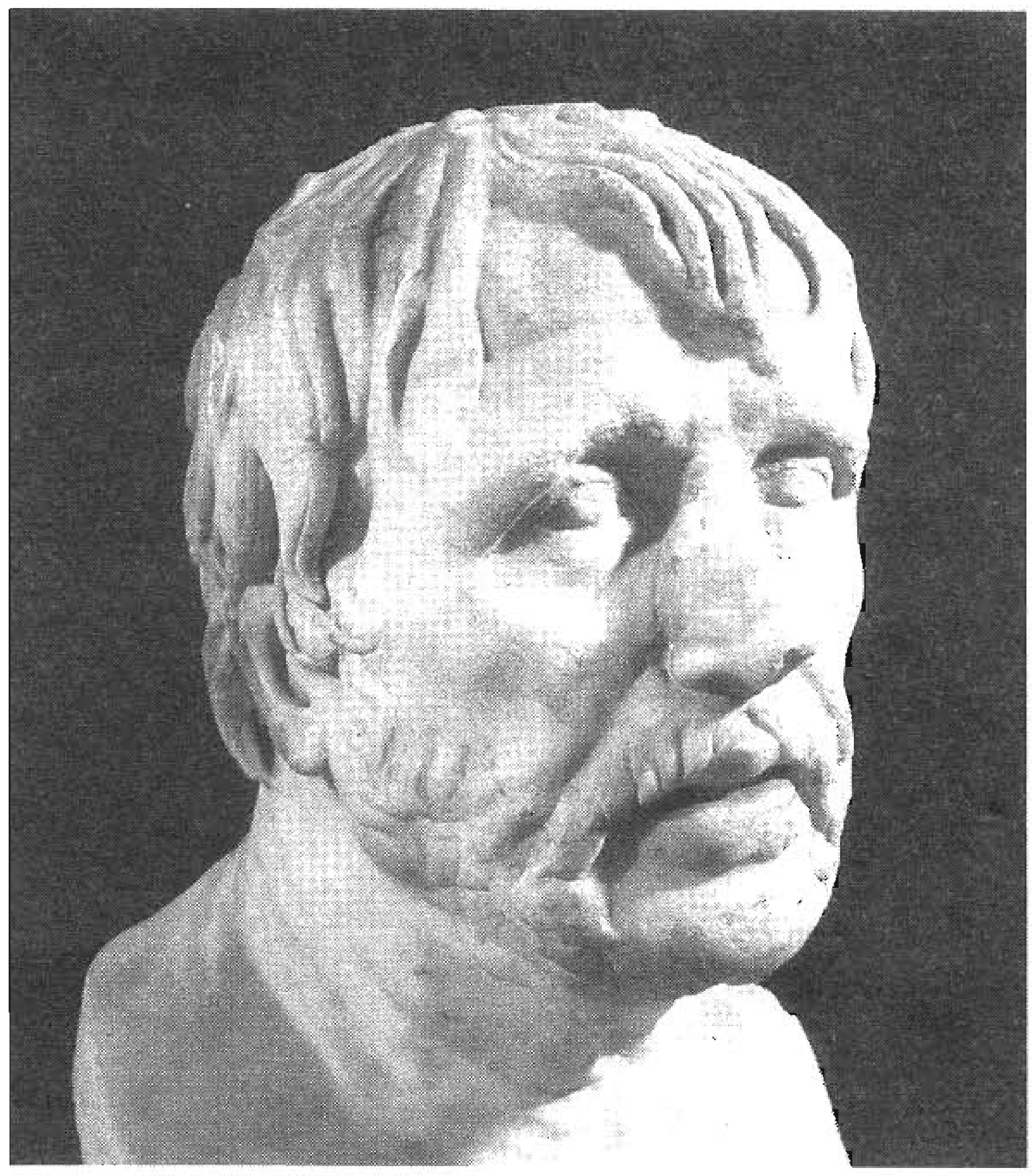
WHEN I HAVE . . . ENOUGH!

Habet Āfricānus mīliēns, tamen captat.
Fortūna multīs dat nimis, satis nūllī.

(*Martial 12.10; meter: choliambic.—**Āfricānus, -ī,** a personal name.—**mīliēns,** call it *millions.*—**captāre,** *to hunt for legacies.*)

Sī vīs studēre philosophiae animōque, hoc studium nōn potest valēre sine frūgālitāte. Haec frūgālitās est paupertās voluntāria. Tolle, igitur, istās excūsātiōnēs: "Nōndum satis pecūniae habeō. Sī quandō illud 'satis' habēbō, tum mē tōtum philosophiae dabō." Incipe nunc philosophiae, nōn pecūniae, studēre.

(Seneca, *Epistulae* 17.5.—**vīs,** irreg. form, *you wish.*—**studēre** + dat., *to be eager for, devote oneself to.*—**frūgālitās -tātis.**—**paupertās, -tātis,** *small means, poverty.*—**voluntārius, -a, -um.**—**tollere,** *to take away.*—**excūsātiō, -ōnis.**—**nōndum,** adv., *not yet.*—**incipe,** imper., *begin.*)



Seneca (the Younger)
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

词源点滴

in-作为介词前缀的例子：invoke, induce, induct, inscribe, inhibit, indebted。

in-作为不可分否定前缀的例子：invalid, innumerable, insane, insuperable, intolerant, inanimate, infamous, inglorious, impecunious, illiberal, irrational。

拉丁词 **ille** 为意大利语、西班牙语和法语提供了定冠词和第三人称代词；拉丁词 **ūnus** 为这些语言提供了不定冠词。下表中列出了其中一些形式以及其他几个派生词：

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
ille, illa	il, la	el, la	le, la
ille, illa	egli, ella	él, ella	il, elle
ūnus, ūna	un(o), una	un(o), una	un, une
tōtus	tutto	todo	tout
sōlus	solo	solo	seul
alter	altro	otro	autre

法语词 **là** (*there*)源于 **illāc** (**viā**)，这是一个副词形式，意为 *there* (*that way*)；意大利语词 **là** 和西班牙语词 **allá** 也属类似情况。

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 在道奇城(Dodge City)[1] 西郊的一个拴牲口的桩子上，我们发现了这

[1] 道奇城，美国堪萨斯州的一个城市，原以家畜贸易闻名。该城在 19 世纪的地位十分重要，那时这里的暴力事件很出名，有“美国最邪恶的小城”之称。——译者注

样一条古老的铭文：

TOTI
EMUL
ESTO

啊哈！——看上去像是我们新学的 **tōtus** 的与格 + **emul**（也许是 **simul,** *simultaneously*?）+ **sum, es, est** 的某种形式，也许是奇怪的将来时命令式？不！——它只不过写着"to tie mules to"(将骡子拴于[此处])！

以下是拉丁语会话以及其他课堂活动有可能用到的一些词汇：**surgere**, *to rise, stand up* (surge, resurgence, insurgence)；**sedēre**, *to sit* (sedentary)；**ambulāre**, *to walk* (ambulatory, amble, ambulance)；**aperīre** (第四变位法), *to open* (aperture)；**claudere**, *to close* (clause, closet)；**dēclīnāre**; **coniugāre**; **crēta, –ae**, *chalk* (cretaceous)；**ērāsūra, –ae**, *eraser*; **stilus, –ī**, *pen* or *pencil* (actually a stylus)；**tabula, –ae**, *chalkboard* (tabular, tabulate)；**tabella, –ae** 是 **tabula**, *notebook, writing pad* 的指小形式 (tablet)；**iānua, –ae**, *door* (janitor, Janus, January)；**fenestra, –ae**, *window*; **cella, –ae**, *room* (cell)；**sella, –ae**, *chair*; **mēnsa, –ae**, *table*; **podium, –iī**。如果老师对你说：**Salvē, discipula** (or **discipule**)! **Quid agis hodiē? Surge ex sellā tuā, ambulā ad tabulam, et dēclīnā "hic, haec, hoc."** 现在你知道该怎么做了，而且还知道要开始说拉丁语了——这并非那么困难(连蹒跚学步的罗马幼童都能做到！)：**semper valēte, amīcae amīcīque!**

第十课

第四变位法动词和第三变位法的-iō 动词

本课介绍主动态的最后一种规则的变位法——第四变位法（用 **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audī-tum,** *to hear* 来说明）以及第三变位法的**-iō** 动词(用 **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum,** *to take, seize* 来说明)。与前两种变位法类似,第四变位法的标志也是一个长的词干元音;如下列词形变化表所示,**-ī-**在现在时系统(现在时、将来时和未完成时)中都保留,只是在元音和词末的**-t** 之前要变短。某些第三变位法动词在现在时系统中是以同样方式构成的,只不过**-i-**总是短的,且单数命令式(**cape**)和现在时主动态不定式(**capere**)中的词干元音是 **e**。表中附上 **agō** 的变化形式是为了帮助比较和复习(参见第八课)。

现在时直陈式主动态

	1. ágō	aúdi-ō	cápi-ō	(*I hear, take*)
单数	2. ágis	aúdī-s	cápi-s	(*you hear, take*)
	3. ágit	aúdi-t	cápi-t	(*he, she, it hears, takes*)
	1. ágimus	audī́mus	cápimus	(*we hear, take*)
复数	2. ágitis	audī́tis	cápitis	(*you hear, take*)
	3. águnt	aúdiunt	cápiunt	(*they hear, take*)

将来时直陈式主动态

	1. ágam	aúdi-am	cápi-am	(*I shall hear, take*)
单数	2. ágēs	aúdi-ēs	cápi-ēs	(*you will hear, take*)
	3. áget	aúdi-et	cápi-et	(*he, she, it will hear, take*)
	1. agḗmus	audiḗmus	capiḗmus	(*we shall hear, take*)
复数	2. agḗtis	audiḗtis	capiḗtis	(*you will hear, take*)
	3. ágent	aúdient	cápient	(*they will hear, take*)

未完成时直陈式主动态

	1. agḗbam	audi-ēbam	capi-ēbam	(*I was hearing, taking*)
单数	2. agḗbās	audi-ḗbās	capi-ḗbās	(*you were hearing, taking*)
	3. agḗbat	audi-ēbat	capi-ēbat	(*he, she, it was hearing, taking*)
	1. agēbā́mus	audiēbā́mus	capiēbā́mus	(*we were hearing, taking*)
复数	2. agēbā́tis	audiēbā́tis	capiēbā́tis	(*you were hearing, taking*)
	3. agḗbant	audiḗbant	capiḗbant	(*they were hearing, taking*)

现在时命令式主动态

单数	2. áge	aúdī	cápe	(*hear, take*)
复数	2. ágite	audī́-te	cápi-te	(*hear, take*)

Audiō 的变位

-īre 将第四变位法的不定式与其他变位法的不定式区分开来（**laud-ā́re, mon-ḗre, ág-ere, aud-ī́re, cá-pere**）。

和前两种变位法一样，现在时直陈式的构成规则也是现在时词干(**audī-**)加上人称词尾。按照规则，第三人称复数应该是 ***audi-nt**，但实际形式却是 **audi-unt**，这一词尾让人想起了 **águnt**。

对于 **audiō** 的将来时，有一条不错的经验规则可以使用：先把现在时词干的 **ī** 变短，得到 **audi-**，再加上 **agō** 的将来时词尾：**-am, -ēs, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent**。和第三变位法一样，**-ē-**也是将来时的特征元音。

未完成时由**-iē-**(而不是词干元音**-ī-**)加上时态标志**-bā-**构成，所以最后得到的形式是 **audiēbam, audiēbās**, …(而不是预想的 ***audībam**, …)。

不过，命令式严格遵循第一、第二变位法的变化形式，即单数与现在时词干(**audī**)相同，复数只需加上**-te**(**audīte**)。

Capiō 的变位

不定式 **capere** 显然是一个第三变位法动词的不定式，而不属于第四变位法。它的命令式形式也表明，这是一个第三变位法动词。

capiō 的现在时、将来时和未完成时直陈式遵循着 **audiō** 的变位方式，只不过和 **agō** 类似，**capiō** 在 **cápis, cápimus, cápitis** 中也有一个短音**-i-**。

这里仍然要注意以下规则，即对于第四变位法动词和第三变位法的**-iō** 动词，**-i-**出现在现在时系统的所有直陈式主动态形式中，双元音**-iē-**出现在未完成时形式中的**-bā-**之前。

词汇表

amīcítia, -ae, f., *friendship* (cp. **amō, amīca, amīcus**)
cupíditās, cupiditā́tis, f., *desire, longing, passion; cupidity, avarice* (cp. **cupīo,** Ch. 17)
hṓra, -ae, f., *hour, time*
nātū́ra, -ae, f., *nature* (natural, preternatural, supernatural; cp. **nāscor,** Ch. 34)
senéctūs, senectū́tis, f., *old age* (cp. **senex,** Ch. 16)
tímor, timṓris, m., *fear* (timorous; cp. **timeō,** Ch. 15)
vḗritās, vēritā́tis, f., *truth* (verify, veritable, verity; cp. **vērus, vērō,** Ch. 29)
vía, -ae, f., *way, road, street* (via, viaduct, deviate, devious, obvious, pervious, impervious, previous, trivial, voyage, envoy)
volúptās, voluptā́tis, f., *pleasure* (voluptuary, voluptuous)
beā́tus, -a, -um, *happy, fortunate, blessed* (beatific, beatify, beatitude, Beatrice)
quóniam, conj., *since, inasmuch as*
cum, prep. + abl., *with.* As a prefix **cum** may appear as **com-, con-, cor-, col-, co-,** and means *with, together, completely,* or simply has an intensive force (complete, connect, corroborate, collaborate)
aúdiō, audī́re, audī́vī, audī́tum, *to hear, listen to* (audible, audience, audit, audition, auditory; cp. **audītor,** Ch. 16)
cápiō, cápere, cḗpī, cáptum, *to take, capture, seize, get.* In compounds the **-a-** becomes **-i-, -cipiō: ac-cipiō, ex-cipiō, in-cipiō, re-cipiō,** etc. (capable, capacious, capsule, captious, captive, captor)
dī́cō, dī́cere, dī́xī, díctum, *to say, tell, speak; name, call* (dictate, dictum, diction, dictionary, dight, ditto, contradict, indict, edict, verdict)
fáciō, fácere, fḗcī, fáctum, *to make, do, accomplish.* In compounds the **-a-** becomes **-i-, -ficiō: cōn-ficiō, per-ficiō,** etc. (facile, fact, faction, factotum, facsimile, faculty, fashion, feasible, feat)
fúgiō, fúgere, fū́gī, fúgitūrum, *to flee, hurry away; escape; go into exile; avoid, shun* (fugitive, fugue, centrifugal, refuge, subterfuge)
véniō, venī́re, vḗnī, véntum, *to come* (advent, adventure, avenue, convene, contravene, covenant, event, inconvenient, intervene, parvenu, prevent, provenience)
invéniō, invenī́re, -vḗnī, -véntum, *to come upon, find* (invent, inventory)
vī́vō, vī́vere, vī́xī, vī́ctum, *to live* (convivial, revive, survive, vivacity, vivid, vivify, viviparous, vivisection, victual, vittle; cp. **vīta**)

练习与复习

1. Quid discipulae hodiē discere dēbent?
2. Frātrēs nihil cum ratiōne herī gerēbant.
3. Ille magnam virtūtem labōris et studiī docēre saepe audet.
4. Hic dē senectūte scrībēbat; ille, dē amōre; et alius, dē lībertāte.
5. Ex librīs ūnīus virī nātūram hārum īnsidiārum dēmōnstrābimus.

6. Istī sōlī victōriam nimis amant; neuter dē pāce cōgitat.
7. Ubi cīvitās ūllōs virōs magnae sapientiae audiet?
8. Ex illīs terrīs in hunc locum cum amīcīs vestrīs venīte.
9. Post paucās hōrās sorōrem illīus invenīre poterāmus.
10. Cōpiae vestrae utrum virum ibi numquam capient.
11. Alter Graecus remedium huius morbī inveniet.
12. Carmina illīus scrīptōris sunt plēna nōn sōlum vēritātis sed etiam virtūtis.
13. We shall then come to your land without any friends.
14. While he was living, nevertheless, we were able to have no peace.
15. The whole state now shuns and will always shun these vices.
16. He will, therefore, thank the queen and the whole people.

古代名言

1. Cupiditātem pecūniae glōriaeque fugite. (Cicero.)
2. Officium meum faciam. (*Terence.)
3. Fāma tua et vīta fīliae tuae in perīculum crās venient. (Terence.)
4. Vīta nōn est vīvere sed valēre. (Martial.)
5. Semper magnō cum timōre incipiō dīcere. (Cicero.— **incipiō, -ere,** *to begin.*)
6. Sī mē dūcēs, Mūsa, corōnam magnā cum laude capiam. (Lucretius.—**Mūsa, -ae,** *Muse.*—**corōna, -ae,** *crown.*)
7. Vīve memor mortis; fugit hōra. (Persius.—**memor,** adj. nom. sg. m. or f., *mindful.*—**mors, mortis,** f., *death.*)
8. Rapite, amīcī, occāsiōnem dē hōrā. (Horace.— **rapiō, -ere,** *to snatch, seize.*—**occāsiō, -ōnis,** f., *opportunity.*)
9. Paucī veniunt ad senectūtem. (*Cicero.)
10. Sed fugit, intereā, fugit tempus. (Virgil.—**intereā,** adv., *meanwhile.*—The verb is repeated for emphasis.)
11. Fāta viam invenient. (*Virgil.—**fātum, -ī,** *fate.*)
12. Bonum virum nātūra, nōn ōrdō, facit. (*Publilius Syrus.—**ōrdō, -dinis,** m., *rank.*)
13. Obsequium parit amīcōs; vēritās parit odium. (Cicero.—**obsequium, -iī,** *compliance.*—**pariō, -ere,** *to produce.*—**odium, -iī,** *hate.*)

THE INCOMPARABLE VALUE OF FRIENDSHIP

Nihil cum amīcitiā possum comparāre; dī hominibus nihil melius dant. Pecūniam aliī mālunt; aliī, corpora sāna; aliī, fāmam glōriamque; aliī, voluptātēs—sed hī virī nimium errant, quoniam illa sunt incerta et ex fortūnā veniunt, nōn ex sapientiā. Amīcitia enim ex sapientiā et amōre et mōribus bonīs et virtūte venit; sine virtūte amīcitia nōn potest esse. Sī nūllōs amīcōs habēs, habēs vītam tyrannī; sī inveniēs amīcum vērum, vīta tua erit beāta.

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā,* excerpts; see L.A. 6.—**comparāre.**—**melius,** *better.*—**mālunt,** *prefer.*—**incertus, -a, -um,** *uncertain.*)

词源点滴

Audiō 是下面这些奇特的派生词的最终母词："obey"经由法语词 **obeir** 源于拉丁词 **obēdīre**（**ob + audīre**）；"obedient"（**ob + audiēns**）；"oyez, oyez"源于法语词 **ouir**，拉丁词 **audīre**。

In the readings

5. incipient, inception. 6. museum, music.—corona, coronation, coronary, coroner, corolla, corollary. 7. memory, memoir, commemorate. 8. rapid, rapture, rapacious. 13. obsequious.—odium, odious. "Friendship": comparable.—certainty.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 还记得由动词的第四个主要部分构成的阳性-**or** 名词吗?（见第八课）还有许多-**or** 名词与本课新学到的动词有关，**audītor**, *auditor, listener* 便是其中之一。你还能找到其他这类名词吗？书末附录中的"词源帮助"部分能够帮助你学到更多关于词族的知识，还能了解到另一组第三变格法名词，它们多为阴性，由第四个主要部分加上后缀-**iō**（**-iōnis, -iōnī,** etc.）而构成。这些名词一般指示动作的执行或结果，如 **audītiō, audītiōnis,** f., *listening, hearing*，而且许多都有以-*ion* 结尾的英语派生词（比如"audition"）。**Dictiō**,（*the act of*）*speaking, public speaking* 是本课中的另一个例子，由它产生了"diction"（一个人说话或写作的方式或风格），"dictionary", "benediction", "contradiction"等英语派生词。你还能从本课新学到的动词中找出拉丁语名词和英语派生词吗？祝猎奇愉快！不过 **tempus fugit**，所以我不得不说：**valēte!**

第十一课

人称代词 Ego、Tū 和 Is；指示词 Is 和 Īdem

人称代词

人称代词代替名词（还记得 **prō+ nōmen** 吗？）从说话者角度指称某个人或某些人：第一人称代词指说话者本人（**ego/nōs,** *I/me, we/us*），第二人称代词指听者（**tū/vōs,** *you*），第三人称代词指说话者正在谈论的人或事物（**is, ea, id** 及其复数, *he/him, she/her, it, they/them*）。

第一和第二人称代词 Ego / Nōs, Tū / Vōs

虽然第一和第二人称代词在形式上是不规则的，但它们的变格却非常类似，记忆起来并不困难；请注意，它们的复数属格有两种形式。

第一人称—Ego, *I*			第二人称—Tū, *You*	
单数				
主格	égo	(*I*)	tū	(*you*)
属格	méī	(*of me*)	túī	(*of you*)
与格	míhi	(*to/for me*)	tíbi	(*to/for you*)
宾格	mē	(*me*)	tē	(*you*)
夺格	mē	(*by/with/from me*)	tē	(*by/with/from you*)
复数				
主格	nōs	(*we*)	vōs	(*you*)
属格	nóstrum	(*of us*)	véstrum	(*of you*)
	nóstrī	(*of us*)	véstrī	(*of you*)
与格	nṓbīs	(*to/for us*)	vṓbīs	(*to/for you*)
宾格	nōs	(*us*)	vōs	(*you*)

夺格	nṓbīs	(*by/with/from us*[1])	vṓbīs	(*by/with/from you*)

第三人称代词/指示代词 Is, Ea, Id

代词 **is, ea, id** 的变格可与 **hic** 和 **ille** 的变格（第九课）进行比较，其变格方式与 **magnus, -a, -um**（第四课）相同，例外形式已用下划线标出；请注意，除四种形式（包括另一种复数主格形式 **iī**）以外，词根都是 **e-**。

	阳性		阴性		中性	
单数						
主格	is	(*he*[2])	éa	(*she*[2])	id	(*it*[2])
属格	éius[3]	(*of him, his*)	éius	(*of her, her*)	éius	(*of it, its*)
与格	éī	(*to/for him*)	éī	(*to/for her*)	éī	(*to/for it*)
宾格	éum	(*him*)	éam	(*her*)	id	(*it*)
夺格	éō	(*by/w./fr. him*)	éā	(*by/w./fr. her*)	éō	(*by/w./fr. it*)
复数						
主格	éī, iī	(*they,* masc.)	éae	(*they,* fem.)	éa	(*they,* neut.)
属格	eṓrum	(*of them, their*)	eā́rum	(*of them, their*)	eṓrum	(*of them, their*)
与格	éīs	(*to/for them*)	éīs	(*to/for them*)	éīs	(*to/for them*)
宾格	éōs	(*them*)	éās	(*them*)	éa	(*them*)
夺格	éīs	(*by/w./fr. them*)	éīs	(*by/w./fr. them*)	éīs	(*by/w./fr. them*)

用法

既然这些代词被用于替代名词，所以一般来说，它们也和对应的名词一样，充当主语、直接宾语、间接宾语、介词宾语等成分。

Ego tibi (vōbīs) librōs dabō, *I shall give the books to you.*

Ego eī (eīs) librōs dabō, *I shall give the books to him* or *her* (*to them*).

Tū mē (nōs) nōn capiēs, *you will not capture me* (*us*).

Eī id ad nōs mittent, *they* (masc.) *will send it to us.*

Vōs eōs (eās, ea) nōn capiētis, *you will not capture them* (*them*).

Eae ea ad tē mittent, *they* (fem.) *will send them* (*those things*) *to you.*

不过需要注意的是，只有在对主语进行强调时，罗马人才会使用代词的主格（**ego, tū,** etc.）。因此，拉丁语动词的代词主语一般并不直接指明，而只是通过动词词尾来暗示。

---

[1] 我们将会发现，指人的夺格名词或代词常与介词连用。

[2] 也指 *this/that man, woman, thing.*

[3] 读作 **ei-yus**（比较第九课的 **huius**）。

Eīs pecūniam dabō, *I shall give them money.*

Ego eīs pecūniam dabō; quid tū dabis? *I shall give them money; what will* ***you*** *give?*

此外，当 **cum** 与人称代词（以及我们以后将会学到的关系代词和反身代词）的夺格连用时，它往往作为代词的后缀出现，而不是作为单独的介词出现在它之前。如 **eōs nōbīscum ibi inveniēs**, *you will find them there with us*。

还要注意，**ego** 和 **tū** 的属格（即 **meī, nostrum, nostrī; tuī, vestrum, vestrī**）不能用来表示属有。[1] 如果想表示属有，罗马人习惯于使用我们已经学过的形容词性物主代词：

meus, –a, –um, *my*	tuus, –a, –um, *your*
noster, –tra, –trum, *our*	vester, –tra, –trum, *your*

这与英语中的用法类似：正如拉丁语说 **liber meus**，而不说 **liber meī**，英语也说 *my book*，而不说 *the book of me*。

而 **is, ea, id** 的属格则常常用来表示属有。因此，尽管 **eius** 有时可以译成 *of him/of her/of it*，但在一般情况下最好还是译成 *his/her/its*；类似地，**eōrum/eārum/eōrum** 虽然可以翻译成 *of them*，但在一般表示属有的情况下应当翻译成 *their*。考察以下例子中的物主代词，其中所有名词均由 **mittam** 支配：

Mittam（*I shall send*）

pecūniam meam（*my money*）.	amīcōs meōs（*my friends*）.
pecūniam nostram（*our money*）.	amīcōs nostrōs（*our friends*）.
pecūniam tuam（*your money*）.	amīcōs tuōs（*your friends*）.
pecūniam vestram（*your money*）.	amīcōs vestrōs（*your friends*）.
pecūniam eius（*his, her money*）.	amīcōs eius（*his, her friends*）.
pecūniam eōrum（*their money*）.	amīcōs eōrum（*their friends*）.
pecūniam eārum（*their money*）.	amīcōs eārum（*their friends*）.

既然所有形容词都要与名词保持一致，第一、第二人称的形容词性物主代词当然也要在性、数、格上与名词保持一致。物主所有格 **eius, eōrum** 和 **eārum** 是代词的属格形式，它们不随所属名词的性、数、格的变化而变化。

最后需要指出的是，除非是为了强调或避免混淆，物主代词在拉丁语中经

[1] **Meī** 和 **tuī** 用作宾语属格（如 **timor tuī**, *fear of you*）和部分属格（即“整体属格”，如 **pars meī**, *part of me*，参见第十五课），**nostrī** 和 **vestrī** 仅作宾语属格，**nostrum** 和 **vestrum** 仅作部分属格。

常略去。而英语则经常使用物主代词，所以在翻译过程中，往往需要将它们补充进去（就像需要补充冠词“a”、“an”和“the”一样），以合乎语言习惯。如 **patriam amāmus,** *we love our country*。

Is, Ea, Id 作指示词

Is 一般用作拉丁语的第三人称代词，但也可以用作指示词，含义比 **hic** 和 **ille** 稍弱，可以翻译成 *this/these* 或 *that/those*。一般来说，如果它后面紧跟着一个名词，并且修饰这个名词（有一样的性、数、格），那么就应当这样来翻译；试比较：

Is est bonus, *he is good.*

Is amīcus est vir bonus, *this friend is a good man.*

Vidēsne eam, *do you see her?*

Vidēsne eam puellam, *do you see that girl?*

指示词 Īdem, Eadem, Idem, *the Same*

Īdem, eadem, idem, *the same* (*man,woman, thing*)是常用指示词，它们通过在 **is, ea, id** 的各种形式后面直接加 **-dem** 而得到，如属格 **eiusdem,** 与格 **eīdem,** …；除了单数主格 **īdem**（阳性，不是 ***isdem**）和 **idem**（中性，不是 ***iddem**），不遵循这一变格方法的形式已经列在下面，它们在后缀 **-dem** 之前的词尾 **-m** 都变成了 **-n-**（关于 **īdem** 的所有变格形式，参见书末附录中的“词形总结”）。

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
宾格	eúndem[5]	eándem	ídem
复数			
属格	eōrúndem[5]	eārúndem	eōrúndem

和其他指示词一样，**īdem** 也可以起形容词或代词的作用：**eōsdem mittō,** *I am sending the same men;* **dē eādem ratiōne cōgitābāmus,** *we were thinking about the same plan*。

词汇表

cáput, cápitis, n., *head; leader; beginning; life; heading; chapter* (cape =

---

[1] 如果你快速读出 ***eumdem** 或 ***eōrumdem**，那么你可能最终会把 **-d-** 前的 **-m-** 变成 **-n-**，这也正是罗马人的做法。

headland, capital, capitol, capitulate, captain, chief, chieftain, chef, cattle, chattels, cadet, cad, achieve, decapitate, recapitulate, precipice, occiput, sinciput, kerchief)

cṓnsul, cṓnsulis, m., *consul* (consular, consulate, consulship; cp. **cōnsilium**)

nḗmō, nūllī́us,[6] **nḗminī, nḗminem, nū́llō**[6] or **nū́llā,** m. or f., *no one, nobody*

égo, méī, *I* (ego, egoism, egotism, egotistical)

tū, túī, *you*

is, éa, id, *this, that; he, she, it* (i.e. = **id est,** *that is*)

ī́dem, éadem, ídem, *the same* (id., identical, identity, identify)

amī́cus, -a, -um, *friendly* (amicable, amiable, amiably—cp. **amō** and the nouns **amīcus, amīca,** and **amīcitia**).

cā́rus, -a, -um, *dear* (caress, charity, charitable, cherish)

quod, conj., *because*

néque, nec, conj. *and not, nor;* **néque . . . néque** or **nec . . . nec,** *neither . . . nor*

aútem, postpositive conj., *however; moreover*

béne, adv. of **bonus,** *well, satisfactorily, quite* (benediction, benefit, benefactor, beneficent, benevolent)

étiam, adv., *even, also*

intéllegō, intellégere, intellḗxī, intellḗctum, *to understand* (intelligent, intellegentsia, intelligible, intellect, intellectual; cp. **legō,** Ch. 18)

míttō, míttere, mī́sī, míssum, *to send, let go* (admit, commit, emit, omit, permit, promise, remit, submit, transmit, compromise, demise)

séntiō, sentī́re, sḗnsī, sḗnsum, *to feel, perceive, think, experience* (assent, consent, dissent, presentiment, resent, sentimental, scent)

练习与复习

1. Eum ad eam cum aliō agricolā herī mittēbant.
2. Tū autem fīliam beātam eius nunc amās.
3. Propter amīcitiam, ego hoc faciō. Quid tū faciēs, mī amīce?
4. Vōsne eāsdem litterās ad eum mittere crās audēbitis?
5. Dūc mē ad eius discipulam (ad eam discipulam), amābō tē.
6. Post labōrem eius grātiās magnās eī agēmus.
7. Tūne vēritātem in eō librō dēmōnstrās?
8. Audē, igitur, esse semper īdem.
9. Venitne nātūra mōrum nostrōrum ex nōbīs sōlīs?
10. Dum ratiō nōs dūcet, valēbimus et multa bene gerēmus.
11. Illum timōrem in hōc virō ūnō invenīmus.
12. Sine labōre autem nūlla pāx in cīvitātem eōrum veniet.
13. Studium nōn sōlum pecūniae sed etiam voluptātis hominēs nimium trahit; aliī eās cupiditātēs vincere possunt, aliī nōn possunt.
14. His life was always dear to the whole people.

---

[1] 经常用 **nūllus** 的属格和夺格形式来代替 **nēminis** 和 **nēmine**。

15. You will often find them and their friends with me in this place.
16. We, however, shall now capture their forces on this road.
17. Since I was saying the same things to him about you and his other sisters, your brother was not listening.

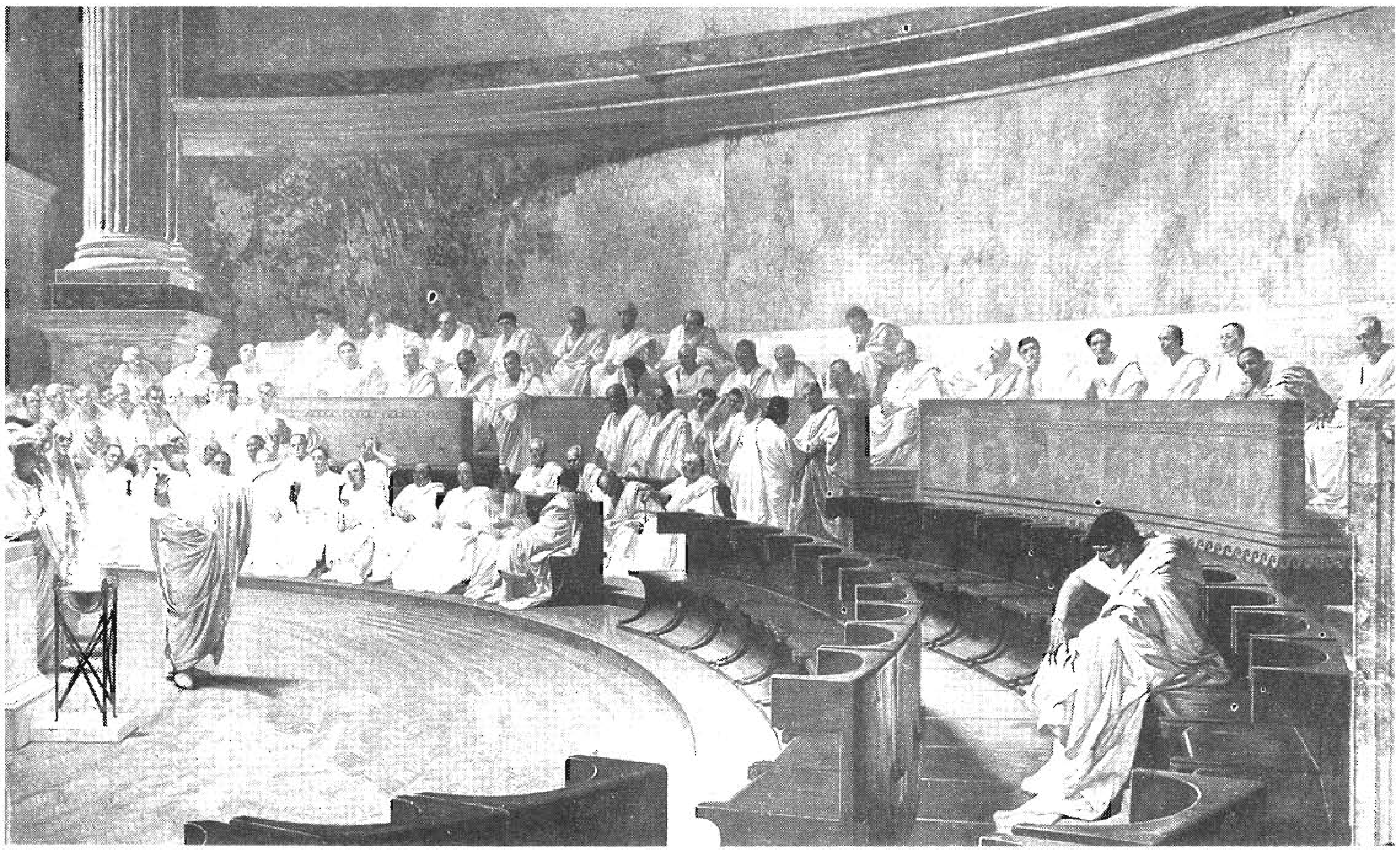
古代名言

1. Virtūs tua mē amīcum tibi facit. (Horace.)
2. Id sōlum est cārum mihi. (Terence.—**cārus** and other adjectives indicating relationship or attitude often take the dat., translated *to* or *for;* see Ch. 35).
3. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. (Pliny.—**bene est,** idiom, *it is well.*)
4. Bene est mihi quod tibi bene est. (Pliny.)
5. "Valē." "Et tū bene valē." (Terence.)
6. Quid hī dē tē nunc sentiunt? (Cicero.)
7. Omnēs idem sentiunt. (*Cicero.—**omnēs,** *all men,* nom. pl.)
8. Videō nēminem ex eīs hodiē esse amīcum tibi. (Cicero.—The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the acc., hence **nēminem;** add this to your list of acc. case uses, and see Ch. 25.)
9. Hominēs vidēre caput Cicerōnis in Rōstrīs poterant. (Livy.—Antony proscribed Cicero and had the great orator's head cut off and displayed on the Rostra!—**Rōstra, -ōrum;** see Etymology below.)
10. Nōn omnēs eadem amant aut eāsdem cupiditātēs studiaque habent. (Horace.)
11. Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē (*Martial.)
12. Vērus amīcus est alter īdem. (Cicero.—Explain how **alter īdem** can mean "a second self.")

CICERO DENOUNCES CATILINE IN THE SENATE

Quid facis, Catilīna? Quid cōgitās? Sentīmus magna vitia īnsidiāsque tuās. Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt. Hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit; etiam nunc cōnsilia agere audet; oculīs dēsignat ad mortem nōs! Et nōs, bonī virī, nihil facimus! Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, cōnsul et senātus dūcere dēbent. Cōnsilium habēmus et agere dēbēmus; sī nunc nōn agimus, nōs, nōs—apertē dīcō—errāmus! Fuge nunc, Catilīna, et dūc tēcum amīcōs tuōs. Nōbīscum remanēre nōn potes; nōn tē, nōn istōs, nōn cōnsilia vestra tolerābō!

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.1.ff. Lucius Sergius Catilina, "Catiline," masterminded a conspiracy against the Roman government during Cicero's consulship; this excerpt is adapted from the first oration Cicero delivered against him, before the senate, in 63 B.C. See L.I. 5–6 and the reading passage in Ch. 14 below.—**senātus,** *senate.*—**dēsignāre.**—**mors, mortis,** f., *death.*—**apertē,** adv., *openly.*)



Cicero Denouncing Catiline in the Roman Senate
Cesare Maccari, 19th century
Palazzo Madama, Rome, Italy

词源点滴

Cārus 有时意为 *expensive*，就像英语词"dear"和法语词"cher"一样。

In the sentences

9. **Rōstra**，被俘战船的喙形船首，被用来装饰罗马广场的讲演台，以纪念公元前 338 年在 Antium（今天的安其奥[Anzio]）所取得的一场胜利。古罗马的讲演台正是以这些喙形船首命名的。虽然复数形式 *rostra* 仍然是规则的英语形式，但我们有时使用它的单数形式 *rostrum*。"Cicero Denounces Catiline": senator, senatorial; senile.—designate, designation.—mortal, mortality.—aperture; 与 **aperīre**, *to open* 比较。

以下是一些源于拉丁语人称代词的罗曼语派生词。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
ego, tū	io, tu	yo, tu	je, tu
mihi, tibi	mi, ti		
mē, tē	me, te	me, te	me, moi, te, toi[1]

[1] 法语词 **moi, toi** 源于重读拉丁词 **mē, tē**，法语词 **me, te** 源于非重读拉丁词 **mē, tē**。

nōs, vōs (nom.)	noi, voi	nosotros, vosotros[8]	nous, vous
nōs, vōs (acc.)		nos, os	nous, vous

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae cārae! 注意到形容词 **cārae** 的词尾了吗？——当形容词修饰两个不同性的名词时，我们习惯于让形容词与距它最近的名词相一致。顺便说一句，你现在知道弗洛伊德的“自我”（**ego**）和“本我”（**id**）概念的出处了，也知道问候语 **pāx vōbīscum/pāx tēcum** 是什么意思了。对了，恺撒的崇拜者们，你能想象以下三句话的翻译是一样的吗？（好吧……在某种程度上是）**Caesar, Caesar! Caesar eam videt. Caesar, cape eam!** 根据传统说法，恺撒对刺杀他的布鲁图斯说的最后一句话是：**et tū, Brūte?** （根据伟大的喜剧演员“戴夫老兄”加德纳［Brother Dave Gardner］后来的说法，布鲁图斯饥饿地回答说，“不，我一个还没吃呢！”）[2]

你是否在词汇表中注意到了缩写词 **i.e.**和 **id.**的出处？我们现在的用法中有数十个拉丁语缩写词。除第六课结尾列出的那些之外，书末还列出了其他缩写形式（见 p.484—485）。

还记得那些**-or/-iō** 名词吗？本课词汇表中的此类动词有 **missor, missōris,** m., *a shooter*（of “missiles”—lit., *a sender*）和 **missiō, missiōnis,** f., lit. *a sending forth*，在古典拉丁语中指 *release from captivity, liberation*（源于 **līberāre,** *to free*），*discharge, dismissal*，当然还有 *mission*；由 **mittō** 可以构成许多拉丁语复合词，由此又进一步衍生出了大量英语派生词，例如 “admission”, “commission”, “emission”, “permission”等等。你还能想出哪些拉丁语名词和英语派生词源于 **mittō** 吗？ **Sentiō** 呢？

哎呀，**tempus fugit**，所以 **pāx vōbīscum et valēte!**

---

[1] **-otros** 源于 **alterōs**。

[2] 这里用了谐音，把 et =［英］ate，tu =［英］two。于是“et tū, Brūte？”就成了“吃了两个吗？布鲁图斯？”——译者注

第十二课

动词完成时系统的主动态

我们已经熟悉了现在时、将来时和未完成时的构词和翻译。现在时、将来时和未完成时构成了“现在时系统”。之所以这样称呼，是因为它们都是在现在时词干的基础上构成的，而且都从现在的角度来看时间。和英语一样，拉丁语也有另外三种时态，即完成时（有时称为现在完成时）、将来完成时和过去完成时，它们构成了“完成时系统”。之所以这样称呼，是因为它们都是在完成时（主动态或被动态）词干的基础上构成的，而且都是从一个不尽相同的角度来看时间。

这三种时态的主动态形式（被动态的完成时系统将在第十九课介绍）相对而言比较容易，因为所有变位法的动词都遵循同一条简单规则：完成时主动态词干+词尾。

动词的主要部分

要想确定一个拉丁语动词的完成时主动态词干，就必须知道动词的主要部分，就像只有知道一个英语动词的主要部分，才能正确地使用英语一样。[1] 正如词汇表所示，大多数规则的拉丁语动词都有四个主要部分，比如以 **laudō** 为例：

---

[1] 事实上，英语动词的主要部分在一定程度上类似于拉丁语动词的主要部分：

（1）现在时：praise lead take see sing be/am

（2）过去时：praised led took saw sang was

（3）过去分词：praised led taken seen sung been

在英语中，由于现在时直陈式和现在时不定式通常有相同的形式，所以只需给出一种形式。还要注意，英语中的过去分词实际上就是过去时被动态分词，类似于拉丁语中的 **laudātum**。

1. 现在时直陈式主动态：laudō, *I praise*
2. 现在时不定式主动态：laudāre, *to praise*
3. 完成时直陈式主动态：laudāvī, *I praised, have praised*
4. 完成时被动态分词：laudātum, *praised, having been praised*

曾经出现在词形变化表中的动词的主要部分如下：

现在时直陈式	现在时不定式	完成时直陈式	完成时被动态分词
laúdō	laudā́re	laudā́vī, *I praised*	laudā́tum, *having been praised*
móneō	monḗre	mónuī, *I advised*	mónitum, *having been advised*
ágō	ágere	ḗgī, *I led*	ā́ctum, *having been led*
cápiō	cápere	cḗpī, *I took*	cáptum, *having been taken*
aúdiō	audī́re	audī́vī, *I heard*	audī́tum, *having been heard*
sum	ésse	fúī, *I was*	futū́rum, *about to be*
póssum	pósse	pótuī, *I was able*	———

前两个主要部分我们已经详细讨论过，它们对于现在时系统的动词变位至关重要。动词的第三个主要部分是完成时直陈式主动态的第一人称单数，总是以**–ī** 结尾。它与动词的第一个主要部分类似，后者是现在时直陈式主动态的第一人称单数，总是以**–ō** 结尾。第四个主要部分在本书中给出的是中性形式，对于规则的及物动词来说，就是其完成时被动态分词，这是一个可以按照**–us/–a/–um** 类型进行完全变格的动词性形容词（**laudātus, –a, –um**, etc.——分词的某些用法将在第十九、二十三、二十四课中介绍）；对于没有完成时被动态分词的动词，第四个主要部分用目的动名词（supine）的宾格来代替（参见第三十八课）；对于 **sum** 等一些不及物动词，用将来时主动态分词来代替（如 **futūrum = futūrus, –a, –um**）；而像 **possum** 等动词则根本没有第四个主要部分。

完成时主动态词干

虽然规则动词的第一、第二个主要部分的变化方式非常一致，但第三、第四个主要部分的许多变化却无简单规律可循（尽管在词汇表中标（1）的大多数第一变位法动词遵循着 **laudō** 的**–ō/–āre/–āvī/–ātum** 变位方式，但许多第二、第四变位法动词遵循着 **moneō** 和 **audiō** 的变位方式）；因此，就像我们曾经指出的那样，对于每一个动词，我们都要通过*大声朗读*和*书写*来记住它的所有主要部分，这是极为重要的。在这一过程中，英语知识可以帮助我们记忆，因为有相当多的派生词都来源于现在时词干和完成时分词词干（例如“docile”和“doctor”，“agent”和“action”等等）。

一旦知道了动词的主要部分，就很容易找到它的完成时主动态词干了：只需去掉标志着动词第三个主要部分的词尾**–ī** 即可得到。上表中例词的完成时主

动态词干分别是：**laudāv–, monu–, ēg–, cēp–, audīv–, fu–**和 **potu–**。下面的词形变化表显示了完成时系统三种时态的词尾。

	完成时直陈式主动态 *I praised, have praised*	*I led, have led*	*I was, have been*	**词尾**
单数	1. laudā́v-ī	ḗg-ī	fú-ī	-ī
	2. laudāv-ístī	ēg-ístī	fu-ístī	-istī
	3. laudā́v-it	ḗg-it	fú-it	-it
复数	1. laudā́vimus	ḗgimus	fúimus	-imus
	2. laudāvístis	ēgístis	fuístis	-istis
	3. laudāvḗrunt	ēgḗrunt	fuḗrunt	-ērunt, -ēre[1]

	过去完成时直陈式主动态 *I had praised*	*I had been*	**将来完成时直陈式主动态** *I shall have praised*	*I shall have been*
单数	1. laudā́v-eram	fú-eram	laudā́v-erō	fú-erō
	2. laudā́v-erās	fú-erās	laudā́v-eris	fú-eris
	3. laudā́v-erat	fú-erat	laudā́v-erit	fú-erit
复数	1. laudāverā́mus	fuerā́mus	laudāvérimus	fuérimus
	2. laudāverā́tis	fuerā́tis	laudāvéritis	fuéritis
	3. laudā́verant	fúerant	laudā́verint	fúerint

完成时词尾(**–ī, –istī, –it,** etc.)是本课的新内容,必须牢牢掌握。事实上,过去完成时就是现在时词干+ **eram**(**sum** 的未完成时形式),将来完成时就是完成时词干+**erō**(**sum** 的将来时形式),只不过第三人称复数是**–erint** 而不是**–erunt**。

用法、翻译以及与未完成时的区分

完成时和未完成时有时可以翻译成简单过去时。于是，在某些语境中，**puer amīcum monuit**和 **puer amīcum monēbat** 均可译为 *the boy warned his friend*。不过比较而言,未完成时更像是过去的一段影像,而完成时(perfect,源于 **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum,** to *finish, complete*）则更像是一个快照：未完成时表示动作是正在进行的、重复性的或习惯性的，所以根据语境,**puer amīcum monēbat** 或可更精确地翻译成 *the boy was warning/kept warning/used to warn his friend*;而完成时则更为静态,它表示动作是一个单独的、已经完成了的事件,或者是一个虽然已经完成、但对现在仍有影响的事件;如果是后者,那么一般应当用助动词 “has/have”来翻译(*he has warned his friend, and so his friend*

[1] 第二种词尾**–ēre**(**laudāvēre, ēgēre, fuēre**)虽然在拉丁语诗歌中比较常见,但在本书中只出现了一两次。

is now prepared)。

过去完成时(pluperfect,源于 **plūs quam perfectum**, *more than complete*,即"先于完成时的"时间)和将来完成时与英语中的用法很类似,它和完成时一样,都关注已经完成的动作所产生的结果。考察下列英语句子,它们分别说明了过去完成时、完成时和将来完成时,注意英语助动词"had", "has"和"will have"(动词"to have"的过去时、现在时和将来时形式)的使用:"he had studied the material and so he knew it well"; "he has studied the material and so he knows it well"; "he will have studied the material and so he will know it well"。由这些例子可以看出,完成时系统的三种时态非常类似于现在时系统的三种时态。在现在时系统中,我们关注的只是过去、现在或未来的事件;而在完成时系统中,我们不仅关注过去、现在或未来的事件,而且还关注此前已经完成的行为对这些事件的影响。

词汇表

aduléscēns, adulēscéntis, m. and f., *young man* or *woman* (adolescent, adolescence, adult; cp. **adulēscentia**)
ánnus, -ī, m., *year* (annals, anniversary, annuity, annual, biennial, perennial, centennial, millennium, superannuated)
Ásia, -ae, f., *Asia,* commonly referring to Asia Minor
Caésar, Caésaris, m., *Caesar* (Caesarian, Caesarism, kaiser, czar, tsar)
mā́ter, mā́tris, f., *mother* (maternal, maternity, matriarchy, matrimony, matricide, matriculate, matrilineal, matrix, matron)
médicus, -ī, m., and **médica, -ae,** f., *doctor, physician* (medic, medical, medicate, medicine, medicinal)
páter, pátris, m., *father* (paternal, paternity, patrician, patrimony, patron, patronage, patronize, patter, padre, père; cp. **patria**)
patiéntia, -ae, f., *suffering; patience, endurance* (patient, impatient; cp. **patior,** Ch. 34)
prīncípium, -iī, n., *beginning* (principal, principle; cp. **prīnceps,** Ch. 28)
acérbus, -a, -um, *harsh, bitter, grievous* (acerbity, exacerbate)
prō, prep. + abl., *in front of, before, on behalf of, for the sake of, in return for, instead of, for, as;* also as prefix (pros and cons, pro- as a prefix)
díū, adv., *long, for a long time*
nū́per, adv., *recently*
āmíttō, -míttere, -mī́sī, -míssum, *to lose, let go*
cádō, cádere, cécidī, cāsū́rum, *to fall* (cadence, case, casual, cascade, chance, accident, incident, decadence, decay, deciduous)
créō (1), *to create* (creation, creativity, creature, procreate)

练习与复习

1. Vōs nōbīs dē voluptātibus adūlēscentiae tum scrīpsistis.
2. Ratiōnēs alterīus fīliae herī nōn fuērunt eaedem.

3. Nēmō in hanc viam ex utrā portā fūgerat.
4. Illī autem ad nōs cum medicā eius nūper vēnērunt.
5. Illī adulēscentēs ad nōs propter amīcitiam saepe veniēbant.
6. Eundem timōrem in istō cōnsule sēnsimus.
7. Post paucās hōrās Caesar Asiam cēpit.
8. Illa fēmina beāta sōla magnam cupiditātem pācis sēnsit.
9. Potuistisne bonam vītam sine ūllā lībertāte agere?
10. Vēritās igitur fuit tōtī populō cāra.
11. Neuter medicus nōmen patris audīverat.
12. That friendly queen did not remain there a long time.
13. Our mothers had not understood the nature of that place.
14. However, we had found no fault in the head of our country.
15. They kept sending her to him with me.

古代名言

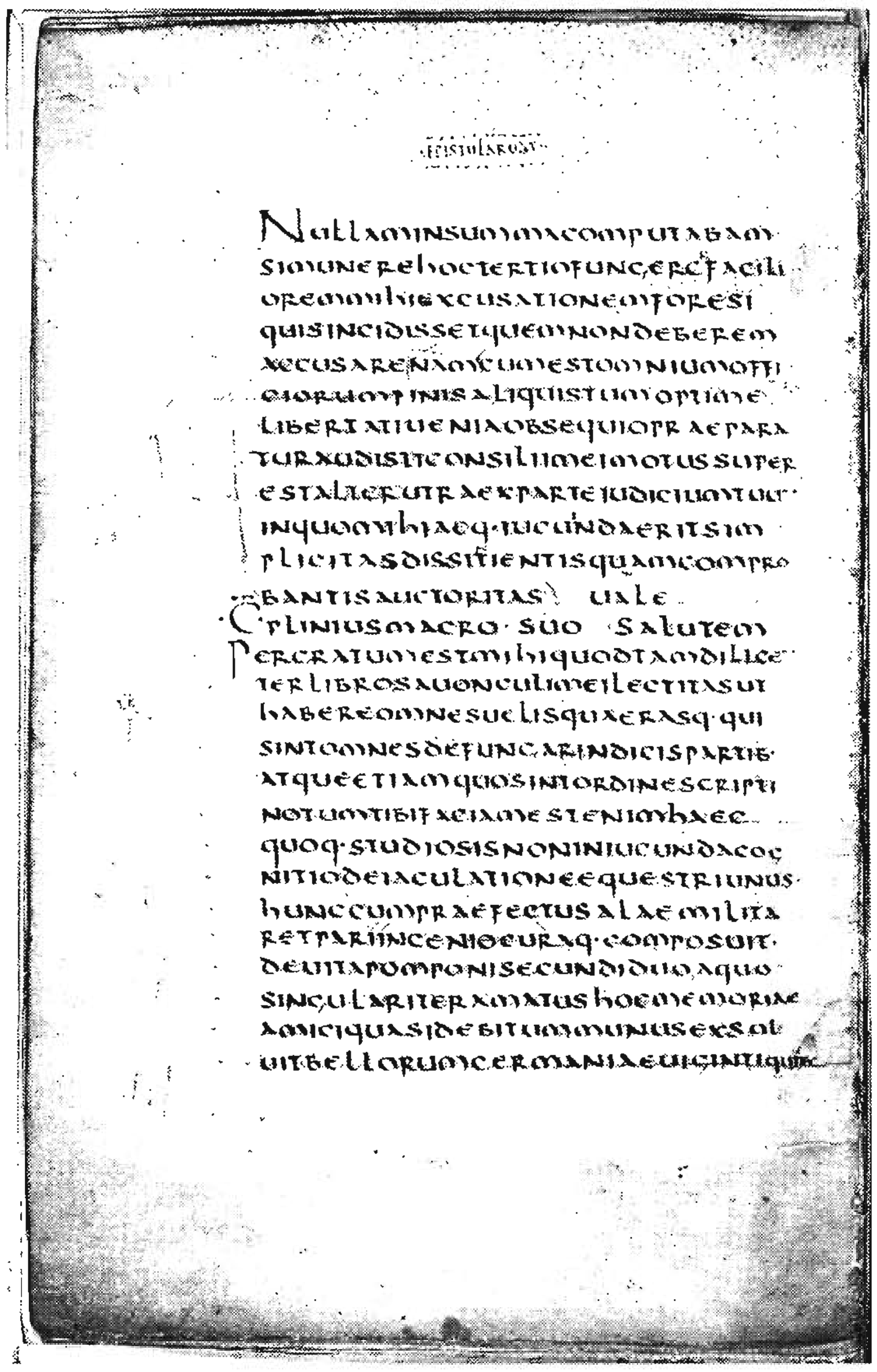
1. In prīncipiō Deus creāvit caelum et terram; et Deus creāvit hominem. (Genesis.)
2. In triumphō Caesar praetulit hunc titulum: "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." (Suetonius.—**triumphus, -ī,** *triumphal procession,* here celebrating his quick victory at Zela in Asia Minor in 47 B.C.—**praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** *to display.*—**titulus, -ī,** *placard.*)
3. Vīxit, dum vīxit, bene. (*Terence.)
4. Adulēscēns vult diū vīvere; senex diū vīxit. (Cicero.—**vult,** irreg., *wishes.*—**senex, senis,** m., *old man.*)
5. Nōn ille diū vīxit, sed diū fuit. (*Seneca.)
6. Hui, dīxistī pulchrē! (*Terence.—**hui,** interj., comparable to Eng. "whee!"—**pulchrē,** adv. from **pulcher**; advs. were commonly formed from adjs. in this way. See Chs. 26–27, and cp., e.g., **vērē** from **vērus, līberē** from **līber,** and the irregular **bene** from **bonus.**)
7. Sophoclēs ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit. (*Cicero.—**Sophoclēs, -clis,** the famous Athenian playwright.—**summus, -a, -um,** *extreme.*—**tragoedia, -ae,** *tragedy.*)
8. Illī nōn sōlum pecūniam sed etiam vītam prō patriā prōfūdērunt. (Cicero.—**prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum,** *to pour forth.*)
9. Rēgēs Rōmam ā prīncipiō habuērunt; lībertātem Lūcius Brūtus Rōmānīs dedit. (Tacitus.—**ā** + abl., *from.*)
10. Sub Caesare autem lībertātem perdidimus. (Laberius.—**perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** *to destroy, lose.*)
11. Quandō lībertās ceciderit, nēmō līberē dīcere audēbit. (Publilius Syrus.)

PLINY WRITES TO MARCELLINUS ABOUT THE DEATH OF FUNDANUS' DAUGHTER

Salvē, Marcellīne! Haec tibi scrībō dē Fundānō, amīcō nostrō; is fīliam cāram et bellam āmīsit. Illa puella nōn XIII annōs vīxerat, sed nātūra eī

multam sapientiam dederat. Mātrem patremque, frātrem sorōremque, nōs et aliōs amīcōs, magistrōs magistrāsque semper amābat, et nōs eam amābāmus laudābāmusque. Medicī eam adiuvāre nōn poterant. Quoniam illa autem magnōs animōs habuit, morbum nimis malum cum patientiā tolerāvit. Nunc, mī amīce, mitte Fundānō nostrō litterās dē fortūnā acerbā fīliae eius. Valē.

(Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.16; see L.I. 40.—**XIII annōs,** *for 13 years,* acc. of duration of time, Ch. 37. Minicius Fundanus was a consul in A.D. 107; his daughter's funerary urn and the following epitaph were found in the family's tomb outside of Rome: **D[īs] M[ānibus] Miniciae Marcellae Fundānī f[īliae]; v[īxit] a[nnōs] XII m[ēnsēs] XI d[iēs] VII.**—The bracketed text was abbreviated in the original inscription.—The **dī mānēs** were the *spirits of the dead,* who protected the deceased.—**mēnsēs,** *months.*—**diēs,** *days.*)



om manuscript of Pliny's Epistulae
(Epist. III.4.8–9 and III.5.1–3)
6th century A.D., Italy
ɜrpont Morgan Library, New York

DIAULUS STILL BURIES HIS CLIENTS

Nūper erat medicus, nunc est vespillo Diaulus.
  Quod vespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus.

(*Martial 1.47; meter: elegiac couplet.—**vespillō, -lōnis,** m., *undertaker.*—Diaulus' name is delayed for suspense.—**quod,** *what.*—**et** = **etiam.**)

词源点滴

英语词能够帮助我们学习拉丁语动词的主要部分，下面是其他一些例子：

拉丁语动词	英语词中的现在时词干	英语词中的完成时分词词干
videō	provide (vidēre)	provision (vīsum)
maneō	permanent (manēre)	mansion (mānsum)
vīvō	revive (vīvere)	victuals (vīctum)
sentiō	sentiment (sentīre)	sense (sēnsum)
veniō	intervene (venīre)	intervention (ventum)
faciō	facile (facere)	fact (factum)

拉丁词 **pater** 和 **patria**(*father-land*)之间的关联是显而易见的。不过，虽然英语词"patriarch"，"patriot"和"patronymic"中都有词干 **patr-**，懂拉丁语的人能够看出其中的门道，但事实上，这些英语词却来源于希腊语，其词干 **patr-**与拉丁语词干 **patr-**是同源的；与希腊词 **patēr,** *father*, **pátrā** 或 **patrís,** *fatherland*, **patriá**, *lineage* 比较。

In the readings

2. prefer, prelate.—title, titular. 8. confound, confuse, effuse, effusive, fuse, fusion, refund, refuse, transfusion. 10. perdition.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, discipulae discipulīque cārī! 据说恺撒在捷拉城(Zela)发出捷报 **vēnī, vīdī, vīcī**，以此宣布他的胜利。这是完成时的一个好例子，是动作的"快照"，恺撒希望强调的正是其闪电般的结果。这句名言在20世纪产生了一些变种，比如信用卡商说，**VENI, VIDI, VISA,** "I came, I saw, I bought everything in sight! "；素食主义者说：**VENI, VIDI, VEGI,** "I came, I saw, I had a salad."你是不是已经在摇头了？!! ——不过要记住，**patientia est virtūs**，今后可能还有更糟的：不管怎么说，**rīdēte**(源于 **rīdēre,** *to smile*) **et valēte!**

第十三课

反身代词和反身物主代词；强势代词

反身代词

反身代词与其他代词的不同之处在于，反身代词通常只用在谓语中，且回指主语。“反身”(reflexive)，源于 **re-flexus, -a, -um** (**reflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum,** *to bend back*)，意为“折回”，即反身代词“折回”到主语，或者说，它“反映”或指涉主语。以下是一些英语例子：

反身代词	**人称代词**
I praised *myself*.	You praised *me*.
Cicero praised *himself*.	Cicero praised *him* (Caesar).

反身代词的变格

由于反身代词指涉主语，所以它们不能充当限定动词[1]的主语，而且没有主格形式。此外，第一、第二人称反身代词与相应的人称代词具有同样的变格方式。

然而，第三人称反身代词的形式却很特殊。它们记忆起来并不困难，如下表所示，它们与 **tū** 的单数形式类似，只不过没有主格，词首是 **s-** 而不是 **t-**。还要注意，第三人称反身代词的单复数同形，或者换句话说，对它们不作(也没有必要作)单复数的区分，因为反身代词实际上“反映”了主语的数(和性)；比如很容易

---

[1] 限定(finite)动词是那些受到人称和数限制(**fīnītus, -a, -um,** *having been limited, bounded*)的动词形式；不过我们在第二十五课中将会看到，反身代词可以充当不定式的主语。

看出,在 **fēmina dē sē cōgitābat** (*the woman was thinking about herself*)中,**sē** 意为*herself*;在 **virī dē sē cōgitābant** (*the men were thinking about themselves*)中,**sē** 意为 *themselves*。

	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
单数			
主格	—	—	—
属格	méī (*of myself*)	túī	súī (*of himself, herself, itself*)
与格	míhi (*to/for myself*)	tíbi	síbi (*to/for himself*, etc.)
宾格	mē (*myself*)	tē	sē (*himself, herself, itself*)
夺格	mē (*by/w./fr. myself*[1])	tē	sē (*by/w./fr. himself*, etc.)
复数			
主格	—	—	—
属格	nóstrī (*of ourselves*)	véstrī	súī (*of themselves*)
与格	nṓbīs (*to/for ourselves*)	vṓbīs	síbi (*to/for themselves*)
宾格	nōs (*ourselves*)	vōs	sē (*themselves*)
夺格	nṓbīs (*by/w./fr. ourselves*)	vṓbīs	sē (*by/w./fr. themselves*)

第一、第二人称反身代词和人称代词的比较[2]

1. Tū laudāvistī **tē**, *you praised* ***yourself.***
2. Cicerō laudāvit **tē**, *Cicero praised* ***you.***

3. Nōs laudāvimus **nōs**, *we praised* ***ourselves.***
4. Cicerō laudāvit **nōs**, *Cicero praised* ***us.***

5. Ego scrīpsī litterās **mihi**, *I wrote a letter to* ***myself.***
6. Cicerō scrīpsit litterās **mihi**, *Cicero wrote a letter to* ***me.***

第三人称反身代词和人称代词的比较

1. Cicerō laudāvit **sē**, *Cicero praised* ***himself.***
2. Cicerō laudāvit **eum**, *Cicero praised* ***him*** (e.g., Caesar).

3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt **sē**, *the Romans praised* ***themselves.***
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt **eōs**, *the Romans praised* ***them*** (e.g., the Greeks).

5. Puella servāvit **sē**, *the girl saved* ***herself.***
6. Puella servāvit **eam**, *the girl saved* ***her*** (i.e., another girl).

---

[1] 参见第十一课,p.66 脚注 1。

[2] 为简洁起见,我们已经对这些例子的词序做了调整。

反身物主代词

第一、第二人称的反身物主代词与我们已经熟悉的规则的物主代词相同：**meus, tuus, noster, vester**（即 *my, my own; your, your own;* etc.）。它们并不会给我们造成什么困难。

然而，第三人称的反身物主代词却是形容词 **suus, sua, suum,** *his* (*own*), *her* (*own*), *its* (*own*), *their* (*own*)。虽然这些形式本身很容易变格（与规则的第一/第二变格法形容词 **tuus, -a, -um** 一致），但是对它的用法和翻译，却需要做几点重要说明。首先，和形容词一样，**suus, -a, -um** 必须与它所修饰的名词在性、数、格上保持一致。而对它的英语翻译，就像对反身代词的翻译一样，必须反映它所指涉的主语的性和数（例如，**vir fīlium suum laudat**, *the man praises his* [*own*] *son*；**fēmina fīlium suum laudat,** *the woman praises her* [*own*] *son*；**virī patriam suam laudant,** *the men praise their* [*own*] *country*）。最后，反身物主代词形容词 **suus, -a, -um** 必须与非反身物主代词的属格 **eius, eōrum, eārum**（*his/her, their*：参见第十一课）区分开来，因为后者并不指涉主语。

1. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum **suum**, *Cicero praised his* (*own*) *friend.*
2. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum **eius**, *Cicero praised his* (Caesar's) *friend.*
3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum **suum**, *the Romans praised their* (*own*) *friend.*
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum **eōrum**, *the Romans praised their* (the Greeks') *friend.*
5. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **suīs**, *the woman wrote a letter to her* (*own*) *friends.*
6. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **eius**, *the woman wrote a letter to his* (or *her*, i.e., someone else's) *friends.*
7. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **eōrum**, *the woman wrote a letter to their* (some other persons') *friends.*

强势代词 Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum

强势代词 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** 的单数属格和单数与格遵循着指示词的变格方式（即属格 **ipsīus, ipsīus, ipsīus,** 与格 **ipsī, ipsī, ipsī**），其他形式则类似于 **magnus, -a, -um**。[1] 罗马人用强势代词来强调主语或谓语中任何人称的名词或代词。于是，可以把它翻译成 *myself /ourselves*（第一人称），*yourself /yourselves*（第二人称），*himself/herself / itself /themselves*（第三人称），或者 *the very* 和 *the actual*，比如下面这些例子：

---

[1] 完整的变格情况参见书末的词形总结(p.441 页)。

Cicerō **ipse** laudāvit mē, *Cicero himself praised me.*

Cicerō laudāvit mē **ipsum**, *Cicero praised me myself* (i.e., *actually praised me*)

Ipse laudāvī eius amīcum, *I myself praised his friend.*

Fīlia scrīpsit litterās vōbīs **ipsīs**, *your daughter wrote a letter to you yourselves.*

Cicerō vīdit Caesaris litterās **ipsās**, *Cicero saw Caesar's letter itself* (i.e., *Caesar's actual letter*).

词汇表

dīvítiae, -ā́rum, f. pl., *riches, wealth* (cp. **dīves,** Ch. 32)
fáctum, -ī, n., *deed, act, achievement* (fact, faction, feat; cp. **faciō**)
sígnum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, indication; seal* (assign, consign, countersign, design, ensign, insignia, resign, seal, signet)
ípse, ípsa, ípsum, intensive pron., *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself,* etc., *the very, the actual* (ipso facto, solipsistic)
quísque, quídque (gen. **cuiúsque;** dat. **cuíque**—cp. **quis,** Ch. 19), indefinite pron., *each one, each person, each thing*
súī, reflexive pron. of 3rd pers., *himself, herself, itself, themselves* (suicide, sui generis, per se)
dóctus, -a, -um, *taught, learned, skilled* (doctor, doctorate, doctrine, indoctrinate; cp. **doceō**)
fortūnā́tus, -a, -um, *lucky, fortunate, happy* (unfortunate; cp. **fortūna**)
súus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers., *his own, her own, its own, their own*
nam, conj., *for*
ánte, prep. + acc., *before* (in place or time), *in front of;* adv., *before, previously;* not to be confused with Greek **anti,** *against* (antebellum, antedate, ante-room, anterior, antediluvian, A.M. = **ante merīdiem,** advance, advantage)
per, prep. + acc., *through;* with reflexive pron., *by;* **per-** (assimilated to **pel-** before forms beginning with **l-**), as a prefix, *through, through and through = thoroughly, completely, very* (perchance, perforce, perhaps, perceive, perfect, perspire, percolate, percussion, perchloride, pellucid)
ṓlim, adv., *at that time, once, formerly; in the future*
álō, álere, áluī, áltum, *to nourish, support, sustain, increase; cherish* (alible, aliment, alimentary, alimony, coalesce, adolescence)
dī́ligō, dīlígere, dīlḗxī, dīlḗctum, *to esteem, love* (diligent, diligence; cp. **legō,** Ch. 18)
iúngō, iúngere, iū́nxī, iū́nctum, *to join* (join, joint, junction, juncture, adjunct, conjunction, enjoin, injunction, subjunctive)
stō, stā́re, stétī, státum, *to stand, stand still* or *firm* (stable, state, station, statue, stature, statute, establish, instant, instate, reinstate, stay; cp. **praestō,** Ch. 28)

练习与复习

1. Cōnsulēs sē nec tēcum nec cum illīs aliīs iungēbant.
2. Tōtus populus Rōmānus lībertātem āmīsit.
3. Rēx malus enim mē ipsum capere numquam potuit.
4. Ad patrem mātremque eōrum per illum locum tum fūgistis.
5. Dī animōs creant et eōs in corpora hominum ē caelō mittunt.
6. Ipsī per sē eum in Asiā nūper vīcērunt.
7. In hāc viā Cicerō medicum eius vīdit, nōn suum.
8. Nēmō fīliam acerbam cōnsulis ipsīus diū dīligere potuit.
9. Hī Cicerōnem ipsum sēcum iūnxērunt, nam eum semper dīlēxerant.
10. Fēmina ante illam hōram litterās suās mīserat.
11. Ille bonam senectūtem habuit, nam bene vīxerat.
12. Māter fīlium bene intellēxit, et adulēscēns eī prō patientiā grātiās ēgit.
13. However, those young men came to Caesar himself yesterday.
14. Cicero, therefore, will never join his (Caesar's) name with his own.
15. Cicero always esteemed himself and even you esteem yourself.
16. Cicero used to praise his own books and I now praise my own books.
17. The consul Cicero himself had never seen his (Caesar's) book.

古代名言

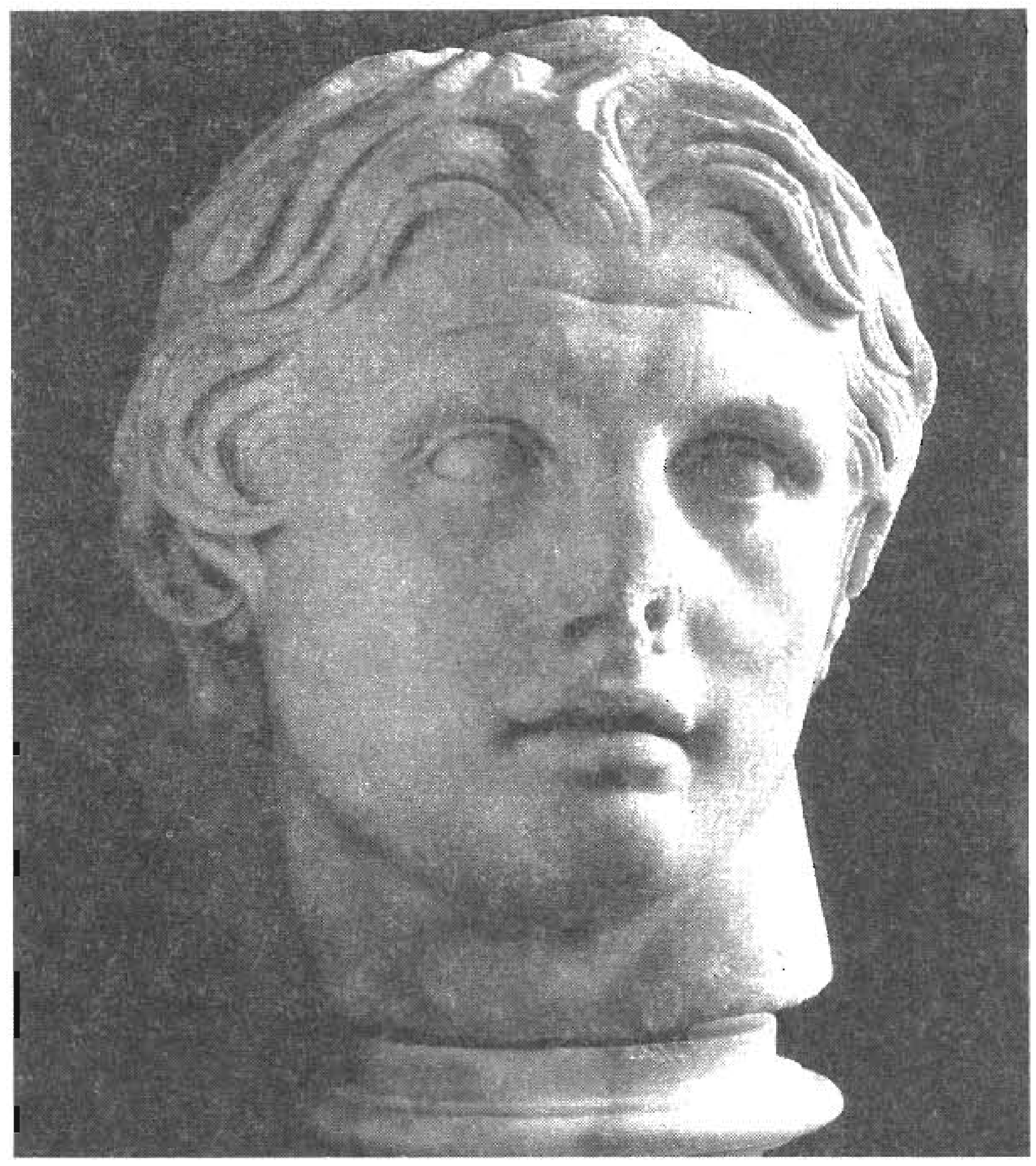
1. Ipse ad eōs contendēbat equitēsque ante sē mīsit. (Caesar.—**contendō, -ere,** *to hasten.*—**eques, equitis,** m., *horseman.*)
2. Ipsī nihil per sē sine eō facere potuērunt. (Cicero.)
3. Ipse signum suum et litterās suās ā prīncipiō recognōvit. (Cicero.—**recognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum,** *to recognize.*)
4. Quisque ipse sē dīligit, quod quisque per sē sibi cārus est. (Cicero.)
5. Ex vitiō alterīus sapiēns ēmendat suum. (*Publilius Syrus.—**sapiēns, -entis,** m., *wise man, philosopher.*—**ēmendāre,** *to correct.*)
6. Recēde in tē ipsum. (*Seneca.—**recēdō, -ere,** *to withdraw.*)
7. Animus sē ipse alit. (*Seneca.)
8. Homō doctus in sē semper dīvitiās habet. (Phaedrus.)

ALEXANDER THE GREAT AND THE POWER OF LITERATURE

Magnus ille Alexander multōs scrīptōrēs factōrum suōrum sēcum semper habēbat. Is enim ante tumulum Achillis ōlim stetit et dīxit haec verba: "Fuistī fortūnātus, ō adulēscēns, quod Homērum laudātōrem virtūtis tuae invēnistī." Et vērē! Nam, sine *Īliade* illā, īdem tumulus et corpus eius et nōmen obruere potuit. Nihil corpus humānum cōnservāre potest; sed litterae magnae nōmen virī magnī saepe cōnservāre possunt.

(Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 24. —**ille,** usually when placed after the word it modifies, can mean *that famous.*—**tumulus, -ī,** *tomb, grave.*—**Achillēs, -lis,** m.—**Homērus, -ī.**—**laudātor, -tōris,** *one who praises* [see Ch. 8, **Latīna Est Gaudium**], here

chronicler.—**vērē,** adv. of **vērus.**—**Ilias, -adis,** f.—**obruō, -ere,** *to overwhelm, bury.*)



Alexander the Great
Pergamon, 3rd century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Istanbul, Turkey

THE AUTHORITY OF A TEACHER'S OPINION

Magistrī bonī discipulīs sententiās suās nōn semper dīcere dēbent. Discipulī Pȳthagorae in disputātiōnibus saepe dīcēbant: "Ipse dīxit!" Pȳthagorās, eōrum magister philosophiae, erat "ipse": sententiae eius etiam sine ratiōne valuērunt. In philosophiā autem ratiō sōla, nōn sententia, valēre dēbet.

(Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* 1.5.10.—**Pȳthagorās, -ae,** m.—**disputātiō, -ōnis,** *argument, debate.*—sc. **id** as direct obj. of **ipse dīxit.**)

词源点滴

形容词 **altus, -a, -um,** *high* 的字面意思是 *having been nourished*，所以才会 *grown large*；altitude, alto, contralto, exalt, hautboy, oboe 均源于该词。

In the readings

1. contend, contention, contentious.—equestrian; cp. **equus,** *horse*. 5. emend, emendation, mend. 6. recede, recession. "Alexander": tumulus, tumular, tumulose.—laudatory. "Authority": disputable, dispute, disputant, disputation, disputatious

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 如果你常去法庭，或者看过《佩里·梅森探案集》[1]，那么你一定碰到

[1]《佩里·梅森探案集》(*Perry Mason*)是加德纳(Erle Stanley Gardner)的著名侦探小说集。——译者注

过一些法律拉丁语。在律师的词典里,**ipse** 是常见词, 例如:**ipsō factō**, *by that very fact*; **ipsō jūre** (古典拉丁语写作 **iūre**), *by the law itself*; **rēs ipsa loquitur**, *the matter speaks for itself*。由第三人称反身代词产生了 **suī jūris** (**iūris**), lit. *of his own right*, 即在法律上有权处理自己的事务。英语中的常用语 **suī generis**, lit. *of his/her/its own kind*(参见第十八课的 **genus**)并非法律术语,不过它源自反身代词,指独特的人或事物。另一个常用的英语短语(参见前面关于毕达哥拉斯的阅读材料)是 **ipse dīxit**,指某种教条的或武断的说法;类似地,源于强势代词的还有:**ipsissima verba**, *the very words*([被引用者的]原话);医学术语"ipsilateral",意为"身体同侧的"(源于拉丁语 **latus, lateris**, n., *side*);"solipsism", 指这样一种哲学理论,主张自我是唯一的实在,或者只有自我决定着对实在的感知。

现在, 你所掌握的词汇已经足以翻译君士坦丁大帝的名言 **in hōc signō vincēs** (*under this standard*—i.e., the cross—*you shall prevail*)了。近年来,它成了一条著名的香烟广告,意为 *You'll win with this brand*。(可美国卫生局长会答应吗?)哎呀,**tempus iterum fūgit: valēte!**



School of Athens, detail of Pythagoras and a boy
Raphael, 1508
Stanza della Segnatura
Vatican Palace, Vatican State

第十四课

第三变格法的 i– 词干名词；
手段夺格，伴随夺格，方式夺格

有些第三变格法名词与第七课介绍的有所不同，它们的格词尾中有时有一个特征性的 **i**。所以这些名词也被称为 **i**–词干名词，其他第三变格法名词则被称为辅音词干名词。由下列词形变化表可知，**i**–词干名词的共同特点是：复数属格以**–ium**（而不是**–um**）结尾；中性名词的单数夺格以**–ī** 结尾，而不是以**–e** 结尾，中性名词的复数主格、复数宾格和复数呼格以**–ia** 结尾，而不是以**–a** 结尾；**vīs** 是一个常见的不规则 **i**–词干名词，应当牢记（括号中给出的单数属格和单数与格很少用到）。

辅音词干复习	等音节词		双辅音词根	以–e,–d,–ar 结尾的中性词	不规则词
rēx, rēgis, m., *king*	**cīvis, -is,** m., *citizen*	**nūbēs, -is,** f., *cloud*	**urbs, -is,** f., *city*	**mare, -is,** n., *sea*	**vīs, vīs,** f., *force;* pl. *strength*
单数					
主格 rēx	cī́vis	nū́bēs	úrbs	máre	vīs
属格 rḗgis	cī́vis	nū́bis	úrbis	máris	(vīs)
与格 rḗgī	cī́vī	nū́bī	úrbī	márī	(vī)
宾格 rḗgem	cī́vem	nū́bem	úrbem	máre	v**im**
夺格 rḗge	cī́ve	nū́be	úrbe	már**ī**	vī
复数					
主格 rḗgēs	cī́vēs	nū́bēs	úrbēs	már**ia**	vī́rēs
属格 rḗgum	cī́v**ium**	nū́b**ium**	úrb**ium**	már**ium**	vī́r**ium**
与格 rḗgibus	cī́vibus	nū́bibus	úrbibus	máribus	vī́ribus
宾格 rḗgēs	cī́vēs	nū́bēs	úrbēs	már**ia**	vī́rēs
夺格 rḗgibus	cī́vibus	nū́bibus	úrbibus	máribus	vī́ribus

阳性和阴性的复数宾格还有一种重要词尾是**–īs**（比如写成 **cīvīs** 而不是

cīvēs)。虽然这种形式在本书中出现不多,但在从共和国时期到奥古斯都时期的文学作品中经常使用,所以也应当记住。

除了学习这几个新词尾，还应当能够辨识出词汇表和阅读材料中出现的**i**–词干名词。为此,不妨记住以下三条规则。

阳性和阴性的 i–词干名词

1. 阳性和阴性名词,单数主格以**–is** 或**–ēs** 结尾,且主格和属格的音节数相等(通常称为"parisyllabic"[等音节的],源于 **pār**, *equal*, + **syllaba**)。[1]

hostis, hostis, m.; hostium; *enemy*
nāvis, nāvis, f.; nāvium; *ship*
mōlēs, mōlis, f.; mōlium; *mass, structure*

2. 阳性和(主要是)阴性名词,单数主格以**–s** 或**–x** 结尾,且词根以两个辅音结尾;主格多为单音节。

ars, art–is, f.; artium; *art, skill*
dēns, dent–is, m.; dentium; *tooth*
nox, noct–is, f.; noctium; *night*
arx, arc–is, f.; arcium; *citadel*

当然,将这些阳性、阴性名词与辅音词干名词区分开来的唯一词尾通常是复数属格的词尾**–ium**。

中性的 i–词干名词

3. 中性名词,单数主格以**–al, –ar** 或**–e** 结尾。它们不仅在以**–ium** 结尾的复数属格中含有 **i**,而且在以**–ī** 结尾的单数夺格,以及以**–ia** 结尾的复数主格/宾格/呼格中也含有特征性的 **i**。

animal, animālis, n., *animal*
exemplar, exemplāris, n., *model, pattern, original*
mare, maris, n., *sea*

不规则的 Vīs

Vīs 是常见的不规则名词,必须牢记,而且应当与 **vir** 区分开。请注意,特征

---

[1] **Canis, canis**, *dog* 和 **iuvenis, –is**, *youth* 属例外情况,其复数属格以**–um** 结尾。还有几个主格以**–er** 结尾的名词属于 **i**–词干名词,比如 **imber, imbris**, m., *shower, rain* (复数属格 **imbrium**)。

性的 ī 出现在大多数形式中。作为练习，请对下列形式进行分析：**virī, vīrēs, virīs, vīrium, vīribus, virōs, virum**。

夺格的用法

到目前为止，夺格一般都是与介词连用的，所以没有造成什么困难。然而，罗马人经常用无介词夺格来表达英语中需要用介词来表达的想法。要对这些夺格作出正确解释，需要做到两点：(1)知道无介词夺格的类型；(2)对语境进行分析，看看哪种类型最合乎逻辑。

以前我们学过，夺格可以充当某些介词的宾语，以下是夺格的另外三种常见用法（或“结构”）；夺格的其他几种用法将在后续课程中陆续介绍。最好能列一张表，就每一种用法记下夺格的名称、定义和例子（当然，对其他格也应当如此）。

手段夺格或工具夺格

手段夺格或工具夺格是最重要的无介词类型之一。它回答“通过什么手段或工具”(*by means of what* [*instrument*]？)，“用什么”(*by what*？, *with what*？)的问题，对应于由介词 *by, by means of, with* 引出的英语短语。

Litterās stilō scrīpsit, *he wrote the letter with a pencil* (stilus, -ī).

Cīvēs pecūniā vīcit, *he conquered the citizens with/by money.*

Id meīs oculīs vīdī, *I saw it with my own eyes.*

Suīs labōribus urbem cōnservāvit, *by his own labors he saved the city.*

在阅读材料和翻译练习中我们已经不止一次见到过这种形式了。

伴随夺格和方式夺格

我们也见过用 **cum** +夺格来指(1)伴随，回答“和谁”(*with whom*？)的问题；(2)方式，回答“怎样”(*how*？)的问题。

Cum amīcīs vēnērunt, *they came with friends* (= with whom?).

Cum celeritāte vēnērunt, *they came with speed* (= how?; *speedily.*—celeritās, -tātis).

Id cum eīs fēcit, *he did it with them* (= with whom?).

Id cum virtūte fēcit, *he did it with courage* (= how?; *courageously*).

应当注意，这三种结构都可以用英语介词“with”来翻译，但在概念上是不同的，必须认真加以区分。夺格结构一般起副词的作用，告诉我们关于动词动作的

某些情况；这三种夺格分别告诉我们，动作是通过什么手段或工具完成的，和谁一起完成的，以及用什么方式完成的。

在把英语翻译成拉丁语时需要注意：如果 *with* 指“和谁”（*with whom*）或“以何种方式”（*in what manner*），就使用 **cum** +夺格；如果 *with* 指 “借助什么”（*by means of what*），就使用无介词夺格。

词汇表

ánimal, animā́lis, n., *a living creature, animal* (related to **anima,** Ch. 34, *breath, air, spirit, soul,* and **animus;** animate, animation)
áqua, -ae, f., *water* (aquatic, aquarium, Aquarius, aqueduct, subaqueous, ewer, sewer, sewage, sewerage)
ars, ártis, f., *art, skill* (artifact, artifice, artificial, artless, artist, artisan, inert, inertia)
aúris, aúris, f., *ear* (aural, auricle, auricular, auriform; not to be confused with "auric," "auriferous," from **aurum,** *gold*)
cī́vis, cī́vis, m. and f., *citizen* (civil, civilian, civility, incivility, civilize, civic; cp. **cīvitās, cīvilis,** *related to one's fellow citizens*)
iūs, iū́ris, n., *right, justice, law* (jurisdiction, jurisprudence, juridical, jurist, juror, jury, just, justice, injury; cp. **iniūria,** Ch. 39, **iūstus,** Ch. 40)
máre, máris, n., *sea* (marine, mariner, marinate, maritime, submarine, cormorant, rosemary, mere = Eng. cognate, archaic for "small lake.")
mors, mórtis, f., *death* (mortal, immortal, mortify, mortgage; murder = Eng. cognate; cp. **mortālis,** Ch. 18, **immortālis,** Ch. 19)
nū́bēs, nū́bis, f., *cloud* (nubilous)
ōs, ṓris, n., *mouth, face* (oral, orifice)
pars, pártis, f., *part, share; direction* (party, partial, partake, participate, participle, particle, particular, partisan, partition, apart, apartment, depart, impart, repartee)
Rṓma, -ae, f., *Rome* (romance, romantic, romanticism; cp. **Rōmānus**)
túrba, -ae, f., *uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd, multitude* (cp. **turbāre,** *to disturb, throw into confusion;* turbid, turbulent, turbine, turbo, disturb, perturb, imperturbable, trouble)
urbs, úrbis, f., *city* (urban, urbane, urbanity, suburb, suburban)
vīs, vīs, f., *force, power, violence;* **vī́rēs, vī́rium,** pl., *strength* (vim, violate, violent; do not confuse with **vir**)
ā (before consonants), **ab** (before vowels or consonants), prep. + abl., *away from, from; by* (personal agent); frequent in compounds (aberration, abject, abrasive, absolve, abstract, abundant, abuse)
trāns, prep. + acc., *across;* also a prefix (transport, transmit)
appéllō (1), *to speak to, address (as), call, name* (appellation, appellative, appeal, appellant, appellate)
cúrrō, cúrrere, cucúrrī, cúrsum, *to run, rush, move quickly* (current, cursive, cursory, course, coarse, discursive, incur, occur, recur)
mū́tō (1), *to change, alter; exchange* (mutable, immutable, mutual, com-

mute, permutation, transmutation, molt)

téneō, tenḗre, ténuī, téntum, *to hold, keep, possess; restrain;* **-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum** in compounds, e.g., **contineō** (tenable, tenacious, tenant, tenet, tenure, tentacle, tenor, continue, content, continent, pertinent, pertinacity, lieutenant, appertain, detain, retain, sustain)

vī́tō (1), *to avoid, shun;* not to be confused with **vīvō** (inevitable)

练习与复习

1. Magnam partem illārum urbium post multōs annōs vī et cōnsiliō capiēbat.
2. Ante Caesaris ipsīus oculōs trāns viam cucurrimus et cum amīcīs fūgimus.
3. Nēmō vitia sua videt, sed quisque illa alterīus.
4. Monuitne nūper eōs dē vīribus illārum urbium in Asiā?
5. Ipsī autem lībertātem cīvium suōrum magnā cum cūrā aluerant.
6. Nōmina multārum urbium nostrārum ab nōminibus urbium antīquārum trāximus.
7. Pars cīvium dīvitiās cēpit et per urbem ad mare cucurrit.
8. Hodiē multae nūbēs in caelō sunt signum īrae acerbae deōrum.
9. Illud animal herī ibi cecidit et sē trāns terram ab agrō trahēbat.
10. That wicked tyrant did not long preserve the rights of these citizens.
11. Great is the force of the arts.
12. His wife was standing there with her own friends and doing that with patience.
13. Cicero felt and said the same thing concerning his own life and the nature of death.

古代名言

1. Et Deus aquās maria in prīncipiō appellāvit. (Genesis; **aquās** is direct object; **maria** is predicate acc. or objective complement.[2])
2. Terra ipsa hominēs et animālia ōlim creāvit. (Lucretius.)
3. Pān servat ovēs et magistrōs fortūnātōs ovium. (Virgil.—Pan, the god of pastures and shepherds.—**ovis, ovis,** f., *sheep.*)
4. Parva formīca onera magna ōre trahit. (Horace.—**formīca, -ae,** *ant.*—**onus, oneris,** n., *load.*)
5. Auribus teneō lupum. (*Terence.—a picturesque, proverbial statement of a dilemma, like Eng. "to have a tiger by the tail."—**lupus, -ī,** *wolf.*)
6. Ille magnam turbam clientium sēcum habet. (Horace.—**cliēns, -entis,** m., *client, dependent.*)

---

[1] 像 *call*（**appellō, vocō**），*consider*（**dūcō, habeō**），*choose*（**legō**），*make*（**faciō, creō**）等一些动词可以跟两个宾格：一个是直接宾语；另一个是某种类型的谓语性名词或谓语形容词，有时称为"宾语补足语"。

7. Hunc nēmō vī neque pecūniā superāre potuit. (Ennius.)
8. Animus eius erat ignārus artium malārum. (Sallust.—**ignārus, -a, -um,** *ignorant.*)
9. Magna pars meī mortem vītābit. (Horace.—**meī,** partitive gen., Ch. 15.)
10. Vōs, amīcī doctī, exemplāria Graeca semper cum cūrā versāte. (Horace.—**exemplar, -plāris,** *model, original.*—**versāre,** *to turn; study.*)
11. Nōn vīribus et celeritāte corporum magna gerimus, sed sapientiā et sententiā et arte. (Cicero.—**celeritās, -tātis,** *swiftness.*)
12. Istī caelum, nōn animum suum, mūtant, sī trāns mare currunt. (Horace.)

STORE TEETH

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.
  Quae ratiō est? Ēmptōs haec habet, illa suōs.

(*Martial 5.43; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Thāis** and **Laecānia** are names of women; take **habet . . . dentēs** with both these subjects.—**niger, -gra, -grum,** *black.*—**niveus, -a, -um,** *snowy.*—**dēns, dentis,** m., *tooth.*—**quae** (interrogative adj. modifying **ratiō**), *what.*—**ēmptōs [dentēs],** perf. pass. partic., *bought, purchased.*)

CICERO IMAGINES THE STATE OF ROME ITSELF URGING HIM TO PUNISH THE CATILINARIAN CONSPIRATORS

M. Tullī Cicerō, quid agis? Istī prō multīs factīs malīs poenās dare nunc dēbent; eōs enim ad mortem dūcere dēbēs, quod Rōmam in multa perīcula traxērunt. Saepe Rōmānī in hāc cīvitāte etiam cīvēs morte multāvērunt. Sed nōn dēbēs cōgitāre hōs malōs esse cīvēs, nam numquam in hāc urbe prōditōrēs patriae iūra cīvium tenuērunt; hī iūra sua āmīsērunt. Populus Rōmānus tibi magnās grātiās aget, M. Tullī, sī istōs cum virtūte nunc multābis.

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.11.27–28; see the readings in Ch. 11 above and Ch. 20 below.—**M.** = **Mārcus.**—**multāre,** *to punish.*—**prōditor, -tōris,** *betrayer.*)

词源点滴

In the readings

4. formic, formaldehyde.—onus, onerous. 11. celerity, accelerate, accelerator. "Store Teeth": Negro (Spanish from **niger**), Negroid; dental, dentist, dentifrice, dentil, indent, dandelion (Fr. **dent de lion**), tooth = Eng. cognate.

潘(Pan, sent. 3)是希腊神话中的牧神和田野之神。他有一种力量,能够使人突然产生恐慌。"Panic"一词便是由此产生的(不过,像"Pan-American"中的"pan-"却源于另一个希腊词,意为 *all*)。

考察以下罗曼语派生词:

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
ars, artis; artem	arte	arte	art
mors, mortis; mortem	morte	muerte	mort
pars, partis; partem	parte	parte	parti
pēs, pedis; pedem	piede	pie	pied
dēns, dentis; dentem	dente	diente	dent
nāvis, nāvis; nāvem	nave	nave	navire nef (*nave*)
nox, noctis; noctem	notte	noche	nuit

显然,这些罗曼语派生词并非来自拉丁词的主格形式。这里的规律是,来源于拉丁语的罗曼语名词和形容词一般源于其宾格形式,而且往往丢掉了最后一个音节的某种声音或特征。[1]

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Quid agitis, amīcī et amīcae! 希望你有一个 **mēns sāna in corpore sānō,** 在它的所有 **partēs**。 我们已经学过一些表示身体部位的拉丁词:**oculus, auris, ōs** 和**dēns**(还记得 Thais 和 Laecania 吗?)。以下是位于 **caput** 之上的其他一些词,根据其英语派生词很容易记住:**collum, –ī,** *neck* ("collar"); **nāsus, –ī,** *nose* ("nasal"); **supercilium, –ī,** *eyebrow*(但愿你从未傲慢地[superciliously]对朋友竖起眉毛 [eyebrow]);**coma, –ae,** *hair* (天文学爱好者知道 "后发星座"**Coma Berenīcēs,** *Berenice's lock*——不过它与"comb"无关,而与"comet"有关);**lingua, –ae,** *tongue* 或 *language* ("multilingual","lingo", 甚至是像舌头一样又长又扁的"linguine"!)。关于更多的 **partēs corporis**,参见第二十课。

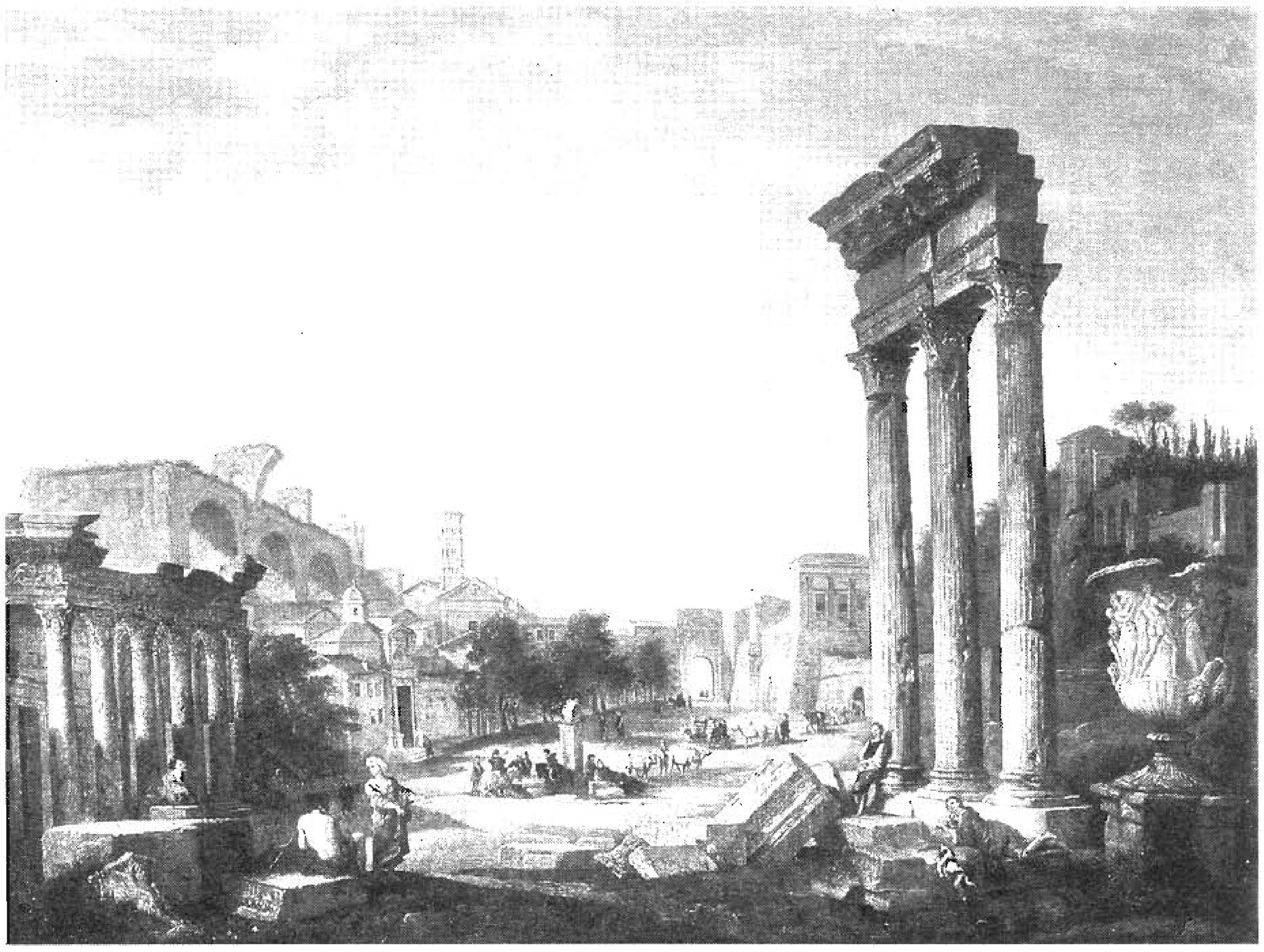
顺便指出,语言应当通过"听—说"技巧来学习,而不仅仅是读和写。所以我希望你要记得通过大声朗读来练习变格和变位,并且每天对某个人说一声 **salvē** 或 **tē amō**。

唔——看了词汇表和新的 **i–**词干名词,我想起了米高梅电影制片公司的座右铭 **ars grātiā artis,** *art for the sake of art*, 还想起了你已经获得或将要获得的学位 **B.A.**(**Baccalaureus Artium**) 和 **M.A.**(**Magister Artium**)。再有就是 **mare nostrum** 这句熟悉的拉丁语短语,它或者是罗马人用来称呼地中海(*our sea*)的,或者可能性稍小一点,指恺撒对自己那匹毫无音乐细胞的马的批评[2]("我的马不弹六弦琴! "——唉!!!)。**Valēte!**

---

[1] 到目前为止,本书中出现的唯一一个例外是源自拉丁词 **filius** 的法语词 **fils, son**(古法语词是 **fiz**,由此衍生出英语词"Fitz–", *natural son*,如 Fitzgerald)。

[2] "Mare"在英语中指"母马"、"母驴"。——译者注



The Forum, Rome, Giovanni Paolo Pannini, 18th century
Private Collection

第十五课

数词；整体属格；
带有基数词的属格和夺格；时间夺格

数词

和英语一样，拉丁语中最常见的数词也是“基数词”（cardinals，源于 **cardō, cardinis**, m., *hinge*，即计数过程中“关键的、起枢轴作用的［pivotal］”数词，如“一、二、三、……”）和“序数词”（ordinals，源于 **ōrdō, ōrdinis**, m., *rank, order*，即表示出现“顺序”的数词，如“第一、第二、第三、……”）。

基数词

在拉丁语中，一百以内的基数词大都是不发生性、数、格变化的形容词，只有以下几个是例外：

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*（参见第九课）

	duo, *two*			**trēs,** *three*		**mīlle,** *thousand* **mīlia,** *thousands*	
	阳性	**阴性**	**中性**	**阳性和阴性**	**中性**	**阳性、阴性、中性**	**中性**
主格	dúo	dúae	dúo	trēs	tría	mī́lle	mī́lia
属格	duṓrum	duā́rum	duṓrum	tríum	tríum	mī́lle	mī́lium
与格	duṓbus	duā́bus	duṓbus	tríbus	tríbus	mī́lle	mī́libus
宾格	dúōs	dúās	dúo	trēs	tría	mī́lle	mī́lia
夺格	duṓbus	duā́bus	duṓbus	tríbus	tríbus	mī́lle	mī́libus

200 到900 之间表示，100 的整数倍的基数词与第一、第二变格法的形容词复数有相同的变格方式，例如 **ducentī, –ae, –a**, *two hundred*。

Mīlle(1000)的单数形式是一个不发生变格的形容词,而复数形式却充当第三变格法的中性 **i–**词干名词(例如 **mīlle virī**, *a thousand men*; **mīlia virōrum**, *thousands of men*)。

应当牢记从 **ūnus** 到 **vīgintī quīnque** 的基数词(参见附录 p.443 的表)以及 **centum**(100)和 **mīlle**。下列句子说明了基数词的各种形式和应用:

Trēs puerī rosās dedērunt duābus puellīs, *three boys gave roses to two girls.*
Octō puerī librō s dedērunt decem puellīs, *eight boys gave books to ten girls.*
Ūnus vir vēnit cum quattuor amīcīs, *one man came with four friends.*
Cōnsul vēnit cum centum virīs, *the consul came with 100 men.*
Cōnsul vēnit cum ducentīs virīs, *the consul came with 200 men.*
Cōnsul vēnit cum mīlle virīs, *the consul came with 1,000 men.*
Cōnsul vēnit cum sex mīlibus virōrum, *the consul came with six thousand(s) (of) men.*

序数词

表示排列顺序的序数词是规则的第一、第二变格法形容词(**prīmus, –a, –um; secundus, –a, –um;** etc.——参见附录 p.443)。应当掌握从 **prīmus** 到 **duodecimus** 的序数词。

整体属格

表示部分的词后面常常跟一个表示事物整体的词的属格,例如:

pars urbis, *part of the city*(city = 整体)
nēmō amīcōrum meōrum, *no one of my friends*

整体属格(Genitive of the Whole,有时也称"部分属格"[partitive genitive])也可以用在某些中性代词和形容词的主格和宾格之后,如 **aliquid, quid, multum, plūs, minus, satis, nihil, tantum, quantum**。

nihil temporis, *no time* (*nothing of time*)
quid cōnsiliī, *what plan?*
satis ēloquentiae, *sufficient eloquence*

整体属格本身可以是第二变格法形容词的中性单数。

multum bonī, *much good* (lit. *of good*)
quid novī, *what* (*is*) *new?*
nihil certī, *nothing certain*

带有基数词的属格和夺格

Mīlia 常与整体属格连用。

decem mīlia virōrum, *10000 men*（但是 mīlle virī, *1000 men*）

对于其他基数词以及 **quīdam**(*a certain one*，将在第二十六课中介绍)，在表达整体时常用 **ex** 或 **dē** 加夺格。

trēs ex amīcīs meīs, *three of my friends*（但是 trēs amīcī = *three friends*）
quīnque ex eīs, *five of them*
centum ex virīs, *100 of the men*
quīdam ex eīs, *a certain one of them*

时间夺格：何时/期间

在表示"何时/期间"("time when" 或 " within which")时，罗马人常常使用无介词夺格。它通常对应于英语中由 *at, on, in* 或 *within* 引出的介词短语，具体使用哪个介词取决于英语习惯(表示"延续时间"的 *for* 不在此列：参见第三十七课)。

Eō tempore nōn poteram id facere, *at that time I could not do it.*
Agricolae bonīs annīs valēbant, *in good years the farmers flourished.*
Eōdem diē vēnērunt, *they came on the same day* (**diē**, abl. of **diēs**, *day*).
Aestāte lūdēbant, *in the summer they used to play.* (**aestāte**, abl. of **aestās**, *summer*)
Paucīs hōrīs id faciet, *in* (*within*) *a few hours he will do it.*

由于这种结构总是包含有某个表示时间单位的名词，而没有介词，所以很容易将它与我们已经学过的其他类型的夺格用法(介词宾语、手段、方式、伴随、带有基数词的夺格)区分开来。我们必须能够辨识、命名和翻译所有这六种夺格用法。

词汇表

Itália, -ae, f., *Italy* (italics, italicize)
memória, -ae, f., *memory, recollection* (memoir, memorial, memorize, memorandum, commemorate)
tempéstās, tempestā́tis, f., *period of time, season; weather, storm* (tempest, tempestuous; cp. **tempus**)
Cardinal numerals from **ū́nus** to **vīgíntī quī́nque** (App., p. 451)
Ordinal numerals from **prī́mus** to **duodécimus** (App., p. 451)
céntum, indecl. adj., *a hundred* (cent, centenary, centennial, centi-, centigrade, centimeter, centipede, centurion, century, bicentenary, bicen-

tennial, sesquicentennial, tercentenary)

mī́lle, indecl. adj. in sg., *thousand;* **mī́lia, mī́lium,** n. pl., *thousands* (millennium, millennial, mile, milli-, milligram, millimeter, millipede, million, mill (= 1/10 cent), bimillennium, millefiori)

míser, mísera, míserum, *wretched, miserable, unfortunate* (misery, Miserere, commiserate)

ínter, prep. + acc., *between, among* (intern, internal; common as Eng. prefix, e.g., interact, intercept, interdict)

ítaque, adv., *and so, therefore*

commíttō, -míttere, -mī́sī, -míssum, *to entrust, commit* (committee, commission, commissary, commitment, noncommissioned, noncom)

exspéctō (1), *to look for, expect, await* (expectancy, expectation)

iáciō, iácere, iḗcī, iáctum, *to throw, hurl.* This verb appears in compounds as **-iciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** e.g., **ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum,** *to throw out, drive out* (abject, adjective, conjecture, dejected, eject, inject, interject, object, project, subject, reject, trajectory)

tímeō, timḗre, tímuī, *to fear, be afraid of, be afraid* (timid, timorous, intimidate; cp. **timor**)

练习与复习

1. Illae quīnque fēminae inter ea animālia mortem nōn timēbant.
2. Duo ex fīliīs ā portā per agrōs cum patre suō herī currēbant et in aquam cecidērunt.
3. Prīmus rēx dīvitiās in mare iēcit, nam magnam īram et vim turbae timuit.
4. Nēmō eandem partem Asiae ūnō annō vincet.
5. Rōmānī quattuor ex eīs urbibus prīmā viā iūnxērunt.
6. Itaque mīlia librōrum eius ab urbe trāns Italiam mīsistis.
7. Lībertātem et iūra hārum urbium artibus bellī cōnservāvimus.
8. Dī Graecī sē inter hominēs cum virtūte saepe nōn gerēbant.
9. Cicerō mīlia Rōmānōrum vī sententiārum suārum dūcēbat.
10. Sententiae medicī eum cārum mihi numquam fēcērunt.
11. The tyrant used to entrust his life to those three friends.
12. The greedy man never has enough wealth.
13. At that time we saved their mother with those six letters.
14. Through their friends they conquered the citizens of the ten cities.

古代名言

1. Diū in istā nāve fuī et propter tempestātem nūbēsque semper mortem exspectābam. (Terence.—**nāvis, nāvis,** *f.,* ship.)
2. Septem hōrīs ad eam urbem vēnimus. (Cicero.)
3. Italia illīs temporibus erat plēna Graecārum artium, et multī Rōmānī ipsī hās artēs colēbant. (Cicero.—**artēs,** in the sense of studies, literature, philosophy.—**colō, -ere,** *to cultivate, pursue.*)

4. Inter bellum et pācem dubitābant. (Tacitus.—**dubitāre,** *to hesitate, waver.*)
5. Eō tempore istum ex urbe ēiciēbam. (Cicero.)
6. Dīcēbat quisque miser: "Cīvis Rōmānus sum." (Cicero.)
7. Mea puella passerem suum amābat, et passer ad eam sōlam semper pīpiābat nec sē ex gremiō movēbat. (Catullus.—**passer, -seris,** m., *sparrow,* a pet bird.—**pīpiāre,** *to chirp.*—**gremium, -iī,** lap.—**movēre.**)
8. Fīliī meī frātrem meum dīligēbant, mē vītābant; mē patrem acerbum appellābant et meam mortem exspectābant. Nunc autem mōrēs meōs mūtāvī et duōs fīliōs ad mē crās traham. (Terence.)
9. Dionȳsius tyrannus, quoniam tōnsōrī caput committere timēbat, fīliās suās barbam et capillum tondēre docuit; itaque virginēs tondēbant barbam et capillum patris. (Cicero.—**tōnsor, -sōris,** *barber.*—**barba, -ae,** *beard.*—**capillus, -ī,** *hair.*—**tondēre,** *to shave, cut.*)

CYRUS' DYING WORDS ON IMMORTALITY

Ō meī fīliī trēs, nōn dēbētis esse miserī. Ad mortem enim nunc veniō, sed pars meī, animus meus, semper remanēbit. Dum eram vōbīscum, animum nōn vidēbātis, sed ex factīs meīs intellegēbātis eum esse in hōc corpore. Crēdite igitur animum esse eundem post mortem, etiam sī eum nōn vidēbitis, et semper cōnservāte mē in memoriā vestrā.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 22.79–81.—Cyrus the Great, whom Cicero quotes here, was a Persian king of the 6th cen. B.C.—**crēdō, -ere,** *to believe.*)

FABIAN TACTICS

Etiam in senectūte Quīntus Fabius Maximus erat vir vērae virtūtis et bella cum animīs adulēscentis gerēbat. Dē eō amīcus noster Ennius, doctus ille poēta, haec verba ōlim scrīpsit: "Ūnus homō cīvitātem fortūnātam nōbīs cūnctātiōne cōnservāvit. Rūmōrēs et fāmam nōn pōnēbat ante salūtem Rōmae. Glōria eius, igitur, nunc bene valet et semper valēbit."

(Ibid. 4.10.—Quintus Fabius Maximus enjoyed considerable success against Hannibal in the Second Punic War [218–201 B.C.] through his delaying tactics, thus earning the epithet **Cūnctātor,** *the Delayer.*—**Ennius,** an early Roman poet.—**cūnctātiō, -ōnis,** *delaying.*—**rūmor, -mōris,** *rumor, gossip.*—**pōnō, -ere,** *to put, place.*—**salūs, salūtis,** f., *safety.*)

词源点滴

以下是一些源自拉丁语基数词和序数词 2—12 的英语派生词：(2) dual, duel, duet, double (cp. doubt, dubious), duplicity; second; (3) trio, triple, trivial; (4) quart, quarter, quartet, quatrain; (5) quinquennium, quintet, quintuplets, quincunx; (6) sextet, sextant; (7) September; (8) October, octave, octavo; (9) November, noon; (10) December, decimal, decimate, dime, dean; (12) duodecimal,



Hamilcar Asks Hannibal to Swear His Hatred Against the Romans
Giovanni Battista Pittoni, 18th century
Pinacoteca di Brera, Milan, Italy

dozen。

下表列出了一些源于拉丁语的罗曼语基数词。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
ūnus	un(o)	un(o)	un
duo	due	dos	deux
trēs	tre	tres	trois
quattuor	quattro	cuatro	quatre
quīnque	cinque	cinco	cinq
sex	sei	seis	six
septem	sette	siete	sept
octō	otto	ocho	huit
novem	nove	nueve	neuf
decem	dieci	diez	dix
ūndecim	undici	once	onze
duodecim	dodici	doce	douze
centum	cento	ciento	cent
mīlle	mille	mil	mille

In the readings

3. cult, culture, agriculture, horticulture (**hortus**, *garden*), colony. 7. passerine. —"pipe",既是动词又是名词,是一个被广泛使用的拟声词;如希腊词 **pipos**, *a*

young bird，**pipizein** 或 **peppizein**, *to peep, chirp*，德语词 **piepen** 和 **pfeifen**，英语词"peep"，法语词 **piper**。9. tonsorial, tonsure.—barber, barb, barbed, barbate.—capillary, capillaceous. "Cyrus": credo, creed, credible, credulous（参见第二十五课词汇表）。"Fabian": cunctation.—component, etc.（第二十七课）—salutation, salutary; cf. **salvēre**。

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! Quid novī, meī amīcī amīcaeque? 除基数词和序数词外，拉丁语还有其他类型的数词，在后续课程中我们会陆续碰到。其中一些我们已经很熟悉了。"罗马数字"源于用手指计数：**I** = one finger, **II** = two, …, **V** = five(伸出手掌，拇指和食指成"V"字形)，**VI** = 一只手的手指数加一，……，**X** = 两个 **V**，一个倒加在另一个上面，等等；还有"分配"数词，**singulī, -ae, -a**（*one each*），**bīnī, -ae, -a**（*two each*），**ternī, -ae, -a**, etc.；"倍数词"，**simplex, simplicis**（*single*），**duplex**（*double*），**triplex**, etc.；"表数副词"，**semel**（*once*），**bis**（*twice*），**ter**（*three times*），etc.。所有这些词都有无数(numerous)英语派生词！

"我信赖语法，但直到学了一点拉丁语，我才真正对语法有了了解——拉丁语是一种馈赠，一种绝对的馈赠。"——撒切尔夫人。不论你有怎样的政治立场，**Id est bonum cōnsilium**。**Valēte!**

第十六课

第三变格法形容词

拉丁语形容词主要可以分为两类。第一类我们已经很熟悉了，那就是类似于 **magnus, -a, -um** 的第一、第二变格法形容词（第四课），以及少数单数属格以 **-īus** 结尾、单数与格以 ī 结尾的第一/第二变格法形容词子类（第九课）。

第二类形容词一般具有第三变格法的 **i-**词干形式。它们与第三变格法的 **i-**词干名词的变格方式完全相同，只是所有性（不仅仅是中性）的单数夺格都以 **-ī** 结尾。

这类形容词又可以分为三组，它们仅在一个方面有区别。一种称为"三尾形容词"（adjectives of three endings），就像 **magnus, magna, magnum** 那样，仅凭单数主格形式就可以区分三种性，例如 **ācer**[阳], **ācris**[阴], **ācre**[中]；其次是"二尾形容词"（在第三变格法形容词中数量最多），即阳性和阴性主格具有同一种形式，中性主格是另一种形式，例如 **fortis**[阳、阴], **forte**[中]；最后是"一尾形容词"，三种性的单数主格形式没有区分，例如 **potēns** 同时是阳性、阴性、中性的单数主格形式。在所有其他方面，这三组形容词都是一样的，阳性和阴性词尾与中性词尾的不同仅仅体现在单数宾格、复数主格（呼格）和复数宾格形式上。

下面给出了词形变化表，特殊的 **i-**词干词尾作了突出显示；作为比较，**cīvis** 和 **mare** 也一同列出（如果需要，请复习第十四课），以说明掌握第三变格法形容词并不需要学习太多新东西。

	I-词干名词复习		**二尾形容词** **fortis, forte,** *strong, brave*	
	阳性或阴性	**中性**	**阳性和阴性**	**中性**
主格	cī́vis	máre	fórtis	fórte
属格	cī́vis	máris	fórtis	fórtis

与格	cī́vī	márī	fórtī	fórtī
宾格	cī́vem	máre	fórtem	fórte
夺格	cī́ve	márī	fórtī	fórtī
主格	cī́vēs	már**ia**	fórtēs	fórt**ia**
属格	cī́v**ium**	már**ium**	fórt**ium**	fórt**ium**
与格	cī́vibus	máribus	fórtibus	fórtibus
宾格	cī́vēs[1]	már**ia**	fórtēs[1]	fórt**ia**
夺格	cī́vibus	máribus	fórtibus	fórtibus

	三尾形容词 **ācer, ācris, ācre,** *keen, severe, fierce*		一尾形容词 **potēns,** 属格 **potentis,** *powerful*	
	阳性和阴性	**中性**	**阳性和阴性**	**中性**
主格	ā́cer, ā́cris	ā́cre	pótēns	pótēns
属格	ā́cris	ā́cris	poténtis	poténtis
与格	ā́crī	ā́crī	poténtī	poténtī
宾格	ā́crem	ā́cre	poténtem	pótēns
夺格	ā́crī	ā́crī	poténtī	poténtī
主格	ā́crēs	ā́cr**ia**	poténtēs	potént**ia**
属格	ā́cr**ium**	ā́cr**ium**	potént**ium**	potént**ium**
与格	ā́cribus	ā́cribus	poténtibus	poténtibus
宾格	ā́crēs[1]	ā́cr**ia**	poténtēs[1]	potént**ia**
夺格	ā́cribus	ā́cribus	poténtibus	poténtibus

评论

请注意这个特征性的 **i** 在词形变化表中出现的位置:[2]

(1)**-ī**,所有性的单数夺格。

(2)**-ium**,所有性的复数属格。

(3)**-ia**,中性的复数主格和复数宾格。

还要注意,就像第一、第二变格法形容词那样,第三变格法形容词也可以与任何变格法的名词连用。在以下说明中,我们把 **omnis, -e,** *every, all* 作为二尾形容词的例词。

omnis amīcus *or* homō	ācer amīcus/homō	potēns amīcus/homō
omnis rēgīna *or* māter	ācris rēgīna/māter	potēns rēgīna/māter

---

[1] 别忘了,**i-**词干名词和形容词的复数宾格还有另一种以**-īs**结尾的形式(在奥古斯都时代之前一直是规则词尾),不过在本书中基本不出现。

[2] 少数第三变格法一尾形容词的变格并非在这三个位置上都有这个特征性的 **i**, 例如 **vetus, veteris,** *old*: **vetere** (单数夺格),**veterum**(复数属格),**vetera**(中性复数主格和复数宾格)。比较级和现在时分词形式将在以后介绍。

omne bellum *or* animal ācre bellum/animal potēns bellum/animal

作为练习，考察并分析下列短语中的诸形式：

omnī fōrmae	in omnī fōrmā	omnium fōrmārum
omnī animō	in omnī animō	omnium animōrum
omnī hominī	in omnī homine	omnium hominum
omnī urbī	in omnī urbe	omnium urbium
omnī marī	in omnī marī	omnium marium

在词汇表中，三尾形容词（像 **ācer** 这样的以**-er** 结尾的词，有些在词根中保留了**-e-**，有些则没有保留）和二尾形容词（词尾为**-is/-e**）列出了不同的主格词尾；词根可以通过阴性或中性形式来确定。一尾形容词（其中许多都以**-ns** 或**-x** 结尾）则给出了属格形式，从而可以确定出词根（去掉词尾**-is**，如 **potēns, potent-is**）。

用法

与其他形容词一样，第三变格法形容词也可以修饰名词（**omnēs agricolae**, *all the farmers*，有时称为"定语"用法）；可以充当"谓语名词"（**virī erant ācrēs**, *the men were fierce*）或"宾语补足语"（**virtūs fēcit virōs fortēs**, *virtue made the men brave*）；可以代替名词（**fortūna fortēs adiuvat**, *fortune helps the brave*，有时称为"名词"用法）。需要注意的是，除了表示大小或数量的词、指示词以及希望强调的词之外，定语形容词通常跟在所修饰名词的后面。

词汇表

aétās, aetā́tis, f., *period of life, life, age, an age, time* (eternal, eternity)
audī́tor, audītṓris, m., *hearer, listener, member of an audience* (auditor, auditory, auditorium; cp. **audiō**)
clēméntia, -ae, f., *mildness, gentleness, mercy* (clement, clemency, inclement, Clement, Clementine)
mēns, méntis, f., *mind, thought, intention* (mental, mentality, mention, demented; Minerva [?]; cp. mind)
sátura, -ae, f., *satire* (satirist, satirical, satirize)
ā́cer, ā́cris, ā́cre, *sharp, keen, eager; severe, fierce* (acrid, acrimony, acrimonious, eager, vinegar)
brévis, bréve, *short, small, brief* (brevity, breviary, abbreviate, abridge)
céler, céleris, célere, *swift, quick, rapid* (celerity, accelerate)
diffícilis, diffícile, *hard, difficult, troublesome* (difficulty)
dúlcis, dúlce, *sweet; pleasant, agreeable* (dulcify, dulcet, dulcimer)
fácilis, fácile, *easy, agreeable* (facile, facility, facilitate; cp. **faciō**)
fórtis, fórte, *strong, brave* (fort, forte, fortify, fortitude, force, comfort)

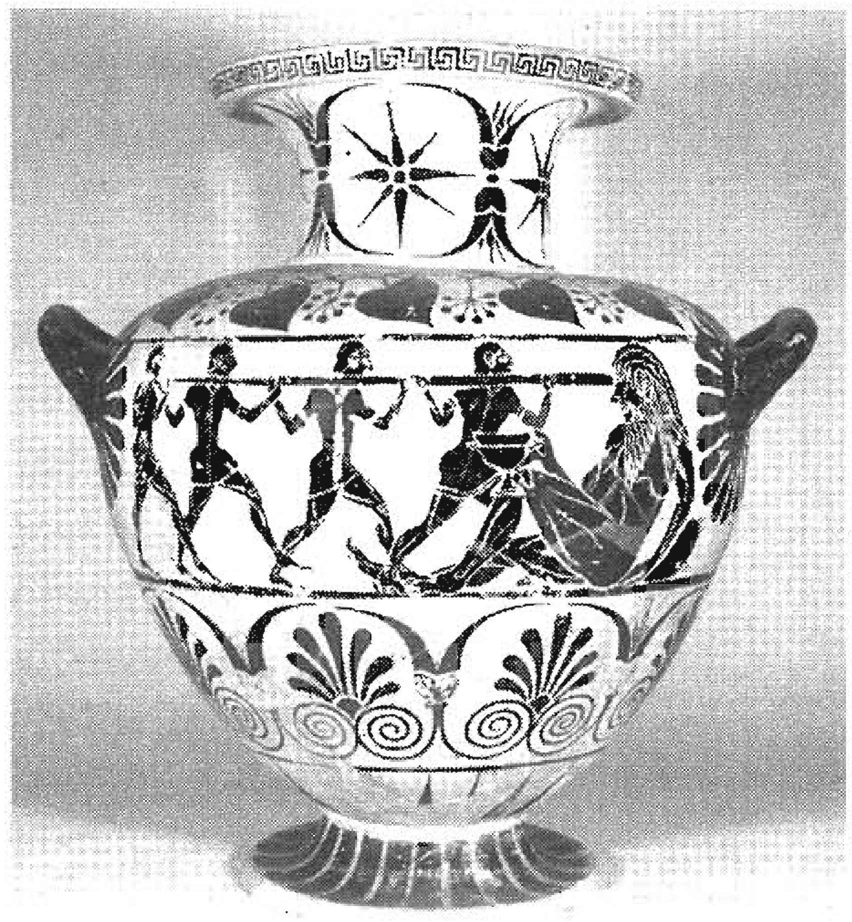
íngēns, gen. **ingéntis,** *huge*
iūcúndus, -a, -um, *pleasant, delightful, agreeable, pleasing* (jocund)
lóngus, -a, -um, *long* (longitude, longevity, elongate, oblong, prolong; Eng. "long" is cognate.)
ómnis, ómne, *every, all* (omnibus, bus, omnipresent, omnipotent, omniscient, omnivorous; cp. **omnīnō,** Ch. 40)
pótēns, gen. **poténtis,** pres. part. of **possum** as an adj., *able, powerful, mighty, strong* (potent, impotent, omnipotent, potentate, potential)
sénex, gen. **sénis,** adj. and noun, *old, aged; old man* (*senate, senator, senescent, senile, senior, seniority, sir, sire*)
quam, adv., *how*
régō, régere, rḗxī, rḗctum, *to rule, guide, direct* (regent, regime, regiment, regular, regulate, correct, direction, rectitude; cp. **rēx, rēgīna**)

练习与复习

1. Fortēs virī et fēminae ante aetātem nostram vīvēbant.
2. Eōs centum senēs miserōs ab Italiā trāns maria difficilia herī mittēbat.
3. Illī duo virī omnēs cupiditātēs ex sē ēiēcērunt, nam nātūram corporis timuērunt.
4. Potēns rēgīna, quoniam sē dīlēxit, istōs trēs vītāvit et sē cum eīs numquam iūnxit.
5. Itaque inter eōs ibi stābam et signum cum animō fortī diū exspectābam.
6. Celer rūmor per ōra aurēsque omnium sine morā currēbat.
7. Vīs bellī acerbī autem vītam eius paucīs hōrīs mūtāvit.
8. Quīnque ex nautīs sē ex aquā trāxērunt sēque Caesarī potentī commīsērunt.
9. Caesar nōn poterat suās cōpiās cum celeribus cōpiīs rēgis iungere.
10. Themistoclēs omnēs cīvēs ōlim appellābat et nōmina eōrum ācrī memoriā tenēbat.
11. In caelō sunt multae nūbēs et animālia agricolae tempestāte malā nōn valent.
12. The father and mother often used to come to the city with their two sweet daughters.
13. The souls of brave men and women will never fear difficult times.
14. Does he now understand all the rights of these four men?
15. The doctor could not help the brave girl, for death was swift.

古代名言

1. Quam dulcis est lībertās! (Phaedrus.)
2. Labor omnia vīcit. (*Virgil.)
3. Fortūna fortēs adiuvat. (Terence.)
4. Quam celeris et ācris est mēns! (Cicero.)
5. Polyphēmus erat mōnstrum horrendum, īnfōrme, ingēns. (Virgil.—



The blinding of Polyphemus
Hydria from Cerveteri, 525 B.C.
Museo Nazionale di Villa Giulia, Rome, Italy

6. Varium et mūtābile semper fēmina. (*Virgil.—Order: **fēmina semper [est] varium et mūtābile.—varius, -a, -um,** *varying, fickle.*—**mūtābilis, -e,** *changeable;* the neuters **varium** and **mūtābile** are used to mean "a fickle and changeable *thing.*")
7. Facile est epigrammata belle scrībere, sed librum scrībere difficile est. (*Martial.—**epigramma, -matis,** n., *short poem, epigram.*—**belle,** adv. from **bellus, -a, -um.**)
8. Īra furor brevis est; animum rege. (*Horace.—**furor, -rōris,** *madness.*)
9. Ars poētica est nōn omnia dīcere. (*Servius.—**poēticus, -a, -um.**)
10. Nihil est ab omnī parte beātum. (*Horace.)
11. Liber meus hominēs prūdentī cōnsiliō alit. (Phaedrus.—**prūdēns,** gen. **prūdentis.**)
12. Māter omnium bonārum artium sapientia est. (*Cicero.)
13. Clēmentia rēgem salvum facit; nam amor omnium cīvium est inexpugnābile mūnīmentum rēgis. (Seneca.—**inexpugnābilis, -e,** *impregnable.*—**mūnīmentum, -ī,** *fortification, defense.*)
14. Vīta est brevis; ars, longa. (Hippocrates, quoted by Seneca.)
15. Breve tempus aetātis autem satis longum est ad bene vīvendum. (Cicero.—**vīvendum,** *living,* verbal noun obj. of **ad,** *for.*)
16. Vīvit et vīvet per omnium saeculōrum memoriam. (*Velleius Paterculus.—**saeculum, -ī,** *century, age.*)

JUVENAL EXPLAINS HIS IMPULSE TO SATIRE

Semper ego audītor erō? Est turba poētārum in hāc urbe—ego igitur erō poēta! Sunt mīlia vitiōrum in urbe—dē istīs vitiīs scrībam! Difficile est saturam nōn scrībere. Sī nātūra mē adiuvāre nōn potest, facit indignātiō versum. In librō meō erunt omnia facta hominum—timor, īra, voluptās, culpa, cupiditās, īnsidiae. Nunc est plēna cōpia vitiōrum in hāc miserā urbe Rōmae!

(Juvenal, *Saturae* 1.1ff; prose adaptation from the opening of Juvenal's programmatic first satire.—**indignātiō, -ōnis.**—**versus,** *verse, poetry.*)

ON A TEMPERAMENTAL FRIEND

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus—es īdem:
nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē.

(*Martial, 12.46; meter: elegiac couplet.)

词源点滴

In the readings

5. monstrous.—horrendous.—informal, inform(带有否定前缀 **in-**的形容词)。6. variety, variegated, vary, unvaried, invariable. 8. furor. 11. **prūdēns** 是 **prōvidēns** 的词中省略形式,后者见于"providence", "providential"。"Juvenal": indignation, indignant.—verse, versify, versification.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! Quid agitis? **Quid hodiē est tempestās**? 下面是一些可能的答案,其中有许多根据英语派生词就可以辨识出来:**frīgida**(由第十五课的内容可知,**tempestās** 是阴性,所以 **frīgida** 是阴性形容词,源于 **frīgidus, -a, -um**);**calida**("scald"是英语派生词);**nimbōsa** (源于 **nimbus** [含义同 **nūbēs**] + 常用后缀**-ōsus, -a, -um**, *full of*, 因此是"cloudy"——与英语词"cumulonimbus clouds"比较);**ventōsa**(同样的构词方式,源于 **ventus**, *wind*);**sōl lūcet**, *the sun is shining* (与 "solar","translucent" 比较);**pluit**, *it's raining* ("pluvial","pluviometer"); **ningit**, *it's snowing*(英语词"niveous"与之相关,它源于拉丁语 **niveus, -a, -um**)。

关于天气,我们就聊到这儿。下面是各种与 **omni**-有关的词和短语:如果你是"omnific"(源于 **facere**)和"omnipresent"(*-sent* 源于 **sum**)的,胃口是"omnivorous"(**vorāre**, *to eat*, 与"carnivorous","herbivorous"比较)的,目光是"omnidirectional"(参见前面词汇表中的 **regō**)的,那么你也许就有"omnipotent"甚至"omniscient"(**scīre**, *to know*)的潜能。然而,正如维吉尔的那句名言所说,**nōn omnēs possumus omnia**(顺便指出,前面提到的 **regō** 并不意为 *to go again*,**regit** 也不应当译成 *leave*,不过现在我不得不表达这种意思了!)。

Valēte, omnēs amīcī et amīcae meae, et semper amāte Latīnam!

第十七课

关系代词

关系代词 **quī, quae, quod** 相当于英语中的 *who/which/that*，通常引导从句，指向前面的某个名词或代词，即它的“先行词”；关系从句本身能够起形容词的作用，提供关于先行词的描述性信息（如“the man who was from Italy” . . . =“the Italian man”）。

关系代词的形式十分复杂，死记也许是唯一实用的方法。不过很容易看出，属格形式 **cuius** 和与格形式 **cui** 类似于 **illīus** 和 **illī**；其余大多数形式的性、数、格也不难确定。

QUĪ, QUAE, QUOD, *who, which, that*

单数			复数		
阳性	**阴性**	**中性**	**阳性**	**阴性**	**中性**
quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
cuíus[1]	cuíus	cuíus	quṓrum	quā́rum	quṓrum
cui[1]	cui	cui	quíbus	quíbus	quíbus
quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
quō	quā	quō	quíbus	quíbus	quíbus

用法和一致

既然关系代词指涉（refer，源于拉丁词 **referō, referre, rettulī, relātum**，见第三十一课）并且本质上等价于先行词（antecedent，源于 **antecēdere**, *to go*

[1] 关于 **cuius**（就好像拼写成 *cui-yus*）和 **cui** 中 **ui** 的读法，参照 **huius** 和 **huic**（第九课），并参见导言部分。

before，因为先行词通常出现在前一子句中），所以关系代词和先行词理应保持性和数的一致；然而，就像任何名词或代词一样，关系代词的格需要根据它在从句中的用法而定。这一点可以通过分析和翻译下面的句子来理解：

The woman whom you are praising is talented.

1. 该句的主句为：
   The woman... is talented. Fēmina... est docta.
2. *Whom* 引导关系从句，修饰 *woman*。
3. *Woman* (**fēmina**)位于关系代词 *whom* 之前，是它的先行词。
4. *Whom* 既要忠于其先行词 **fēmina**，又要忠于其所属的从句。

a. 由于先行词 **fēmina** 是阴性单数，所以拉丁语中的 *whom* 也必须是阴性单数。
b. 由于在从句中，*whom* 是(*you*)*are praising* (**laudās**)的直接宾语，所以在拉丁语中它必须是宾格。
c. 因此，拉丁语形式必须是阴性单数宾格：**quam**。

于是，完整的拉丁语句子就是：

Fēmina quam laudās est docta.

简而言之，规则就是：关系代词的性和数由其先行词决定，格则由它在从句中的用法来决定。

试分析下列句子中关系代词的性、数、格：

1. Dīligō puellam **quae** ex Italiā vēnit, *I admire the girl who came from Italy.*
2. Homō dē **quō** dīcēbās est amīcus cārus, *the man about whom you were speaking is a dear friend.*
3. Puella **cui** librum dat est fortūnāta, *the girl to whom he is giving the book is fortunate.*
4. Puer **cuius** patrem iuvābāmus est fortis, *the boy whose father we used to help is brave.*
5. Vītam meam committam eīs virīs **quōrum** virtūtēs laudābās, *I shall entrust my life to those men whose virtues you were praising.*
6. Timeō idem perīculum **quod** timētis, *I fear the same danger which you fear.*

在翻译时，一定不要把关系从句中的词引入主句，反之亦然；比如在上面的句 3 中，不要把 **puella** 误当成 **dat** 的主语。请注意，关系从句是一个独立的单元，一般从关系代词开始，到第一个动词结束（句 3 中的 **cui . . . dat**）；如果句子

比较复杂，比如下面“古代名言”中的句 3，不妨先找到关系从句，用括号将它括起来：

Multī cīvēs aut ea perīcula [quae imminent] nōn vident aut ea [quae vident] neglegunt.

然后再阅读句子的其余部分。在翻译完关系代词的先行词（往往紧挨着关系代词）之后，再翻译关系从句。

词汇表

libéllus, -ī, m., *little book* (libel, libelous; diminutive of **liber**)
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that* (quorum)
caécus, -a, -um, *blind* (caecum, caecal, caecilian)
lévis, léve, *light; easy; slight, trivial* (levity, lever, levy, levee, Levant, leaven, legerdemain, alleviate, elevate, relevant, irrelevant, relieve)
aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or*
cíto, adv., *quickly* (excite, incite, recite; cp. **recitō,** below)
quóque, adv., *also, too*
admíttō, -míttere, -mī́sī, -míssum, *to admit, receive, let in* (admission, admissible, inadmissible, admittedly)
coépī, coepísse, coéptum, *began,* defective verb used in the perfect system only; the present system is supplied by **incipiō** (below).
cúpiō, cúpere, cupī́vī, cupī́tum, *to desire, wish, long for* (Cupid, cupidity, concupiscence, covet, covetous, Kewpie doll; cp. **cupiditās, cupīdō,** Ch. 36, **cupidus,** Ch. 39)
dḗleō, dēlḗre, dēlḗvī, dēlḗtum, *to destroy, wipe out, erase* (delete, indelible)
dēsī́derō (1), *to desire, long for, miss* (desiderate, desideratum, desiderative, desire, desirous)
incípiō, -cípere, -cḗpī, -céptum, *to begin* (incipient, inception; cp. **capiō**)
nā́vigō (1), *to sail, navigate* (navigation, navigable; cp. **nauta**)
néglegō, neglégere, neglḗxī, neglḗctum, *to neglect, disregard* (negligent, negligee, negligible; cp. **legō,** Ch. 18)
récitō (1), *to read aloud, recite* (recital, recitation, recitative)

练习与复习

1. Potēns quoque est vīs artium, quae nōs semper alunt.
2. Miserōs hominēs, autem, sēcum iungere coeperant.
3. Nam illā aetāte pars populī in Italiā iūra cīvium numquam tenuit.
4. Incipimus vēritātem intellegere, quae mentēs nostrās semper regere dēbet et sine quā valēre nōn possumus.
5. Quam difficile est bona aut dulcia ex bellō trahere!
6. Centum ex virīs mortem diū timēbant et nihil clēmentiae exspectābant.

7. Puer mātrem timēbat, quae eum saepe neglegēbat.
8. Inter omnia perīcula illa fēmina sē cum sapientiā gessit.
9. Itaque celer rūmor ācris mortis per ingentēs urbēs cucurrit.
10. Quoniam memoria factōrum nostrōrum dulcis est, beātī nunc sumus et senectūtem facilem agēmus.
11. Multī audītōrēs saturās ācrēs timēbant quās poēta recitābat.
12. They feared the powerful men whose city they were ruling by force.
13. We began to help those three pleasant women to whom we had given our friendship.
14. We fear that book with which he is beginning to destroy our liberty.

古代名言

1. Salvē, bone amīce, cui fīlium meum herī commīsī. (Terence.)
2. Dionȳsius, dē quō ante dīxī, ā Graeciā ad Siciliam per tempestātem nāvigābat. (Cicero.—**Sicilia, -ae,** *Sicily.*)
3. Multī cīvēs aut ea perīcula quae imminent nōn vident aut ea quae vident neglegunt. (Cicero.—**imminēre,** *to impend, threaten.*)
4. Bis dat quī cito dat. (Publilius Syrus.—**bis,** adv., *twice.*)
5. Quī coepit, dīmidium factī habet. Incipe! (Horace.—**dīmidium, -iī,** *half.*)
6. Levis est fortūna: id cito repōscit quod dedit. (Publilius Syrus.—**repōscō, -ere,** *to demand back.*)
7. Fortūna eum stultum facit quem nimium amat. (Publilius Syrus.)
8. Nōn sōlum fortūna ipsa est caeca sed etiam eōs caecōs facit quōs semper adiuvat. (Cicero.)
9. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victōriā. (*Publilius Syrus.)
10. Simulātiō dēlet vēritātem, sine quā nōmen amīcitiae valēre nōn potest. (Cicero.—**simulātiō, -ōnis,** *pretense, insincerity.*)
11. Virtūtem enim illīus virī amāvī, quae cum corpore nōn periit. (Cicero.—**pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** *to perish.*)
12. Turbam vītā. Cum hīs vīve quī tē meliōrem facere possunt; illōs admitte quōs tū potes facere meliōrēs. (Seneca.—**melior,** *better.*)

ON THE PLEASURES OF LOVE IN OLD AGE

Estne amor in senectūte? Voluptās enim minor est, sed minor quoque est cupiditās. Nihil autem est cūra nōbīs, sī nōn cupimus, et nōn caret is quī nōn dēsīderat. Adulēscentēs nimis dēsīderant; senēs satis amōris saepe habent et multum sapientiae. Cōgitō, igitur, hoc tempus vītae esse iūcundum.

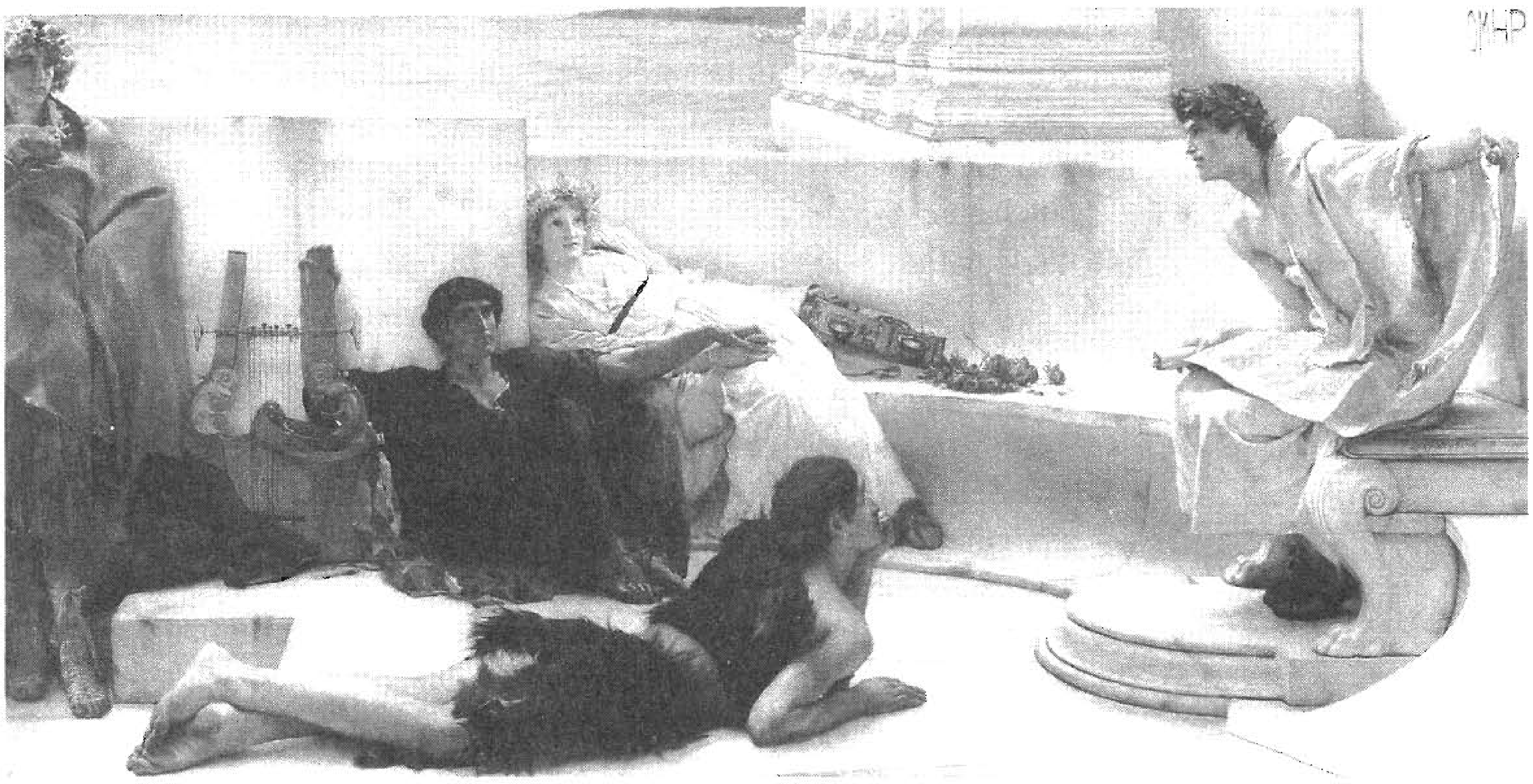
(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 14.47–48.—**minor,** *less.*—**carēre,** *to lack, want.*)

IT'S ALL IN THE DELIVERY

Quem recitās meus est, ō Fīdentīne, libellus;
  sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus!

(*Martial, 1.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Fīdentīnus,** a fellow who had publicly

recited some of Martial's poems.—**libellus,** diminutive of **liber,** is the delayed antecedent of **quem;** in prose the order would be **libellus quem recitās est meus.—male,** adv. of **malus.—cum,** conj., *when.*)



A Reading from Homer, Sir Lawrence Alma-Tadema, 1885
Philadelphia Museum of Art: The George W. Elkins Collection

词源点滴

拉丁语关系代词是[意] **chi, che**, [西] **que**, [法] **qui, que** 等罗曼语词的母词。

如果后缀**-scō** 表明该拉丁语动词是一个"表始"(inceptive)动词,那么该词尾为动词赋予了什么确切含义呢? ——**tremō**, *tremble*; **tremēscō** = ?

在中世纪手稿中,许多文本都以一个"incipit"("由此开始")作为开端用语;例如,**liber prīmus Epistulārum Plīniī incipit**。

[意] **o**, [西] **o**, [法] **ou** 均可追溯到拉丁语 **aut**。

In the readings

3. imminent. 10. simulation, simulator, dissimulation. 11. **perīre:** Fr. **périr, périssant**: Eng. "perish." 12. ameliorate. "Old Age": minority.—caret.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Iterum salvēte! 有一些英语缩写词源于 **quī, quae, quod**, 你也许见到过: **q.v. = quod vidē**, *which see* (即 "see this item"), **Q.E.D. = quod erat dēmōnstrandum**, *that which was to be proved*(比如用在数学证明中——关于"被

动迂说法”这种动词形式，参见第二十四课)。较不常见的有 **q.e. = quod est**, *which is*,还有 **Q.E.F. = quod erat faciendum**, *which was to be done*。你看,对于一个真正有修养的人来说,拉丁语是 **sine quā nōn** (*indispensable*,字面意思是, something *without which one can not* manage),这一点我们就不要“[为了细枝末节而]争辩”(“quibble”,这是一个指小词,源于法律文件中常用的 **quibus**)了。

顺便指出,**recitāre** 的基本含义是 *to arouse again*(与“excite”,“incite”比较);我们“背诵”一个文本,就是完全从字面上“复活”它,这就是为什么我们——就像罗马人一样——应当总是大声朗读文学作品(尤其是诗歌)的原因。

做翻译的一个好方法是:**semper scrībe sententiās in tabellā tuā** (*your notebook*)。有一句古代谚语道破了个中奥妙:**quī scrībit, bis discit!** 还有一句古老的谚语说:**cito matūrum, cito putridum**, *quickly ripe, quickly rotten*。所以我们不要走得太快:**valēte!**

第十八课

第一和第二变位法动词：现在时系统的被动态；施事夺格

第一、第二变位法：现在时系统的被动态

和英语一样，拉丁语动词也有被动形式。在被动句中，主语是动作的*承受者*（而不是主动句中的*执行者*）。第一、第二变位法现在时系统被动态（即现在时、将来时和未完成时的被动态形式）的构成规则很简单：只要把我们在第一课所学的主动态词尾（**–ō/–m, –s, –t; –mus, –tis, –nt**）替换成新的被动态词尾（**–r, –ris, –tur; –mur, –minī, –ntur**）就可以了。这条规则的例外情况在下列词形变化表中作了强调标注。

Laudō 和 Moneō 的现在时直陈式被动态

被动态词尾

1. -r	laúd-**or**	móne**or**	*I am (am being) praised, warned*
2. -ris	laudā́-ris	monḗris	*you are (are being) praised, warned*
3. -tur	laudā́-tur	monḗtur	*he is (is being) praised, warned*
1. -mur	laudā́-mur	monḗmur	*we are (are being) praised, warned*
2. -minī	laudā́-minī	monḗminī	*you are (are being) praised, warned*
3. -ntur	laudá-ntur	monéntur	*they are (are being) praised, warnea*

未完成时直陈式被动态

I was (being) praised, used to be praised, etc.	*I was (being) warned, used to be warned,* etc.

1. laudā́-ba-r	monḗbar
2. laudā-bā́-ris	monēbā́ris
3. laudā-bā́-tur	monēbā́tur
1. laudā-bā́-mur	monēbā́mur
2. laudā-bā́-minī	monēbā́minī
3. laudā-bá-ntur	monēbántur

将来时直陈式被动态

I shall be praised	*I shall be warned*
1. laudā́**-b-or**	monḗ**bor**
2. laudā́-**be**-ris	monḗ**be**ris
3. laudā́-bi-tur	monḗbitur
1. laudā́-bi-mur	monḗbimur
2. laudā-bí-minī	monēbíminī
3. laudā-bú-ntur	monēbúntur

以上黑体标出的特例形式并不多：在现在时和将来时的第一人称单数形式中，**-r** 是直接加在完整的主动态形式上的（只是在词尾**-r** 之前，**-o-**变成了短音）；在将来时的第二人称单数形式中，**-bi-**变成了**-be-**。还要注意，词干元音在 **laudantur/monentur** 中仍为短音，而在 **laudātur/monētur** 中则为长音（复习一下第一课所讲的规则：在任何位置的 **nt** 之前，元音都要变短，而只有在词末的 **-m, -r**或**-t** 之前，元音才会变短，因此是 **laudat** 和 **laudātur**）。第二人称单数的被动态词尾还有另外一种**-re** 形式（如用 **laudābere** 取代 **laudāberis**）；这种词尾本书虽不采用，但在日后的阅读中，我们肯定会碰到。

现在时不定式被动态

只要把第一、第二变位法动词主动态不定式的词尾**-e** 变成**-ī**，就构成了现在时被动态不定式。

laudā́r-ī, *to be praised*　　　　monḗr-ī, *to be warned*

被动态

当动词是主动态（active，源于 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum,** *to act*）时，主语执行动词的动作。当动词是被动态（passive，源于 **patior, patī, passus sum,** *to undergo, experience*）时，主语被作用，即它遭受或被迫接受动词的动作。一般而言，只有及物动词才能用于被动态；而及物动词的宾语（承受动词的动作）现在则成了被动态动词的主语（仍然承受动词的动作）。

Caesarem admonet, *he is warning Caesar.*

Caesar admonētur, *Caesar is being warned.*

Urbem dēlēbant, *they were destroying the city.*

Urbs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed.*

Patriam cōnservābit, *he will save the country.*

Patria cōnservābitur, *the country will be saved.*

施事夺格

被动态动词动作的施事者(*agent by whom*)由 **ab** 加"施事夺格"来表示;完成动作所借助的手段(*means by which*)则由无介词的"手段夺格"来表示,这一点我们在第十四课中已经学过。

Dī Caesarem admonent, *the gods are warning Caesar.*

Caesar ā dīs admonētur, *Caesar is warned by the gods.* (施事)

Caesar hīs prōdigiīs admonētur, *Caesar is warned by these omens.* (手段); prōdigium, -iī, *omen.*

Malī virī urbem dēlēbant, *evil men were destroying the city.*

Urbs ab malīs virīs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed by evil men.* (施事)

Urbs flammīs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed by flames.* (手段); flamma, -ae.

Hī cīvēs patriam cōnservābunt, *these citizens will save the country.*

Patria ab hīs cīvibus cōnservābitur, *the country will be saved by these citizens.* (施事)

Patria armīs et vēritāte cōnservābitur, *the country will be saved by arms and truth.* (手段)

总之,由以上这些例句可以看出,主动句可以这样来改成被动句:把直接宾语变成主语,它是动作的承受者;主语如果是人,就变成施事夺格(别忘了把这种用法加到你的夺格用法表中),如果是物,就变成手段夺格;动词的主动态形式也要变成相应的被动态形式。

词汇表

flū́men, flū́minis, n., *river* (flume; cp. **fluō,** below)
génus, géneris, n., *origin; kind, type, sort, class* (genus, generic, genitive, gender, general, generous, genuine, degenerate, genre, congenial; cp. **gēns,** Ch. 21, **ingenium,** Ch. 29)
hóstis, hóstis, m., *an enemy* (of the state); **hóstēs, -ium,** *the enemy* (hostile,

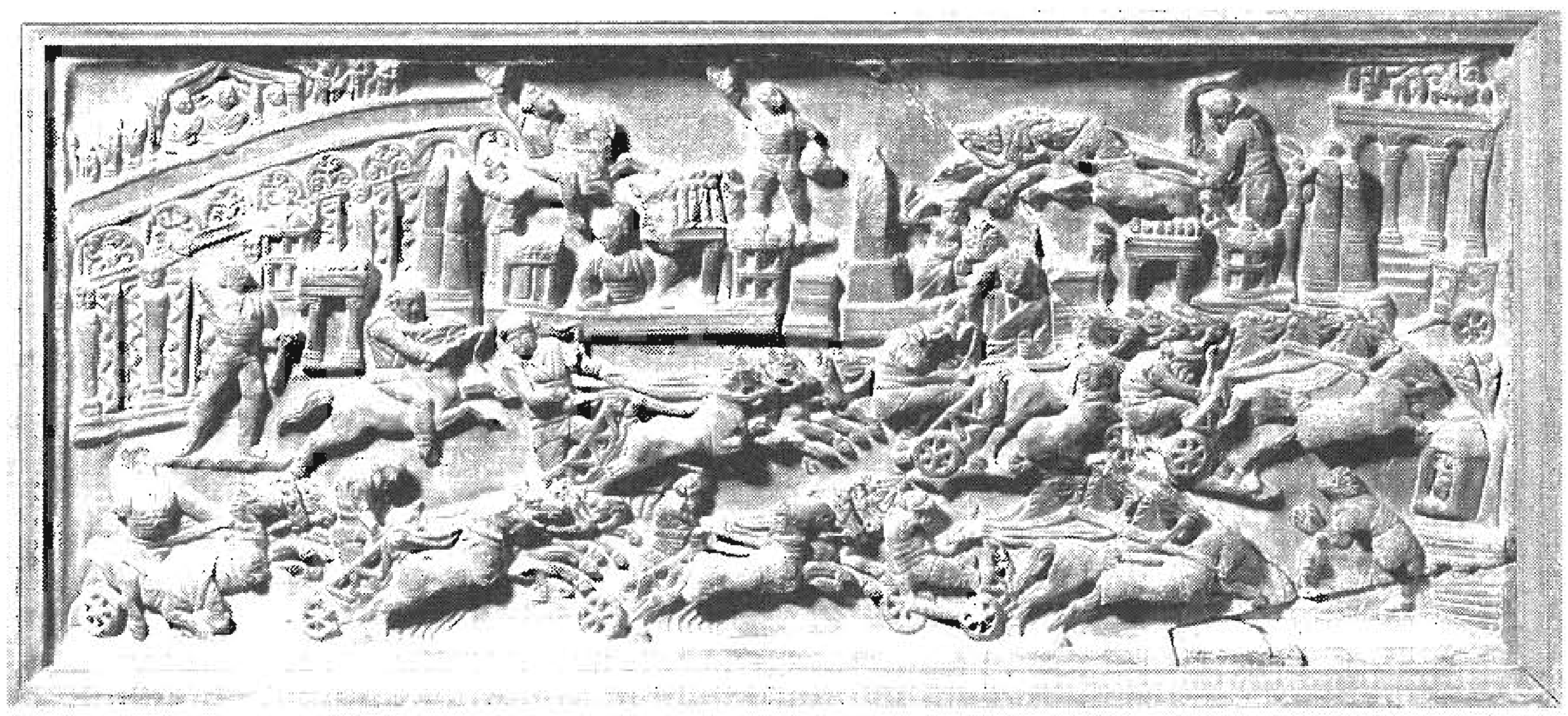
hostility, host)
lū́dus, -ī, m., *game, sport; school* (ludicrous, delude, elude, elusive, allude, allusion, illusion, collusion, interlude, prelude, postlude)
próbitās, probitā́tis, f., *uprightness, honesty* (probity; cp. **probāre,** Ch. 27)
sciéntia, -ae, f., *knowledge* (science, scientific; cp. **sciō,** Ch. 21)
clā́rus, -a, -um, *clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious* (clarify, clarity, claret, clarinet, clarion, declare, Clara, Clarissa, Claribel)
mortā́lis, mortā́le, *mortal* (mortality, immortality; cp. **mors**)
cūr, adv., *why*
deínde, adv., *thereupon, next, then*
flúō, flúere, flū́xī, flū́xum, *to flow* (fluid, fluent, flux, influx, affluence, effluence, influence, confluence, influenza, flu, mellifluous, superfluous)
légō, légere, lḗgī, lḗctum, *to pick out, choose; read* (elect, elegant, eligible, lecture, legend, legible, intellect; cp. **intellegō, neglegō**)
mísceō, miscḗre, míscuī, míxtum, *to mix, stir up, disturb* (miscellanea, miscellaneous, miscellany, miscible, meddle, meddlesome, medley, melee, admixture, intermixture, promiscuous)
móveō, movḗre, mṓvī, mṓtum, *to move; arouse, affect* (mobile, motion, motive, motor, commotion, emotion, remote, locomotive, mutiny)
vídeor, vidḗrī, vī́sus sum, pass. of **videō,** *to be seen, seem, appear*

练习与复习

1. Multī morte etiam facilī nimis terrentur.
2. Beāta memoria amīcitiārum dulcium numquam dēlēbitur.
3. Illa fēmina caeca omnia genera artium quoque intellēxit et ab amīcīs iūcundīs semper laudābātur.
4. Pater senex vester, ā quō saepe iuvābāmur, multa dē celeribus perīculīs ingentis maris herī dīcere coepit.
5. Mentēs nostrae memoriā potentī illōrum duōrum factōrum cito moventur.
6. Cōnsilia rēgīnae illō tertiō bellō longō et difficilī dēlēbantur.
7. Itaque māter mortem quartī fīliī exspectābat, quī nōn valēbat et cuius aetās erat brevis.
8. Bella difficilia sine cōnsiliō et clēmentiā numquam gerēbāmus.
9. Tē cum novem ex aliīs miserīs ad Caesarem crās trahent.
10. Rēgem ācrem, quī officia neglēxerat, ex urbe suā ēiēcērunt.
11. Ille poēta in tertiō libellō saturārum scrīpsit dē hominibus avārīs quī ad centum terrās aliās nāvigāre cupiunt quod pecūniam nimis dēsīderant.
12. Mercy will be given by them even to the citizens of other cities.
13. Many are moved too often by money but not by truth.
14. The state will be destroyed by the powerful king, whom they are beginning to fear.
15. Those ten women were not frightened by plans of that trivial sort.

古代名言

1. Possunt quia posse videntur. (*Virgil.—**quia,** conj., *because.*)
2. Etiam fortēs virī subitīs perīculīs saepe terrentur. (Tacitus.—**subitus, -a, -um,** *sudden.*)
3. Tua cōnsilia sunt clāra nōbīs; tenēris scientiā hōrum cīvium omnium. (Cicero.)
4. Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtārī nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)
5. Fās est ab hoste docērī. (Ovid.—**fās est,** *it is right.*)
6. Eō tempore erant circēnsēs lūdī, quō genere levī spectāculī numquam teneor. (Pliny.—**circēnsēs lūdī,** *contests in the Circus.*—As here with **genere,** the antecedent is often attracted into the rel. clause.—**spectāculum, -ī.**)



Relief with scene of Circus Maximus Museo Archeologico Foligno, Italy

7. Haec est nunc vīta mea: admittō et salūtō bonōs virōs quī ad mē veniunt; deinde aut scrībō aut legō; post haec omne tempus corporī datur. (Cicero.—**salutāre,** *to greet* at the early morning reception.)
8. Nihil igitur mors est, quoniam nātūra animī habētur mortālis. (Lucretius.)
9. Amor miscērī cum timōre nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)
10. Numquam enim temeritās cum sapientiā commiscētur. (*Cicero.—**temeritās, -tātis,** *rashness.*)
11. Dīligēmus eum quī pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)
12. Laudātur ab hīs; culpātur ab illīs. (*Horace.)
13. Probitās laudātur—et alget. (*Juvenal.—**algēre,** *to be cold, be neglected.*)

ON DEATH AND METAMORPHOSIS

Ō genus hūmānum, quod mortem nimium timet! Cūr perīcula mortis timētis? Omnia mūtantur, omnia fluunt, nihil ad vēram mortem venit. Animus errat et in alia corpora miscētur; nec manet, nec eāsdem fōrmās servat, sed in fōrmās novās mūtātur. Vīta est flūmen; tempora nostra fugiunt et nova sunt semper. Nostra corpora semper mūtantur; id quod fuimus aut sumus, nōn crās erimus.

(Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 15.153–216; prose adaptation.—The ancients had some imaginative views on the transmigration of souls.)

词源点滴

Hostis 最初指"陌生人"(*stranger*),后来指"敌人"(*enemy*),因为任何陌生人都可能成为敌人。由 **hostis**, *enemy* 衍生出了"军队"意义上的"host"的含义。**Hospes, hospitis**,是 **hostis**, *stranger* 和 **potis**, *having power over, lord of*(与俄语词 **gospodin**, *lord, gentleman* 比较)的古代复合词, 既指 *host*(接受陌生人或客人的人),亦指 *guest*;比较"hospital","hospitality","hostel","hotel"(法语词 **hôtel**)以及英语同源词"guest"。

In the readings

6. circus.—spectator, spectacle, specter, spectacular. 10. temerity (contrast "timidity").

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 想知道为什么动词 **legere** 既可以指 *to pick out*, 又可以指 *to read* 吗? 这是因为,阅读的过程就像聚拢和收集一个文本中的语词。这个比喻多棒啊:我们所有人(特别是学拉丁语的人)都是"语词收集者"! "让我们尽情采撷这些缤纷的蓓蕾吧",一并收获的将是语言所带来的喜悦。

还记得本课词汇 **videor** 特殊的被动含义吗?它的现在时被动态不定式形式见于 **esse quam vidērī**, *to be rather than to seem*, 这是北卡罗莱纳州的座右铭。**Scientia** 也出现在几条座右铭中:**scientia est potentia,** *knowledge is power*,这一条最为著名;还有 **scientia sōl mentis est**, *knowledge is the sun of the mind*(特拉华大学校训)。**Valēte, discipulae discipulīque!**

第十九课

动词完成时系统的被动态；疑问代词和疑问形容词

完成时系统的被动态

完成时系统的被动态结构很简单：动词的完成时被动态分词（第四个主要部分）分别与 **sum, erō** 和 **eram** 组合，就构成了完成时被动态、将来完成时被动态和过去完成时被动态。这一模式适用于所有变位法的动词。于是，在下列词形变化表中，我们用 **laudātus** 来替代 **monitus, āctus, audītus, captus** 或其他完成时被动态分词。

完成时直陈式被动态

1. laudā́tus, -a, -um sum — *I was praised, have been praised*
2. laudā́tus, -a, -um es — *you were praised, have been praised*
3. laudā́tus, -a, -um est — *he, she, it was praised, has been praised*

1. laudā́tī, -ae, -a súmus — *we were praised, have been praised*
2. laudā́tī, -ae, -a éstis — *you were praised, have been praised*
3. laudā́tī, -ae, -a sunt — *they were praised, have been praised*

将来完成时直陈式被动态

I shall have been praised, etc.

1. laudā́tus, -a, -um érō
2. laudā́tus, -a, -um éris
3. laudā́tus, -a, -um érit

1. laudā́tī, -ae, -a érimus
2. laudā́tī, -ae, -a éritis
3. laudā́tī, -ae, -a érunt

过去完成时直陈式被动态

I had been praised, etc.

1. laudā́tus, -a, -um éram
2. laudā́tus, -a, -um érās
3. laudā́tus, -a, -um érat

1. laudā́tī, -ae, -a erā́mus
2. laudā́tī, -ae, -a erā́tis
3. laudā́tī, -ae, -a érant

用法和翻译

在拉丁语中，虽然 **sum** +分词作为一个动词单元起作用，但分词本质上是一种谓语形容词，即 **puella laudāta est = puella est laudāta**（试与 **puella est bona** 比较）。因此顺理成章地，分词要在性、数、格上与主语保持一致。

就像拉丁语用 **sum, esse** 的现在时、将来时和未完成时形式来构成这些完成时系统的被动态动词一样，英语也用动词 *to have* 的现在时、将来时和过去时形式作为完成时系统（主动态和被动态）的助动词：**laudātus est,** *he has been praised*（或者一般过去时：*was praised*）；**laudātus erit**, *he will have been praised*; **laudātus erat**, *he had been praised*。[1] 请注意不要把 **laudātus est** 误译成 *is praised*，把 **laudātus erat** 误译成 *was praised*（这是由于把 **esse** 和分词的形式分开来看，而没有把它们视为一个整体）。

下面这些例子说明了完成时系统被动态的构成规则、用法和翻译方法：

Puella laudāta est, *the girl has been* (or *was*) *praised.*

Puellae laudātae erant, *the girls had been praised.*

Puellae laudātae erunt, *the girls will have been praised.*

Puerī monitī sunt, *the boys have been* (*were*) *warned.*

Perīculum nōn vīsum erat, *the danger had not been seen.*

Perīcula nōn vīsa sunt, *the dangers were not seen.*

Litterae scrīptae erunt, *the letter will have been written.*

疑问代词

和英语疑问代词(who, whose, whom?　what, which?　)一样，拉丁语疑问代词 **quis, quid** 问的是人或事物的身份。例如，**quid legis**?　*what are you reading*?　**quis illum librum legit**?　*who is reading that book*? 拉丁语疑问代词的复数形式与关系代词的复数形式完全相同；单数形式也相同，只不过：(1)阳性和阴性具有同一形式；(2)主格形式有其特殊拼写 **quis, quid**（当然，**quid** 也是中性宾格形式）。

	单数		复数		
	阳性和阴性	**中性**	**阳性**	**阴性**	**中性**
主格	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
属格	cuíus	cuíus	quṓrum	quā́rum	quṓrum

[1] 有时把完成时系统（更明确地）称为现在完成时、将来完成时和过去完成时；根据本课所讨论的现在时、将来时和过去时的助动词的用法，我们可以看到这些术语是恰当的。

与格	cui	cui	quíbus	quíbus	quíbus
宾格	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
夺格	quō	quō	quíbus	quíbus	quíbus

疑问形容词

和英语疑问形容词(which, what, what kind of)一样，拉丁语疑问形容词 **quī, quae, quod** 要求对人或事物的身份做更加具体的确认。例如，**quem librum legis**? *which* (or *what*) *book are you reading*? **quae fēmina illum librum legit**? *which woman is reading that book*? 疑问形容词的形式与关系代词的形式完全相同，无论是单数还是复数。

疑问词与关系词的区分

Quis 和 **quid** 很容易看出是疑问代词，但在其他情况下，疑问代词、疑问形容词和关系代词不能通过词形，而只能通过语境和它们所起的作用来辨识。以下几点将有助于使这种区分变得简单：

关系代词通常引导一个从句，有一个先行词，而且不是在问问题(事实上，关系从句回答问题，因为它们是形容词性的，提供了关于先行词的进一步信息：例如 **liber quem legis est meus**, *the book which you are reading is mine*)；

疑问代词问的是人或事物的身份，没有先行词，经常引导一个问句(将在第三十课中介绍的"间接问句"属于例外)；

疑问形容词要求对人或事物的身份作更加具体的确认，位于它所询问的名词之前，并且在性、数、格上与该名词保持一致。

考察下列例句，确定句中使用的是关系代词、疑问代词还是疑问形容词：

Quis librum tibi dedit? *Who gave the book to you?*

Vir **quī** librum tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man who gave the book to you praised you.*

Quem librum tibi dedit? *Which book did he give you?*

Cuius librum Cicerō tibi dedit? *Whose book did Cicero give to you?*

Cuius librī fuit Cicerō auctor? *Of which book was Cicero the author?*

Vir **cuius** librum Cicerō tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man whose book Cicero gave to you praised you.*

Cui amīcō librum dedistī? *To which friend did you give the book?*

Cui librum Cicerō dedit? *To whom did Cicero give the book?*

Vir **cui** Cicerō librum dedit tē laudāvit, *the man to whom Cicero gave the book praised you.*

Quid dedit? *What did he give?*

Quod praemium dedit? *What reward did he give?* (**praemium, –iī.**)

Praemium **quod** dedit erat magnum, *the reward which he gave was large.*

Ā quō praemium datum est? *By whom was the reward given?*

Vir **ā quō** praemium datum est tē laudāvit, *the man by whom the reward was given praised you.*

Quō praemiō ille mōtus est? *By which reward was that man motivated?*

词汇表

argūméntum, -ī, n., *proof, evidence, argument* (argumentation, argumentative)
aúctor, auctṓris, m., *increaser; author, originator* (authority, authorize)
benefícium, -iī, n., *benefit, kindness; favor* (benefice, beneficence, beneficial, beneficiary; cp. **faciō**)
família, -ae, f., *household, family* (familial, familiar, familiarity, familiarize)
Graécia, -ae, f., *Greece*
iū́dex, iū́dicis, m., *judge, juror* (judge, judgment; cp. **iūdicium,** below, **iūs, iniūria,** Ch. 39, **iūstus,** Ch. 40)
iūdícium, -iī, n., *judgment, decision, opinion; trial* (adjudge, adjudicate, judicial, judicious, injudicious, misjudge, prejudge, prejudice)
scélus, scéleris, n., *evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness*
quis? quid?, interrog. pron., *who? whose? whom? what? which?* (quiddity, quidnunc, quip)
quī? quae? quod? interrog. adj., *what? which? what kind of?* (quo jure)
cértus, -a, -um, *definite, sure, certain, reliable* (ascertain, certify, certificate)
grávis, gráve, *heavy, weighty; serious, important; severe, grievous* (aggravate, grief, grievance, grieve, grave, gravity)
immortā́lis, immortā́le, *not subject to death, immortal* (cp. **mors**)
at, conj. *but; but, mind you; but, you say;* a more emotional adversative than **sed**
nísi, conj., *if . . . not, unless; except* (nisi prius)
cóntrā, prep. + acc., *against* (contra- in compounds such as contradict, contrast, contravene, contrapuntal; contrary, counter, encounter, country, pro and con)
iam, adv., *now, already, soon*
dēléctō (1), *to delight, charm, please* (delectable, delectation; cp. **dēlectātiō,** Ch. 27)
lī́berō (1), *to free, liberate* (liberate, liberation, liberal, deliver; cp. **līber,**

lībertās)

párō (1), *to prepare, provide; get, obtain* (apparatus, compare, parachute, parapet, parasol, pare, parry, repair, reparation, separate, several)

练习与复习

1. Quis lībertātem eōrum eō tempore dēlēre coepit?
2. Cuius lībertās ab istō auctōre deinde dēlēta est?
3. Quōs librōs bonōs poēta caecus herī recitāvit?
4. Fēminae librōs difficilēs crās legent quōs mīsistī.
5. Omnia flūmina in mare fluunt et cum eō miscentur.
6. Itaque id genus lūdōrum levium, quod ā multīs familiīs laudābātur, nōs ipsī numquam cupimus.
7. Puerī et puellae propter facta bona ā mātribus patribusque laudātae sunt.
8. Cūr istī vēritātem timēbant, quā multī adiūtī erant?
9. Hostis trāns ingēns flūmen in Graeciā deinde nāvigāvit.
10. Quī vir fortis clārusque, dē quō lēgistī, aetātem brevem mortemque celerem exspectābat?
11. Quae studia gravia tē semper dēlectant, aut quae nunc dēsīderās?
12. Who saw the six men who had prepared this?
13. What was neglected by the second student yesterday?
14. We were helped by the knowledge which had been neglected by him.
15. Whose plans did the old men of all cities fear? Which plans did they esteem?

古代名言

1. Quae est nātūra animī? Est mortālis. (Lucretius.)
2. Illa argūmenta vīsa sunt et gravia et certa. (Cicero.)
3. Quid nōs facere contrā istōs et scelera eōrum dēbēmus? (Cicero.)
4. Quid ego ēgī? In quod perīculum iactus sum? (Terence.)
5. Ō dī immortālēs! In quā urbe vīvimus? Quam cīvitātem habēmus? Quae scelera vidēmus? (Cicero.)
6. Quī sunt bonī cīvēs nisi eī quī beneficia patriae memoriā tenent? (Cicero.)
7. Alia, quae pecūniā parantur, ab eō stultō parāta sunt; at mōrēs eius vērōs amīcōs parāre nōn potuērunt. (Cicero.)

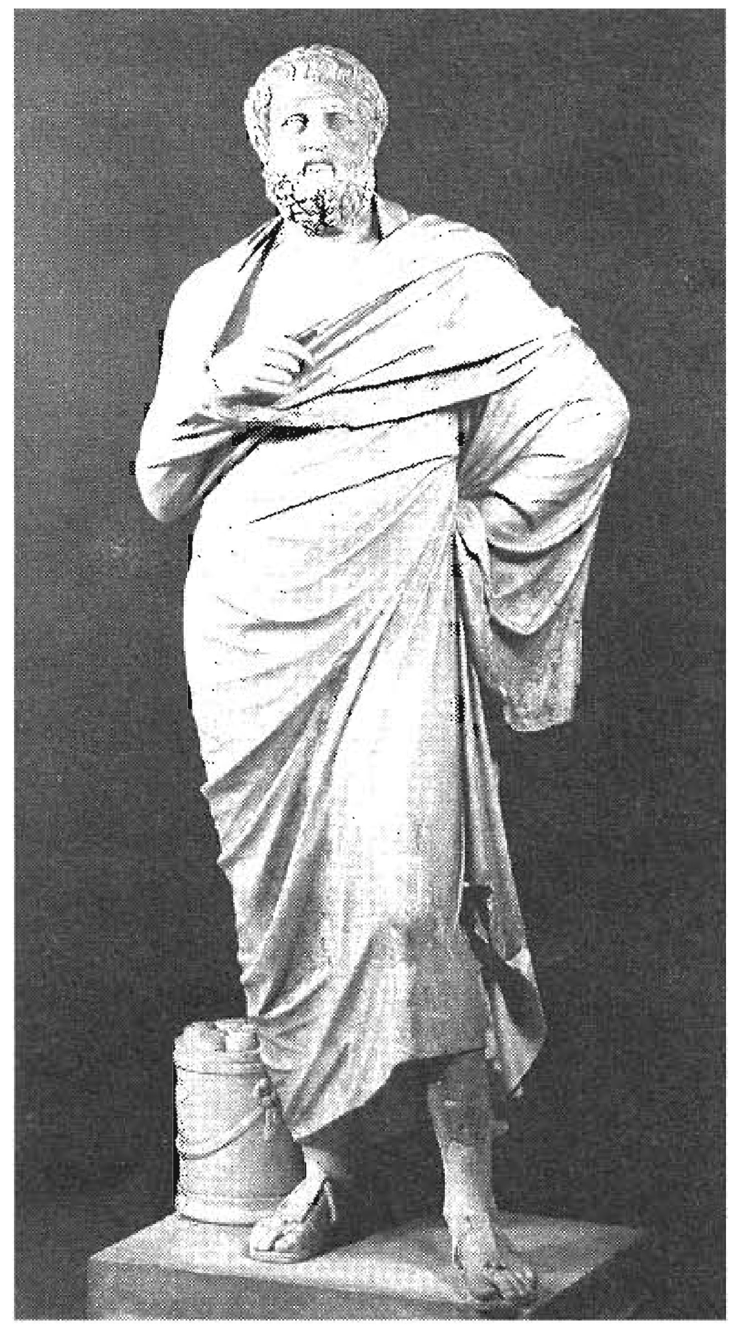
THE AGED PLAYWRIGHT SOPHOCLES HOLDS HIS OWN

Quam multa senēs in mentibus tenent! Sī studium grave et labor et probitās in senectūte remanent, saepe manent etiam memoria, scientia, sapientiaque.

Sophoclēs, scrīptor ille Graecus, ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit; sed propter hoc studium familiam neglegere vidēbātur et ā fīliīs in iūdi-

cium vocātus est. Tum auctor eam tragoediam quam sēcum habuit et quam proximē scrīpserat, "Oedipum Colōnēum," iūdicibus recitāvit. Ubi haec tragoedia recitāta est, senex sententiīs iūdicum est līberātus.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte,* 7.22.—**summam,** *extreme.*—**tragoedia, -ae;** the diphthong **oe** has become **e** in the English word.—**proximē,** adv., *shortly before.*—"Oedipus at Colonus.")



Sophocles
Roman copy, 4th century B.C.
Museo Gregoriano Profano
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

CATULLUS BIDS A BITTER FAREWELL TO LESBIA

Valē, puella—iam Catullus obdūrat.
. . .
15 Scelesta, vae tē! Quae tibī manet vīta?
Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

(*Catullus 8.12, 15–19; meter: choliambic. See L.A. 1, below (and cp. the adaptation of this passage in Ch. 2). **obdūrāre,** *to be hard.*—**scelestus, -a, -um,** *wicked, accursed.*—**vae tē,** *woe to you.*—**Quae,** with **vīta.**—**adībit,** *will visit.*—**dīcēris,** *will you be said.*—**bāsiāre,** *to kiss.*—**cui,** here = **cuius.**—**labellum, -ī,** *lip.*—**mordēre,** *to bite.*—**dēstinātus, -a, -um,** *resolved, firm.*)

MESSAGE FROM A BOOKCASE

Sēlectōs nisi dās mihī libellōs,

admittam tineās trucēsque blattās!

(*Martial 14.37; meter: hendecasyllabic.—**sēlectus, -a, -um,** *select, carefully chosen.*—**tinea, -ae,** *maggot, bookworm.*—**trux,** gen. **trucis,** *fierce, savage.*—**blatta, -ae,** *cockroach.*)

词源点滴

In the readings

"Catullus": obdurate, mordant, mordent.—destine, destination, destiny. "Sophocles": sum, summary, consummate—proximate, approximate. "Message": truculent.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! —**quid agitis**? 从第二课开始，我们就经常见到这个包含 **quid** 的习惯用语(是 *how are you doing*? 而不是 *what are you doing*?)。根据第十五课中对整体属格的讨论，你是否想起了 **quid novī**, *what's new*? 在开始学习拉丁语之前，你也许见过习语 **quid prō quō**, *one thing in return for another* (="tit for tat"[以牙还牙]——**quid** 往往对应于不确定的 *something*)，甚至可能碰到过 **quidnunc**，即"爱探听消息的人"(字面意思是 *what-now*?!)。这个疑问形容词也进入了英语：**quō jūre** (= 古典拉丁语的 **iūre**), *by what* (*legal*) *right*, **quō animō**, *with what intention* 以及 **quō modō**, *in what manner*。

我们在第十五课中学过 **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum**，你现在能够看出恺撒的名言 **alea iacta est**, *the die has been cast* 中的完成时被动态形式了。这是公元前49年，恺撒在越过北意大利的卢比孔河与庞培交战时所说的话。**Discipulī discipulaeque, valēte!**

第二十课

第四变格法;地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格

第四变格法

第四变格法的问题没有第三变格法多，名词数量也较少。其中大多数为阳性,单数主格以**-us**结尾。但也包括一些以**-us**结尾的阴性名词(本书中出现的有**manus,** *hand* 和 **domus,** *house*),以及少数几个单数主格以**-ū**结尾的中性名词。

第四变格法名词的变格也是给词根加上下列新词尾。请注意,除了复数与格和复数夺格,特征元音 **u** 出现在所有词尾中(即使在复数与格和复数夺格的情况下,也有几个名词的词尾是**-ubus**而不是**-ibus**)。在所有以**-us**结尾的形式中,只有阳性和阴性的单数主格是短音**-u-**。

	frūctus, -ūs, m. *fruit*	**cornū, -ūs,** n. *horn*	**词尾** **阳性和阴性**	**中性**
主格	frúctus	córnū	-us	-ū
属格	frúctūs	córnūs	-ūs	-ūs
与格	frúctuī	córnū	-uī	-ū
宾格	frúctum	córnū	-um	-ū
夺格	frúctū	córnū	-ū	-ū
主格	frúctūs	córnua	-ūs	-ua
属格	frúctuum	córnuum	-uum	-uum
与格	frúctibus	córnibus	-ibus	-ibus
宾格	frúctūs	córnua	-ūs	-ua
夺格	frúctibus	córnibus	-ibus	-ibus

我们还记得,在第二、第三变格法中,也有以**-us**结尾的名词,例如 **amīcus** 和 **corpus**。决定名词变格的是属格词尾,而不是主格词尾,所以对于碰到的每一

个新名词,都必须记住它的完整词条。再有,虽然名词与修饰它的形容词应当保持性、数、格的一致,但它们并不必然有相同的词尾,例如:**frūctus dulcis, frūctūs dulcis,** etc., *sweet fruit*; **manus mea, manūs meae,** etc., *my hand*; **cornū longum, cornūs longī,** etc., *a long horn;* etc.。

地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格

地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格是两种紧密相关的常见结构(现在请把它们加入你的夺格用法表中)。其主要区别是,地点夺格(从何处)总是涉及从一处主动运动到另一处的动作,而且夺格几乎总是由介词 **ab, dē** 或 **ex** (*away from, down from, out of*)来支配:

Graecī ā patriā suā ad Italiam navigāvērunt, *the Greeks sailed from their own country to Italy.*

Flūmen dē montibus in mare flūxit, *the river flowed down from the mountains into the sea.*

Multī ex agrīs in urbem venient, *many will come from the country into the city.*

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe mīsit, *Cicero sent the enemy away from the city.*

而顾名思义,分离夺格仅指某人或某物与别的人或事物相分离,而没有从一处主动运动到另一处的动作发生;介词有时并不出现,特别是在动词有"释放"、"缺乏"、"剥夺"等含义时,这时常常使用分离夺格:

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe prohibuit, *Cicero kept the enemy away from the city.*(与上面的类似例子比较)

Eōs timōre līberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

Agricolae pecūniā saepe carēbant, *the farmers often lacked money.*

词汇表

coniūrā́tī, -ṓrum, m. pl., *conspirators* (conjure, conjurer; cp. **coniūrātiō,** *conspiracy,* conjuration)

córnū, córnūs, n., *horn* (corn—not the grain, but a thick growth of skin; cornea, corner, cornet, cornucopia, unicorn)

frū́ctus, frū́ctūs, m., *fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment* (fructify, fructose, frugal)

génū, génūs, n., *knee* (genuflect, genuflection; *knee* and **genū** are cognates)

mánus, mánūs, f., *hand; handwriting; band* (manual, manufacture, manumit, manuscript, emancipate, manacle, manage, manicle, maneuver)

métus, -ūs (= **métūs;** subsequent 4th decl. nouns will be abbreviated in

this way), m., *fear, dread, anxiety* (meticulous; cp. **metuō,** Ch. 38)
mōns, móntis, m., *mountain* (mount, mountainous, Montana, amount, catamount, paramount, surmount, tantamount)
senā́tus, -ūs, m., *senate* (senatorial; cp. **senex**)
sḗnsus, -ūs, m., *feeling, sense* (sensation, sensory, sensual, sensuous, senseless, insensate, sensible, sensitive; cp. **sentiō**)
sérvitūs, servitū́tis, f., *servitude, slavery* (cp. **servō**)
spī́ritus, -ūs, m., *breath, breathing; spirit, soul* (spiritual, spiritous, conspire, inspire, expire, respiratory, transpire; cp. **spīrāre,** *to breathe*)
vérsus, -ūs, m., *line of verse* (versify, versification; cp. **vertō,** Ch. 23)
commū́nis, commū́ne, *common, general, of/for the community* (communal, commune, communicate, communicable, communion, communism, community, excommunicate)
déxter, déxtra, déxtrum, *right, right-hand* (dexterity, dextrous, ambidextrous)
sinístor, sinístra, sinístrum, *left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened* (sinister, sinistral, sinistrodextral, sinistrorse)
cáreō, carḗre, cáruī, caritū́rum + abl. of separation, *to be without, be deprived of, want, lack; be free from* (caret)
dēféndō, -féndere, -féndī, -fḗnsum, *to ward off; defend, protect* (defendant, defense, defensible, defensive, fence, fencing, fend, fender, offend)
discḗdō, -cḗdere, -céssī, -céssum, *to go away, depart* (cp. **cēdō,** Ch. 28)
ṓdī, ōdísse, ōsū́rum (a so-called "defective" verb, having only perf. system forms and a fut. act. participle), *to hate* (odious; cp. **odium,** Ch. 38)
prohíbeō, -hibḗre, -híbuī, -híbitum, *to keep (back), prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit* (prohibitive, prohibition, prohibitory; cp. **habeō**)
prōnū́ntiō (1), *to proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce* (pronouncement, pronunciation; cp. **nūntius,** *messenger, message*)

练习与复习

1. Etiam senēs frūctibus sapientiae et cōnsiliīs argūmentīsque certīs saepe carent.
2. Aut ingentēs montēs aut flūmina celeria quae dē montibus fluēbant hostēs ab urbe prohibēbant.
3. Quoniam nimis fortia facta faciēbat, aetās eius erat brevis.
4. Illa medica facere poterat multa manū dextrā sed sinistrā manū pauca.
5. Vēritās nōs metū gravī iam līberābit quō diū territī sumus.
6. Quibus generibus scelerum sinistrōrum illae duae cīvītātēs dēlētae sunt?
7. Quī mortālis sine amīcitiā et probitāte et beneficiō in aliōs potest esse beātus?
8. Pater pecūniam ex Graeciā in suam patriam movēre coeperat, nam familia discēdere cupīvit.

9. Ā quibus studium difficilium artium eō tempore neglēctum est?
10. Ubi versūs illīus auctōris clārī lēctī sunt, audītōrēs delectātī sunt.
11. Sē cito iēcērunt ad genua iūdicum, quī autem nūllam clēmentiam dēmōnstrāvērunt.
12. We cannot have the fruits of peace, unless we ourselves free our families from heavy dread.
13. Those bands of unfortunate men and women will come to us from other countries in which they are deprived of the benefits of citizenship.
14. The old men lacked neither games nor serious pursuits.
15. Who began to perceive our common fears of serious crime?

古代名言

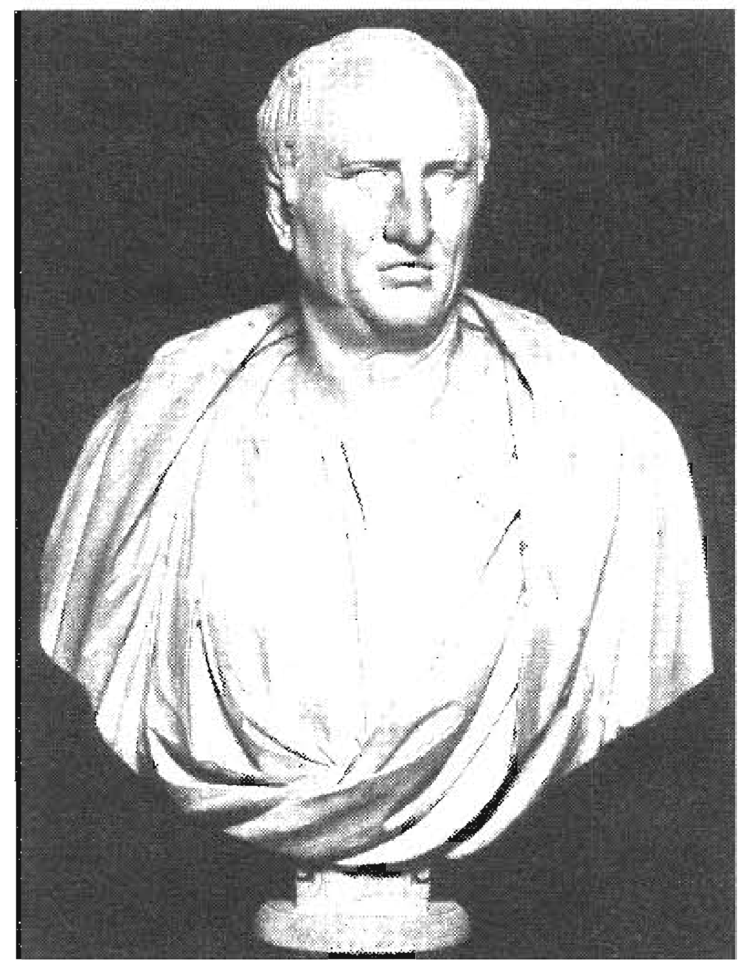
1. Cornua cervum ā perīculīs dēfendunt. (Martial.—**cervus, -ī,** *stag.*)
2. Oedipūs duōbus oculīs sē prīvāvit. (Cicero.—**prīvāre,** *to deprive.*)
3. Themistoclēs bellō Persicō Graeciam servitūte līberāvit. (Cicero.—**Persicus, -a, -um,** *Persian.*)
4. Dēmosthenēs multōs versūs ūnō spīritū prōnūntiābat. (Cicero.)
5. Persicōs apparātūs ōdī. (Horace.—**apparātus, -ūs,** *equipment, display.*)
6. Iste commūnī sēnsū caret. (Horace.)
7. Senectūs nōs prīvat omnibus voluptātibus neque longē abest ā morte. (Cicero.—**longē,** adv. of **longus.**—**absum,** *to be away.*)
8. Nūllus accūsātor caret culpā; omnēs peccāvimus. (Seneca.—**accūsātor, -tōris.**—**peccāre,** *to sin.*)
9. Nūlla pars vītae vacāre officiō potest. (Cicero.—**vacāre,** *to be free from.*)
10. Prīma virtūs est vitiō carēre. (Quintilian.)
11. Vir scelere vacuus nōn eget iaculīs neque arcū. (Horace.—**vacuus, -a, -um,** *free from.*—**egēre,** *to need.*—**iaculum, -ī,** *javelin.*—**arcus, -ūs,** *bow.*)
12. Magnī tumultūs urbem eō tempore miscēbant. (Cicero.—**tumultus, -ūs.**)
13. Litterae senātuī populōque Allobrogum manibus coniūrātōrum ipsōrum erant scrīptae. (Cicero.—**Allobrogēs, -gum,** m. pl., a Gallic tribe whom the Catilinarian conspirators tried to arouse against Rome.)

CICERO URGES CATILINE'S DEPARTURE FROM ROME

Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum contrā tē, Catilīna, vehemēns et grave; ācre iūdicium habēmus, et vīrēs et cōnsilium cīvitās nostra habet. Quid est, Catilīna? Cūr remanēs? Ō dī immortālēs! Discēde nunc ex hāc urbe cum malā manū scelerātōrum; magnō metū mē līberābis, sī omnēs istōs coniūrātōs tēcum ēdūcēs. Nisi nunc discēdēs, tē cito ēiciēmus. Nihil in cīvitāte nostrā tē dēlectāre potest. Age, age! Deinde curre ad Manlium, istum amīcum ma-

lum; tē diū dēsīderāvit. Incipe nunc; gere bellum in cīvitātem! Brevī tempore tē omnēsque tuōs, hostēs patriae, vincēmus, et omnēs vōs poenās gravēs semper dabitis.

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.1.3ff; see the readings in Chs. 11 and 14 above, and "Evidence and Confession," Ch. 30.—**cōnsultum, -ī,** *decree.*—**vehemēns,** gen. **vehementis.**—**scelerātus, -a, -um,** adj. from **scelus.**—Manlius was one of Catiline's principal fellow conspirators.)



Cicero
Museo Capitolino, Rome, Italy

词源点滴

罗马元老院（*senate*）最初是由一些长者组成的委员会，因此便与 **senex** 有了联系。

如果我们知道"caret"（脱字符）一词的来源，就不大可能将它与"carat"（克拉）相混淆。

In the readings

5. peach (Persian apple). 7. absent. 9. vacant, vacuous, vacate, vacation, vacuity, evacuate. 11. arc, arcade. 12. tumult, tumultuous. "Cicero": consult, consultation.—vehement, vehemence.)

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 本课的词汇表中有一些与"手"有关的词项：你能解释"manumit"，"manuscript"和"manufacture"的词源吗？"Manual"由拉丁语派生而来，等价于德语词"Handbuch"。有一句古老的罗马谚语说，**manus manum lavat** (**lavāre,** *to bathe*，由此衍生出"lavatory")，*one hand washes the other*。对右手的偏好可见于"dexterity"和"sinister"（源于古代的一种迷信，认为坏的征兆会显示于人的左手）

甚至“ambidextrous”(源于 **ambo**, *both, two*:有“两只右手”要比有两只左手更好？)的词源。

那么,手指的情况又如何呢？“手指”所对应的拉丁词是 **digitus, -ī**,由此衍生出了“digit”,“digital”,“prestidigitation”(戏法,指魔术师手指敏捷)甚至“digitalis”(毛地黄),后者是一种治疗心脏病的药物,取自一种手指形花瓣的植物。下面这些补充在数数（**numerāre**）时用得着:**prīmus digitus, secundus digitus, tertius** . . . etc.。(**Potestisne numerāre omnēs digitōs vestrōs, discipulī et discipulae**? 如果不能,请复习第十五课中的 **numerī!**)罗马人给每根手指都起了名字：大拇指是 **pollex**，食指是 **index**（源于 **indicāre,** *to point*），中指是 **medius**(*middle*)或 **īnfāmis**(*infamous, evil*——并不是所有肢体语言都是新的！),无名指是 **quartus** 或 **ānulārius**(无名指上经常戴有 **ānulī,** *rings*:参见第三十一课中的“Ringo”),小拇指是 **minimus**（*the smallest*）或 **auriculārius**(**parvus digitus**,我们可以很方便地用它来清洁 **aurēs!**)。**Valēte!**

第二十一课

第三和第四变位法动词:现在时系统的被动态

我们在第十八课学习了第一、第二变位法动词的现在时系统被动态的构成方法,即用被动态词尾替代主动态词尾。这一规则一般来说也适用于第三、第四变位法动词,唯一的例外是第三变位法动词的第二人称单数现在时(在下列词形变化表中作了突出标注)和现在时不定式。

现在时直陈式被动态

1. ágor	aúdior	cápior
2. ág**eris**	audī́ris	cáp**eris**
3. ágitur	audī́tur	cápitur
1. ágimur	audī́mur	cápimur
2. agíminī	audī́minī	capíminī
3. agúntur	audiúntur	capiúntur

将来时直陈式被动态

1. ágar	aúdiar	cápiar
2. agḗris	audiḗris	capiḗris
3. agḗtur	audiḗtur	capiḗtur
1. agḗmur	audiḗmur	capiḗmur
2. agḗminī	audiḗminī	capiḗminī
3. agéntur	audiéntur	capiéntur

未完成时直陈式被动态

1. agḗbar	audiḗbar	capiḗbar

2. agēbā́ris	audiēbā́ris	capiēbā́ris
3. agēbā́tur	audiēbā́tur	capiēbā́tur
1. agēbā́mur	audiēbā́mur	capiēbā́mur
2. agēbā́minī	audiēbā́minī	capiēbā́minī
3. agēbántur	audiēbántur	capiēbántur

注意不要把第三变位法动词第二人称单数的现在时和将来时形式相混淆，它们的区别仅仅在于元音的长短(**ageris** vs. **agēris**)。无论是现在时系统的主动态还是被动态，**capiō** 和 **audiō** 的形式都相同，只不过其现在时形式分别包含**-i-**和**-ī-**，第二人称单数现在时被动态分别为 **caperis** 和 **audī́ris**。第三、第四变位法动词完成时系统的被动态则遵循第十九课中介绍的普遍模式。

现在时不定式被动态

和第一、第二变位法动词一样，第四变位法动词也是把词尾的**-e** 变成**-ī** 而构成现在时不定式被动态；而包括**-iō** 动词在内的第三变位法动词，则是把整个**-ere** 变成**-ī**。

audī́re, *to hear*	audī́rī, *to be heard* (cp. laudā́rī, monḗrī)
ágere, *to lead*	ágī, *to be led*
cápere, *to take*	cápī, *to be taken*

动词变位缩写式

为了检验对拉丁语动词进行变位的能力，我们可能会被要求就特定的人称和数写出动词的"动词变位缩写式"(synopsis)，而不是列出动词的所有形式。下面是例词 **agō** 的第三人称单数直陈式的动词变位缩写式：

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	ágit	áget	agḗbat	ḗgit	ḗgerit	ḗgerat
被动态	ágitur	agḗtur	agēbā́tur	ā́ctus est	ā́ctus érit	ā́ctus érat

词汇表

cásа, -ae, f., *house, cottage, hut* (casino)
caúsa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; case, situation;* **caúsā,** abl. with a preceding gen., *for the sake of, on account of* (accuse, because, excuse)
fenéstra, -ae, f., *window* (fenestra, fenestrated, fenestration, fenestella, defenestration)
fī́nis, fī́nis, m., *end, limit, boundary; purpose;* **fī́nēs, -ium,** *boundaries, territory* (affinity, confine, define, final, finale, finance, fine, finesse, finial, finicky, finish, finite, infinite, paraffin, refine)

gēns, géntis, f., *clan, race, nation, people* (gentile, gentle, genteel, gentry; cp. **genus, ingenium,** Ch. 29)
múndus, -ī, m., *world, universe* (mundane, demimonde)
nā́vis, nā́vis, f., *ship, boat* (naval, navy, navigable, navigate, nave; cp. **nāvigāre, nauta**)
sálūs, salū́tis, f., *health, safety; greeting* (salubrious, salutary, salutation, salute, salutatorian, salutatory; cp. **salveō, salvus**)
Trṓia, -ae, f., *Troy*
vīcī́nus, -ī, m., and **vīcī́na, -ae,** f., *neighbor* (vicinity)
vúlgus, -ī, n. (sometimes m.), *the common people, mob, rabble* (vulgar, vulgarity, vulgarize, vulgate, divulge)
ásper, áspera, ásperum, *rough, harsh* (asperity, exasperate, exasperation)
átque or **ac** (only before consonants), conj., *and, and also, and even*
íterum, adv., *again, a second time* (iterate, iterative, reiterate, reiteration)
contíneō, -tinḗre, -tínuī, -téntum, *to hold together, contain, keep, enclose, restrain* (content, discontent, malcontent, continual, continuous, incontinent, countenance; cp. **teneō**)
iúbeō, iubḗre, iússī, iússum, *to bid, order, command* (jussive)
labṓrō (1), *to labor; be in distress* (laboratory, laborer, belabor; cp. **labor**)
rápiō, rápere, rápuī, ráptum, *to seize, snatch, carry away* (rapacious, rapid, rapine, rapture, ravage, ravine, ravish; cp. **ēripiō,** Ch. 22)
relínquō, -línquere, -lī́quī, -líctum, *to leave behind, leave, abandon, desert* (relinquish, reliquary, relict, relic, delinquent, dereliction)
scíō, scī́re, scī́vī, scī́tum, *to know* (science, scientific, conscience, conscious, prescience, scilicet; cp. **scientia, nesciō,** Ch. 25)
tángō, tángere, tétigī, tā́ctum, *to touch* (tangent, tangible, tact, tactile, contact, contagious, contiguous, contingent, integer, taste, tax)

练习与复习

1. Laus autem nimis saepe est neque certa neque magna.
2. Senēs in gente nostrā ab fīliīs numquam neglegēbantur.
3. Quis tum iussus erat Graeciam metū līberāre, familiās dēfendere, atque hostēs ā patriā prohibēre?
4. Salūtis commūnis causā eōs coniūrātōs ex urbe discēdere ac trāns flūmen ad montēs dūcī iussit.
5. Aliī auctōrēs coepērunt spīritūs nostrōs contrā iūdicium atque argūmenta senātūs iterum movēre, quod omnēs metū novō territī erant.
6. Omnia genera servitūtis nōbīs videntur aspera.
7. Rapiēturne igitur Cicerō ex manibus istōrum?
8. Quī fīnis metūs atque servitūtis in eā cīvitāte nunc potest vidērī?
9. At senectūtis bonae causā iam bene vīvere dēbēmus.
10. In familiā eōrum erant duae fīliae atque quattuor fīliī.
11. Casa vīcīnī nostrī habuit paucās fenestrās per quās vidēre potuit.
12. Quandō cornū audīvit, senex in genua cecidit et deīs immortālibus grātiās prōnūntiābat.

13. Propter beneficia et sēnsum commūnem tyrannī, paucī eum ōdērunt.
14. The truth will not be found without great labor.
15. Many nations which lack true peace are being destroyed by wars.
16. Their fears can now be conquered because our deeds are understood by all.
17. Unless serious pursuits delight us, they are often neglected for the sake of money or praise.

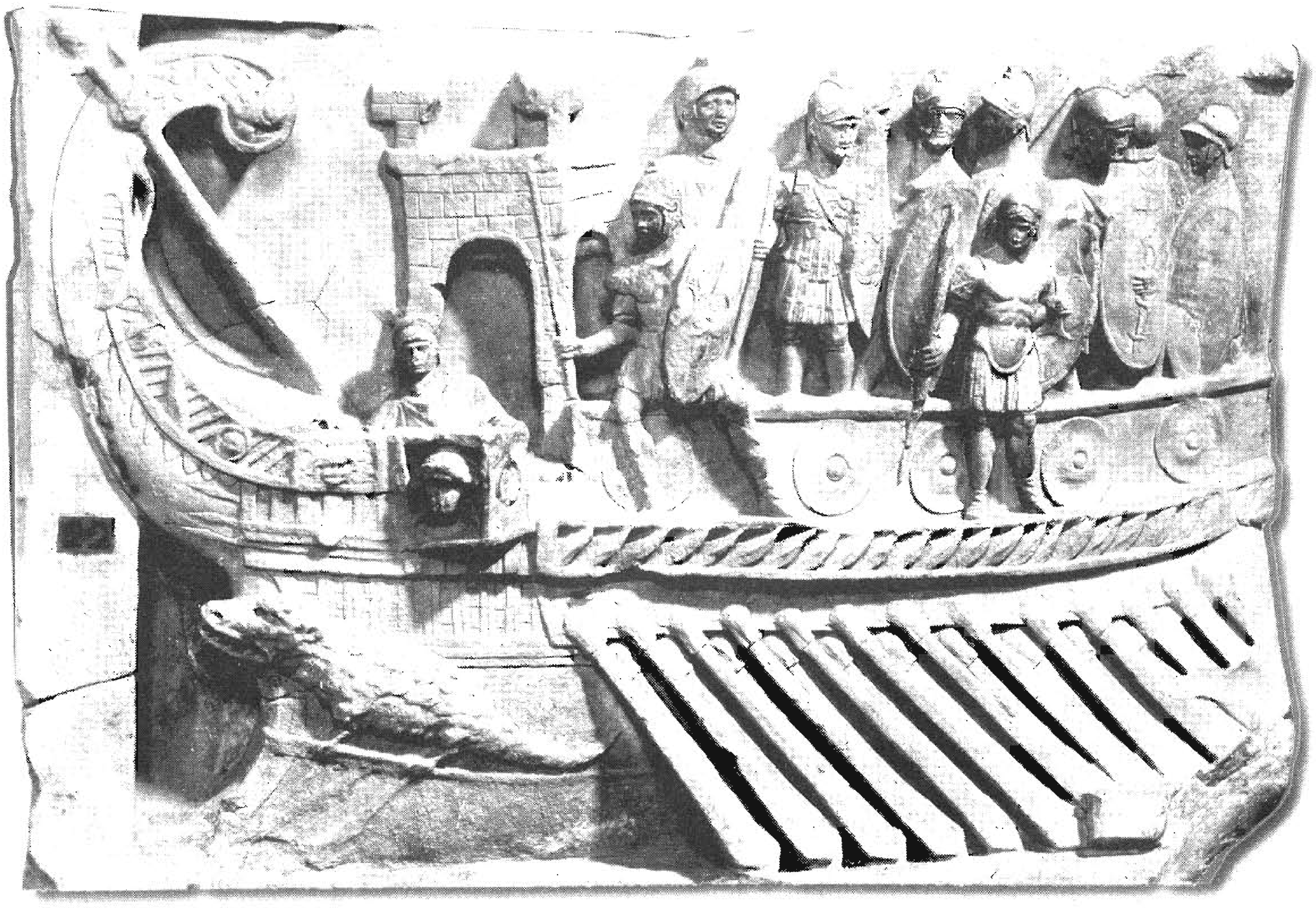
古代名言

1. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincitur. (Publilius Syrus.)
2. Novius est vīcīnus meus et manū dextrā tangī dē fenestrīs meīs potest. (Martial.—**Novius,** a personal name.)
3. Nōnne iūdicēs iubēbunt hunc in vincula dūcī et ad mortem rapī? (Cicero.—**nōnne** introduces a question which anticipates the answer "yes"; see Ch. 40.—**vinculum, -ī,** *chain.*)
4. Altera aetās bellīs cīvīlibus teritur et Rōma ipsa suīs vīribus dēlētur. (Horace.—**cīvīlis, -e.**—**terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum,** *to wear out.*)
5. At amīcitia nūllō locō exclūditur; numquam est intempestīva aut sinistra; multa beneficia continet. (Cicero.—**exclūdō, -ere,** *to shut out.*—**intempestīvus, -a, -um,** *untimely.*)
6. Futūra scīrī nōn possunt. (Cicero.—**futūrus, -a, -um.**)
7. Prīncipiō ipse mundus deōrum hominumque causā factus est, et quae in eō sunt, ea parāta sunt ad frūctum hominum. (Cicero.)
8. Quam cōpiōsē ā Xenophonte agrīcultūra laudātur in eō librō quī "Oeconomicus" īnscrībitur. (Cicero.—**cōpiōsē,** adv., cp. **cōpia.**—**Xenophōn, -phontis.**—**agrīcultūra, -ae.**—**īnscrībō, -ere,** *to entitle.*)
9. Vulgus vult dēcipī. (*Phaedrus.—**vult,** *want* (irreg. form).—**dēcipiō, -ere,** *to deceive.*)
10. Ubi scientia ac sapientia inveniuntur? (Job.)
11. Vēritās nimis saepe labōrat; exstinguitur numquam. (Livy.—**exstinguō, -ere.**)

VIRGIL'S MESSIANIC ECLOGUE

Venit iam magna aetās nova; dē caelō mittitur puer, quī vītam deōrum habēbit deōsque vidēbit et ipse vidēbitur ab illīs. Hic puer reget mundum cui virtūtēs patris pācem dedērunt. Pauca mala, autem, remanēbunt, quae hominēs iubēbunt labōrāre atque bellum asperum gerere. Erunt etiam altera bella atque iterum ad Trōiam magnus mittētur Achillēs. Tum, puer, ubi iam longa aetās tē virum fēcerit, erunt nūllī labōrēs, nūlla bella; nautae ex navibus discēdent, agricolae quoque iam agrōs relinquent, terra ipsa omnibus hominibus omnia parābit. Currite, aetātēs; incipe, parve puer, scīre mātrem, et erit satis spīritūs mihi tua dīcere facta.

(Virgil, *Eclogae* 4; written ca. 40 B.C., the poem from which this reading is adapted was taken by many early Christians as a prophecy of the birth of Christ.—**altera bella,** *the same wars over again.*—**scīre mātrem,** i.e., to be born.)



Relief of warship, temple of Fortuna Primigenia, Praeneste
1st century A.D., Museo Pio Clementino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State

词源点滴

Exemplī causā 是西塞罗用过的一个短语，对应于后来所说的 **exemplī grātiā**，由此产生了我们的缩写词 **e.g.**。

以下是一些源于本课词汇的罗曼语派生词：

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
causa	cosa	cosa	chose
fīnis	fine	fin	fin
gēns	gente	gente	gent; gens (pl.)
continēre	continere	contener	contenir
mundus	mondo	mundo	monde

In the readings

3. vinculum（在数学中）. 4. civil; cp. **cīvis, cīvitās.**—trite, contrite, contrition, attrition, detriment. 5. **ex + claudō** （**-ere, clausī, clausum,** *to shut, close*）: conclude, include, preclude, seclude, recluse, clause, close, closet, cloister.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, discipulae atque discipulī! Quid novī? 我们再看一些与本课词汇表中 **verba nova** 有关的著名拉丁语短语和座右铭。第一个，《教父》迷们听好了：**cosa nostra**[1]，源于 **causa nostra**。（嘘！）**Vestra causa tōta nostra est** 是美国古典学联盟的座右铭，这是一个为拉丁语、希腊语和古典人文学科的教师们设立的全国性专业组织。佐治亚大学的校训是：**et docēre et rērum exquīrere causās,** *both to teach and to seek out the causes of things*（即开展研究——关于 **rērum**，参见下一课）。下面还有一些：**fīnis corōnat opus,** *the end crowns the work;* **gēns togāta,** *the toga-clad nation*（维吉尔用这个短语来指罗马，其中 toga 是男性在正式场合穿的一种服装）；**tangere ulcus,** *to touch a sore spot* （字面意思是 *ulcer*）；**sīc trānsit glōria mundī,** *so passes the glory of the world* （这是 15 世纪修士 Thomas à Kempis 对世间万物转瞬即逝的感叹——有一个不知名的喜剧演员给出了另一种翻译，即"Gloria always gets sick on the subway at the beginning of the week"!!!）；缩写词 **sc.**意为 *supply*（即在文本中省略了但很容易理解的某种东西），源于 **scīlicet**，即 **scīre licet** 的简写，字面意思是 *it is permitted for you to understand*。 **Hic est fīnis: valēte!**

---

[1] "Cosa Nostra"是黑手党暗语，1962 年被首次披露，意为"我们的事业"，该词后来成为黑手党的代名词。——译者注

第二十二课

第五变格法；地点夺格（在何处）；夺格用法总结

第五变格法

本课介绍拉丁语名词的最后一种变格法——第五变格法。其特征元音为**-ē-**，单数属格和与格的词尾为**-ēī**或**-eī**（属格/与格的**-e-**如果在元音之后就是长音，在辅音之后就是短音；比较下面的 **diēī** 和 **reī**）；为避免混淆，在本课词汇表中，第五变格法名词（就像第三变格法名词那样）都给出了完整的属格形式。第五变格法名词均为阴性，只有 **diēs**（*day*）及其复合词 **merīdiēs**（*midday*）是阳性。

变格仍然遵循通常模式，去掉属格词尾找到词根，再加上新的词尾。

	rēs, reī, f. *thing*	**diēs, diēī,** m. *day*	**词尾**
主格	rēs	díēs	-ēs
属格	réī	diḗī	-eī, -ēī
与格	réī	diḗī	-eī, -ēī
宾格	rem	díem	-em
夺格	rē	díē	-ē
主格	rēs	díēs	-ēs
属格	rḗrum	diḗrum	-ērum
与格	rḗbus	diḗbus	-ēbus
宾格	rēs	díēs	-ēs
夺格	rḗbus	diḗbus	-ēbus

评论

复数属格和复数与格相同（第一变格法也是如此），单数主格、复数主格和复数宾格（当然还有呼格）相同，复数与格和复数夺格相同（所有变格法都是如

此）。词序、语境、主语和动词的一致等信息将有助于我们对它们加以辨别。

地点夺格（在何处）；夺格用法总结

到目前为止，我们已经学过的夺格用法有：手段夺格、方式夺格、伴随夺格（第十四课）、带有基数词的夺格、时间夺格（第十五课）、施事夺格（第十八课）、地点夺格（从何处）和分离夺格（第二十课）。

事实上，我们已经多次见过地点夺格（在何处），大都由介词 **in**, *in/on* 或 **sub**, *under* 加夺格名词构成，用以描述某人或某物位于何处，或者动作发生的地点：

In magnā casā vīvunt, *they live in a large house.*

Nāvis sub aquā fuit, *the ship was under water.*

在这些夺格用法中，有些需要介词，有些不需要，在很多情况下并无严格规定。需要特别注意的是，在方式夺格中，如果名词为形容词所修饰，那么 **cum** 经常省去；如果使用 **cum**，那么 **cum** 通常放在形容词后面（例如 **id magnā cūrā fēcit** 和 **id magnā cum cūrā fēcit**，二者的意思均为 *he did it with great care*）。

现在我们回顾一下已经学过的夺格用法：

一、带介词的夺格

夺格加介词：

1. **cum** 表伴随

   Cum amīcō id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with his friend.*

2. **cum** 表方式；与下面“无介词夺格”的第 2 种情况相比较

   Cum cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with care.*

   Magnā cum cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with great care.*

3. **in** 和 **sub** 表在何处

   In urbe id scrīpsit, *he wrote it in the city.*

4. **ab, dē, ex** 表从何处

   Ex urbe id mīsit, *he sent it from the city.*

5. **ab, dē, ex** 表分离；与下面“无介词夺格”的第 4 种情况相比较

   Ab urbe eōs prohibuit, *he kept them from the city.*

6. **ab** 表施事者

   Ab amīcō id scrīptum est, *it was written by his friend.*

7. 某些基数词之后的 **ex** 或 **dē** 表整体（其中一部分已经被指定）

Trēs ex nāvibus discessērunt, *three of the ships departed.*

二、无介词夺格

无介词夺格表示：

1. 手段

Suā manū id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with his own hand.*

2. 方式（如果有形容词出现）

Magnā cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with great care.*

3. 何时 / 期间

Eō tempore *or* ūnā hōrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it at that time* or *in one hour.*

4. 分离，特别是在动词含有"释放"、"缺乏"、"剥夺"等意思时

Metū eōs līberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

词汇表

díēs, diḗī, m., *day* (diary, dial, dismal, diurnal, journal, adjourn, journey, meridian, sojourn)

férrum, -ī, n., *iron; sword* (ferric, ferrite, ferro-, farrier)

fídēs, fideī, f., *faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection* (confide, diffident, infidel, perfidy, fealty)

ígnis, ígnis, m., *fire* (igneous, ignite, ignition)

módus, -ī, m., *measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way* (model, moderate, modern, modest, modicum, modify, mood)

rēs, réī, f., *thing, matter, business, affair* (real, realistic, realize, reality, real estate)

rēs pū́blica, réī pū́blicae, f., *state, commonwealth, republic* (Republican)

spēs, spéī, f., *hope* (despair, desperate; cf. **spērō,** Ch. 25)

aéquus, -a, -um, *level, even; calm; equal, just; favorable* (equable, equanimity, equation, equator, equilateral, equilibrium, equinox, equity, equivalent, equivocal, inequity, iniquity, adequate, coequal)

fḗlīx, gen. **fēlī́cis,** *lucky, fortunate, happy* (felicitate, felicitation, felicitous, infelicitous, felicity, infelicity, Felix)

incértus, -a, -um (in-certus), *uncertain, unsure, doubtful* (incertitude)

Latī́nus, -a, -um, *Latin* (Latinate, Latinist, Latinity, Latinize, Latino)

médius, -a, -um, *middle;* used partitively, *the middle of:* **media urbs,** *the middle of the city* (mediterranean, medium, median, mediate, mean, medieval, meridian, demimonde, immediate, intermediary; cp. **mediocris,** Ch. 31)

quóndam, adv., *formerly, once* (quondam)

últrā, adv. and prep. + acc., *on the other side of, beyond* (ultra, ultra-

sonic, ultrasound, ultraviolet, outrage, outrageous)
prṓtinus, adv., *immediately*
cérnō, cérnere, crḗvī, crḗtum, *to distinguish, discern, perceive* (discern, discernible, discreet, discrete, discretion; cp. **dēcernō,** Ch. 36)
ēripiō, -rípere, -rípuī, -réptum (ē-rapiō), *to snatch away, take away; rescue*
ínquit, defective verb, *he says* or *said,* placed after one or more words of a direct quotation but usually translated first
tóllō, tóllere, sústulī, sublā́tum, *to raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy* (extol; cp. **tolerō, ferō,** Ch. 31)

练习与复习

1. Vīcīnī nostrī sē in genua prōtinus iēcērunt et omnēs deōs in mundō laudāvērunt.
2. Gentēs Graeciae ingentibus montibus et parvīs fīnibus continēbantur.
3. Quis iussit illam rem pūblicam servitūte asperā līberārī?
4. "Iste," inquit, "sceleribus suīs brevī tempore tollētur."
5. Contrā aliās manūs malōrum cīvium eaedem rēs iterum parābuntur; rem pūblicam dēfendēmus et istī cito discēdent.
6. Senectūs senēs ā mediīs rēbus saepe prohibet.
7. At rēs gravēs neque vī neque spē geruntur sed cōnsiliō.
8. Sī versūs hōrum duōrum poētārum neglegētis, magnā parte Rōmānārum litterārum carēbitis.
9. Eōdem tempore nostrae spēs salūtis commūnis vestrā fidē altae sunt, spīritūs sublātī sunt, et timōrēs relictī sunt.
10. Nova genera scelerum in hāc urbe inveniuntur quod multī etiam nunc bonīs mōribus et sēnsū commūnī carent ac nātūram sinistram habent.
11. Vulgus multa ex fenestrīs casārum ēiciēbat.
12. Great fidelity can now be found in this commonwealth.
13. His new hopes had been destroyed by the common fear of uncertain things.
14. On that day the courage and the faith of the brave Roman men and women were seen by all.
15. With great hope the tyrant ordered those ships to be destroyed.
16. He could not defend himself with his left hand or his right.

古代名言

1. Dum vīta est, spēs est. (Cicero.)
2. Aequum animum in rēbus difficilibus servā. (Horace.)
3. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi plānē est nūlla rēs pūblica. (*Cicero.—**plānē,** adv., *clearly.*)
4. Fuērunt quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virī magnae virtūtis et antīquae fideī. (Cicero.)

5. Hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse volumus. (*Cicero.—**volumus,** *we wish.*)
6. Spēs coniūrātōrum mollibus sententiīs multōrum cīvium alitur. (Cicero.—**mollis, -e,** *soft, mild.*)
7. Rēs pūblica cōnsiliīs meīs eō diē ex igne atque ferrō ērepta est. (Cicero.)
8. Quod bellum ōdērunt, prō pāce cum fidē labōrābant. (Livy.)
9. Dīc mihi bonā fidē: tū eam pecūniam ex eius manū dextrā nōn ēripuistī? (Plautus.)
10. Amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (Ennius.)
11. Homērus audītōrem in mediās rēs rapit. (Horace.)
12. Fēlīx est quī potest causās rērum intellegere; et fortūnātus ille quī deōs antīquōs dīligit. (Virgil.)
13. Stōicus noster, "Vitium," inquit, "nōn est in rēbus sed in animō ipsō." (Seneca.—**Stōicus, -ī,** *a Stoic.*)
14. Et mihi rēs subiungam, nōn mē rēbus. (Horace.—**subiungō, -ere,** *to subject.*)
15. Est modus in rēbus; sunt certī fīnēs ultrā quōs virtūs invenīrī nōn potest. (Horace.)
16. Hoc, Fortūna, tibi vidētur aequum? (*Martial.)

A VISIT FROM THE YOUNG INTERNS

Languēbam: sed tū comitātus prōtinus ad mē
  vēnistī centum, Symmache, discipulīs.
Centum mē tetigēre manūs aquilōne gelātae:
  nōn habuī febrem, Symmache, nunc habeō!

(*Martial 5.9; meter: elegiac couplet.—**languēre,** *to be weak, sick.*—**comitātus, -a, -um,** *accompanied (by).*—**Symmachus,** a Greek name, used here for a medical school professor.—**centum . . . discipulīs,** abl. of agent with **comitātus;** the preposition was often omitted in poetry.—**tetigēre** = **tetigērunt;** for this alternate ending, see Ch. 12.—**aquilō, -lōnis,** m., *the north wind.*—**gelātus, -a, -um,** *chilled,* here modifying **centum . . . manūs;** cp. Eng. gel, gelatin.—**febris, febris,** f., *fever.*)

ON AMBITION AND LITERATURE, BOTH LATIN AND GREEK

Poētae per litterās hominibus magnam perpetuamque fāmam dare possunt; multī virī, igitur, litterās dē suīs rēbus scrībī cupiunt. Trahimur omnēs studiō laudis et multī glōriā dūcuntur, quae aut in litterīs Graecīs aut Latīnīs invenīrī potest. Quī, autem, videt multum frūctum glōriae in versibus Latīnīs sed nōn in Graecīs, nimium errat, quod litterae Graecae leguntur in omnibus ferē gentibus, sed Latīnae in fīnibus suīs continentur.

(Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 11.26, 10.23.—**ferē,** adv., *almost.*)

词源点滴

与 **diēs** 相关的是形容词 **diurnus**, *daily*，由此产生了意大利语和法语中的“day”:［意］**giorno**,［法］**jour, journée**; 与［西］**día** 比较。在晚期拉丁语中有 **diurnālis**,由此产生了［意］**giornale**,［法］**journal**,［英］journal; 与［西］**diario** 比较。英语的“dismal”源于 **diēs malus**。

下面一些词与 **fidēs** 有关:affidavit, defy, affiance, fiancé。英语词“faith”源于古法语词 **feit, feid**,后者又源于拉丁词 **fidem**。

与 **modus** 有关的词还有:modulate, accommodate, commodious, discommode, incommode, à la mode, modus operandi。

In the readings

6. mollify, emollient, mollusk. 13. 斯多亚派(Stoic)哲学之所以有此称呼,是因为其创始人芝诺(Zeno）习惯于在雅典的某个柱廊（stoa）下讲学。14. subjunctive.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 既然你已经碰到了 **merīdiēs**，现在你明白了，**a.m.** 和 **p.m.** 即为 **ante merīdiem** 和 **post merīdiem**。医生开的药方要么是 **diēbus alternīs,** *every other day*,要么是 **diēbus tertiīs**, *every third day*,还可能是 **b.i.d.**或 **t.i.d.**,即 **bis in diē** 或 **ter in diē**(如果你想不出来它们指什么,请复习第十五课！)。你还可能碰到:**diem ex diē,** *day by day*;**diēs fēlīx**, *a lucky day*；法律术语 **diēs jūridicus** 和 **nōn jūridicus**, 即法院开庭或休庭的日子;还有 **Diēs Īrae**,这是吟咏最后审判日的中世纪圣歌，属于安魂弥撒的一部分。想必你已经每天遵照贺拉斯的建议，**carpe diem** 了(这是一个农业隐喻,因为 **carpō, carpere** 实际上意为“采摘”或“丰收”——所以你的每一天一旦抓住,就将丰裕富足)。

现在你也知道短语 **amīcus certus in rē incertā** 是什么意思了；一个 **bonā fidē**的协议只有 *with good faith* 才能达成(这是哪种夺格用法？);如果你“真正的朋友”是你忠诚的爱犬,你可以考虑称它为“Fido”。**Carpite omnēs diēs, discipulī discipulaeque, et valēte**!

第二十三课

分词

和英语一样，拉丁语也有一组动词性形容词，即由动词词干构成的形容词，称为“分词”。规则的拉丁语及物动词有四种分词，其中两种是主动态（现在时的和将来时的），两种是被动态（将来时的和完成时的）。其结构如下：

	主动态	被动态
现在时	现在时词干 + **-ns**（属格**-ntis**）	———
完成时	———	分词词干+ **-us, -a, -um**
将来时	分词词干 + **-ūrus, -ūra,-urum**[1]	现在时词干 + **-ndus,-nda,-ndum**

知道每一种分词有什么样的词干和词尾很重要。请注意，现在时主动态分词和将来时被动态分词是由现在时词干构成的，完成时被动态分词和将来时主动态分词则是由所谓的“分词词干”（去掉完成时被动态分词的词尾而得到，完成时被动态分词一般是动词的第四个主要部分：即由 **laudātus, -a, -um** 得到 **laudāt-**）构成的。这些内容可以通过 **agō** 的分词形式来记忆，它的现在时词干与分词词干非常不同，不会引起任何混淆。此外，还可以这样来帮助记忆：现在时（prese**nt**）分词中有**-nt-**，将来时（fut**ur**e）主动态分词中有**-ūr-**[1]，将来时被动态分词（一般称为“geru**nd**ive”［动形词］）中有**-nd-**。

[1] 只要我们想到*future* 源于 **futūrus, -a, -um**（sum 的将来时分词，也是 sum 唯一的分词），就很容易记住将来时主动态分词的词尾。

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, *to lead*

	主动态	被动态
现在时	ágēns, agéntis, *leading*	———
完成时	———	ā́ctus, -a, -um, *led, having been led*
将来时	āctū́rus, -a, -um, *about to lead, going to lead*	agéndus, -a, -um, (*about*) *to be led, deserving* or *fit to be led*

我们可以通过英语派生词来说明其中三种分词的含义："agent"（源于 **agēns**），*a person doing something*；"act"（**āctus, –a, –um**），*something done*；"agenda"（**agendus, –a, –um**），*something to be done*。以下是三个例词的分词形式。

	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
现在时	ágēns	———	aúdiēns	———	cápiēns	———
完成时	———	ā́ctus	———	audī́tus	———	cáptus
将来时	āctū́rus	agéndus	audītū́rus	audiéndus	captū́rus	capiéndus

我们注意到，第四变位法动词和第三变位法**–iō** 动词的现在时主动态分词（**–iēns, –ientis**）和将来时被动态分词（**–iendus, –a, –um**）中都含有**–ie–**。还要注意，虽然拉丁语有现在时主动态分词、完成时被动态分词、将来时主动态分词和将来时被动态分词（分别对应于 *praising, having been praised, about to praise* 和 [*about*] *to be praised*），但却没有现在时被动态分词（*being praised*）和完成时主动态分词（*having praised*）。

分词的变格

四种分词中有三种按照 **magnus, –a, –um** 的模式来变格。只有现在时分词有第三变格法形式，它按照 **potēns** 的模式进行变格（第十六课），只不过单数夺格有时以**–e** 结尾，有时以**–ī** 结尾；[1] 单数主格中**–ns** 之前的元音总是长音，而**–nt–**之前（根据以前学过的规则）的元音总是短音。

	阳性和阴性	中性
主格	ágēns	ágēns
属格	agéntis	agéntis
与格	agéntī	agéntī
宾格	agéntem	ágēns
夺格	agéntī, agénte	agéntī, agénte

[1] 如果是用作定语形容词，那么现在时分词的单数夺格词尾就是**–ī**（**ā patre amantī**, *by the loving father*）；如果是起动词作用（比如跟宾语，**patre fīlium amante**, *with the father loving his son*）或名词作用（**ab amante**, *by a lover*），那么单数夺格词尾就是**–e**。

主格	agéntēs	agéntia
属格	agéntium	agéntium
与格	agéntibus	agéntibus
宾格	agéntēs	agéntia
夺格	agéntibus	agéntibus

分词作为动词性形容词

"分词"(participle)源于 **participere**, *to share in* (**pars + capere**),反映分词兼有形容词和动词的特征。作为*形容词*,分词自然要在性、数、格方面与所修饰词保持一致。有时,它们也像形容词一样,并不修饰名词,而是充当名词本身:**amāns**, *a lover*; **sapiēns**, *a wise man, philosopher*; **venientēs**, *those coming*。

作为*动词*,分词有时态和语态。它们可以带直接宾语或与特殊动词连用的其他结构,也可以被副词或副词短语修饰:

Patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum cucurrērunt, *seeing their father in the house, the boy and girl ran up to him.*

应当注意,就像在英语中那样,拉丁语分词的时态并非绝对,而是相对于主要动词来说的。例如,现在时分词的动作是与主句动作同时发生的,无论主要动词是现在时、过去时还是将来时;由上例可以看出,孩子们是在过去的某个时间看到父亲,然后奔向他。完成时分词和将来时分词也是类似,如下表所示:

1. 现在时分词 = 与动词动作*同时*发生的动作(同时)
2. 完成时分词 = 在动词动作*之前*发生的动作(先于)
3. 将来时分词 = 在动词动作*之后*发生的动作(迟于)

Graecī nautae, videntēs Polyphēmum, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.

The Greek sailors, seeing Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecī nautae, vīsī ā Polyphēmō, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.

The Greek sailors, (*having been*) *seen by Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.*

Graecī nautae, vīsūrī Polyphēmum, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.

The Greek sailors, about to see Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

把分词短语翻译成从句

分词短语在拉丁语中要比在英语中多得多。由于英语更喜欢使用带有规则限定动词的从句,所以要想把拉丁语翻译成合乎习惯的英语,就往往需要把分

词短语变成从句。

为此,我们需要考虑:(1) 短语动作与主句动作之间的关系,从而选出恰当的从句连词(尤其是"when", "since"或"although");(2) 分词时态的相对性,从而将分词转换成恰当的动词时态。

于是,前面的例子 **patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum cucurrērunt** 既可译为 *seeing their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him*,也可更合乎习惯地译为 *when they saw their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him*。类似地,**Graecī nautae, vīsī ā Polyphēmō, timuērunt** 最好译为 *when they had been seen* [在时间上先于主要动词] *by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid*,而不是直译为 *having been seen by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid*。考察下面这些例子:

Māter, fīlium amāns, auxilium dat, *since she loves her son* [lit., *loving her son*], *the mother gives him assistance.*

Pater, fīliam vīsūrus, casam parābat, *since he was about to see his daughter, the father was preparing the house.*

Puella, in casam veniēns, gaudēbat, *when she came into the house* [lit., *coming into the house*], *the girl was happy.*

词汇表

arx, árcis, f., *citadel, stronghold*

dux, dúcis, m., *leader, guide; commander, general* (duke, ducal, ducat, duchess, duchy, doge; cp. **dūcō**)

équus, -ī, m., *horse* (equestrian, equine; cp. **equa, -ae,** *mare*)

hásta, -ae, f., *spear* (hastate)

ínsula, -ae, f., *island* (insular, insularity, insulate, isolate, isolation, peninsula)

lī́tus, lī́toris, n., *shore, coast* (littoral)

mī́les, mī́litis, m., *soldier* (military, militaristic, militate, militant, militia)

ōrā́tor, ōrātṓris, m., *orator, speaker* (oratory, oratorio; cp. **ōrō,** Ch. 36, **ōrātiō**, Ch. 38)

sacérdōs, sacerdṓtis, m., *priest* (sacerdotal; cp. **sacer,** *sacred*)

áliquis, áliquid (gen. **alicuíus,** dat. **álicui,** etc.; cp. decl. of **quis, quid;** nom. and acc. neut. pl. are **áliqua**), indef. pron., *someone, somebody, something*

quísquis, quídquid (**quis** repeated; cases other than nom. rare), indef. pron., *whoever, whatever*

magnánimus, -a, -um, *great-hearted, brave, magnanimous* (magnanimity)

úmquam, adv., in questions or negative clauses, *ever, at any time* (cp. **numquam**)

ḗducō (1), *to bring up, educate* (education, educator, educable; do not confuse with **ēdūcō,** *to lead out*)
gaúdeō, gaudḗre, gāvī́sus sum, *to be glad, rejoice* (gaudeamus; cp. **gaudium, -iī,** *joy,* as in **Latīna est gaudium!**)
osténdō, osténdere, osténdī, osténtum, *to exhibit, show, display* (ostentation, ostentatious, ostensible, ostensive; cp. **tendō,** *stretch, extend*)
pétō, pétere, petī́vī, petī́tum, *to seek, aim at, beg, beseech* (appetite, compete, competent, impetuous, petition, petulant, repeat; cp. **perpetuus**)
prémō, prémere, préssī, préssum, *to press; press hard, pursue;* **-primō** in compounds as seen in **opprimō** below (compress, depress, express, impress, imprint, print, repress, reprimand, suppress)
óppримō, -prímere, -préssī, -préssum, *to suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check* (oppress, oppression, oppressive, oppressor)
vértō, vértere, vértī, vérsum, *to turn; change;* so **āvertō,** *turn away, avert,* **revertō,** *turn back,* etc. (adverse, advertise, avert, averse, convert, controversy, divers, diverse, divorce, invert, obverse, pervert, revert, subvert, subversive, transverse, verse, version, animadvert)

练习与复习

1. Aliquid numquam ante audītum cernō.
2. Illum ōrātōrem in mediō senātū iterum petentem fīnem bellōrum ac scelerum nōn adiūvistis.
3. Certī frūctūs pācis ab territō vulgō atque senātū cupiēbantur.
4. Quī vir magnanimus aliās gentēs gravī metū servitūtis līberābit?
5. Nēmō fidem neglegēns timōre umquam carēbit.
6. Illa fēmina fortūnāta haec cōnsilia contrā eōs malōs quondam aluit et salūtis commūnis causā semper labōrābat.
7. Illam gentem Latīnam oppressūrī et dīvitiās raptūrī, omnēs virōs magnae probitātis premere ac dēlēre prōtinus coepērunt.
8. Tollēturne fāma huius medicī istīs versibus novīs?
9. At vīta illīus modī aequī aliquid iūcundī atque fēlīcis continet.
10. Quō diē ex igne et ferrō atque morte certā ēreptus es?
11. We gave many things to nations lacking hope.
12. Those ten men, (when) called, will come again with great eagerness.
13. Through the window they saw the second old man running out of his neighbor's house and away from the city.
14. He himself was overpowered by uncertain fear because he desired neither truth nor liberty.

古代名言

1. Vīvēs meīs praesidiīs oppressus. (Cicero.—**praesidium, -iī,** *guard.*)
2. Illī autem, tendentēs manūs dextrās, salūtem petēbant. (Livy.—**tendō, -ere,** *to stretch, extend.*)
3. Tantalus sitiēns flūmina ab ōre fugientia tangere dēsīderābat. (Hor-

ace.—**sitīre,** *to be thirsty.*)

4. Signa rērum futūrārum mundō ā dīs ostenduntur. (Cicero.)
5. Graecia capta asperum victōrem cēpit. (Horace.—**victor, -tōris,** here = Rome.)
6. Atticus Cicerōnī ex patriā fugientī multam pecūniam dedit. (Nepos.—**Atticus,** a friend of Cicero.)
7. Sī mihi eum ēducandum committēs, studia eius fōrmāre ab īnfantiā incipiam. (Quintilian.—**fōrmāre.**—**īnfantia, -ae.**)
8. Saepe stilum verte, bonum libellum scrīptūrus. (Horace.—**stilum vertere,** *to invert the stilus* = to use the eraser.)
9. Cūra ōrātōris dictūrī eōs audītūrōs dēlectat. (Quintilian.)
10. Mortī Sōcratis semper illacrimō, legēns Platōnem. (Cicero.—**Sōcratēs, -cratis.**—**illacrīmāre,** *to weep over.*—**Platō, -tōnis.**)
11. Memoria vītae bene āctae multōrumque bene factōrum iūcunda est. (Cicero.)
12. Quī timēns vīvet, līber nōn erit umquam. (Horace.—**quī,** as often, = **is quī.**)
13. Nōn is est miser quī iussus aliquid facit, sed is quī invītus facit. (Seneca.—**invītus, -a, -um,** *unwilling;* the adj. here has adverbial force, as it commonly does in Latin.)
14. Verbum semel ēmissum volat irrevocābile. (Horace.—**semel,** adv., *once.*—**ē-mittere.**—**volāre,** *to fly.*—**irrevocābilis, -e.**)

LAOCOON SPEAKS OUT AGAINST THE TROJAN HORSE

Oppressī bellō longō et ā deīs aversī, ducēs Graecōrum, iam post decem annōs, magnum equum ligneum arte Minervae faciunt. Uterum multīs mīlitibus complent, equum in lītore relinquunt, et ultrā īnsulam proximam nāvigant. Trōiānī nūllās cōpiās aut nāvēs vident; omnis Trōia gaudet; panduntur portae. Dē equō, autem, Trōiānī sunt incertī. Aliī eum in urbem dūcī cupiunt; aliī eum Graecās īnsidiās appellant. Prīmus ibi ante omnēs, dē arce currēns, Lāocoōn, sacerdōs Trōiānus, haec verba dīcit: "Ō miserī cīvēs, nōn estis sānī! Quid cōgitātis? Nōnne intellegitis Graecōs et īnsidiās eōrum? Aut inveniētis in istō equō multōs mīlitēs ācrēs, aut equus est machina bellī, facta contrā nōs, ventūra in urbem, vīsūra casās nostrās et populum. Aut aliquid latet. Equō nē crēdite, Trōiānī: quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna gerentēs!" Dīxit, et potentem hastam magnīs vīribus manūs sinistrae in uterum equī iēcit; stetit illa, tremēns.

(Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.13–52; prose adaptation.—**ligneus, -a, -um,** *wooden, of wood.*—Minerva, goddess of war and protectress of the Greeks.—**uterus, -ī.**—**complēre,** *to fill up, make pregnant.*—**proximus, -a, -um,** *nearby.*—**Trōiānus, -a, -um,** *Trojan.*—**pandō, -ere,** *to open.*—**Lāocoōn, -ontis,** m.—**Nōnne** introduces a question anticipating an affirmative answer, *Don't you . . . ?*—**machina, -ae.**—**vīsūra,** here *to spy on.*—**latēre,** *to be hidden, be concealed.*—**equō,** dat. with **crēdite** (see Ch. 35).—**nē** = **nōn.**—**Danaōs** = **Graecōs.**—**et** (with **gerentēs**) = **etiam.**—**tremō, -ere,** *to tremble, shake, vibrate.*—To be continued. . . .)



Trojan horse with Greek soldiers
Relief from neck of an amphora, Mykonos, 7th century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Mykonos, Greece

词源点滴

In the readings

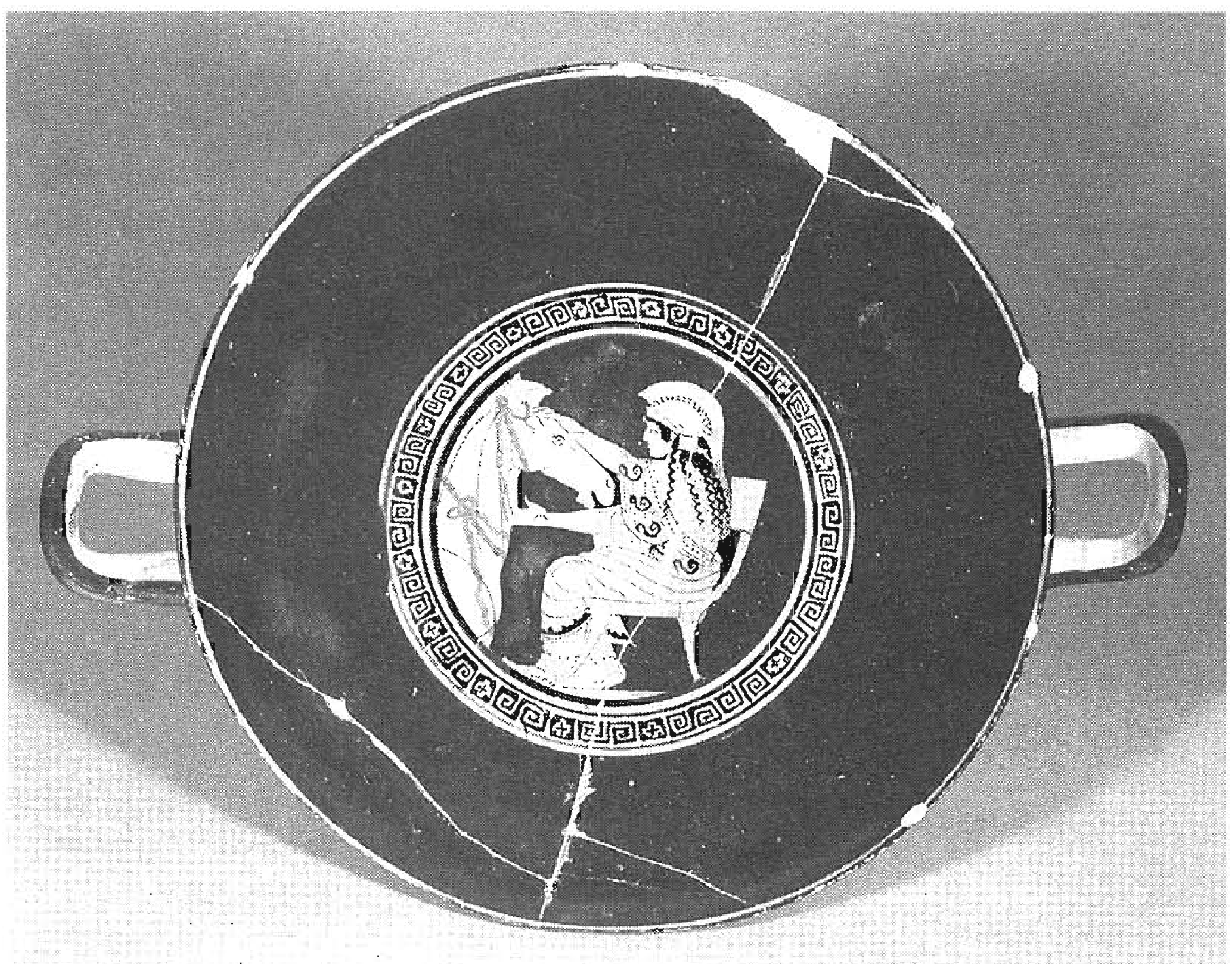
2. tend, tent, tense, attend, contend, distend, extend, extent, extensive, intend, intent, intense, portend, pretend, subtend, superintendent；与词汇表中的 **ostendō** 比较。 3. tantalize，希腊语派生词。 8. stilus, style. 10. lachrymose. 14. volatile, volley. "Laocoon": uterine.—complete, completion, complement, complementary.—proximity, approximate.—expand, expansive.—machine, machinery, machination.—latent.—tremor, tremulous, tremulant, tremble, tremendous.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 本课词汇使我们想起了古罗马的一些文学作品：西塞罗写过一本题为 **Dē Ōrātōre** 的修辞学专著；普劳图斯最著名的戏剧之一便是 **Mīles Glōriōsus**，通常译为 *Braggart Soldier*；还有中世纪的学生歌曲，它的一句著名歌词是（非常适合学习拉丁语的大学生们）：**gaudeāmus, igitur, iuvenēs dum sumus,** *so let us rejoice, while we are young!*

Verte 源于 **vertere**，意为 *turn the page*，**versō** 指一本书的左手页（即刚刚翻页之后看到的那一页）；印刷商称右手页为 **rectō**。

在阅读材料中，"特洛伊木马"指任何试图从内部颠覆政府或组织的人、群体或装置。特洛伊传奇以及维吉尔关于埃涅阿斯在迦太基定居的故事给我们留下了一句名言：**dux fēmina factī,** *a woman (was) leader of the action!* **Gaudēte atque valēte!**



Athena (Minerva) constructing the Trojan horse
Red-figure Greek kylix, the Sabouroff Painter, 470–460 B.C.
Museo Archeologico, Florence, Italy

第二十四课

独立夺格;被动迂说法;施事与格

在上一课中我们学习了分词,罗马人常把分词用于"独立夺格"(ablative absolute)和"被动迂说法"(passive periphrastic)这两种常见结构中。下面我们将分别介绍。

独立夺格

独立夺格是一种分词短语,一般由夺格形式的名词(或代词)和修饰性的分词所组成;它与句子的其余部分连接比较松散("absolute"一词正是源于 **absolūtum**, *loosened from, separated*),通常用逗号与之隔开,描述句子动作发生的某些一般情况。

Rōmā vīsā, virī gaudēbant, *Rome having been seen, the men rejoiced.*

如此句所示,独立夺格是一个自足的整体,分词与它所修饰的名词都在同一个短语中,而且独立夺格短语中的名词在主句中完全没有提及。而在其他类型的分词短语中(比如第二十三课中的那些短语),分词则修饰与之相连的子句中的名词或代词。试将上例与下面这个包含普通分词短语的例句进行比较:

Rōmam videntēs, virī gaudēbant, *seeing Rome, the men rejoiced.*

在这个例子中,分词修饰主句的主语,所以不能使用独立夺格。

和其他分词短语一样,独立夺格可以在相当程度上直译,比如把 **Rōmā vīsā** 译成(*with*) *Rome having been seen*。然而,正如在上一课中所说,更好的做法是将短语改写成句子,把分词转换成恰当时态的动词,把夺格名词当作它的主语,

并配上最合乎逻辑的连词(通常是"when","since"或"although");于是,根据语言习惯,最好把 **Rōmā vīsā, virī gaudēbant** 翻译成:*when Rome was (had been) seen, the men rejoiced*。比较下面一些例子:

Hīs rēbus audītīs, coepit timēre.
These things having been heard, he began to be afraid.

或者更好地译为:

When (*since, after*, etc., 取决于语境) *these things had been heard, he began ...*
When (*since, after*, etc.) *he had heard these things, he began . . .*

Eō imperium tenente, ēventum timeō
With him holding the power,
Since he holds the power,
When he holds the power, } *I fear the outcome.*
If he holds the power,
Although he holds the power,

在独立夺格中,通常夺格名词/代词在先,分词在后;如果短语中包含有其他成分(比如上面这个例句中分词的直接宾语),则它们通常位于名词与分词之间。

如下列例句所示,甚至两个名词,或者一个名词加一个形容词,就可以起独立夺格的作用。这样,我们便可以理解 **sum** 的现在时分词了(在古典拉丁语中无此形式):

Caesare duce, nihil timēbimus.
Caesar being the commander,
Under Caesar's command.
With Caesar in command. } *we shall fear nothing.*
Since(when, if, etc.)Caesar is the commander,

Caesar incertō, bellum timēbāmus,
Since Caesar was uncertain (with Caesar uncertain), we were afraid of war.

被动迂说法变位:动形词+ Sum

虽然名字听上去挺可怕,但事实上,被动迂说法(periphrastic)变位只是一种被动态的动词形式,由动形词(即将来时被动态分词)**+sum** 的某种形式而构成。[1]

---

[1] "迂说法"("periphrasis", adj. "periphrastic")一词源自对应于拉丁词 **circumlocūtiō**, *a roundabout way of speaking* 的希腊词,指的是由分词 + 助动词 **sum** 组成的结构(甚至英语中的"did sing"就是表达"sang"的一种迂说法);类似地,整个完成时系统的被动态也是"迂说的",它由 **sum** + 完成时被动态分词(而不是动形词)构成(注意不要把两者相混淆:被动迂说法总是包含一个以**-nd-**结尾的动形词)。

作为谓语形容词，动形词应当在性、数、格上与 **sum** 的主语保持一致，例如 **haec fēmina laudanda est**, *this woman is to be praised*。

动形词往往表达一种必须的、强制性的或恰当的行为，而不单单指将来，在被动迂说法结构中正是如此。因此 **id faciendum est** 的意思并不单单指 *this is about to be done*，而更是指 *this has to be done*；**hic liber cum cūrā legendus erit**, *this book will have to be* (*must be*) *read with care*。

正如拉丁语在此结构中使用了各种时态的助动词 **sum**，英语也往往用"has to be", "had to be","will have to be"等表达方式；在翻译被动迂说法结构时，还经常要用到"should","ought"和"must"等助动词（试与 **dēbeō** 进行比较，我们知道，**dēbeō** 也被用来指强制性的行为）。

施事与格

与被动迂说法连用的不是施事夺格，而是施事与格。对被动迂说法+施事与格的直译一般听起来比较古怪，所以把这样一个句子变成主动结构往往更好。考察下面的例子：

Hic liber mihi cum cūrā legendus erit, *this book will have to be read by me with care* 或（更好的译法）*I will have to* (*ought to, must, should*) *read this book with care.*

Illa fēmina omnibus laudanda est, *that woman should be praised by all* 或 *everyone should praise that woman.*

Pāx ducibus nostrīs petenda erat, *peace had to be sought by our leaders* 或 *our leaders had to seek peace.*

词汇表

Carthā́gō, Carthā́ginis, f., *Carthage* (a city in North Africa)
fā́bula, -ae, f., *story, tale; play* (fable, fabulous, confabulate; cp. **fāma**)
imperā́tor, imperātṓris, m., *general, commander-in-chief, emperor* (cp. **parō, imperium, imperō**, Ch. 35)
impérium, -iī, n., *power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control* (imperial, imperialism, imperious, empire)
perfúgium, -iī, n., *refuge, shelter* (cp. **fugiō**)
sérvus, -ī, m., and **sérva, -ae,** f., *slave* (serf, servant, servile, service; cp. **serviō**, Ch. 35)
sōlā́cium, -iī, n., *comfort, relief* (solace, consolation, inconsolable)
vúlnus, vúlneris, n., *wound* (vulnerable, invulnerable)
re- or **red-,** prefix, *again, back* (recede, receive, remit, repeat, repel,

revert)
ut, conj. + indic., *as, just as, when*
pósteā, adv., *afterwards* (cp. **post**)
accípiō, -cípere, -cēpī, -céptum, *to take* (to one's self), *receive, accept* (cp. **capiō**)
excípiō, -cípere, -cēpī, -céptum, *to take out, except; take, receive, capture* (exception, exceptionable)
recípiō, -cípere, -cēpī, -céptum, *to take back, regain; admit, receive* (recipe, R_x, receipt, recipient, receptacle, reception)
péllō, péllere, pépulī, púlsum, *to strike, push; drive out, banish* (compel, compulsion, compulsory, dispel, expel, impel, propel, repel, pelt, pulsate, pulse)
expéllō, -péllere, -pulī, -púlsum, *to drive out, expel, banish* (expulsion)
nárrō (1), *to tell, report, narrate* (narration, narrative, narrator)
quaérō, quaérere, quaesívī, quaesítum, *to seek, look for, strive for; ask, inquire, inquire into* (acquire, conquer, exquisite, inquire, inquest, inquisition, perquisite, query, quest, question, request, require)
rídeō, rīdére, rísī, rísum, *to laugh, laugh at* (deride, derisive, ridicule, ridiculous, risibilities; cf. **rīdiculus,** Ch. 30, **subrīdeō,** Ch. 35)

练习与复习

1. Igne vīsō, omnēs virī et uxōrēs territae sunt et ultrā urbem ad lītus īnsulae nāvigāvērunt, ubi perfugium inventum est.
2. Populō metū oppressō, iste imperātor nōbīs ex urbe pellendus est.
3. Ōrātor, signō ā sacerdōte datō, eō diē revēnit et nunc tōtus populus Latīnus gaudet.
4. Gēns Rōmāna versūs illīus scrīptōris magnā laude quondam recēpit.
5. Laudēs atque dōna huius modī ab ōrātōribus dēsīderābantur.
6. Imperiō acceptō, dux magnanimus fidem suam reī pūblicae ostendit.
7. Aliquis eōs quīnque equōs ex igne ēripī posteā iusserat.
8. Cernisne omnia quae tibi scienda sunt?
9. Ille, ab arce urbis reveniēns, ab istīs hominibus premī coepit.
10. Cupiō tangere manum illīus mīlitis quī metū caruit atque gravia scelera contrā rem pūblicam oppressit.
11. Iste dux prōtinus expulsus est, ut imperium excipiēbat.
12. Illae servae, autem, perfugium sōlāciumque ab amīcīs quaerēbant.
13. Cornū audītō, ille mīles, incertus cōnsiliī, cōpiās ad mediam īnsulam vertit.
14. When the common danger had been averted, two of our sons and all our daughters came back from Asia.
15. Our hopes must not be destroyed by those three evil men.
16. Since the people of all nations are seeking peace, all leaders must conquer the passion for (= of) power. (Use an ablative absolute and a passive periphrastic.)
17. The leader, having been driven out by both the free men and the

slaves, could not regain his command.

古代名言

1. Carthāgō dēlenda est. (Cato.)
2. Asiā victā, dux Rōmānus fēlīx multōs servōs in Italiam mīsit. (Pliny the Elder.)
3. Omnibus ferrō mīlitis perterritīs, quisque sē servāre cupiēbat. (Caesar.)
4. Quidquid dīcendum est, līberē dīcam. (Cicero.—**līberē,** adv. of **līber.**)
5. Haec omnia vulnera bellī tibi nunc sānanda sunt. (Cicero.—**sānāre,** *to heal.*)
6. Nec tumultum nec hastam mīlitis nec mortem violentam timēbō, Augustō terrās tenente. (Horace.—**tumultus -ūs,** *disturbance, civil war.*—**violentus, -a, -um.**—**Augustus, -ī.**)
7. Tarquiniō expulsō, nōmen rēgis audīre nōn poterat populus Rōmānus. (Cicero.)
8. Ad ūtilitātem vītae omnia cōnsilia factaque nōbīs regenda sunt. (Tacitus.—**ūtilitās, -tātis,** *benefit, advantage.*)

DĒ CUPIDITĀTE

Homō stultus, "Ō cīvēs, cīvēs," inquit, "pecūnia ante omnia quaerenda est; virtūs et probitās post pecūniam."

Pecūniae autem cupiditās fugienda est. Fugienda etiam est cupiditās glōriae; ēripit enim lībertātem. Neque imperia semper petenda sunt neque semper accipienda; etiam dēpōnenda nōn numquam.

(Horace, *Epistulae* 1.1.53, and Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* 1.20.68.—**dēpōnō, -ere,** *to put down, resign.*)

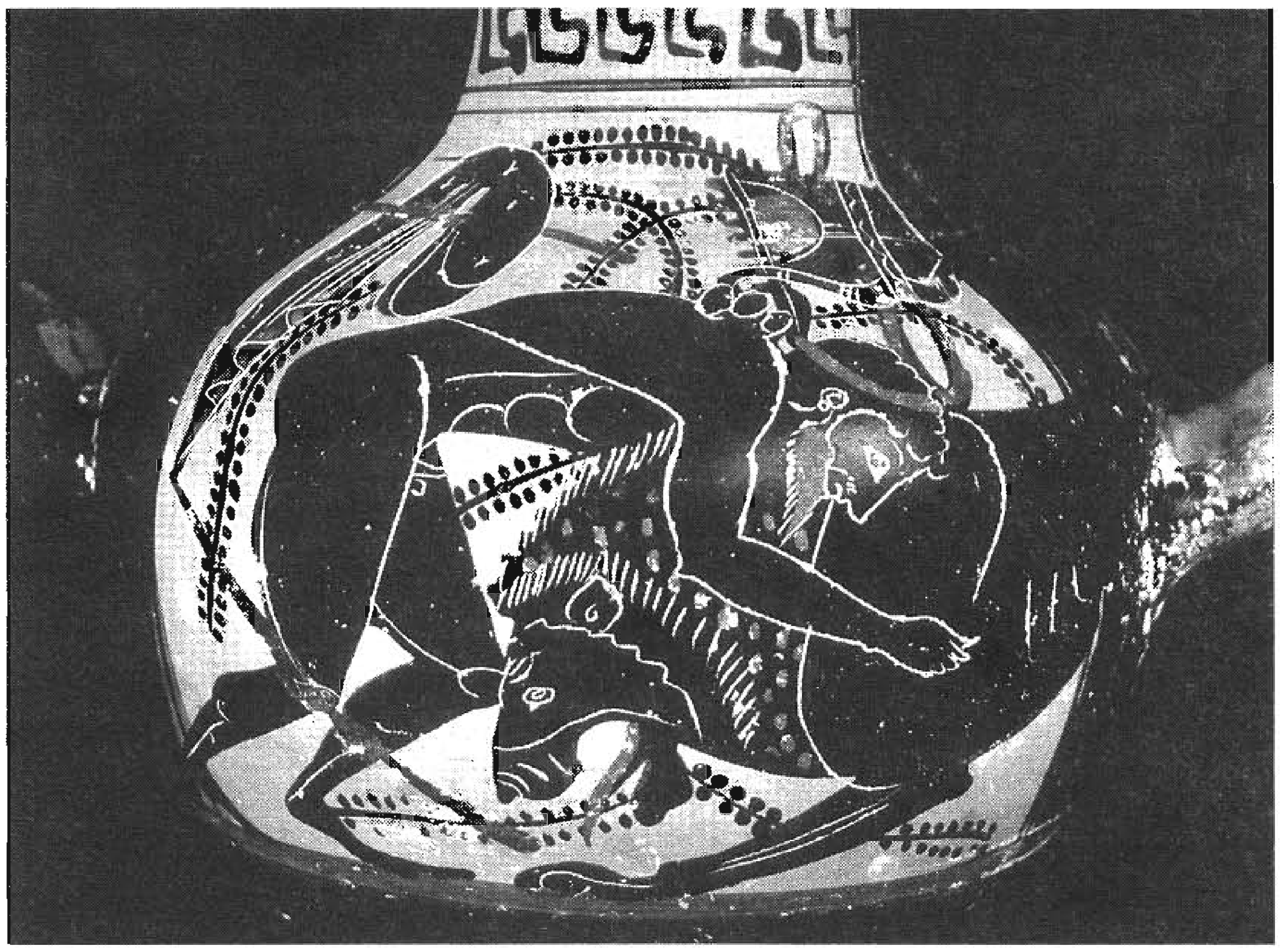
Caelō receptus propter virtūtem, Herculēs multōs deōs salūtāvit; sed Plūtō veniente, quī Fortūnae est fīlius, āvertit oculōs. Tum, causā quaesītā, "Ōdī," inquit, "illum, quod malīs amīcus est atque omnia corrumpit lucrī causā."

(Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.12.—**Herculēs, -lis.**—**salūtāre,** *to greet.*—**Plūtus, -ī,** god of wealth.—**Fortūnae,** here personified.—**corrumpō, -ere,** *to corrupt.*—**lucrum, -ī,** *gain, profit.*)

THE SATIRIST'S MODUS OPERANDI

Rīdēns saturās meās percurram, et cūr nōn? Quid vetat mē rīdentem dīcere vērum, ut puerīs ēducandīs saepe dant crūstula magistrī? Quaerō rēs gravēs iūcundō lūdō et, nōminibus fictīs, dē multīs culpīs vitiīsque nārrō. Sed quid rīdēs? Mūtātō nōmine, dē tē fābula nārrātur!

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 1.1.23–27, 69–70; prose adaptation.—**per + currō.**—**vetāre,** *to forbid.*—**puerīs . . . magistrī,** the order of the nouns is varied for effect: indirect obj., direct obj., subject.—**crūstulum, -ī,** *cookie, pastry.*—**fingō, -ere, fīnxī,**



Heracles (Hercules) fighting the Nemean lion, one of his 12 labors
Attic black-figure kalpis, Early 5th century B.C.
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria

fictum, *to form, invent, make up.*)

词源点滴

In the readings

6. tumultuous.—“Violent” 显然来源于 **vīs.**—罗马人最初把三月当作一年中的第一个月，他们把第五个月称为 **Quīntīlis**（**quīntus,** *fifth*），但后来恺撒(Julius Casar)将它重新命名为 **Iūlius**（七月），因为恺撒本人出生于七月。后来，在授予恺撒的继承人屋大维“奥古斯都”(Augustus, the august，“威严者”)称号时，罗马元老院又将第六个月的名称（**Sextīlis**）改成了 **Augustus**（八月）。**“Dē Cupiditāte”**: Herculean—salute; 与 **salvēre, salūs** 比较—plutocrat, 源于希腊语—lucre, lucrative.—“The Satirist”: veto.—crust.—fiction, fictitious, fictive.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, amīcae amīcīque! Quid agitis hodiē? 我敢打赌，你以前并不知道 R_x 和“recipe” 源于同一个词(参见词汇表中的 **recipiō**)，但是现在，感谢拉丁语，你知道了！正如你已经看到的，由 **capiō** 产生出了大量派生词；由 **excipere** 产生出了一些 “exceptionally”(特别) 熟悉的短语：**exceptiō probat regulam,** *the exception proves the rule*，还有 **exceptīs excipiendīs,** *with all the necessary exceptions*(字面意思是，*with things excepted that should be excepted*。你能辨识出

动形词吗?)类似地,如何对常用短语 **mūtātīs mūtandīs** 进行意译和直译?(如果你写不出来,请查阅韦伯斯特词典,那里有英语中包含的数百个拉丁语短语、格言、语词和缩写!)

以下是英语中出现的另一些动形词:**agenda** (*things to be done*);**corrigenda** (*things to be corrected*,即 **errāta** [勘误表]);被动迂说法 **dē gustibus nōn disputandum est**,有时简写为 **dē gustibus** (*you can't argue about taste*);以及在数学证明的末尾出现的 **quod erat dēmōnstrandum** (我们以前见到过),简写为**Q.E.D**。

Servus 也是本课出现的新词,由它产生了教皇的称号之一:**servus servōrum deī**(另一个称号是 **pontifex**,这是古罗马的一种祭司职位,它最初可能意为 *bridge-builder*——因为祭司在人神之间进行沟通?);**quaere** 在英语中意为需要更多的信息。**Nunc est satis: valēte atque semper rīdēte!**

第二十五课

不定式;间接陈述

不定式

在前两课中,我们学习了被称为分词的动词性形容词的形式和用法。现在我们讨论一种被称为不定式(如 **amāre**, *to love*)的动词性名词(另外两种动词性名词,即目的动名词[supine]和动名词[gerund],我们将在第三十八、三十九课中介绍)。大多数及物动词都有六种不定式——现在时、将来时、完成时的主动态和被动态,不过将来时被动态不定式比较罕见;[1] 不及物动词通常没有被动态。关于现在时的主动态和被动态不定式,我们已经比较熟悉了,它们的形式根据变位法的不同而不同;完成时和将来时的不定式则依照下列模式构成,与动词属于哪种变位法无关:

	主动态	被动态
现在时	**–āre, –ēre, –ere, –īre**[2]	**–ārī, –ērī, –ī, –īrī**
完成时	完成时词干 + **–isse**	完成时被动态分词 + **esse**
将来时	将来时主动态分词 + **esse**	(以**–um** 结尾的目的动名词 + **īrī**)[3]

[1] 换句话说,对于过去、现在和将来的每一种基本时间框架,都有主动态和被动态两种不定式;而分词则没有现在时被动态和完成时主动态形式。

[2] 事实上,现在时主动态不定式的词尾是**–re**,它被加在现在时词干上;不过为了区分,这里也把词干元音包括了进来。

[3] 这里的将来时被动态不定式之所以放在括号里,是因为这种形式并不常见,在本书中没有出现。罗马人习惯于用 **fore ut** + 虚拟式(结果从句)等表达方式作为替代。以**–um** 结尾的目的动名词的拼写与中性单数主格的完成时被动态分词相同。

Agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *to lead* **的不定式**

	主动态	被动态
现在时	ágere, *to lead*	ágī, *to be led*
完成时	ēgísse, *to have led*	ā́ctus, -a, -um[4] ésse, *to have been led*
将来时	āctū́rus, -a, -um[4] ésse, *to be about to lead, to be going to lead*	ā́ctum ī́rī, *to be about to be led, to be going to be led*

对上面六种不定式的直译是习惯性的；在实际使用中（特别是在下面将要介绍的间接陈述中），完成时不定式、特别是将来时不定式很少作直译。

以下是其他一些例词的不定式：

主动态

现在时	laudā́re	monḗre	audī́re	cápere
完成时	laudāvísse	monuísse	audīvísse	cēpísse
将来时	laudātū́rus, -a, -um, ésse	monitū́rus, -a, -um, ésse	audītū́rus, -a, -um, ésse	captū́rus, -a, -um, ésse

被动态

现在时	laudā́rī	monḗrī	audī́rī	cápī
完成时	laudā́tus, -a, -um, ésse	mónitus, -a, -um, ésse	audī́tus, -a, -um, ésse	cáptus, -a, -um, ésse
将来时	laudā́tum ī́rī	mónitum ī́rī	audī́tum ī́rī	cáptum ī́rī

用法

作为动词性名词，不定式能够以多种方式起作用。我们已经看到它可以做主语（**errāre est humānum,** *to err is human*），做 **possum** 和 **dēbeō** 等动词的补充（**discēdere nunc possunt,** *they can leave now*——第六课），还可以做宾格主语的直接宾语（**iussit eōs venīre,** *he ordered them to come*）。不过，不定式最常见的用法之一是所谓的“间接陈述”。

不定式用在带有宾格主语的间接陈述中

间接陈述就是间接地报导某个人的说法、思想、感受等等。下面是一位老师所作的直接陈述：

---

[1] 这些分词被看作谓语形容词，所以要与 **esse** 的主语保持一致。

Julia is a good student.

如果要直接报导或引用老师的这句陈述就是：

"Julia is a good student," says the teacher.

The teacher said, "Julia is a good student."

拉丁语也用某些表示言说的动词引出直接陈述，比如第二十二课词汇表中的 **inquit**：

"Iūlia," magister inquit, "est discipula bona."

不过，拉丁语和英语往往间接地报导某个人的说法（或思想感受）。在英语中，我们通常把这些间接陈述放在一个由 *that* 引导的从句中：

The teacher says that Julia is a good student.

The teacher said that Julia was a good student.

拉丁语不使用 *that* 那样的引导词，而是用带有宾格主语的不定式短语来代替从句：

Magister dīcit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.

Magister dīxit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.

在拉丁语中，这种间接陈述结构一般用在表示“言说”、“精神活动”、“感官知觉”等含义的动词（即表示“说”、“想”、“认知”、“觉察”、“感受”、“看”、“听”等含义的动词；参见词汇表后面的拉丁语动词表）之后。英语中也有类似的结构，即在少数几个动词后面可以跟“宾格+不定式”结构（如“the teacher considers *her to be* a good student”），但在古典拉丁语中只能使用这一种结构，宾格主语总是表达出来，哪怕它与表示“言说”等含义的动词的主语相同（这时主语通常是一个反身代词）：

Iūlia putat sē esse bonam discipulam, *Julia thinks that she (herself) is a good student.*

间接陈述辨识起来并不困难，只要找到表示“言说”、“精神活动”、“感官知觉”等含义的主要动词，后面跟着宾格+不定式短语就可以了。不过，翻译要更困难一些，因为如上面一些例子所示，我们几乎总要用 *that* 把不定式短语变成一个一般性的从句，直译出来的英语（例如 *the teacher says Julia to be a good student* 或 *Julia thinks herself to be a good student*）不合乎语言习惯。在借助 *that* 翻译了宾格主语（把它当作主格来看）之后，必须把不定式变成处于正确时态的规则限定动词。需要注意的是，和分词一样，不定式的时态也是相对的而不是绝对的。

间接陈述中的不定式时态

仔细考察下列句子中的时态。

1. Dīcunt— They say	A. eum **iuvāre** eam.	*that he is helping her.*
	B. eum **iūvisse** eam.	*that he helped her.*
	C. eum **iūtūrum esse** eam.	*that he will help her.*
2. Dīxērunt— They said	A. eum **iuvāre** eam.	*that he was helping her.*
	B. eum **iūvisse** eam.	*that he had helped her.*
	C. eum **iūtūrum esse** eam.	*that he would help her.*
3. Dīcent— They will say	A. eum **iuvāre** eam.	*that he is helping her.*
	B. eum **iūvisse** eam.	*that he helped her.*
	C. eum **iūtūrum esse** eam.	*that he will help her.*

你也许注意到了,不论主要动词处于什么时态(**dīcunt, dīxērunt, dīcent**),不定式都可以用现在时、完成时或将来时。这表明,不定式的时态不是绝对的而是相对的。

换句话说,不论主要动词处于何种时态:

1. 现在时不定式表示与主要动词同时发生。
2. 完成时不定式表示在主要动词之前发生。
3. 将来时不定式表示在主要动词之后发生。

以下是另一些例子;注意时态的翻译、反身代词的使用、分词词尾与宾格主语的一致,以及被动迂说法(动形词+**esse**,表示强制性的动作)的使用。

Gāius dīcit **sē** iūvisse eam,

*Gaius **says** that he* (Gaius) ***helped** her.*

Gāius dīxit **eum** iūvisse eam,

*Gaius **said** that he* (e.g., Marcus) ***had helped** her.*

Gāius dīcit litterās ā sē scrīptās esse,

*G. **says** that the letter **was written** by him* (Gaius).

Gāius dīcit litterās tibi scrībendās esse,

*G. says that the letter **ought to be written** by you* (or *that you ought to write the letter*).

Discipulī putant sē linguam Latīnam amātūrōs esse,

*the (male) students **think** that they **will love** the Latin language.*

Magistra scīvit discipulās Latīnam amātūrās esse,

*the (female) teacher **knew** that the (female) students **would love** Latin.*

词汇表

língua, -ae, f., *tongue; language* (linguist, linguistics, bilingual, lingo, linguine: see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 14)
férōx, gen. **ferṓcis,** *fierce, savage* (ferocious, ferocity; cp. **ferus, -ī,** *beast*)
fidḗlis, fidḗle, *faithful, loyal* (fidelity, infidelity, infidel; cp. **fidēs**)
géminus, -a, -um, *twin* (geminate, gemination, Gemini)
sápiēns, gen. **sapiéntis,** as adj., *wise, judicious;* as noun, *a wise man, philosopher* (homo sapiens, sapience, insipience, sapid, insipid, verbum sapienti, savant, sage; cp. **sapientia, sapiō,** Ch. 35)
últimus, -a, -um, *farthest, extreme; last, final* (ultimate, ultimatum, penultimate, antepenult)
déhinc, adv., *then, next*
hīc, adv., *here*
ā̆it, ā̆iunt, *he says, they say, assert,* commonly used in connection with proverbs and anecdotes (adage)
crḗdō, crḗdere, crḗdidī, crḗditum + acc. or (Ch. 35) dat., *to believe, trust* (credence, credentials, credible, incredible, credulity, credulous, creed, credibility, credo, credit, creditable, accreditation, miscreant, grant)
iáceō, iacḗre, iácuī, *to lie; lie prostrate; lie dead* (adjacent, adjacency, interjacent, subjacent, gist, joist; do not confuse with **iaciō, iacere**)
négō (1), *to deny, say that . . . not* (negate, negative, abnegate, renegade, renege, denial, runagate)
nésciō, nescī́re, nescī́vī, nescī́tum, *not to know, be ignorant* (nice; cp. **sciō**)
nū́ntiō (1), *to announce, report, relate* (denounce, enunciate, pronounce, renounce, nuncio; cp. **prōnū́ntiō, nūntius, -ī,** *messenger*)
patefáciō, -fácere, -fḗcī, -fáctum, *to make open, open; disclose, expose*
pútō (1), *to reckon, suppose, judge, think, imagine* (compute, count, account, depute, dispute, impute, putative, repute, amputate)
spḗrō (1), *to hope for, hope,* regularly + fut. inf. in ind. state. (despair, desperado, desperate, desperation, prosper; cp. **spēs.**)
suscípiō, -cípere, -cḗpī, -céptum (sub-capiō), *to undertake* (susceptible, susceptibility)

能够引出间接陈述的动词表[1]

1. 言语(saying)：dī́cō, négō, ā̆it, nū́ntiō, prōnū́ntiō, nárrō, scrī́bō, dóceō, osténdō, dēmṓnstrō, móneō, pétō
2. 认知(knowing)：scíō, nésciō, intéllegō, memóriā téneō, díscō
3. 思想(thinking)：cérnō, cṓgitō, crḗdō, hábeō, pútō, spḗrō
4. 感觉感受(perceiving and feeling)：aúdiō, vídeō, séntiō, gaúdeō

[1] 后面还要介绍的动词有：**respondeō**, *answer*; **cognōscō**, *learn, know*; **arbitror**, *think*; **opīnor**, *think, suppose*; **prōmittō**, *promise*; **dēcernō**, *decide*; **doleō**, *grieve*。

练习与复习

1. "Quisque," inquit, "semper putat suās rēs esse magnās."
2. Posteā audīvimus servōs dōnōrum causā labōrāvisse, ut mīlitēs fidēlēs herī narrāverant.
3. Vīcīnī nostrī vim ignis magnā virtūte dehinc āvertērunt, quod laudem atque dōna cupīvērunt.
4. Hoc signum perīculī tōtam gentem nostram tanget, nisi hostem ex urbe excipere ac ab Italiā pellere poterimus.
5. Duce ferōcī Carthāginis expulsō, spēs fidēsque virōrum magnanimōrum rem pūblicam continēbunt.
6. Cūr iūcundus Horātius culpās hūmānās in saturīs semper ostendēbat atque rīdēbat?
7. Crēdimus fidem antīquam omnibus gentibus iterum alendam esse.
8. Dux, ad senātum missus, imperium accēpit et imperātor factus est.
9. Rēs pūblica, ut āit, libellīs huius modī tollī potest.
10. Aliquī negant hostēs victōs servitūte umquam opprimendōs esse.
11. Crēdunt magistram sapientem vēritātem patefactūram esse.
12. Quisquis vēritātem recipiet bene ēducābitur.
13. We thought that your sisters were writing the letter.
14. They will show that the letter was written by the brave slavegirl.
15. He said that the letter had never been written.
16. We hope that the judge's wife will write those two letters tomorrow.

古代名言

1. Id factum esse tum nōn negāvit. (Terence.)
2. Hīs rēbus prōnūntiātīs, igitur, eum esse hostem scīvistī. (Cicero.)
3. Eum ab hostibus exspectārī nunc sentīs. (Cicero.)
4. Vīdī eōs in urbe remānsisse et nōbīscum esse. (Cicero.)
5. Itaque aeternum bellum cum malīs cīvibus ā mē susceptum esse cernō. (Cicero.)
6. Idem crēdō tibi faciendum esse. (Cicero.)
7. Tē enim esse fidēlem mihi sciēbam. (Terence.)
8. Hostibus sē in cīvitātem vertentibus, senātus Cincinnātō nūntiāvit eum factum esse dictātōrem. (Cicero.—**Cincinnātus, -ī.**—**dictātor, -tōris.**)
9. Dīcō tē, Pyrrhe, Rōmānōs posse vincere. (Ennius.—**Pyrrhus, -ī.**)
10. Dīc, hospes, Spartae tē nōs hīc iacentēs vīdisse, patriae fidēlēs. (Cicero; epigram on the Spartans who died at Thermopylae.—**hospes, -pitis,** m., *stranger.*—**Spartae,** *to Sparta.*)

11. Sōcratēs putābat sē esse cīvem tōtīus mundī. (Cicero.)
12. Illī magistrī negant quemquam virum esse bonum nisi sapientem. (Cicero.—**quisquam, quidquam,** *anyone, anything; any.*)
13. Negāvī, autem, mortem timendam esse. (Cicero.)
14. Crēdō deōs immortālēs sparsisse spīritūs in corpora hūmāna. (Cicero.—**spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum,** *to scatter, sow.*)
15. Adulēscēns spērat sē diū vīctūrum esse; senex potest dīcere sē diū vīxisse. (Cicero.—Do not confuse **vīctūrum,** from **vīvō,** with **victūrum,** from **vincō**).
16. Āiunt enim multum legendum esse, nōn multa. (*Pliny.)

THE DEATH OF LAOCOON . . . AND TROY

Hīc alius magnus timor (Ō fābula misera!) animōs caecōs nostrōs terret. Lāocoōn, sacerdōs Neptūnī fortūnā factus, ācrem taurum ad āram in lītore mactābat. Tum geminī serpentēs potentēs, mare prementēs, ab īnsulā ad lītora currunt. Iamque agrōs tenēbant et, oculīs igne ardentibus, ōra linguīs sībilīs lambēbant.

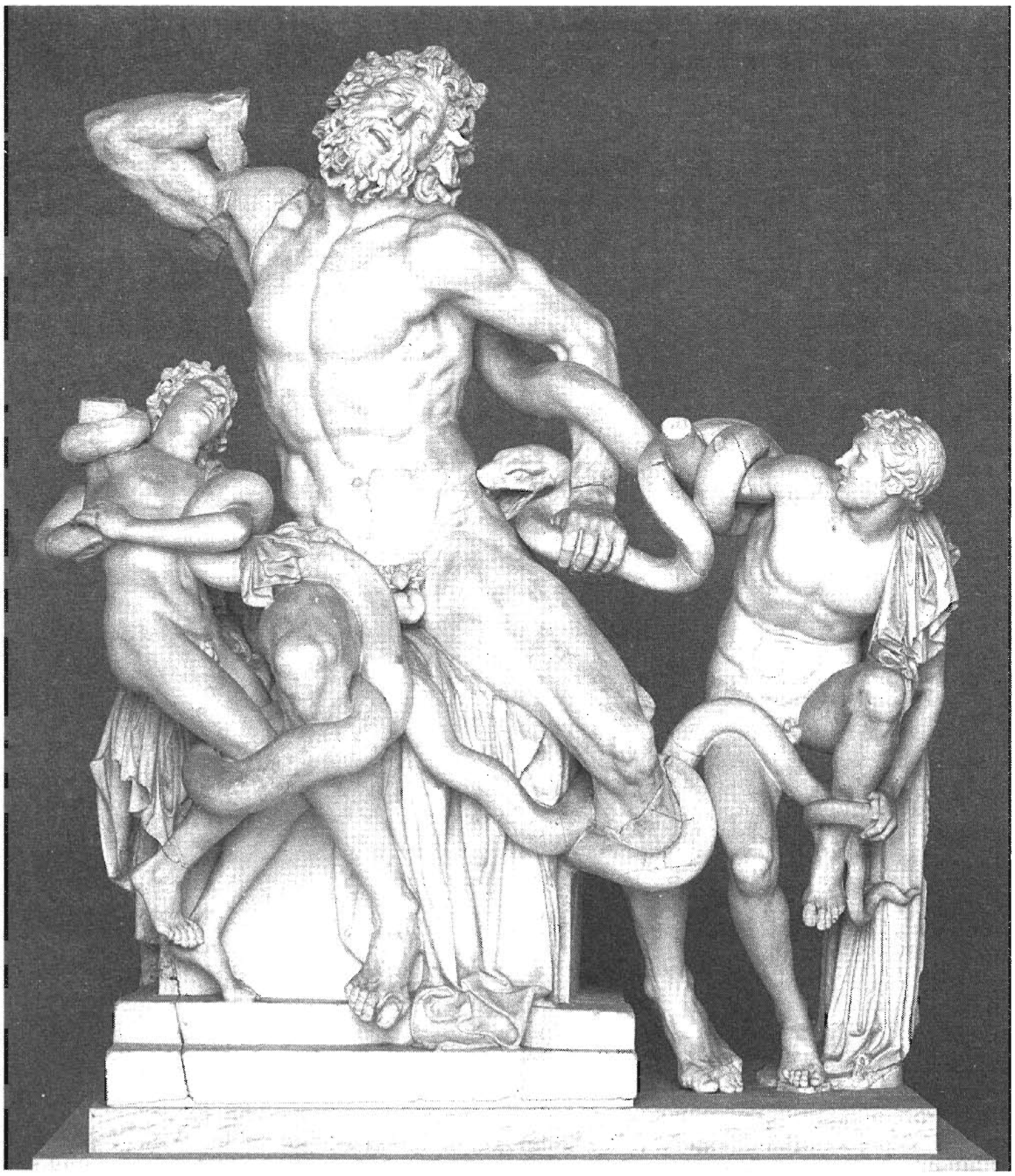
Nōs omnēs fugimus; illī viā certā Lāocoonta fīliōsque eius petunt. Prīmum parva corpora duōrum puerōrum capiunt et lacerant necantque dēvōrantque. Tum patrem fortem, ad fīliōs miserōs currentem, rapiunt et magnīs spīrīs tenent et superant. Nec sē ā vulneribus dēfendere nec fugere potest, et ipse, ut taurus saucius ad āram, clāmōrēs horrendōs ad caelum tollit. Eōdem tempore serpentēs fugiunt, petuntque perfugium in arce Minervae ācris.

Quod Lāocoōn in equum Minervae hastam iēcerat, nōs putāvimus eum errāvisse et poenās dedisse; vēritātem acerbam nescīvimus. Portās patefacimus et admittimus istum equum in urbem; atque puerī puellaeque—Ō patria, Ō dī magnī, Ō Trōia!—eum tangere gaudent. Et quoque gaudēmus nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs fuit ultimus ac quibus numquam erit ūllum sōlācium. (Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.199–249; prose adaptation.—**Lāocoōn, -ontis,** m.—**Neptūnus,** god of the sea, took the side of the Greeks in the Trojan war.—**taurus, -ī,** *bull.*—**āra, -ae,** *altar.*—**mactāre,** *to sacrifice, sacrificially slaughter.*—**serpēns, -pentis,** m.—**ardēre,** *to blaze.*—**sībilus, -a, -um,** *hissing.*—**lambō, -ere,** *to lick.*—**Lāocoonta,** Gk. acc.—**prīmum,** adv. of **prīmus.**—**lacerāre,** *to tear to pieces, mangle.*—**dēvōrāre,** *to devour.*—**spīra, -ae,** *coil.*—**saucius, -a, -um,** *wounded.*—**clāmor, -mōris,** *shout, scream.*—**horrendus, -a, -um.**)

词源点滴

In the readings

8. propinquity.—"Cincinnati"，既指最初由乔治·华盛顿领导的军官们组成的组织，也指以该组织命名的城市。9. Pyrrhus(比鲁斯)，希腊将军，曾经两次击败罗马人，但双方都付出了同样惨重的代价，因此有"比鲁斯式的胜利"一说。



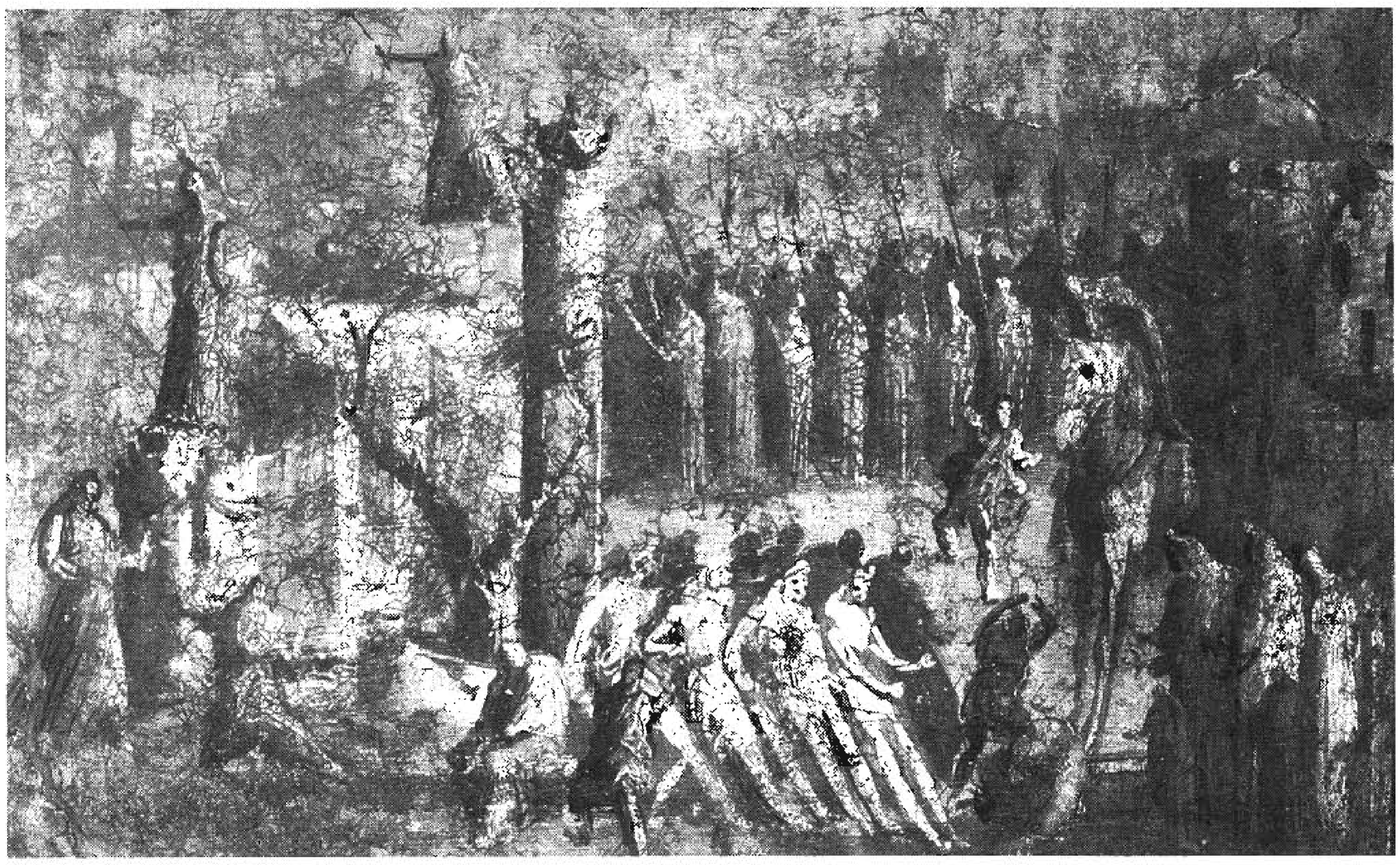
The Laocoon group
Roman copy, perhaps after Agesander, Athenodorus, and Polydorus of Rhodes
1st century B.C., Vatican Museums, Vatican State

14. aspersion, disperse, intersperse, sparse. "Laocoon": toreador.—serpent, serpentine; "herpes"是同源词.—lambent.—lacerate, laceration.—voracious.—spire, spiral.—clamor, clamorous; 与 **clāmāre, dēclāmāre, exclāmāre** 比较。—horrendous.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Quid agitis hodiē, amīcī et amīcae? 由本课的新词 **iacēre** 产生出了短语 **hīc iacet**, *here lies . . .*，它经常刻在墓碑上(有时写成 **hic jacet**，弄不好会被误认为是 *a country boy's sportcoat!*)。下面是另一些著名的格言和短语：**dum**

spīrō, spērō, *while I breathe, I hope*(南卡罗莱纳州的座右铭——动词 **spīrāre** 与第二十课中的 **spīritus** 有关，由此产生了"conspire"，"expire"，"inspire"，"perspire"，"respiratory"，"transpire"等等)；**crēde Deō**, *trust in God*(关于 **crēdere** + 与格，参见第三十五课)；意大利语中的 **lingua franca**，直译为 *Frankish language*，指被用于在不同文化之间进行交流的混合语言。**Spīrāte, spērāte, rīdēte, atque valēte!**



Trojan horse fresco from the House of Menander
Pompeii, mid- to late 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

第二十六课

形容词的比较；比较级的变格；比较夺格

形容词的比较

我们前面学到的形容词形式指出了与所修饰名词相关的某种基本特征(某种性质或数量)，如 **vir beātus,** *a happy man*。这种形式被称为形容词的“原级”。

和英语一样，在拉丁语中，形容词也可以进行比较，以显示所描述的某人/某物的某一特征具有比他人/他物更高的等级，或者异乎寻常。如果是在两个人/物之间进行比较，就要用到“比较级”：**vir beātior,** *the happier man*。
如果是把某人/某物与两个或两个以上的人/物进行比较，就要用到“最高级”：**vir beātissimus,** *the happiest man*。

比较级和最高级的构成

我们在词汇表中学到的是原级形式。规则形容词的比较级和最高级形式通常是在原级词根的基础上构成的。我们知道，去掉单数属格的词尾就得到了词根。[1]

比较级：原级词根 + **–ior**(阳性和阴性)，**–ius**(中性)；**–iōris**，属格

最高级：原级词根 + **–issimus, –issima, –issimum**

---

[1] 在少数情况下，形容词是通过给原级加上 **magis** (*more*)和 **maximē** (*most*)进行比较的。这条规则常用于像 **idōneus, –a, –um** (*suitable*)这样词尾之前是元音的形容词，比如 **magis idōneus, maximē idōneus**。

原级	比较级	最高级
cā́rus, -a, -um (*dear*)	cā́rior, -ius (*dearer*)	cāríssimus, -a, -um (*dearest*)
lóngus, -a, -um (*long*)	lóngior, -ius (*longer*)	longíssimus, -a, -um (*longest*)
fórtis, -e (*brave*)	fórtior, -ius (*braver*)	fortíssimus, -a, -um (*bravest*)
fḗlīx, *gen.* fēlī́cis (*happy*)	fēlī́cior, -ius (*happier*)	fēlīcíssimus, -a, -um (*happiest*)
pótēns, *gen.* poténtis (*powerful*)	poténtior, -ius (*more powerful*)	potentíssimus, -a, -um (*most powerful*)
sápiēns, *gen.* sapiéntis (*wise*)	sapiéntior, -ius (*wiser*)	sapientíssimus, -a, -um (*wisest*)

比较级的变格

形容词的最高级按照 **magnus, -a, -um** 的模式进行变格。而比较级虽然是第三变格法的二尾形容词,却遵循着辅音变格;也就是说,与其他第三变格法二尾形容词不同,形容词比较级并没有 **i-**词干变格的一些典型特征(比如比较级的单数夺格不以**-ī** 结尾,复数属格不以**-ium** 结尾,中性的复数主格/宾格不以**-ia** 结尾。详见第十六课)。请记住下面这张词形变化表,特别要注意突出显示的词尾。

	单数		复数	
	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性
主格	fórtior	fórtius	fortiṓrēs	fortiṓr**a**
属格	fortiṓris	fortiṓris	fortiṓr**um**	fortiṓr**um**
与格	fortiṓrī	fortiṓrī	fortiṓribus	fortiṓribus
宾格	fortiṓrem	fórtius	fortiṓrēs	fortiṓr**a**
夺格	fortiṓr**e**	fortiṓr**e**	fortiṓribus	fortiṓribus

用法和翻译

形容词比较级常用 *more* 或后缀*-er* 来翻译,最高级常用 *most* 或后缀*-est* 来翻译,具体用哪种形式要取决于语境和英语习惯,例如:**fēmina sapientior,** *the wiser woman*; **urbs antīquior,** *a more ancient city;* **tempus incertissimum,** *a most uncertain time;* **lūx clārissima**, *the brightest light*。虽然彼此之间没有直接关联,但为了帮助记忆,我们可以把构成拉丁语比较级的**-ōr-**与英语的 *more/-er* 相联系,把构成拉丁语最高级的**-ss** 与英语的 *most/-est* 相联系。

有时比较级含有 *rather* 的意味,指某种性质比通常情况程度更强,如 **lūx clārior,** *a rather bright light*;也可以表示 *too* 的意思,指比所想往的情形程度更

高，如 **vīta eius erat brevior,** *his/her life was too short*。最高级有时用 *very* 来翻译，特别是在把人/物与寻常的或理想的情况进行比较时，如 **vīta eius erat brevissima,** *his/her life was very short*。

比较级和最高级与 Quam 连用

如果 **quam** 跟在比较级之后，那么它就起连词的作用，相当于英语中的 *than*，将两个被比较项连接起来；**quam** 之前和之后的格或结构是一样的：

Hī librī sunt clāriōrēs quam illī, *these books are more famous than those.*

Dīcit hōs librōs esse clāriōrēs quam illōs, *he says that these books are more famous than those.*

如果 **quam** 位于最高级之前，那么它就起副词的作用，指所修饰的人/物的某种性质达到了最大可能程度：

Amīcus meus erat vir quam iūcundissimus, *my friend was the pleasantest man possible* 或 *as pleasant as can be.*

比较夺格

如果比较前项是主格或宾格，那么 **quam** 往往省去，比较后项采用夺格形式，这就是所谓的"比较夺格"（这种新的用法应当加入你的夺格用法表中）。

Cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra lūce, *your plans are clearer than light.*

（比较 **cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra quam lūx**，两句话的意思是一样的。）

Quis in Italiā erat clārior Cicerōne? *Who in Italy was more famous than Cicero?*

Vīdī paucōs fēlīciōres patre tuō, *I have seen few men happier than your father.*

词汇表

cḗna, -ae, f., *dinner* (cenacle)
fórum, -ī, n., *marketplace, forum* (forensic)
lēx, lḗgis, f., *law, statute;* cp. **iūs,** which emphasizes *right, justice* (legal, legislator, legitimate, loyal, colleague, college, privilege)
lī́men, lī́minis, n., *threshold* (liminality, subliminal, eliminate, preliminary)
lūx, lū́cis, f., *light* (lucid, elucidate, translucent, lucubration, illustrate, illuminate)
mḗnsa, -ae, f., *table; dining; dish, course;* **mḗnsa secúnda,** *dessert* (the constellation Mensa)
nox, nóctis, f., *night* (nocturnal, nocturne, equinox, noctiluca, noctuid; cp. **pernoctō,** Ch. 39)

sómnus, -ī, m., *sleep* (somnambulate, somnambulism, somnambulist, somniferous, somniloquist, somnolent, insomnia, Sominex)

quī́dam, quaédam, quíddam (pron.) or **quóddam** (adj.), indef. pron. and adj.; as pron., *a certain one or thing, someone, something;* as adj., *a certain, some* (gen. **cuiúsdam,** dat. **cuídam,** etc.)

pudī́cus, -a, -um, *modest, chaste* (impudent, pudency, pudendum; cp. **pudīcitia,** *modesty, chastity*)

supérbus, -a, -um, *arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud* (superb; cp. **superāre**)

trī́stis, trī́ste, *sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe* (cp. **trīstitia,** *sorrow*)

túrpis, túrpe, *ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful* (turpitude)

urbā́nus, -a, -um, *of the city, urban; urbane, elegant* (urbanity, urbanization, suburban, suburbanite; cp. **urbs**)

prae, prep. + abl., *in front of, before* (frequent as a prefix, e.g., **praepōnere,** *to put before, prefer;* sometimes intensifying, e.g., **praeclārus, -a, -um,** *especially famous, remarkable;* precede, prepare, preposition; cp. **praeter,** Ch. 40)

quam, adv. and conj. after comparatives, *than;* with superlatives, *as . . . as possible:* **quam fortissimus,** *as brave as possible* (cp. **quam,** *how,* Ch. 16, and do not confuse with the rel. pron. fem. acc. sg.)

tántum, adv., *only*

invī́tō (1), *to entertain, invite, summon* (invitation, vie)

练习与复习

1. Ille dux nescīvit sē imperium prōtinus susceptūrum esse.
2. "Quīdam," inquit, "imperium quondam petēbant et līberōs virōs opprimere cupiēbant."
3. Eōdem diē decem mīlia hostium ab duce fidēlissimō āversa ac pulsa sunt; multī mīlitēs vulnera recēperant et in agrīs iacēbant.
4. Morte tyrannī ferōcis nūntiātā, quisque sē ad ōrātōrem potentissimum magnā spē vertit.
5. Rīdēns, scrīptor illīus fābulae sapiēns aliquid iūcundius dehinc nārrāvit.
6. Hīs rēbus audītīs, adulēscentēs geminī propter pecūniae cupiditātem studium litterārum relinquent.
7. Rēgīna fortissima Carthāginis posteā ostendit fidem semper esse sibi cāriōrem dīvitiīs.
8. Negāvit sē umquam vīdisse servam fidēliōrem quam hanc.
9. Iūcundior modus vītae hominibus nunc quaerendus est.
10. Crēdimus illōs vīgintī līberōs virōs fēmināsque vītam quam iūcundissimam agere.
11. Imperātor centum mīlitēs fortissimōs prae sē herī mīsit.
12. Lūx in illā casā nōn fuit clārissima, quod familia paucās fenestrās patefēcerat.
13. Amīcōs trīstēs excēpit, ad mēnsam invītāvit, et eīs perfugium ac sō-

lācium hīc dedit.
14. What is sweeter than a very pleasant life?
15. Certain men, however, say that death is sweeter than life.
16. When these three very sure signs had been reported, we sought advice and comfort from the most powerful leader.
17. In that story the author says that all men seek as happy lives as possible.
18. This light is always brighter than the other.

古代名言

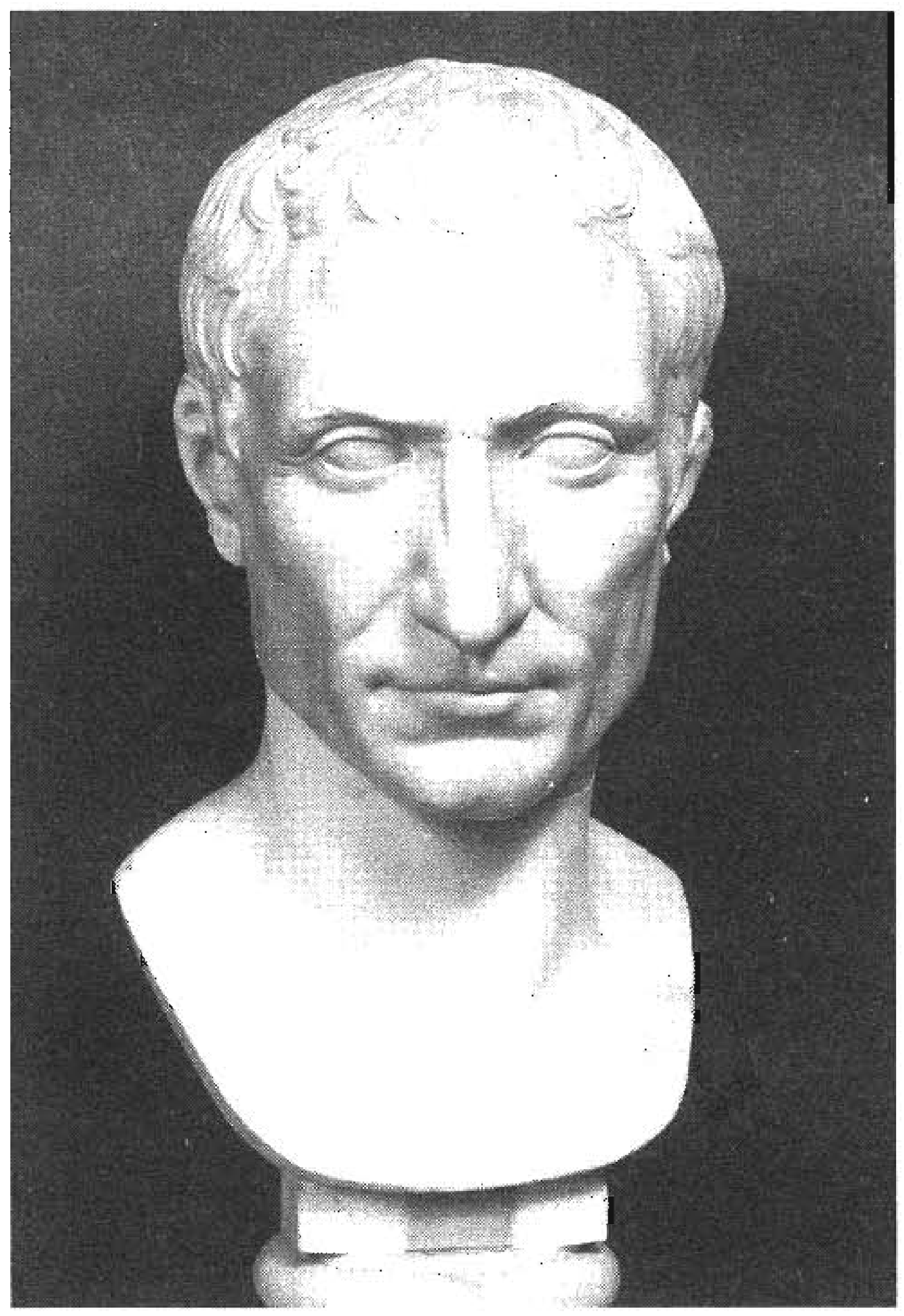
1. Senectūs est loquācior. (Cicero.—**loquāx,** gen. **loquācis,** *garrulous.*)
2. Tua cōnsilia omnia nōbīs clāriōra sunt quam lūx. (Cicero.)
3. Quaedam remedia graviōra sunt quam ipsa perīcula. (Seneca.)
4. Eō diē virōs fortissimōs atque amantissimōs reī pūblicae ad mē vocāvī. (Cicero.—**amāns reī pūblicae,** i.e., *patriotic.*)
5. Quī imperia libēns accēpit, partem acerbissimam servitūtis vītat. (Seneca.—**libēns,** gen. **libentis,** *willing;* here, as is often the case, the adj. has adverbial force.)
6. Iūcundissima dōna, ut āiunt, semper sunt ea quae auctor ipse cāra facit. (Ovid.)
7. Beātus sapiēnsque vir forum vītat et superba līmina potentiōrum cīvium. (Horace.)
8. Quid est turpius quam ab aliquō illūdī? (Cicero.—**illūdō, -ere,** *to deceive.*)
9. Quid enim est stultius quam incerta prō certīs habēre, falsa prō vērīs? (*Cicero.—**falsus, -a, -um.**)
10. Saepe mihi dīcis, cārissime amīce: "Scrībe aliquid magnum; dēsidiōsissimus homō es." (Martial.—**dēsidiōsus, -a, -um,** *lazy.*)
11. Verba currunt; at manus notāriī est vēlōcior illīs; nōn lingua mea, sed manus eius, labōrem perfēcit. (Martial.—**notārius, -iī,** *stenographer.*—**vēlōx,** gen. **vēlōcis,** *swift.*—**perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *to complete.*)
12. Multī putant rēs bellicās graviōrēs esse quam rēs urbānās; sed haec sententia mūtanda est, nam multae rēs urbānae sunt graviōrēs clāriōrēsque quam bellicae. (Cicero.—**bellicus, -a, -um,** adj. of **bellum.**)
13. Invītātus ad cēnam, manū sinistrā lintea neglegentiōrum sustulistī. Hoc salsum esse putās? Rēs sordidissima est! Itaque mihi linteum remitte. (Catullus.—**linteum, -ī,** *linen, napkin.*—**neglegēns,** gen. **neglegentis,** *careless.*—**salsus, -a, -um,** *salty; witty.*—**sordidus, -a, -um,** *dirty, mean.*)

THE NATIONS OF GAUL

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.

Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sequana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

(*Caesar, *Bellum Gallicum* 1.1.—The places and peoples mentioned: Gaul, the Belgae, the Aquitani, the Celts or Gauls, and the rivers Garonne, Marne, and Seine.—**dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum,** *to divide, separate.*—**incolō, -ere,** *to inhabit;* **Belgae, Aquītānī,** and [eī] **quī** are all subjects of this verb.—**ipsōrum linguā** = **linguā suā.**—**nostrā,** sc. **linguā.**—**īnstitūtum, -ī,** *custom, institution.*—**differō.**)

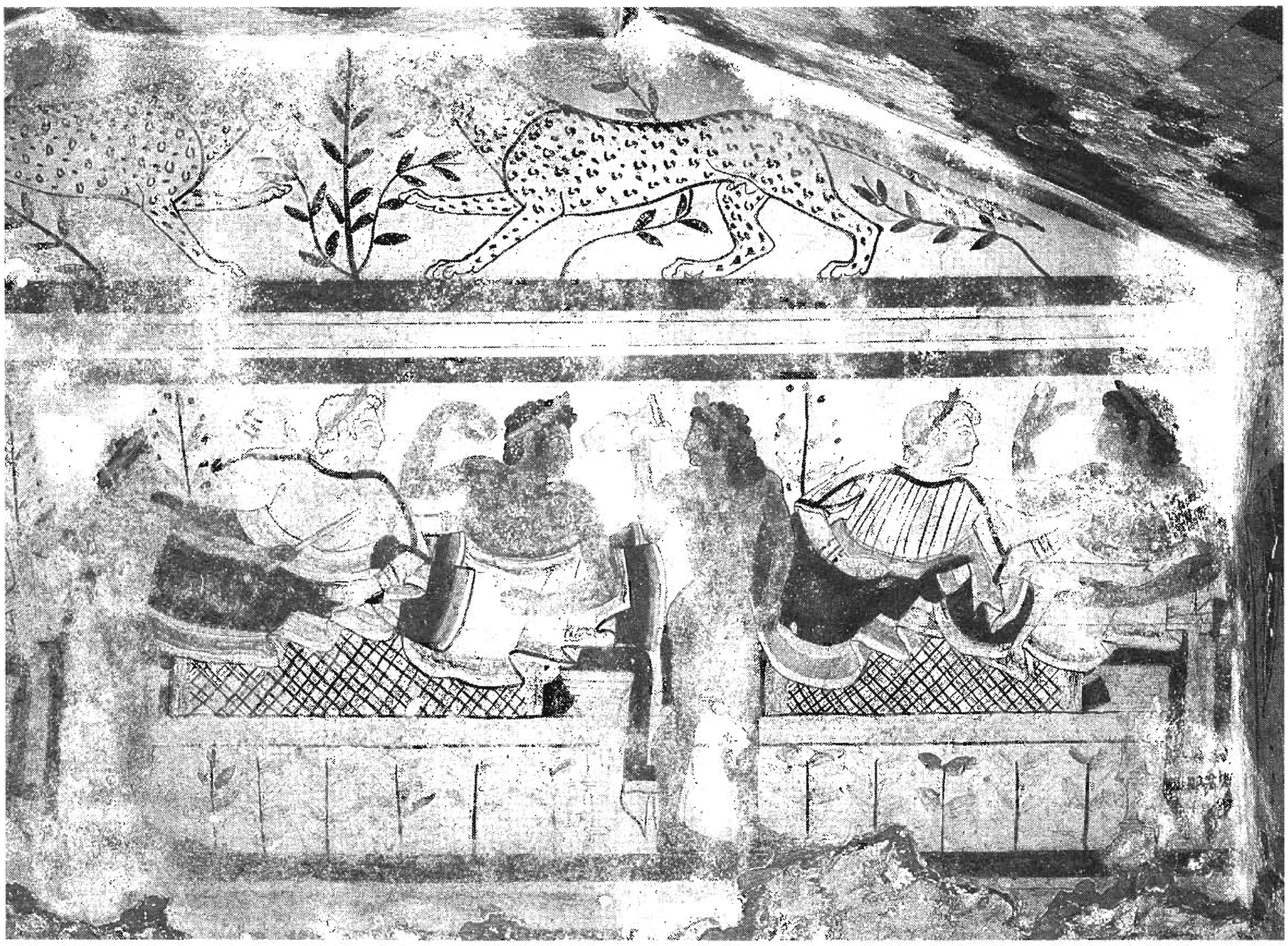


Julius Caesar
entino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State

THE GOOD LIFE

Haec sunt, amīce iūcundissime, quae vītam faciunt beātiōrem: rēs nōn facta labōre sed ā patre relicta, ager fēlīx, parvum forī et satis ōtiī, mēns aequa, vīrēs et corpus sānum, sapientia, amīcī vērī, sine arte mēnsa, nox nōn ebria sed solūta cūrīs, nōn trīstis torus et tamen pudīcus, somnus facilis. Dēsīderā tantum quod habēs, cupe nihil; nōlī timēre ultimum diem aut spērāre.

(Martial 10.47; prose adaptation.—**rēs,** here *property, wealth.*—**ā patre relicta,** i.e., inherited.—**forī,** gen. of the whole with **parvum.**—**sine arte,** i.e., simple, modest.—**ebrius, -a, -um,** *drunken.*—**solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum,** *to loosen, free (from).*—**torus, -ī,** *bed.*—**nōlī** is used with the inf. for a negative command, *do not . . . .*)



Funeral banquet, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Leopards, early 5th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy

词源点滴

在西班牙语中，形容词的比较级一般是在形容词之前加 **más** (*more*)：**más caro, más alto**。这个 **más** 源于本课首页注释中的 **magis**。西班牙语和意大利语中都保留着拉丁语最高级词尾-**issimus** 的一些痕迹。不过，有这一词尾的形式却并非正常的最高级形式，而是用来加强语气的，相当于 *very, exceedingly*。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	
cārissimus	carissimo	carisimo	*very dear*
clārissimus	chiarissimo	clarisimo	*very clear*
altissimus	altissimo	altisimo	*very high*

In the readings

1. loquacious, loquacity. 8. illusion, illusive, illusory. 11. notary, note. 13. lint. —从 **salsus** 经由法语产生出了 "sauce","saucer","saucy","sausage"."Gaul": divide, division.—institute.—differ, differential, differentiate. "The Good Life":

in ebriated.—solve, absolve, absolution, dissolve, resolve, solution, resolution, ablative absolute.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 下面是一些更常见的格言、短语、名言和词源知识，它们都是 **ex vocābulāriō huius capitis**（**vocābulārium** 是中世纪拉丁语，对应于 *vocabulary*，源于 **vocāre**，即“对事物的称呼”［单词］的列表）：**auctor ignōtus** 意为 *author unknown*，即“anonymous”；**cēna Dominī** 是 *Lord's Supper*；**dūra lēx sed lēx**, *a harsh law, but the law nevertheless*；**lēx nōn scrīpta**, *customary law*（与 **lēx scrīpta** 相对——其字面意思是什么？——你也可以猜出 **lēx locī** 的意思了）；然后是奥维德对孤独者的警告，**trīstis eris sī sōlus eris**；还有普劳图斯笔下的一个人物所希望的，**lēx eadem uxōrī et virō**；**ā mēnsā et torō**, *from table and bed*（**torus, -ī**）是夫妻分居法令，禁止夫妻继续住在一起。

如果知道名词 **lūx** 以及相关的动词 **lūceō, lūcēre**, *to shine brightly*，就能理解下面这些词或短语了：**lūx et vēritās** 是耶鲁大学的校训，**lūx et lēx** 是北卡罗莱纳大学教堂山分校的校训，pellucid 的解释是完全清晰的（**per + lūc-**），光可以透过 translucent 的材料，Lux 香皂将使你光彩照人！ **Lūcēte, discipulae discipulīque, et valēte!**

第二十七课

具有特殊形式和不规则形式的形容词比较等级

具有特殊形式最高级的形容词

有两组形容词具有特殊形式的最高级,除此之外都是规则的:

1. 有六个以**-lis** 结尾的形容词是通过给词根加上**-limus, -lima, -limum** 而构成最高级的。

原级	比较级	最高级
fácilis, -e (*easy*)	facílior, -ius (*easier*)	facíl-limus, -a, -um (*easiest*)
diffícilis, -e (*difficult*)	difficílior, -ius (*more difficult*)	difficíllimus, -a, -um (*most difficult*)
símilis, -e (*like*)	simílior, -ius (*more l.*)	simíllimus, -a, -um (*most l.*)

Dissimilis (*unlike, dissimilar*), **gracilis** (*slender, thin*)和 **humilis** (*low, humble*)也属于这种类型的形容词；所有其他以**-lis** 结尾的形容词都有规则的最高级形式(如 **fidēlissimus, ūtilissimus** 等等)。

2. 任何以**-er** 结尾的阳性形容词,无论属于何种变格法,都是通过在词尾**-er**(而不是词根)后面直接加上**-rimus** 而构成最高级的;请注意,**-er** 形容词的比较级一般是通过给词根加上**-ior, -ius** 构成的 (我们知道,**-e-**有时需保留,有时要去掉)。

原级	比较级	最高级
lī́ber, -bera, -berum (*free*)	lībérior, -ius (*freer*)	lībér-rimus, -a, -um (*freest*)
púlcher, -chra, -chrum (*beautiful*)	púlchrior, -ius (*more beautiful*)	pulchérrimus, -a, -um (*most beautiful*)

ā́cer, ā́cris, ā́cre (*keen*)	ā́crior, ā́crius (*keener*)	ācérrimus, -a, -um (*keenest*)

具有不规则比较等级的形容词

有少数几个形容词用到的机会很多,所以非常重要。它们的比较等级极不规则,只能死记硬背。不过,源于这些不规则形式的英语派生词可以极大地帮助我们记忆(参见本课的词源点滴)。以下是其中最常用的几个形容词。[1]

原级	比较级	最高级
bónus, -a, -um (*good*)	mélior, -ius (*better*)	óptimus, -a, -um (*best*)
mágnus, -a, -um (*great*)	máior, -ius (*greater*)	máximus, -a, -um (*greatest*)
málus, -a, -um (*bad*)	péior, -ius (*worse*)	péssimus, -a, -um (*worst*)
múltus, -a, -um (*much*)	——, plūs (*more*)	plū́rimus, -a, -um (*most*)
párvus, -a, -um (*small*)	mínor, mínus (*smaller*)	mínimus, -a, -um (*smallest*)
(prae, prō)[2] (*in front of, before*)	príor, -íus (*former*)	prī́mus, -a, -um (*first*)
súperus, -a, -um (*that above*)	supérior, -ius (*higher*)	súmmus, -a, -um (*highest, furthest*) suprḗmus, -a, -um (*highest, last*)

Plūs 的变格

在各种不规则形式中,只有 **plūs** 有变格方面的问题。复数形式的 **plūs** 起形容词的作用(如 **plūrēs amīcī**),但却有着 **i-**词干和辅音词干的混合形式(复数属格以**-ium** 结尾,中性主格和宾格却以**-a** 而不是**-ia** 结尾);单数形式的 **plūs** 并不起形容词的作用,而是起中性名词的作用,它后面经常跟一个整体属格(如 **plūs pecūniae**, *more money*,字面意思是 *more of money*——参见第十五课)。

[1] 对于本书来说重要性稍逊的几个形容词是:

exterus, -a, -um (*foreign*), **exterior, -ius** (*outer*), **extrēmus, -a, -um** (*outermost*)

īnferus, -a, -um (*below*), **īnferior, -ius** (*lower*), **īnfimus, -a, -um** (*lowest*)

(**prope**, *near*), **propior, -ius** (*nearer*), **proximus, -a, -um** (*nearest*)

[2] **Prior** 和 **prīmus** 并没有相应的形容词原级,因为根据"priority"和"primacy"的定义,这些词都蕴含着与一个或多个人或事物进行比较;不过,介词 **prae** 和 **prō** 是相关的。

	单数		复数	
	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性
Nom.	——	plūs	plū́rēs	plū́ra
Gen.	——	plū́ris	plū́rium	plū́rium
Dat.	——	——	plū́ribus	plū́ribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plū́rēs	plū́ra
Abl.	——	plū́re	plū́ribus	plū́ribus

词汇表

dēlectā́tiō, dēlectātiṓnis, f., *delight, pleasure, enjoyment* (delectation, delectable, delicious, dilettante; cp. **dēlectō, dēlicia,** *delight*)
népōs, nepṓtis, m., *grandson, descendant* (nephew, nepotism, niece)
sōl, sṓlis, m., *sun* (solar, solarium, solstice, parasol)
dī́ligēns, gen. **dīligéntis,** *diligent, careful* (diligence, diligently)
dissímilis, dissímile, *unlike, different* (dissimilar, dissimilarity, dissemble)
grácilis, grácile, *slender, thin* (gracile)
húmilis, húmile, *lowly, humble* (humility, humiliate, humiliation; cp. **humus**, Ch. 37)
máior, máius, comp. adj., *greater; older;* **maiṓrēs, maiṓrum,** m. pl., *ancestors* (i.e., *the older ones;* major, majority, etc.—see Etymology below).
prī́mus, -a, -um, *first, foremost, chief, principal* (primary, primate, prime, primeval, primer, premier, primitive, prim, primo-geniture, prima facie, primordial, primrose)
quot, indecl. adj., *how many, as many as* (quota, quotation, quote, quotient)
símilis, símile, + gen. or dat., *similar (to), like, resembling* (similarly, simile, assimilate, dissimilar, dissimilarity, simulate, dissimulate, verisimilitude, assemble, resemble, simultaneous; cp. same)
súperus, -a, -um, *above, upper*; **súperī, -ṓrum,** m. pl., *the gods* (superior, etc.; cp. **superō** and see Etymology below)
ū́tilis, ū́tile, *useful, advantageous* (what Latin is to YOU!—utility, from **ūtilitās, -tātis;** utilitarian, utilization, utilize; cp. **ūtor,** Ch. 34)
All the irregular adjectival forms given above in this lesson.
pṓnō, pṓnere, pósuī, pósitum, *to put, place, set* (See Etymology at end of chapter.)
próbō (1), *to approve, recommend; test* (probe, probate, probation, probative, probable, probably, probability, approbation, proof, prove, approve, approval, disprove, improve, reprove, reprobate; cp. **probitās**)

练习与复习

1. Quisque cupit quam pulcherrima atque ūtilissima dōna dare.
2. Quīdam turpēs habent plūrima sed etiam plūra petunt.
3. Ille ōrātor, ab tyrannō superbissimō expulsus, ducem iūcundiōrem

et lēgēs aequiōrēs dehinc quaesīvit.
4. Summum imperium optimīs virīs semper petendum est.
5. Senex nepōtibus trīstibus casam patefēcit et eōs trāns līmen invītāvit.
6. Ostendit hostēs ultimum signum lūce clārissimā illā nocte dedisse.
7. Iste tyrannus pessimus negāvit sē virōs līberōs umquam oppressisse.
8. Fidēlissimus servus plūs cēnae ad mēnsam accipiēbat quam trēs peiōrēs.
9. Āiunt hunc auctōrem vītam humillimam hīc agere.
10. Cūr dī superī oculōs ā rēbus hūmānīs eō tempore āvertērunt?
11. Habēsne pecūniam et rēs tuās prae rē pūblicā?
12. Sōlem post paucās nūbēs gracillimās in caelō hodiē vidēre possumus.
13. Some believe that very large cities are worse than very small ones.
14. In return for the three rather small gifts, the young man gave even more and prettier ones to his very sad mother.
15. Those very large mountains were higher than these.

古代名言

1. Trahit mē nova vīs: videō meliōra probōque, sed peiōra tantum faciō et nesciō cūr. (Ovid.)
2. Quaedam carmina sunt bona; plūra sunt mala. (Martial.)
3. Optimum est. Nihil melius, nihil pulchrius hōc vīdī. (Terence.)
4. Spērō tē et hunc nātālem et plūrimōs aliōs quam fēlīcissimōs āctūrum esse. (Pliny.—**nātālis [diēs]**, *birthday.*)
5. Quoniam cōnsilium et ratiō sunt in senibus, maiōrēs nostrī summum concilium appellāvērunt senātum. (Cicero.—**concilium, -iī,** *council.*)
6. Plūs operae studiīque in rēbus domesticīs nōbīs nunc pōnendum est etiam quam in rēbus mīlitāribus. (Cicero.—**opera, -ae,** *work, effort.*—**domesticus, -a, -um.**—**mīlitāris, -e.**)
7. Neque enim perīculum in rē pūblicā fuit gravius umquam neque ōtium maius. (Cicero.)
8. Sumus sapientiōrēs illīs, quod nōs nātūram esse optimam ducem scīmus. (Cicero.—**optimam,** f. by attraction to the gender of **nātūram.**)
9. Nātūra minimum petit; nātūrae autem sē sapiēns accommodat. (*Seneca.—**accommodāre,** *to adapt.*)
10. Maximum remedium īrae mora est. (*Seneca.)
11. Quī animum vincit et īram continet, eum cum summīs virīs nōn comparō sed eum esse simillimum deō dīcō. (Cicero.—**comparāre,** *to compare.*)
12. Dionȳsius, tyrannus urbis pulcherrimae, erat vir summae in vīctū temperantiae et in omnibus rēbus dīligentissimus et ācerrimus. Īdem tamen erat ferōx ac iniūstus. Quā ex rē, sī vērum dīcimus, vidēbātur miserrimus. (Cicero.—Dionysius, ruler of Syracuse in the 4th cen. B.C.—**vīctus, -ūs,** *mode of life.*—**temperantia, -ae.**—**in-iūstus, -a,**

-um, *unjust.*—**Quā ex rē = Ex illā rē.**)

13. Nisi superōs vertere possum, Acheronta movēbō. (Virgil.—**Acheronta,** Gk. acc., *Acheron,* a river in the underworld, here by metonymy *the land of the dead.*)

ALLEY CAT

Caelī, Lesbia nostra, Lesbia illa,
illa Lesbia, quam Catullus ūnam
plūs quam sē atque suōs amāvit omnēs,
nunc in quadriviīs et angiportīs
5 glūbit magnanimī Remī nepōtēs.

(*Catullus 58; meter: hendecasyllabic.—Caelius, a rival of Catullus for Lesbia's favors.—**quadrivium, -iī,** *crossroads.*—**angiportum, -ī,** *alley.*—**glūbō, -ere,** *to peel (back), strip (off)*; used of stripping the bark off trees or the skin off an animal, here in an obscene sense.—**Remus,** brother of Romulus, legendary founders of Rome.)

THANKS A LOT, TULLY!

Dīsertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,
quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,
quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,
grātiās tibi maximās Catullus
5 agit, pessimus omnium poēta,
tantō pessimus omnium poēta
quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus.

debated by scholars.—**dīsertus, -a, -um,** *eloquent, learned.*—**fuēre = fuērunt**, see p. 77.—**post = posteā.**—**tantō . . . quantō,** *just as much . . . as.*—**tū,** sc. **es.**)

AN UNCLE'S LOVE FOR HIS NEPHEW AND ADOPTED SON

Adulēscēns est cārior mihi quam ego ipse! Atque hic nōn est fīlius meus sed ex frātre meō. Studia frātris iam diū sunt dissimillima meīs. Ego vītam urbānam ēgī et ōtium petīvī et, id quod quīdam fortūnātius putant, uxōrem numquam habuī. Ille, autem, haec omnia fēcit: nōn in forō sed in agrīs vītam ēgit, parvum pecūniae accēpit, uxōrem pudīcam dūxit, duōs fīliōs habuit. Ex illō ego hunc maiōrem adoptāvī mihi, ēdūxī ā parvō puerō, amāvī prō meō. In eō adulēscente est dēlectātiō mea; sōlum id est cārum mihi.

(Terence, *Adelphoe* 39–49.—**dūxit,** *he married.*—**adoptāre.**—**ēdūxī,** *I raised.*)

词源点滴

拉丁语形容词的不规则比较等级往往可以通过英语派生词来记忆：

bonus
melior: ameliorate
optimus: optimist, optimum, optimal
magnus
maior: major, majority, mayor
maximus: maximum
malus
peior: pejorative
pessimus: pessimist
multus
plūs: plus, plural, plurality, nonplus
parvus
minor: minor, minority, minus, minute, minuet, minister, minstrel
minimus: minimum, minimize
(prō)
prior: prior, priority
prīmus: prime, primacy, primary, primeval, primitive
superus
superior: superior, superiority
summus: summit, sum, consummate
suprēmus: supreme, supremacy

拉丁词**plūs** 是法语词 **plus** 和意大利语词 **più** 的母词,在这些罗曼语中,它们被置于形容词之前以构成比较级。如果给这些比较级加上定冠词,它就变成了最高级。

拉丁语	法语	意大利语
longior	plus long	più lungo
longissimus	le plus long	il più lungo
cārior	plus cher	più caro
cārissimus	le plus cher	il più caro

由 **pōnō** 产生出了大量派生词:apposite, apposition, component, composite, compost, compound, deponent, deposit, deposition, depot, exponent, exposition, expound, imposition, impost, impostor, juxtaposition, opponent, opposite, positive, post, postpone, preposition, proposition, propound, repository, supposition, transposition。

不过应当注意,"pose"及其复合词并非像我们想象的那样源于 **pōnō**,而是源于晚期拉丁词**pausāre**,后者又源自希腊词 **pausis**, *a pause* 和 **pauein**, *to stop*。在法语中,这个 **pausāre**变成了 **poser**,它在复合词中取代了 **pōnō**。因此,尽管看上去很像,但前面在 **pōnō** 之下给出的那些形式与下列单词并无词源上的关联:compose, depose, expose, impose, oppose, propose, repose, suppose, transpose。

In the readings

4. natal, prenatal, postnatal, Natalie. 5. council (vs. **cōnsilium**, *counsel*), conciliate, conciliatory. 6. opera, operetta.—domesticate, etc.; cp. **domus**.— military, cp. **mīles**. 9. accommodate, accommodation. 11. comparative, incomparable. 12. victual, victualer, vittles.—temperance, intemperance.—injustice. "An Uncle's Love": adopt, adoption.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvē! Quid agis hodiē? Spīrasne? Spērāsne? Rīdēsne? Valēsne? Sī tū valēs, ego valeō! 这里还有一些 **rēs Latīnae**，以使你有一个 **mēns sāna**：首先，有一条古老的拉丁语格言说，**sapiēns nihil affīrmat quod nōn probat**；类似的还有贺拉斯的一句话(*Epistulae* 1.1.106)，**sapiēns ūnō minor est Iove**；以及耶稣会的座右铭，**ad maiōrem glōriam Deī**。现在，**quid est tempestās? Pluitne? Estne frīgida? Nimbōsa?** 如果你记得以下谚语，就没有关系：**sōl lūcet omnibus!**（还记得上一课中的 **lūcēre** 吗？）长有羽毛的鸟聚集在一起，根据另一条古老的拉丁语谚语，**similis in similī gaudet**。

下面是一些你刚刚学过的不规则比较级和最高级：**meliōrēs priōrēs**，意译为 *the better have priority*；**maximā cum laude** 和 **summā cum laude**（它将写在你的下一张证书上，**sī es dīligēns in studiō Latīnae!**）；**peior bellō est timor ipse bellī**（注意比较夺格）；**ē plūribus ūnum**，*one from several*，这是美国的国家箴言，即"合众为一"；**prīmus inter parēs**, *first among equals*; **prīmā faciē**, *at first sight*；最后是 **summum bonum**, *the highest good*，它当然可以通过学习拉丁语而获得：**valē!**

第二十八课

虚拟式；现在时虚拟式；祈愿句和目的从句

虚拟式

由第一课我们得知，“语气，式”（mood，源于 **modus**）是表达某种动词动作或存在状态的“方式”。到目前为止，我们已经见过三种拉丁语语气中的两种，即直陈式和命令式。我们知道，命令式（imperative，源于 **imperāre**，*to command*）强调要求某人做某种还没有发生的动作，直陈式（indicative，源于 **indicāre**，*to point out*）则“指示”（indicate）实际的动作，即在过去实际已经发生（或确定没有发生）的动作，现在正在发生（或确定没有发生）的动作，或将来确定要发生（或不会发生）的动作。

与表示实际性和事实性的直陈式相反，虚拟式一般（但不是全部）表示可能性的、尝试性的、假说性的、理想中的或不真实的活动。比如英语中的例子：“If the other student were here, he would be taking notes”；在这一条件句中，所想象的活动与实际情况相反，英语用助动词 “were”和“would”来表示所描述的动作只是理想情况。英语中用来表示可能性或假说性的动作的助动词还有：“may”，“might”，“should”，“would”，“may have”，“would have”等等。

拉丁语中虚拟式的使用要远远多于英语，特别是在各种从句中。它使用的是动词特殊的虚拟形式，而不是助动词。掌握虚拟式涉及两项任务：首先要学习新的形式，这个任务相对简单一些；其次是学习辨识和翻译各种类型的虚拟从句，如果方法比较系统，这也很容易做到。

虚拟式的时态

虚拟式只有四种时态。本课介绍现在时虚拟式，每一种变位法的构词规则

略有不同；而未完成时虚拟式（第二十九课）、完成时虚拟式、过去完成时虚拟式（第三十课）的构词规则对于四种变位法甚至不规则动词都是一样的。

虚拟句

在本课以及接下来的几课中，我们将介绍一系列虚拟句：祈愿句和目的从句（第二十八课），结果从句（第二十九课），间接问句（第三十课），**cum** 从句（第三十一课），附带条件从句（第三十二课），条件从句（第三十三课，三种不同的虚拟类型），间接命令句（第三十六课），特征关系从句（第三十八课），疑虑从句（第四十课）。你应当在笔记本或电脑中为这些句式编目，每种类型都要系统地了解三个方面的内容：(1)定义，(2)如何在拉丁语句子中进行辨识，(3)如何翻译成英语。

现在时虚拟式的变位

1. laúdem	móneam	ágam	aúdiam	cápiam
2. laúdēs	móneās	ágās	aúdiās	cápiās
3. laúdet	móneat	ágat	aúdiat	cápiat
1. laudḗmus	moneā́mus	agā́mus	audiā́mus	capiā́mus
2. laudḗtis	moneā́tis	agā́tis	audiā́tis	capiā́tis
3. laúdent	móneant	ágant	aúdiant	cápiant

注意在第一变位法中，特征词干元音由现在时直陈式的**–ā–**变成了现在时虚拟式的**–ē–**。在其他变位法中，**–ā–**总是现在时虚拟式的标记，只是要对实际的词干元音做一些变动（第二变位法中的词干元音要变短，第三变位法中要被替换，第四/第三**–iō** 变位法中要变成短音**–i–**）；对于第一、第二、第三、第四/第三**–iō** 变位法来说，用“**we fear a liar**”这个句子可以帮助我们记住，人称词尾之前实际的元音分别是**–ē–, –eā–, –ā–**和**–iā–**。

如果弄不清动词的变位法（例如 **agat** 和 **amat**，**amet** 和 **monet**），就可能将虚拟式误当成直陈式，所以词汇一定要记牢。

现在时虚拟式被动态的形式当然与主动态相同，只不过使用的是被动词尾。

laúder, laudḗris (and remember the alternate **-re** ending, Ch. 18), laudḗtur; laudḗmur, laudḗminī, laudéntur
mónear, moneā́ris, moneā́tur; moneā́mur, moneā́minī, moneántur
ágar, agā́ris, agā́tur; agā́mur, agā́minī, agántur
aúdiar, audiā́ris, audiā́tur; audiā́mur, audiā́minī, audiántur
cápiar, capiā́ris, capiā́tur; capiā́mur, capiā́minī, capiántur

翻译

虽然有时可以用 *may* 来翻译现在时虚拟式（比如在目的从句中），但事实

上，对虚拟式时态的翻译因虚拟句的类型而异。我们在介绍具体类型的虚拟句时就会明白。

祈愿虚拟式

正如“虚拟式”（subjunctive，源于 **subiungere,** *to subjoin, subordinate*）一词所暗示的，虚拟式主要用在从句中。然而，虚拟式也可以用在某些独立句或主句中。“祈愿”[1]（jussive，源于 **iubēre,** *to order*）虚拟式就是最重要的虚拟独立句之一，而且也是本书中唯一正式介绍的类型。祈愿句表达一种口气较弱的命令或劝诫，特别是第一或第三人称的单数或复数（命令式一般用于第二人称）；**nē** 用来指否定性的命令。这类句子很容易辨识，因为句子的主要动词（通常也是唯一的动词）是虚拟式；虽然有时可以用 *may* 和 *should* 来翻译祈愿虚拟式（特别是对于第二人称：**semper spērēs,** *you should always hope*），但最常见的却是用 *let* 加（宾格的）主语名词或代词（即 *me, us, him, her, it, them*）。

Cōgitem nunc dē hāc rē, et tum nōn errābō, *let me now think about this matter, and then I will not make a mistake.*

Discipulus discat aut discēdat, *let the student either learn or leave.*

Doceāmus magnā cum dēlectātiōne linguam Latīnam, *let us teach the Latin language with great delight.*

Nē id faciāmus, *let us not do this.*

Audeant illī virī et fēminae esse fortēs, *let those men and women dare to be brave.*

目的从句

目的从句表达的是主句动作的目的或目标；例如，“we study Latin *so that we may learn more about ancient Rome*”，或者“we study Latin *to improve our English*”。由第二个例句可见，英语经常用不定式来表达目的，但这种不定式用法在拉丁语散文中并不常见（虽然在韵文中并非罕见）。拉丁语往往用由 **ut** 引出的虚拟从句来表示目的，或者用由 **nē** 引出的从句来表示否定性的目的；现在时目的从句通常用助动词 *may* 来翻译，但是如果目的从句的主语和主句主语一致，那么往往用不定式来翻译它。考察下面的拉丁语句子和几种可以接受的翻译：

Hoc dīcit **ut** eōs **iuvet**.

He *says this to help them.*

in order to help them.

[1] 亦称“希求式”或“弱祈使式”。——译者注

that he may help them.
so that he may help them.
in order that he may help them.

前两种翻译更为口语化,其余三种则更加正式。

Discēdit **nē** id **audiat**.
He leaves in order not to hear this.
so that he may not hear this.
Cum cūrā docet **ut** discipulī bene **discant**.
He teaches with care so (that) his students may learn well.
Hoc facit **nē capiātur**.
He does this in order not to be captured.
Librōs legimus **ut** multa **discāmus**.
We read books (in order) to learn many things.
Bonōs librōs nōbīs dent **nē** malōs **legāmus**.
Let them give us good books so that we may not read bad ones.

辨识目的从句并不困难,只需找到由 **ut** 或**nē** 引出的从句就可以了。从句的末尾是一个虚拟式动词,回答关于"为什么"或"为了什么目的"的问题。

词汇表

árma, -ṓrum, n. pl., *arms, weapons* (armor, army, armament, armada, armature, armistice, armadillo, alarm, disarmament, gendarme)
cúrsus, -ūs, m., *running, race; course* (courser, cursor, cursory, cursive, concourse, discourse, recourse, precursor, excursion; cp. **currō**)
lū́na, -ae, f., *moon* (lunar, lunacy, lunate, lunatic, lunation, interlunar)
occā́siō, occāsiṓnis, f., *occasion, opportunity* (occasional; cp. **occidō**, Ch. 31)
párēns, paréntis, m./f., *parent* (parentage, parental, parenting; cp. **pariō, parere,** to give birth to)
stḗlla, -ae, f., *star, planet* (stellar, constellation, interstellar)
vésper, vésperis or **vésperī,** m., *evening; evening star* (vesper, vesperal, vespertine)
mórtuus, -a, -um, *dead* (mortuary; cp. **mors, mortālis, immortālis,** and, Ch. 34, **morior**)
prī́nceps, gen. **prī́ncipis,** *chief, foremost;* m./f. noun, *leader, emperor* (prince, principal, principality; cp. **prīmus, prīncipium**)
ut, conj. + subj., *in order that, so that, that, in order to, so as to, to;* + indic., *as, when*
nē, adv. and conj. with subjunctives of command and purpose, *not; in order that . . . not, that . . . not, in order not to*

cḗdō, cḗdere, céssī, céssum, *to go, withdraw; yield to, grant, submit* (accede, access, accession, antecedent, ancestor, cede, concede, deceased, exceed, intercede, precede, proceed, recede, secede, succeed; cp. **discēdō**)
dḗdicō (1), *to dedicate* (dedication, dedicatory, rededication)
égeō, egḗre, éguī + abl. or gen., *to need, lack, want* (indigence, indigent; do not confuse with **ēgī,** from **agō**)
éxpleō, -plḗre, -plḗvī, -plḗtum, *to fill, fill up, complete* (expletive, expletory, deplete, replete; cp. **plēnus, pleō,** *to fill*)
praéstō, -stā́re, -stitī, -stitum, *to excel; exhibit, show, offer, supply, furnish*
táceō, tacḗre, tácuī, tácitum, *to be silent, leave unmentioned* (tacit, taciturn, taciturnity, reticence, reticent)

练习与复习

1. Auctor sapiēns et dīligēns turpia vītet et bona probet.
2. Itaque prō patriā etiam maiōra meliōraque nunc faciāmus.
3. Nepōs tuus ā mēnsā discēdat nē ista verba acerba audiat.
4. Nē imperātor superbus crēdat sē esse fēlīciōrem quam virum humillimum.
5. Quisque petit quam fēlīcissimum et urbānissimum modum vītae.
6. Quīdam dēlectātiōnēs et beneficia aliīs praestant ut beneficia similia recipiant.
7. Multī medicī lūcem sōlis fuisse prīmum remedium putant.
8. Imperium ducī potentiōrī dabunt ut hostēs ācerrimōs āvertat.
9. Hīs verbīs trīstibus nūntiātīs, pars hostium duōs prīncipēs suōs relīquit.
10. Maiōrēs putābant deōs superōs habēre corpora hūmāna pulcherrima et fortissima.
11. Uxor pudīca eius haec decem ūtilissima tum probāvit.
12. Let him not think that those dissimilar laws are worse than the others (translate with and without **quam**).
13. They will send only twenty men to do this very easy thing in the forum.
14. They said: "Let us call the arrogant emperor a most illustrious man in order not to be expelled from the country."
15. Therefore, let them not order this very wise and very good woman to depart from the dinner.

古代名言

1. Ratiō dūcat, nōn fortūna. (*Livy.)
2. Arma togae cēdant. (Cicero.—**toga, -ae,** the garment of peace and civil, in contrast to military, activity.)
3. Ex urbe nunc discēde nē metū et armīs opprimar. (Cicero.)
4. Nunc ūna rēs mihi prōtinus est facienda ut maximum ōtium et sōlā-

cium habeam. (Terence.)
5. Rapiāmus, amīcī, occāsiōnem dē diē. (*Horace.)
6. Corpus enim somnō et multīs aliīs rēbus eget ut valeat; animus ipse sē alit. (Seneca.)
7. Quī beneficium dedit, taceat; nārret quī accēpit. (*Seneca.)
8. Dē mortuīs nihil nisi bonum dīcāmus. (Diogenes Laertius.)
9. Parēns ipse nec habeat vitia nec toleret. (Quintilian.)
10. In hāc rē ratiō habenda est ut monitiō acerbitāte careat. (Cicero.—**monitiō, -ōnis,** *admonition.*—**acerbitās, -tātis,** noun of **acerbus.**)
11. Fēminae ad lūdōs semper veniunt ut videant—et ut ipsae videantur. (Ovid.)
12. Arma virumque canō quī prīmus ā lītoribus Trōiae ad Italiam vēnit. (Virgil.—**canō, -ere,** *to sing about.*)

PLEASE REMOVE MY NAME FROM YOUR MAILING LIST!

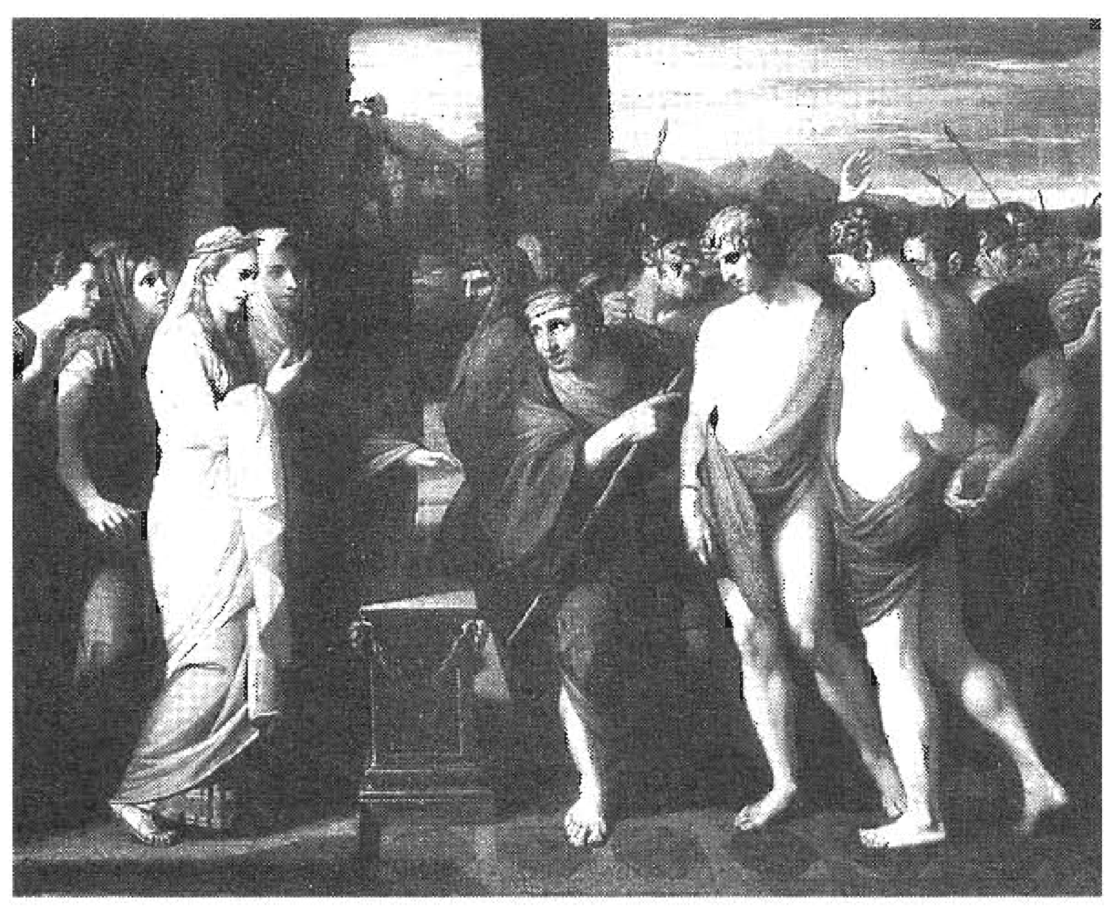
Cūr nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs.

(*Martial 7.3; meter: elegiac couplet. Roman poets, just like American writers, would often exchange copies of their works with one another; but Pontilianus' poems are not Martial's cup of tea!—**mitto:** final **-ō** was often shortened in Latin verse.—**Pontiliānus, -ī.**—**Nē . . . mittās,** not jussive, but purpose, following the implied statement, "I don't send mine to you. . . .")

TO HAVE FRIENDS ONE MUST BE FRIENDLY

Ut praestem Pyladēn, aliquis mihi praestet Orestēn.
Hoc nōn fit verbīs, Mārce; ut amēris, amā.

(*Martial 6.11.9–10; meter: elegiac couplet. Orestes and Pylades were a classic pair of very devoted friends; Martial cannot play the role of Pylades unless someone proves a real Orestes to him.—**Pyladēn** and **Orestēn** are Greek acc. sg. forms.—**fit,** *is accomplished.*)



Brought as Victims before Iphigenia
Tate Gallery, London, Great Britain

THE DAYS OF THE WEEK

Diēs dictī sunt ā deīs quōrum nōmina Rōmānī quibusdam stēllīs dēdicāvērunt. Primum enim diem ā Sōle appellāvērunt, quī prīnceps est omnium stēllārum ut īdem diēs est prae omnibus diēbus aliīs. Secundum diem ā Lūnā appellāvērunt, quae ex Sōle lūcem accēpit. Tertium ab stēllā Mārtis, quae vesper appellātur. Quārtum ab stēllā Mercuriī. Quīntum ab stēllā Iovis. Sextum ā Veneris stēllā, quam Lūciferum appellāvērunt, quae inter omnēs stēllās plūrimum lūcis habet. Septimum ab stēllā Sāturnī, quae dīcitur cursum suum trīgintā annīs explēre. Apud Hebraeōs autem diēs prīmus dīcitur ūnus diēs sabbatī, quī in linguā nostrā diēs dominicus est, quem pāgānī Sōlī dēdicāvērunt. Sabbatum autem septimus diēs ā dominicō est, quem pāgānī Sāturnō dēdicāvērunt.

(Isidore of Seville, *Orīginēs* 5.30, 7th cen.—**Mārs, Mārtis.**—**Mercurius, -ī.**—**Iuppiter, Iovis.**—**Venus, Veneris.**—**Lūciferus, -ī,** *Lucifer, light-bringer.*—**Sāturnus, -ī.**—**trīgintā,** *30.*—**Hebraeus, -ī,** *Hebrew.*—**sabbatum, -ī,** *the Sabbath;* **ūnus diēs sabbatī,** i.e., *the first day after the Sabbath.*—**dominicus, -a, -um,** *of the Lord, the Lord's.*—**pāgānus, -ī,** *rustic, peasant;* here, *pagan.*)

词源点滴

"Alarm"源于意大利语 **all'arme** (*to arms*),表示 **ad illa arma**。

下面这些词源于 **cēdō** 的一种加强形式 **cessō**:cease, cessation, incessant。

在拉丁语中，除第一变位法之外，所有变位法动词的现在时虚拟式中总有**-ā-**出现；在意大利语和西班牙语中,**-ā-**也出现在除第一变位法之外的所有变位法动词的现在时虚拟式中。西班牙语甚至在第一变位法动词的现在时虚拟式中还保留了拉丁语的特征元音**-ē-**。

In the readings

"Days of the Week": martial.—mercury, mercurial.—Jovian, by Jove! jovial.—Venusian, venereal, venery.—lucifer, luciferase, luciferin, luciferous.—Saturnian, Saturday, saturnine.—Dominic, Dominica, Dominican, dominical; cp. **dominus/domina.**—paganism, paganize.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 下面是一些来自本课新词汇的短语：老师和监护人可以充当 **in locō parentis; mortuī nōn mordent,**"死人不会告密"(直译为 *the dead don't bite!*);**occāsiō fūrem facit,** *opportunity makes a thief*;了解"水门事件"的人能够看出 "expletives deleted"[1] 的词源;**ēditiō prīnceps** 是指 *first edition;* **tacet** 是一种

[1] 指从书面文件中删除的诅咒语，该短语是在"水门事件"期间宣读尼克松总统谈话的书面记录时而广为人知的。——译者注

音乐记号，表示让歌手或乐器演奏者不出声；与 **cursus** 相关的是 **curriculum,** *running, course, course of action*，于是简历呈现了你的 **curriculum vītae**；纽约大学（**fīliō meō grātiās!**）的校训是 **perstāre et praestāre,** *to persevere and to excel*。

现在我们来看祈愿式。首先，我希望我在怀俄明州的学生都把 **arma togae cēdant** 看成他们州的座右铭；另一条座右铭是维吉尔的 **nē cēde malīs,** *yield not to evils*，它是命令式而不是祈愿式，其中有新动词 **cēdere**；古代的军事分析家 Vegetius 曾经建议我们，**quī dēsīderat pācem, praeparet bellum**；我保证所有《星球大战》的影迷们都猜得出 **sit vīs tēcum** 是什么意思！

朋友们，在说再见之前，我还要再讲一句。虽然祈愿式常见于第一和第三人称，但它有时也用于第二人称，作为命令式的替代，这时用 *should* 或 *may* 来翻译；下面这句来自无名氏的谚语就是一个例子，它和前面的 Pylades 阅读材料说的是同一个意思：**ut amīcum habeās, sīs amīcus,** *in order to have a friend, you should be a friend*。顺便说一句，我把第一人称复数的祈愿式称为"沙拉虚拟式"（还记得 VENI, VIDI, VEGI 吗？），因为它总是包含"let us"[1]。你又倒胃口了吧！现在俏皮话也该结束了。Lettuce juss[2] 说再见：**amīcī amīcaeque meae, semper valeātis!**

---

[1] let us 和 lettuce（莴苣、生菜）是谐音。——译者注

[2] 这里 lettuce 对应 let us；juss 影射本课讲的 jussive，对应 just。——译者注

第二十九课

未完成时虚拟式；
Sum 和 Possum 的现在时和未完成时虚拟式；
结果从句

未完成时虚拟式

在虚拟式的所有时态中，未完成时虚拟式也许是最容易掌握的。它实际上就是现在时主动态不定式+现在时系统的（主动态或被动态）人称词尾，而且是长音**–ē–**（当然，在词末的**–m, –r, –t, –nt** 以及词中的**–nt–**之前的情况除外）。下列词形变化表中给出了例词的某些形式；完整的变位表参见附录 p.445—446。

1. laudā́re-m	laudā́re-r	ágerer	audī́rem	cáperem
2. laudā́rē-s	laudārḗ-ris	agerḗris	audī́rēs	cáperēs
3. laudā́re-t	laudārḗ-tur	agerḗtur	audī́ret	cáperet
1. laudārḗ-mus	laudārḗ-mur	agerḗmur	audīrḗmus	caperḗmus
2. laudārḗ-tis	laudārḗ-minī	agerḗminī	audīrḗtis	caperḗtis
3. laudā́re-nt	laudāré-ntur	ageréntur	audī́rent	cáperent

Sum 和 Possum 的现在时和未完成时虚拟式

Sum 和 **possum** 的现在时虚拟式是不规则的（虽然其变化模式是一致的），必须死记。然而，其未完成时虚拟式却遵循着上面给出的规则：

现在时虚拟式		未完成时虚拟式	
1. sim	póssim	éssem	póssem
2. sīs	póssīs	éssēs	póssēs
3. sit	póssit	ésset	pósset
1. sī́mus	possī́mus	essḗmus	possḗmus
2. sī́tis	possī́tis	essḗtis	possḗtis
3. sint	póssint	éssent	póssent

应当特别注意区分 **possum** 的现在时虚拟式和未完成时虚拟式。

未完成时虚拟式的用法和翻译

未完成时虚拟式可以用于主要动词是过去时的各种类型的从句，包括目的从句和结果从句。所有虚拟式都要根据从句的类型来翻译，但未完成时虚拟式有时会用一些助动词来翻译，比如 *were, would* 以及在目的从句中使用的 *might*（与现在时虚拟式使用的 *may* 比较）。考察下列含目的从句的例句：

Hoc dīcit **ut** eōs **iuvet**.
He says this (in order) to help them.
*so that he **may** help them.*

Hoc dīxit (dīcēbat) **ut** eōs **iuvāret**.
He said (kept saying) this (in order) to help them.
*so that he **might** help them.*

Hoc facit **nē** urbs **capiātur**.
*He does this so that the city **may** not be captured.*

Hoc fēcit (faciēbat) **nē** urbs **caperētur**.
*He did (was doing) this so that the city **might** not be captured.*

要想掌握虚拟式（注意到目的从句了吗?！），别忘了：(1)了解每种从句类型的定义，(2)懂得如何辨识，(3)知道每种类型应当如何翻译虚拟式动词。在接下来对结果从句的讨论以及后续课程中，切记定义、辨识、翻译这三个方面。

结果从句

结果从句表明主句动作的结果。目的从句回答"为什么要做"的问题，结果从句则回答"结果是什么"的问题。英语中结果从句的例子有："it is raining so hard *that the streets are flooding*"，"she studied Latin so diligently *that she knew it like a Roman*"。请注意，英语用"that"引导这样的从句，而且用直陈式，一般没有助动词（即没有 *may* 或 *might*）。

拉丁语中的结果从句以 **ut** 开头，含有一个虚拟式动词（通常在句尾）。结果从句辨识起来并不困难，也很容易与目的从句区分开来。这不仅是因为语义和语境有助于我们进行判别，而且也因为结果从句的主句通常包含一个表示程度的副词（**ita, tam, sīc,** *so*）或形容词（**tantus,** *so much, so great*），示意下面将会引出一个结果从句。此外，如果从句描述一个否定性的结果，那么它将包含 **nōn, nihil, nēmō, numquam, nūllus** 等否定词（而否定性的目的从句则以 **nē** 引导）。

认真分析下面的例句，注意在结果从句中（与目的从句比较），虚拟式动词一般按照直陈式来翻译，不带助动词（*may* 或 *might* 仅在描述可能的或理想的结果而非实际结果时才使用）。

Tanta fēcit **ut** urbem **servāret,** *he did* ***such great*** *things* ***that*** *he* ***saved*** *the city.*（结果从句）

Haec fēcit **ut** urbem **servāret,** *he did these things* ***that*** *he* ***might save*** *the city.*（目的从句）

Tam strēnuē labōrat **ut** multa **perficiat,** *he works* ***so*** *energetically* ***that*** *he* ***accomplishes*** *many things.*（结果从句）

Strēnuē labōrat **ut** multa **perficiat,** *he works energetically* ***so that*** *he* ***may accomplish*** *many things.*（目的从句）

Hoc **tantā** benevolentiā dīxit **ut** eōs **nōn offenderet,** *he said this with* ***such great*** *kindness* ***that*** *he* ***did not offend*** *them.*（结果从句）

Hoc magnā benevolentiā dīxit **nē** eōs **offenderet,** *he said this with great kindness* ***in order that*** *he* ***might not offend*** *them.*（目的从句）

Saltus erat angustus, **ut** paucī Graecī multōs mīlitēs prohibēre **possent,** *the pass was narrow,* ***so that*** *a few Greeks* ***were able*** *to stop many soldiers.*（结果从句）

我们注意到，最后这句话的主句并不包含像 **ita** 或 **tam** 这样的“信号词”，但是从语境可以看得很清楚，**ut** 从句表示道路狭窄的结果（修建道路显然不是为了阻挡波斯人，只是它过于狭窄，以致波斯人实际上被阻挡了）。

词汇表

fā́tum, -ī, n., *fate; death* (fatal, fatalism, fatality, fateful, fairy; cp. **fābula, fāma,** and **for,** Ch. 40)

ingénium, -iī, n., *nature, innate talent* (ingenuity, genius, genial, congenial; cp. **genus, gens, gignō,** *to create, give birth to*)

moénia, moénium, n. pl., *walls of a city* (munitions, ammunition; cp. **mūniō,** *to fortify*)

nā́ta, -ae, f., *daughter* (prenatal, postnatal, Natalie; cp. **nātūra, nātālis,** *of birth, natal,* **nāscor,** Ch. 34)

ṓsculum, -ī, n., *kiss* (osculate, osculation, osculant, oscular, osculatory)

sī́dus, sī́deris, n., *constellation, star* (sidereal, consider, desire)

dígnus, -a, -um + abl., *worthy, worthy of* (dignify, dignity from **dignitās,** Ch. 38, indignation from **indignātiō,** deign, disdain, dainty)

dū́rus, -a, -um, *hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, difficult* (dour, durable, duration, during, duress, endure, obdurate)

tántus, -a, -um, *so large, so great, of such a size* (tantamount)

dénique, adv., *at last, finally, lastly*

íta, adv. used with adjs., vbs., and advs., *so, thus*
quídem, postpositive adv., *indeed, certainly, at least, even;* **nē . . . quídem,** *not . . . even*
sīc, adv. most commonly with verbs, *so, thus* (sic)
tam, adv. with adjs. and advs., *so, to such a degree;* **tam . . . quam,** *so . . . as;* **tamquam,** *as it were, as if, so to speak*
vḗrō, adv., *in truth, indeed, to be sure, however* (very, verily, etc.; cp. **vērus, vēritās**)
cóndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *to put together* or *into, store; found, establish* (= **con-** + **dō, dare;** condiment, abscond, recondite, sconce)
conténdō, -téndere, -téndī, -téntum, *to strive, struggle, contend; hasten* (contender, contentious; cp. **tendō,** *to stretch, extend*)
mólliō, mollī́re, mollī́vī, mollī́tum, *to soften; make calm* or *less hostile* (mollescent, mollify, mollusk, emollient; cp. **mollis,** *soft, mild*)
púgnō (1), *to fight* (pugnacious, impugn, pugilist, pugilism; cp. **oppugnō,** Ch. 39)
respóndeō, -spondḗre, -spóndī, -spṓnsum, *to answer* (respond, response, responsive, responsibility, correspond)
súrgō, súrgere, surrḗxī, surrḗctum, *to get up, arise* (surge, resurgent, resurrection, insurgent, insurrection, source, resource)

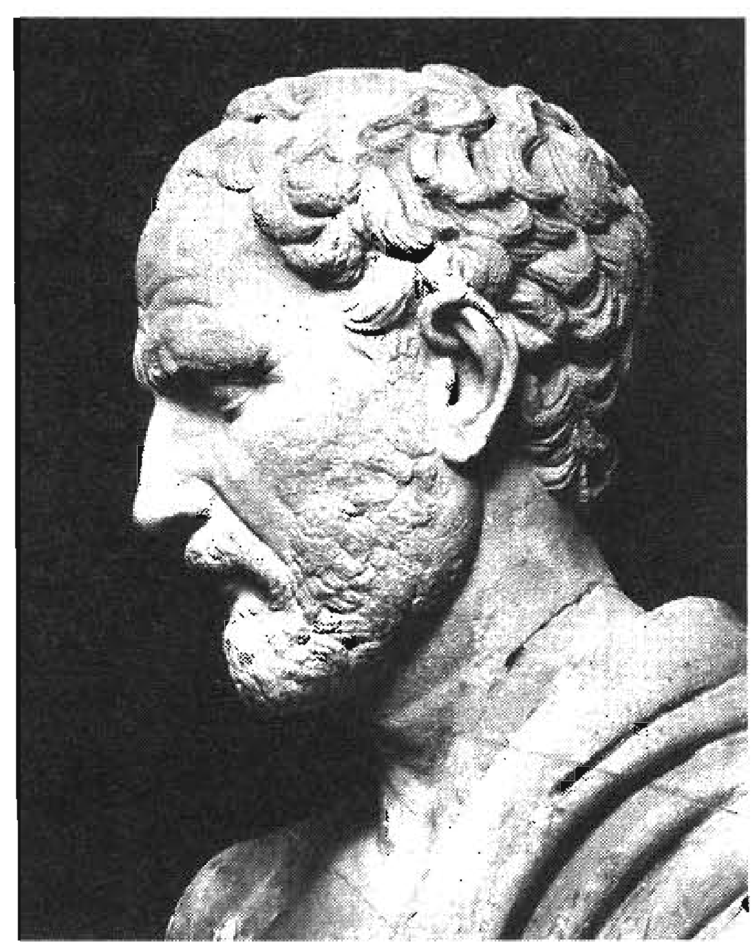
练习与复习

1. Prīnceps arma meliōra in manibus mīlitum posuit, ut hostēs terrērent.
2. Hostēs quidem negāvērunt sē arma dissimilia habēre.
3. Pars mīlitum lūcem diēī vītāvit nē hīc vidērentur.
4. Sōlem prīmam lūcem caelī superī, lūnam prīmam lūcem vesperī, et stēllās oculōs noctis appellābant.
5. Illī adulēscentēs sapientiae dēnique cēdant ut fēlīciōrēs hīs sint.
6. Sapientēs putant beneficia esse potentiōra quam verba acerba et turpia.
7. Quīdam magister verba tam dūra discipulīs dīxit ut discēderent.
8. Respondērunt auctōrem hōrum novem remediōrum esse medicam potentissimam.
9. Nihil vērō tam facile est ut sine labōre id facere possīmus.
10. Prō labōre studiōque patria nostra nōbīs plūrimās occāsiōnēs bonās praestat.
11. Parentēs plūrima ōscula dedērunt nātae gracilī, in quā maximam dēlectātiōnem semper inveniēbant.
12. The words of the philosopher were very difficult, so that those listening were unable to learn them.
13. The two women wished to understand these things so that they might not live base lives.
14. Those four wives were so pleasant that they received very many kindnesses.

15. He said that the writer's third poem was so beautiful that it delighted the minds of thousands of citizens.

古代名言

1. Omnia vincit Amor; et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (Virgil.)
2. Urbem clārissimam condidī; mea moenia vīdī; explēvī cursum quem Fāta dederant. (Virgil.)
3. Ita dūrus erās ut neque amōre neque precibus mollīrī possēs. (Terence.—**prex, precis,** f., *prayer.*)
4. Nēmō quidem tam ferōx est ut nōn mollīrī possit, cultūrā datā. (Horace.—**cultūra, -ae.**)
5. Difficile est saturam nōn scrībere; nam quis est tam patiēns malae urbis ut sē teneat? (Juvenal.—**patiēns,** gen. **patientis,** *tolerant of.*)
6. Fuit quondam in hāc rē pūblicā tanta virtūs ut virī fortēs cīvem perniciōsum ācriōribus poenīs quam acerbissimum hostem reprimerent. (Cicero.—**perniciōsus, -a, -um,** *pernicious.*—**re-primō,** cp. **opprimō.**)
7. Ita praeclāra est recuperātiō lībertātis ut nē mors quidem in hāc rē sit fugienda. (Cicero.—**recuperātiō, -ōnis,** *recovery.*)
8. Nē ratiōnēs meōrum perīculōrum ūtilitātem reī pūblicae vincant. (Cicero.—**ūtilitās, -tātis,** *advantage;* cp. **ūtilis.**)
9. Eō tempore Athēniēnsēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut decemplicem numerum hostium superārent, et hōs sīc perterruērunt ut in Asiam refugerent. (Nepos.—**Athēniēnsēs, -ium,** *Athenians.*—**decemplex, -icis,** *tenfold.*—**per-terreō.**)
10. Ōrātor exemplum dignum petat ab Dēmosthene illō, in quō tantum studium tantusque labor fuisse dīcuntur ut impedīmenta nātūrae dīligentiā industriāque superāret. (Cicero.—**exemplum, -ī,** *example.*—**Dēmosthenēs, -thenis,** a famous Greek orator.—**impedīmentum, -ī.**—**dīligentia, -ae.**—**industria, -ae.**)



Demosthenes
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

11. Praecepta tua sint brevia ut cito mentēs discipulōrum ea discant teneantque memoriā fidēlī. (Horace.—**praeceptum, -ī,** *precept.*)
12. Nihil tam difficile est ut nōn possit studiō invēstīgārī. (Terence.—**invēstīgāre,** *to track down, investigate.*)
13. Bellum autem ita suscipiātur ut nihil nisi pāx quaesīta esse videātur. (Cicero.)
14. Tanta est vīs probitātis ut eam etiam in hoste dīligāmus. (Cicero.)

HOW MANY KISSES ARE ENOUGH?

Quaeris, Lesbia, quot bāsia tua sint mihi satis? Tam multa bāsia quam magnus numerus Libyssae harēnae aut quam sīdera multa quae, ubi tacet nox, furtīvōs amōrēs hominum vident—tam bāsia multa (nēmō numerum scīre potest) sunt satis Catullō īnsānō!

(Catullus 7; prose adaptation.—**quot . . . sint,** *how many . . . are* (an indirect question; see Ch. 30)—**Libyssae,** *Libyan, African.*—**harēna, -ae,** *sand,* here = *the grains of sand.*—**furtīvus, -a, -um,** *stolen, secret.*—**īnsānus, -a, -um.**)

THE NERVOUSNESS OF EVEN A GREAT ORATOR

Ego dehinc ut responderem surrēxī. Quā sollicitūdine animī surgēbam—dī immortālēs—et quō timōre! Semper quidem magnō cum metū incipiō dīcere. Quotiēnscumque dīcō, mihi videor in iūdicium venīre nōn sōlum ingeniī sed etiam virtūtis atque officiī. Tum vērō ita sum perturbātus ut omnia timērem. Dēnique mē collēgī et sīc pugnāvī, sīc omnī ratiōne contendī ut nēmō mē neglēxisse illam causam putāret.

(Cicero, *Prō Cluentiō* 51.—**sollicitūdō, -dinis,** f., *anxiety.*—**quotiēnscumque,** adv., *whenever.*—The genitives **ingeniī, virtūtis,** and **officiī** all modify **iūdicium.**—**perturbāre,** *to disturb, confuse.*—**colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** *to gather, collect, control.*)

YOU'RE ALL JUST WONDERFUL!

Nē laudet dignōs, laudat Callistratus omnēs:
  cui malus est nēmō, quis bonus esse potest?

(*Martial 12.80; meter: elegiac couplet.—**dignōs,** i.e., *only the deserving.*—**Callistratus,** a Greek name, meant to suggest perhaps a former slave.—**quis . . . potest,** supply **eī,** antecedent of **cui,** *to a man to whom.*)

词源点滴

罗曼语典型的副词词尾**-mente** 或**-ment** 源于拉丁词 **mente**（**mēns** 的夺格），它最初用作方式夺格，后来成为一种副词后缀。下列例词均植根于我们已经学过的拉丁语形容词。

拉丁词	意大利语副词	西班牙语副词	法语副词
dūrā mente	duramente	duramente	durement
clārā mente	chiaramente	claramente	clairement

sōlā mente	solamente	solamente	seulement
certā mente	certamente	certamente	certainement
dulcī mente	dolcemente	dulcemente	doucement
brevī mente	brevemente	brevemente	brèvement
facilī mente	facilmente	fácilmente	facilement

拉丁词 **sīc** 是意大利语词 **sì**、西班牙语词 **sí** 和法语词 **si** 的母词，意为 *yes*。

In the readings

3. precatory, precarious, pray, prayer. 5. patient. 10. exemplar, exemplary, exemplify. 12. vestige, vestigial. "Nervousness": solicitous, solicitude.— perturbation. —collection. "Kisses": arena.—furtive.—insanity.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

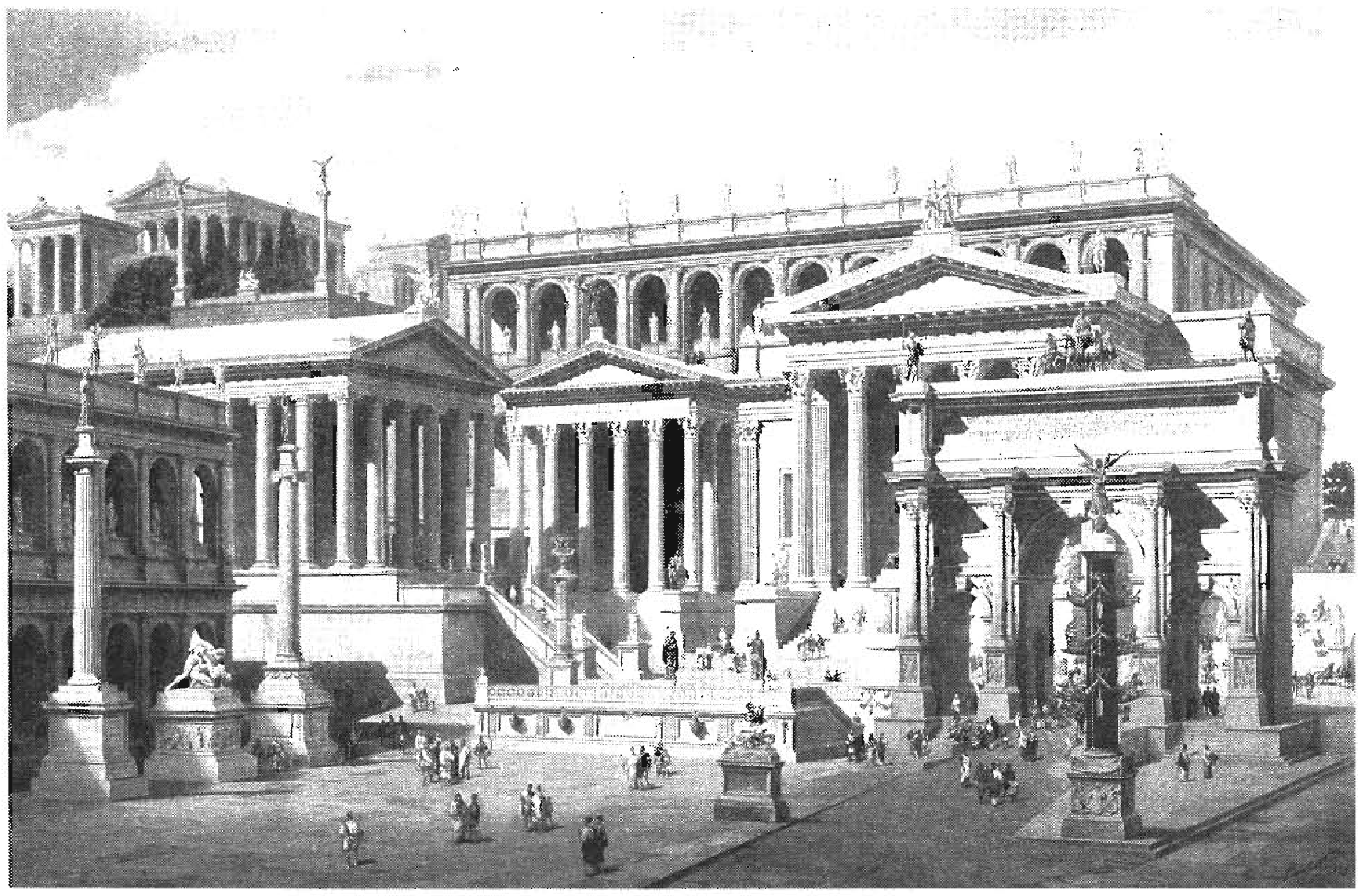
Salvē! 爱看《今晚秀》（*Tonight Show*）的人知道我为什么会把结果从句称为"约翰尼·卡森（Johnny Carson）从句"[1]：在讲述诸多逸闻趣事时，约翰尼总是以诸如"I saw this fellow the other night who was *so funny* . . . "这样的话开始。然后埃德·麦克马洪（Ed McMahon）（或者某位观众）会附和说，"*How* funny *was* he, Johnny?"接着，约翰尼总会以一句结果从句来回答他，"Why, he was *so* funny *that* . . . ！"

Sunt multae dēlectātiōnēs in novō vocābulāriō nostrō: 比如弗吉尼亚州的座右铭，**sīc semper tyrannīs**, *thus always to tyrants* (death, i.e.!); **ingenium**，实际上意为 *something inborn*，比如罗马男人的 **genius**（其天生的守护精灵，与之相对的女性的守护精灵是 **iūnō**，她后来被放大和神化为女神朱诺[Juno]）；**moenia** 与 **mūnīre** 的联系使我们想到，防御墙是古代人最好的军需品，有一句古老的谚语说，**praemonitus, praemūnītus,** *forewarned (is) forearmed*；**sīc** 是一种编者注，意为 *thus (it was written)*，用来指所引文本中的一处错误或特殊之处。

词汇表中还出现了一个很可爱的词：**ōsculum** 是用来指 *kiss* 的本族语（**bāsium** 则似乎是诗人卡图卢斯从北方引入拉丁语的），它其实是 **ōs, ōris**（第十四课）的指小词，所以直译为 *little mouth*（这也许证明，罗马人在接吻时会"噘起嘴"！）顺便指出，卡图卢斯喜欢发明语词，其中之一便是 **bāsiātiō,** *kissification* 或*smooch-making*。（顺便提及，"smooch"并非源于拉丁语，而是源于日耳曼语，与"smack"有关，比如"to smack one's lips"，有些人在享用一个吻或抹有"Smucker's"果酱的切片面包之前也许会这样做！）**Rīdēte et valēte!**

---

[1]《今晚秀》是美国深夜播出的一个电视节目，内容包括名人访谈和音乐。约翰尼·卡森和埃德·麦克马洪都曾主持过这一节目。——译者注



Reconstruction of the Roman Forum, Soprintendenza alle Antichita, Rome, Italy

第三十课

完成时和过去完成时虚拟式；间接问句；时态序列

完成时和过去完成时虚拟式

和现在时系统的直陈式一样，完成时系统的虚拟式也遵循同样的基本构成规则，不论动词属于哪种变位法。完成时的虚拟式主动态是完成时词干+ **-erī-** + 人称词尾(**-m, -t** 和**-nt** 之前是短音**-i-**)；过去完成时的虚拟式主动态是完成时词干 + **-issē-** + 人称词尾(**-m, -t** 和**-nt** 之前是**-e-**)。被动态则是用虚拟式 **sim** 和 **essem** 取代相应的直陈式 **sum** 和 **eram**。

Laudō 的各种形式见下；其他例词(依照同一模式)的形式见附录。

完成时虚拟式主动态

单数　laudā́v-erim, laudā́verīs, laudā́verit
复数　laudāverī́mus, laudāverī́tis, laudā́verint

请注意，除第一人称单数和某些虚拟式中的长音**-ī-**外，这些形式与将来完成时直陈式的形式相同；至于它们到底是直陈式还是虚拟式，可以根据句子的语境来判断。

过去完成时虚拟式主动态

单数　laudāv-íssem, laudāvíssēs, laudāvísset
复数　laudāvissḗmus, laudāvissḗtis, laudāvíssent

请注意，这些形式类似于完成时主动态不定式 **laudāvisse**＋各种词尾(除了在**-m, -t** 和**-nt** 之前都是长音**-ē-**；试与未完成时虚拟式比较，后者类似于现在

时主动态不定式+各种词尾）。

完成时虚拟式被动态

单数　laudā́tus, -a, -um sim, laudā́tus sīs, laudā́tus sit
复数　laudā́tī, -ae, -a sī́mus, laudā́tī sī́tis, laudā́tī sint

过去完成时虚拟式被动态

单数　laudā́tus, -a, -um éssem, laudā́tus éssēs, laudā́tus ésset
复数　laudā́tī, -ae, -a essḗmus, laudā́tī essḗtis, laudā́tī éssent

翻译和用法

与现在时和未完成时的虚拟式一样，完成时和过去完成时的虚拟式也可以（按照下面将要讨论的时态序列）用在各种从句中，并作各种翻译。正如 *may* 和 *might/would* 有时分别被用来翻译现在时和未完成时虚拟式，*may have* 和 *might have/would have* 有时也分别被用来翻译完成时和过去完成时虚拟式；类似地，它们一般按照直陈式来翻译，不带助动词。最好的方法就是针对每一种从句类型学习相应的翻译规则。

动词变位缩写式

我们已经学习了如何将一个动词完整地变位成它的各种限定形式；下面是 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum**（比较第二十一课）的第三人称单数的动词变位缩写式：

直陈式

	现在时	**将来时**	**未完成时**	**完成时**	**将来完成时**	**过去完成时**
主动态	ágit	áget	agḗbat	ḗgit	ḗgerit	ḗgerat
被动态	ágitur	agḗtur	agēbā́tur	ā́ctus est	ā́ctus érit	ā́ctus érat

虚拟式

	现在时	**将来时**	**未完成时**	**完成时**	**将来完成时**	**过去完成时**
主动态	ágat	——	ágeret	ḗgerit	——	ēgísset
被动态	agā́tur	——	agerḗtur	ā́ctus sit	——	ā́ctus ésset

间接问句

间接问句是这样一种从句，它转述某个问题（比如，“they asked what Gaius was doing”以及“they asked,‘What is Gaius doing?’”），而不是通过直接引语来问；于是，它在概念上类似于间接陈述，后者间接地报导某个肯定陈述，而不是一个问题（参见第二十五课）。不过，间接问句使用的是动词的虚拟式，而非不定式。间

接问句很容易与其他类型的虚拟从句区分开来，因为它由 **quis/quid, quī/quae/quod**（即疑问形容词）,**quam, quandō, cūr, ubi, unde, uter, utrum . . . an** (*whether . . . or*), **-ne**(附在句首词之后,= *whether*)等疑问词引起,而且主句动词一般表示言语、心理活动或感官知觉(包括许多引出间接陈述的动词,参见第二十五课)。

对于间接问句中的虚拟式动词，通常按照同一时态的直陈式进行翻译,即不带 *may* 或 *might* 这样的助动词。将以下的前三个例子(直接问句)与后三个例子(包含间接问句)进行比较：

Quid Gāius facit? *What is Gaius doing?*

Quid Gāius fēcit? *What did Gaius do?*

Quid Gāius faciet? *What will Gaius do?*

Rogant quid Gāius faciat. *They ask what Gaius is doing.*

Rogant quid Gāius fēcerit. *They ask what Gaius did.*

Rogant quid Gāius factūrus sit. *They ask what Gaius will do* (lit., *is about to do*).

最后一句中的 **factūrus sit**有时被称为“将来时主动迂说法”;由于虚拟式没有将来时,所以在某些类型的从句中(包括间接问句),有时也用 **sum** 的某种形式+将来时主动态分词(比较第二十四课中由 **sum**+将来时被动态分词所构成的被动迂说法)来明确表示将来。在最后一句话中,如果主要动词是过去时,那么(根据时态序列规则)这个句子就是 **rogāvērunt quid Gaius factūrus esset,** *they asked what Gaius would do* (*was about to do, was going to do*)。

时态序列[1]

和英语一样,在拉丁语中,随着说话人或作者从主句进行到从句,也有一种逻辑上的时态序列。拉丁语中的规则很简单:直陈式的“基本时态”(primary tense)后面必须跟着虚拟式的基本时态,直陈式的“历史时态”(historical tense,或称“派生时态”[secondary tense])后面必须跟着虚拟式的历史时态,如下表所示。

直陈式的基本时态,即现在时和将来时,均指尚未完成的动作(即现在正在进行的动作,或者只有将来才会开始的动作),而历史时态则指过去的动作。

组	主要动词	虚拟从句
基本时态	现在时或将来时	现在时(= 同时或之后发生的动作) 完成时(= 之前发生的动作)

[1] 也称“时态的呼应”、“时态的一致”。——译者注

历史时态　　过去时诸时态　{ 未完成时（= 同时或之后发生的动作）
过去完成时（= 之前发生的动作）

位于基本时态主要动词之后的现在时虚拟式指的是动作与主要动词同时发生，或者在主要动词之后发生。完成时虚拟式指的是动作在主要动词之前发生。

类似地，位于历史时态主要动词之后的未完成时虚拟式指的是动作与主要动词同时发生，或者在主要动词之后发生。过去完成时虚拟式指的是动作在主要动词之前发生。[1]

这些时态序列规则适用于目的从句、结果从句、间接问句以及后续课程中的类似结构。仔细分析下面每个例句中的时态序列：

Id **facit** (faciet) ut mē iuvet, *he does (will do) it to help me.*

Id **fēcit** (faciēbat) ut mē iuvāret, *he did (kept doing) it to help me.*

Tam dūrus **est** ut eum vītem, *he is so harsh that I avoid him.*

Tam dūrus **fuit** (erat) ut eum vītārem, *he was so harsh that I avoided him.*

Rogant, rogābunt—*They ask, will ask*

quid faciat, *what he is doing.*

quid fēcerit, *what he did.*

quid factūrus sit, *what he will do.*

Rogāvērunt, rogābant—*They asked, kept asking*

quid faceret, *what he was doing.*

quid fēcisset, *what he had done.*

quid factūrus esset, *what he would do.*

词汇表

hónor, honṓris, m., *honor, esteem; public office* (honorable, honorary, honorific, dishonor, honest)

cḗterī, -ae, -a, pl., *the remaining, the rest, the other, all the others;* cp. **alius,** *another, other* (etc. = et cetera)

---

[1] 时态序列规则有两种常见的非常合理的例外：一个历史现在时的主要动词（即用现在时来生动地讲述过去的事件）往往会跟一个历史时态序列的虚拟式；而一个完成时的主要动词，如果关注的是过去的动作对现在的结果，那么也可以跟一个基本时态序列的虚拟式（参见下面“练习与复习”中的句 8）。还要注意，由于从逻辑上讲，目的从句和结果从句描述的是在主要动词动作之后（实际地或潜在地）发生的动作，所以它们一般并不包含指示先前动作的完成时或过去完成时动词（尽管在结果从句中，完成时虚拟式有时被用作一种历史时态）。

quántus, -a, -um, *how large, how great, how much* (quantify, quantity, quantitative, quantum; cp. **tantus**); **tántus . . . quántus,** *just as much (many) . . . as*
rīdículus, -a, -um, *laughable, ridiculous* (ridicule, etc.; cp. **rīdeō, subrīdeō,** Ch. 35)
vī́vus, -a, -um, *alive, living* (vivid, vivify, convivial; cp. **vīvō, vīta**)
fū́rtim, adv., *stealthily, secretly* (furtively, ferret; cp. **fūrtīvus, -a, -um,** *secret, furtive;* **fūr, fūris,** m./f., *thief*)
mox, adv., *soon*
prī́mō, adv., *at first, at the beginning* (cp. **prīmus, -a, -um**)
repénte, adv., *suddenly*
únde, adv., *whence, from what* or *which place, from which, from whom*
útrum . . . an, conj., *whether . . . or*
bíbō, bíbere, bíbī, *to drink* (bib, bibulous, imbibe, wine-bibber, beverage)
cognṓscō, -nṓscere, -nṓvī, -nitum, *to become acquainted with, learn, recognize;* in perfect tenses, *know* (cognizance, cognizant, cognition, connoisseur, incognito, reconnaissance, reconnoiter; cp. **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum,** noble, notice, notify, notion, notorious, and **recognōscō,** Ch. 38)
comprehéndō, -héndere, -héndī, -hḗnsum, *to grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand* (comprehensive, comprehensible, incomprehensible)
cōnsū́mō, -sū́mere, -sū́mpsī, -sū́mptum, *to consume, use up* (consumer, consumption, assume, assumption, presume, presumable, presumption, presumptive, presumptuous, resume, resumption; cp. **sūmō,** *to take*)
dúbitō (1), *to doubt, hesitate* (dubious, dubitable, dubitative, doubtful, doubtless, indubitable, undoubtedly)
expṓnō, -pṓnere, -pósuī, -pósitum, *to set forth, explain, expose* (exponent, exposition, expository, expound)
mínuō, minúere, mínuī, minū́tum, *to lessen, diminish* (cp. **minor, minus, minimus;** diminish, diminuendo, diminution, diminutive, minuet, minute, minutiae, menu, mince)
rógō (1), *to ask* (interrogate, abrogate, arrogant, derogatory, prerogative, surrogate)

练习与复习

1. Rogāvit ubi illae duae discipulae dignae haec didicissent.
2. Vidēbit quanta fuerit vīs illōrum verbōrum fēlīcium.
3. Hās īnsidiās repente exposuit nē rēs pūblica opprimerētur.
4. Hī taceant et trēs cēterī expellantur nē occāsiōnem similem habeant.
5. Ita dūrus erat ut beneficia uxōris comprehendere nōn posset.
6. Cēterī quidem nesciēbant quam ācris esset mēns nātae eōrum.
7. Dēnique prīnceps cognōscet cūr potentior pars mīlitum nōs vītet.
8. Iam cognōvī cūr clāra facta vērō nōn sint facillima.
9. Quīdam auctōrēs appellābant arma optimum remedium malōrum.

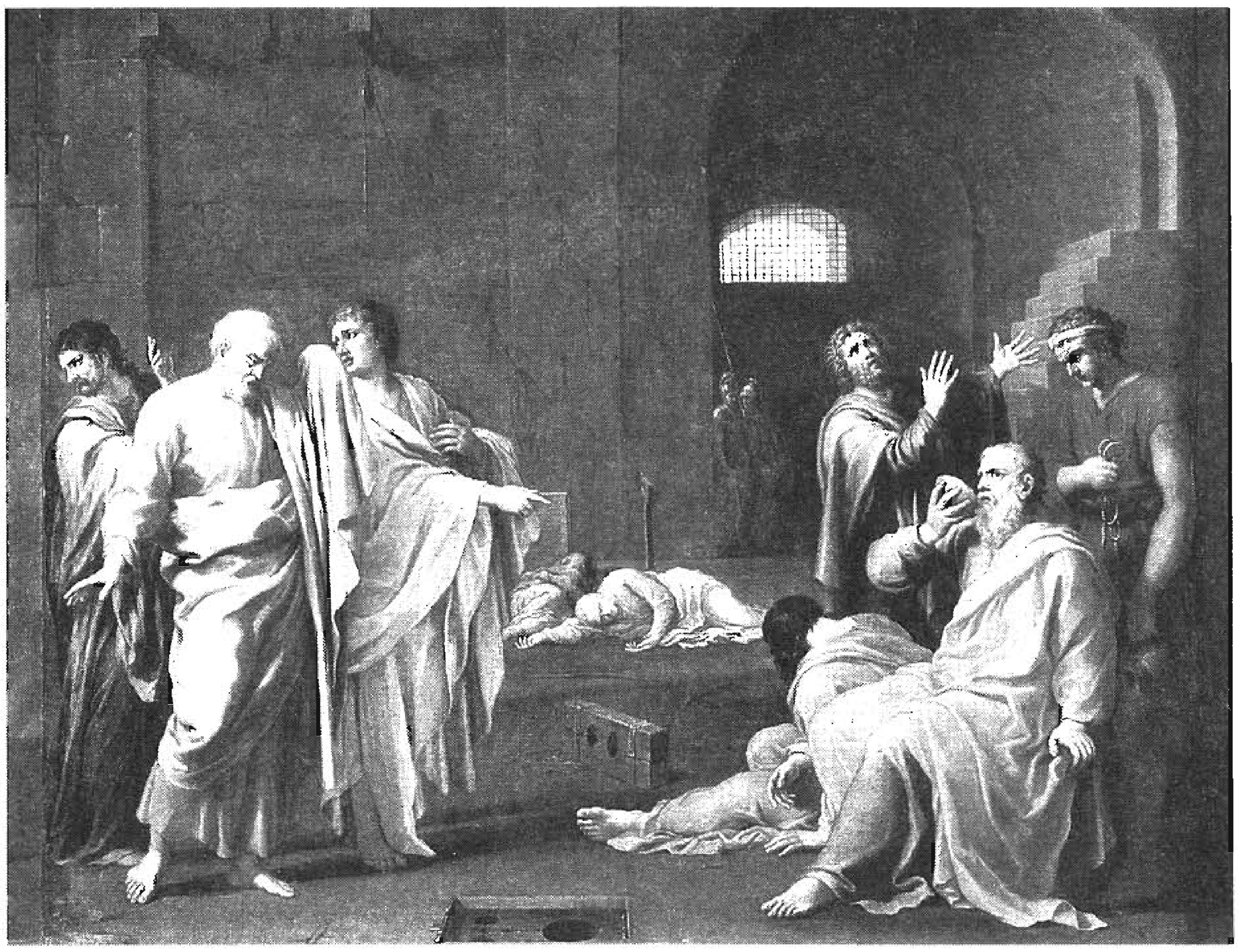
10. Mortuīs haec arma mox dēdicēmus nē honōre egeant.
11. Fātō duce, Rōmulus Remusque Rōmam condidērunt; et, Remō necātō, moenia urbis novae cito surrēxērunt.
12. Tell me in what lands liberty is found.
13. We did not know where the sword had finally been put.
14. He does not understand the first words of the little book which they wrote about the constellations.
15. They asked why you could not learn what the rest had done.
16. Let all men now seek better things than money or supreme power so that their souls may be happier.

古代名言

1. Nunc vidētis quantum scelus contrā rem pūblicam et lēgēs nostrās vōbīs prōnūntiātum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Quam dulcis sit lībertās vōbīs prōtinus dīcam. (Phaedrus.)
3. Rogābat dēnique cūr umquam ex urbe cessissent. (Horace.)
4. Nunc sciō quid sit amor. (*Virgil.)
5. Videāmus uter hīc in mediō forō plūs scrībere possit. (Horace.)
6. Multī dubitābant quid optimum esset. (*Cicero.)
7. Incipiam expōnere unde nātūra omnēs rēs creet alatque. (Lucretius.)
8. Dulce est vidēre quibus malīs ipse careās. (Lucretius.)
9. Auctōrem Trōiānī bellī relēgī, quī dīcit quid sit pulchrum, quid turpe, quid ūtile, quid nōn. (Horace.—**Trōiānus, -a, -um,** *Trojan.*)
10. Doctōs rogābis quā ratiōne bene agere cursum vītae possīs, utrum virtūtem doctrīna paret an nātūra ingeniumque dent, quid minuat cūrās, quid tē amīcum tibi faciat. (Horace.—**doctrīna, -ae,** *teaching.*)
11. Istī autem rogant tantum quid habeās, nōn cūr et unde. (Seneca.)
12. Errat, quī fīnem vēsānī quaerit amōris: vērus amor nūllum nōvit habēre modum. (*Propertius.—**vēsānus, -a, -um,** *insane.*)
13. Sed tempus est iam mē discēdere ut cicūtam bibam, et vōs discēdere ut vītam agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortālēs sciunt; hominem quidem nēminem scīre crēdō. (Cicero.—Socrates' parting words to the jury which had condemned him to death.—**cicūta, -ae,** *hemlock.*—**nēmō homō,** *no human being.*)

EVIDENCE AND CONFESSION

Sit dēnique scrīptum in fronte ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat; nam rem pūblicam labōribus cōnsiliīsque meīs ex igne atque ferrō ēreptam esse vidētis. Haec iam expōnam breviter ut scīre possītis quā ratiōne comprehēnsa sint. Semper prōvīdī quō modō in tantīs īnsidiīs salvī esse possēmus. Omnēs diēs cōnsūmpsī ut vidērem quid coniūrātī āctūrī essent. Dēnique litterās intercipere potuī quae ad Catilīnam ā Lentulō aliīsque coniūrātīs missae erant. Tum, coniūrātīs comprehēnsīs et senātū convocātō, contendī in senātum, ostendī litterās Lentulō, quaesīvī cognōsceretne signum. Dīxit sē



The Death of Socrates, Charles Alphonse Dufresnoy, 17th century
Galleria Palatina, Palazzo Pitti, Florence, Italy

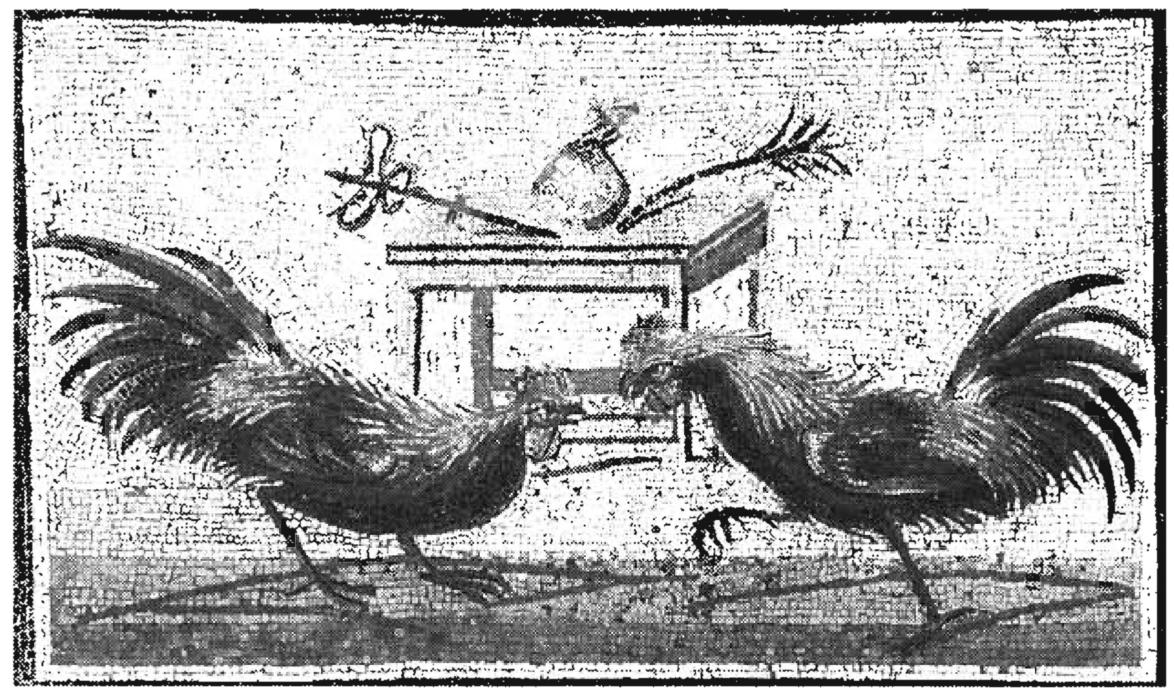
cognōscere; sed prīmō dubitāvit et negāvit sē dē hīs rēbus respōnsūrum esse. Mox autem ostendit quanta esset vīs cōnscientiae; nam repente mollītus est atque omnem rem nārrāvit. Tum cēterī coniūrātī sīc fūrtim inter sē aspiciēbant ut nōn ab aliīs indicārī sed indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

(Cicero, excerpts from the first and third Catilinarian orations—Cicero finally succeeded in forcing Catiline to leave Rome, but his henchmen remained and Cicero still lacked the tangible evidence he needed to convict them in court; in this passage he shows how he finally obtained not only that evidence but even a confession. See the readings in Chs. 11 and 14, "Cicero Urges Catiline's Departure" in Ch. 20, and the continuation, "Testimony Against the Conspirators," in Ch. 36.—**frōns, frontis,** f., *brow, face.*—**breviter,** adv. of **brevis.**—**prō-videō,** *to fore-see, give attention to.*—**intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**—**cōnscientia, -ae,** *conscience.*—**inter sē aspiciō, -ere,** *to glance at each other.*—**indicāre,** *to accuse.*)

A COVERED DISH DINNER!

Mēnsās, Ōle, bonās pōnis, sed pōnis opertās.
  Rīdiculum est: possum sīc ego habēre bonās.

(*Martial 10.54; meter: elegiac couplet.—Olus, another of Martial's "friends."—**opertus, -a, -um,** *concealed, covered.*—**ego,** i.e., even a poor fellow like me.)



fighting in front of a mensa
Mosaic from Pompeii, detail
ico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

A LEGACY-HUNTER'S WISH

Nīl mihi dās vīvus; dīcis post fāta datūrum:
sī nōn es stultus, scīs, Maro, quid cupiam!

(*Martial 11.67; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = **nihil.**—**fāta,** poetic pl. for sg. = **mortem.**—**datūrum** = **tē datūrum esse.**—Maro, another of Martial's fictitious [?] addressees.)

NOTE ON A COPY OF CATULLUS' CARMINA

Tantum magna suō dēbet Vērōna Catullō
quantum parva suō Mantua Vergiliō.

(*Martial 14.195; meter: elegiac couplet. Verona and Mantua were the birthplaces of Catullus and Virgil respectively; see the Introd.—Note the interlocked word order within each verse and the neatly parallel structure between the two verses.)

词源点滴

"怀疑的"(dubitative，或"审慎的"[deliberative])虚拟句是另一种独立虚拟句。根据 **dubitō**，你应当已经了解了这种虚拟句所传达的观念，例如，**quid faciat**? *what is he to do* (*I wonder*)?

由 **prehendō**，*seize* 产生的派生词有：apprehend, apprentice, apprise, imprison, prehensile, prison, prize, reprehend, reprisal, surprise。

In the readings

"Evidence": front, frontal, affront, confront, effrontery, frontier, frontispiece.—provide, providence, provision, improvident, improvise, improvisation.—interception.—conscientious, conscious, inconscionable.—aspect.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, amīcī！本课的 **vocābulārium novum** 为你的 **mēnsa Latīna** 带来了

真正的 **cēna verbōrum**；让我们先从主菜开始：英语中的常见短语 **cursus honōrum** 原意是指通向古罗马执政官的一系列官职；一个人通常首先要做 **quaestor**(财务官),然后做 **praetor**(司法官),最后才能做 **cōnsul**(执政官)。执政官这一职务与我们的总统有些相似,不过期限是一年,而且有两名执政官,彼此都有否决权(我们知道,西塞罗在揭露喀提林的阴谋时,就是公元前 63 年的两名执政官之一)。

现在我们来享用 **mēnsa secunda**(指"餐后甜点")吧:和 **carpe diem** 一样,**occāsiōnem cognōsce**！这条古老的谚语也可以使你受益匪浅。还有一条谚语有助于你经受住罪恶的诱惑:**nēmō repente fuit turpissimus,** *no one was ever suddenly most vicious*(尤维纳利斯 2.83:这位讽刺作家的意思是,即使最坏的罪犯也是一步步走上犯罪道路的)。荣誉学位是 **honōris causā** 而被颁发的；**honōrēs mūtant mōrēs** 在古代是自明之理；由 **cēterī** 不仅产生出了 **et cētera/etc.**,而且也产生出了 **cētera dēsunt,** *the rest is lacking*,这是一种编辑记号,指某个文本缺失的章节；由 **quantus** 产生出了大量习语，这里仅举一例:**quantum satis,** *as much as suffices*(如果你还没有尽兴,请参见第三十二、三十五课);在白天即将逝去的时候,你可以喊 **mox nox, in rem,** *soon ('twill be) night, (let's get down) to business*。**Valēte**！

第三十一课

Cum 从句;Ferō

Cum 从句

我们已经对 **cum** 用作介词非常熟悉了。事实上,**cum** 还可以用作引导从句的连词,意为 *when, since,* 或 *although*。

Cum 从句中的动词有时是直陈式,特别是在描述动作的精确时间时。在这些所谓的"**cum** 时间从句"中,**cum** 可以译为 *when*(或 *while*);有时主句中含有 **tum**,这时 **cum . . . tum** 可以译为 *not only . . . but also*:

Cum eum vidēbis, eum cognōscēs, *when you* (*will*) *see him* [即"在那一瞬"], *you will recognize him.*

Cum vincimus, tum pācem spērās, *when* (*while*) *we are winning, you are* (*at the same time*) *hoping for peace.*

Cum ad illum locum vēnerant, tum amīcōs contulerant, *when they had come to that place, they had brought their friends* 或 *not only had they come to that place, but they had also brought their friends.*

然而,**cum** 从句中的动词往往是虚拟式,这时,从句大多是在描述主句动作发生时的一般状况,而不是精确时间(往往称为"**cum** 状况从句"),或是解释主句动作的原因("**cum** 原因从句"),或是描述有可能阻碍主句动作的一种情况("**cum** 转折从句")。

Cum hoc fēcisset, ad tē fūgit.
When he had done this, he fled to you.(状况从句)

Cum hoc scīret, potuit eōs iuvāre.
Since he knew this, he was able to help them.（原因从句）

Cum hoc scīret, tamen mīlitēs mīsit.
Although he knew this, nevertheless he sent the soldiers.（转折从句）

Cum Gāium dīligerēmus, nōn poterāmus eum iuvāre.
Although we loved Gaius, we could not help him.（转折从句）

请注意，如果 **cum** 后面跟着一个夺格名词或代词，就应当把它翻译成 *with*；如果 **cum** 引出一个从句，就把它翻译成 *when, since, although* 等等。辨识四种基本的 **cum** 从句大概不会有什么困难：时间从句的动词为直陈式，三种虚拟从句可以通过分析主句动作与从句动作之间的关系来辨识（还应注意，在转折从句的情况下，主句中往往包含有副词 **tamen**）。而不论是哪种 **cum** 从句，其中的动词通常都应当按照直陈式来翻译，即不带 *may* 或 *might* 等助动词。

不规则的 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to bear, carry*

Ferō 是本书接下来几课介绍的一系列不规则动词中的一个（其他几个分别是 **volō, nōlō, mālō, fīō** 和 **eō**）；它们都很常用，所以要熟练掌握。

英语动词"*to bear*"与拉丁词 **ferō, ferre** 同源，它们有同样的基本义 *to carry* 和比喻义 *to endure*。在现在时系统中，**ferō** 仅仅是一个第三变位法动词，它按照 **agō** 那样的方式变位，只是词干元音在少数几个地方（包括不定式 **ferre**）没有出现。几个不规则的形式均为现在时（直陈式、命令式和不定式），在下面都已作了突出显示；而它的未完成时虚拟式，虽然由不规则不定式 **ferre** 构成，但却遵循着现在时不定式+词尾的通常模式。别忘了，和 **dīc, dūc, fac** 一样（第八课），它的单数命令式中不含**-e**。

虽然 **tulī**（原为 **tetulī**）和 **lātum**（原为 ***tlātum**）都源于另一个与 **tollō** 有关的动词（类似地，英语混合词"*go, went, gone*"也是由两个不同的动词构成的，这种语言现象被称为"异干互补"），但它们的变位却是规则的，所以不会造成什么困难。

现在时直陈式

主动态	被动态
1. férō	féror
2. **fers** (cp. ágis)	**férris** (ágeris)
3. **fert** (cp. ágit)	**fértur** (ágitur)
1. férimus	férimur
2. **fértis** (cp. ágitis)	ferímin̄ī
3. férunt	ferúntur

现在时命令式

主动态

2. **fer** (áge), **férte** (ágite)

不定式

	主动态	被动态
现在时	**férre** (ágere)	**férrī** (ágī)
完成时	tulísse	lā́tus ésse
将来时	lātū́rus ésse	lā́tum ī́rī

动词变位缩写式

下面的第三人称单数动词变位缩写式(不规则形式作了突出显示)以及上表都列出了 **ferō** 的一部分变位形式;完整的变位情况参见附录 p.451—452。

直陈式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	**fert**	féret	ferē̄bat	túlit	túlerit	túlerat
被动态	**fértur**	ferē̄tur	ferēbā́tur	lā́tus est	lā́tus érit	lā́tus érat

虚拟式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	férat	—	**férret**	túlerit	—	tulísset
被动态	ferā́tur	—	**ferrḗtur**	lā́tus sit	—	lā́tus ésset

词汇表

as, ássis, m., *an as* (a small copper coin, roughly equivalent to a penny; ace)
auxílium, -iī, n., *aid, help* (auxiliary; cp. **augeō,** *to increase, augment*)
dígitus, -ī, m., *finger, toe* (digit, digital, digitalis, digitalize, digitate, digitize, prestidigitation; see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 20)
elephántus, -ī, m. and f., *elephant* (elephantiasis, elephantine)
exsílium, -iī, n., *exile, banishment* (exilic)
invídia, -ae, f., *envy, jealousy, hatred* (invidious, invidiousness, envious; cp. **invideō** below)
rū́mor, rūmṓris, m., *rumor, gossip* (rumormonger)
vī́num, -ī, n., *wine* (vine, vinegar, viniculture, viniferous, vintage, vinyl)
medíocris, medíocre, *ordinary, moderate, mediocre* (mediocrity; cp. **medius**)
cum, conj. + subj., *when, since, although;* conj. + indic., *when*

ápud, prep. + acc., *among, in the presence of, at the house of*
sémel, adv., *a single time, once, once and for all, simultaneously*
ū́sque, adv., *all the way, up (to), even (to), continuously, always*
dóleō, dolḗre, dóluī, dolitū́rum, *to grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain* (doleful, dolor, dolorous, Dolores, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. **dolor,** Ch. 38)
dórmiō, dormī́re, dormī́vī, dormī́tum, *to sleep* (dormitory, dormer, dormancy, dormant, dormouse)
férō,férre, túlī, lā́tum, *to bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report* (fertile, circumference, confer, defer, differ, infer, offer, prefer, proffer, refer, suffer, transfer; cp. bear)
ádferō, adférre, áttulī, allā́tum, *to bring to* (afferent)
cṓnferō, cōnférre, cóntulī, collā́tum, *to bring together, compare; confer, bestow;* **sē cōnférre,** *betake oneself, go* (conference, collation)
ófferō, offérre, óbtulī, oblā́tum, *to offer* (offertory, oblation)
réferō, reférre, réttulī, relā́tum, *to carry back, bring back; repeat, answer, report* (refer, reference, referent, referral, relate, relation, relative)
invídeō, -vidḗre, -vī́dī, -vī́sum, *to be envious;* + dat. (see Ch. 35), *to look at with envy, envy, be jealous of*
óccidō, -cídere, -cidī, -cā́sum, *to fall down; die; set* (occident, occidental, occasion, occasional; cp. **cadō, occāsiō**)

练习与复习

1. Iam vērō cognōvimus istās mentēs dūrās ferrum prō pāce offerre.
2. Nē nātae geminae discant verba tam acerba et tam dūra.
3. Cum hī decem virī ex moenibus semel discessissent, alia occāsiō pācis numquam oblāta est.
4. Tantum auxilium nōbīs referet ut nē ācerrimī quidem mīlitēs aut pugnāre aut hīc remanēre possint.
5. Rogābat cūr cēterae tantam fidem apud nōs praestārent et nōbīs tantam spem adferrent.
6. Cum patria nostra tantā beneficia offerat, tamen quīdam sē in īnsidiās fūrtim cōnferunt et contrā bonōs mox pugnābunt.
7. Dēnique audiāmus quantae sint hae īnsidiae ac quot coniūrātī contrā cīvitātem surgant.
8. Haec scelera repente exposuī nē alia et similia ferrētis.
9. Respondērunt plūrima arma ā mīlitibus ad lītus allāta esse et in nāvibus condita esse.
10. Cum parentēs essent vīvī, fēlīcēs erant; mortuī quoque sunt beātī.
11. Nesciō utrum trēs coniūrātī maneant an in exsilium contenderint.
12. Nōs cōnferāmus ad cēnam, meī amīcī, bibāmus multum vīnī, cōnsūmāmus noctem, atque omnēs cūrās nostrās minuāmus!
13. When the soldiers had been arrested, they soon offered us money.
14. Although life brings very difficult things, let us endure them all and dedicate ourselves to philosophy.

15. Since you know what help is being brought by our six friends, these evils can be endured with courage.
16. Although his eyes could not see the light of the sun, nevertheless that humble man used to do very many and very difficult things.

古代名言

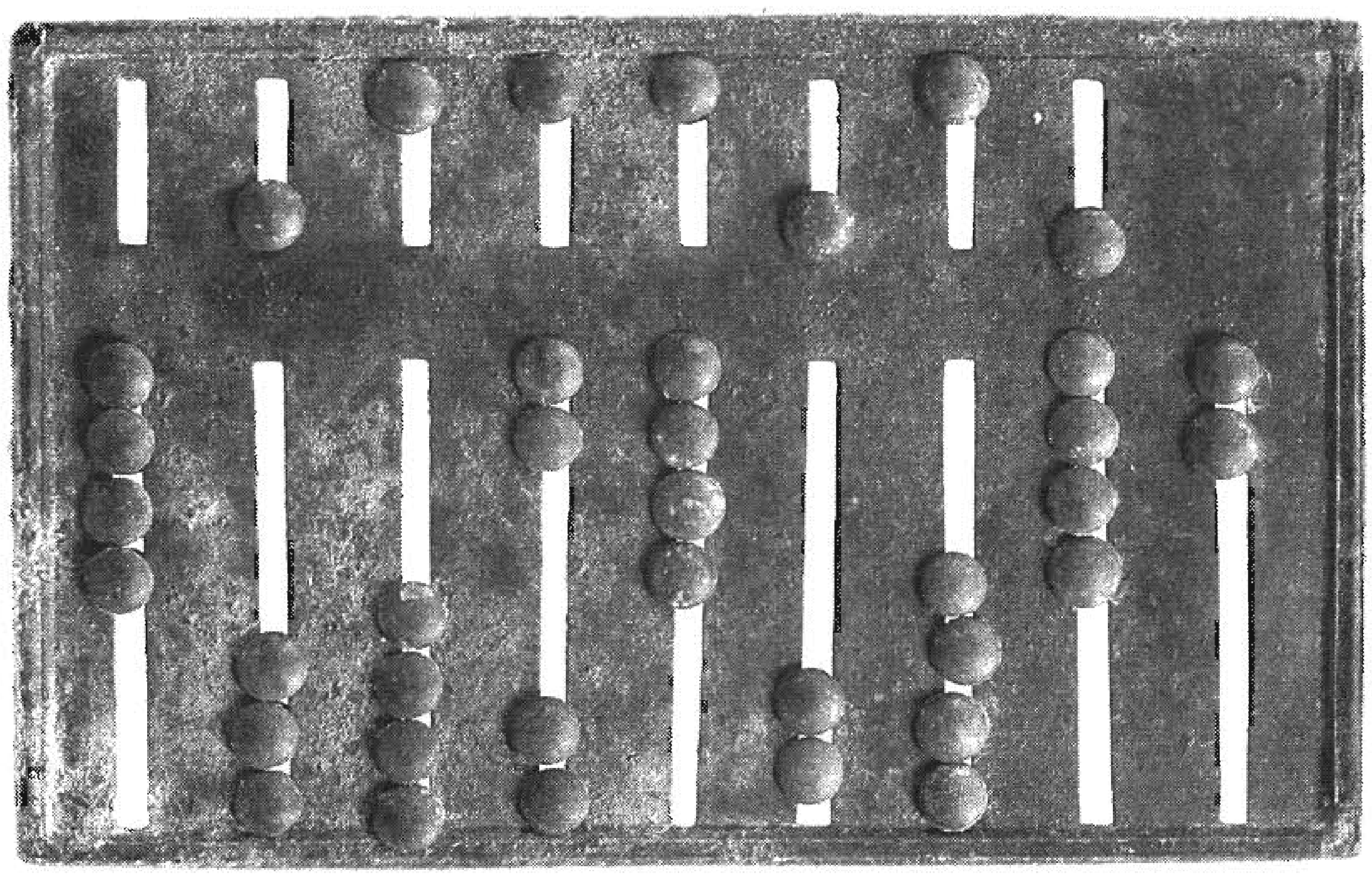
1. Potestne haec lūx esse tibi iūcunda, cum sciās hōs omnēs cōnsilia tua cognōvisse? (Cicero.)
2. Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam servitūte Persicā līberāvisset et propter invidiam in exsilium expulsus esset, ingrātae patriae iniūriam nōn tulit quam ferre dēbuit. (Cicero.—**Persicus, -a, -um.**—**ingrātus, -a, -um,** *ungrateful.*—**iniūria, -ae,** *injury.*)
3. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, cōnfer tē in exsilium. (Cicero.—**quae cum = et cum haec.**)
4. Ō nāvis, novī flūctūs bellī tē in mare referent! Ō quid agis? Unde erit ūllum perfugium? (Horace.—**nāvis,** *ship [of state].*—**flūctus, -ūs,** *wave, billow.*)
5. Cum rēs pūblica immortālis esse dēbeat, doleō eam salūtis egēre ac in vītā ūnīus mortālis cōnsistere. (Cicero.—**cōnsistō, -ere + in,** *to depend on.*)
6. Cum illum hominem esse servum nōvisset, eum comprehendere nōn dubitāvit. (Cicero.)
7. Ille comprehēnsus, cum prīmō impudenter respondēre coepisset, dēnique tamen nihil negāvit. (Cicero.—**impudenter,** adv.)
8. Milō dīcitur per stadium vēnisse cum bovem umerīs ferret. (Cicero.—**Milō, -lōnis,** m., a famous Greek athlete.—**stadium, -iī.**—**bōs, bovis,** m./f., *ox.*—**umerus, -ī,** *shoulder.*)
9. Quid vesper et somnus ferant, incertum est. (Livy.)
10. Ferte miserō tantum auxilium quantum potestis. (Terence.)
11. Hoc ūnum sciō: quod fāta ferunt, id ferēmus aequō animō. (Terence.)
12. Lēgum dēnique idcircō omnēs servī sumus, ut līberī esse possīmus. (*Cicero.—**idcircō,** adv., *for this reason.*)

GIVE ME A THOUSAND KISSES!

Vīvāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum
omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis!
Sōlēs occidere et redīre possunt;
5 nōbīs cum semel occidit brevis lūx,
nox est perpetua ūna dormienda.
Dā mī bāsia mīlle, deinde centum;
dein mīlle altera, dein secunda centum;
deinde ūsque altera mīlle, deinde centum.
10 Dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerīmus—

conturbābimus illa, nē sciāmus,
aut nē quis malus invidēre possit,
cum tantum sciat esse bāsiōrum.

(*Catullus 5; an exhortation to love, and to ignore the grumbling of stern old men who envy the young and curse their passion.—**rūmōrēs,** with **omnēs;** adj. and noun were often widely separated in poetry, so it is especially important to take note of the endings.—**sevērus, -a, -um.**—**ūnius . . . assis,** gen. of value, *at one penny.*—**aestimāre,** *to value, estimate.*—**redīre,** *to return.*—**nōbīs,** dat. of reference [Ch. 38], here = **nostra,** with **brevis lūx.**—**mī** = **mihi.**—**dein** = **deinde.**—**conturbāre,** *to throw into confusion, mix up, jumble;* possibly an allusion to disturbing the counters on an abacus.—**nē sciāmus,** sc. **numerum;** if the number is unknown then, in a sense, it is limitless.—**quis,** here *someone.*—**invidēre,** with **malus,** means both *to envy* and *to cast an evil eye upon,* i.e., to hex.—**tantum,** with **bāsiōrum,** gen. of the whole, = *so many kisses.*)

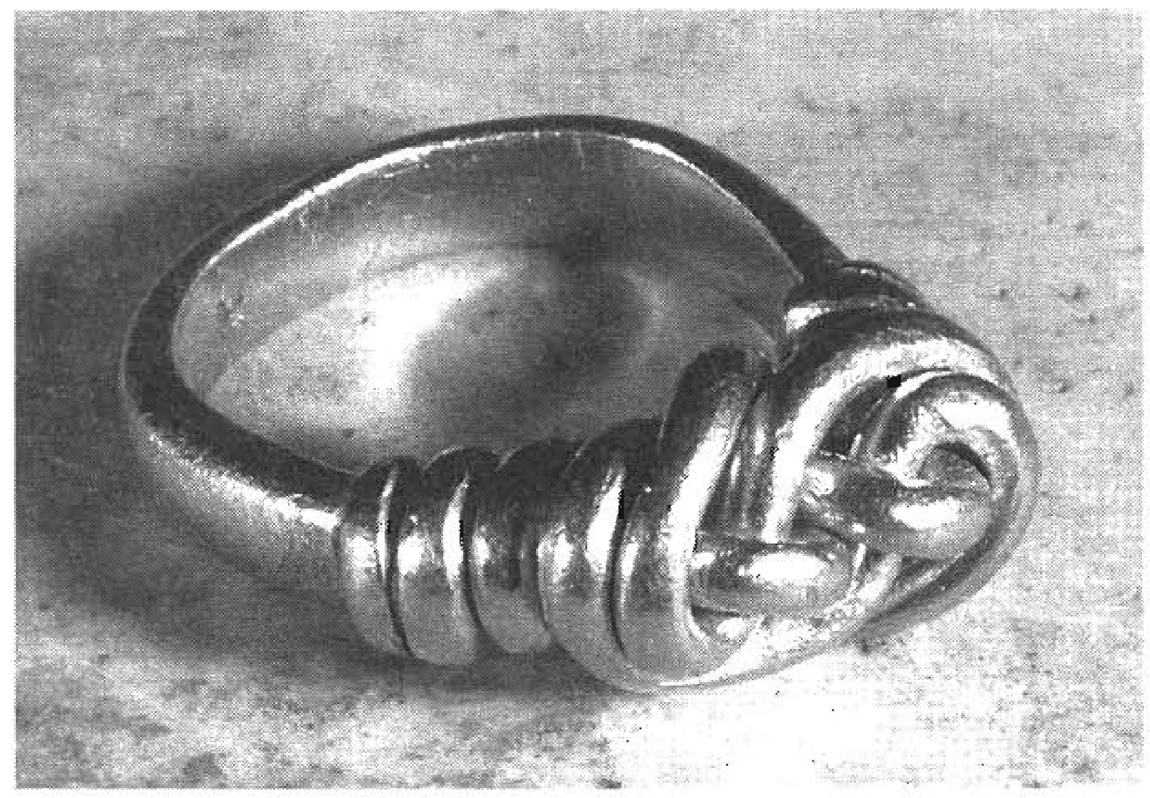


Small Roman abacus, Museo Nazionale Romano delle Terme, Rome, Italy

RINGO

Sēnōs Charīnus omnibus digitīs gerit
  nec nocte pōnit ānulōs
nec cum lavātur. Causa quae sit quaeritis?
  Dactyliothēcam nōn habet!

(*Martial 11.59; meter: iambic trimeter and dimeter.—Charinus, an ostentatious chap who liked to show off his rings.—**sēnī, -ae, -a,** *six each, six apiece,* here with **ānulōs,** *rings* [see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 20]; what effect might the poet be hoping to achieve by so widely separating noun and adj.?—**pōnit** = **dēpōnit,** *put away.*—**lavāre,** *to bathe.*—**Causa . . . quaeritis:** the usual order would be **quaeritisne quae sit causa.**—**dactyliothēca, -ae,** *a ring-box, jewelry chest.*)



Gold ring
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria

FACĒTIAE (WITTICISMS)

Cum Cicerō apud Damasippum cēnāret et ille, mediocrī vīnō in mēnsā positō, dīceret, "Bibe hoc Falernum; hoc est vīnum quadrāgintā annōrum," Cicerō respondit, "Bene aetātem fert!"

(Macrobius, *Sāturnālia* 2.3.—**Falernum, -ī,** *Falernian wine,* actually a very famous wine, not a "mediocre" one.—**quadrāgintā,** indecl., *40.*)

Augustus, cum quīdam rīdiculus eī libellum trepidē adferret, et modo prōferret manum et modo retraheret, "Putās," inquit, "tē assem elephantō dare?"

(Macrobius, *Sāturnālia* 2.4.—**trepidē,** adv., *in confusion.*—**modo . . . modo,** *now . . . now.*—**re-trahō.**—**elephantō:** one thinks of a child offering a peanut to a circus elephant.)

词源点滴

In the readings

2. ingrate, ingratitude.—injurious. 4. fluctuate. 5. consist, consistent. 7. impudent, impudence. 8. bovine.—humerus, humeral. "Kisses": severe, severity, asseverate.—estimate, estimation, inestimable. "Ringo": annulus, annular eclipse, annulate, annulet(拼写中都含有 *nn*,也许是因为与 **annus,** *year* 作了类比,尽管古典拉丁语中的 **ānulus** 实际上是 **ānus,** *ring, circle, anus* 的指小词)。"**Facētiae**": trepidation.—retract, retraction.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Iterum salvēte, doctae doctīque! 学习了那么多知识,你当然配得上这个名号。作为进一步的回报,我们下面看一些珍闻 **ex vocābulāriō novō huius**

capitis,它们都与那个万恶的喀提林有关:首先,在西塞罗对喀提林的指控中有一个著名的 **cum** 时间从句:**cum tacent, clāmant,** *when they are silent, they are shouting*,即"他们用沉默来谴责你"。可怜的喀提林,也许他喝得太多了,**ūsque ad nauseam**,而且不顾 **in vīnō vēritās** 的警告,说漏了嘴;倘若他遵守了贺拉斯的 **aurea mediocritās,** *the golden mean*,或许还能得到 **auxilium ab altō,** *help from on high*。然而神对他似乎并不眷顾,所以他的生命很快就走到了终点,**semel et simul,** *once and for all:* **valē, miser Catilīna, et vōs omnēs, amīcī vēritātis honōrisque, valeātis**!

第三十二课

副词的构成与比较等级；
Volō，Mālō，Nōlō；附带条件从句

副词的构成与比较等级

我们已经见过不少拉丁语副词，和英语一样，它们也用来修饰动词、形容词和其他副词。许多副词都有特殊的形式和词尾，所以在词汇表中第一次出现时必须牢记（往往没有英语派生词来帮助记忆）：常见的有 **cūr, etiam, ita, tam** 等一些词。

原级

不过，有大量副词是直接由形容词变来的，所以很容易辨识。许多第一、第二变格法形容词的词根加上词尾**-ē** 就构成了副词原级：

lóng-ē	(*far;* longus, -a, -um)
lī́ber-ē	(*freely;* līber, lībera, līberum)
púlchr-ē	(*beautifully;* pulcher, -chra, -chrum)

由第三变格法形容词变来的副词往往是通过给词根加**-iter**；如果词根以**-nt-**结尾，则只加**-er**：

fórt-iter	(*bravely;* fortis, -e)
celér-iter	(*quickly,* celer, celeris, celere)
ā́cr-iter	(*keenly;* ācer, ācris, ācre)
fēlī́c-iter	(*happily;* fēlīx, gen. fēlīcis)
sapiént-er	(*wisely;* sapiēns, gen. sapientis)

比较级和最高级

和英语一样，许多拉丁语副词都有比较级和最高级形式，其英语翻译对应着比较级和最高级形容词的翻译；例如，原级“quickly”，比较级“more (rather, too) quickly”，最高级“most (very) quickly”等等。除了少数例外，副词的比较级均以**-ius** 结尾，我们知道，它是形容词比较级的中性形式。

副词的最高级一般源于形容词的最高级。根据前面给出的把第一、第二变格法形容词变成副词的规则，它们通常以**-ē** 结尾。

副词的比较级和最高级与 Quam 连用

和形容词一样，副词也可与 **quam** 连用：**hic puer celerius cucurrit quam ille,** *this boy ran more quickly than that one*; **illa puella quam celerrimē cucurrit,** *that girl ran as quickly as possible*。在比较级副词之后，通常不用比较夺格(除了在诗歌中)。

不规则副词的比较

如果形容词的比较等级是不规则的(参见第二十七课)，那么由它派生的副词的比较等级往往会延续这种不规则性，不过当然，副词词尾依然存在。仔细考察下面的例词；不符合由形容词构成副词的标准规则的那些副词已经作了突出显示(应当能够指出它们如何不符合规则)。请注意，**prīmō** 这种最高级形式，通常意为*first* (*in time*)，另一种最高级形式 **prīmum** 则意为*first* (*in a series*)；不过**quam prīmum** 习惯上翻译成 *as soon as possible*。

原级	比较级	最高级
lóngē (*far*)	lóngius (*farther, too f.*)	longíssimē (*farthest, very f.*)
lī́berē (*freely*)	lībérius (*more f.*)	lībérrimē (*most, very f.*)
púlchrē (*beautifully*)	púlchrius (*more b.*)	pulchérrimē (*most b.*)
fórtiter (*bravely*)	fórtius (*more b.*)	fortíssimē (*most b.*)
celériter (*quickly*)	celérius (*more q.*)	celérrimē (*most q.*)
ā́criter (*keenly*)	ā́crius (*more k.*)	ācérrimē (*most k.*)
fēlī́citer (*happily*)	fēlī́cius (*more h.*)	fēlīcíssimē (*most h.*)
sapiénter (*wisely*)	sapiéntius (*more w.*)	sapientíssimē (*most w.*)
fácile (*easily*)	facílius (*more e.*)	facíllimē (*most e.*)
béne (*well*)	mélius (*better*)	óptimē (*best*)
mále (*badly*)	peíus (*worse*)	péssimē (*worst*)
múltum (*much*)	plūs (*more,* quantity)	**plū́rimum** (*most, very much*)
magnópere (*greatly*)	**mágis** (*more,* quality)	máximē (*most, especially*)
párum (*little, not very [much]*)	mínus (*less*)	mínimē (*least*)

(prō)	príus (*before, earlier*)	**prī́mō** (*first, at first*) **prī́mum** (*in the first place*)
díū (*for a long time*)	**diū́tius** (*longer*)	**diūtíssimē** (*very long*)

不规则的 Volō，velle，voluī，*to wish*

就像上一课介绍的 **ferō** 一样，**volō** 也是一个极为常用的第三变位法动词。虽然它在大多数情况下都是规则的，但也有几个不规则形式，包括现在时不定式 **velle**。请记住以下几点：

——**volō** 没有被动态形式，没有将来时不定式主动态和将来时主动态分词，也没有命令式；

——完成时系统是完全规则的；

——只有现在时直陈式（必须牢记）和现在时虚拟式（可与 **sim, sīs, sit** 比较）是不规则的；

——未完成时虚拟式与 **ferō** 类似；虽然由不规则的不定式 **velle** 构成，但它仍然遵循现在时不定式+人称词尾的通常模式；

——**vol-** 是现在时系统直陈式的词根，**vel-** 是现在时系统虚拟式的词根。

现在时直陈式	现在时虚拟式	未完成时虚拟式	不定式
1. vólō	vélim	véllem	现在时 vélle
2. vīs	vélīs	véllēs	完成时 voluísse
3. vult	vélit	véllet	将来时———
1. vólumus	velī́mus	vellḗmus	**分词**
2. vúltis	velī́tis	vellḗtis	现在时 vólēns
3. vólunt	vélint	véllent	

动词变位缩写式

以下第三人称单数动词变位缩写式（不规则形式作了突出显示）展示了 **volō** 总的变位情况；关于完整的变位形式，参见附录 p.450—451。

直陈式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	**vult**	vólet	volēbat	vóluit	volúerit	volúerat

虚拟式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	**vélit**	—	**véllet**	volúerit	—	voluísset

Nōlō 和 Mālō

复合词 **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** (**nē** + **volō**), *not to wish, to be unwilling* 和 **mālō, mālle, māluī** (**magis** + **volō**), *to want* (*something*) *more* 或 *instead, prefer* 的变位情况与 **volō** 非常类似,但词干中是长元音(**nō-, mā-**),还有其他一些非常特殊的形式,特别是在现在时直陈式中。

Nōlō 的现在时直陈式

单数 nṓlō, nōn vīs, nōn vult **复数** nṓlumus, nōn vúltis, nṓlunt

Mālō 的现在时直陈式

单数 mā́lō, mā́vīs, mā́vult **复数** mā́lumus, māvúltis, mā́lunt

下列动词变位缩写式列出了这些动词的一些有代表性的形式,不规则形式依旧作了突出显示,它们的完整变位形式请参见附录 p.450—451。

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
直陈式 主动态	**nōn vult**	nṓlet	nōlḗbat	nṓluit	nōlúerit	nōlúerat
虚拟式 主动态	**nṓlit**	—	**nṓllet**	nōlúerit	—	nōluísset
直陈式 主动态	**mā́vult**	mā́let	mālḗbat	mā́luit	mālúerit	mālúerat
虚拟式 主动态	**mā́lit**	—	**mā́llet**	mālúerit	—	māluísset

Nōlō 和否定性的命令

虽然 **volō** 和 **mālō** 都没有命令式,但 **nōlō** 却有单数和复数的命令式,它们经常与补充不定式连用,表达否定性的命令:

Nōlī manēre, Catilīna, *do not remain, Catiline*!

Nōlīte discēdere, amīcī meī, *do not leave, my friends*!

附带条件从句

由 **dummodo,** *provided that, so long as* 等一些表示临时性状况或"附带条件"的词所引导的从句要使用虚拟式;这些从句用 **nē** 作否定词。

Nōn timēbō, dummodo hīc remaneās, *I shall not be afraid, provided that you remain here.*

Erimus fēlīcēs, dummodo nē discēdās, *we shall be happy, so long as (provided that) you do not leave.*

请注意，这些从句中的动词都应按照直陈式来翻译。

词汇表

custṓdia, -ae, f., *protection, custody;* pl., *guards* (custodian, custodial)
exércitus, -ūs, m., *army* (exercise)
paupértās, paupertā́tis, f., *poverty, humble circumstances* (cp. **pauper** below)
dī́ves, gen. **dī́vitis** or **dī́tis,** *rich,* (Dives)
pār, gen. **páris** + dat. (cp. Ch. 35), *equal, like* (par, pair, parity, peer, peerless, disparage, disparity, umpire, nonpareil)
paúper, gen. **paúperis,** *of small means, poor* (poverty, impoverished; cp. **paupertās**)
dúmmodo, conj. + subj., *provided that, so long as*
All adverbs given in the list above, p. 220–21.
mā́lō, mā́lle, mā́luī, *to want (something) more, instead; prefer*
nṓlō, nṓlle, nṓluī, *to not . . . wish, be unwilling* (nolo contendere, nol. pros.)
páteō, patḗre, pátuī, *to be open, lie open; be accessible; be evident* (patent, pātent, patency)
praébeō, -bḗre, -buī, -bitum, *to offer, provide*
prōmíttō, -míttere, -mī́sī, -míssum, *to send forth; promise* (promissory)
vólō, vélle, vóluī, *to wish, want, be willing, will* (volition, voluntary, involuntary, volunteer, volitive, voluptuous, benevolent, malevolent, nolens volens)

练习与复习

1. Prīmō illī trēs rīdiculī nē mediocria quidem perīcula fortiter ferre poterant et ūllum auxilium offerre nōlēbant.
2. Maximē rogāvimus quantum auxilium septem fēminae adferrent et utrum dubitārent an nōs mox adiūtūrae essent.
3. Dēnique armīs collātīs, imperātor prōmīsit decem mīlia mīlitum celerrimē discessūra esse, dummodo satis cōpiārum reciperent.
4. Paria beneficia, igitur, in omnēs dignōs cōnferre māvultis.
5. Haec mala melius expōnant nē dīvitiās minuant aut honōrēs suōs āmittant.
6. At volumus cognōscere cūr sīc invīderit et cūr verba eius tam dūra fuerint.
7. Cum cēterī hās īnsidiās cognōverint, vult in exsilium fūrtim ac quam celerrimē sē cōnferre ut rūmōrēs et invidiam vītet.

8. Multīne discipulī tantum studium ūsque praestant ut hās sententiās facillimē ūnō annō legere possint?
9. Cum dīvitiās āmīsisset et ūnum assem nōn habēret, tamen omnēs cīvēs ingenium mōrēsque eius maximē laudābant.
10. Plūra meliōraque lēgibus aequīs quam ferrō certē faciēmus.
11. Oculī tuī sunt pulchriōrēs sīderibus caelī, mea puella; es gracilis et bella, ac ōscula sunt dulciōra vīnō: amēmus sub lūce lūnae!
12. Iste hostis, in Italiam cum multīs elephantīs veniēns, prīmō pugnāre nōluit et plūrimōs diēs in montibus cōnsūmpsit.
13. Sī nepōs tē ad cēnam invītābit, mēnsam explēbit et tibi tantum vīnī offeret quantum vīs; nōlī, autem, nimium bibere.
14. Do you wish to live longer and better?
15. He wishes to speak as wisely as possible so that they may yield to him very quickly.
16. When these plans had been learned, we asked why he had been unwilling to prepare the army with the greatest possible care.
17. That man, who used to be very humble, now so keenly wishes to have wealth that he is willing to lose his two best friends.

古代名言

1. Occāsiō nōn facile praebētur sed facile ac repente āmittitur. (Publilius Syrus.)
2. Nōbīscum vīvere iam diūtius nōn potes; nōlī remanēre; id nōn ferēmus. (Cicero.)
3. Vīs rēctē vīvere? Quis nōn? (*Horace.—**rēctus, -a, -um,** *straight, right.*)
4. Plūs nōvistī quid faciendum sit. (Terence.)
5. Mihi vērē dīxit quid vellet. (Terence.)
6. Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur. (*Cicero.—**congregāre,** *to gather into a flock.*)
7. Tē magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.)
8. Hominēs libenter id crēdunt quod volunt. (Caesar.—**libēns, -entis,** *willing.*)
9. Multa ēveniunt hominibus quae volunt et quae nōlunt. (Plautus.—**ēvenīre,** *to happen.*)
10. Cōnsiliō melius contendere atque vincere possumus quam īrā. (Publilius Syrus.)
11. Optimus quisque facere māvult quam dīcere. (Sallust.—**māvult quam = magis vult quam.**)
12. Omnēs sapientēs fēlīciter, perfectē, fortūnātē vīvunt. (Cicero.—**perfectus, -a, -um,** *complete.*)
13. Maximē eum laudant quī pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)
14. Sī vīs scīre quam nihil malī in paupertāte sit, cōnfer pauperem et dīvitem: pauper saepius et fidēlius rīdet. (Seneca.)
15. Magistrī puerīs crūstula dant ut prīma elementa discere velint. (Hor-

ace.—**crūstulum, -ī,** *cookie.*—**elementum, -ī.**)

16. Sī vīs mē flēre, dolendum est prīmum ipsī tibi. (*Horace.—**flēre,** to weep.)

THE CHARACTER OF CIMON

Cimōn celeriter ad summōs honōrēs pervēnit. Habēbat enim satis ēloquentiae, summam līberālitātem, magnam scientiam lēgum et reī mīlitāris, quod cum patre ā puerō in exercitibus fuerat. Itaque hic populum urbānum in suā potestāte facillimē tenuit et apud exercitum valuit plūrimum auctōritāte.

Cum ille occidisset, Athēniēnsēs dē eō diū doluērunt; nōn sōlum in bellō, autem, sed etiam in pāce eum graviter dēsīderāvērunt. Fuit enim vir tantae līberālitātis ut, cum multōs hortōs habēret, numquam in hīs custōdiās pōneret; nam hortōs līberrimē patēre voluit nē populus ab hīs frūctibus prohibērētur. Saepe autem, cum aliquem minus bene vestītum vidēret, eī suum amiculum dedit. Multōs locuplētāvit; multōs pauperēs vīvōs iūvit atque mortuōs suō sūmptū extulit. Sīc minimē mīrum est sī, propter mōrēs Cimōnis, vīta eius fuit sēcūra et mors eius fuit omnibus tam acerba quam mors cuiusdam ex familiā.

(Nepos, *Cimōn;* adapted excerpts.—**per-venīre.**—**ēloquentia, -ae.**—**līberālitās, -tātis.**—**mīlitāris, -e.**—**ā puerō,** *from his boyhood.*—**potestās, -tātis,** *power.*—**auctōritās, -tātis,** *authority;* the abl. tells in what respect.—**Athēniēnsēs,** *Athenians.*—**hortus, -ī,** garden,—**vestītus, -a, -um,** *clothed.*—**amiculum, -ī,** *cloak.*—**locuplētāre,** *to enrich.*—**sūmptus, -ūs,** *expense.*—**extulit: ef-ferō,** *bury.*—**mīrus, -a, -um,** *surprising.*—**sē-cūrus, -a, -um: sē-** means *without.*)

A VACATION . . . FROM YOU!

Quid mihi reddat ager quaeris, Line, Nōmentānus?
  Hoc mihi reddit ager: tē, Line, nōn videō!

(*Martial 2.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—**reddō, -ere,** *to give back, return (in profit).*—**Linus, -ī,** another of Martial's addressees.—**Nōmentānus, -a, -um,** *in Nomentum,* a town of Latium known for its wine industry.)

PLEASE . . . DON'T!

Nīl recitās et vīs, Māmerce, poēta vidērī.
  Quidquid vīs estō, dummodo nīl recitēs!

(*Martial 2.88; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl = nihil.**—**Māmercus, -ī.**—**estō,** fut. imper. of **esse,** "*Be . . . !*")

词源点滴

In the readings

3. rectitude, rectify, direct, erect, correct; cp. right. 6. congregate, segregate, gregarious, aggregate. 9. event (= out-come), eventual. 12. perfect (= made or done thoroughly)."Cimon": vest, vestment, invest, divest.—sumptuous, sumptuary.—miraculous, admire. "Vacation": render, rendering, rendition.

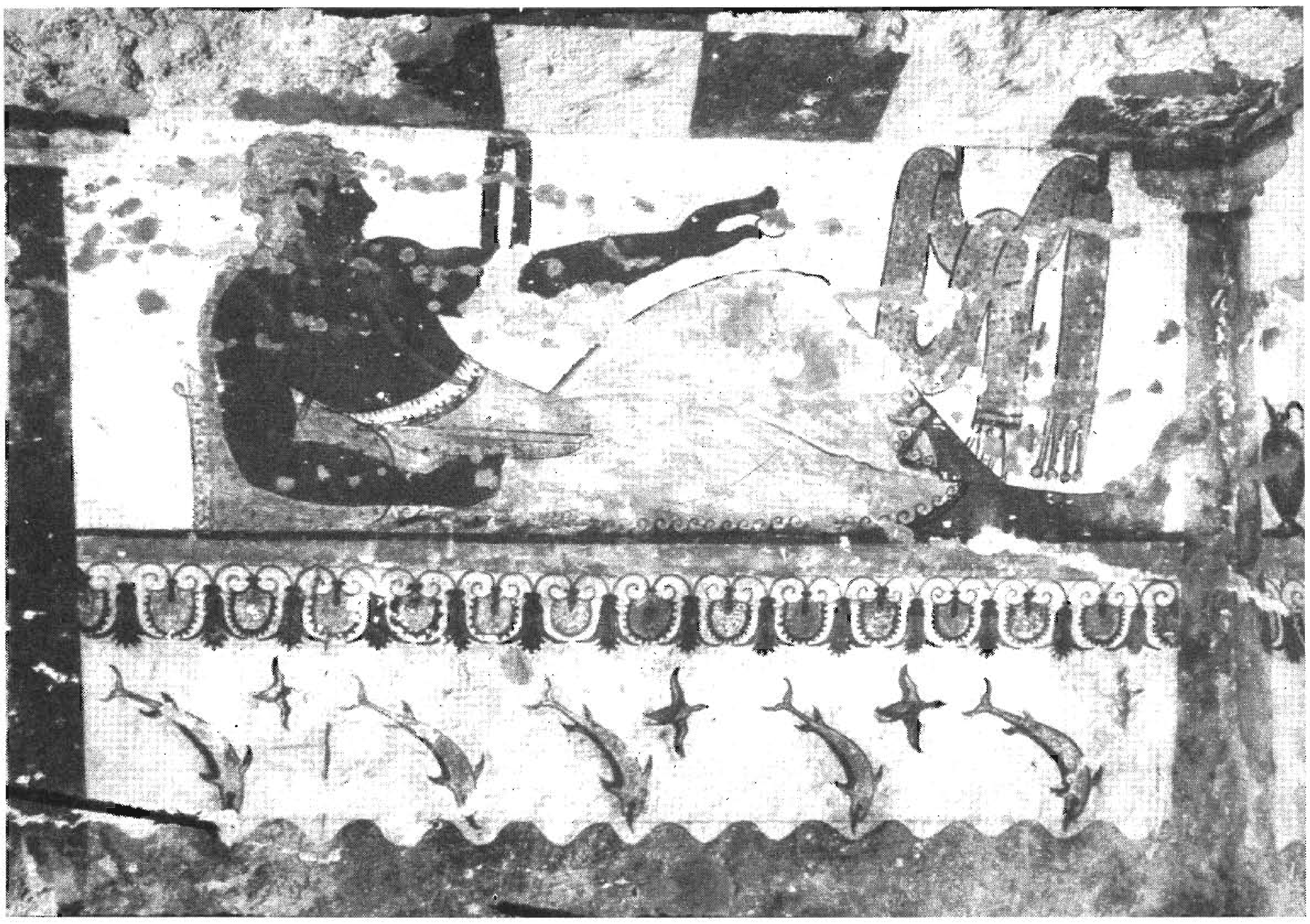
欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 现代奥林匹克运动会的座右铭是三个比较级副词:**citius, altius**(源于 **altus, -a, -um,** *high*), **fortius**。本课新出现的不规则动词,特别是 **volō** 和 **nōlō** 在拉丁语中极为常用,在英语中也随处可见。例如,**nōlō** 是 **nōlō contendere,** *I am unwilling to contest*(the accusation)的简写,即法律抗辩;**nol. pros.**是 **nōlle prōsequī,** *to be unwilling to pursue* (the matter) 的简写, 意为终止诉讼;**nōlēns, volēns,** *unwilling* (*or*) *willing*,即不管愿不愿意,就像"willy-nilly"("will ye, nill ye" 的缩写);"d.v." 是 **deō volente** 的缩写;**volō, nōn valeō,** *I am willing but not able*;**nōlī mē tangere** 既指 "不要触犯我", 也对应于英语中的 "凤仙花"[1]; **quantum vīs,** *as much as you wish*(程度也许要高于单纯地 **quantum satis** [第三十课]!);**Deus vult** 是第一次十字军东征的口号;**mālō morī quam foedārī**,意译为 "士可杀不可辱"(直译为 *I wish to die rather than to be dishonored*。关于异态动词 **morior**,参见第三十四课)。曾经有一位博学的人写道(证明了长音符号的重要性),**mālō malō malō mālō,** *I'd rather be in an apple tree than a bad man in adversity*;第一个**mālō** 源于 **mālum, -ī,** *apple, fruit-tree*,这让我们想起了贺拉斯对罗马 **cēna** 的刻画,从开胃小吃到餐后甜点,**ab ovō**(**ovum, -ī,** *egg*) **ūsque ad māla**,这个短语很像英语中的"from soup to nuts"(从头到尾,一应俱全),后来成了一个习语,表示"自始至终"。

Et cētera ex vocābulāriō novō: cēterīs pāribus, *all else being equal*; **custōdia** 与**custōs, custōdis,** *guard* 和 **custōdīre,** *to guard* 有关, 所以才有尤维纳利斯的讽刺性的质问:**sed quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs**;**exercitus** 与 **exerceō, exercēre,** *to practice, exercise* 有关, 由名词 **exercitātiō** 产生出了对学习拉丁语的学生非常有益的一个习语:**exercitātiō est optimus magister**。所以,**valēte, discipulī/ae, et exercēte, exercēte, exercēte!**

---

[1] 凤仙花的英文名字是"Touch-me-not",直译为"勿碰我"。——译者注



Banqueter with egg, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Lionesses, late 6th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy

第三十三课

条件从句

条件句

条件句是最常见的句式之一,其他常见句式还有陈述句、问句和感叹句。我们已经在拉丁语阅读中多次见到过条件句，其基本句式由两个子句构成:(1)“前提句”(或“protasis”,希腊词,指 *proposition* 或 *premise*),这是一个从句,通常由 **sī,** *if* 或 **nisi,** *if not*,*unless* 来引导，陈述一种假设性的活动或状况;(2)“结论句”(或“apodosis”,希腊词,指 *outcome* 或 *result*),这是一个主句,通常表达如果前提为真所预期的结果。

条件从句有六种基本类型。其中三种的动词是直陈式,另外三种是虚拟式,原因很简单。虽然任何条件从句所描述的过去、现在和将来的活动在某种程度上都是假设性的,但直陈式用于前提句更有可能实现的情况,虚拟式则用于前提句不大可能实现,或者前提句和结论句都与实际事实相反的情况。认真研究下面的总结,弄清楚每一种条件从句的名称是什么,如何进行辨识以及如何准确地翻译。

直陈条件句

1. **现在的简单事实:**Sī id facit, prūdēns est. *If he is doing this* [*and it is quite possible that he is*], *he is wise.* 两个子句均使用现在时直陈式;动词均按照现在时直陈式来翻译。
2. **过去的简单事实:**Sī id fēcit, prūdēns fuit. *If he did this* [*and quite possibly he did*], *he was wise.* 两个子句均使用过去时(完成时或未完成时)直陈式;动词均按照过去时直陈式来翻译。

3. **将来的简单事实**(有时称为“可能性大的将来”[future more vivid]):Sī id faciet, prūdēns erit. *If he does (will do) this [and quite possibly he will], he will be wise.* 两个子句均使用将来时直陈式；前提句中的动词按照现在时来翻译(英语中的“if + 现在时”含有将来的意思),结论句中的动词按照将来时来翻译(偶尔其中一个或两个子句也会使用将来完成时,它实际上与将来时表示同样的含义。参见“古代名言”句 8 以及“B.Y.O.B.”的第 3 行)。

虚拟条件句

直陈条件句着眼于可能性的事实,虚拟条件句则着眼于理想中的情况而非事实,它所描述的要么是不大可能实现或无法生动设想的情况(有时称为“可能性小的将来”[future less vivid]),要么是与现在正在发生或者过去已经发生的事情相反的情况(两种“与事实相反”的类型)。

1. **与现在事实相反**:Sī id faceret, prūdēns esset. *If he were doing this [but in fact he is not], he would be wise [but he is not].* 两个子句均使用未完成时虚拟式;用助动词 *were* (. . . *ing*)和 *would* (*be*)来翻译。
2. **与过去事实相反**:Sī id fēcisset, prūdēns fuisset. *If he had done this [but he did not], he would have been wise [but he was not].* 两个子句均使用过去完成时虚拟式;用助动词 *had* 和 *would have*来翻译。
3. **可能性小的将来**(有时称为“should-would”句):Sī id faciat, prūdēns sit. *If he should do this [and he may, or he may not], he would be wise.* 两个子句均使用现在时虚拟式;用助动词 *should* 和 *would* 来翻译。

这六种基本的条件从句偶尔也会有一些变动,那就是在结论句中使用命令式,在前提句和结论句中使用带有不同时态和语气的“混合条件”,使用不同的引导词(如 **dum**)等等,但是根据语境,这些情况都不难处理。

例句

将下列条件从句进行分类。

1. Sī hoc dīcet, errābit; *if he says this, he will be wrong.*
2. Sī hoc dīcit, errat; *if he says this, he is wrong.*
3. Sī hoc dīxisset, errāvisset; *if he had said this, he would have been wrong.*
4. Sī hoc dīcat, erret; *if he should say this, he would be wrong.*
5. Sī hoc dīxit, errāvit; *if he said this, he was wrong.*
6. Sī hoc dīceret, errāret; *if he were saying this, he would be wrong.*
7. Sī veniat, hoc videat; *if he should come, he would see this.*
8. Sī vēnit, hoc vīdit; *if he came, he saw this.*

9. Sī venīret, hoc vidēret; *if he were coming, he would see this.*
10. Sī veniet, hoc vidēbit; *if he comes, he will see this.*
11. Sī vēnisset, hoc vīdisset; *if he had come, he would have seen this.*

词汇表

inítium, -iī, n., *beginning, commencement* (initial, initiate, initiation)
ops, ópis, f., *help, aid;* **ópēs, ópum,** pl., *power, resources, wealth* (opulent, opulence; cp. **cōpia,** from **con-** + **ops)**
philósophus, -ī, m., and **philósopha, -ae,** f., *philosopher* (philosophy, philosophical)
plēbs, plḗbis, f., *the common people, populace, plebeians* (plebs, plebe, plebeian, plebiscite)
sāl, sális, m., *salt; wit* (salad, salami, salary, salina, saline, salify, salimeter, salinometer, sauce, sausage)
spéculum, -ī, n., *mirror* (speculate, speculation; cp. **spectō,** Ch. 34)
quis, quid, after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** indef. pron., *anyone, anything, someone, something* (cp. **quis? quid? quisque, quisquis)**
cándidus, -a, -um, *shining, bright, white; beautiful* (candescent, candid, candidate, candor, incandescent, candle, chandelier)
mérus, -a, -um, *pure, undiluted* (mere, merely)
suā́vis, suā́ve, *sweet* (suave, suaveness, suavity, suasion, dissuade, persuasion; cp. **persuādeō,** Ch. 35)
-ve, conj. suffixed to a word = **aut** before the word (cp. **-que)**, *or*
heu, interj., *ah!, alas!* (a sound of grief or pain)
súbitō, adv., *suddenly* (sudden, suddenness)
recū́sō (1), *to refuse* (recuse, recusant; cp. **causa)**
trā́dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (trāns + dō), *to give over, surrender; hand down, transmit, teach* (tradition, traditional, traitor, treason)

练习与复习

1. Dummodo exercitus opem mox ferat, moenia urbis celeriter cōnservāre poterimus.
2. Cum cōnsilia hostium ab initiō cognōvissēs, prīmō tamen ūllum auxilium offerre aut etiam centum mīlitēs prōmittere nōluistī.
3. Sī dīvitiae et invidia nōs ab amōre et honōre ūsque prohibent, dīvitēsne vērē sumus?
4. Pauper quidem nōn erit pār cēterīs nisi scientiam ingeniumve habēbit; sī haec habeat, autem, multī magnopere invideant.
5. Nisi īnsidiae patērent, ferrum eius maximē timērēmus.
6. Sī quis rogābit quid nunc discās, refer tē artem nōn mediocrem sed ūtilissimam ac difficillimam discere.
7. Lēgēs ita scrībantur ut dīvitēs et plēbs—etiam pauper sine asse—sint parēs.
8. Sī custōdiae dūriōrēs fortiōrēsque ad casam tuam contendissent,

heu, numquam tanta scelera suscēpissēs et hī omnēs nōn occidissent.
9. Illa fēmina sapientissima, cum id semel cognōvisset, ad eōs celerrimē sē contulit et omnēs opēs suās praebuit.
10. Dūrum exsilium tam ācrem mentem ūnō annō mollīre nōn poterit.
11. Propter omnēs rūmōrēs pessimōs (quī nōn erant vērī), nātae suāvēs eius magnopere dolēbant et dormīre nōn poterant.
12. If those philosophers should come soon, you would be happier.
13. If you had not answered very wisely, they would have hesitated to offer us peace.
14. If anyone does these three things well, he will live better.
15. If you were willing to read better books, you would most certainly learn more.

古代名言

1. Sī vīs pācem, parā bellum. (Flavius Vegetius.—**parā,** *prepare for.*)
2. Arma sunt parvī pretiī, nisi vērō cōnsilium est in patriā. (Cicero.—**pretium, -iī,** *value.*)
3. Salūs omnium ūnā nocte certē āmissa esset, nisi illa sevēritās contrā istōs suscepta esset. (Cicero.—**sevēritās, -tātis.**)
4. Sī quid dē mē posse agī putābis, id agēs—sī tū ipse ab istō perīculō eris līber. (Cicero.)
5. Sī essem mihi cōnscius ūllīus culpae, aequō animō hoc malum ferrem. (Phaedrus.—**cōnscius, -a, -um,** *conscious.*)
6. Dīcis tē vērē mālle fortūnam et mōrēs antīquae plēbis; sed sī quis ad illa subitō tē agat, illum modum vītae recūsēs. (Horace.)
7. Minus saepe errēs, sī sciās quid nesciās. (Publilius Syrus.)
8. Dīcēs "heu" sī tē in speculō vīderis. (Horace.)
9. Nīl habet īnfēlīx paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod rīdiculōs hominēs facit. (*Juvenal.—**nīl = nihil.—quod,** *the fact that.*)

B.Y.O.B., etc., etc.

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
paucīs (sī tibi dī favent) diēbus—
sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
5 et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs;
haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
cēnābis bene; nam tuī Catullī
plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.
Sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs,
10 seu quid suāvius ēlegantiusve est:
nam unguentum dabo, quod meae puellae
dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;
quod tū cum olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,
tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

(*Catullus 13; meter: hendecasyllabic. The poet invites a friend to dinner, but there's a hitch and a BIG surprise.—**favēre** + dat., *to be favorable toward, favor.*—**cachinna, -ae,** *laugh, laughter.*—**venustus, -a, -um,** *charming.*—**sacculus, -ī,** *money-bag, wallet.*—**arānea, -ae,** *spiderweb.*—**contrā,** here adv., *on the other hand, in return.*—**seu,** conj., *or.*—**ēlegāns,** gen. **ēlegantis.**—**unguentum, -ī,** *salve, perfume.*—**dabo:** remember that **-ō** was often shortened in verse.—**dōnārunt** = **dōnāvērunt,** from **dōnāre,** *to give.*—**Venus, -neris,** f., and **Cupīdō, -dinis,** m.; Venus and Cupid, pl. here to represent all the fostering powers of Love.—**quod . . . olfaciēs** = **cum tū id olfaciēs.**—**olfaciō, -ere,** *to smell.*—For formal discussion of the "jussive noun" clause **deōs rogābis . . . ut . . . faciant,** easily translated here, see Ch. 36.—**tōtum . . . nāsum,** from **nāsus, -ī,** *nose,* objective complement with **tē;** the wide separation of adj. and noun suggests the cartoon-like enormity of the imagined schnoz!)

THE RICH GET RICHER

Semper pauper eris, sī pauper es, Aemiliāne:
  dantur opēs nūllī nunc nisi dīvitibus.

(*Martial 5.81.; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Aemiliānus, -ī.**)

ARISTOTLE, TUTOR OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

An Philippus, rēx Macedonum, voluisset Alexandrō, fīliō suō, prīma elementa litterārum trādī ab Aristotele, summō eius aetātis philosophō, aut hic suscēpisset illud maximum officium, nisi initia studiōrum pertinēre ad summam sapientissimē crēdidisset?

(Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiōnēs Ōrātōriae* 1.1.23.—**an,** interrog. conj., *or, can it be that.*—**Macedonēs, -donum,** m./f. pl., *Macedonians.*—**Aristotelēs, -telis.**—**pertinēre ad,** *to relate to, affect.*—**summa, -ae,** *highest part, whole.*)

YOUR LOSS, MY GAIN!

Cum Quīntus Fabius Maximus magnō cōnsiliō Tarentum fortissimē recēpisset et Salīnātor (quī in arce fuerat, urbe āmissā) dīxisset, "Meā operā, Quīnte Fabī, Tarentum recēpistī," Fabius, mē audiente, "Certē," inquit rīdēns, "nam nisi tū urbem āmīsissēs, numquam eam recēpissem."

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 4.11.—During the second Punic War, Tarentum revolted from the Romans to Hannibal, though the Romans under Marcus Livius Salinator continued to hold the citadel throughout this period. In 209 B.C. the city was recaptured by Quintus Fabius Maximus.—**Tarentum -ī,** a famous city in southern Italy (which the Romans called Magna Graecia).—**meā operā,** *thanks to me.*)

词源点滴

In the readings

2. price, precious, prize, praise, appraise, appreciate, depreciate. 3. severe,

persevere, perseverance, asseverate. 5. conscious, unconscious, conscience.

"B.Y.O.B.": favorite, disfavor.—cachinnate, cachinnation.—sack, satchel.—araneid.—elegance, elegantly.—unguent, unguentary.—donate, donation, donor.—olfaction, olfactory, olfactometer, olfactronics.—nasal, nasalize, nasalization; "nose", "nostril", and "nozzle" are cognate. "Aristotle": pertain, pertinent, pertinacity, purtenance, appertain, appurtenance, impertinent, impertinence.—sum, summary, summation.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 下面是一些广为人知的条件从句：**sī nātūra negat, facit indignātiō versum,** *if nature denies*（即"如果我缺少天份"）, *indignation creates my verse*（语出讽刺作家尤维纳利斯，他可是两者都不缺！）；**sī fortūna iuvat; sī fēcistī, negā!**（一位律师的忠告）；**sī Deus nōbīscum, quis contrā nōs**（动词省去了，但意思很清楚）；**sī post fāta venit glōria, nōn properō,** *if glory comes (only) after death, I'm in no hurry!*（马提雅尔）；**sī sīc omnēs**，表示一种怅惘，指"要是每件事都像这样就好了"。

Ex vocābulāriō novō quoque: ab initiō 是英语中的常用短语，指"从一开始"；竞选罗马公职的人穿 **toga candida,** *white toga*，英语中的"candidate"一词便是由此而来。罗马人把未掺水的酒称为 **merum**（那些嗜酒的家伙吸收的正是这种东西）；**ope et cōnsiliō** 可以将生活管理得很好。"With a grain of salt"（有保留地，半信半疑地）这一短语来自拉丁语 **cum grānō salis**；**sāl Atticum** 指干巴巴的 *Athenian wit*；"salary"也是源于 **sāl**，因为罗马士兵薪水的一部分就是一袋盐（我们"挣钱养家"["bring home the (salty) bacon"，字面意思是"我们把咸肉带回家"]，罗马人却把盐带回家！）。艺术是 **speculum vītae**。如果你还记得如何由形容词构成副词，你就可以猜出谚语 **suāviter in modō, fortiter in rē** 的意思了，这是拉丁语老师的好榜样；读乐谱时，你可能见过 **subitō** 一词，这是一个音乐记号，意为*quickly*。

希望本课结束时的这些 **miscellānea**（来自 **miscellāneus, -a, -um,** *varied, mixed*）能够给你带来乐趣。一个理由是：**sī fīnis bonus est, tōtum bonum erit**，这是一句古老的谚语，也是一个"混合条件从句"，在这里，我把它意译为"结局好，一切好（包括本课在内）！"：**et vōs omnēs, quoque valeātis!**

第三十四课

异态动词；特殊异态动词加夺格

异态动词

拉丁语中有一些常用的“异态动词”[1]，它们有着被动的词尾，含义却是主动的。本课将要学到的新形式不多（只有命令式）；最重要的就是记住哪些动词是异态的，从而把它们翻译成主动态。要想做到这一点，就要认真地学习词汇。被动形式 / 主动含义的规则也有一些例外，这些情况需要特别加以注意。

主要部分与变位

由下面一些例子可以看出，异态动词一般只有三个主要部分，它们是规则动词的前三个主要部分的被动对应物（1. 第一人称单数现在时直陈式；2. 现在时不定式；3. 第一人称单数完成时直陈式）。

现在时直陈式	现在时不定式	完成时直陈式
hórtor, *I urge*	hortā́rī, *to urge*	hortā́tus (-a, -um) sum, *I urged*
fáteor, *I confess*	fatḗrī, *to confess*	fássus (-a, -um) sum, *I confessed*
séquor, *I follow*	séquī, *to follow*	secū́tus (-a, -um) sum, *I followed*
mṓlior, *I work at*	mōlī́rī, *to work at*	mōlī́tus (-a, -um) sum, *I worked at*
pátior, *I suffer*	pátī, *to suffer*	pássus (-a, -um) sum, *I suffered*

例词 Hortor 和 Sequor 的各种形式

异态动词也是根据与规则动词同样的规则进行被动态变位的；下面只列出了一些有代表性的形式，前面五个例词的完整变位请参见附录 p.447—449。

[1] 亦称“冒被动词”、“异相动词”。——译者注

直陈式

现在时

1. hórtor, *I urge*	séquor, *I follow*
2. hortā́ris (-re), *you urge*	séqueris (-re), *you follow*
3. hortā́tur, *he urges*	séquitur, *he follows*
1. hortā́mur, *we urge*	séquimur, *we follow*
2. hortā́minī, *you urge*	sequíminī, *you follow*
3. hortántur, *they urge*	sequúntur, *they follow*

未完成时

1. hortā́bar, *I was urging*	sequḗbar, *I was following*
2. hortābā́ris (-re), *you were urging*	sequēbā́ris (-re), *you were following,*
etc.	etc.

将来时

1. hortā́bor, *I shall urge*	séquar, *I shall follow*
2. hortā́beris (-re), *you will urge*	sequḗris (-re), *you will follow*
3. hortā́bitur, *he will urge*	sequḗtur, *he will follow*
etc.	etc.

完成时

hortā́tus, -a, -um sum, *I urged*	secū́tus, -a, -um sum, *I followed*
etc.	etc.

过去完成时

hortā́tus, -a, -um éram, *I had urged*	secū́tus, -a, -um éram, *I had followed*
etc.	etc.

将来完成时

hortā́tus, -a, -um érō, *I shall have urged*	secū́tus, -a, -um érō, *I shall have followed*
etc.	etc.

虚拟式

现在时

hórter, hortḗris, hortḗtur	séquar, sequā́ris, sequā́tur
etc.	etc.

未完成时

hortā́rer, hortārḗris, hortārḗtur	séquerer, sequerḗris, sequerḗtur
etc.	etc.

完成时

hortā́tus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.　　secū́tus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.

过去完成时

hortā́tus, -a, -um éssem, etc.　　secū́tus, -a, -um éssem, etc.

动词变位缩写式

下面是 **fateor, fatērī, fassus sum** 的第三人称单数动词变位缩写式，由它可以看出异态动词变位缩写式的一般情况；请记住，它们对应的所有英语词都是主动态的，即 *he confesses, he will confess,* 等等。

直陈式

现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
fatḗtur	fatḗbitur	fatēbā́tur	fássus est	fássus érit	fássus érat

虚拟式

现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
fateā́tur	——	fatērḗtur	fássus sit	——	fássus ésset

分词和不定式

下面给出了典型异态动词所有的分词和不定式形式，这倒不是因为出现了什么新的形式，而是因为它们并不完全符合异态动词被动形式 / 主动含义这一基本规则。

分词

现在时	hórtāns, *urging*	séquēns, *following*
完成时	hortā́tus, -a, -um, *having urged*	secū́tus, -a, -um, *having followed*
将来时	hortātū́rus, -a, -um, *about to urge*	secūtū́rus, -a, -um, *about to follow*
动形词	hortándus, -a, -um, *to be urged*	sequéndus, -a, -um, *to be followed*

不定式

现在时	hortā́rī, *to urge*	séquī, *to follow*
完成时	hortā́tus, -a, -um ésse, *to have urged*	secū́tus, -a, -um ésse, *to have followed*
将来时	hortātū́rus, -a, -um ésse, *to be about to urge*	secūtū́rus, -a, -um ésse, *to be about to follow*

例外:和规则动词一样,异态动词也有四个分词,但它只有三个不定式,分别对应于三种时态。其中有三个分词和一个不定式属于例外情况,因为它们违反了异态动词被动形式/主动含义这一基本规则:

1. 现在时分词和将来时分词:主动形式,主动含义。
2. 动形词(将来时被动态分词):被动形式,被动含义。
3. 将来时不定式:主动形式,主动含义。

命令式

异态动词的现在时命令式当然是现在时命令式的“被动态”形式。这些形式我们以前没有见过,因为它们只见于异态动词,不过掌握起来并不困难。

1. 第二人称单数命令式的拼写与现在时*直陈式的另一种*第二人称单数相同,如 **sequere**!(请注意,它也是并不存在的现在时主动态*不定式*的形式:要特别注意不要把这一特殊的异态动词命令式形式误当成不定式。)

2. 第二人称复数命令式的拼写与现在时直陈式的第二人称复数相同,如 **sequiminī**!

考察下面几个例子:

2. hortā́re, *urge!*	fatḗre, *confess!*	séquere	mōlī́re	pátere
2. hortā́minī, *urge!*	fatḗminī, *confess!*	sequíminī	mōlī́minī	patíminī

半异态动词

半异态动词是指这样一些动词,它们在现在时系统中是正常的,但在完成时系统中却是异态的,这一点由动词的主要部分就可以看出来。例如:

aúdeō, *I dare*	audḗre, *to dare*	aúsus sum, *I dared*
gaúdeō, *I rejoice*	gaudḗre, *to rejoice*	gāvī́sus sum, *I rejoiced*

特殊异态动词加夺格

有少数异态动词通常与手段夺格连用,其中最常见的是 **ūtor**(及其复合词)(其他几个是 **fruor,** *to enjoy,* **fungor,** *to perform,* **potior,** *to possess* 以及 **vēscor,** *to eat*,它们在本书中没有介绍,但在日后的阅读中可能会碰到)。事实上,**ūtor,** *to use, enjoy* 是一个反身代词,字面意思是借助某物 *to benefit oneself*。[1]

[1] *比较法语词* **se servir de**, “to use”, *原意为*“to serve oneself with”。

Ūtitur stilō,

he is benefiting himself by means of a pencil（直译）.

he is using a pencil（意译）.

Nōn audent ūtī nāvibus, *they do not dare to use the ships.*

Nōn ausī sunt ūtī nāvibus, *they did not dare to use the ships.*

含有异态动词的句子的更多例子

1. Eum patientem haec mala hortātī sunt,
   they encouraged him (as he was) suffering these evils.
2. Eum passūrum haec mala hortātī sunt,
   they encouraged him (as he was) about to suffer these evils.
3. Is, haec mala passus, hortandus est,
   this man, having suffered these evils, ought to be encouraged.
4. Is haec mala fortiter patiētur,
   he will suffer these evils bravely.
5. Eum sequere et haec mōlīre,
   follow him and work at these things.
6. Eum sequī et haec mōlīrī nōn ausus es,
   you did not dare to follow him and work at these things.
7. Eum sequeris/sequēris,
   you are following/will follow him.
8. Eum hortēmur et sequāmur,
   let us encourage and follow him.
9. Cicerō Graecīs litterīs ūtēbātur,
   Cicero used to enjoy Greek literature.

词汇表

ánima, -ae, f., *soul, spirit* (anima, animism, animatism, animation, animated, inanimate, etc.; cp. **animal, animus**)

remíssiō, remissiṓnis, f., *letting go, release; relaxation* (remiss, remission; from **re + mittō**)

vōx, vṓcis, f., *voice, word* (vocal, vocalic, vocalize, vociferous, vowel; vox angelica, vox humana, vox populi; cp. **vocō**)

advérsus, -a, -um, *opposite, adverse* (adversary, adversative, adversely, adversity; cp. **vertō**)

tā́lis, tā́le, *such, of such a sort* (cp. **quālis,** *of what sort, what kind of*)

vae, interj., often + dat., *alas, woe to*

árbitror, arbitrā́rī, arbitrā́tus sum, *to judge, think* (arbiter, arbitress, arbitration, arbitrator, arbitrary, arbitrarily)
cṓnor, cōnā́rī, cōnā́tus sum, *to try, attempt* (conation, conative)
crḗscō, crḗscere, crḗvī, crḗtum, *to increase* (crescent, crescendo, crescive, concrescence, concrete, decrease, excrescence, increment, accretion, accrue, crew, recruit)
ēgrédior, ḗgredī, ēgréssus sum, *to go out* (aggression, congress, degrade, digress, egress, grade, gradient, gradual, graduate, ingredient, ingress, progress, regress, retrogress, transgress)
fáteor, fatḗrī, fássus sum, *to confess, admit* (confess, confession, profess, profession, professor; cp. **fābula, fāma, fātum,** also **for, fārī, fātus sum,** Ch. 40)
hórtor, hortā́rī, hortā́tus sum, *to encourage, urge* (hortatory, exhort, exhortation)
lóquor, lóquī, locū́tus sum, *to say, speak, tell* (loquacious, circumlocution, colloquial, elocution, eloquent, obloquy, soliloquy, ventriloquist)
mṓlior, mōlī́rī, mōlī́tus sum, *to work at, build, undertake, plan* (demolish, demolition; cp. **mōlēs,** *a large mass, massive structure*)
mórior, mórī, mórtuus sum, fut. act. part. **moritū́rus,** *to die* (moribund, mortuary; cp. **mors, mortālis, immortālis**)
nā́scor, nā́scī, nā́tus sum, *to be born; spring forth, arise* (agnate, cognate, innate, nascent, natal, nation, nature, naive; cp. **nāta, nātūra**)
pátior, pátī, pássus sum, *to suffer, endure; permit* (passion, passive, patient, compassion, compatible, incompatibility, impatient, impassioned, impassive, dispassionate)
proficī́scor, -ficī́scī, -féctus sum, *to set out, start* (profit and proficient from the related verb **prōficiō,** *to make headway, gain results*)
rū́sticor, rūsticā́rī, rūsticā́tus sum, *to live in the country* (rusticate, rustic, rural, cp. **rūsticus,** *rural,* **rūs**, Ch. 37)
sédeō, sedḗre, sḗdī, séssum, *to sit* (sedan, sedate, sedentary, sediment, sessile, session, assess, assiduous, president, siege, subsidy)
séquor, séquī, secū́tus sum, *to follow* (consequent, consecutive, sequence, sequel, subsequent; see Etymology below)
spéctō (1), *to look at, see* (spectate, spectator, spectacle, speculate, aspect, circumspect, inspect, prospect, respect, suspect; cp. **speculum**)
ū́tor, ū́tī, ū́sus sum + abl., *to use; enjoy, experience* (abuse, disuse, peruse, usual, usurp, usury, utensil, utilize, utility, utilitarian; cp. **ūtilis**)

练习与复习

1. Nisi quis plēbī opem celeriter referet auxiliumve prōmissum praebēbit, mīlia virōrum morientur.
2. Cum urbs plēna custōdiārum esset, nōn ausī estis suscipere scelera tam gravia quam voluerātis.
3. Dīc nunc cūr velīs tē ad istam dīvitem et candidam cōnferre. Vērē ac līberē loquere; nōlī recūsāre!

4. Dīvitiīs trāditīs, heu, illī philosophī eādem nocte subitō profectī sunt in exsilium, unde numquam ēgredī potuērunt.
5. Nē patiāmur hanc antīquissimam scientiam āmittī.
6. Fateor mē vīnō merō apud mē ūsūrum esse.
7. Ab initiō nōn comprehendistī quantus exercitus nōs sequerētur et quot elephantōs istī mīlitēs sēcum dūcerent.
8. Prīmō respondit sē nōlle sequī ducem mediocris virtūtis sapientiaeve, cum cīvitās in līmine bellī stāret.
9. Ex urbe subitō ēgressus, ferrō suō morī semel cōnātus est.
10. Cum Aristotelēs hortārētur hominēs ad virtūtem, tamen arbitrābātur virtūtem in hominibus nōn nāscī.
11. Māter paterque nunc rūsticantur ut ā labōribus remissiōne suāvī ūtantur.
12. Dā mihi, amābō tē, multum salis et vīnum aquamve, ut cēnā maximē ūtar.
13. They did not permit me to speak with him at that time.
14. We kept thinking (**arbitror**) that he would use the office more wisely.
15. If any one should use this water even once, he would die.
16. If those four soldiers had followed us, we would not have dared to put the weapons on the ships.
17. This dinner will be good, provided that you use salt.

古代名言

1. Cēdāmus Phoebō et, monitī, meliōra sequāmur. (*Virgil.—Phoebus Apollo was god of prophecy.)
2. Nam nēmō sine vitiīs nāscitur; optimus ille est quī minima habet. (Horace.)
3. Mundus est commūnis urbs deōrum atque hominum; hī enim sōlī, ratiōne ūtentēs, iūre ac lēge vīvunt. (Cicero.)
4. Tardē sed graviter vir sapiēns īrāscitur. (*Publilius Syrus.—**tardus, -a, -um,** *slow, late.*—**īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum,** *to become angry.*)
5. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, ēgredere ex urbe; patent portae; proficīscere; nōbīscum versārī iam diūtius nōn potes; id nōn feram, nōn patiar. (Cicero.—**Quae cum** = **Cum haec.**—**versor, versārī, versātus sum,** *to stay.*)
6. Cūra pecūniam crēscentem sequitur et dīves male dormit. (Horace.)
7. Sī in Britanniam profectus essēs, nēmō in illā tantā īnsulā iūre perītior fuisset. (Cicero.—**Britannia, -ae,** Britain.—**perītus, -a, -um** + abl., *skilled in.*)
8. Nisi laus nova nāscitur etiam vetus laus in incertō iacet ac saepe āmittitur. (Publilius Syrus.)—**vetus,** gen. **veteris,** *old.*)
9. Spērō autem mē secūtum esse in libellīs meīs tālem temperantiam ut nēmō bonus dē illīs querī possit. (Martial.—**temperantia, -ae.**—**queror, querī, questus sum,** *to complain.*)
10. Hōrae quidem et diēs et annī discēdunt; nec praeteritum tempus um-

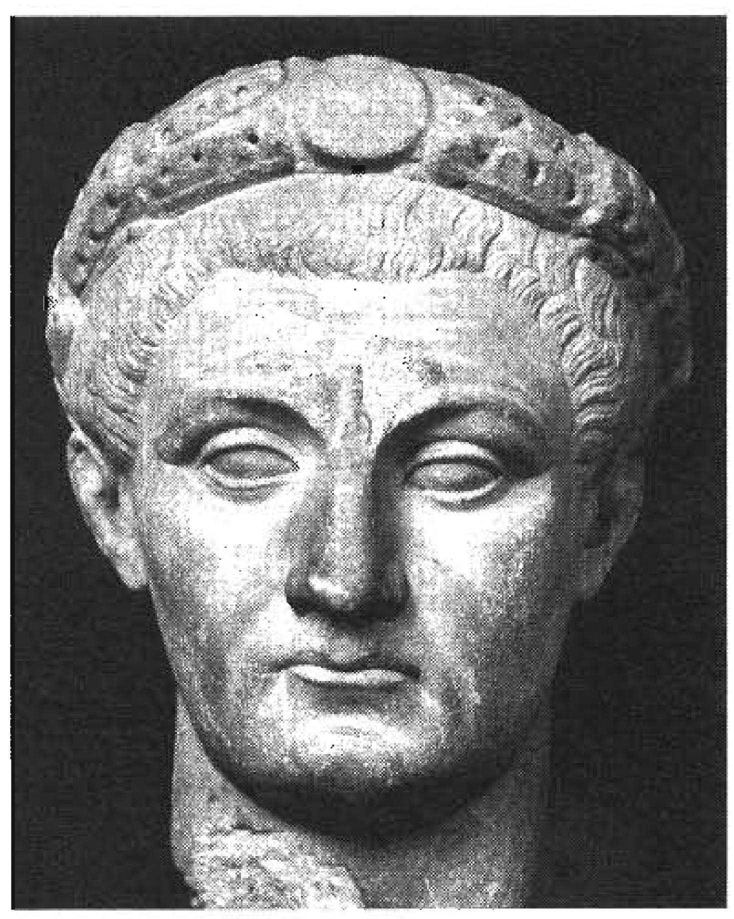
quam revertitur, nec quid sequātur potest scīrī. (Cicero.—**praeteritus, -a, -um,** *past.*—**revertor, revertī, reversus sum,** *to return.*)

11. Nōvistī mōrēs mulierum: dum mōliuntur, dum cōnantur, dum in speculum spectant, annus lābitur. (Terence.—**mulier, -eris,** *woman.*—**lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum,** *to slip, glide.*)
12. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās continet; nōn aquā, nōn igne in plūribus locīs ūtimur quam amīcitiā. (Cicero.)
13. Homō stultus! Postquam dīvitiās habēre coepit, mortuus est! (Cicero.—**postquam,** conj., *after.*)
14. Ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque fīnem. (*Virgil.—**Ō passī,** voc. pl., *O you who have . . . .*—**hīs** = **hīs rēbus gravibus.**)

CLAUDIUS' EXCREMENTAL EXPIRATION

Et ille quidem animam ēbulliit, et ex eō dēsiit vīvere vidērī. Exspīrāvit autem dum comoedōs audit, ut sciās mē nōn sine causā illōs timēre. Ultima vōx eius haec inter hominēs audīta est, cum maiōrem sonitum ēmisisset illā parte quā facilius loquēbātur: "Vae mē, putō, concacāvī." Quod an fēcerit, nesciō—omnia certē concacāvit!

(*Seneca, *Apocolocyntōsis* 4; a satirical farce on the emperor Claudius' death and deification.—**ēbulliō, -īre, ēbulliī,** *to bubble out,* + **animam,** comic for *he died.*—**ex eō,** sc. **tempore.**—**dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, -situm,** *to cease.*—**exspīrāre,** *to breathe out, die.*—**comoedus, -ī,** *comic actor.*—**sonitus, -ūs,** *sound.*—**ē** + **mittere.**—**illā parte,** sc. **ex,** i.e., his bottom.—**concacāre,** *to defecate upon.*—**quod** = **id.**—**an,** *whether,* introducing an ind. quest.)



The emperor Claudius
Louvre, Paris, France

AND VICE IS NOT NICE!

Mentītur quī tē vitiōsum, Zōile, dīcit:
  nōn vitiōsus homō es, Zōile, sed vitium!

(*Martial 11.92; meter: elegiac couplet.—**mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum,** *to lie,*

deceive.—**vitiōsus,** adj. from **vitium.**—**tē vitiōsum,** sc. **esse,** and remember that the verb **sum, esse** is often omitted in both prose and verse when it is readily understood from the context.—**Zōilus,** a Greek name.)

PRETTY IS AS PRETTY DOES

Bella es, nōvimus, et puella, vērum est,
et dīves—quis enim potest negāre?
Sed cum tē nimium, Fabulla, laudās,
nec dīves neque bella nec puella es!

(*Martial 1.64; meter: hendecasyllabic.)

ON LESBIA'S HUSBAND

Ille mī pār esse deō vidētur,
ille, sī fās est, superāre dīvōs,
quī, sedēns adversus, identidem tē
  spectat et audit
5 dulce rīdentem, miserō quod omnīs
ēripit sēnsūs mihi: nam simul tē,
Lesbia, aspexī, nihil est super mī,
  [Lesbia, vōcis,]
lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artūs
10 flamma dēmānat, sonitū suōpte
tintinant aurēs, geminā teguntur
  lūmina nocte.
Ōtium, Catulle, tibi molestum est;
ōtiō exsultās nimiumque gestīs;
15 ōtium et rēgēs prius et beātās
  perdidit urbēs.

(*Catullus 51; meter: Sapphic stanza.—**mī= mihi.**—**fās est,** *it is right.*—**dīvōs = deōs.**—**identidem,** adv., *again and again.*—**dulce,** adv. of **dulcis.**—**miserō . . . mihi,** dat. of separation; the prose order would be **quod omnīs (= omnēs) sēnsūs mihi miserō ēripit.**—**quod,** *a circumstance which;* the entire preceding clause is the antecedent.—**simul,** adv., *as soon as.*—**aspexī = spectāvī.**—**nihil,** with **vōcis,** gen. of the whole, *no voice;* **est super = superest,** *remains.*—**Lesbia, vōcis** is an editorial suggestion for a verse missing in the manuscripts.—**torpēre,** *to grow numb.*—**tenuis,** with **flamma,** from **tenuis, -e,** *thin, slender.*—**artus, -ūs,** *joint, limb* (of the body).—**flamma, -ae,** *flame.*—**dēmānāre,** *to flow through.*—**sonitus, -ūs,** *sound.*—**suōpte,** intensive for **suō.**—**tintināre,** *to ring.*—**tegō, -ere,** *to cover.*—**lūmen, -minis,** *light; eye.*—**molestus, -a, -um,** *troublesome.*—**exsultāre,** *to celebrate, exult* (*in*), + **ōtiō.**—**gestīre,** *to act without restraint, be elated* or *triumphant.*—**perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum,** *to destroy.*)

词源点滴

"Sympathy"源于希腊词 **syn**（*with*）+ **pathos**（*suffering*）。那么，"sympathy"

精确等价于哪个拉丁根词?

下面是一些与 **sequor** 有关的词: execute, executive, executor, obsequious, prosecute, persecute, pursue, ensue, sue, suit, suite, sect, second。与 **sequor** 有关的除了 **secundus**,还有 **socius** (*a follower, ally*),由此产生了 social, society, associate, dissociate。

In the readings

4. irate, irascible, irascibility. 5. **Versārī** 的字面意思是 *to turn* (*oneself*) *around:* versatile, converse, conversant, conversation. 8. veteran, inveterate. 9. intemperance.—querulous, quarrel. 10. preterit, preterition, praeteritio.—revert, reverse, reversible, reversion. "Claudius": ebullient.—expire, expiration, expiratory, expiry.—cp. **sonus, –ī,** *sound:* sonic, sonar, resonate. "Lesbia": divine.—aspect.—tenuous, tenuity.—flammable, inflame, inflammatory, inflammation.—tintinnabulation.—luminary, lumination, illuminate.—molest, molestation.—exultant, exultation.—perdition.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

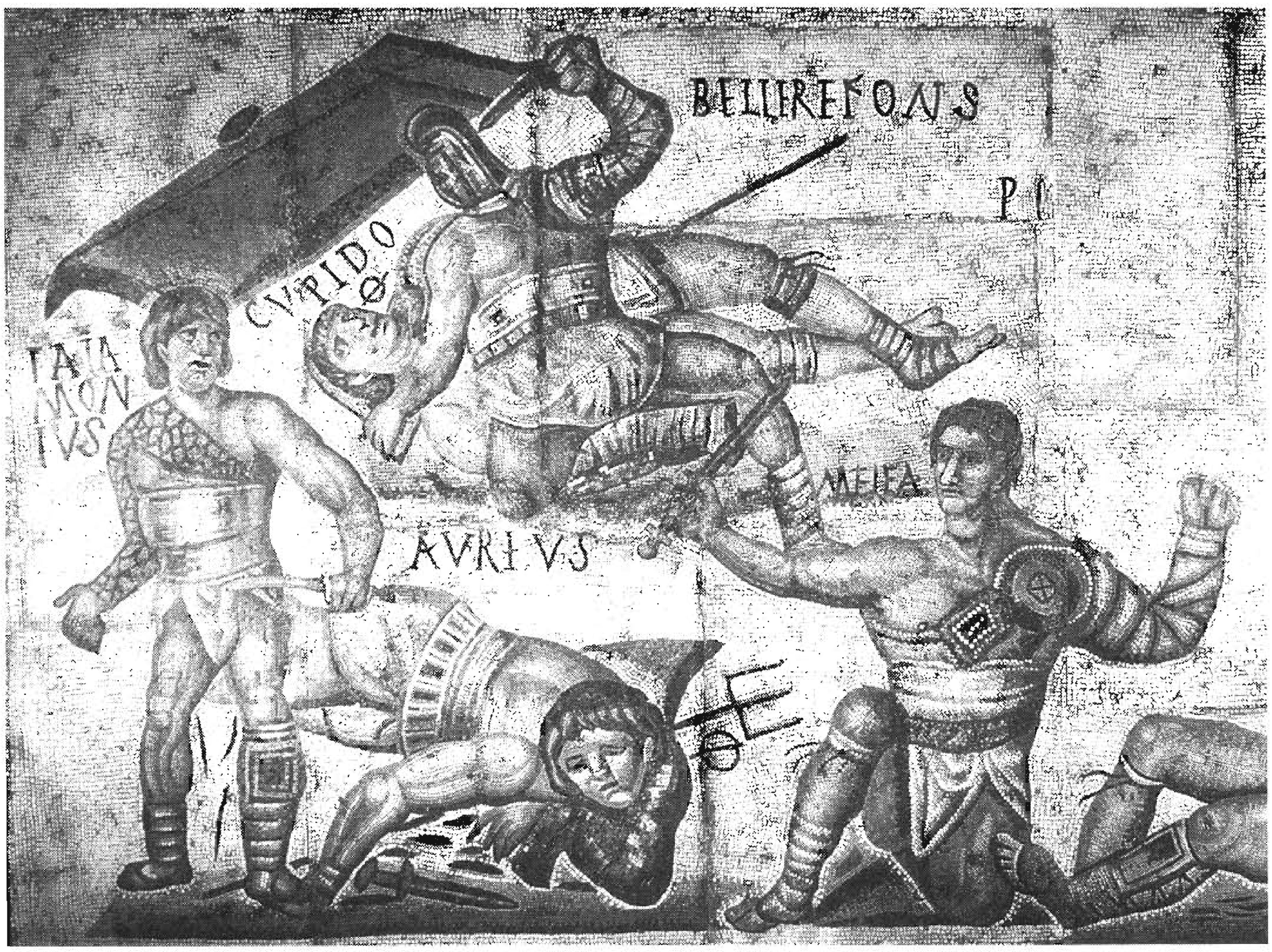
Salvēte, meī discipulī discipulaeque! Quid agitis? (**Spērō vōs valēre.**) 既然你已经开始阅读越来越多原汁原味的未经改编的拉丁语文学作品(比如本课中选录的马提雅尔、塞内卡、卡图卢斯等人的著作),你也许能够理解下面这句话:"当初我上学的时候,拉丁语还学得嗑嗑吧吧的,不过我已经多少认识到了以经典拉丁语为载体的纯文学之妙。"——保罗·麦卡特尼[1]。那么,拉丁语学到什么程度算够呢?——**quantum placeat,** *as much as gives one pleasure*(但愿能够近乎第三十二课的**quantum vīs**,多于第三十课的 **quantum satis**!)。

下面这些拉丁语短语还远未过时:首先是一句不幸的(幸而被夸大了!)古老谚语,**quem dī dīligunt, adulēscēns moritur**; 下面这句短语可以提醒我们每个人终有一死,**mementō morī**,意译为"记住你必定会死"(**–tō** 形式是一种不太常见的将来时命令式,本书中没有正式介绍,但在古代的法律和宗教文献中并不罕见);关于为祖国献出生命,贺拉斯写道,**dulce et decōrum**(源于 **decōrus, –a, –um,** *fitting, proper*)**est prō patriā morī**;另一则黯淡的谚语(但很重要,因为它包含两个异态动词!)是天文学家马尼留斯 (Manilius) 的格言,**nascentēs morimur** (*even as we are*) *being born, we* (*begin to*) *die*;接下来是"今朝有酒今朝醉"的塞内卡版本,**bibāmus, moriendum est**,它包含了被动迂说法;还有进入竞技场的角斗士对皇帝说的话,**avē, Caesar: moritūrī tē salutāmus,** *hail,*

[1] 保罗·麦卡特尼(Paul McCartney),英国前"甲壳虫"乐队成员。——译者注

Caesar: we (*who are*) *about to die salute you*！对于那些生命得以保全的战败者，我们可以说 **vae, victīs,** *woe to the conquered*，这是李维讲述公元前 390 年高卢人洗劫罗马的名言。

关于死亡我们已经讲得够多了。**Hīc sunt alia miscellānea ex vocābulāriō novō: vōx populī; vōx clamantis in dēsertō,** *the voice of one calling out in the wilderness*（源于《马太福音》）；**crēscit amor nummī quantum ipsa pecūnia crēvit,** *love of the coin grows as much as one's wealth itself has grown*(Juvenal 14.139)；**sedente animō,** *with a calm mind*。以下是其他一些异态动词：马里兰州的座右铭是 **crēscite et multiplicāminī**(你知道是什么意思吗？)；**loquitur** 是一种舞台指示用语；我们以前曾经见过 **rēs ipsa loquitur,** *the matter speaks for itself* 这一法律习语，现在你明白其中的动词形式了；**seq.**是 **sequēns/sequentēs,** *the following* 的缩写，在脚注中比较常用；**nōn sequitur** 是指不能从前一陈述逻辑地推出（当然，**sequitur** 是指可以推出！）；**sequor nōn īnferior,** *I follow* (*but am*) *not inferior*。本课是否使你激动不已？接下来的(subsequent)一课会是它的续篇(sequel)吗？如果不是，结局(consequences)会怎样？欢迎您继续收听……**et valēte**！



Gladiators in combat, detail of mosaic from Torrenova, 4th century A.D.
Galleria Borghese, Rome, Italy

第三十五课

形容词加与格;特殊动词加与格;复合动词加与格

与格一般用来指某种动作间接作用或间接提到的人或事物,宾格则是指动作更直接的承受者或承受对象。例如,间接宾语就是主语+动词在"提交"直接宾语时所指向的人或事物:"I am giving the book [直接宾语] to you [间接宾语]" ="I am giving the book, not just to anyone anywhere, but in your direction, i.e., to you."甚至在被动迂说法结构中,施事与格也是指这样一个人,对于他来说,某种动作是强制性的。语法学家们还区分了其他一些与格用法,但它们大都只是基于这种基本的"指向"观念的变种。

形容词加与格

我们曾经在阅读中碰到过形容词加与格的结构,只不过还没有正式介绍它。简单地说,与格名词可以与许多拉丁语形容词连用(特别是那些指态度、性质或关系的形容词),表示该形容词适用的方向(既可以是字面意义上的,也可以是隐喻意义上的);在英语中,这些形容词后面一般都跟着"to", "toward"或"for"(比如 "friendly to/toward","hostile to/toward","suitable to/for","useful to","similar to","equal to"等等)。

Mors est similis **somnō,** *death is similar to sleep.*

Sciēbam tē **mihi** fidēlem esse, *I knew that you were loyal to me.*

Nōbīs est vir amīcus, *he is a man friendly toward us.*

Quisque **sibi** cārus est, *each one is dear to himself.*

Ille vidētur pār esse **deō**, *that man seems to be equal to a god.*

特殊动词加与格

特殊动词加与格的结构在概念上与形容词加与格类似。这类动词(下面列出了最重要的一些词)中有许多是不及物的,就像接与格的形容词那样,它们也指态度或关系,例如 **nocēre,** *to be injurious to,* **parcō,** *to be lenient toward* 等等。虽然在译成英语时,这些动词就好像是及物的一样,它们所支配的与格名词似乎也变成了直接宾语(比如 **tibi parcit,** *he spares you*;字面意思是 *he is lenient toward you*),但与格仍然是指该态度或性质在使用时所朝向的人或事物。

虽然加与格的特殊动词大多意为 *favor, help, harm, please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare*,但如果把这当成一条规则来记,那么不仅这个清单非常冗长,而且也会漏掉一些重要的例外情况(比如 **iuvō,** *to help* 和 **iubeō,** *to command, order* 后面跟的就是宾格宾语),所以最好的方法还是理解这个概念,然后记住一些具有这一结构的最常见的拉丁语动词。

在记忆下面这些动词时,请注意我们对每个动词给出的第一个翻译是更为字面的翻译,其中包括了英语词 *to*,以使我们想到它需要跟与格;还要注意,每个动词都表达了一种对于某人或某物的态度,这也暗示它需要跟与格。

crēdō + dat., *entrust to; trust, believe* (**crēdō tibi,** *I believe you*)
ignōscō + dat., *grant pardon to; pardon, forgive* (**ignōscō virīs,** *I forgive the men*)
imperō + dat., *give orders to; command* (**imperō mīlitibus,** *I command the soldiers*)
noceō + dat., *do harm to; harm* (**noceō hostibus,** *I harm the enemy*)
nūbō + dat., *be married to; marry* (**nūbō illī virō,** *I am marrying that man*)
parcō + dat., *be lenient to; spare* (**parcō vōbīs,** *I spare you*)
pāreō + dat., *be obedient to; obey* (**pāreō ducī,** *I obey the leader*)
persuādeō + dat., *make sweet to; persuade* (**persuādeō mihi,** *I persuade myself*)
placeō + dat., *be pleasing to; please* (**placeō patrī,** *I please my father*)
serviō + dat., *be a slave to; serve* (**serviō patriae,** *I serve my country*)
studeō + dat., *direct one's zeal to; study* (**studeō litterīs,** *I study literature*)

Crēde amīcīs, *believe (trust) your friends.*
Ignōsce mihi, *pardon me (forgive me).*
Magistra discipulīs parcit, *the teacher spares (is lenient toward) her pupils.*
Hoc eīs nōn placet, *this does not please them.*
Nōn possum eī persuādēre, *I cannot persuade him.*
Variae rēs hominibus nocent, *various things harm men.*

Cicerō philosophiae studēbat, *Cicero used to study philosophy.*

Philosophiae servīre est lībertās, *to serve philosophy is liberty.*

应当注意，在这些动词中，有一些也可以带直接宾语（例如，**crēdō** 加与格表示相信的人，**mātrī crēdit,** *he believes his mother*；加宾格则表示相信的事物，**id crēdit,** *he believes it*）；而像 **imperō** 和 **persuādeo** 等一些词则以名词从句为宾语，我们在下一课会看到。

复合动词加与格

还有一种类似的与格用法，即与格与一些包含 **ad, ante, con-**（**= cum**），**in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, circum, re-**（表示 *against*）等前缀的复合动词连用。如果一个复合动词（不论及物还是不及物）与其简单形式的含义相差甚远，则多和与格连用；相反，如果复合动词与简单形式的含义差别不大，则通常不用与格：

Sequor eum, *I follow him.*

Obsequor eī, *I obey him.*

Sum amīcus eius, *I am his friend.*

Adsum amīcō, *I support my friend.*（字面意思是 *I am next to my friend*，即站在他这边）

Vēnit ad nōs, *he came to us.*

Advēnit ad nōs, *he came to us.*

在很多时候，与格似乎充当了介词前缀的宾语，尽管这个介词本身可能应当跟另一种格；比如前面的 **adsum amīcō** 以及下面几个例子：

Aliīs praestant, *they surpass the others*（字面意思是 *they stand before the others*）.

Praeerat exercituī, *he was in charge of the army*（字面意思是 *he was in front of/before the army*）.

如果简单动词是及物的，那么复合动词不仅可以用与格作根动词的宾语，也可以用宾格作宾语：

Praeposuī eum exercituī, *I put him in charge of the army*（字面意思是 *I put him* [**posuī eum**] *in front of the army* [**prae- + exercituī**]）.

Praeposuī pecūniam amīcitiae, *I preferred money to friendship*（字面意思是 *I put money* [**posuī pecūniam**] *before friendship* [**prae- + amīcitiae**]）.

既然特殊动词和复合动词加与格的规则有这么多变化，所以最好的方法是

理解所涉及的概念，在碰到句子中的与格时，能够弄清楚它可能起的作用；和其他格一样，我们应当列一张与格用法表（我们已经学过五种与格用法），列出每一种的定义和有代表性的例子。

词汇表

aéstās, aestā́tis, f., *summer* (estival, estivate, estivation; cp. **aestus, -ūs,** *heat,* **aestuāre,** *to be hot, seethe, boil*)
iā́nua, -ae, f., *door* (janitor, Janus, January)
péctus, péctoris, n., *breast, heart* (pectoral, expectorate, parapet)
praémium, -iī, n. *reward, prize* (premium)
īrā́tus, -a, -um, *angry* (irate; cp. **īra, īrāscor,** *to be angry*)
antepṓnō, -pṓnere, -pósuī, -pósitum, *to put before, prefer*
fóveō, fovḗre, fṓvī, fṓtum, *to comfort, nurture, cherish* (foment)
ignṓscō, -nṓscere, -nṓvī, -nṓtum + dat., *to grant pardon to, forgive*
ímperō (1) + dat., *to give orders to, command* (imperative, emperor; cp. **imperātor, imperium**)
mī́ror, mīrā́rī, mīrā́tus sum, *to marvel at, admire, wonder* (admire, marvel, miracle, mirage, mirror; cp. **mīrābilis,** Ch. 38, **mīrāculum,** *a marvel*)
nóceō, nocḗre, nócuī, nócitum + dat., *to do harm to, harm, injure* (innocent, innocuous, noxious, nuisance, obnoxious; cp. **innocēns,** *blameless*)
nū́bō, nū́bere, nū́psī, nū́ptum, *to cover, veil;* + dat. (of a bride) *to be married to, marry* (nubile, connubial, nuptials; cp. **nūptiae,** *marriage*)
párcō, párcere, pepércī, parsū́rum + dat., *to be lenient to, spare* (parsimonious, parsimony)
pā́reō, pārḗre, pā́ruī + dat., *to be obedient to, obey* (apparent, appear)
persuā́deō, -suādḗre, -suā́sī, -suā́sum + dat., *to succeed in urging, persuade, convince* (assuage, dissuade, suasion, suave; cp. **suāvis**)
pláceō, placḗre, plácuī, plácitum + dat., *to be pleasing to, please* (complacent, placable, implacable, placate, placid, plea, plead, pleasure, displease; cp. **placidus,** *kindly, agreeable, calm*)
sápiō, sápere, sapī́vī, *to have good taste; have good sense, be wise* (sapient, sapid, insipid, sage, savor; cp. **sapiēns, sapientia**)
sérviō, servī́re, servī́vī, servī́tum + dat., *to be a slave to, serve* (service, disservice, subserve, subservient, servile, servility, deserve, desert = reward, dessert; cp. **servus, servitūs;** distinguish from **servāre**)
stúdeō, studḗre, stúduī + dat., *to direct one's zeal to, be eager for, study* (student; cp. **studium, studiōsus,** *eager, diligent, scholarly*)
subrī́deō, -rīdḗre, -rī́sī, -rī́sum, *to smile (down) upon* (cp. **rīdeō, rīdiculus**)

练习与复习

1. Minerva, fīlia Iovis, nāta est plēna scientiae et ingeniī.
2. Custōdiae sī cum duce nostrō līberē loquantur et huic tyrannum

trādere cōnentur, sine perīculō ex moeniīs urbis prōtinus ēgredī possint.

3. Pārēre lēgibus aequīs melius est quam tyrannō servīre.
4. Cum optimē honōribus ūsus esset et sibi cīvitātem semper antepōneret, etiam plēbs eī crēdēbat et nōn invidēbat.
5. Diū passa, māter vestra fēlīciter, sedēns apud amīcōs, mortua est.
6. Philosophī cōnsilium spectāvērunt et recūsāvērunt tālem rem suscipere mōlīrīve.
7. Cum dīves sīs atque dīvitiae crēscant, tamen opibus tuīs parcere vīs et nēminī assem offerēs.
8. Ab illā īnsulā repente profectus, eādem nocte ad patriam nāve advēnit; tum, quaerēns remissiōnem animae, diū rūsticābātur.
9. Hic mīles, cum imperātōrī vestrō nōn placēret, heu, illa praemia prōmissa āmīsit.
10. Nisi mōrēs parēs scientiae sunt—id nōbīs fatendum est—scientia nōbīs magnopere nocēre potest.
11. Magistra tum rogāvit duōs parvōs puerōs quot digitōs habērent.
12. Māter candida nātae cārissimae subrīdet, quam maximē fovet, et eī plūrima ōscula suāvia dat.
13. Why does he now wish to hurt his two friends?
14. If he does not spare the plebeians, alas, we shall never trust him.
15. Since you are studying Roman literature, you are serving a very difficult but a very great master.
16. If they were truly willing to please us, they would not be using their wealth thus against the state.

古代名言

1. Nēmō līber est quī corporī servit. (Seneca.)
2. Imperium habēre vīs magnum? Imperā tibi! (Publilius Syrus.)
3. Bonīs nocet quisquis pepercit malīs. (*Id.)
4. Cum tū omnia pecūniae postpōnās, mīrāris sī nēmō tibi amōrem praestat? (Horace.—**post-pōnō.**)
5. Frūstrā aut pecūniae aut imperiīs aut opibus aut glōriae student; potius studeant virtūtī et honōrī et scientiae et alicui artī. (Cicero.—**frūstrā,** adv., *in vain.*—**potius,** adv., *rather.*)
6. Virtūtī melius quam Fortūnae crēdāmus; virtūs nōn nōvit calamitātī cēdere. (Publilius Syrus.—**calamitās, -tātis.**)
7. Et Deus āit: "Faciāmus hominem ad imāginem nostram et praesit piscibus maris bēstiīsque terrae." (*Genesis.*—**imāgō, -ginis,** f.—**prae-sum.**—**piscis, piscis,** m., *fish.*—**bēstia, -ae,** *beast.*)
8. Omnēs arbitrātī sunt tē dēbēre mihi parcere. (Cicero.)
9. Quid facere vellet, ostendit, et illī servō spē lībertātis magnīsque praemiīs persuāsit. (Caesar.)
10. Sī cui librī Cicerōnis placent, ille sciat sē prōfēcisse. (Quintilian.—**prōficiō = prō + faciō,** *to progress, benefit.*)

11. In urbe nostrā mihi contigit docērī quantum īrātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. (Horace.—**contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum,** *to touch closely, fall to the lot of.*)
12. Alicui rogantī melius quam iubentī pārēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
13. Vīvite fortiter fortiaque pectora rēbus adversīs oppōnite. (Horace.—**oppōnō = ob + pōnō,** *to set against.*)
14. Nōn ignāra malī, miserīs succurrere discō. (*Virgil.—**ignārus, -a, -um,** *ignorant;* **ignāra** is fem. because it agrees with Dido, exiled queen, who speaks these words to shipwrecked Aeneas.—**succurrō = sub + currō,** *to help.*)
15. Ignōsce saepe alterī, numquam tibi. (Publilius Syrus.)
16. Quandō tē, deum meum, quaerō, vītam beātam quaerō; quaeram tē ut vīvat anima mea. (St. Augustine.)

OVID ASKS THE GODS TO INSPIRE HIS WORK

In nova fert animus mūtātās dīcere fōrmās
corpora: dī, coeptīs—nam vōs mūtāstis et illās—
adspīrāte meīs prīmāque ab orīgine mundī
ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen!

(*Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 1.1–4; meter: dactylic hexameter. Ovid's *Metamorphōsēs* was an epic that recounted hundreds of stories of miraculous transformations, from the creation of the universe right down into his own times; the challenge in translating this brief excerpt, as with much of Latin verse, is to connect the adjectives with the nouns they modify, so watch the endings!—**nova,** with **corpora.—fert,** *compels (me).*—**coeptīs . . . meīs,** dat. with the compound **adspīrāte,** *my beginnings,* i.e., *the inception of my work.*—**mūtāstis = mūtāvistis;** such contractions, with **v** and the following vowel dropped, are common in certain perfect tense forms.—**et = etiam.—illās,** sc. **fōrmās.—adspīrāre,** *to breathe upon, inspire.*—**orīgō, -ginis,** f.—Note the interlocked word order of **mea . . . tempora** and **perpetuum . . . carmen.—dē + dūcō.**)

SORRY, NOBODY'S HOME!

Nāsīca ad poētam Ennium vēnit. Cum ad iānuam Ennium quaesīvisset et serva respondisset eum in casā nōn esse, sēnsit illam dominī iussū id dīxisse et Ennium vērō esse in casā. Post paucōs diēs, cum Ennius ad Nāsīcam vēnisset et eum ad iānuam quaereret, Nāsīca ipse exclāmāvit sē in casā nōn esse. Tum Ennius "Quid?" inquit, "Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?" Hīc Nāsīca merō cum sale respondit: "Vae, homō es impudēns! Ego, cum tē quaererem, servae tuae crēdidī tē nōn in casā esse; nōnne tū mihi ipsī nunc crēdis?"

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.276.—Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica was a celebrated jurist.—Quintus Ennius, a famous early Roman poet.—**iussū,** *at the command of.*—**exclāmāre,** *to shout out.*—**impudēns,** gen. **impudentis.**)

"I DO." "I DON'T!"

Nūbere vīs Prīscō. Nōn mīror, Paula; sapīstī.
  Dūcere tē nōn vult Prīscus: et ille sapit!

(*Martial 9.10; meter: elegiac couplet.—Priscus was an eligible bachelor, and probably a rich one; Paula was apparently not his type!—**sapīstī** = **sapīvistī;** see on **mūtāstis** above.—**dūcere,** i.e., **in mātrimōnium.**—**et** here, as often, = **etiam.**)

MARONILLA HAS A COUGH

Petit Gemellus nūptiās Marōnillae
et cupit et īnstat et precātur et dōnat.
Adeōne pulchra est? Immō, foedius nīl est.
Quid ergō in illā petitur et placet? Tussit!

(*Martial 1.10; meter: choliambic. Gemellus is a legacy-hunter, and Maronilla a rich old hag whose estate he hopes to inherit.—**nūptiae, -ārum,** f. pl., *marriage.*—**īnstāre,** *to press, insist.*—**precor, precārī, precātus sum,** *to beg, entreat.*—**dōnat** = **dat.**—**adeō** = **tam.**—**immō,** adv., *on the contrary.*—**foedius** = **turpius.**—**nīl** = **nihil.**—**ergō** = **igitur.**—**tussīre,** *to cough.*)

SUMMER VACATION

Ludī magister, parce simplicī turbae:
. . .
aestāte puerī sī valent, satis discunt.

(*Martial 10.62.1, 12; meter: choliambic.—**simplex,** gen. **simplicis,** here *youthful.*)

词源点滴

In the readings

4. postponement. 5. frustrate, frustration. 6. calamitous. 7. imagine, imagery.—Pisces, piscatory, piscatology, piscary.—bestial, bestiality, bestialize, beast, beastly. 10. proficient, proficiency. 11. contingent, contingency, contiguous, contiguity, contact, contagion, contagious. 13. opponent, opposite, opposition. 14. succor. "Ovid": aspire, aspiration, aspiratory.—original, originate. "Sorry": exclamation, exclamatory.—impudence. "Maronilla": nuptials; cp. **nūbō.**—instant, instance, instantly .—imprecation.—donate, donation.—tussive, pertussis. "Summer": simple, simpleton, simplex, simplicity, simplistic.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque! 或者根据 **studēre** 的含义,你们现在已经

可以被称为 **studentēs** 了。显然，正是出于对学术的热情，你们才会如此深入地学习拉丁语！那么，**studentēs**，下面就是你们的 **praemium**，希望它能使这顿 **cēna Latīna** 更加可口，这次仍然是 **ex novā grammaticā** （*grammar*）**atque vocābulāriō**：如果你还记得意指"favor … etc."的动词支配与格，你就可以理解下面这句头韵体箴言：**fortūna favet fortibus; favēte linguīs**，直译为 *be favorable with your tongues*，这是罗马宗教仪式上的一句用语，意为"避免任何不吉之语，保持沉默"；由 **imperō** 不仅产生出了"imperative"，而且也产生了习语 **dīvide**（源于 **dīvidere,** *to separate, divide*）**et imperā**（分而治之）；**placet** 指赞成票，**placitum** 指法庭的裁定，"placebo"是指不含药物的安慰剂，旨在迎合病人的情绪（从字面上讲，"medicine"[药物]能够起到什么作用？）；秘密会议是 **iānuīs clausīs**（源于 **claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum,** *to close,* 比如"recluse"，"closet"等等）开的，但 **iānuae mentis** 却是学习拉丁语能够帮助你打开的（**aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum** 即 *to open*，比如"aperture"）。**Studēte Latīnae, aperīte mentēs, et semper valēte, studentēs!**

第三十六课

间接命令句；Fīō

间接命令句

间接命令句(jussive noun clause)可以看成某种间接命令。就像间接陈述(第二十五课)和间接问句(第三十课)那样，实际的命令(或要求、恳求等等)并不是通过主句中的命令式或祈愿虚拟式(第二十八课)逐字引用，而是通过从句来间接转述，也就是说，不是"he ordered them, 'Do this! '"，而是"he ordered them to do this." 在拉丁语中，这些从句通常由 **ut** 或 **nē** 来引导，动词用虚拟式(通常是现在时或未完成时)，而在英语和英语翻译中，我们往往使用现在时不定式，不带引导词，也不用 *may* 或 *might* 等助动词：

1. Hoc facite, *do this.*(命令式) 直接命令
2. Hoc faciant, *let them do this.*(祈愿虚拟式) 直接命令
3. Imperat vōbīs ut hoc faciātis, *he commands you to do this.*
4. Imperāvit eīs ut hoc facerent, *he commanded them to do this.*
5. Persuādet eīs ut hoc faciant, *he persuades them to do this.*
6. Petīvit ab eīs nē hoc facerent, *he begged (from) them not to do this.*
7. Monuit eōs nē hoc facerent, *he warned them not to do this.*
8. Hortātus est eōs ut hoc facerent, *he urged them to do this.*

这些句子很容易与目的从句相混淆，因为它们在形式上是相同的。不过通过考察上面的例子，我们可以看出它们本质上是命令性的。与充当状语的目的从句(回答"为什么"的问题)不同，间接命令句充当的是主要动词的名词宾语(回答"命令、要求、建议什么"的问题)。下面列出了另一些能够引导间接命令句

的常用动词,也给出了被命令者或被要求者所处的格(与格、宾格等等):

hortor eum ut, *I urge him to . . .*
imperō eī ut, *I order him to . . .*
moneō eum ut, *I advise him to . . .*
ōrō eum ut, *I beg him to . . .*
persuādeō eī ut, *I persuade him to . . .* (或 *I persuade him that . . .*)
petō ab eō ut, *I beg (from) him to . . .*
quaerō ab eō ut, *I request (from/of) him to . . .*
rogō eum ut, *I ask him to . . .*

虽然 **volō, nōlō** 和 **mālō**(第三十二课)后面一般跟不定式,但它们有时也可以引导从句(如 **mālō ut,** *I prefer that . . .*);**iubeō** 几乎总是跟不定式结构。

不规则的 Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *to occur, happen; be done, be made*

Fīō, fierī 是常见的不规则动词,意为 *to occur, happen*,罗马人用它来代替 **faciō** 的现在时系统的被动态。因此,尽管它在形式上是主动的,却有着 *to be done, be made* 的被动含义。[1] 反过来,它本身的完成时系统则由 **faciō** 的被动态完成时系统来提供。

这样一来,我们就有了一个合成的动词,其主要部分为 **fīō, fierī, factus sum**,含义包括 *occur, happen, become, be made, be done* 等等。在翻译的时候,如果看到 **fīō** 的主动态完成时系统,别忘了它有可能表示 *be done, be made* 的被动含义;如果看到被动态完成时系统 **factus est, factus erat, factus sit** 等形式,别忘了它有可能表示 *has become, had occurred* 等主动含义。

这里需要掌握的新的形式已经列在下面。请注意,除了 **fit, fierī** 和未完成时虚拟式,词干元音在任何位置都是长元音–ī–;此外,现在时、将来时和未完成时的直陈式以及现在时虚拟式都遵循 **audiō** 的模式;有了不定式 **fierī**,未完成时虚拟式也可以按照以前学过的规则推出来。

直陈式			**虚拟式**	
现在时	**未完成时**	**将来时**	**现在时**	**未完成时**
1. fīō	fīēbam	fīam	fīam	fíerem

[1] 对于基本动词 **faciō** 是如此(比如用 **fit** 而不是 **facitur** 来表示 *it is done, is made*);但复合动词却因情况而异,比如 **perficitur** 表示 *is completed*,但用 **calefit** 而不是 **calefacitur** 来表示 *is heated*。

2. fīs	fīḗbās	fīēs	fīās	fíerēs
3. fit	fīḗbat	fīet	fīat	fíeret
1. fīmus	fīēbā́mus	fīḗmus	fīā́mus	fierḗmus
2. fītis	fīēbā́tis	fīḗtis	fīā́tis	fierḗtis
3. fīunt	fīḗbant	fīent	fīant	fíerent

不定式	命令式
fíerī	**单数**fī **复数**fīte

认真考察以下例句：

Hoc facit (faciet), *he is doing* or *making this* (*will do* or *make*).

Hoc fit (fīet), *this is done* or *made* (*will be done* or *made*).

Hoc faciat, *let him do* or *make this*.

Hoc fīat, *let this be done* or *made*.

Dīcunt eum hoc facere, *they say that he is doing this*.

Dīcunt hoc fierī, *they say that this is being done*.

Perīculum fit gravius, *the danger is becoming graver*.

Mox factī sunt fēlīces, *they soon became happy*.

词汇表

cupī́dō, cupī́dinis, f., *desire, passion* (cupidity, Cupid; cp. **cupiō, cupiditās, cupidus**, Ch. 39)

lḗctor, lēctṓris, m., and **lḗctrīx, lēctrī́cis,** f., *reader* (lector; cp. **legō,** lectern, lection, lectionary, lecture)

vínculum, -ī, n., *bond, chain, fetter* (vinculum; cp. **vinciō,** *to bind*)

cōtī́diē, adv., *daily, every day* (**quot + diēs;** cotidian)

fortásse, adv., *perhaps* (cp. **fortūna**)

accḗdō, -cḗdere, -céssī, -céssum, *to come* (*to*), *approach* (accede, access, accessible, accession, accessory; cp. **cēdō, discēdō**)

cárpō, cárpere, cárpsī, cárptum, *to harvest, pluck; seize* (carp at, excerpt, carpet, scarce; **carpe diem:** see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 22)

cṓgō, cṓgere, coḗgī, coā́ctum (cum + agō), *to drive* or *bring together, force, compel* (cogent, coaction, coactive, coagulate; cp. **cōgitō**)

contémnō, -témnere, -témpsī, -témptum, *to despise, scorn* (contemn, contempt, contemptible, contemptuous)

contúndō, -túndere, -tudī, -tū́sum, *to beat, crush, bruise, destroy* (contuse, contusion; obtuse, from **obtundō,** *to beat, make blunt*)

cū́rō (1), *to care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care* (cure, curator, procure, proctor, accurate; cp. **cūra**)

dēcérnō, -cérnere, -crḗvī, -crḗtum, *to decide, settle, decree* (decretal, decretory)

éxigō, -ígere, -ḗgī, -ā́ctum (**ex** + **agō**), *to drive out, force out, exact; drive*

through, complete, perfect (exactitude, exigent, exigency, exigible)
fīō, fierī, fáctus sum, *to occur, happen; become; be made, be done* (fiat)
obléctō (1), *to please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly* (cp. **dēlectō, dēlectātiō**)
ṓrō (1), *to speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray* (orator, oration, oracle, orison, adore, inexorable, peroration; cp. **ōrātor, ōrātiō,** Ch. 38)
récreō (1), *to restore, revive; refresh, cheer* (recreate, recreation)
requī́rō, -quī́rere, -quīsī́vī, -quīsī́tum, *to seek, ask for; miss, need, require* (requirement, requisite, requisition, prerequisite, request)
serḗnō (1), *to make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe* (serene, serenity, serenade)

练习与复习

1. Poterāsne etiam centum virīs persuādēre ut viam virtūtis sine praemiīs sequerentur?
2. Haec fēmina vult ex urbe ēgredī et ad illam īnsulam proficīscī ut sine morā illī agricolae nūbat et semper rūsticētur.
3. Petēbant ā nōbīs ut etiam in adversīs rēbus huic ducī pārērēmus et servīrēmus.
4. Haec ab fēminīs facta sunt nē tantam occāsiōnem āmitterent.
5. Rogāmus tē ut honōre et opibus sapientius ūtāris et hōs quīnque amīcōs semper foveās.
6. Nisi quis hoc suscipere audēbit, nōlent nōbīs crēdere et fīent īrātī.
7. Rogāvit nōs cūr neque dīvitibus neque pauperibus placēre cōnātī essēmus.
8. Arbitrābātur tālem vītam nōn ex dīvitiīs sed ex animō plēnō virtūtis nāscī.
9. Scientiam et ingenium magis quam magnās dīvitiās mīrēmur.
10. Senātus ducī imperāvit nē hostibus victīs nocēret sed eīs parceret et remissiōnem poenae daret.
11. Ille ōrātor vulgum īrātissimum vōce potentī serēnāvit atque, ut omnibus subrīsit, eōs oblectāvit.
12. Ut parva puella per iānuam currēbat, subitō occidit et genua male contudit.
13. Dummodo sīs aequus hīs virīs, fīent tibi fidēlēs.
14. That summer they urged that this be done better.
15. Provided that this is done, they will beg us to spare him.
16. That teacher wants to persuade her twenty pupils to study more good literature.
17. Since his hope is becoming very small, let him confess that he commanded (use **imperō**) those two men not to do it.

古代名言

1. Dīxitque Deus: "Fīat lūx." Et facta est lūx. (*Genesis.)

2. Fatendum est nihil dē nihilō posse fierī. (Lucretius.—**nihilō,** abl. of **nihilum, -ī, = nihil.**)
3. Magnae rēs nōn fīunt sine perīculō. (Terence.)
4. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, ille suōs hortātus est nē timērent. (Caesar.)
5. Omnia fīent quae fierī aequum est. (Terence.)
6. "Pater, ōrō tē ut mihi ignōscās." "Fīat." (Terence.)
7. Dum loquimur, fūgerit invida aetās: carpe diem! (*Horace.—**invidus, -a, -um,** *envious.*)
8. Carpāmus dulcia; post enim mortem cinis et fābula fīēs. (Persius.—**cinis, -neris,** m., *ashes.*)
9. Ante senectūtem cūrāvī ut bene vīverem; in senectūte cūrō ut bene moriar. (Seneca.)
10. Solōn dīxit sē senem fierī cotīdiē aliquid addiscentem. (Cicero.—**Solōn, -lōnis.—ad-discō, -ere.**)
11. Caret pectus tuum inānī ambitiōne? Caret īrā et timōre mortis? Ignōscis amīcīs? Fīs lēnior et melior, accēdente senectūte? (Horace.—**inānis, -e,** *empty, vain.*—**ambitiō, -ōnis.—lēnis, -e,** *gentle, kind.*)
12. Hoc dūrum est; sed levius fit patientiā quidquid corrigere est nefās. (Horace.—**patientia, -ae.—corrigō, -ere.—est nefās,** *it is wrong, contrary to divine law.*)
13. Sapiāmus et cēdāmus! Leve fit onus quod bene fertur. (Ovid.—**onus, oneris,** n., *burden.*)
14. Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis—vae illīs quī nūllōs amīcōs habent! (Cicero.)
15. Petō ā vōbīs ut patiāminī mē dē studiīs hūmānitātis ac litterārum loquī. (Cicero.—**hūmānitās, -tātis,** *culture.*)

THE QUALITY OF MARTIAL'S BOOK

Sunt bona, sunt quaedam mediocria, sunt mala plūra
  quae legis hīc; aliter nōn fit, Avīte, liber.

(*Martial 1.16; meter, elegiac couplet.—**aliter,** adv., *otherwise.*—**Avītus, -ī,** a friend of the poet.)

I DON'T COOK FOR COOKS!

Lēctor et audītor nostrōs probat, Aule, libellōs,
  sed quīdam exāctōs esse poēta negat.
Nōn nimium cūrō, nam cēnae fercula nostrae
  mālim convīvīs quam placuisse cocīs!

(*Martial 9.81; meter: elegiac couplet.—**quīdam,** with **poēta.**—sc. **eōs, = libellōs,** as subject of the infin. in the indir. statement.—**ferculum, -ī,** *course [of a meal].*—**mālim,** potential subj., *I would prefer that.*—The prose order would be: **mālim fercula cēnae nostrae placuisse convīvīs quam cocīs.—quam,** i.e., **magis quam.—convīva, -ae,** m., dinner-guest.—**cocus, -ī,** *cook.*)

I LOVE HER . . . I LOVE HER NOT

Ōdī et amō! Quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
Nescio, sed fierī sentiō et excrucior.

(*Catullus 85; meter: elegiac couplet.—**excruciāre,** *to crucify, torment.*)

OH, I'D LOVE TO READ YOU MY POEMS . . . NOT!

Ut recitem tibi nostra rogās epigrammata. Nōlō—
nōn audīre, Celer, sed recitāre cupis!

(*Martial 1.63; meter: elegiac couplet.—**epigramma, -matis,** n.)

WHO IS TRULY FREE?

Quis igitur vērō līber est? Tantum vir sapiēns, quī sibi imperat, quem neque fortūna adversa neque paupertās neque mors neque vincula terrent, quī potest cupīdinibus fortiter respondēre honōrēsque contemnere, cuius virtūs cōtīdiē crēscit, quī in sē ipsō tōtus est.

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 2.7.83ff; prose adaptation.)

TESTIMONY AGAINST THE CONSPIRATORS

Senātum coēgī. Intrōdūxī Volturcium sine Gallīs. Fidem pūblicam eī dedī. Hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre nūntiāret. Tum ille, cum sē ex magnō timōre recreāvisset, dīxit sē ab Lentulō habēre ad Catilīnam mandāta ut auxiliō servōrum ūterētur et ad urbem quam prīmum cum exercitū accēderet. Intrōductī autem Gallī dīxērunt sibi litterās ad suam gentem ab Lentulō datās esse et hunc imperāvisse ut equitātum in Italiam quam prīmum mitterent. Dēnique, omnibus rēbus expositīs, senātus dēcrēvit ut coniūrātī, quī hās īnsidiās mōlītī essent, in custōdiam trāderentur.

(Cicero; in this adaptation from his third oration against Catiline, Cicero informs the Roman citizenry of the evidence against Catiline and the actions of the senate. See the earlier readings on Catiline in Chs. 11, 14, 20, and 30.—**intrō-dūcō, -ere.**—Volturcius was a conspirator in Catiline's band.—**Gallus, -ī,** *a Gaul;* Lentulus, the leading conspirator at Rome in Catiline's absence, had been seeking to stir into rebellion against the Roman state the Gallic Allobroges, who had a delegation at Rome.—**scīret:** a subordinate clause that would ordinarily have an indicative verb often has instead a subjunctive when the clause occurs either within an indirect statement or, as here, within another subjunctive clause; in this latter instance the verb is often termed a "subjunctive by attraction."—**mandātum, -ī,** *order.*—**quam prīmum,** see Ch. 32.—**equitātus, -ūs,** *cavalry.*)

词源点滴

In the readings

8. cinerary, incinerator, incinerate. 11. inane, inanity.—ambition; **ambitiō** 字

面意思是候选人造访选民以寻求政治支持。—lenient, leniency, lenity. 12. correct, incorrigible. 13. onerous. 15. humanity, the humanities; cp. **homō, hūmānus.** "I Love Her": excruciate; cp. crux, crucial，源于 **crux, crucis,** f., *cross*. "I'd Love to Read": epigrammatic. "Testimony":—mandate, mandatory, command, countermand, demand, remand.—equitation.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, studentēs! 下面是一些与 **fīō** 有关的习语：如果你觉得写演说词要比写诗更容易，那么你也许会认同这句古老的话，**nāscimur poētae, fīmus ōrātōrēs**；**fiat**（不是"菲亚特"牌汽车）是一项骄横的命令，*let it be done*！叙鲁斯（本书许多"古代名言"的作者）说过，**repente dīvēs nēmō factus est bonus**（类似于尤维纳利斯的 **nēmō repente fuit turpissimus**，第三十课）；还有关于"自愿发生同性恋行为的成年人"（consenting adults）的法律表述，**volentī nōn fit iniūria,** *injury is not done to a willing person*，以及 **fīat ut petitur,** *let it be done as requested*，这一短语指同意一项法律诉状的要求。

Et cētera ex hōc vocūbulāriō: accessit（字面意思是 *he/she approached, came close*）是对在竞赛中获得二等奖或荣誉奖的表彰；**vinculum mātrimōniī** 是 *the bond of matrimony*，**ā vinculō mātrimōniī** 是法律拉丁语，指解除婚约；**dē minimīs nōn cūrat lēx,** *the law does not concern itself with trivialities* 是另一则常见的法律格言；由 **ōrāre** 产生出了大量的座右铭和习语，包括 **ōrāre et spērāre** 和 **ōrā et labōrā**；除了 **carpe diem**，还有 **carpent tua pōma nepōtēs,** *your descendants will harvest your fruits*。**Carpāmus omnēs diēs, lēctōrēs et lēctrīcēs!**

第三十七课

Eō 的变位;地点和时间的结构

不规则动词 Eō, īre, iī, itum, *to go*

Eō, īre, iī, itum, *to go* 是一个不规则的第四变位法动词,它的完整变位形式见下;在拉丁语中,它就像英语中的"go"一样常用,所以它的变位应当牢牢掌握。

直陈式

现在时	未完成时	将来时	完成时	过去完成时	将来完成时
1. éō	ī́bam	ī́bō	íī	íeram	íerō
2. īs	ī́bās	ī́bis	ī́stī	íerās	íeris
3. it	ī́bat	ī́bit	íit	íerat	íerit
1. ī́mus	ībā́mus	ī́bimus	íimus	ierā́mus	iérimus
2. ī́tis	ībā́tis	ī́bitis	ī́stis	ierā́tis	iéritis
3. éunt	ī́bant	ī́bunt	iḗrunt	íerant	íerint

虚拟式

现在时	未完成时	完成时	过去完成时
1. éam	ī́rem	íerim	ī́ssem
2. éās	ī́rēs	íerīs	ī́ssēs
3. éat	ī́ret	íerit	ī́sset
1. eā́mus	īrḗmus	ierī́mus	īssḗmus
2. eā́tis	īrḗtis	ierī́tis	īssḗtis
3. éant	ī́rent	íerint	ī́ssent

命令式

单数ī **复数** ī́te

分词(普通用法)

现在时 íēns (eúntis, eúntī, etc.) **将来时** itū́rus, -a, -um

不定式

现在时ī́re
将来时itū́rus ésse
完成时ī́sse

动名词

eúndī

对 Eō 的评论

对于 **eō** 的现在时系统,存在两个主要困难:

(1)源于现在时不定式的正常词干 **ī-**,在 **a, o, u** 之前变成了 **e-**,例如 **eō, eunt, eam**。要特别注意上面的现在时直陈式和现在时虚拟式。现在时分词的所有形式(除了单数主格)和动名词(其用法将在第三十九课中介绍)都有类似的从**ī-**到 **e-**的变化。

(2)这个第四变位法动词的将来时有第一、第二变位法动词的时态标志和词尾。

完成时系统的形式是规则的,只是 **s** 之前的 **ii-**通常缩约为 **ī-**,例如 **īstī, īsse**。像 **īvī** 这样的带有**-v-**的形式比较罕见,在本书中并不出现。

这里只给出了主动态形式;不常用的无人称被动态(如 **ītur, ībātur**)以及将来时和完成时被动态分词(**eundum, itum**)在本书中并不出现。像 **adeō**, *to approach* 这样的及物复合动词一般都有被动词尾(如 **adeor, adībātur** 等等),不过这些形式在本书中也不出现。

地点结构

我们已经学过如何在一般的地点结构中使用恰当的介词和格,之所以在这里重复讲解,一是为了复习,二是与城市、城镇和小岛的名称以及 **domus, humus** 和 **rūs** 所适用的特殊规则进行对比。

1. 正常结构:介词 + 恰当的格

(1) 在何处(place *where*):**in** 或 **sub** + 夺格

In illā urbe vīsus est, *he was seen in that city.*

Nihil sub sōle est novum, *there is nothing new under the sun.*

(2) 到何处(place *to which*):**in, ad** 或 **sub** + 宾格

In illam urbem ībit, *he will go into that city.*

Sub hastam hostis occidit, *he fell under the enemy's spear.*

(3) 从何处(place *from which*):**ab, dē** 或 **ex** + 夺格

Ex illā urbe iit, *he went out of that city.*

2. 对于城市、城镇和小岛的名称以及 **domus, humus** 和 **rūs** 这三个名词,拉丁语中不使用介词,不过在英语翻译中通常要加上(不过英语中也用"he ran home"来表示"he ran *to his* home")。

(1) 在何处:对于那几个特殊名词,拉丁语使用一个特殊的格——"位置格"(locative)。第一、第二变格法名词的单数位置格在形式上与属格相同;除此之外,位置格通常与夺格相同。

Vīsus est Rōmae, Ephesī, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.

He was seen at Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

(2) 到何处:无介词宾格

Ībit Rōmam, Ephesum, Athēnās, et Carthāginem.

He will go to Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

(3) 从何处:无介词夺格

Iit Rōmā, Ephesō, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.

He went from Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

由后面的词汇表可以看出,**domus**是一个不大规则的阴性名词,它有一些第二变格法词尾,也有一些第四变格法词尾。在地点结构中,最常见的形式如下:

domī (位置格), *at home*	Domī vīsus est, *he was seen at home.*
domum (宾格), *home* (= *to home*)	Domum ībit, *he will go home.*
domō (夺格), *from home*	Domō iit, *he went from home.*

Humus 是一个阴性的第二变格法名词,它的位置格遵循以下规则:**humī,** *on the ground*。**Rūs** 的位置格是 **rūrī** 或 **rūre,** *in the country*。

时间结构

(1) 对于表示何时/期间的时间夺格(第十五课),我们已经比较熟悉了;虽然在拉丁语中不用介词,但在英语翻译中却要根据不同名词加上 *in, within, at, on* 等介词:

Eōdem diē iit, *he went on the same day.*

Paucīs hōrīs domum ībit, *he will go home in a few hours.*

（2）这里要介绍的是表示时间延续（duration of time）的宾格，它不是指某种动作发生在什么时间，也不是指在什么时间之内发生的，而是指该动作持续了多久。这种结构在拉丁语中不需要介词，而在英语翻译中，有时需要用介词*for*，有时省去。这一结构也经常与 **nātus** 连用，指人的年龄。

Multōs annōs vīxit, *he lived (for) many years.*

Paucās hōrās domī manēbit, *he will stay at home (for) a few hours.*

Quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est, *At the age of 25*（直译为 *having been born for 25 years*）, *he became commander.*

词汇表

Athḗnae, -ā́rum, f. pl., *Athens* (cp. athenaeum)

dómus, -ūs (-ī), f., *house, home;* **dómī,** *at home;* **dómum,** (*to*) *home;* **dómō,** *from home* (domain, domicile, domestic, domesticate, dome, major-domo; cp. **dominus, domina,** Ch. 40)

húmus, -ī, f., *ground, earth; soil* (humus, exhume, inhume, inhumation, posthumous; cp. humiliate, humility, from **humilis, -e,** *on the earth, down-to-earth, humble*)

íter, itíneris, n., *journey; route, road* (itinerant, itinerary; cp. **eō** below)

rūs, rū́ris, n., *the country, countryside* (rustic, rusticity; cp. **rūsticor, rūsticus,** *rural*)

Syrācū́sae, -ā́rum, f. pl., *Syracuse*

ábsēns, gen. **abséntis,** *absent, away* (absence, absentee, absenteeism, in absentia; from **absum, abesse**)

grā́tus, -a, -um, *pleasing, agreeable; grateful* (grace, gracious, grateful, gratitude, gratify, gratis, gratuitous, gratuity, ingrate, ingratiate, agree, congratulate; cp. **grātiās agō**)

idṓneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit, appropriate*

immṓtus, -a, -um, *unmoved; unchanged; unrelenting* (immotile; cp. **moveō**)

fórīs, adv., *out of doors, outside* (foreclose, foreign, forest, forfeit)

éō, ī́re, íī, ítum, *to go* (ambition, circuit, concomitant, exit, initial, initiate, initiative, obituary, perish, preterit, sedition, transient, transit, transition, transitive, transitory: many of these derive from the several compounds of **eō,** including the seven listed below)

ábeō, -ī́re, -iī, -itum, *to go away, depart, leave*

ádeō, -ī́re, -iī, -itum, *to go to, approach*

éxeō, -ī́re, -iī, -itum, *to go out, exit*

íneō, -ī́re, -iī, -itum, *to go in, enter*

óbeō, -ī́re, -iī, -itum, *to go up against, meet; die*

péreō, -ī́re, -iī, -itum, *to pass away, be destroyed, perish*

rédeō, -íre, -iī, -itum, *to go back, return*
interfíciō, -fícere, -fḗcī, -féctum, *to kill, murder*
lícet, licḗre, lícuit, impersonal,[1] *it is permitted, one may;* commonly with an infinitive as subject and a dative for the person permitted to act, e.g., **licet tibi abīre,** *you may leave,* lit., *it is permitted for you to leave* (license, licentious, illicit, leisure, viz. = **vidēlicet**, sc. = **scīlicet**)
peregrínor, peregrīnā́rī, peregrīnā́tus sum, *to travel abroad, wander* (peregrine, peregrinate, pilgrim, pilgrimage; from **per** + **ager**)
requiḗscō, -quiḗscere, -quiḗvī, -quiḗtum, *to rest* (requiescat, requiem)
sóleō, solḗre, sólitus sum, *to be accustomed* (insolent, obsolete)

练习与复习

1. Dehinc petet ā frātre meō et sorōre ut occāsiōnem carpant et in urbem quam celerrimē ineant.
2. Nisi domum hāc aestāte redīssēs, in longō itinere Athēnās fortasse peregrīnātī essēmus, et nōs ibi oblectāvissēmus.
3. Nē levēs quidem timōrēs ferre poterātis; rūrī, igitur, nōn in urbe semper vīvēbātis.
4. Haec locūtī, lēctōribus et lēctrīcibus persuādēbunt nē opēs cupīdinēsque praemiīs bonae vītae antepōnant.
5. Multōs annōs eōs cīvitātī servīre coēgit, sed animōs numquam contudit.
6. At nōs, ipsī multa mala passī, cōnātī sumus eīs īrātīs persuādēre ut servōs vinculīs līberārent et nē cui nocērent.
7. Sī quis vult aliōs iuvāre, cūret ut ad eōs adeat plēnus sapientiae.
8. Philosophī cōtīdiē requīrēbant utrum illī discipulī nātūrae pārērent.
9. Contemnāmus omnia perīcula, ea ex pectoribus exigāmus, et fateāmur haec difficillima Rōmae suscipienda esse.
10. Omnēs solent mīrārī ea pulcherrima quae Athēnīs vident.
11. Nisi māvīs morī, exī Syrācūsīs, sequere alium ducem, et accēde Athēnās.
12. Fēmina candida ante speculum immōta stetit, sed sē spectāre recūsāvit et animōs recreāre nōn potuit.
13. Paucās hōras duodecim puerī puellaeque humī sedēbant, ut magistra, subrīdēns et eōs serēnāns, plūrimās fābulās nārrābat.
14. Sī sapiēs et tibi imperāre poteris, fīēs grātior iūstiorque, parcēs miserīs ac amīcōs fovēbis.
15. They commanded that this be done in Rome for three days.
16. Unless he goes to Syracuse within five days, his father's fear will become greater.

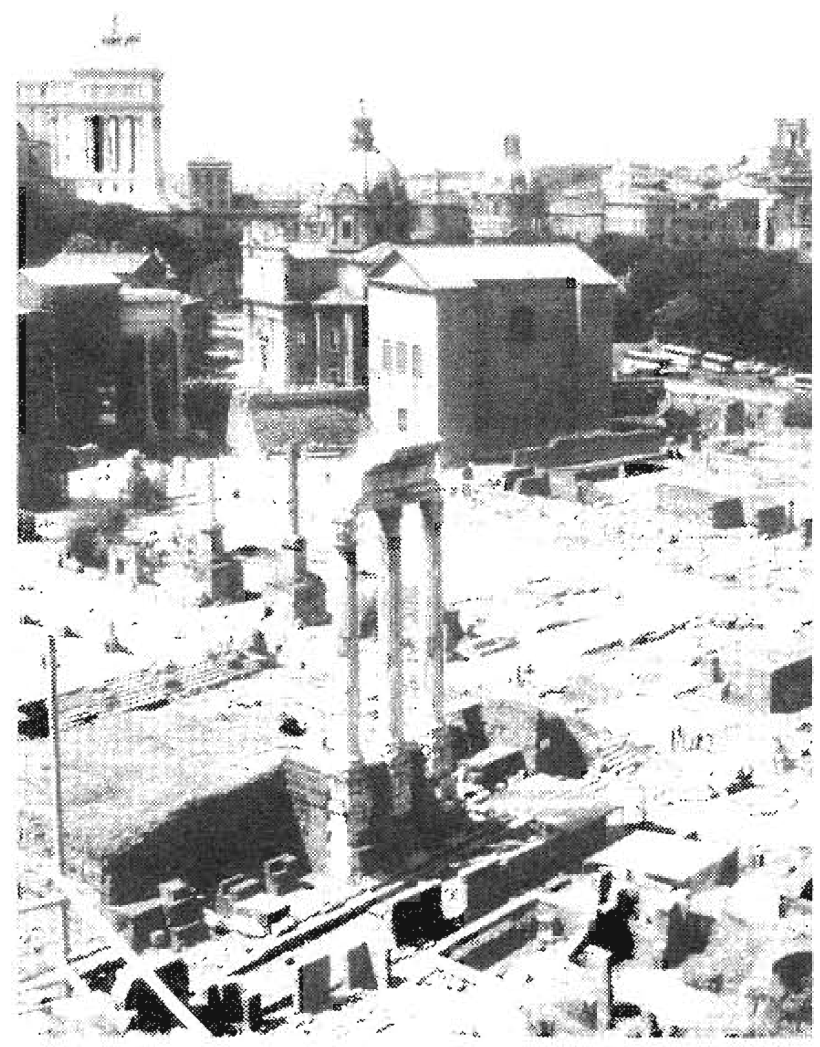
---

[1] 无人称动词只有第三人称(和不定式)形式,因为它们的主语不是一个人,而是一个不定式短语、不定式从句或不定代词"it"或"one",比如 **licet abīre**,直译为 *to leave is permitted*,合乎语言习惯的翻译是 *it is permissible to leave* 或 *one may leave*。

17. He thought that his brother would perhaps not go away from home that summer.
18. Nobody may speak freely in that country, as we all know.

古代名言

1. Mortālia facta perībunt. (*Horace.)
2. Noctēs atque diēs patet ātrī iānua Dītis. (*Virgil.—**āter, ātra, ātrum,** *dark, gloomy.*—**Dīs, Dītis,** *Dis,* another name for Pluto, god of the dead.)
3. Annī eunt mōre modōque fluentis aquae. Numquam hōra quae praeteriit potest redīre; ūtāmur aetāte. (Ovid.—**praeterīre,** *to go by, pass.*)
4. Heu, obiī! Quid ego ēgī! Fīlius nōn rediit ā cēnā hāc nocte. (Terence.)
5. Frāter meus ōrat nē abeās domō. (Terence.)
6. Dīcit patrem ab urbe abīsse sed frātrem esse domī. (Terence.)
7. Tertiā hōrā forīs ībam Sacrā Viā, ut meus mōs est. (Horace.—**Sacrā Viā,** abl. of means or way by which; the Sacred Way was the main street through the Roman Forum.)



The Roman Forum with remains of the temple of Castor and Pollux in the foreground and beyond it the Sacra Via Rome, Italy

8. Dēnique Dāmoclēs, cum sīc beātus esse nōn posset, ōrāvit Dionȳsium tyrannum ut abīre ā cēnā licēret. (Cicero.)
9. Eō tempore, Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus multa Rōmam mīsit; Syrācūsīs autem multa atque pulcherrima relīquit. (Cicero.)
10. Diēs multōs in eā nāve fuī; ita adversā tempestāte ūsī sumus. (Terence.)
11. Īram populī ferre nōn poterō, sī in exsilium ieris. (Cicero.)
12. Caesare interfectō, Brūtus Rōmā Athēnās fūgit. (Cicero.)
13. Ipse Rōmam redīrem, sī satis cōnsiliī dē hāc rē habērem. (Cicero.)

14. Nēmō est tam senex ut nōn putet sē ūnum annum posse vīvere. (Cicero.)
15. Dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre; nox tibi longa venit, nec reditūra diēs. (*Propertius.—**sinō, -ere,** *to allow.*—**reditūra,** sc. **est,** fut. act. periphrastic for **redībit; diēs** is sometimes fem.)

THANKS . . . BUT NO THANKS!

Candidius nihil est tē, Caeciliāne. Notāvī:
  sī quandō ex nostrīs disticha pauca legō,
prōtinus aut Mārsī recitās aut scrīpta Catullī.
  Hoc mihi dās, tamquam dēteriōra legās,
5 ut collāta magis placeant mea? Crēdimus istud:
  mālo tamen recitēs, Caeciliāne, tua!

(*Martial 2.71; meter: elegiac couplet.—**notāre,** *to note, notice.*—with **nostrīs,** sc. **libellīs.**—**disticha** (a Gk. acc. ending), *couplets, verses.*—Domitius Marsus, like Catullus, was a popular Latin poet.—**scrīptum, -ī,** *writing, written works.*—**hoc . . . dās,** i.e., as a favor.—**tamquam** here introduces an imagined comparison, something like a condition, hence the verb is subj.—**dēteriōra,** sc. **scrīpta,** *worse poetry.*—**collāta,** with **mea,** *compared, in comparison.*—**mālo [ut] recitēs;** the conj. is often omitted in a jussive noun clause.)

TRIMALCHIO'S EPITAPH

"Īnscrīptiō quoque vidē dīligenter sī haec satis idōnea tibi vidētur: 'C. Pompeius Trimalchiō Maecēnātiānus hīc requiēscit. Huic sēvirātus absentī dēcrētus est. Cum posset in omnibus decuriīs Rōmae esse, tamen nōluit. Pius, fortis, fidēlis, ex parvō crēvit; sestertium relīquit trecentiēs, nec umquam philosophum audīvit. Valē. Et tū.'" Haec ut dīxit Trimalchiō, flēre coepit ūbertim. Flēbat et Fortūnāta; flēbat et Habinnas; tōta dēnique familia, tamquam in fūnus rogāta, lāmentātiōne triclīnium implēvit.

(*Petronius, *Satyricon* 71–72; the boorish, nouveau-riche host Trimalchio asks his dinner-guests their opinion of his proposed epitaph.—**īnscrīptiō, -ōnis;** the more usual order would be **quoque vidē dīligenter sī haec īnscrīptiō. . . .** —**C. = Gaius.**—**Maecēnātiānus:** Trimalchio, an ex-slave, takes this name to associate himself with the famous Maecenas, a powerful and wealthy associate of Augustus.—**Huic . . . absentī,** i.e., in absentia from Rome.—**sēvirātus, -ūs,** *the post of sēvir Augustālis,* a member of the six-man commission that supervised the cult of the emperor.—**decūria, -ae,** *club;* these were groups of ten men organized for both business and social purposes.—**pius, -a, -um,** *devoted, dedicated.*—**ex parvō,** i.e., from humble beginnings.—**sestertium . . . trecentiēs,** *30 million sesterces,* a VERY hefty sum!—**nec . . . audīvit,** i.e., he "never even went to college!"—**Et tū,** sc. **valē;** epitaphs typically represented such "conversations": the deceased wishes the passerby "*Farewell,*" and the passerby, reading the inscription, replies, "*And you (likewise farewell).*"—**Haec ut = Ut haec.**—**flēre,** *to weep.*—**ūbertim,** adv., *profusely.*—**et = etiam.**—Fortunata ("Lucky") and Habinnas were Trimalchio's wife and a guest.—**fūnus, -neris,** n., *funeral.*—**lamentā-**

tiō, -ōnis.—triclīnium, -iī, *dining room.*—**impleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** *to fill.*)

MĀRCUS QUĪNTŌ FRĀTRĪ S.

Licinius, servus Aesōpī nostrī, Rōmā Athēnās fūgit. Is Athēnīs apud Patrōnem prō līberō virō fuit. Deinde in Asiam abiit. Posteā Platō, quīdam quī Athēnīs solet esse multum et quī tum Athēnīs fuerat cum Licinius Athēnās vēnisset, litterīs Aesōpī dē Liciniō acceptīs, hunc Ephesī comprehendit et in custōdiam trādidit. Petō ā tē, frāter, ut Ephesō exiēns servum Rōmam tēcum redūcās. Aesōpus enim ita īrāscitur propter servī scelus ut nihil eī grātius possit esse quam recuperātiō fugitīvī. Valē.

(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quīntum Frātrem* 1.2.14; Marcus Cicero wrote this letter to his brother Quintus, who was at the time governor of Asia.—**S.** = **salūtem dīcit,** *says greetings.*—**Licinius, -ī.—Aesōpus, -ī,** the leading tragic actor of Rome.—**Patrō, -trōnis.—prō,** *as a.*—**Plato,** an Epicurean from Sardis.—**multum,** adv.—**Ephesus, -ī,** a city in Asia Minor.—**re-dūcō.—īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum,** *to be angry;* cp. **īra** and **īrātus.—recuperātiō, -ōnis,** *recovery.*—**fugitīvus, -ī.**)

词源点滴

Vidēlicet, *namely*,源于 **vidēre licet**,字面意思是 *it is permitted to see*,即 *it is plain to see*。在中世纪手稿中,这个词经常缩写为 **vi-et**,而 **et** 有一种缩写类似于 **z**,于是便有了 **viz.** 这一缩写。而更常见的缩写 **sc.**则源于 **licet** 的另一个复合词 **scīlicet,** *namely, clearly*(源于 **scīre licet,** *you may understand*),我们用它来指示将要补充某个词或某种思想,它在文本中并不存在,但是很容易理解(参见前面"Trimalchio"注释中给出的例子)。

In the readings

7. **Via Lāta** 是罗马的另一条著名街道。通过与 **Sacra Via** 进行类比,**Via Lāta**(**lātus, –a, –um,** *broad*) 如何翻译? "Thanks": note, notation, notary.—script; 源于 **scrībō** 的第四个主要部分.—deteriorate, deterioration.—collate, collation. "Trimalchio": funereal.—lament, lamentable. "**Mārcus**": irascible.—"Recover" 和 "recuperate"是同源词,它们都源于 **recuperāre,** *to regain*。)

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 下面这些源于 **eō** 的常用词和常用短语肯定会继续(*going to*)激起你的兴趣(注意英语口语是如何将"go"用作助动词来表示将来的,试比较拉丁语在不常见的将来时被动态不定式中对 **īrī** 的使用):**exit** 和 **exeunt omnēs** 都是舞台指示;"perish"就是"thoroughly gone"(源于 **per+eō**),即从生命的舞台上最后一次"退场",这次离开往往由一块古老墓碑上的 **obiit** 或 **obiit sine prōle**(*he/she died without offspring*,源于 **prōlēs, prōlis,** f.,"proletariate"一词就来自它)的

缩写 **O.S.P.**来标明；**pereant quī ante nōs nostra dīxērunt** 是对先于我们具有一切最好想法的人的诅咒(意思是：我们不愿承认自己仅仅在重复前人的话！)；**iter**(字面意思是 *a going*)与 **eō** 和副词 **obiter** 都有关，由后者产生出了 **obiter dictum**，即某种 *said along the way*(或者"in passing")的东西，**obiter scrīptum** 也是类似；喜爱蒙蒂·派森[1]的影迷们知道，**Rōmānī, īte domum** 出自电影《布赖恩的一生》(*Life of Brian*)；最后是 **aut bibat aut abeat,** *let him either drink or go away*，这是一句古老的罗马祝酒辞，也是我们当地小酒馆的座右铭！

Et cētera: grātus 与 **grātia,** *favor, kindness, gratitude, thanks* 相关，后者见于 **grātiās agere,** *to give thanks,* **Deī grātiā,** *by the grace of God*；与 **grātia** 相关的还有英语词"gratis"，表示"出于感谢"(**grātīs**)做的事情，亦即"免费的"。缩写 **R.I.P.** 也可见于墓碑(虽然不是 Trimalchio 的墓碑！)，代表 **requiēscat in pāce**(还记得祈愿虚拟式吗？)；**rūs in urbe** 语出马提雅尔，指能够使人想起乡下的城市公园或乡村景色。好，今天的内容就是这么多啦：**nunc domum eāmus!**

[1] 蒙蒂·派森(Monty Python)，20 世纪英国著名喜剧团。——译者注

第三十八课

特征关系从句;关系与格;目的动名词

特征关系从句

到目前为止,我们见过的关系从句都是对其先行词(实际的人或事物)作某种事实描述,所以动词是直陈式(第十七课),比如 **hic est discipulus quī Latīnam amat,** *this is the student who loves Latin*。而"特征关系从句"则描述先行词的某种一般性质,这种性质本身可以是泛指的、不确定的、疑问性的或否定性的,因此动词是虚拟式,比如 hic est discipulus quī Latīnam amet, *this is a student*(或 *the sort of student*) *who would love Latin*。

特征关系从句很容易辨识,因为它的动词是虚拟式,而且其先行词往往是泛指的、否定性的等等(典型例子有 **sunt quī,** *there are people who;* **quis est quī,** *who is there who;* **nēmō est quī,** *there is no one who*);我们有时用助动词 *would* 来翻译虚拟式动词,有时在主句中使用 *the sort of* 或 *the kind of* 这样的短语来说明先行词是不确定的:

Quis est quī huic crēdat, *who is there who trusts this man* (*of such a sort that he would trust this man*)?

Nēmō erat quī hoc scīret, *there was no one who knew this.*

Sunt quī hoc faciant, *there are some who do this* (*of such a sort as to do this*).

Is nōn est quī hoc faciat, *he is not a person who does* (*would do*) *this.*

Hic est liber quem omnēs legant, *this is the kind of book which all read* (*a book which all would read*).

Hic est liber quem omnēs legunt, *this is the book which all are reading* (表示一个事实,因此用直陈式).

有些关系从句因为含有结果从句(比如下面"古代名言"中的句 4)、目的从句(参见下面的"Give Me a Figgy Sprig!")、因果从句或转折从句(即那些本来应由 **ut, cum** 等词引导的从句)的含义,所以动词也用虚拟式。

关系与格或兴趣与格

与格往往用来表示某个陈述所指的人(或事物),或者从他的角度来看是正确的,或者他对此有特殊的兴趣。这种"关系与格或兴趣与格"(试与第三十五课中讨论的与格进行比较)有时可以用"to"或"for"来翻译,不过往往还需要根据语境加入一些更详细的短语(由下面一些例子可以看出);有时关系与格似乎只起到了表示属有的作用(比如下面的第二个例句),但它所要表达的情感却往往更加强烈。

Sī quis metuēns vīvet, līber **mihi** nōn erit umquam.

If anyone lives in fear, he will not ever be free—as I see it(**mihi**)或 *to my way of thinking.*

Caret **tibi** pectus inānī ambitiōne?

Is your breast free from vain ambition—are you sure (**tibi**)?

Nūllīus culpae **mihi** cōnscius sum.

In my own heart (**mihi**), *I am conscious of no fault.*

Claudia est sapiēns **multīs**, *to many people Claudia is wise.*

别忘了把关系与格或兴趣与格加到你的与格用法表中(间接宾语、施事与格、形容词加与格、特殊动词和复合动词加与格)。

目的动名词

"目的动名词"(supine)是一个不完全变化的第四变格法动词性名词,与完成时被动态分词具有同一词干;常用的形式只有单数宾格和单数夺格两种。这里给出的目的动名词例词是:[宾] **laudā́tum,**[夺] **laudā́tū; mónitum, mónitū; ā́ctum, ā́ctū; audī́tum, audī́tū; cáptum, cáptū**。

目的动名词的夺格与某些形容词的中性形式连用,表示某种性质可用于什么方面,例如:**mīrābile dictū,** *amazing to say*(字面意思是 *amazing in respect to saying*);**facile factū,** *easy to do*。目的动名词的宾格(必须与完成时被动态分词区分开)与表示运动的动词连用,表示目的,例如:**ībant Rōmam rogātum pecūniam,** *they were going to Rome to ask for money;* **persuāsum amīcīs vēnērunt,** *they came to persuade their friends*(注意,目的动名词可以带直接宾

语、与格，以及基本动词可以支配的任何结构）。

词汇表

árbor, árboris, f., *tree* (arbor, Arbor Day, arboraceous, arboreal, arboretum, arboriculture)

dígnitās, dignitā́tis, f., *merit, prestige, dignity* (indignity; cp. **dignus,** deign, dignify, indignant, indignation)

dólor, dolṓris, m., *pain, grief* (doleful, dolorous, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. **doleō**)

ódium, -iī, n., *hatred* (odium, odious, annoy, ennui, noisome; cp. **ōdī**)

ópus, óperis, n., *a work, task; deed, accomplishment* (opus, opera, operate, operative, inoperative, operand, operose, co-operate, uncooperative, inure, hors d'oeuvre, maneuver, manure)

ōrā́tiō, ōrātiṓnis, f., *speech* (oration; cp. **ōrō, ōrātor**)

pēs, pédis, m., *lower leg, foot* (pedal, pedate, pedestal, pedestrian, pedicel, pedigree, piedmont, pawn, peon, pioneer, biped, quadruped, impede, impediment, expedite, expedition, expeditious; cp. **impediō** below)

sátor, satṓris, m., *sower, planter; begetter, father; founder* (cp. **serō,** *to plant, sow;* serial, series, assert, desert, exert, insert)

fī́rmus, -a, -um, *firm, strong; reliable* (firmament, affirm, affirmation, affirmative, confirm, confirmation, farm, farmer)

īnfī́rmus, -a, -um, *not strong, weak, feeble* (infirm, infirmary, infirmity)

mīrā́bilis, mīrā́bile, *amazing, wondrous, remarkable* (mirabilia, admirable, marvel; cp. **mīror,** miracle, mirador, mirage, mirror)

prī́stinus, -a, -um, *ancient; former, previous* (pristine)

sublī́mis, sublī́me, *elevated, lofty; heroic, noble* (sublimate, sublime, sublimity; not subliminal)

étsī, conj. with ind. or subj. according to rules for **sī,** *even if* (**et -sī**), *although*

érgā, prep. + acc., *toward*

libénter, adv., *with pleasure, gladly* (cp. the impersonal verb **libet,** *it pleases, is pleasing;* cognate with love)

impédiō, -pedī́re, -pedī́vī, -pedī́tum, *to impede, hinder, prevent* (impediment, impedimenta, impedance, impeach; see **Lātina Est Gaudium**)

métuō, metúere, métuī, *to fear, dread; be afraid for* + dat. (cp. **metus,** meticulous)

quéror, quérī, quéstus sum, *to complain, lament* (querulous; cp. quarrel, from **querēla, -ae,** *complaint*)

recognṓscō, -nṓscere, -nṓvī, -nitum, *to recognize, recollect* (recognition, recognizance, reconnaisance, reconnoitre; cp. **nōscō, cognōscō**)

suspéndō, -péndere, -péndī, -pḗnsum, *to hang up, suspend; interrupt* (suspense, suspension; cp. **pendere,** *to hang,* pendant, pendulum, expend)

vḗndō, vḗndere, vḗndidī, vḗnditum, *to sell* (vend, vendor)

练习与复习

1. Rēgī persuāsī ut sorōrī frātrīque tuō grātiōra praemia libenter daret.
2. Deinde, ab eā īnsulā nāve profecta, vīsum amīcōs Athēnās iniit.
3. Eum hortātī sumus ut ad Caesarem sine timōre accēdere cōnārētur.
4. Solitī sunt eī crēdere quī philosophiae servīret, virtūtem sequerētur, et cupīdinēs superāret.
5. Sapiēns nōs ōrat nē virīs sententiārum adversārum noceāmus.
6. In illīs terrīs nōn licet litterīs bonīs vērīsque studēre, ut sub tyrannō saepe fit; dēbēs, igitur, exīre et peregrīnārī.
7. Cūrēmus nē cīvitātem eīs trādāmus quī sē patriae antepōnant.
8. Sunt īnfīrmī quī levia opera mīrentur et semper sibi ignōscant.
9. Iste dux, diū absēns, tam stultīs cōnsiliīs cīvitātī ūtēbātur ut mīlia cīvium adversa patī cōgerentur atque multī bonī perīrent.
10. Haec locūtus, fassus est illōs, quī odium immōtum ergā cīvitātem multōs annōs habēbant, Rōmae interfectōs esse.
11. Initium operis nōs saepe impedit.
12. Sator sublīmis hominum atque animālium omnibus nōbīs animās dedit; cum corpora obeant, animae numquam morientur.
13. Cum rūs rediimus, tum domī invēnimus—mīrābile vīsū!—plūrimōs amīcōs.
14. Cicero, who was the greatest Roman orator, was a consul who would obey the senate.
15. I shall persuade him to become better and to return to Rome, I assure you.
16. We begged them not to trust a man whom a tyrant pleased.
17. Wherefore, let that man who hesitates to defend our country depart to another land.

古代名言

1. Sē omnēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt. (Caesar.—**prō-iaciō.**)
2. Hīc in nostrō numerō sunt quī lēgēs contemnant ac dē exitiō huius urbis cōtīdiē cōgitent. (Cicero.)
3. Quis est cui haec rēs pūblica atque possessiō lībertātis nōn sint cārae et dulcēs? (Id.—**possessiō, -ōnis.**)
4. Quae domus tam stabilis est, quae cīvitās tam fīrma est quae nōn odiīs, invidiā, atque īnsidiīs possit contundī? (Id.—**stabilis, -e.**—**quae . . . contundī;** here the characteristic clause has the force of result.)
5. Quārē, quid est quod tibi iam in hāc urbe placēre possit, in quā nēmō est quī tē nōn metuat? (Id.)
6. Quis enim aut eum dīligere potest quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? (Id.)
7. Tibi sōlī necēs multōrum cīvium impūnītae ac līberae fuērunt. (Id.—**nex, necis,** f., *murder.*—**impūnītus, -a, -um,** *unpunished.*)
8. Habētis autem eum cōnsulem quī exigere officium et pārēre vestrīs

dēcrētīs nōn dubitet atque vōs dēfendere possit. (Id.—**dēcrētum, -ī,** *decree.*)

9. Ille mihi semper deus erit. (Virgil.)
10. Nūllus dolor est quem nōn longinquitās temporis minuat ac molliat. (*Cicero.—**longinquitās, -tātis,** *length.*)
11. Parāvisse dīvitiās fuit multīs hominibus nōn fīnis sed mūtātiō malōrum. (Epicurus quoted by Seneca.—**mūtātiō, -ōnis,** *change.*)
12. Nihil est opere et manū factum quod tempus nōn cōnsūmat. (Cicero.)
13. Vīribus corporis dēficientibus, vigor tamen animī dūrāvit illī ad vītae fīnem. (Pliny.—**dēficiō, -ere,** *to fail.*—**vigor, -gōris.**—**dūrāre,** *to last.*)
14. Nunc est bibendum; nunc pede līberō pulsanda tellus. (*Horace; from his ode celebrating the death of the Egyptian queen Cleopatra.—sc. **nōbīs** as dat. of agent with both pass. periphrastics.—**pulsāre,** *to strike, beat;* with **pulsanda,** sc. **est,** *should be struck,* i.e., *danced upon.*—**tellūs, -lūris,** f., = **terra.**)

NOTE ON A BOOK BY LUCAN

Sunt quīdam quī mē dīcant nōn esse poētam;
　sed quī mē vēndit bibliopōla putat.

(*Martial 14.194; meter: elegiac couplet. In this note from a gift copy of Lucan's poetry, the author is himself imagined as speaking.—**bibliopōla, -ae,** m., *bookdealer,* antecedent of **quī.**)

TWO EXAMPLES OF ROMAN WIT

Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig!

Cum quīdam, querēns, dīxisset uxōrem suam dē fīcū suspendisse sē, amīcus illīus "Amābō tē," inquit, "dā mihi ex istā arbore surculōs quōs seram!"

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.278.—**fīcus, -ūs,** f., *fig tree;* nouns for trees are usually feminine.—**surculus, -ī,** *shoot, sprig.*—**quōs** = **ut eōs,** rel. clause of purpose.—**serō, -ere,** *to plant, sow.*)

The Most Pitiful Speech I've Ever Heard!

Cum quīdam ōrātor sē misericordiam ōrātiōne fortasse mōvisse putāret, rogāvit Catulum vidērēturne misericordiam mōvisse. "Ac magnam quidem, mihi," inquit, "putō enim nēminem esse tam dūrum cui ōrātiō tua nōn vīsa sit digna misericordiā!"

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.278.—**misericordia, -ae,** *pity;* an important objective for the ancient orator, and one for which he was trained, was to arouse the audience's emotions.—**Catulus, -ī.**—**vidērēturne:** the **-ne,** *whether,* signals an ind. quest.—**magnam,** sc. **misericordiam mōvistī!**—**cui** = **ut eī,** rel. clause of result.)

TWO LETTERS TO CICERO

Gn. Magnus Prōcōnsul Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātōrī

Sī valēs, bene est. Tuās litterās libenter lēgī; recognōvī enim tuam prīstinam virtūtem etiam in salūte commūnī. Cōnsulēs ad eum exercitum vēnērunt quem in Āpūliā habuī. Magnopere tē hortor ut occāsiōnem carpās et tē ad nōs cōnferās, ut commūnī cōnsiliō reī publicae miserae opem atque auxilium ferāmus. Moneō ut Rōmā exeās, viā Appiā iter faciās, et quam celerrimē Brundisium veniās.

Caesar Imperātor Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātōrī

Cum Brundisium celerius adeam atque sim in itinere, exercitū iam praemissō, dēbeō tamen ad tē scrībere et grātiās idōneās tibi agere, etsī hoc fēcī saepe et saepius factūrus videor; ita dignus es. Imprīmīs, quoniam crēdō mē celeriter ad urbem ventūrum esse, ā tē petō ut tē ibi videam ut tuō cōnsiliō, dignitāte, ope ūtī possim. Festīnātiōnī meae brevitātīque litterārum ignōscēs; cētera ex Furniō cognōscēs.

(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum* 8.11 and 9.6; in these letters, two of hundreds that survive from Cicero's correspondence, both Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, "Pompey the Great," and Julius Caesar bid for the statesman's support in the civil war that followed Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon in 49 B.C.—**prōcōnsul, -sulis,** *proconsul, governor* (of a province).—**salūte commūnī,** here *the public welfare.*—Apulia was a district in south Italy.—**viā Appiā,** abl. of route, a common construction; the Via Appia, built in the 4th century B.C., was the highway leading south from Rome and, ultimately, to Brundisium, the port of departure for Greece.—**prae-mittō, -ere.**—**imprīmīs,** adv., *especially.*—**festīnātiō, -ōnis,** *haste, rush.*—**brevitās, -tātis.**—**Furnius,** the name of an associate.)

ASK ME IF I CARE

Nīl nimium studeō, Caesar, tibi velle placēre,
nec scīre utrum sīs albus an āter homō!

(*Catullus 93; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = **nōn.**—**albus, -a, -um,** *white.*—**āter, ātra, ātrum,** *black.*)

词源点滴

我们知道,**opus** 经常用在音乐作品的标题中,例如贝多芬的"c 小调第五交响曲,Opus 67"。"歌剧"(opera)一词经由意大利语源于 **opera, –ae,** *effort, pains, work*,它显然与 **opus** 具有同一词根。而 **magnum opus** 则往往用于文学领域。

以下是一些罗曼语派生词:

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
dolor	dolore	dolor	douleur
odium	odio	odio	odieux (odiōsus)
pēs, pedis	piede	pie	pied

In the readings

1. project, projection. 4. stable (adj.), stability, stabilize. 7. internecine; cp. **necāre.**—impunity, punitive. 13. deficient, deficiency, defect, defective, defection. 14. pulse, pulsate, pulsar. "Note": bibliopole, bibliopolist; cp. bibliography, bibliophile (都源于希腊语). "Hang Her": ficus.—surculose. "Pity": misericord; cp. **miser.** "Two Letters": festinate, festination.—brevity; cp. **brevis.** "Ask Me": alb, alba, Alba Longa, Alban, albedo, albescent, albinism, albino, albugeneous, album, albumen, albumin. —atrabilious.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte！你是否注意到了，在每一课的这个部分，我们都喜欢 **ad lib.**？**Ad libitum,** *at one's pleasure*，与 **libenter** 有关，拉丁语就应当这样讲授和学习：*gladly*！因此，**libenter carpite diem et hās rēs novās:**首先，注意 **impediō** 源于 **in + pēs**；如果你被"impeded"了，那是因为你的"脚"碰到了什么东西（比如"fetters"［脚镣］，这个词也是来自"foot"这一词根）。于是，也许你应当去看 podiatrist（**pod-**是拉丁语 **ped-**的希腊语同源词），让他来"expedite"你的治疗（**expedīre** 本来就是"to de-fetter"，它与 **impedīre** 的含义相反；与源于 **implicāre/explicāre** 的"implicate"和"explicate"比较）；或者干脆不要步行了，改骑自行车吧。**Odium** 意为 *rivalry* 和 *hatred*；猜猜看，在 **odium medicum, odium scholasticum** 和 **odium theologicum** 中，是谁与谁在竞争？说起可恨的人，据说罗马皇帝提比略（公元 14 年—37 年）曾经这样谈及他的臣民：**ōderint dum metuant,** *let them hate* (*me*), *so long as they fear me*！缩写 **op. cit.** 源于 **opere citātō,** *in the work cited*；**opera omnia** 是某位作者的 *complete works*。有一项古老的法令说，**vendēns eandem rem duōbus est falsārius** (*fraudulent*)，这样一种诈骗将是 **īnfrā dignitātem,** *beneath one's dignity*，所以要记住 **caveat ēmptor,** *let the buyer beware*！**Iterum tempus fūgit: valeātis, amīcī et amīcae**！

第三十九课

动名词和动形词

动形词

我们对动形词(gerundive),或者说将来时被动态分词,[1] 已经很熟悉了。这是一个由词尾**-ndus, -nda, -ndum** 构成的动词性形容词(第二十三课)。除了偶尔起简单形容词的作用(**liber legendus,** *a book to be read*),动形词常常用于被动迂说法变位(第二十四课:**hic liber legendus est,** *this book should be read*)。本课将介绍它的另一些用法。

动名词

动名词(gerund)是一种在形式上类似于动形词的动词性名词,不过它只有四种形式,即中性单数的属格、与格、宾格和夺格。这些形式与动形词相应的格相同,不过含义是主动的,对应于英语中以"-ing"结尾的动名词(**legendī,** *of reading*,例如 **magnum amōrem legendī habet,** *he has a great love of reading*)。

动名词的变格

以下是一些拉丁语例词的完整的动名词变格:

属格	laudándī	dūcéndī	sequéndī	audiéndī
	(*of praising, leading, following, hearing*)			
与格	laudándō	dūcéndō	sequéndō	audiéndō
	(*to/for praising,* etc.)			

---

[1] 因此,"动形词"更为准确的译法为"将来被动动形词"。但为简洁起见,而且可以与动名词显得更加"对等",本书采用"动形词"的译法。——译者注

宾格	laudándum (*praising,* etc.)	dūcéndum	sequéndum	audiéndum
夺格	laudándō (*by praising,* etc.)	dūcéndō	sequéndō	audiéndō

既然动名词是一个动词性名词，那么在不同情况下，它就既可以作为动词被修饰，又可以用作名词。然而，由于没有主格形式，动名词不能用作主语，这一功能由拉丁语中的另一种动词性名词——不定式来实现（也就是说，拉丁语可以说 **errāre est humānum,** *to err is human*，但不能说 *erring is human*）；类似地，动词的宾格一般用作 **ad** 等介词的宾语，而不能作直接宾语（这一功能也是由不定式来实现的，例如 **iussit eōs venīre,** *he ordered them to come*。参见附录中的“宾语不定式”部分）。下面的句子给出了动名词四种格的典型用法：

studium **vīvendī** cum amīcīs, *fondness of (for) living with friends.*

Operam dat **vīvendō** bene, *he gives attention to living well.*

Athēnās iit ad **vīvendum** bene, *he went to Athens to live well.*

Fēlīciōrēs fīmus **vīvendō** bene, *we become happier by living well.*

动名词与动形词的区别

动名词与动形词的区别在于：

（1）动形词是一个动词性形容词（**liber legendus,** *a book to be read*），动名词则是一个动词性名词（**amor legendī,** *love of reading*）。

（2）作为形容词，动形词有全套的阳性、阴性、中性词尾，既有单数也有复数，而且各种格的情况都有；而动名词则只有中性单数，而且只有属格、与格、宾格和夺格，所以一共只有四种形式。

（3）动形词在含义上是被动的，动名词在含义上是主动的。

动名词短语和动形词短语

作为动词性名词，动名词可以带动词所要求的格：

studium legendī librōs, *fondness of reading books.*

Discimus legendō librōs, *we learn by reading books.*

但在实际使用中，如果动名词后面跟着一个宾格名词作直接宾语，那么罗马人更愿意把这个名词的格置于没有该名词时动名词应当处于的那种格，并使用与该名词一致的动形词。无论使用哪种结构，翻译都是一样的，因为英语习惯于使用动名词结构而不是动形词结构。在下列例子中，标 A 的是我们按照英语习惯期待的结果；标 B 的则是罗马人实际上更愿意使用的动形词短语：

A. studium legendī librōs(可接受)
B. studium librōrum legendōrum(更愿意使用)
fondness of reading books(不能写成*fondness of books to be read*,因为这不合乎语言习惯)

A. Operam dat legendō librōs.
B. Operam dat librīs legendīs.
He gives attention to reading books.

A. Discimus legendō librōs.
B. Discimus librīs legendīs.
We learn by reading books.

A. Hoc locūtus est dē legendō librōs.
B. Hoc locūtus est dē librīs legendīs.
He said this about reading books.

用"**ad** + 宾格的将来被动动形词(或动名词)短语"以及"后置的 **causā** + 属格的动形词(或动名词)短语"来表示目的是很常见的:

A. Vēnit ad legendum librōs.
B. Vēnit ad librōs legendōs.
He came to read books.

A. Ōtium petit legendī librōs causā.
B. Ōtium petit librōrum legendōrum causā.
He seeks leisure for the sake of reading books.

别忘了,在拉丁语中,目的不仅可以通过动形词/动名词短语来表达,而且可以通过 **ut/nē** + 虚拟式,以及表示运动的主要动词之后的目的动名词宾格来表达。例如,**venit ut hōs librōs legat** 和 **venit hōs librōs lēctum** 都表示 *he is coming to read these books*。

词汇表

aedifícium, -iī, n., *building, structure* (edification, edifice, edify, aedile)
iniū́ria, -ae, f., *injustice, injury, wrong* (injurious; cp. **iūdex, iūdicium, iūs, iūstus**, Ch. 40)
múlier, mulíeris, f., *woman* (muliebrity)
trā́nsitus, -ūs, m., *passing over, transit; transition* (cp. **trānseō** below)
véntus, -ī, m., *wind* (vent, ventilate, ventilation, ventilator)
cúpidus, -a, -um, *desirous, eager, fond;* + gen., *desirous of, eager for* (cp. **cupiō, cupiditās, cupīdō**)

līberális, līberále, *of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal; generous* (liberal arts, liberality; cp. **līber, līberō**)
necésse, indecl. adj. used as nom. or acc., *necessary, inevitable* (necessitate, necessitous, unnecessary; cp. **cēdō**)
vétus, gen. **véteris,** *old* (veteran, inveterate, veterinary, veterinarian)
quási, adv. or conj., *as if, as it were* (quasi; = **quam** + **sī**)
ámbulō (1), *to walk* (amble, ambulance, ambulate, ambulatory, perambulate, preamble, somnambulist)
expérior, -perī́rī, -pértus sum, *to try, test; experience* (experiment, expert, inexpert, inexperience; cp. **perīculum**)
lī́bō (1), *to pour a libation of, on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently* (libation)
opórtet, oportḗre, opórtuit, impers., *it is proper, right, necessary*
oppúgnō (1), *to fight against, attack, assault, assail* (oppugn; cp. **pugnō**)
ṓrnō (1), *to equip, furnish, adorn* (adornment, ornate, ornament, ornamental, ornamentation, suborn, subornation)
pernóctō (1), *to spend* or *occupy the night* (nocturnal, nocturne; cp. **nox**)
trā́nseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *to go across, cross; pass over, ignore* (transit, transition, transitive, intransitive, transitory, trance)

练习与复习

1. Caesar eōs cōtīdiē ōrābat nē fāta adversa metuerent.
2. Etsī hoc fīat, illī mīlitēs urbem oppugnātum fortasse accēdant et multī cīvēs obeant.
3. Sī licēbit, septem diēbus domum ībimus ad nostrōs amīcōs videndōs.
4. Amīcus līberālissimus noster, quōcum pernoctābāmus, dīs vīnum ante cēnam lībāvit, et deinde mēnsam ōrnāvit.
5. Cōnsul, vir maximae dignitātis, ōtium cōnsūmpsit in operibus sublīmibus scrībendīs.
6. Sunt autem quī dolōrum vītandōrum causā, ut āiunt, semper levia opera faciant, labōrem contemnant, et dē officiīs querantur.
7. In rē pūblicā gerendā istī nōn dubitant praemia grāta sibi requīrere, officia suspendere, atque honōrem suum vēndere.
8. Lēctrīx doctissima mox surget ad tria carmina recitanda, quae omnēs audītōrēs oblectābunt atque animōs serēnābunt.
9. Nēmō est cui iniūria placeat, ut nōs omnēs recognōscimus.
10. Nisi vincula patī ac sub pedibus tyrannōrum humī contundī volumus, lībertātī semper studeāmus et eam numquam impediāmus.
11. Pauca opera mihi sedendō fīunt, multa agendō et experiendō.
12. Illa mulier mīrābilis frūctūs amōris libenter carpsit et virō grātissimō nūpsit.
13. They are going to Rome to talk about conquering the Greeks.
14. By remaining at Rome he persuaded them to become braver.
15. Who is there who has hope of doing great works without pain?
16. We urged the consul to serve the state and preserve our dignity by attacking these injustices.

古代名言

1. Coniūrātiōnem nāscentem nōn crēdendō corrōborāvērunt. (*Cicero.—**coniūrātiō, -ōnis,** *conspiracy.*—**corrōborāre,** *to strengthen.*)
2. Malī dēsinant īnsidiās reī pūblicae cōnsulīque parāre et ignēs ad īnflammandam urbem. (Cicero.—**dēsinō, -ere,** *to cease.*—**īnflammāre,** *to set on fire.*)
3. Multī autem propter glōriae cupiditātem sunt cupidī bellōrum gerendōrum. (Cicero.)
4. Veterem iniūriam ferendō invītāmus novam. (Publilius Syrus.)
5. Cūrēmus nē poena maior sit quam culpa; prohibenda autem maximē est īra in pūniendō. (Cicero.—**pūnīre,** *to punish.*)
6. Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus aedificiīs omnibus sīc pepercit—mīrābile dictū—quasi ad ea dēfendenda, nōn oppugnanda vēnisset. (Cicero.)
7. Rēgulus laudandus est in cōnservandō iūre iūrandō. (*Cicero.—Regulus, prisoner of the Carthaginians, swore to them that he would return to Carthage after a mission to Rome.—**iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** n., *oath.*)
8. In ōrātiōne meā dīcam dē mōribus fīrmīs Sēstiī et dē studiō cōnservandae salūtis commūnis. (Cicero.—**Sēstius, -iī.**)
9. Trānsitus ad senectūtem nōs āvocat ā rēbus gerendīs et corpus facit īnfīrmius. (Cicero.)
10. Cum recreandae vōcis īnfīrmae causā necesse esset mihi ambulāre, hās litterās dictāvī forīs ambulāns. (Cicero.—**dictāre,** *to dictate.*)
11. Semper metuendō sapiēns vītat malum. (Publilius Syrus.)
12. Haec virtūs ex prōvidendō est appellāta prūdentia. (Cicero.—**prōvidēre.**—**prūdentia = prō-videntia.**)
13. Fāma vīrēs acquīrit eundō. (Virgil.—**acquīrō,** from **ad-quaerō,** *to acquire.*)
14. Hae vicissitūdinēs fortūnae, etsī nōbīs iūcundae in experiendō nōn fuērunt, in legendō tamen erunt iūcundae. Recordātiō enim praeteritī dolōris dēlectātiōnem nōbīs habet. (Cicero.—**vicissitūdō, -dinis.**—**recordātiō, -ōnis,** *recollection.*—**praeteritus, -a, -um,** *past.*)

PROMISES, PROMISES!

Nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mālle
quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.
Dīcit: sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī,
in ventō et rapidā scrībere oportet aquā.

(*Catullus 70; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Nūllī** and **mihi** are both dat. with **nūbere,** and **quam = magis quam;** the prose order would be **mulier mea dīcit sē nūllī quam mihi nūbere mālle.**—**amantī,** *lover.*—Note the separation of adj. from noun in **cupidō . . . amantī** and **rapidā . . . aquā,** a common feature of Latin verse used here to emphasize the nouns that are delayed; the prose order: **sed quod mulier**

amantī cupidō dīcit.—rapidus, -a, -um.)

PAETE, NŌN DOLET

Casta suō gladium cum trāderet Arria Paetō,
quem dē vīsceribus strīnxerat ipsa suīs,
"Sī qua fidēs, vulnus quod fēcī nōn dolet," inquit,
"sed quod tū faciēs, hoc mihi, Paete, dolet."

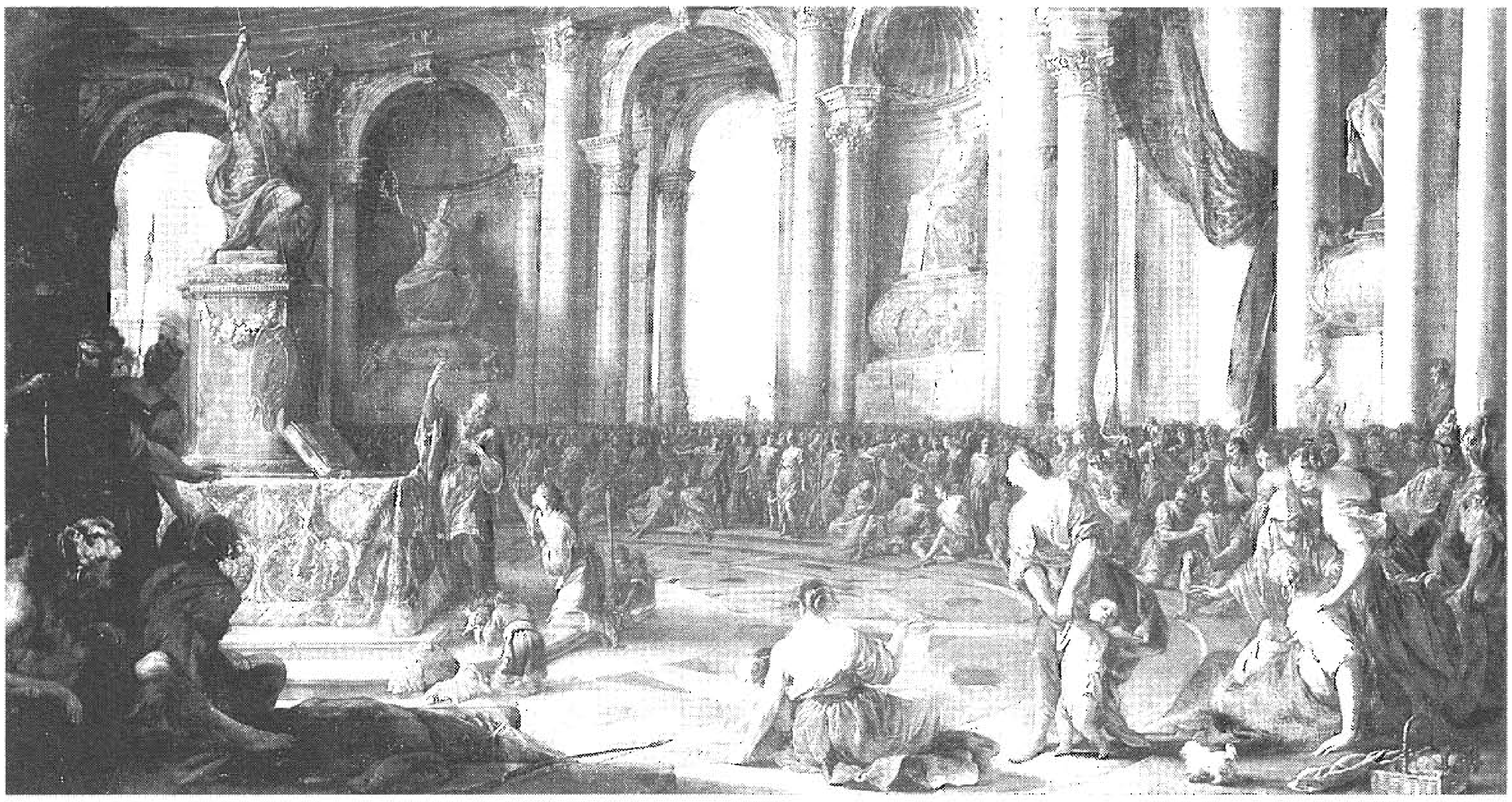
(*Martial 1.13; meter: elegiac couplet.—Caecina Paetus was compelled to commit suicide in 42 A.D., because of the role he had played in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius; his courageous and devoted wife Arria, choosing to die with him, stabbed herself before passing the sword to her husband and assuring him that the pain of the wound itself would be slight. See below, L.I. 39.—The prose order of the first verse would be: **Cum Arria casta Paetō suō gladium trāderet.—castus, -a, -um,** *loyal, chaste.*—**gladius, -ī,** *sword.*—**vīscera, -cerum,** n. pl., *vital organs, abdomen.*—**stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum,** *to draw tight, tie; pull, draw out.*—**sī qua [=quae,** indef.**] fidēs,** i.e., *if you have any faith in me, if you will trust me.*)

HANNIBAL AND THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal, fīlius Hamilcaris, Carthāgine nātus est. In adulēscentiā prīstinum odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc fīrmē cōnservāvit ut numquam id dēpōneret. Cum patre exiit Carthāgine et in Hispāniam longō itinere prōfectus est; et post multōs annōs, Hamilcare interfectō, exercitus eī imperium trādidit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Tribus annīs nōn requiēvit, sed omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvit et trēs exercitūs maximōs parāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit.

Ad Alpēs adiit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Populōs cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū necāvit; loca patefēcit; et cum multīs elephantīs mīlitibusque in Italiam iniit. In hōc itinere tam gravī morbō oculōrum adfectus est ut posteā numquam dextrō oculō bene ūtī posset. Multōs ducēs, tamen, exercitūsque Rōmānōs vīcit, et propter illum imperātōrem mīlia mīlitum Rōmānōrum periērunt.

(Nepos, *Hannibal,* excerpts; see L.A. 8.—Hannibal, general who led the Carthaginians against the Romans in the Second Punic War, 218–02 B.C.—**Hamilcar, -caris.—dē + pōnō.—Hispānia, -ae,** *Spain.*—**Āfrica, -ae.—Alpēs, Alpium,** f. pl., *the Alps.*—**adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *to affect, afflict, weaken.*)



The Oath of Hannibal, Johann Heinrich Schoenfeld, 17th century
Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, German

词源点滴

“Gerund”[动名词]和“gerundive”[动形词]都源于 **gerō** 的词干**gerund-** (= **gerend-**)。动名词指的是“doing”(action),动形词指的是what is “to be done”。

在晚期拉丁语中,动名词的夺格越来越多地等同于现在时分词。由这一用法派生出了意大利语和西班牙语中的现在时分词,它们均以**-ndo** 结尾,且不发生变化。

拉丁语动名词	意大利语分词	西班牙语分词
dandō	dando	dando
faciendō	facendo	haciendo
dīcendō	dicendo	diciendo
pōnendō	ponendo	poniendo
scrībendō	scrivendo	escribiendo

In the readings

1. conjuration; cp. **coniūrātī.**—corroborate, corroborate; cp. **rōbur, rōboris,** n., *hard wood, oak*. 2. inflammation, inflammatory. 5. punitive, impunity; cp. **poena.** 10. dictator. 14. **re-cord-ātiō** 中含有词干 **cor, cordis,** *heart*,这表明在以前,人们认为心不仅是感情之所,而且也是记忆之场,这一信念反应在我们的短语“用心学习”中。与 record, accord, concord, discord, cordial, cordate, courage 比较。英语

词"heart"与拉丁语的 **cord-**同源. "Promises": rapid, rapids, rapidity; cp. **rapiō.** "Paete": chaste, chasten, chastity, chastise.—gladiator, gladiatorial, gladiola, gladiolus. —viscera, visceral, eviscerate.—stringency, stringendo, stringent, astringent, strict, constrict, restrict. "Hannibal": deponent, depose, deposit, deposition.—affect, affection.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque; haec sunt discenda: 老加图（Cato）对演说家的定义是广为人知的，公元 1 世纪的教育家昆体良曾经作过引用（*Īnstitūtiōnēs Ōrātōriae* 12.1.1）。我们现在已经学习了动名词（再加上 **perītus, -a, -um** + 属格 = *experienced in* 这一说明），我想你现在一定可以轻而易举地翻译它了：**ōrātor est vir bonus dīcendī perītus**。以下是一些包含动名词和动形词的短语：新墨西哥州的座右铭是 **crēscit eundō**（如果觉得困难，请复习第三十七课！）；**docendō discimus**；**spectēmur agendō,** *let us be judged by what we do*（直译为 *by our doing*）；**modus vīvendī** 和 **modus operandī**；**onus probandī,** *the burden of proof*（直译为 *of proving*）；当然，还有下面这些"需要做的事情"（things to be done）：**agenda, addenda, corrigenda, referendum**。

Et duo cētera ex vocābulāriō novō: iniūria nōn excūsat iniūriam, (*one*) *injury does not excuse* (*another*) *injury* 是一种古老的法律信条，**expertō crēdite** 依然不失为好的建议。**Habēte fēlīcem modum vīvendī, studentēs, et valēte!**

第四十课

直接问句中的-Ne、Num 和 Nōnne；疑虑从句；描述属格和描述夺格

直接问句中的-Ne、Num 和 Nōnne

正如我们所看到的，罗马人可以用多种方式直接提出问题，比如用疑问代词（**quis, quid**）或者像 **ubi** 或 **cūr** 这样的疑问词来引出句子，或者通过给句首词（往往是问题所基于的动词或其他词）加后缀**-ne**。但在拉丁语中也可以问“诱导性的问题”：如果说话者期待肯定的回答，就用 **nōnne** 来引出问题（我们已经碰到过这种结构，不过还没有正式讨论）；如果期待否定的回答，就用 **num** 作引导词。

Quis venit? *Who is coming?*

Cūr venit? *Why is he coming?*

Venitne? *Is he coming?*

Nōnne venit? *He is coming, isn't he?* 或 *Isn't he coming?*

Num venit? *He isn't coming, is he?*

Scrīpsistīne illās litterās? *Did you write that letter?*

Nōnne illās litterās scrīpsistī? *You wrote that letter, didn't you?* 或 *Didn't you write that letter?*

Num illās litterās scrīpsistī? *You didn't write that letter, did you?*

疑虑从句

有一些表示惧怕或忧虑的动词，后面经常跟着由 **nē**（*that*）或 **ut**（*that . . . not*；偶尔用 **nē nōn** 而不是 **ut**）引导的虚拟式名词从句；这些连词所引出的内容

其实恰恰与期望相反，因为它们所引导的从句原本是独立的命令句（即 **timeō nē abeās,** *I fear that you may go away,* = **Timeō. Nē abeās!**，*I'm afraid—Don't go away!*）。翻译时常用 *will* 或 *may*（在基本时态的序列中），*would* 或 *might*（在派生时态的序列中）等助动词，如下列例子所示：

Timeō nē id crēdant, *I fear that they will (may) believe this.*

Vereor ut id crēdant, *I am afraid that they will (may) not believe this.*

Timuērunt nē amīcōs amitterent, *they feared that they might (would) lose their friends.*

Metuistī ut mulierēs ex casā exīssent, *you were afraid that the women had not left the house.*

描述属格和描述夺格

有时一个夺格或属格名词加上修饰它的形容词可以用来修饰另一个名词，这就是（我们曾经在阅读中见到过的）描述夺格和描述属格。它们可以通过指出特点、性质、尺寸来描述一个名词；在描述物理特性时，夺格尤其常用。和形容词一样，这些描述性短语通常跟在所修饰名词之后。

fēmina **magnae sapientiae,** *a woman of great intellect*

pāx in hominibus **bonae voluntātis,** *peace among men of good will*

cōnsilium **eius modī,** *a plan of this kind*

Dīligō hominem **antīquā virtūte,** *I esteem a man of old-fashioned morality.*

mīles **fīrmā manū,** *the soldier with the strong hand*

Es **mōribus bonīs,** *you are a person of good character.*

词汇表

aes, aéris, n., *bronze* (era; cp. **aerārium, -ī,** *treasury;* **aereus, -a, -um,** *made of bronze*)

dóminus, -ī, m., *master (of a household), lord,* and **dómina, -ae,** f., *mistress, lady* (dominate, dominant, domineer, dominion, domain, domino, domine, don, dungeon, belladonna, madonna, dame, damsel, danger; cp. **domus**)

lácrima, -ae, f., *tear* (lacrimal, lacrimation)

mḗta, -ae, f., *turning point, goal; limit, boundary*

monuméntum, -ī, n., *monument* (monumental, monumentalize; cp. **moneō**)

nā́sus, -ī, m., *nose* (nasal, nasalize, nasogastric; cp. nostril, nozzle)

sáxum, -ī, n., *rock, stone* (saxatile, saxifrage, saxicolous; cp. **secō,** *to cut,* saw, saxon)

vúltus, -ūs, m., *countenance, face*
iū́stus, -a, -um, *just, right* (justice, injustice, unjust, justify, justification, adjust, adjustment, readjust; cp. **iūs, iūdex, iniūria**)
tot, indecl. adj., *so many* (cp. **quot; totidem,** indecl. adj., *the same number;* **totiēns,** adv., *that number of times, so often*)
praéter, prep. + acc., *besides, except; beyond, past* (preterit, preterition, pretermit, preternatural; cp. **prae**)
nṓnne, interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer "yes."
num, interrog. adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer "no"; (2) introduces indirect questions and means *whether.*
omnī́nō, adv., *wholly, entirely, altogether* (cp. **omnis**)
postrḗmum, adv., *after all, finally; for the last time* (cp. **post**)
quīn, adv., *indeed, in fact*
éxplicō (1), *unfold; explain; spread out, deploy* (explicate, inexplicable; implicate, implication, from **implicō,** *to enfold, interweave)*
fatī́gō (1), *to weary, tire out* (fatigue, indefatigable)
for, fā́rī, fā́tus sum, *to speak (prophetically), talk, foretell* (affable, ineffable, infant, infantry, preface; cp. **fābula, fāma, fātum**)
opī́nor, opīnā́rī, opīnā́tus sum, *to suppose* (opine, opinion)
repériō, reperī́re, répperī, repértum, *to find, discover, learn; get* (repertoire, repertory; cp. **parēns** and **pariō,** *to give birth to*)
véreor, verḗrī, véritus sum, *to show reverence for, respect; be afraid of, fear* (revere, reverend, reverent, reverential, irreverent)

练习与复习

1. Nōnne Rōmulus, sator huius urbis, fuit vir mīrābilis virtūtis et fideī pristinae?
2. At postrēmum vereor, heu, ut ā virīs parvae sapientiae hoc studium vetus intellegī possit.
3. Nōn oportet nōs trānsīre haec līberālia hūmānaque studia, nam praemia eōrum certē sunt maxima.
4. Dignitās illīus ōrātiōnis fuit omnīnō idōnea occāsiōnī.
5. Equī eius, cum fatīgātī essent et ventus esset eīs adversus, ad mētam tamen quam celerrimē currēbant.
6. Vir corpore īnfīrmō id nōn facere poterat.
7. Etsī trēs fīliī sunt cupidī magnōrum operum faciendōrum, eīs nōn licet domō abīre.
8. Domina fīrma acerbē querēbātur plūrimōs servōs fuisse absentēs—vae illīs miserīs!
9. Mīrābile rogātū, num istam mulierem amās, mī amīce?
10. Nōnne timent nē et Rōmae et rūrī magnī tumultūs sint?
11. Num ōpīnāris tot hominēs iūstōs omnīnō errāre?
12. Recognōvistīne, ut illa aedificia vīsum ambulābās, mulierem sub arbore humī requiēscentem?

13. I am afraid, in my heart, that few things can be accomplished now even by trying.
14. You do not hesitate to say this, do you?
15. They supposed that, after all, he was a man of very little faith.
16. You do recognize how great the danger is, do you not?

古代名言

1. Quattuor causās reperiō cūr senectūs misera videātur. Videāmus quam iūsta quaeque eārum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Verērī videntur ut habeam satis praesidī. (*Cicero.—**praesidium, -iī,** *guard*).
3. Necesse est enim sit alterum dē duōbus: aut mors sēnsūs omnīnō aufert aut animus in alium locum morte abit. Sī mors somnō similis est sēnsūsque exstinguuntur, dī bonī, quid lucrī est morī! (Cicero.—**necesse est** may be followed by the subjunctive.—**aufert** = **ab-fert.**—**exstinguō, -ere.**—**lucrum, -ī,** *gain, profit.*)
4. Aetās semper trānsitum et aliquid novī adfert. (Terence.)
5. Nōnne ūnum exemplum luxuriae aut cupiditātis multum malī facit? (Seneca.—**luxuria, -ae.**)
6. Mīror tot mīlia virōrum tam puerīliter identidem cupere currentēs equōs vidēre. (Pliny.—**puerīliter,** adv., based on **puer,** *childishly.*—**identidem,** adv., *again and again.*—**currentēs,** i.e., in the races.)
7. Nōnne vidēs etiam guttās, in saxa cadendō, pertundere illa saxa? (Lucretius.—**gutta, -ae,** *drop [of water].*—**pertundō, -ere,** *to bore a hole through, erode.*)
8. Metuō nē id cōnsilī cēperīmus quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus. (*Cicero.—**cōnsilī,** gen. of the whole with **id.**)
9. Antōnius, ūnus ex inimīcīs et vir minimae clēmentiae, iussit Cicerōnem interficī et caput eius inter duās manūs in Rōstrīs pōnī. (Livy.—**inimīcus, -ī,** from **in** + **amīcus,** *personal enemy.*—**Rōstra, -ōrum,** *the Rostra,* the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum.)
10. Omnēs quī habent aliquid nōn sōlum sapientiae sed etiam sānitātis volunt hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse. (*Cicero.—**sānitās, -tātis.**)
11. Salvē, nec minimō puella nāsō nec bellō pede nec nigrīs ocellīs nec longīs digitīs nec ōre siccō! (*Catullus.—**niger, nigra, nigrum,** *black, dark.*—**ocellus,** diminutive of **oculus.**—**siccus, -a, -um,** *dry.*)
12. Homō sum; nihil hūmānī aliēnum ā mē putō. (Terence.—**aliēnus, -a, -um** + **ab** = *foreign to.*)
13. Amīcus animum amīcī ita cum suō miscet quasi facit ūnum ex duōbus. (Cicero.)
14. Sex diēbus fēcit Dominus caelum et terram et mare et omnia quae in eīs sunt, et requiēvit diē septimō. (Exodus.)
15. Mīsit legātum Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem. (Caesar.—**legātus, -ī,** *ambassador.*—Valerius Procillus.—**hūmānitās, -tātis.**)

16. Num negāre audēs? Quid tacēs? Convincam, sī negās; videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam quī tēcum ūnā fuērunt. Ō dī immortālēs! (*Cicero.—**quid,** here = *why?*—**con** + **vincō,** *to prove wrong, convict;* sc. **tē.**—**ūnā,** adv., *together, in concert.*)
17. Nunc timeō nē nihil tibi praeter lacrimās queam reddere. (*Cicero—**queam** = **possim.**—**reddō, -dere,** *to give back, return.*)

JUPITER PROPHESIES TO VENUS THE FUTURE GLORY OF ROME

Ollī subrīdēns hominum sator atque deōrum
255 vultū, quō caelum tempestātēsque serēnat,
ōscula lībāvit nātae, dehinc tālia fātur:
"Parce metū, Cytherēa; manent immōta tuōrum
fāta tibī. Cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīnī
moenia sublīmemque ferēs ad sīdera caelī
260 magnanimum Aenēan; neque mē sententia vertit.
. . .
263 Bellum ingēns geret Ītaliā populōsque ferōcīs
contundet mōrēsque virīs et moenia pōnet.
. . .
Rōmulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia condet
moenia Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dīcet.
Hīs ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō:
imperium sine fīne dedī. Quīn aspera Iūnō,
280 quae mare nunc terrāsque metū caelumque fatīgat,
cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque fovēbit
Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātam."

(*Virgil, *Aeneid* 1.254ff; meter: dactylic hexameter.—**Ollī** = **illī,** here Venus, who has come to her father Jupiter to ask whether his intentions have changed toward her son, the Trojan prince Aeneas, or if he is still destined to found a new Trojan nation in Italy.—**vultū,** abl. of means with **subrīdēns.**—**ōscula lībāvit,** i.e., he kissed her in ritual fashion.—**nātae,** ind. obj.—**dēhinc,** scanned here as a monosyllable.—**metū,** an alternate form of the dat. **metuī.**—**Cytherēa, -ae,** *the Cytherean,* i.e., Venus, so-called for the Aegean island of Cythera, which was sacred to her.—**immōta,** pred. adj., after **manent.**—**tuōrum,** i.e., Aeneas and his Trojan followers.—**Lavīnium, -iī,** *Lavinium,* the town Aeneas was destined to found in Latium, near the future city of Rome.—**sublīmem,** in the predicate with **Aenēan** (a Gk. acc. form), *you will carry Aeneas on high.*—**neque . . . vertit,** i.e., *I have not changed my mind;* but what is the literal translation?—**geret . . . pōnet:** Aeneas is subject of all three verbs.—**Ītaliā,** sc. **in;** prepositions usual in prose were commonly omitted in verse.—**ferōcīs** = **ferōcēs,** acc. pl.—Through a device known as zeugma, **pōnet** has different senses with its two objects, *institute* with **mōrēs** and *build* with **moenia.**—**Māvortius, -a, -um,** *of Mars,* so-called because of the legend that Mars was father of Romulus, Rome's first king.—**rērum,** *of their affairs,* i.e., *for their empire.*—**tempora,** *time limits.*—**cōnsilia . . . referet,** i.e., *will change her attitude for the better;* Juno had sided with the Greeks in

the Trojan war and had continued to resist Aeneas' mission.—**togātus, -a, -um,** *togaed, toga-clad.*)



Virgil between two Muses
Mosaic, early 3rd century A.D.
Musée National du Bardo
Tunis, Tunisia

THE VALUE OF LITERATURE

Sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac līberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscentiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōrnant, adversīs perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, peregrīnantur, rūsticantur.

(*Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 7.16.—**hanc,** sc. **esse.**—**iūdicāre,** *to judge, consider.*—**cēterae,** sc. **remissiōnēs.**—take **omnium** with all three descriptive genitives, **temporum, aetātum,** and **locōrum.**)

A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius.
. . .
Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam.

(*Horace, *Odes* 3.30.1, 6–7; meter: first Asclepiadean. See L.I. 28.—**perennis, -e,** *lasting [throughout the years].*—**multa,** here = **magna.**—**Libitīna, -ae,** *goddess of funerals; death.*)

词源点滴

In the readings

2. presidium, preside, president, presidency. 3. extinguish, extinct.—lucre, lucrative. 6. puerile, puerility. 7. "gtt.",医学上表示"drops"的缩写。9. inimical, enemy. 11. denigrate, desiccate. 12. **Aliēnus** 直译为 *belonging to another* (**alius**): alien, alienate, alienation, inalienable. 15. legate, legation, delegate.—humanity, humanities, humanitarian; cp. **hūmānus, homō.** 16. convince, convict, conviction. "Jupiter":名词 **fātum** 与 **for, fārī, fātus sum** 相关;朱庇特所预言的是一个人的"fate"。"Value of Literature": adjudicate. "A Monument": "perennials" 是*through the years*,即年复一年地存活下来的户外植物;亲爱的朋友们,拉丁语便是一门perennial 的语言!

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte postrēmum, discipulī et discipulae! 下面是一些 **rēs novae ex hōc capite ultimō: dominus illūminātiō mea,** *the Lord is my light*, 这是牛津大学的校训;**lacrima Christī** 是一句人所熟知的拉丁语短语,表示 *the tear of Christ*(也是一种意大利甜酒的名称)。维吉尔的《埃涅阿斯纪》中有一句名言,主人公埃涅阿斯在北非遭遇海难,他注视着一幅迦太基壁画,画中描绘了他的民族和希腊人在特洛伊战争中所受的苦难, 埃涅阿斯说:**hīc etiam . . . sunt lacrimae rērum et mentem mortālia tangunt**。拉丁语原文要比英语直译(你现在可以轻而易举地做到)更有感染力,不过还是可以作这样一种意译:*even here there are tears for the ways of the world, and man's mortality touches the heart*。

不要如此悲戚("lacrimose",或者另一种拼写"lachrymose"),我们现在转到一些更让人高兴的事情上。还记得如何由动词构成表示施事者的阳性名词吗?——比如由 **reperiō** 得到 **repertor,** *discover*。表示施事者的阴性后缀是**-trīx, -trīcis**(比较英语词"aviator"和"aviatrix"以及我们见过的 **lēctor/lēctrīx**),于是就有了 **paupertās omnium artium repertrīx** 这句谚语, 它就有点像我们所说的"需要是发明之母"(但其字面意思又是什么呢?)。人们常说,**Vultus est index animī,** *the face is an indication of the soul*。说到脸,对某人"stick your nose up in the air"(自高自大)和"look down your nose"(看不起)并不是现代才有的表示傲慢或蔑视他人的习语;早在尼禄时代,讽刺作家佩尔西乌斯(Persius)就用一种并非完全恭维的隐喻谈及他的前辈贺拉斯, 说他 *hung the people from his well-blown nose* (**excussō populum suspendere nāsō**)。顺便说一句,**Nāsō** 是奥古斯都时期的诗人奥维德的"昵称"或 **cognōmen**:罗马人往往给他们的孩子起有关

身体特征或精神特征的名字，这些名字被世世代代留传了下来。（我们的朋友Marcus Tullius, **mīrābile dictū**，之所以会与**Cicerō,** *garbanzo bean*［鹰嘴豆］这个名字挂上钩，正是因为他的某位祖先的鼻子上长了一种像鹰嘴豆那样的异物。）

愿你对拉丁语的热爱能够**aere perennius: rīdēte, gaudēte, carpite omnēs diēs vestrōs, atque postrēmum, lēctōrēs et lēctrīcēs dulcēs, valēte**！

古文选编

尽管这些古代作品的节选都经过了改编，以适应初学者的语言能力，但我们力争对它们做尽可能少的改动，以使其语言和思想保持原汁原味。对于诗歌，虽然每一篇都略去了若干节，但这里实际给出的诗句都保持了原貌。至于散文段落，有些地方可能省去了一些词句，语言也可能会作一定程度的简化。

学生们会发现，钻研这些古文本身就很有乐趣，他们会对自己在目前的学习阶段就能翻译这样成熟的拉丁语有一种成就感。对于那些在四十课的词汇表中没有介绍的词，在前一两次出现时都会给出注释，特别重要的词列在每一段文章注释之后的"Vocabulary"中。其中大多数词也包含在书末的拉英词汇表中，以方便查阅。

1. DISILLUSIONMENT

Miser Catulle, dēsinās[1] ineptīre,[2]
et quod vidēs perīsse perditum[3] dūcās.
Fulsēre[4] quondam candidī tibī sōlēs,
cum ventitābās[5] quō[6] puella dūcēbat,
5 amāta nōbīs quantum amābitur nūlla.
Fulsēre vērē candidī tibī sōlēs.
Nunc iam illa nōn vult; tū quoque, impotēns,[7] nōlī;

1

METER: choliambic.

[1] **dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -situm,** cease (**dēsinās** = *juss. subj. for* **dēsine**)

[2] **ineptiō** (4), play the fool

[3] **perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** destroy, lose

[4] **fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī,** shine (**fulsēre** = **fulsērunt**)

[5] **ventitō** (1), *frequentative form of* **veniō,** come often

[6] **quō,** *adv.,* whither, where

[7] **im-potēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** powerless, weak, hopelessly in love

nec quae fugit sectāre[8] nec miser vīve,
sed obstinātā[9] mente perfer,[10] obdūrā.[11]
10 Valē, puella, iam Catullus obdūrat,
nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam[12];
at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
Scelesta, vae tē! Quae tibī manet vīta![13]
Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
15 Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā. (**Catullus** 8)

2. HOW DEMOSTHENES OVERCAME HIS HANDICAPS

Ōrātor imitētur[1] illum cui summa vīs dīcendī concēditur,[2] Dēmosthenem, in quō tantum studium fuisse dīcitur ut impedīmenta[3] nātūrae dīligentiā[4] industriāque[5] superāret. Nam cum ita balbus[6] esset ut illīus ipsīus artis[7] cui studēret prīmam litteram nōn posset dīcere, perfēcit[8] meditandō[9] 5 ut nēmō plānius[10] loquerētur. Deinde, cum spīritus eius esset angustior,[11] spīritū continendō multum perfēcit in dīcendō; et coniectīs[12] in ōs calculīs,[13] summā vōce versūs multōs ūnō spīritū prōnūntiāre cōnsuēscēbat[14]; neque id faciēbat stāns ūnō in locō sed ambulāns. (**Cicero,** *Dē Ōrātōre* 1.61.260–61)

3. THE TYRANT CAN TRUST NO ONE

Multōs annōs tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum[1] fuit Dionȳsius. Pulcherrimam urbem servitūte oppressam tenuit. At ā bonīs auctōribus cognōvimus eum fuisse hominem summae temperantiae[2] in vīctū[3] et in rēbus gerendīs ācrem et industrium,[4] eundem tamen malum et iniūstum.[5] Quārē, omnibus virīs 5 bene vēritātem quaerentibus hunc vidērī miserrimum necesse est, nam nēminī crēdere audēbat. Itaque propter iniūstam cupiditātem dominātūs[6] quasi in carcerem[7] ipse sē inclūserat.[8] Quīn etiam,[9] nē tōnsōrī[10] collum[11]

[8] **sectāre,** *imper. of* **sector** (1), follow eagerly, pursue; *word order:* **sectāre (eam) quae fugit**
[9] **obstinātus, -a, -um,** firm
[10] **per-ferō,** endure
[11] **obdūrō** (1), *vb. of adj.* **dūrus**
[12] **invītus, -a, -um,** unwilling
[13] *see notes on excerpt in Ch. 19.*
VOCABULARY: **perdō, quō, invītus.**

2

[1] **imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum**
[2] **con-cēdō**
[3] **impedīmentum, -ī**
[4] **dīligentia, -ae**
[5] **industria, -ae**
[6] **balbus, -a, -um,** stuttering
[7] **illīus . . . artis,** *i.e., rhetoric*
[8] **per-ficiō,** do thoroughly, bring about, accom
[9] **meditor** (1), practice
[10] **plānius,** *comp. of adv.* **plānē**
[11] **angustus, -a, -um,** narrow, short
[12] **con-iciō (iaciō)**
[13] **calculus, -ī,** pebble
[14] **cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum,** become accu
VOCABULARY: **concēdō, perficiō, angustus,** **cōnsuēscō.**

3

[1] **Syrācūsānī, -ōrum,** Syracusans
[2] **temperantia, -ae**
[3] **vīctus, -ūs,** mode of life
[4] **industrius, -a, -um**
[5] **in-iūstus, -a, -um**
[6] **dominātus, -ūs,** absolute rule or power
[7] **carcer, -eris,** *m.,* prison
[8] **inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum,** shut in
[9] **quīn etiam,** moreover
[10] **tōnsor, -ōris,** *m.,* barber
[11] **collum, -ī,** neck

committeret, fīliās suās artem tōnsōriam docuit.[12] Ita hae virginēs tondēbant[13] barbam[14] et capillum[15] patris. Et tamen ab hīs ipsīs, cum iam essent
10 adultae,[16] ferrum remōvit, eīsque imperāvit ut carbōnibus[17] barbam et capillum sibi adūrerent.[18] (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.20.57–58)

4. THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES

Hic tyrannus ipse dēmōnstrāvit quam beātus esset. Nam cum quīdam ex eius assentātōribus,[1] Dāmoclēs,[2] commemorāret[3] cōpiās eius, maiestātem[4] dominātūs, rērum abundantiam,[5] negāretque quemquam[6] umquam beātiōrem fuisse, Dionȳsius "Vīsne igitur," inquit, "Ō Dāmocle, ipse hanc vītam
5 dēgustāre[7] et fortūnam meam experīrī?" Cum ille sē cupere dīxisset, hominem in aureō[8] lectō[9] collocārī[10] iussit mēnsāsque ōrnāvit argentō[11] aurōque.[12] Tum puerōs bellōs iussit cēnam exquīsītissimam[13] īnferre. Fortūnātus sibi Dāmoclēs vidēbātur. Eōdem autem tempore Dionȳsius gladium suprā[14] caput eius saetā equīnā[15] dēmittī[16] iussit. Dāmoclēs, cum gladium vīdisset, ti-
10 mēns ōrāvit tyrannum ut eī abīre licēret, quod iam "beātus" nōllet esse. Satisne Dionȳsius vidētur dēmōnstrāvisse nihil esse eī beātum cui semper aliquī[17] metus impendeat?[18] (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.20.61–62)

5. DERIVATION OF "PHILOSOPHUS" AND SUBJECTS OF PHILOSOPHY

Eī quī studia in contemplātiōne[1] rērum pōnēbant "sapientēs" appellābantur, et id nōmen ūsque ad Pȳthagorae[2] aetātem mānāvit.[3] Hunc aiunt doctē et cōpiōsē[4] quaedam cum Leonte[5] disputāvisse[6]; et Leōn, cum illīus ingenium et ēloquentiam[7] admīrātus esset,[8] quaesīvit ex eō quā arte maximē
5 ūterētur. At ille dīxit sē artem nūllam scīre sed esse philosophum. Tum Leōn, admīrātus novum nōmen, quaesīvit quī essent philosophī. Pȳthagorās respondit multōs hominēs glōriae aut pecūniae servīre sed paucōs quōsdam esse quī cētera prō nihilō[9] habērent sed nātūram rērum cognōscere cuperent;

[12] **doceō** *may take two objects.*
[13] **tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsum,** shear, clip
[14] **barba, -ae,** beard
[15] **capillus, -ī,** hair
[16] **adultus, -a, -um**
[17] **carbō, -ōnis,** *m.,* glowing coal
[18] **adūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum,** singe
VOCABULARY: **temperantia, iniūstus, inclūdō.**

4
[1] **assentātor, -ōris,** *m.,* flatterer, "yes-man"
[2] **Dāmoclēs, -is,** *m.*
[3] **commemorō** (1), mention, recount
[4] **maiestās, -tātis,** *f.,* greatness
[5] **abundantia, -ae**
[6] **quisquam, quidquam,** anyone, anything
[7] **dēgustō** (1), taste, try
[8] **aureus, -a, -um,** golden
[9] **lectus, -ī,** couch
[10] **col-locō,** place
[11] **argentum, -ī,** silver
[12] **aurum, -ī,** gold
[13] **exquīsītus, -a, -um: ex-quaesītus**
[14] **suprā,** *adv. and prep.* + *acc.,* above
[15] **saetā equīnā,** by a horsehair
[16] **dēmittō,** let down
[17] **aliquī, -qua, -quod,** *adj. of* **aliquis**
[18] **impendeō, -ēre,** hang over, threaten
VOCABULARY: **quisquam, collocō, aurum, suprā.**

5
[1] **contemplātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*
[2] **Pȳthagorās, -ae,** *m.*
[3] **mānō** (1), flow, extend
[4] **cōpiōsē,** *adv.,* fully
[5] **Leōn, -ontis,** *m.,* ruler of Phlius
[6] **disputō** (1), discuss
[7] **ēloquentia, -ae**
[8] **admīror** (1), wonder at, admire
[9] **nihilum, -ī,** = **nihil**

hōs sē appellāre "studiōsōs[10] sapientiae," id est enim "philosophōs."[11] Sīc
10 Pȳthagorās huius nōminis inventor[12] fuit.

Ab antīquā philosophiā ūsque ad Sōcratem[13] philosophī numerōs et sīdera tractābant[14] et unde omnia orīrentur[15] et quō[16] discēderent. Sōcratēs autem prīmus philosophiam dēvocāvit ē caelō et in urbibus hominibusque collocāvit et coēgit eam dē vītā et mōribus rēbusque bonīs et malīs quaerere. (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.3.8–9; 5.4.10)

6. CICERO ON THE VALUE AND THE NATURE OF FRIENDSHIP

Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis. Sentiō equidem,[1] exceptā[2] sapientiā, nihil melius hominī ā deīs immortālibus datum esse. Dīvitiās aliī antepōnunt; aliī, salūtem; aliī, potestātem[3]; aliī, honōrēs; multī, etiam voluptātēs. Illa autem incerta sunt, posita nōn tam
5 in cōnsiliīs nostrīs quam in fortūnae vicissitūdinibus.[4] Quī autem in virtūte summum bonum pōnunt, bene illī quidem faciunt; sed ex ipsā virtūte amīcitia nāscitur nec sine virtūte amīcitia esse potest.

Dēnique cēterae rēs, quae petuntur, opportūnae[5] sunt rēbus singulīs[6]: dīvitiae, ut eīs ūtāris; honōrēs, ut laudēris; salūs, ut dolōre careās et rēbus
10 corporis ūtāris. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās continet; nūllō locō exclūditur[7]; numquam intempestīva,[8] numquam molesta[9] est. Itaque nōn aquā, nōn igne in locīs plūribus ūtimur quam amīcitiā; nam amīcitia secundās rēs clāriōrēs facit et adversās rēs leviōrēs.

Quis est quī velit in omnium rērum abundantiā ita[10] vīvere ut neque dīligat
15 quemquam[11] neque ipse ab ūllō dīligātur? Haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta, in quā nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās,[12] nūlla benevolentia[13] potest esse; omnia semper metuuntur, nūllus locus est amīcitiae. Quis enim aut eum dīligat[14] quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? Multī autem sī cecidērunt, ut saepe fit, tum intellegunt quam inopēs[15] amīcōrum fuerint. Quid vērō stul-
20 tius quam cētera parāre quae parantur pecūniā sed amīcōs nōn parāre, optimam et pulcherrimam quasi supellectilem[16] vītae?

Quisque ipse sē dīligit nōn ut aliam mercēdem[17] ā sē ipse petat sed quod per sē quisque sibi cārus est. Nisi idem in amīcitiam trānsferētur,[18] vērus

[10] **studiōsus, -a, -um,** fond of
[11] **philosophus:** *Greek* **philos,** fond of, + **sophia,** wisdom
[12] **inventor, -ōris,** *m., cp.* **inveniō**
[13] **Sōcratēs, -is**
[14] **tractō** (1), handle, investigate, treat
[15] **orior, -īrī, ortus sum,** arise, proceed, originate
[16] **quō,** *adv.,* where
VOCABULARY: **admīror, orior, quō.**

6
[1] **equidem,** *adv.,* indeed
[2] **excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum,** except
[3] **potestās, -tātis,** *f.,* power
[4] **vicissitūdō, -inis,** *f.*
[5] **opportūnus, -a, -um,** suitable
[6] **singulus, -a, -um,** single, separate
[7] **exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum**
[8] **intempestīvus, -a, -um,** unseasonable
[9] **molestus, -a, -um,** troublesome
[10] **abundantia, -ae**
[11] **quemquam,** *L.A.* 4, n. 6
[12] **cāritās, -tātis,** *f.,* affection
[13] **bene-volentia, -ae,** goodwill
[14] **dīligat,** *deliberative subj.,* would esteem
[15] **inops, -opis,** bereft of
[16] **supellex, -lectilis,** *f.,* furniture
[17] **mercēs, -ēdis,** *f.,* pay, reward
[18] **trāns-ferō,** transfer, direct

amīcus numquam reperiētur. Amīcus enim est is quī est tamquam alter īdem.
25 Ipse sē dīligit et alterum quaerit cuius animum ita cum suō misceat ut faciat ūnum ex duōbus. Quid enim dulcius quam habēre quīcum[19] audeās sīc loquī ut tēcum? (**Cicero,** *Dē Amīcitiā,* excerpts from Chs. 5, 6, 15, 21)

7. CICERO ON WAR

Quaedam officia sunt servanda etiam adversus[1] eōs ā quibus iniūriam accēpimus. Atque in rē pūblicā maximē cōnservanda sunt iūra bellī. Nam sunt duo genera dēcertandī[2]: ūnum per disputātiōnem,[3] alterum per vim. Illud est proprium[4] hominis, hoc bēluārum[5]; sed bellum vī gerendum est sī
5 disputātiōne ūtī nōn licet. Quārē suscipienda quidem bella sunt ut sine iniūriā in pāce vīvāmus; post autem victōriam eī cōnservandī sunt quī nōn crūdēlēs,[6] nōn dūrī in bellō fuērunt, ut maiōrēs nostrī Sabīnōs[7] in cīvitātem etiam accēpērunt. At Carthāginem omnīnō sustulērunt; etiam Corinthum sustulērunt—quod nōn approbō[8]; sed crēdō eōs hoc fēcisse nē locus ipse ad
10 bellum faciendum hortārī posset. Meā quidem sententiā,[9] pāx quae nihil īnsidiārum habeat semper quaerenda est. Ac aequitās[10] bellī fētiālī[11] iūre populī Rōmānī perscrīpta est.[12] Quārē potest intellegī nūllum bellum esse iūstum nisi quod aut rēbus repetītīs[13] gerātur aut ante dēnūntiātum sit.[14]

Nūllum bellum dēbet suscipī ā cīvitāte optimā nisi aut prō fidē aut prō
15 salūte. Illa bella sunt iniūsta quae sine causā sunt suscepta. Nam extrā[15] ulcīscendī[16] aut prōpulsandōrum[17] hostium causam nūllum bellum cum aequitāte gerī potest. Noster autem populus sociīs[18] dēfendendīs terrārum[19] omnium potītus est.[20] (**Cicero,** *Dē Officiīs* 1.11.34–36 and *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 3.23.34–35)

[19] **habēre quīcum = habēre eum cum quō**
VOCABULARY: **equidem, potestās, trānsferō.**

7

[1] **adversus,** *prep. + acc.,* toward
[2] **dēcertō** (1), fight (to a decision)
[3] **disputātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* discussion
[4] **proprius, -a, -um,** characteristic of
[5] **bēlua, -ae,** wild beast
[6] **crūdēlis, -e,** cruel
[7] **Sabīnī, -ōrum**
[8] **approbō** (1), approve
[9] **sententiā:** *abl. here expressing accordance*
[10] **aequitās, -tātis,** *f.,* fairness, justice
[11] **fētiālis, -e,** fetial, *referring to a college of priests who were concerned with treaties and the ritual of declaring war*
[12] **per-scrībō,** write out, place on record
[13] **re-petō,** seek again
[14] **dēnūntiō** (1), declare officially
[15] **extrā,** *prep. + acc.,* beyond
[16] **ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum,** avenge, punish
[17] **prōpulsō** (1), repel
[18] **socius, -iī,** ally
[19] **terrārum:** *depends on* **potītus est**
[20] **potior, -īrī, potītus sum,** + *gen.* (*or abl.*), get possession of
VOCABULARY: **dēcertō, proprius, crūdēlis, potior.**

8. HANNIBAL; THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal,[1] fīlius Hamilcaris,[2] Carthāgine nātus est. Odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit ut numquam id dēpōneret.[3] Nam post bellum Pūnicum,[4] cum ex patriā in exsilium expulsus esset, nōn relīquit studium bellī Rōmānīs īnferendī.[5] Quārē, cum in Syriam[6] vēnisset, Antiochō[7] rēgī haec
5 locūtus est ut hunc quoque ad bellum cum Rōmānīs indūcere[8] posset:

"Mē novem annōs nātō, pater meus Hamilcar, in Hispāniam[9] imperātor proficīscēns Carthāgine, sacrificium[10] dīs fēcit. Eōdem tempore quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum proficīscī. Cum id libenter audīvissem et ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret mē dūcere, tum ille 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem
10 quam quaerō dederis.' Tum mē ad āram[11] dūxit et mē iūrāre[12] iussit mē numquam in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs futūrum esse. Id iūs iūrandum[13] patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī ut nēmō sit quī plūs odiī ergā Rōmānōs habeat."

Hāc igitur aetāte Hannibal cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est. Post
15 multōs annōs, Hamilcare et Hasdrubale[14] interfectīs, exercitus eī imperium trādidit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Tribus annīs omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvit et trēs exercitūs maximōs parāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam[15] mīsit, alterum cum frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit.

20 Ad Alpēs[16] vēnit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Alpicōs[17] cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū occīdit[18]; loca patefēcit; itinera mūnīvit[19]; effēcit[20] ut[21] elephantus īre posset quā[22] anteā[23] ūnus homō vix[24] poterat rēpere.[25] Sīc in Italiam pervēnit et, Scīpiōne[26] superātō, Etrūriam[27] petīvit. Hōc in itinere tam gravī morbō[28] oculōrum adfectus est[29] ut posteā
25 numquam dextrō oculō bene ūterētur.

Multōs ducēs exercitūsque Rōmānōs superāvit; longum est omnia proelia[30] ēnumerāre.[31] Post Cannēnsem[32] autem pugnam nēmō eī in aciē[33] in

8

[1] **Hannibal, -alis,** *m., illustrious general who led the Carthaginian forces against the Romans in the Second Punic (= Carthaginian) War, 218–202* B.C.
[2] **Hamilcar, -aris,** *m.*
[3] **dē-pōnō**
[4] **Pūnicus, -a, -um**
[5] **bellum īn-ferō,** make war on
[6] **Syria, -ae**
[7] **Antiochus, -ī**
[8] **in-dūcō**
[9] **Hispānia, -ae,** Spain
[10] **sacrificium, -iī**
[11] **āra, -ae,** altar
[12] **iūrō** (1), swear
[13] **iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** *n.,* oath
[14] **Hasdrubal, -alis,** *m., next in command after Hamilcar*
[15] **Āfrica, -ae**
[16] **Alpēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* the Alps
[17] **Alpicī, -ōrum,** men of the Alps
[18] **occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** cut down
[19] **mūniō** (4), fortify, build
[20] **efficiō,** bring it about, cause
[21] **ut . . . posset:** *noun cl. of result, obj. of* **effēcit**
[22] **quā,** *adv.,* where
[23] **anteā,** *adv.,* before, formerly
[24] **vix,** *adv.,* scarcely
[25] **rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum,** crawl
[26] **Scīpiō, -ōnis,** *m., father of the Scipio mentioned below*
[27] **Etrūria, -ae,** *district north of Rome, Tuscany*
[28] **morbus, -ī,** disease
[29] **adficiō,** afflict
[30] **proelium, -iī,** battle
[31] **ēnumerō** (1)
[32] **Cannēnsis pugna,** battle at Cannae, *where in 216* B.C. *Hannibal cut the Roman army to shreds*
[33] **aciēs, -ēī,** battle line

Italiā restitit.[34] Cum autem P. Scīpiō tandem[35] in Āfricam invāsisset,[36] Hannibal, ad patriam dēfendendam revocātus, Zamae[37] victus est. Sīc post tot
30 annōs Rōmānī sē perīculō Pūnicō līberāvērunt. (**Nepos,** *Hannibal,* excerpts)

9. AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL NOTES BY HORACE

Nūlla fors[1] mihi tē, Maecēnās,[2] obtulit: optimus Vergilius et post hunc Varius[3] dīxērunt quid essem. Ut ad tē vēnī, singultim[4] pauca locūtus (nam pudor[5] prohibēbat plūra profārī[6]), ego nōn dīxī mē clārō patre nātum esse sed narrāvī quod eram. Respondēs,[7] ut tuus mōs est, pauca. Abeō et post
5 nōnum mēnsem[8] mē revocās iubēsque esse in amīcōrum numerō. Hoc magnum esse dūcō, quod[9] placuī tibi, quī bonōs ā turpibus sēcernis[10] nōn patre clārō sed vītā et pectore pūrō.[11]

Atquī[12] sī mea nātūra est mendōsa[13] vitiīs mediocribus ac paucīs sed aliōquī[14] rēcta,[15] sī neque avāritiam neque sordēs[16] quisquam[17] mihi obiciet,[18]
10 sī pūrus sum et īnsōns[19] (ut mē laudem!) et vīvō cārus amīcīs, causa fuit pater meus. Hic enim, cum pauper in parvō agrō esset, tamen nōluit mē puerum in lūdum Flāviī[20] mittere sed ausus est mē Rōmam ferre ad artēs discendās quās senātōrēs[21] suōs filiōs docent. Ipse mihi paedagōgus[22] incorruptissimus[23] erat. Mē līberum servāvit nōn sōlum ab omnī factō sed etiam
15 ab turpī opprobriō.[24] Quārē laus illī ā mē dēbētur et grātia[25] magna.

Sīc Rōmae nūtrītus sum[26] atque doctus sum quantum[27] īrātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. Deinde bonae Athēnae mihi plūs artis adiēcērunt,[28] scīlicet[29] ut vellem rēctum ā curvō[30] distinguere[31] atque inter silvās[32] Acadēmī[33] quaerere vēritātem. Sed dūra tempora mē illō locō grātō ēmōvērunt et ae-

[34] **resistō, -ere, -stitī,** + *dat.,* resist
[35] **tandem,** *adv.,* at last, finally
[36] **invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum,** go into, invade
[37] **Zama, -ae,** *city south of Carthage in North Africa*
VOCABULARY: **occīdō, efficiō, quā, anteā, vix, proelium, tandem.**

9

[1] **fors, fortis,** *f.,* chance, accident
[2] **Maecēnās, -ātis,** *m., Augustus' unofficial prime minister and Horace's patron*
[3] **Varius, -iī,** *an epic poet*
[4] **singultim,** *adv.,* stammeringly
[5] **pudor, -ōris,** *m.,* bashfulness, modesty
[6] **profor** (1), speak out
[7] **respondēs, abeō, revocās, iubēs:** *in vivid narration the pres. tense was often used by the Romans with the force of the perf. This is called the "historical pres."*
[8] **mēnsis, -is,** *m.,* month
[9] **quod,** the fact that
[10] **sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum,** separate
[11] **pūrus, -a, -um**
[12] **atquī,** *conj.,* and yet
[13] **mendōsus, -a, -um,** faulty
[14] **aliōquī,** *adv.,* otherwise
[15] **rēctus, -a, -um,** straight, right
[16] **sordēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* filth
[17] **quisquam,** anyone
[18] **ob-iciō,** cast in one's teeth
[19] **īnsōns,** *gen.* **-ontis,** guiltless
[20] **Flāvius, -iī,** *teacher in Horace's small home town of Venusia*
[21] **senātor, -ōris,** *m.*
[22] **paedagōgus, -ī,** *slave who attended a boy at school*
[23] **in-corruptus, -a, -um,** uncorrupted
[24] **opprobrium, -iī,** reproach
[25] **grātia, -ae,** gratitude
[26] **nūtriō** (4), nourish, bring up
[27] **quantum,** *acc. as adv.*
[28] **ad-iciō,** add
[29] **scīlicet (scīre-licet),** *adv.,* naturally, of course, clearly, namely
[30] **curvus, -a, -um,** curved, wrong
[31] **distinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum,** distinguish
[32] **silva, -ae,** wood, forest
[33] **Acadēmus, -ī;** *Plato used to teach in the grove of Academus.*

20 stus[34] cīvīlis[35] bellī mē tulit in arma Brūtī.[36] Tum post bellum Philippēnse[37] dīmissus sum[38] et audāx[39] paupertās mē humilem et pauperem coēgit versūs facere. (**Horace,** *Saturae* 1.6 and *Epistulae* 2.2; excerpts in prose form)

10. HORACE LONGS FOR THE SIMPLE, PEACEFUL COUNTRY LIFE ON HIS SABINE FARM

Ō rūs, quandō tē aspiciam?[1] Quandō mihi licēbit nunc librīs veterum auctōrum, nunc somnō et ōtiō ūtī sine cūrīs sollicitae[2] vītae? Ō noctēs cēnaeque deōrum! Sermō[3] oritur[4] nōn dē vīllīs[5] et domibus aliēnīs[6]; sed id quaerimus quod magis ad nōs pertinet[7] et nescīre malum est: utrum dīvitiīs 5 an virtūte hominēs fīant beātī; quid nōs ad amīcitiam trahat, ūsus[8] an rēctum[9]; et quae sit nātūra bonī[10] et quid sit summum bonum.

Inter haec Cervius[11] fābulam narrat. Mūs[12] rūsticus,[13] impulsus[14] ab urbānō mūre, domō rūsticā ad urbem abiit ut, dūrā vītā relictā, in rēbus iūcundīs cum illō vīveret beātus. Mox, autem, multa perīcula urbāna expertus, 10 rūsticus "Haec vīta," inquit, "nōn est mihi necessāria.[15] Valē; mihi silva cavusque[16] tūtus[17] ab īnsidiīs placēbit." (**Horace,** *Saturae* 2.6, excerpts in prose form)

11. WHY NO LETTERS?

C.[1] Plīnius Fabiō[2] Suō S.[3]

Mihi nūllās epistulās[4] mittis. "Nihil est," inquis, "quod scrībam." At hoc ipsum scrībe: nihil esse quod scrībās; vel[5] illa verba sōla ā quibus maiōrēs nostrī incipere solēbant: "Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō." Hoc mihi sufficit[6]; est enim maximum. Mē lūdere[7] putās? Sēriō[8] petō. Fac ut sciam quid agās. 5 Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 1.11)

[34] **aestus, -ūs,** tide
[35] **cīvīlis, -e;** *after the assassination of Julius Caesar on the Ides of March, 44* B.C.*, civil war ensued between the Caesarians, led by Antony and Octavian, and the "Republicans," led by Brutus and Cassius.*
[36] **Brūtus, -ī**
[37] **Philippēnsis, -e,** at Philippi, *where in 42* B.C. *Brutus was defeated*
[38] **dī-mittō,** discharge
[39] **audāx, -ācis,** daring, bold
VOCABULARY: **sēcernō, quisquam, grātia, silva, audāx.**

10
[1] **aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,** look at, see
[2] **sollicitus, -a, -um,** troubled, anxious
[3] **sermō, -ōnis,** *m.*, conversation
[4] **orior,** *L.A. 5 n. 15*
[5] **vīlla, -ae**
[6] **aliēnus, -a, -um,** belonging to another
[7] **per-tineō,** pertain
[8] **ūsus, -ūs,** advantage
[9] **rēctum, -ī,** the right
[10] **bonum, -ī,** the good
[11] **Cervius, -iī,** *a rustic friend*
[12] **mūs, mūris,** *m/f.*, mouse
[13] **rūsticus, -a, -um,** rustic, country
[14] **im-pellō,** urge, persuade
[15] **necessārius, -a, -um**
[16] **cavus, -ī,** hole
[17] **tūtus, -a, -um,** safe
VOCABULARY: **aspiciō, orior, tūtus.**

11
[1] **C. = Gāius**
[2] **Fabius, -iī**
[3] **S. = salūtem** (**dīcit**)
[4] **epistula, -ae,** letter
[5] **vel,** or, *an optional alternative;* **aut** *means* or *any option*
[6] **sufficiō,** suffice, be sufficient
[7] **lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum,** play, jest
[8] **sēriō,** *adv.*, seriously
VOCABULARY: **vel, sufficiō.**

12. WHAT PLINY THINKS OF THE RACES

C. Plīnius Calvisiō[1] Suō S.

Hoc omne tempus inter tabellās[2] ac libellōs iūcundissimā quiēte[3] cōnsūmpsī. "Quemadmodum,[4]" inquis, "in urbe potuisti?" Circēnsēs[5] erant quō genere spectāculī[6] nē levissimē quidem teneor. Nihil novum, nihil varium,[7] nihil quod semel spectāvisse nōn sufficiat. Quārē mīror tot mīlia virōrum
5 tam puerīliter[8] identidem[9] cupere currentēs equōs vidēre. Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 9.6)

13. PLINY ENDOWS A SCHOOL

Nūper cum Cōmī[1] fuī, vēnit ad mē salūtandum[2] fīlius amīcī cuiusdam. Huic ego "Studēs?" inquam. Respondit: "Etiam." "Ubi?" "Mediolānī.[3]" "Cūr nōn hīc?" Et pater eius, quī ipse puerum ad mē addūxerat, respondit: "Quod nūllōs magistrōs hīc habēmus." Huic aliīsque patribus quī audiēbant
5 ego: "Quārē nūllōs?" inquam. "Nam ubi iūcundius līberī[4] vestrī discere possunt quam hīc in urbe vestrā et sub oculīs patrum? Atque ego, quī nōndum[5] līberōs habeō, prō rē pūblicā nostrā quasi prō parente tertiam partem eius pecūniae dabō quam cōnferre vōbīs placēbit. Nihil enim melius praestāre līberīs vestrīs, nihil grātius patriae potestis." (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 4.13)

14. LARGE GIFTS—YES, BUT ONLY BAIT

"Mūnera[1] magna tamen mīsit." Sed mīsit in hāmō[2];
  et piscātōrem[3] piscis[4] amāre potest? (**Martial** 6.63.5–6)

15. THE LORD'S PRAYER

Et cum ōrātis nōn eritis sīcut[1] hypocritae,[2] quī amant in synagōgīs[3] et in angulīs[4] plateārum[5] stantēs ōrāre ut videantur ab hominibus: āmēn[6] dīcō vōbīs, recēpērunt mercēdem[7] suam. Tū autem cum ōrābis, intrā[8] in cubicu-

12
[1] **Calvisius, -ī**
[2] **tabella, -ae,** writing pad
[3] **quiēs, -ētis,** *f.,* quiet
[4] **quem-ad-modum,** *adv.,* how
[5] **Circēnsēs (lūdī),** games, *races in the Circus Maximus*
[6] **spectāculum, -ī**
[7] **varius, -a, -um,** different
[8] **puerīliter,** *adv., based on* **puer**
[9] **identidem,** *adv.,* repeatedly
VOCABULARY: **quiēs, quemadmodum, varius.**

13
[1] **Cōmum, -ī,** Como, *Pliny's birthplace in N. Italy*
[2] **salūtō** (1), greet
[3] **Mediolānum, -ī,** Milan
[4] **līberī, -ōrum,** children
[5] **nōndum,** *adv.,* not yet
VOCABULARY: **līberī, nōndum.**

14
METER: elegiac couplet.
[1] **mūnus, mūneris,** *n.,* gift
[2] **hāmus, -ī,** hook
[3] **piscātor, -ōris,** *m.,* fisherman
[4] **piscis, -is,** *m.,* fish
VOCABULARY: **mūnus.**

15
[1] **sīcut,** *adv. and conj.,* just as
[2] **hypocrita, -ae,** *m.,* hypocrite
[3] **synagōga, -ae,** synagogue
[4] **angulus, -ī,** corner
[5] **platea, -ae,** street
[6] **āmēn,** *adv.,* truly, verily
[7] **mercēs, -ēdis,** *f.,* wages, reward
[8] **intrō** (1), enter

lum[9] tuum et, clausō[10] ōstiō[11] tuō, ōrā Patrem tuum in absconditō[12]; et Pater
5 tuus quī videt in absconditō reddet[13] tibi. . . . Sīc ergō[14] vōs ōrābitis: Pater noster quī es in caelīs, sānctificētur[15] nōmen tuum; adveniat rēgnum[16] tuum; fīat voluntās[17] tua sīcut in caelō et[18] in terrā. Pānem[19] nostrum supersubstantiālem[20] dā nōbīs hodiē, et dīmitte[21] nōbīs dēbita[22] nostra, sīcut et nōs dīmittimus dēbitōribus[23] nostrīs; et nē indūcās nōs in temptātiōnem[24]: sed līberā
10 nōs ā malō. (*Vulgate, Matthew* 6.5–6, 9–13)

16. CAEDMON'S ANGLO-SAXON VERSES AND THE DIFFICULTIES OF TRANSLATION

Cum Caedmon[1] corpus somnō dedisset, angelus[2] Dominī eī dormientī "Caedmon," inquit, "cantā[3] mihi prīncipium creātūrārum.[4]" Et statim[5] coepit cantāre in laudem Deī creātōris[6] versūs quōs numquam audīverat, quōrum hic est sēnsus: "Nunc laudāre dēbēmus auctōrem rēgni[7] caelestis,[8] po-
5 testātem[9] creatōris et cōnsilium illīus, facta Patris glōriae, quī, omnipotēns[10] custōs[11] hūmānī generis, fīliīs hominum caelum et terram creāvit." Hic est sēnsus, nōn autem ōrdō[12] ipse verbōrum quae dormiēns ille cantāvit; neque enim possunt carmina, quamvīs[13] optimē composita,[14] ex aliā in aliam linguam ad verbum[15] sine dētrīmentō[16] suī decōris[17] ac dignitātis trānsferrī.[18] (**Bede,** *Historia Ecclēsiastica Gentis Anglōrum* 4.24; 8th cen.)

17. WHO WILL PUT THE BELL ON THE CAT'S NECK?

Mūrēs[1] iniērunt cōnsilium quō modō sē ā cattō[2] dēfendere possent et quaedam sapientior quam cēterae āit: "Ligētur[3] campāna[4] in collō[5] cattī. Sīc poterimus eum eiusque īnsidiās vītāre." Placuit omnibus hoc cōnsilium, sed

[9] **cubiculum, -ī,** bedroom, room
[10] **claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum,** close
[11] **ōstium, -iī,** door
[12] **in absconditō,** in (a) secret (place)
[13] **red-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** give back, answer, requite
[14] **ergō,** *adv.*, therefore
[15] **sānctificō** (1), treat as holy
[16] **rēgnum, -ī,** kingdom
[17] **voluntās, -tātis,** *f.*, will, wish
[18] **et,** also
[19] **pānis, -is,** *m.*, bread
[20] **supersubstantiālis, -e,** necessary to the support of life
[21] **dī-mittō,** send away, dismiss
[22] **dēbitum, -ī,** that which is owing, debt (*figuratively*) = sin
[23] **dēbitor, -ōris,** *m.*, one who owes something, one who has not yet fulfilled his duty
[24] **temptātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*
VOCABULARY: **sīcut, claudō, reddō, ergō, rēgnum, voluntās.**

16
[1] **Caedmon,** *Anglo-Saxon poet of the 7th cen.*
[2] **angelus, -ī,** angel
[3] **cantō** (1), sing
[4] **creātūra, -ae,** creature
[5] **statim,** *adv.*, immediately
[6] **creātor, -ōris,** *m.*
[7] **rēgnum, -ī,** kingdom
[8] **caelestis, -e,** *adj. of* **caelum**
[9] **potestās, -tātis,** *f.*, power
[10] **omni-potēns**
[11] **custōs, -tōdis,** *m.*, guardian
[12] **ōrdō, -inis,** *m.*, order
[13] **quamvīs,** *adv. and conj.*, although
[14] **com-pōnō,** put together, compose
[15] **ad verbum,** to a word, literally
[16] **dētrīmentum, -ī,** loss
[17] **decor, -ōris,** *m.*, beauty
[18] **trāns-ferō**
VOCABULARY: **statim, rēgnum, potestās, custōs, ōrdō, compōnō.**

17
[1] **mūs, mūris,** *m./f.*, mouse
[2] **cattus, -ī** (*late Lat. for* **fēles, -is**), cat
[3] **ligō** (1), bind
[4] **campāna, -ae** (*late Lat. for* **tintinnābulum**), bell
[5] **collum, -ī,** neck

alia mūs "Quis igitur," inquit, "est inter nōs tam audāx[6] ut campānam in
5 collō cattī ligāre audeat?" Respondit ūna mūs: "Certē nōn ego." Respondit alia: "Certē nōn ego audeō prō tōtō mundō cattō ipsī appropinquāre.[7]" Et idem cēterae dīxērunt.

Sīc saepe hominēs, cum quendam āmovendum esse arbitrantur et contrā eum insurgere[8] volunt, inter sē dīcunt: "Quis appōnet sē contrā eum? Quis
10 accūsābit[9] eum?" Tum omnēs, sibi timentēs, dīcunt: "Nōn ego certē! Nec ego!" Sīc illum vīvere patiuntur. (**Odo de Cerinton,** *Narrātiōnēs,* 12th cen.)

18. THE DEVIL AND A THIRTEENTH-CENTURY SCHOOLBOY

In illā ecclēsiā[1] erat scholāris[2] parvus. Cum hic diē quādam[3] versūs compōnere ex eā māteriā[4] ā magistrō datā nōn posset et trīstis sedēret, diabolus[5] in fōrmā hominis vēnit. Cum dīxisset: "Quid est, puer? Cūr sīc trīstis sedēs?" respondit puer: "Magistrum meum timeō quod versūs compōnere nōn pos-
5 sum dē themate[6] quod ab eō recēpī." Et ille: "Vīsne mihi servīre sī ego versūs tibi compōnam?" Puer, nōn intellegēns quod[7] ille esset diabolus, respondit: "Etiam, domine, parātus sum facere quidquid iusseris—dummodo versūs habeam et verbera[8] vītem." Tum, versibus statim[9] dictātīs,[10] diabolus abiit. Cum puer autem hōs versūs magistrō suō dedisset, hic, excellentiam[11] ver-
10 suum mīrātus, timuit, dūcēns scientiam in illīs dīvīnam,[12] nōn hūmānam. Et ait: "Dīc mihi, quis tibi hōs versūs dictāvit?" Prīmum puer respondit: "Ego, magister!" Magistrō autem nōn crēdente et verbum interrogātiōnis[13] saepius repetente, puer omnia tandem[14] cōnfessus est.[15] Tum magister "Fīlī," inquit, "ille versificātor[16] fuit diabolus. Cārissime, semper illum sēductōrem[17] et eius
15 opera cavē.[18]" Et puer diabolum eiusque opera relīquit. (**Caesar of Heisterbach,** *Mīrācula* 2.14; 13th cen.)

[6] **audāx, -ācis,** daring, bold
[7] **appropinquō** (1), + *dat.,* approach
[8] **īnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum,** rise up
[9] **accūsō** (1)
VOCABULARY: **audāx, appropinquō.**

18

[1] **ecclēsia, -ae,** church
[2] **scholāris, -is,** *m.,* scholar
[3] **diē quādam: diēs** *is sometimes f., especially when referring to a specific day.*
[4] **māteria, -ae,** material
[5] **diabolus, -ī,** devil
[6] **thema, -atis,** *n.,* theme, subject
[7] **quod,** that, *introducing an ind. state., common in Medieval Lat.*
[8] **verbera, -um,** *n.,* blows, a beating
[9] **statim,** *adv.,* immediately
[10] **dictō** (1), dictate
[11] **excellentia, -ae**
[12] **dīvīnus, -a, -um; dīvīnam** *is pred. acc.*
[13] **interrogātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*
[14] **tandem,** *adv.,* at last
[15] **cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum**
[16] **versificātor, -ōris,** *m.,* versifier
[17] **sēductor, -ōris,** *m.,* seducer
[18] **caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum,** beware, avoid
VOCABULARY: **statim, tandem, cōnfiteor, caveō.**

古代文选

如果你已经看过“古文选编”中的所有段落，并且希望能有一些未经改动的古典拉丁语来一试身手，那么，“古代文选”就是为你准备的。

这些段落都是纯正的拉丁语，除一些省略（用三点标出）之外没有作任何改动。当然，对于这种纯文学材料，不得不给出大量注释，但它们大都集中在词汇而不是其他方面。和“古文选编”一样，在正文词汇表中没有介绍的词在前一两次出现时都会给出注释，其中大多数词也包含在书末的拉英词汇表中，以方便查阅。新的语法现象都作了处理，或是在注释中给出简短说明，或是有附录可作参照。

1. A DEDICATION

Cui dōnō[1] lepidum[2] novum libellum
āridō[3] modo[4] pūmice[5] expolītum[6]?
Cornēlī,[7] tibi, namque[8] tū solēbās
meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās,[9]
5 iam tum cum ausus es ūnus Ītalōrum[10]
omne aevum[11] tribus explicāre[12] chartīs,[13]

1

METER: Phalaecean, or hendecasyllabic.

[1] **dōnō** (1), (=**dō**), present, dedicate

[2] **lepidus, -a, -um,** pleasant, neat

[3] **āridus, -a, -um,** dry, arid

[4] **modo,** *adv.,* just now

[5] **pūmex, -icis,** *m.,* pumice stone. *The ends of a volume were smoothed with pumice.*

[6] **expoliō** (4), smooth, polish

[7] *Cornelius Nepos, biographer and historian;* see Introd.

[8] *strong form of* **nam** = for (indeed, surely)

[9] **nūgae, -ārum,** trifles, nonsense

[10] **Ītalī, -ōrum,** the Italians; *initial* **i-** *long here for meter. This work, now lost, was apparently less annalistic than most histories by Romans.*

[11] **aevum, -ī,** time

[12] **explicō** (1), unfold, explain

[13] **charta, -ae,** leaf of (papyrus) paper; *here* = volume

doctīs—Iuppiter!—et labōriōsīs.[14]
Quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī[15]
quālecumque,[15] quod, Ō patrōna[16] virgō,
10 plūs ūnō maneat[17] perenne[18] saeclō.[19]
(Catullus 1)

2. HOW MANY KISSES[1]

Quaeris quot mihi bāsiātiōnēs[2]
tuae, Lesbia, sint satis superque.[3]
Quam magnus numerus Libyssae[4] harēnae[5]
laserpīciferīs[6] iacet Cyrēnīs,[7]
. . .
5 aut quam sīdera multa, cum tacet nox,
fūrtīvōs[8] hominum vident amōrēs,
tam tē[9] bāsia multa bāsiāre[10]
vēsānō[11] satis et super Catullō est.
(Catullus 7.1–4, 7–10)

3. DEATH OF A PET SPARROW

Lūgēte,[1] Ō Venerēs[2] Cupīdinēsque[3]
et quantum est hominum[4] venustiōrum[5]!
Passer[6] mortuus est meae puellae,
passer, dēliciae[7] meae puellae,
5 quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat.
Nam mellītus[8] erat, suamque nōrat[9]
ipsam[10] tam bene quam puella mātrem;
nec sēsē[11] ā gremiō[12] illius movēbat,

[14] **labōriōsus, -a, -um,** laborious
[15] **libellī,** *gen. of whole; lit.* whatever kind of book this is of whatsoever sort; *i.e.,* this book such as it is. **quāliscumque, quālecumque,** of whatever sort *or* kind
[16] **patrōna, -ae,** protectress; protectress maiden (**virgō**) = Muse
[17] let *or* may it remain
[18] **perennis, -e,** lasting, perennial
[19] **saeclum,** *syncopated form of* **saeculum, -ī,** age, century

2
METER: Phalaecean.
[1] *This poem is obviously a companion piece to Catullus 5* (see ch. 31).
[2] **bāsiātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* kiss
[3] and to spare, and more
[4] **Libyssus, -a, -um,** Libyan
[5] **harēna, -ae,** sand (*cp.* arena)
[6] **laserpīcifer, -a, -um,** bearing laserpicium, *a medicinal plant*
[7] **Cӯrēnae, -ārum,** Cyrene, *city of North Africa; short* **y** *here for meter.*
[8] **fūrtīvus, -a, -um,** stealthy, furtive (**fūr,** thief)
[9] *subject of* **bāsiāre**
[10] **bāsiō** (1), to kiss kisses = to give kisses; **bāsiāre** *is subject of* **est satis.**
[11] **vēsānus, -a, -um,** mad, insane

3
METER: Phalaecean.
[1] **lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum,** mourn, grieve
[2] **Venus, -eris,** *f.,* Venus; *here pl. as* **Cupīdinēs** *is.*
[3] **Cupīdō, -inis,** *m.,* Cupid, *often in the pl. as is Greek Eros and as we see in art.*
[4] *gen. of whole with* **quantum:** how much of people there is = all the people there are
[5] **venustus, -a, -um,** charming, graceful; **venustiōrum** = more charming (*than ordinary men*)
[6] **passer, -eris,** *m.,* sparrow (*a bird which, incidentally, was sacred to Venus*)
[7] **dēliciae, -ārum,** delight, darling, pet
[8] **mellītus, -a, -um,** sweet as honey
[9] *contracted form* = **nōverat** (*from* **nōscō**)
[10] **suam . . . ipsam,** its very own (mistress)
[11] **sēsē** = **sē** (*acc.*)
[12] **gremium, -iī,** lap

sed circumsiliēns[13] modo hūc[14] modo illūc[15]
10 ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.[16]
Quī[17] nunc it per iter tenebricōsum[18]
illūc unde negant redīre quemquam.[19]
At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae[20]
Orcī,[21] quae omnia bella dēvorātis;[22]
15 tam bellum mihi[23] passerem abstulistis.[24]
Ō factum male! Iō[25] miselle[26] passer!
Tuā nunc operā[27] meae puellae
flendō[28] turgidulī[29] rubent[30] ocellī.[31]

(Catullus 3)

4. FRĀTER AVĒ, ATQUE VALĒ[1]

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora[2] vectus[3]
advenio hās miserās, frāter, ad īnferiās,[4]
ut tē postrēmō[5] dōnārem[6] mūnere[7] mortis
et mūtam[8] nēquīquam[9] adloquerer[10] cinerem,[11]
5 quandoquidem[12] fortūna mihī[13] tētē[14] abstulit[15] ipsum,
heu miser indignē[16] frāter adempte[17] mihī.
Nunc tamen intereā[18] haec,[19] prīscō[20] quae mōre parentum
trādita sunt trīstī mūnere ad īnferiās,

[13] **circumsiliō** (4), jump around
[14] **hūc,** *adv.,* hither, to this place
[15] **illūc,** *adv.,* thither, to that place
[16] **pīpiō** (1), chirp
[17] **quī = et hic,** *conjunctive use of the rel. at the beginning of a sent.*
[18] **tenebricōsus, -a, -um,** dark, gloomy
[19] *L.A. 4 n. 6.*
[20] **tenebrae, -ārum,** darkness
[21] **Orcus, -ī,** Orcus, the underworld
[22] **dēvorō** (1), devour, consume
[23] *dative of separation*
[24] **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum,** take away
[25] **iō,** *exclamation of pain,* oh!, *or of joy,* hurrah!
[26] **misellus, -a, -um,** *diminutive of* **miser,** wretched, poor, unhappy; *a colloquial word*
[27] **tuā operā,** thanks to you: **opera, -ae,** work, pains, effort
[28] **fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum,** weep
[29] **turgidulus, -a, -um,** (somewhat) swollen
[30] **rubeō, -ēre,** be red
[31] **ocellus, -ī,** *diminutive* of **oculus**

4

METER: elegiac couplet.
[1] *Catullus journeyed to Bithynia on the staff of Memmius, the governor, apparently for two prime reasons. He undoubtedly wanted to get away from Rome in order to regain his equilibrium and fortitude after his final break with the notorious Lesbia. The present poem shows that he also deeply desired to carry out the final funeral rites for his dearly beloved brother, who had died in a foreign land far from his loved ones.*
[2] **aequor, -oris,** *n.,* flat surface, the sea
[3] **vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum,** carry
[4] **īnferiae, -ārum,** offerings in honor of the dead
[5] **postrēmus, -a, -um,** last
[6] **dōnō** (1), present you with; *cp. the idiom in L.I. 1 line 1.*
[7] **mūnus, -eris,** *n.,* service, gift
[8] **mūtus, -a, -um,** mute, silent
[9] **nequīquam,** *adv.,* in vain
[10] **ad-loquor,** address
[11] **cinis, -eris,** *m. but occasionally f. as here,* ashes (*cp.* incinerator)
[12] **quandoquidem,** *conj.,* since
[13] *dat. of separation. Final* **-ī** *is long here because of meter.*
[14] = **tē**
[15] *L.I. 3 n. 24*
[16] **indignē,** *adv.,* undeservedly
[17] **adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum,** take away; **adēmpte,** *voc. agreeing with* **frāter**
[18] **intereā,** *adv.,* meanwhile
[19] *n. acc. pl., obj. of* **accipe**
[20] **prīscus, -a, -um,** ancient

accipe frāternō[21] multum[22] mānantia[23] flētū,[24]
10 atque in perpetuum,[25] frāter, avē[26] atque valē.
(**Catullus** 101)

5. VITRIOLIC DENUNCIATION[1] OF THE LEADER OF A CONSPIRACY AGAINST THE ROMAN STATE

Quō ūsque[2] tandem abūtēre,[3] Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam furor[4] iste tuus nōs ēlūdet[5]? Quem ad fīnem sēsē[6] effrēnāta[7] iactābit[8] audācia[9]? Nihilne[10] tē nocturnum[11] praesidium[12] Palātī,[13] nihil urbis vigiliae,[14] nihil timor populī, nihil concursus[15] bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissimus[16] habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra[17] vultūsque mōvērunt? Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? Cōnstrictam[18] iam omnium hōrum scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem[19] tuam nōn vidēs? Quid proximā,[20] quid superiōre[21] nocte ēgerīs, ubi fuerīs, quōs convocāverīs,[22] quid cōnsilī cēperīs, quem nostrum[23] ignōrāre[24] arbitrāris?

Ō tempora[25]! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Immō[26] vērō[27] etiam in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī particeps,[28] notat[29] et dēsignat[30] oculīs ad caedem[31] ūnum quemque nostrum. Nōs, autem, fortēs virī, satis facere reī pūblicae vidēmur sī istīus furōrem ac tēla[32] vītāmus. Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, dūcī iussū[33] cōnsulis iam prīdem[34] oportēbat, in tē cōnferrī pestem[35] quam tū in nōs māchināris[36] . . .

Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum[37] in tē, Catilīna, vehemēns[38] et grave. Nōn

[21] **frāternus, -a, -um,** fraternal, of a brother, a brother's
[22] **multum,** *adv. with* **mānantia**
[23] **mānō** (1), flow, drip with; **mānantia** *modifies* **haec** *in line 7.*
[24] **flētus, -ūs,** weeping, tears
[25] **in perpetuum,** forever
[26] **avē** = **salvē**

5

[1] *For the general situation of this speech see the introductory note to the reading passage in Ch. 30. Since Cicero as yet lacked evidence that would stand in court, this speech is a magnificent example of bluff; but it worked to the extent of forcing Catiline (though not the other leaders of the conspiracy) to leave Rome for his army encamped at Fiesole near Florence.*
[2] **ūsque,** *adv.*, how far
[3] = **abūtēris; ab-ūtor** + abl., abuse
[4] **furor, -ōris,** *m.*, madness
[5] **ēlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum,** mock, elude
[6] **quem ad fīnem** = **ad quem fīnem; sēsē** = **sē**
[7] **effrēnātus, -a, -um,** unbridled; *cp.* **frēnum,** bridle, *and the frenum of the upper lip*
[8] **iactō** (1), *frequentative form of* **iaciō,** toss about, vaunt
[9] **audācia, -ae,** boldness, audacity
[10] **nihil** = *strong* **nōn;** not at all
[11] **nocturnus, -a, -um,** *adj. of* **nox**
[12] **praesidium, -iī,** guard
[13] **Palātium, -ī,** the Palatine hill. *From the sumptuous dwellings on the Palatine comes our word "palace."*
[14] **vigilia, -ae,** watch; *pl.*, watchmen, sentinels
[15] **concursus, -ūs,** gathering
[16] **mūnītus, -a, -um,** fortified
[17] *here* = expression
[18] **cōnstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum,** bind, curb
[19] **coniūrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, conspiracy (a swearing together)
[20] **proximus, -a, -um,** nearest, last (*sc.* **nocte**)
[21] **superiōre** (*sc.* **nocte**) = the night before
[22] **con-vocō**
[23] *gen. of* **nōs** (*Ch. 11*)
[24] **ignōrō** (1), be ignorant, not know
[25] *The acc. was used in exclamatory expressions.*
[26] **immō,** *adv.*, on the contrary; nay more
[27] **vērō,** *adv.*, in fact
[28] **particeps, -cipis,** *m.*, participant
[29] **notō** (1), mark out, note
[30] **dēsignō** (1), mark out, designate, choose
[31] **caedēs, -is,** *f.*, slaughter
[32] **tēlum, -ī,** weapon
[33] **iussū,** *chiefly in abl.*, by *or* at the command of
[34] **iam prīdem,** *adv.*, long ago
[35] **pestis, -is,** *f.*, plague, destruction
[36] **māchinor** (1), contrive (*cp.* "*machine*"); **in nōs, in** + *acc. sometimes means* against (**contrā**)
[37] **cōnsultum, -ī,** decree
[38] **vehemēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** emphatic, vehement

deest[39] reī pūblicae cōnsilium, neque auctōritās[40] huius ōrdinis[41]; nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē,[42] cōnsulēs dēsumus . . . At nōs vīcēsimum[43] iam diem patimur hebēscere[44] aciem[45] hōrum auctōritātis. Habēmus enim eius modī[46] senātūs
20 cōnsultum, . . . quō ex[47] senātūs cōnsultō cōnfestim[48] tē interfectum esse, Catilīna, convēnit.[49] Vīvis, et vīvis nōn ad dēpōnendam,[50] sed ad cōnfīrmandam[51] audāciam. Cupiō, patrēs cōnscrīptī,[52] mē esse clēmentem[53]; cupiō in tantīs reī pūblicae perīculīs mē nōn dissolūtum[54] vidērī, sed iam mē ipse inertiae[55] nēquitiaeque[56] condemnō.[57]

25 Castra[58] sunt in Italiā contrā populum Rōmānum in Etrūriae[59] faucibus[60] collocāta[61]; crēscit in diēs singulōs[62] hostium numerus; eōrum autem castrōrum imperātōrem ducemque hostium intrā[63] moenia atque adeō[64] in senātū vidēmus, intestīnam[65] aliquam cotīdiē perniciem[66] reī pūblicae mōlientem[67] . . .

30 Quae[68] cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge[69] quō[70] coepistī. Ēgredere[71] aliquandō[72] ex urbe; patent portae; proficīscere. Nimium diū tē imperātōrem tua illa Mānliāna[73] castra dēsīderant. Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnēs tuōs; sī minus,[74] quam plūrimōs; pūrgā[75] urbem. Magnō mē metū līberāveris dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus[76] intersit.[77] Nōbīscum versārī[78] iam diūtius
35 nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam[79] . . .

Quamquam[80] nōn nūllī[81] sunt in hōc ōrdine quī aut ea quae imminent[82] nōn videant, aut ea quae vident dissimulent[83]; quī[84] spem Catilīnae mollibus[85] sententiīs aluērunt coniūrātiōnemque nāscentem nōn crēdendō corrō-

[39] **dē + sum,** be wanting, fail + *dat.*
[40] **auctōritās, -tātis,** *f.,* authority
[41] **ōrdō, -dinis,** *m.,* class, order
[42] *adv.,* openly
[43] **vīcēsimus, -a, -um,** twentieth
[44] **hebēscō, -ere,** grow dull
[45] **aciēs, -ēī,** sharp edge
[46] **eius modī,** of this sort; *modifies* **cōnsultum**
[47] *here* = in accordance with; *with* **quō . . . cōnsultō**
[48] **cōnfestim,** *adv.,* at once
[49] **convenit, -īre, -vēnit,** *impers.,* it is fitting
[50] **dē + pōnō,** put aside
[51] **cōnfīrmō** (1), strengthen
[52] **patrēs cōnscrīptī,** senators
[53] **clēmēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** merciful, gentle
[54] **dissolūtus, -a, -um,** lax
[55] **inertia, -ae,** inactivity; *example of gen. of thing charged:* "I condemn myself *on a charge of inactivity,* find myself guilty of inactivity."
[56] **nēquitia, -ae,** worthlessness; *gen. of charge*
[57] **condemnō** (1), find guilty, condemn
[58] **castra, -ōrum,** a camp (*n. pl. form but sg. meaning*)
[59] **Etrūria, -ae,** Etruria
[60] **faucēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* jaws, narrow pass
[61] **collocō** (1), to position
[62] **in diēs singulōs,** from day to day
[63] **intrā,** *prep.* + *acc.,* within
[64] **adeō,** *adv.,* so even
[65] **intestīnus, -a, -um,** internal
[66] **perniciēs, -ēī,** slaughter, destruction
[67] **mōlientem** *modifies* **ducem** *and has* **perniciem** *as its obj.*
[68] = **et haec,** *conjunctive use of the rel. pron.*
[69] **pergō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum,** proceed, continue
[70] **quō,** *adv.,* where. *A few lines before these words Cicero said:* **cōnfīrmastī** (you asserted) **tē ipsum iam esse exitūrum** (*from* **ex-eō**).
[71] **ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum,** go out, depart. *What is the form of* **ēgredere?**
[72] **quandō,** *adv.,* at some time, at last
[73] *Manlius was in charge of Catiline's army at Fiesole.*
[74] **minus = nōn omnēs**
[75] **pūrgō** (1), cleanse
[76] **mūrus, -ī,** wall
[77] **inter-sum**
[78] **versor** (1), dwell, remain
[79] **sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm,** allow
[80] **quamquam,** *conj.,* and yet
[81] **nōn nūllī,** not none = some, several
[82] **immineō, -ēre,** overhang, threaten
[83] **dissimulō** (1), conceal
[84] **quī = et hī**
[85] **mollis, -e,** soft, weak

borāvērunt[86]; quōrum[87] auctōritātem secūti,[88] multī nōn sōlum improbī,[89]
40 vērum[90] etiam imperītī,[91] sī in hunc animadvertissem,[92] crūdēliter[93] et rēgiē[94] factum esse[95] dīcerent. Nunc intellegō, sī iste, quō intendit,[96] in Mānliāna castra pervēnerit,[97] nēminem tam stultum fore[98] quī nōn videat coniūrātiōnem esse factam, nēminem tam improbum quī nōn fateātur.

Hōc autem ūnō interfectō, intellegō hanc reī pūblicae pestem paulīsper[99]
45 reprimī,[100] nōn in perpetuum[101] comprimī[102] posse. Quod sī[103] sē ēiēcerit,[104] sēcumque suōs[105] ēdūxerit, et eōdem[106] cēterōs undique[107] collēctōs[108] naufragōs[109] adgregārit,[110] exstinguētur[111] atque dēlēbitur nōn modo haec tam adulta[112] reī pūblicae pestis, vērum etiam stirps[113] ac sēmen[114] malōrum omnium . . . Quod sī[103] ex tantō latrōciniō[115] iste ūnus tollētur, vidēbimur for-
50 tasse ad[116] breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse relevātī;[117] perīculum autem residēbit[118] . . .

Quārē sēcēdant[119] improbī; sēcernant[120] sē ā bonīs; ūnum in locum congregentur[121]; mūrō dēnique (id quod saepe iam dīxī) sēcernantur ā nōbīs; dēsinant[122] īnsidiārī[123] domī suae[124] cōnsulī, circumstāre[125] tribūnal[126] prae-
55 tōris urbānī,[127] obsidēre[128] cum gladiīs cūriam,[129] malleolōs[130] et facēs[131] ad īnflammandam[132] urbem comparāre[133]; sit dēnique īnscrīptum[134] in fronte[135] ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat. Polliceor[136] hoc vōbīs, patrēs cōnscrīptī,[52] tantam in nōbīs cōnsulibus fore[98] dīligentiam,[137] tantam in vōbīs auctōritātem,[40] tantam in equitibus[138] Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnibus

[86] **corrōborō** (1), strengthen; *cp. corroborate*
[87] **quōrum = et eōrum**
[88] **secūtī,** *participle going with* **multī**
[89] **improbus, -a, -um,** wicked, depraved
[90] **vērum etiam = sed etiam**
[91] **imperītus, -a, -um,** inexperienced
[92] **animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum,** notice; *with* **in** + *acc.* = inflict punishment on. *This is a mixed condition of what general category?*
[93] **crūdēliter,** *adv. of* **crūdēlis**
[94] **rēgiē,** *adv.*, in the fashion of a king, tyrannically
[95] *Sc.* **id** *as subject.*
[96] **intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsum,** intend; *parenthetical cl.*
[97] **per-veniō ad** *or* **in** + *acc.*, arrive at, reach; **pervēnerit** = *perf. subj. for a fut. perf. indic. in a more vivid condition. For the subj. in a subordinate cl. in ind. state., see App.*
[98] **fore = futūrus, -a, -um, esse**
[99] **paulīsper,** *adv.*, for a little while
[100] **re-primō,** press back, check
[101] = **semper**
[102] **comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum,** suppress
[103] **quod sī,** but if
[104] *fut. perf. ind. What kind of condition?*
[105] **suōs (virōs)**
[106] **eōdem,** *adv.*, to the same place
[107] **undique,** *adv.*, from all sides
[108] **colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** gather together
[109] **naufragus, -ī,** (shipwrecked) ruined man
[110] **adgregō** (1), gather; **adgregārit = adgregāverit**
[111] **exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum,** extinguish
[112] **adultus, -a, -um,** mature
[113] **stirps, stirpis,** *f.*, stem, stock
[114] **sēmen, -inis,** *n.*, seed
[115] **latrōcinium, -iī,** brigandage; band of brigands
[116] *here* = for
[117] **relevō** (1), relieve
[118] **re-sideō** (= **sedeō**), **-ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,** (sit down), remain
[119] **sē-cēdō** (**sē** = apart, away). *Why subj.?*
[120] **sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -cretum,** separate
[121] **congregō** (1), gather together
[122] **dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm,** cease
[123] **īnsidior** (1), plot against + *dat.*
[124] **domī suae,** *loc. Catiline had tried to have Cicero assassinated.*
[125] **circum-stō, -āre, -stetī,** stand around, surround
[126] **tribūnal, -ālis,** *n.*
[127] **praetor urbānus,** *judicial magistrate who had charge of civil cases between Roman citizens*
[128] **obsideō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum,** besiege, beset
[129] **cūria, -ae,** senate house
[130] **malleolus, -ī,** firebrand
[131] **fax, facis,** *f.*, torch
[132] **īnflammō** (1), set on fire
[133] = **parāre**
[134] **in-scrībō**
[135] **frōns, frontis,** *f.*, forehead
[136] **polliceor, -ērī, -licitus sum,** promise
[137] **dīligentia, -ae**
[138] **eques, equitis,** *m.*, horseman, knight. *Here the* **equitēs** *are the wealthy business class in Rome.*

60 bonīs cōnsēnsiōnem,[139] ut Catilīnae profectiōne[140] omnia patefacta, illūstrāta,[141] oppressa, vindicāta[142] esse videātis.

Hīsce[143] ōminibus,[144] Catilīna, cum summā reī pūblicae salūte,[145] cum tuā peste ac perniciē,[146] cumque eōrum exitiō quī sē tēcum omnī scelere parricīdiōque[147] iūnxērunt, proficīscere ad impium[148] bellum ac nefārium.[149] 65 Tū, Iuppiter, quī eīsdem[150] quibus haec urbs auspiciīs ā Rōmulō[151] es cōnstitūtus,[152] quem Statōrem[153] huius urbis atque imperiī vērē nōmināmus,[154] hunc et huius sociōs ā tuīs cēterīsque templīs,[155] ā tēctīs[156] urbis ac moenibus, ā vītā fortūnīsque cīvium arcēbis[157], et hominēs bonōrum inimīcōs,[158] hostēs patriae, latrōnēs[159] Italiae, scelerum foedere[160] inter sē ac ne- 70 fāriā societāte[161] coniūnctōs,[162] aeternīs[163] suppliciīs[164] vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.[165]

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam Ōrātiō I,* excerpts)

6. THE ARREST AND TRIAL OF THE CONSPIRATORS[1]

Rem pūblicam, Quirītēs,[2] vītamque[3] omnium vestrum, bona,[4] fortūnās, coniugēs[5] līberōsque[6] vestrōs, atque hoc domicilium[7] clārissimī imperī, fortūnātissimam pulcherrimamque urbem, hodiernō[8] diē deōrum immortālium summō ergā vōs amōre, labōribus, cōnsiliīs, perīculīs meīs, ē flammā[9] atque 5 ferrō ac paene[10] ex faucibus[11] fātī ēreptam et vōbīs cōnservātam ac restitū-

[139] **cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* agreement, harmony
[140] **profectiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* departure; *cp.* **proficīscor**
[141] **illūstrō** (1), bring to light
[142] **vindicō** (1), avenge, punish
[143] **hīs-ce** = **hīs** + *intensive enclitic* **-ce;** *abl. case with* **ōminibus**
[144] **ōmen, ōminis,** *n.,* omen: with these omens *or* with these words which I have uttered as omens, *abl. of attendant circumstance without* **cum.**
[145] **cum . . . salūte (peste, exitiō)** *abl. of attendant circumstance with* **cum,** *here indicating the result:* to the safety of state, to your own destruction. . . .
[146] **perniciēs, -ēī,** disaster, calamity
[147] **parricīdium, -iī,** murder
[148] **impius, -a, -um,** wicked, disloyal
[149] **nefārius, -a, -um,** infamous, nefarious
[150] **eīsdem auspiciīs quibus haec urbs (cōnstitūta est);** **auspicia, -ōrum,** auspices
[151] **Rōmulus, -ī,** *the founder of Rome*
[152] **cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** establish
[153] **Stator, -ōris,** *m.,* the Stayer (of flight), the Supporter, Jupitor Stator
[154] **nōminō** (1), name, call (*cp.* **nōmen)**
[155] **templum, -ī,** temple
[156] **tēctum, -ī,** roof, house
[157] **arceō, -ēre, -uī,** ward off
[158] **inimīcus, -ī,** personal enemy; **inimīcōs, hostēs,** *etc. are in apposition with* **hominēs.**
[159] **latrō, -ōnis,** *m.,* robber, bandit
[160] **foedus, -eris,** *n.,* treaty, bond
[161] **societās, -tātis,** *f.,* fellowship, alliance (*cp.* **socius)**
[162] **con** (together) + **iungō: coniūnctōs** *modifies* **latrōnēs,** *etc.*
[163] **aeternus, -a, -um,** eternal
[164] **supplicium, -iī,** punishment
[165] **mactō** (1), punish, pursue. *The basic structure of the sent. is this:* **Tū (quī . . . es cōnstitūtus, quem . . . nōmināmus) hunc et sociōs ā templīs . . . fortūnīsque cīvium arcebis; et hominēs (inimīcōs . . . coniūnctōs) suppliciīs vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.**

6

[1] *Cicero here tells how, shortly after his first speech against Catiline, he secured the written evidence necessary for the trial and conviction of the conspirators.*
[2] fellow-citizens, *an old word of uncertain origin*
[3] *The Romans regularly used the sg. even when referring to a number of people; we use the pl., "lives."*
[4] *n. pl.,* good things = goods
[5] **coniūnx, -iugis,** *f.,* wife (*cp.* **coniungō)**
[6] **līberī, -ōrum,** children
[7] **domicilium, -iī,** home (*cp.* **domus)**
[8] **hodiernus diēs,** this day, today (*cp.* **hodiē)**
[9] **flamma, -ae,** flame
[10] **paene,** *adv.,* almost
[11] **faucēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* jaws; a narrow passage

tam[12] vidētis[13] . . . Quae[14] quoniam in senātū illūstrāta, patefacta, comperta[15] sunt per mē, vōbīs iam expōnam breviter, Quirītēs, ut[16] et[17] quanta[18] et quā ratiōne investīgāta[19] et comprehēnsa sint, vōs, quī ignōrātis et exspectātis, scīre possītis.

Prīncipiō, ut[20] Catilīna paucīs ante diēbus[21] ērūpit[22] ex urbe, cum sceleris suī sociōs, huiusce[23] nefāriī bellī ācerrimōs ducēs, Rōmae relīquisset, semper vigilāvī[24] et prōvīdī,[25] Quirītēs, quem ad modum[26] in tantīs et tam absconditīs[27] īnsidiīs salvī esse possēmus. Nam tum cum ex urbe Catilīnam ēiciēbam (nōn enim iam vereor huius verbī invidiam, cum illa[28] magis[29] sit timenda, quod[30] vīvus exierit)—sed tum cum[31] illum exterminārī[32] volēbam, aut[33] reliquam[34] coniūrātōrum manum simul[35] exitūram[36] aut eōs quī restitissent[37] īnfīrmōs sine illō ac dēbilēs[38] fore[39] putābam. Atque ego, ut vīdī, quōs maximō furōre et scelere esse īnflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nōbīscum esse et Rōmae remānsisse, in eō[40] omnēs diēs noctēsque cōnsūmpsī ut quid agerent, quid mōlīrentur, sentīrem ac vidērem . . . Itaque, ut comperī lēgātōs[41] Allobrogum[42] bellī Trānsalpīnī[43] et tumultūs[44] Gallicī[45] excitandī[46] causā, ā P. Lentulō[47] esse sollicitātōs,[48] eōsque in Galliam[49] ad suōs cīvēs eōdemque itinere cum litterīs mandātīsque[50] ad Catilīnam esse missōs, comitemque[51] eīs adiūnctum esse[52] T. Volturcium,[53] atque huic esse ad Catilīnam datās litterās, facultātem[54] mihi oblātam putāvī ut—quod[55] erat difficillimum

tuī, **-stitūtum,** restore
e sent. is this: **Rem pūblicam (. . .**
e deōrum(. . . perīculīs meīs) ē
aucibus fātī) ēreptam (. . . restitū-

the rel.; n. nom. pl.
erī, **-pertum,** find out
is

:t of **comprehēnsa sint**
k out, investigate
ever since
lays (*abl. of degree of difference, see*
w days ago; *actually some three*

ī, -ruptum, burst forth
tensifying suffix
be vigilant
, make provision
how
ım, hidden

ıpere
cl. in apposition with **illa (invidia).**
. **(exierit)** *is used in informal ind.*
g what people may say: he went out

ɔetition of **tum cum** *above as Cicero*
over again.
nish (**ex + terminus,** boundary)
(esse) aut . . . fore putābam

[34] **reliquus, -a, -um,** remaining, the rest of
[35] **simul,** *adv.,* at the same time
[36] **ex-eō; exitūram (esse)**
[37] **restō, -āre, -stitī,** stay behind, remain
[38] **dēbilis, -e,** helpless, weak
[39] = **futūrōs esse**
[40] **in eō ut sentīrem et vidērem quid . . . mōlīrentur:** in this that I might see . . . ; *the* **ut**-*cl. of purpose is in apposition with* **eō.**
[41] **lēgātus, -ī,** ambassador
[42] **Allobrogēs, -um,** *m. pl.,* the Allobroges, *a Gallic tribe whose ambassadors had come to Rome to make complaints about certain Roman magistrates.*
[43] **Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um,** Transalpine
[44] **tumultus, -ūs,** *m.,* uprising
[45] **Gallicus, -a, -um,** Gallic
[46] **excitō** (1), excite, arouse
[47] *Publius Lentulus after having been consul in 71* B.C. *was removed from the Senate on grounds of moral turpitude. He was now one of the leading conspirators and at the same time he was holding the office of praetor.*
[48] **sollicitō** (1), stir up
[49] **Gallia, -ae,** Gaul
[50] **mandātum, -ī,** order, instruction
[51] **comes, -itis,** *m.,* companion
[52] **ad-iungō**
[53] **Titus Volturcius,** *an errand-boy for Lentulus*
[54] **facultās, -tātis,** *f.,* opportunity
[55] **quod,** a thing which. *The antecedent of* **quod** *is the general idea in the* **ut**-*cl.*

quodque ego semper optābam[56] ab dīs immortālibus—tōta rēs nōn sōlum ā mē sed etiam ā senātū et ā vōbis manifestō[57] dēprehenderētur.[58]

Itaque hesternō[59] diē L. Flaccum et C. Pomptīnum praetōrēs,[60] fortissimōs atque amantissimōs[61] reī pūblicae[62] virōs, ad mē vocāvī, rem exposuī,
30 quid fierī[63] placēret ostendī. Illī autem, quī omnia dē rē pūblicā praeclāra[64] atque ēgregia[65] sentīrent,[66] sine recūsātiōne[67] ac sine ūllā morā negōtium[68] suscēpērunt et, cum advesperāsceret,[69] occultē[70] ad pontem[71] Mulvium pervēnērunt atque ibi in proximīs vīllīs[72] ita bipertītō[73] fuērunt ut Tiberis[74] inter eōs et pōns interesset.[75] Eōdem[76] autem et ipsī sine cuiusquam suspīciōne[77]
35 multōs fortēs virōs ēdūxerant, et ego ex praefectūrā[78] Reātīnā[79] complūrēs[80] dēlēctōs[81] adulēscentēs, quōrum operā[82] ūtor assiduē[83] in rē pūblicā, praesidiō[84] cum gladiīs mīseram. Interim,[85] tertiā ferē[86] vigiliā[87] exāctā, cum iam pontem Mulvium magnō comitātū[88] lēgātī Allobrogum ingredī[89] inciperent ūnāque[90] Volturcius, fit in eōs impetus[91]; ēdūcuntur[92] et ab illīs gladiī et ā
40 nostrīs.[93] Rēs praetōribus erat nōta sōlīs, ignōrābātur ā cēterīs. Tum interventū[94] Pomptīnī atque Flaccī pugna[95] sēdātur.[96] Litterae, quaecumque[97] erant in eō comitātū, integrīs[98] signīs praetōribus trāduntur; ipsī, comprehēnsī, ad mē, cum iam dīlūcēsceret,[99] dēdūcuntur. Atque hōrum omnium scelerum improbissimum[100] māchinātōrem,[101] Cimbrum Gabīnium,[102]
45 statim[103] ad mē nihildum[104] suspicantem,[105] vocāvī. Deinde item[106] arcessītus

[56] **optō** (1), desire
[57] **manifestō,** *adv.,* clearly
[58] **dēprehendō** (cp. **comprehendō**), detect, comprehend
[59] **hesternō diē,** yesterday
[60] *Though praetors were judicial magistrates, they did possess the imperium by which they could command troops.*
[61] most loving of the state = very patriotic
[62] *obj. gen.; see App.*
[63] **fierī,** *subject of* **placēret** (it was pleasing) *used impersonally*
[64] **praeclārus, -a, -um,** noble
[65] **ēgregius, -a, -um,** excellent, distinguished
[66] *subj. in a characteristic cl.*
[67] **recūsātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* refusal
[68] **negōtium, -iī,** business, matter
[69] **advesperāscit, -ere, -perāvit,** *impers. inceptive,* it is approaching evening (*cp.* vespers)
[70] **occultē,** *adv.,* secretly
[71] **pōns, pontis,** *m.,* bridge; *the Mulvian bridge across the Tiber near Rome*
[72] **vīlla, -ae,** country house
[73] **bipertītō,** *adv.,* in two divisions
[74] **Tiberis, -is,** *m.,* the Tiber
[75] **inter-sum,** be between
[76] **eōdem,** *adv.,* to the same place
[77] **suspīciō, -ōnis,** *f.,* suspicion
[78] **praefectūra, -ae,** prefecture, *a city of the Roman allies governed by a Roman prefect*
[79] **Reātīnus, -a, -um,** of Reate, *a Sabine town about forty miles from Rome.*
[80] **complūrēs, -a,** *pl. adj.,* very many
[81] **dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** choose, select
[82] **opera, -ae,** help; *why abl.?*
[83] **assiduē,** *adv.,* constantly
[84] **praesidiō,** as a guard, *dat. of purpose* (*S.S.*)
[85] **interim,** *adv.,* meanwhile
[86] **ferē,** *adv.,* about, almost; *usually follows the word it modifies*
[87] **vigilia, -ae,** watch. *The night was divided into four watches.*
[88] **comitātus, -ūs,** company, retinue. *The abl. of accompaniment may be used without* **cum** *in military expressions.*
[89] **ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum,** enter on
[90] and together with (them)
[91] **impetus, -ūs,** attack
[92] **ēdūcuntur . . . gladiī,** swords were drawn
[93] **nostrīs (virīs)**
[94] **interventus, -ūs,** intervention
[95] **pugna, -ae,** fight
[96] **sēdō** (1), settle, stop (*not to be confused with* **sedeō,** sit)
[97] **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque,** whoever, whatever
[98] **integer, -gra, -grum,** untouched, whole
[99] **dīlūcēscit, -ere, -lūxit,** it grows light, dawn comes
[100] **improbus, -a, -um,** wicked
[101] **māchinātor, -ōris,** *m.,* contriver, plotter
[102] **Cimber Gabīnius**
[103] **statim,** *adv.,* immediately
[104] **nihil-dum,** nothing yet
[105] **suspicor** (1), suspect
[106] **item,** *adv.,* likewise

est[107] L. Statilius, et post eum C. Cethēgus. Tardissimē[108] autem Lentulus vēnit . . .

Senātum frequentem[109] celeriter, ut vīdistis, coēgī. Atque intereā[110] statim admonitū[111] Allobrogum C. Sulpicium praetōrem, fortem virum, mīsī
50 quī ex aedibus[112] Cethēgī, sī quid tēlōrum[113] esset, efferret[114]; ex quibus[115] ille maximum sīcārum[116] numerum et gladiōrum extulit.[117]

Intrōdūxī[118] Volturcium sine Gallīs; fidem pūblicam[119] iussū[120] senātūs dedī; hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre indicāret.[121] Tum ille dīxit, cum vix[122] sē ex magnō timōre recreāsset,[123] ā P. Lentulō sē habēre ad Catilī-
55 nam mandāta et litterās ut servōrum praesidiō ūterētur,[124] ut ad urbem quam prīmum[125] cum exercitū accēderet; id[126] autem eō cōnsiliō ut,[127] cum urbem ex[128] omnibus partibus, quem ad modum[129] discrīptum distribūtumque erat,[130] incendissent[131] caedemque[132] īnfīnītam[133] cīvium fēcissent, praestō[134] esset ille[135] quī et fugientēs exciperet[136] et sē cum hīs urbānīs ducibus con-
60 iungeret.[137]

Intrōductī autem Gallī iūs iūrandum[138] sibi et litterās ab Lentulō, Cethēgō, Statiliō ad suam gentem datās esse dīxērunt atque ita sibi ab hīs et ā L. Cassiō esse praescrīptum[139] ut equitātum[140] in Italiam quam prīmum mitterent[141] . . .
65 Ac nē longum sit,[142] Quirītēs, tabellās[143] prōferrī[144] iussimus quae ā quōque dīcēbantur datae.[145] Prīmum ostendimus Cethēgō signum; cognōvit.

[107] **arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** summon
[108] **tardē,** *adv.,* slowly
[109] **frequēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** crowded, full
[110] **intereā,** *adv.,* meanwhile
[111] **admonitus, -ūs,** warning, suggestion
[112] **aedēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* house
[113] **tēlum, -ī,** weapon; **tēlōrum** *is gen. of whole with* **quid:** anything of weapons = any weapons
[114] *rel. cl. of purp.:* **quī = ut is**
[115] *Antecedent* is **aedibus.**
[116] **sīca, -ae,** dagger
[117] **efferō: ex-ferō**
[118] **intrō-dūcō** = *Eng.* introduce
[119] promise of protection in the name of the state
[120] **iussus, -ūs,** command
[121] **indīcō** (1), indicate, make known
[122] **vix,** *adv.,* hardly
[123] *The perf. endings in* **-āvi-, -ēvi-, -ōvi-** *often contract to* **-ā-, -ē-, -ō-,** *respectively. So here* **rēcreāvīsset** *has contracted to* **recreāsset.** *Perfs. in* **-īvi-** *may lose the* **v** *but the two resultant vowels rarely contract to* **ī** *except before* **ss** *and* **st: audīverat, audierat; audīvisse, audīsse; quaesīssent**
[124] *jussive noun cl. with* **mandāta et litterās**
[125] **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible
[126] (that he should do) this (**id**) with this plan (in mind) that . . .
[127] *The rest of the sentence can be outlined thus:* **ut (cum . . . partibus [quem ad modum . . . distributum erat] incendissent et . . . fēcissent) praestō esset ille (quī et . . . exciperet et . . . coniungeret)**
[128] *here* in
[129] **quem ad modum,** as
[130] *impers. pass. vbs.:* as had been marked out and assigned
[131] **incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum,** set fire to
[132] **caedēs, -is,** *f.,* slaughter
[133] **īnfīnītus, -a, -um,** unlimited
[134] **praestō,** *adv.,* on hand, ready
[135] **ille** = Catiline
[136] **ex-cipiō,** pick up, capture
[137] **con + iungō.** *Why are* **exciperet** *and* **coniungeret** *in the subj.?*
[138] **iūs, iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** *n.,* oath
[139] **prae-scrībō,** order, direct; **esse praescrīptum,** *impers. pass.* (it had been commanded to themselves, **sibi**) *but translate as personal:* they had been directed.
[140] **equitātus, -ūs,** cavalry
[141] *jussive noun cl. depending on* **esse praescrīptum**
[142] to be brief
[143] **tabella, -ae,** tablet: *very shallow trays, not unlike the modern slate, filled with wax on which writing was done with a sharp-pointed stilus. Two of these closed face to face, tied together with a string, and sealed with wax and the impression of a signet ring, were the equivalent of a modern letter in an envelope.*
[144] **prō-ferō**
[145] **datae (esse); datae** *is nom. f. pl. to agree with* **quae (tabellae),** *the subject of* **dīcēbantur.**

Nōs līnum[146] incīdimus[147]; lēgimus. Erat scrīptum ipsīus[148] manū Allobrogum senātuī et populō sēsē[149] quae eōrum lēgātīs cōnfīrmāsset[150] factūrum esse; ōrāre ut item illī facerent quae sibi eōrum lēgātī recēpissent. Tum Cethēgus
70 (quī paulō[151] ante aliquid tamen dē gladiīs ac sīcīs, quae apud ipsum erant dēprehēnsa,[152] respondisset dīxissetque[153] sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum[154] studiōsum[155] fuisse) recitātīs litterīs dēbilitātus[156] atque abiectus[157] cōnscientiā,[158] repente conticuit.[159]

Intrōductus est Statilius; cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātae
75 sunt tabellae in eandem ferē sententiam; cōnfessus est.

Tum ostendī tabellās Lentulō, et quaesīvī cognōsceretne signum. Adnuit[160] . . . Leguntur eādem ratiōne ad senātum Allobrogum populumque litterae. Sī quid dē hīs rēbus dīcere vellet,[161] fēcī potestātem.[162] Atque ille prīmō quidem negāvit. Post[163] autem aliquantō,[164] tōtō iam indiciō[165]
80 expositō atque ēditō,[166] surrēxit; quaesīvit ā Gallīs quid sibi esset cum eīs, quam ob rem[167] domum suam vēnissent, itemque ā Volturciō. Quī cum illī breviter cōnstanterque[168] respondissent per quem ad eum quotiēnsque[169] vēnissent, quaesīssentque[170] ab eō nihilne sēcum[171] esset dē fātīs Sibyllīnīs[172] locūtus, tum ille subitō, scelere dēmēns,[173] quanta cōnscientiae vīs esset os-
85 tendit. Nam cum id posset īnfitiārī,[174] repente praeter opīniōnem[175] omnium cōnfessus est . . .

Gabīnius deinde intrōductus, cum prīmō impudenter[176] respondēre coepisset, ad extrēmum[177] nihil ex eīs[178] quae Gallī īnsimulābant[179] negāvit.

Ac mihi[180] quidem, Quirītēs, cum[181] illa[182] certissima vīsa sunt argūmenta
90 atque indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manūs, dēnique ūnīus cuiusque cōn-

[146] **līnum, -ī,** string
[147] **incīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** cut
[148] **(Cethēgī) ipsīus:** *emphatic because letters were often written by an amanuensis, a slave to whom the letter was dictated.*
[149] **sēsē** = **sē** (*i.e., Cethegus*), *subject of* **factūrum esse** *and also of* **ōrāre**
[150] **cōnfīrmō** (1), assert, declare; *subj. in ind. state. (see S.S.)*
[151] a little before (before by a little), *abl. of degree of difference (see S.S.)*
[152] **dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum,** seize
[153] **respondisset dīxissetque,** *subjs. in rel. cl. of characteristic, which have the force of a concessive cl. (= although)*
[154] **ferrāmentum, -ī,** weapon
[155] **studiōsus, -a, -um,** fond of (*i.e., he was a collector.*)
[156] **dēbilitō** (1), weaken
[157] **abiectus, -a, -um,** downcast
[158] **cōnscientia, -ae,** knowledge, conscience
[159] **conticēscō, -ere, -ticuī,** become silent
[160] **adnuō, -ere, -nuī,** nod assent
[161] **vellet,** *subj. because it is a subordinate cl. in an implied ind. state. for Cicero's original words:* **sī quid . . . dīcere vīs**
[162] **potestās, -tātis,** *f.*, power, opportunity
[163] = **posteā**
[164] **aliquantō,** *abl. of degree of difference* (by somewhat) *equivalent to an adv.:* somewhat, a little
[165] **indicium, -iī,** evidence, information
[166] **ē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** give forth, publish
[167] **quam ob rem** = **quārē**
[168] **constanter,** *adv.*, consistently, steadily
[169] **quotiēns,** *adv.*, how often
[170] *contracted form, n. 122 above*
[171] **sēcum:** *an ind. reflexive referring to the subject of* **quaesīssent;** *translate* to them.
[172] **fāta Sibyllīna,** *a collection of ancient prophecies for which the Romans had very high respect. By these Lentulus had sought to prove to the Allobroges that he was destined to hold the regnum and imperium at Rome.*
[173] **dē-mēns,** *gen.* **-mentis,** out of one's mind
[174] **īnfitior** (1), deny
[175] **opīniō, -ōnis,** *f.*, expectation
[176] **impudenter,** *adv.*, impudently
[177] **ad extrēmum,** at the last, finally
[178] **eīs** = *n. pl.*, those things
[179] **īnsimulō** (1), charge
[180] *depends on* **vīsa sunt**
[181] **cum . . . tum,** not only . . . but also (*cp.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**)
[182] **illa argūmenta atque indicia** (*i.e.,* **tabellae . . . cōnfessiō**) **certissima vīsa sunt**

fessiō,[183] tum multō[184] certiōra illa, color,[185] oculī, vultūs, taciturnitās.[186] Sīc enim obstupuerant,[187] sīc terram intuēbantur,[188] sīc fūrtim nōn numquam inter sēsē aspiciēbant ut nōn iam ab aliīs indicārī[189] sed indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

95 Indiciīs expositīs atque ēditīs, Quirītēs, senātum cōnsuluī[190] dē summā rē pūblicā[191] quid fierī placēret. Dictae sunt ā prīncipibus ācerrimae ac fortissimae sententiae, quās senātus sine ūllā varietāte[192] est secūtus . . .

Quibus prō tantīs rēbus, Quirītēs, nūllum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis, nūllum īnsigne[193] honōris, nūllum monumentum laudis postulō[194] praeter-100 quam[195] huius diēī memoriam sempiternam[196] . . .

Vōs, Quirītēs, quoniam iam est nox, venerātī[197] Iovem illum custōdem huius urbis ac vestrum, in vestra tēcta[198] discēdite; et ea, quamquam[199] iam est perīculum dēpulsum,[200] tamen aequē ac[201] priōre nocte custōdiīs vigiliīsque dēfendite. Id nē vōbīs diūtius faciendum sit atque ut in perpetuā 105 pāce esse possītis prōvidēbō. (**Cicero,** *In Catilīnam Ōrātiō III,* excerpts)

DĒ VĪTĀ ET MORTE (7–9)

7. SOCRATES' "EITHER-OR" BELIEF[1]

Quae est igitur eius ōrātiō quā[2] facit eum Platō ūsum apud iūdicēs iam morte multātum[3]?

"Magna mē," inquit "spēs tenet iūdicēs, bene mihi ēvenīre[4] quod mittar[5] ad mortem. Necesse[6] est enim sit[7] alterum dē duōbus, ut aut[8] sēnsūs omnīnō 5 omnēs mors auferat aut in alium quendam locum ex hīs locīs morte migrētur.[9] Quam ob rem,[10] sīve[11] sēnsus exstinguitur morsque eī somnō similis est quī nōn numquam etiam sine vīsīs[12] somniōrum[13] plācātissimam[14] quiē-

[183] **cōnfessiō, -ōnis,** *f.* = *Eng.*
[184] *lit.* more certain by much. *What kind of abl. is* **multō?** (*see S.S.*)
[185] **color . . . taciturnitās,** *in apposition with* **illa,** *which is nom. n. pl.* **color, -ōris,** *m.,* = *Eng.*
[186] **taciturnitās, -tātis,** *f.,* silence (*cp.* taciturn)
[187] **obstupēscō, -ere, -stupuī,** become stupefied, be thunderstruck
[188] **intueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum,** look at
[189] **indicō** (1), accuse (*cp.* **indicium,** *n. 165 above*)
[190] **cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum,** consult, ask advice of
[191] highest interest of the state
[192] **varietās, -tātis,** *f.,* variation
[193] **īnsigne, -is,** *n.,* sign, symbol
[194] **postulō** (1), request, demand
[195] except
[196] **sempiternus, -a, -um,** eternal
[197] **veneror** (1), worship
[198] **tēctum, -ī,** roof; house
[199] **quamquam,** *conj.,* although
[200] **dēpellō,** drive off, avert
[201] equally as = just as

7

[1] *As part of his demonstration that death is not an evil, Cicero cites Socrates' views as given in Plato's "Apology," Socrates' defense of his life before the jury that finally condemned him to death.*
[2] **quā . . . ūsum,** which Plato represents him as using; **quā,** *abl. with the participle* **ūsum**
[3] **multō,** (1), punish, sentence
[4] **ē-veniō,** turn out; *impers. inf. in ind. state.*
[5] *subordinate cl. in ind. state.*
[6] **necesse,** *indecl. adj.,* (it is) necessary
[7] *Supply* **ut** *before* **sit:** that there be one of two possibilities, *with the* **ut . . . migrētur** *cl. in apposition with* **duōbus**
[8] **aut . . . aut**
[9] **migrō** (1), depart, migrate; **migrātur** *as impers. pass.,* one departs
[10] = **quārē**
[11] = **sī**
[12] **vīsum, -ī,** vision
[13] **somnium, -iī,** dream
[14] **plācātus, -a, -um,** peaceful

tem adfert, dī bonī, quid lucrī est ēmorī[15]! Aut quam multī diēs reperīrī possunt quī tālī noctī antepōnantur? Cui sī similis futūra est[16] perpetuitās[17]
10 omnis cōnsequentis[18] temporis, quis[19] mē beātior?

"Sin[20] vēra[21] sunt quae dīcuntur, migrātiōnem[22] esse mortem in eās ōrās[23] quās quī[24] ē vītā excessērunt[25] incolunt,[26] id multō[27] iam beātius est . . . Haec peregrīnātiō[28] mediocris vōbīs vidērī potest? Ut vērō colloquī[29] cum Orpheō, Mūsaeō,[30] Homērō, Hēsiodō[31] liceat, quantī[32] tandem aestimātis[33]? . . . Nec
15 enim cuiquam[34] bonō malī[35] quicquam ēvenīre potest nec vīvō nec mortuō[36] . . .

"Sed tempus est iam hinc[37] abīre mē, ut moriar, vōs, ut vītam agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortālēs sciunt; hominem quidem scīre arbitror nēminem."[38] **(Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.40.97–1.41.99, excerpts)

8. A MORE POSITIVE VIEW ABOUT IMMORTALITY[1]

Artior[2] quam solēbāt[3] somnus (mē) complexus est[4] . . . (et) Āfricānus sē ostendit eā fōrmā[5] quae mihi ex imāgine[6] eius quam ex ipsō erat nōtior.[7] Quem ubi agnōvī,[8] equidem cohorruī[9], . . . quaesīvī tamen vīveretne ipse et Paulus[10] pater et aliī quōs nōs exstīnctōs[11] arbitrārēmur.

5 "Immō vērō," inquit, "hī vīvunt quī ē corporum vinclīs tamquam ē carcere[12] ēvolāvērunt[13]; vestra vērō quae dīcitur vīta mors est. Quīn[14] tū aspicis ad tē venientem Paulum patrem?"

Quem ut vīdī, equidem vim[15] lacrimārum prōfūdī. Ille autem mē com-

[15] **ē-morior,** die (off)
[16] **futūra est,** is going to be
[17] **perpetuitās, -tātis,** *f.*, perpetuity
[18] **cōn-sequor**
[19] **quis (est)**
[20] **sīn,** *conj.*, but if
[21] **(ea) sunt vēra**
[22] **migrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, the noun of **migrō,** *n.* 9 *above*
[23] **ōra, -ae,** shore, region
[24] **(eī) quī**
[25] **ex-cēdō = discēdō**
[26] **incolō, -ere, -uī,** inhabit
[27] *abl. of degree of difference* (*S.S.*)
[28] **peregrīnātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, travel abroad
[29] **col-loquor,** talk with, converse (*cp.* colloquial)
[30] *Orpheus and Musaeus were famous poets and musicians before the time of Homer*
[31] *Hesiod, a Greek epic poet chronologically next after Homer.*
[32] **quantī (pretiī),** of how much (value), *gen. of indef. value.* **quantī . . . aestimātis,** how valuable, pray, do you estimate this is?
[33] **aestimō** (1), estimate, value
[34] **quisquam, quidquam (quicquam),** anyone, anything; **cuiquam** *modified by* **bonō:** to any good man
[35] **malī** (*gen.*) *depends on* **quicquam:** anything of evil = any evil
[36] **vīvō** *and* **mortuō** *modify* **cuiquam bonō.**
[37] **hinc,** *adv.*, from this place
[38] **hominem . . . nēminem,** no man

8

[1] *In these excerpts Scipio Africanus Minor (the Younger, hero of the Third Punic War in 146* B.C.*) tells how the deceased Scipio Africanus Maior (the Elder, hero of the Second Punic War who defeated Hannibal in 202* B.C.*) appeared to him in a dream and discoursed on the nature of life here and hereafter.*
[2] **artus, -a, -um,** deep (sleep); narrow
[3] **solēbat (esse)**
[4] **complector, -ī, -plexus sum,** embrace
[5] *abl. of description*
[6] **imāgō, -inis,** *f.*, image; *here* = portrait mask of an ancestor. *The* **imāginēs** *of a Roman patrician's ancestors were displayed in the atrium of the house.*
[7] **nōtus, -a, -um,** known, familiar
[8] **agnōscō** (*cp.* **cognōscō**), recognize
[9] **cohorrēscō, -ere, -horruī,** shudder
[10] **L. Aemilius Paulus,** *father of Africanus Minor*
[11] **exstīnctōs (esse): exstinguō**
[12] **carcer, -eris,** *n.*, prison
[13] **ē-volō** (1), fly away; *not to be confused with* **volō, velle**
[14] **quīn aspicis:** why, don't you see?
[15] **vim = cōpiam**

plexus[4] atque ōsculāns[16] flēre[17] prohibēbat. Atque ego ut prīmum[18] flētū[19]
10 repressō[20] loquī posse coepī, "Quaesō,[21]" inquam, "pater sānctissime[22] atque optime, quoniam haec est vīta, ut Āfricānum audiō dīcere, quid moror[23] in terrīs? Quīn[24] hūc[25] ad vōs venīre properō[26]?

"Nōn est ita,[27]" inquit ille. "Nisi enim deus is,[28] cuius hoc templum[29] est omne quod cōnspicis,[30] istīs tē corporis custōdiīs līberāverit, hūc tibi aditus[31]
15 patēre nōn potest. Hominēs enim sunt hāc lēge[32] generātī,[33] quī tuērentur[34] illum globum[35] quem in hōc templō medium vidēs, quae terra dīcitur, iīsque[36] animus datus est ex illīs sempiternīs ignibus quae sīdera et stēllās vocātis . . . Quārē et tibi, Pūblī,[37] et piīs omnibus retinendus[38] est animus in custōdiā corporis, nec iniussū[39] eius ā quō ille[40] est vōbīs datus ex hominum vītā mi-
20 grandum est, nē mūnus[41] hūmānum adsignātum[42] ā deō dēfūgisse[43] videāminī . . . Iūstitiam[44] cole[45] et pietātem,[46] quae cum sit magna[47] in parentibus et propinquīs,[48] tum[49] in patriā maxima est. Ea vīta via est in caelum et in hunc coetum[50] eōrum quī iam vīxērunt et corpore laxātī[51] illum incolunt locum . . . quem vōs, ut ā Graīs accēpistis, orbem lacteum,[52] nuncupātis.[53]"
. . .

25 Et ille, "Tū vērō . . . sīc habētō[54] nōn esse tē mortālem, sed corpus hoc[55]; nec enim tuīs[56] es quem fōrma ista dēclārat,[57] sed mēns cuiusque is est quisque, nōn ea figūra[58] quae digitō dēmōnstrārī potest. Deum tē igitur scītō[59] esse; sīquidem[60] deus est quī viget,[61] quī sentit, quī meminit,[62] quī

[16] **ōsculor** (1), kiss
[17] **fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum,** weep
[18] **ut prīmum,** as soon as
[19] **flētus, -ūs,** *noun of* **fleō,** *n. 17 above*
[20] **re-primō (premō)**
[21] **quaesō, -ere,** *commonly exclamatory:* I beg you!, pray tell!, please
[22] **sānctus, -a, -um,** holy
[23] **moror** (1), delay, wait
[24] why not?
[25] **hūc,** *adv.,* to this place, here
[26] **properō** (1), hasten
[27] = that is not the way
[28] *order* = **is deus**
[29] **templum, -ī,** sacred area, temple
[30] **cuius . . . cōnspicis:** whose this temple is *or* to whom belongs this temple—everything which you behold. *Apparently, as he says* **hoc templum,** *he makes a sweeping gesture with his arm to indicate the universe and then adds* **omne quod cōnspicis** *to make this even clearer.* **cōnspiciō = aspiciō**
[31] **aditus, -ūs,** approach, entrance
[32] *abl. of accordance:* in accordance with this law, on this condition
[33] **generō** (1), create
[34] **tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum,** watch, protect. *Why subj.?*
[35] **globus, -ī,** sphere, globe
[36] *i.e.,* **hominibus**
[37] **Pūblius,** praenomen (*first name*) *of Africanus Minor*
[38] **re-tineō,** retain, preserve
[39] **iniussū,** *abl. as adv.,* without the command (of); *cp.* **iussū**
[40] **ille (animus)**
[41] **mūnus, -eris,** *n.,* duty, service
[42] **adsignō** (1), assign
[43] **dē-fugiō,** flee from, avoid
[44] **iūstitia, -ae,** justice (*cp.* **iūstus)**
[45] **colō, -ere, -uī, cultum,** cultivate, cherish
[46] **pietās, -tātis,** *f.,* loyalty, devotion
[47] important
[48] **propinquus, -ī,** relative
[49] *here* = surely
[50] **coetus, -ūs,** gathering, company
[51] **laxō** (1), set free
[52] **orbis (-is) lacteus (-ī),** *m.,* the Milky Way (orb), *which Cicero here says is a term received from the Greeks* **(ut ā Graīs,** *i.e.* **Graecīs, accēpistis),** *who called it* **galaxias kyklos** (= **lacteus orbis**); *cp. our word* galaxy.
[53] **nuncupō** (1) = **appellō**
[54] **habētō,** *fut. imper.,* you shall consider; consider
[55] *sc.* **esse mortāle**
[56] **tuīs,** to your (friends), *dat. depending on* **dēclārat**
[57] **dēclārō** (1) = *Eng.*
[58] = **fōrma**
[59] **scītō,** *another fut. imper.,* you shall know; know
[60] **sīquidem,** *conj.,* since
[61] **vigeō -ēre, -uī** be strong, be active
[62] **meminī, meminisse,** *defective, found only in perf. system,* remember

prōvidet, quī tam regit et moderātur[63] et movet id corpus cui praepositus
30 est[64] quam[65] hunc mundum ille prīnceps deus."[66] (**Cicero,** excerpts from *Somnium Scīpiōnis* 2ff. = *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 6.10 ff.)

9. ON CONTEMPT OF DEATH[1]

Sed quid[2] ducēs et prīncipēs nōminem[3] cum legiōnēs[4] scrībat Catō[5] saepe alacrēs[6] in eum locum profectās[7] unde reditūrās sē nōn arbitrārentur? Parī animō Lacedaemoniī[8] in Thermopylīs[9] occidērunt, in quōs[10] Simōnidēs:

Dīc, hospes,[11] Spartae[12] nōs tē[13] hīc vīdisse iacentīs,[14]
5 dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.[15]

Virōs commemorō.[16] Quālis[17] tandem Lacaena? Quae, cum fīlium in proelium mīsisset et interfectum[18] audīsset, "Idcircō,[19]" inquit, "genueram[20] ut esset quī[21] prō patriā mortem nōn dubitāret occumbere.[22]"

. . . Admoneor[23] ut aliquid etiam dē humātiōne[24] et sepultūrā[25] dīcen-
10 dum[26] exīstimem[27] . . . Sōcratēs, rogātus ā Critōne[28] quem ad modum sepelīrī[29] vellet, "Multam vērō," inquit, "operam,[30] amīcī, frūstrā[31] cōnsūmpsī. Critōnī enim nostrō nōn persuāsī mē hinc āvolātūrum,[32] neque meī[33] quicquam relictūrum[34] . . . Sed, mihi crēde, (Critō), nēmō mē vestrum,[35] cum hinc excesserō,[36] cōnsequētur.[37] . . .
15 Dūrior Diogenēs[38] Cynicus prōicī[39] sē iussit inhumātum.[40] Tum amīcī, "Volucribusne[41] et ferīs[42]?" "Minimē[43] vērō," inquit; "sed bacillum[44] prop-

[63] **moderor** (1), control
[64] **prae-pōnō,** put in charge of
[65] as
[66] *From the preceding cl. sc.* **regit,** *etc. as vbs.*

9

[1] *If death is such a great evil, how can the following attitudes be explained?*
[2] **quid,** *as adv.,* why? (= **cūr?**)
[3] **nōminō** (1), name, mention (*cp.* **nōmen**)
[4] **legiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* legion
[5] **Catō, -ōnis,** *m.,* Cato, *the famous censor, who wrote a now-lost history of Rome called the Origines.*
[6] **alacer, -cris, -cre,** eager, happy. *We should use an adv. instead of a predicate adj.:* eagerly
[7] **profectās (esse); reditūrās (esse)**
[8] **Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum,** *m.,* Spartans
[9] **Thermopylae, -ārum;** *480* B.C.
[10] on whom Simonides (wrote); *Simonides a sixth-century Greek poet famous especially for his poems and epigrams in the elegiac couplet.*
[11] **hospes, -itis,** *m.,* stranger
[12] **Sparta, -ae,** *f.,* **Spartae,** *dat. depending on* **dīc**
[13] **tē vīdisse nōs**
[14] = **iacentēs**
[15] **ob-sequor** + *dat.,* obey
[16] **commemorō** (1), call to mind mention (*cp.* **memoria**)
[17] What kind of person, then, was the Spartan woman? **quālis, -e,** what kind of
[18] **(eum) interfectum (esse)**
[19] **idcircō,** *adv.,* for that reason
[20] **gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum,** beget (*cp.* generate), bear
[21] (the kind of person) who
[22] **occumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum,** meet
[23] **ad-moneō** = **moneō,** remind
[24] **humātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* burial (*cp.* **humus,** earth)
[25] **sepultūra, -ae,** funeral (*cp.* sepulchre)
[26] **dīcendum (esse)**
[27] **exīstimō** (1), think
[28] **Critō, -ōnis,** *m.,* Crito, *a friend of Socrates*
[29] **sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultum,** bury
[30] **opera, -ae,** effort, pains
[31] **frūstrā,** *adv.,* in vain (*cp.* frustrate)
[32] **ā-volō** (1); **avolātūrum (esse)**, *inf. in ind. state. with* **persuāsī**
[33] **meī,** *gen. of* **ego,** *depending on* **quicquam.**
[34] **relictūrum (esse)**
[35] *gen. of* **vōs**
[36] **ex-cēdō,** *cp.* **discēdō**
[37] **cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum,** overtake, catch
[38] *Diogenes, the Cynic philosopher, famed for his asceticism and independence*
[39] **prō-iciō (iaciō),** throw out
[40] **inhumātus, -a, -um,** unburied
[41] **volucris, -is,** *f.,* bird
[42] **fera, -ae,** wild beast; *dat. with* **prōicī** *understood*
[43] **minimē,** *adv.,* no, not at all
[44] **bacillum, -ī,** staff (*cp.* **bacillus,** *a New Latin form*)

ter[45] mē, quō abigam,[46] pōnitōte.[47]" "Quī[48] poteris?" illī; "nōn enim sentiēs." "Quid igitur mihi ferārum laniātus[49] oberit[50] nihil sentientī[51]?" (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.42.101–43.104, excerpts)

10. LITERATURE: ITS VALUE AND DELIGHT[1]

Quaerēs ā nōbīs, Grattī, cūr tantō opere[2] hōc homine dēlectēmur.[3] Quia[4] suppeditat[5] nōbīs ubi[6] et animus ex hōc forēnsī[7] strepitū[8] reficiātur[9] et aurēs conviciō[10] dēfessae[11] conquiēscant[12] . . . Quārē quis tandem mē reprehendat,[13] aut quis mihi iūrē[14] suscēnseat,[15] sī,[16] quantum[17] cēterīs ad suās rēs
5 obeundās[18] quantum ad fēstōs[19] diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs,[20] quantum ad aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem[21] animī et corporis concēditur[22] temporum, quantum aliī tribuunt[23] tempestīvīs[24] convīviīs,[25] quantum dēnique alveolō,[26] quantum pilae,[27] tantum[28] mihi egomet[29] ad haec studia recolenda[30] sūmpserō[31]? Atque hoc ideō[32] mihi concēdendum est magis quod ex
10 hīs studiīs haec quoque crēscit ōrātiō et facultās,[33] quae, quantacumque[34] est in mē, numquam amīcōrum perīculīs dēfuit[35] . . .

Plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum[36]

[45] *here* = near
[46] **abigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum,** drive away; *sc.* **volucrēs et ferās.** *Why subj.?*
[47] *fut. imperative* = you shall put
[48] **quī,** *adv.,* how?
[49] **laniātus, -ūs,** lacerating
[50] **obsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus,** be against, hurt. *Why does* **oberit** *have the dat.* **mihi**?
[51] **sentientī** *modifies* **mihi** *and has* **nihil** *as its obj.*

10

[1] *In the course of a speech defending the citizenship of the poet Archias against the charges of a certain Grattius, Cicero pronounced one of the world's finest encomiums on the inestimable value and delight of literature.*
[2] **tantō opere,** so greatly (*cp.* **magnopere**)
[3] **homine,** *the poet Archias.*
[4] **quia,** *conj.,* because
[5] **suppeditō** (1), supply
[6] the means by which
[7] **forēnsis, -e,** of the forum. *By Cicero's time the Forum was primarily the political and legal center of Rome.*
[8] **strepitus, -ūs,** din
[9] **re-ficiō,** refresh, revive
[10] **convīcium, -iī,** wrangling
[11] **dēfessus, -a, -um,** exhausted
[12] **conquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,** find rest
[13] **reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum,** censure; **reprehendat,** *deliberative, or dubitative, subj. The deliberative subj. is used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or impossibility.* **Quis mē reprehendat:** who is to blame me (I wonder)?
[14] **iūre** = **cum iūre,** *abl. of manner that has virtually become an adv.:* rightly
[15] **suscēnseō, -ēre, -uī,** be incensed, + *dat.*
[16] **sī** *introduces* **sūmpserō.** *The only real difficulty with this complex cl. is the involvement of the* **quantum** *cls. Although these cls. should be read and understood in the order in which they stand, the following outline may prove a welcome guide.* **Quis mē reprehendat . . . sī ego tantum temporum ad haec studia sūmpserō quantum temporum cēterīs ad suās rēs (fēstōs diēs, voluptātēs,** *etc.*) **concēditur, quantum temporum aliī tribuunt convīviīs (alveolō pilae)?**
[17] **quantum (temporum)**
[18] **ob-eō,** attend to
[19] **fēstus, -a, -um,** festive
[20] **celebrō** (1), celebrate
[21] **requiēs, -ētis,** *acc.* **requiētem** *or* **requiem,** rest
[22] **concēdō,** grant, concede
[23] **tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum,** allot
[24] **tempestīvus, -a, -um,** timely; here = early, *beginning in the afternoon so as to be conveniently prolonged.*
[25] **convīvium, -iī,** banquet
[26] **alveolus, -ī,** gaming board
[27] **pila, -ae,** ball (*cp.* pill)
[28] **tantum (temporum) . . . quantum,** as much . . . as
[29] **ego-met,** *an emphatic form of* **ego**
[30] **re-colō, -ere, -uī, -cultum,** renew
[31] **sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,** take
[32] **ideō,** *adv.,* for this reason, therefore
[33] **facultās, -tātis,** *f.,* skill. *Combine with* **ōrātiō** *and translate:* this oratorical skill.
[34] **quantuscumque, -acumque, -umcumque,** however great
[35] **dē-sum,** be lacking
[36] **exemplum, -ī,** example; **exemplōrum** *also goes with* **plēnī** *and* **plēnae.**

vetustās[37]; quae iacērent in tenebrīs[38] omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen[39] accēderet. Quam multās nōbīs imāginēs[40]—nōn sōlum ad intuendum,[41]
15 vērum[42] etiam ad imitandum[43]—fortissimōrum virōrum expressās[44] scrīptōrēs et Graecī et Latīnī reliquērunt! Quās ego mihi semper in administrandā[45] rē pūblicā prōpōnēns[46] animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōne[47] hominum excellentium[48] cōnfōrmābam.[49]

Quaeret quispiam,[50] "Quid? illī ipsī summī virī quōrum virtūtēs litterīs
20 prōditae sunt,[51] istāne doctrīnā[52] quam tū effers[53] laudibus ērudītī fuērunt[54]?" Difficile est hoc dē omnibus cōnfīrmāre,[55] sed tamen est certum quid respondeam . . . : saepius ad laudem atque virtūtem nātūram sine doctrīnā quam sine nātūrā valuisse[56] doctrīnam. Atque īdem[57] ego contendō,[58] cum ad nātūram eximiam[59] et illūstrem[60] accesserit[61] ratiō quaedam cōnfōrmātiōque[62]
25 doctrīnae, tum illud nesciō quid[63] praeclārum ac singulāre[64] solēre exsistere[65] . . .

Quod sī nōn hic tantus frūctus ostenderētur, et sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac līberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae[66] neque temporum[67] sunt neque
30 aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscentiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōrnant, adversīs perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, peregrīnantur, rūsticantur. (**Cicero,** *Prō Archiā* 6.12–7.16, excerpts).

ANECDOTES FROM CICERO (11–15)

11. DEATH OF A PUPPY (EXAMPLE OF AN OMEN)

L. Paulus[1] cōnsul iterum, cum eī[2] bellum[3] ut cum rēge Perse[4] gereret[5]

[37] **vetustās, -tātis,** *f.*, antiquity
[38] **tenebrae, -ārum,** darkness
[39] **lūmen, -inis,** *n.*, light
[40] **imāgō, -ginis,** *f.*, portrait, picture
[41] **intueor,** gaze on, contemplate
[42] **vērum,** *conj.*, but
[43] **imitor** (1), imitate
[44] **ex-primō (premō),** describe, portray
[45] **administrō** (1), manage
[46] **prō-pōnō,** put forward, set before; **prōpōnēns** *has* **quās** *as direct obj. and* **mihi** *as indirect obj.*
[47] **cōgitātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, thought; *cp.* **cōgitō**
[48] **excellēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** superior, remarkable
[49] **cōnfōrmō** (1), mold
[50] **quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam,** someone
[51] **prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** transmit, reveal
[52] **doctrīna, -ae,** instruction
[53] **efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum,** lift up, extol
[54] **ērudiō** (4), educate, train
[55] **cōnfīrmō** (1), assert
[56] **valuisse ad laudem,** to be powerful toward praise = to have led to praise; *inf. in ind. state.*
[57] **idem ego,** I the same person = I also
[58] maintain
[59] **eximius, -a, -um,** extraordinary
[60] **illustris, -e,** noble, brilliant
[61] **accēdō** *here* = be added
[62] **cōnfōrmātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, molding, shaping
[63] **nesciō quis, nesciō quid,** *indef. pron., lit.* I know not who/what = some (uncertain) person *or* thing; *the* **nesciō** *remains unchanged in this phrase.*
[64] **singulāris, -e,** unique, extraordinary
[65] **exsistō, -ere, -stitī,** arise, appear, exist
[66] **cēterae (remissiōnēs** or **dēlectātiōnēs)**
[67] *gen. of possession used in predicate = predicate gen.; sc.* **omnium** *with each gen.*: the other delights do not belong to all times . . .

11

[1] *L. Aemilius Paulus Macedonicus was the father of Scipio Africanus Minor. As consul in 168* B.C. *he brought the war with Macedonia to a successful conclusion by the defeat of the Macedonian King, Perseus. This explains why, before setting out against Perseus, he interpreted the chance words* **Persa periit** *as a favorable omen. The Romans believed seriously in the importance of omens.*
[2] *dat. with* **obtigisset**
[3] *obj. of* **gereret**
[4] **Perseus, -eī; Perse** *abl.*
[5] **ut . . . gereret,** *noun cl. subject of* **obtigisset**

obtigisset,[6] ut eā ipsā diē domum ad vesperum rediit, fīliolam[7] suam Tertiam,[8] quae tum erat admodum[9] parva, ōsculāns[10] animadvertit[11] trīsticulam.[12] "Quid est,[13]" inquit, "mea Tertia? Quid[14] trīstis es?" "Mī pater," inquit, "Persa[15] periit." Tum ille artius[16] puellam complexus,[17] "Accipiō," inquit, "mea fīlia, ōmen.[18]" Erat autem mortuus catellus[19] eō nōmine. **(Cicero,** *Dē Dīvīnātiōne* 1.46.103)

12. TOO CONSCIENTIOUS (AN EXAMPLE OF IRONY)

Est huic fīnitimum[1] dissimulātiōnī[2] cum honestō[3] verbō vitiōsa[4] rēs appellātur: ut cum Āfricānus cēnsor[5] tribū[6] movēbat eum centuriōnem[7] quī in Paulī pugnā[8] nōn adfuerat,[9] cum ille sē custōdiae causā dīceret in castrīs[10] remānsisse quaereretque cūr ab eō notārētur[11]: "Nōn amō," inquit, "nimium dīligentēs." **(Cicero,** *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.67.272)

13. QUAM MULTA NŌN DĒSĪDERŌ!

Sōcratēs, in pompā[1] cum magna vīs[2] aurī[3] argentīque[4] ferrētur, "Quam multa nōn dēsīderō!" inquit.

Xenocratēs,[5] cum lēgātī ab Alexandrō[6] quīnquāgintā[7] eī talenta[8] attulissent (quae erat pecūnia temporibus illīs, Athēnīs praesertim,[9] maxima), abdūxit lēgātōs ad cēnam in Acadēmīam[10]; iīs apposuit[11] tantum quod satis esset, nūllō apparātū.[12] Cum postrīdiē[13] rogārent eum cui numerārī[14] iubēret,

[6] **obtingō, -ere, -tigī,** touch, fall to one's lot
[7] **fīli (a)** *with the diminutive ending* **-ola,** little daughter
[8] **Tertia,** *a name meaning* third. *The Romans often used ordinal numerals as names, though commonly without strict regard to the number of children they had; e.g.,* **Secundus, Quīntus, Sextus, Decimus.**
[9] **admodum,** *adv.,* very
[10] **ōsculor** (1), kiss
[11] **anim-ad-vertō,** turn the mind to, notice, observe
[12] **trīsticulus, -a, -um,** rather sad, *diminutive of* **tristis**
[13] What is it? What is the matter?
[14] **quid** = **cūr**
[15] **Persa,** *the name of her pet*
[16] **artius,** *adv.,* closely
[17] **complector, -ī, -plexus sum,** embrace
[18] **ōmen, -inis,** *n.,* omen, sign; *i.e., the omen of his victory over Perseus*
[19] **catellus, -ī,** puppy

12

[1] **fīnitimus, -a, -um,** neighboring; akin to: **est fīnitinum,** it is akin to
[2] **dissimulātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* irony
[3] **honestus, -a, -um,** honorable, fine
[4] **vitiōsus, -a, -um,** faulty, bad
[5] **cēnsor, -ōris,** *m.,* censor, *Roman magistrate among whose duties was the assigning of citizens to their proper rank according to their property and service and the removal of names from the census rolls when citizens proved unworthy of citizenship.*
[6] **tribus, -ūs,** *f.,* tribe, *a political division of the Roman people*
[7] **centuriō, -ōnis,** *m.,* centurion
[8] **pugna, -ae,** battle
[9] **ad-sum,** be present
[10] **castra, -ōrum,** camp
[11] **notō** (1), mark, *here with the* **nota cēnsōria** *placed opposite a citizen's name to indicate his removal from the citizen list in disgrace.*

13

[1] **pompa, -ae,** parade
[2] **vīs** here = quantity (*cp.* **cōpia**)
[3] **aurum, -ī,** gold
[4] **argentum, -ī,** silver
[5] **Xenocratēs, -is,** *pupil of Plato and later head of the Academy*
[6] **Alexander, -drī**
[7] *indecl. adj.,* fifty
[8] **talentum, -ī,** a talent, a large sum of money
[9] **praesertim,** *adv.,* especially
[10] **Acadēmīa, -ae,** the Academy, *a gymnasium in a grove just outside of Athens. Here Plato established his school, which might be called the first European university.*
[11] **ap-pōnō,** place near, serve
[12] **apparātus, -ūs,** equipment, splendor
[13] **postrīdiē,** *adv.,* on the next day
[14] **numerō** (1), count, pay out; *sc.* **pecūniam** *as subject of* **numerārī**

"Quid? Vōs hesternā,[15]" inquit, "cēnulā[16] nōn intellēxistis mē pecūniā nōn egēre?" Quōs cum trīstiōrēs vīdisset, trīgintā[17] minās[18] accēpit nē aspernārī[19] rēgis līberālitātem[20] vidērētur.

10 At vērō Diogenēs[21] līberius,[22] ut[23] Cynicus, Alexandrō rogantī ut dīceret sī quid opus[24] esset: "Nunc quidem paululum,[25]" inquit, "ā sōle.[26]" Offēcerat[27] vidēlicet[28] aprīcantī.[29] (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.32.91–92)

14. WHAT MAKES A GOOD APPETITE

Dārēus[1] in fugā[2] cum aquam turbidam[3] et cadāveribus[4] inquinātam[5] bibisset, negāvit umquam sē bibisse iūcundius. Numquam vidēlicet sitiēns[6] biberat. Nec ēsuriēns[7] Ptolemaeus[8] ēderat,[9] cui cum peragrantī[10] Aegyptum,[11] comitibus[12] nōn cōnsecūtīs[13] cibārius[14] in casā pānis datus esset, nihil 5 vīsum est illō pāne iūcundius. Sōcratem ferunt,[15] cum ūsque ad vesperum contentius[16] ambulāret quaesītumque esset[17] ex eō quārē id faceret, respondisse sē, quō[18] melius cēnāret, obsōnāre[19] ambulandō famem.[20]

Quid? Vīctum[21] Lacedaemoniōrum in philitiīs[22] nōnne vidēmus? Ubi[23] cum tyrannus cēnāvisset Dionȳsius, negāvit sē iūre[24] illō nigrō quod cēnae[25] 10 caput erat dēlectātum.[26] Tum is quī illa coxerat,[27] "Minimē mīrum[28]; condīmenta[29] enim dēfuērunt.[30]" "Quae tandem?" inquit ille. "Labor in vēnātū,[31] sūdor,[32] cursus ad Eurōtam,[33] famēs, sitis.[34] Hīs enim rēbus Lacedaemoniōrum epulae[35] condiuntur.[36]"

[15] **hesternus, -a, -um,** of yesterday
[16] **cēnula, -ae,** diminutive of **cēna**
[17] *indecl. adj.*, thirty
[18] **mina, -ae,** a Greek coin
[19] **aspernor** (1), spurn, despise
[20] **līberālitās, -tātis,** *f.*, generosity
[21] *L.I. 9 n. 38*
[22] **līberius,** *adv.*, freely, boldly
[23] as a Cynic, being a Cynic
[24] **opus** (*indecl.*) **est,** is necessary: if he needed anything
[25] **paululum,** *adv.*, a little
[26] *i.e.*, you are blocking my sunlight
[27] **officiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** + *dat.*, be in the way, obstruct
[28] **vidē-licet,** *adv.* (you may see), clearly, evidently
[29] **aprīcor** (1), sun oneself

14

[1] *Darius III, defeated by Alexander the Great in 331* B.C. *The spelling* **Dārīus** *reflects later Greek pronunciation.*
[2] **fuga, -ae,** flight
[3] **turbidus, -a, -um,** turbid, roiled
[4] **cadāver, -eris,** *n.*, corpse (*cp.* cadaverous)
[5] **inquinātus, -a, -um,** polluted
[6] **sitiō** (4), be thirsty
[7] **ēsuriō** (4), be hungry
[8] *Which Egyptian king of this name is unknown.*
[9] **edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum,** eat (*cp.* edible)
[10] **per-agrō** (1), wander through
[11] **Aegyptus, -ī,** *f.*, Egypt
[12] **comes, -itis,** *m.*, companion
[13] **cōn-sequor**
[14] **cibārius . . . pānis,** ordinary (coarse) bread; **pānis, -is,** *m.*
[15] **ferō** *here* = report, say
[16] **contentē,** strenuously, *adv. from* **contendō,** struggle
[17] it had been asked of him, he had been asked
[18] **quō,** *regularly used instead of* **ut** *to introduce a purp. containing a compar.*
[19] **obsōnō** (1), buy provisions, *here* = provide (an appetite)
[20] **famēs, -is,** *f.*, hunger
[21] **vīctus, -ūs,** living, mode of living, food
[22] **philitia, -ōrum,** public meals (*for Spartan citizens of military age*)
[23] **ubi** = *among the Lacedaemonians*
[24] **iūs, iūris,** *n.*, soup
[25] *dat. of purp.* (*S.S.*)
[26] **dēlectātum (esse)**
[27] **coquō, -ere, coxī, coctum,** cook (*cp.* concoct)
[28] **mīrus, -a, -um,** wonderful, surprising
[29] **condīmentum, -ī,** seasoning, condiment
[30] **dē-sum,** be lacking
[31] **vēnātus, -ūs,** hunting
[32] **sūdor, -ōris,** *m.*, sweat
[33] at the Eurotas (**Eurōtās, -ae,** *m., river on which Sparta was located*)
[34] **sitis, -is,** *f.*, thirst
[35] **epulae, -ārum,** banquet
[36] **condiō** (4), season, spice

Cōnfer sūdantēs,[37] ructantēs,[38] refertōs[39] epulīs tamquam opīmōs
15 bovēs.[40] Tum intellegēs quī voluptātem maximē sequantur, eōs minimē cōnsequī[41]; iūcunditātemque[42] vīctūs[43] esse in dēsīderiō,[44] nōn in satietāte.[45] (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.34.97–98 and 100, excerpts)

15. THEMISTOCLES; FAME AND EXPEDIENCY

Themistoclēs fertur[1] Serīphiō[2] cuidam in iūrgiō[3] respondisse, cum ille dīxisset nōn eum suā sed patriae glōriā splendōrem[4] assecūtum[5]: "Nec hercule,[6]" inquit, "sī ego Serīphius essem, nec tū, sī Athēniēnsis[7] essēs, clārus umquam fuissēs." (**Cicero,** *Dē Senectūte,* 3.8)

5 Themistoclēs, post victōriam eius bellī quod cum Persīs[8] fuit, dīxit in cōntiōne[9] sē habēre cōnsilium reī pūblicae salūtāre,[10] sed id scīrī nōn opus esse.[11] Postulāvit[12] ut aliquem populus daret quīcum[13] commūnicāret.[14] Datus est Aristīdēs. Huic[15] ille (dixit) classem[16] Lacedaemoniōrum, quae subducta esset[17] ad Gythēum,[18] clam[19] incendī[20] posse, quō factō frangī[21] Lace-
10 daemoniōrum opēs necesse esset.[22] Quod Aristīdēs cum audīsset, in cōntiōnem magnā exspectātiōne[23] vēnit dīxitque perūtile[24] esse cōnsilium quod Themistoclēs adferret, sed minimē honestum. Itaque Athēniēnsēs, quod honestum nōn esset, id nē ūtile quidem putāvērunt, tōtamque eam rem, quam nē audierant quidem, auctōre Aristīde[25] repudiāvērunt.[26] (**Cicero,** *Dē Officiīs* 3.11.48–49)

16. GET THE TUSCULAN COUNTRY HOUSE READY[1]

Tullius[2] S.D.[3] Terentiae[4] Suae

[37] **sūdō** (1), sweat
[38] **ructō** (1), belch
[39] **refertus, -a, -um,** stuffed, crammed, + *abl.*
[40] **opīmus, -a, -um,** fertile, fat; **bōs, bovis,** *m.*, ox
[41] **cōn-sequor,** follow up, gain
[42] **iūcunditās, -tātis,** *f.*, pleasure, charm
[43] *n. 21 above; here* = food
[44] **dēsīderium, -iī,** desire
[45] **satietās, -tātis,** *f.*, abundance, satisfy

15

(*For more about Themistocles and Aristides see selections 19 and 20 below.*)
[1] is said, is reported
[2] **Serīphius, -iī,** *inhabitant of Seriphos, a small island in the Aegean Sea.*
[3] **iūrgium, -iī,** quarrel
[4] **splendor, -ōris,** *m.*, distinction, honor
[5] **as-sequor** = **ad-sequor,** gain, attain
[6] **hercule,** *a mild oath,* by Hercules
[7] **Athēniēnsis, -e,** Athenian
[8] **Persae, -ārum,** *m.*, the Persians
[9] **cōntiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, assembly
[10] **salūtāris, -e,** salutary, advantageous; *modifies* **cōnsilium**
[11] **opus est,** it is necessary
[12] **postulō** (1), demand, request
[13] **quīcum, quī** = *old abl. form* + **cum,** with whom
[14] **commūnicō** (1), communicate, share
[15] **huic** = *the last mentioned, Aristides*
[16] **classis, -is,** *f.*, fleet
[17] **sub-dūcō,** beach; *subj. because subordinate cl. in ind. state. (see S.S.). Because of their shallow draft and small size, ancient ships were more often beached than anchored.*
[18] **Gythēum, -ī,** *the port of Sparta*
[19] **clam,** *adv.*, secretly
[20] **incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum,** set on fire, burn
[21] **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break, crush
[22] **necesse** (*indecl. adj.*) **est,** it is necessary
[23] **exspectātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, expectation, *abl. of attendant circumstance*
[24] **per-ūtilis, -e,** very useful, advantageous
[25] **auctōre Aristīde,** *abl. abs.*
[26] **repudiō** (1), reject

16

[1] *A homely little letter which serves as an antidote to Cicero's usually lofty concerns.*
[2] **(Mārcus) Tullius (Cicerō)**
[3] **salūtem dīcit**
[4] **Terentia, -ae,** wife of Cicero

In Tusculānum[5] nōs ventūrōs[6] putāmus aut Nōnīs[7] aut postrīdiē.[8] Ibi ut[9] sint omnia parāta. Plūrēs[10] enim fortasse[11] nōbīscum erunt et, ut arbitror, diūtius ibi commorābimur.[12] Lābrum[13] sī in balneō[14] nōn est, ut[15] sit; item[16] 5 cētera quae sunt ad vīctum et ad valētūdinem[17] necessāria.[18] Valē. Kal. Oct.[19] dē Venusīnō.[20] (**Cicero,** *Epistulae ad Familiārēs* 14.20)

17. LIVY ON THE DEATH OF CICERO[1]

M. Cicerō sub adventum[2] triumvirōrum[3] cesserat urbe . . . Prīmō in Tusculānum[4] fūgit; inde trānsversīs[5] itineribus in Formiānum,[6] ut ab Caiētā[7] nāvem cōnscēnsūrus,[8] proficīscitur. Unde aliquotiēns[9] in altum[10] provectum,[11] cum modo ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem[12] nā- 5 vis . . . patī nōn posset, taedium[13] tandem eum et fugae[14] et vītae cēpit, regressusque[15] ad superiōrem vīllam . . . "Moriar," inquit, "in patriā saepe servātā." Satis cōnstat[16] servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmicandum,[17] ipsum dēpōnī lectīcam[18] et quiētōs[19] patī quod sors[20] inīqua[21] cōgeret iussisse. Prōminentī[22] ex lectīcā praebentīque immōtam cervīcem[23] caput 10 praecīsum est.[24]

Manūs quoque, scrīpsisse in Antōnium aliquid exprobrantēs,[25] praecīdērunt. Ita relātum caput ad Antōnium, iussūque eius inter duās manūs in Rōstrīs positum,[26] ubi ille cōnsul, ubi saepe cōnsulāris,[27] ubi eō ipsō annō

[5] **Tusculānum, -ī,** Tusculan estate (**praedium**) *southeast of Rome in Latium*
[6] **ventūrōs (esse)**
[7] **Nōnae, -ārum,** the Nones *were the seventh day in March, May, July, October; the fifth day in other months.*
[8] **postrīdiē,** *adv.*, the day after
[9] **(cūrā) ut,** take care that
[10] **plūrēs,** several people
[11] **fortasse,** *adv.*, perhaps
[12] **com-moror** (1), remain
[13] **lābrum, -ī,** a wash basin or a bath
[14] **balneum, -ī,** bathroom
[15] **(cūrā) ut**
[16] **item,** *adv.*, likewise
[17] **valētūdō, -inis,** *f.*, health
[18] **necessārius, -a, -um** = *Eng.*
[19] **Kalendīs Octōbribus,** on the Kalends of October = October 1st
[20] *Sent from his estate at Venusia, in Apulia. The year is said to be 47* B.C.

17

[1] *In 43* B.C.
[2] **adventus, -ūs,** arrival
[3] **triumvirī, -ōrum,** commission of three men, *the second triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus*
[4] his Tusculan villa
[5] **trānsversus, -a, -um,** transverse, crosswise
[6] **Formiānum, -ī,** estate near Formiae, *which was nearly 100 miles south of Rome on the Appian Way near the sea*
[7] **Caiēta, -ae,** *a sea-coast town not far from Formiae*
[8] as he was going to board ship (**cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum,** ascend)
[9] **aliquotiēns,** *adv.*, several times
[10] **altum, -ī,** the deep, the sea
[11] **prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum,** carry forward; **provectum** (having sailed out) *goes with* **eum** *below*
[12] **iactātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, tossing
[13] **taedium, -iī,** weariness, disgust
[14] **fuga, -ae,** flight; **fugae** *depends on* **taedium**
[15] **regredior, -ī, -gressus sum,** go back
[16] **cōnstat,** it is agreed
[17] **dīmicō** (1), fight (to the finish)
[18] **lectīca, -ae,** litter
[19] **(eōs) quiētōs,** them quiet, *subject of* **patī;** *but we say:* them quietly. (**quiētus, -a, -um**)
[20] **sors, sortis,** *f.*, lot
[21] **inīquus, -a, -um,** unfavorable, unjust (**in-aequus**)
[22] **prōmineō, -ēre, -uī,** jut out, step forth: (**eī**) **prōminentī,** for him stepping forth = as he stepped forth, *dat. of ref. or interest*
[23] **cervīx, -vīcis,** *f.*, neck
[24] **praecīdō, -ere, -cīdī, cīsum (prae-caedō,** cut), cut off—*by the soldiers whom Antony had sent to execute Cicero in reprisal for Cicero's "Philippics" denouncing Antony. Such were the horrors of the proscriptions.*
[25] **exprobrō** (1), reproach, charge: (**mīlitēs**), **exprobrantēs (manūs) scrīpsisse aliquid, manūs praecīdērunt**
[26] **positum,** *sc.* **est**
[27] **cōnsulāris, -is,** *m.*, ex-consul

adversus[28] Antōnium . . . (quanta nūlla umquam hūmāna vōx[29]!) cum ad-
15 mīrātiōne[30] ēloquentiae[31] audītus fuerat. Vix attollentēs[32] prae lacrimīs oculōs, hominēs intuērī[33] trucīdāta[34] membra[35] eius poterant. Vīxit trēs et sexāgintā[36] annōs . . . Vir magnus, ācer, memorābilis[37] fuit, et in cuius laudēs persequendās[38] Cicerōne laudātōre opus[39] fuerit.[40] (**Livy** 120.50)

18. MILTIADES AND THE BATTLE OF MARATHON[1]

Eīsdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārēus, ex Asiā in Eurōpam[2] exercitū trāiectō,[3] Scythīs[4] bellum īnferre[5] dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcit in Histrō[6] flūmine, quā[7] cōpiās trādūceret.[8] Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset,[9] custōdēs[10] relīquit prīncipēs quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide[11] dūxerat; quibus singulārum[12] ur-
5 bium perpetua dederat imperia. Sīc enim facillimē putāvit sē[13] Graecā linguā loquentēs[14] quī Asiam incolerent[15] sub suā retentūrum[16] potestāte, sī amīcīs suīs oppida[17] tuenda[18] trādidisset.[19] In hōc[20] fuit tum numerō Miltiadēs.[21] Hic, cum crēbrī[22] adferrent nūntiī[23] male rem gerere Dārēum premīque ā Scythīs, hortātus est pontis custōdēs nē ā Fortūnā[24] datam occāsiō-
10 nem līberandae Graeciae dīmitterent.[25]
Nam sī cum eīs cōpiīs, quās sēcum trānsportārat,[26] interīsset Dārēus,

[28] **adversus,** *prep.* + *acc.,* against
[29] **quanta . . . vōx (fuerat),** how great no voice had been = greater than any voice had been
[30] **admīrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* = *Eng.*
[31] **ēloquentia, -ae,** *f.;* **ēloquentiae,** *obj. gen.* (*S.S.*)
[32] **attollō, -ere,** raise, lift
[33] **intueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum,** look at
[34] **trucīdō** (1), cut to pieces, butcher
[35] **membrum, -ī,** member (of the body), limb
[36] *indecl. adj.,* sixty
[37] **memorābilis, -e,** remarkable, memorable
[38] **per-sequor,** follow up, set forth
[39] **opus est** + *abl.* = there is need of (Cicero)
[40] **fuerit,** *perf. subj., potential subj.,* there would be need of

18

[1] *490 B.C., the first major battle of the Persian wars and one of the most illustrious victories in the apparently unending conflict between democracies and autocracies (despotisms): the relatively few Athenians, practically alone, against the hordes of the Persian autocracy.*
[2] **Eurōpa, -ae,** Europe
[3] **trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,** transfer
[4] **Scythae, -ārum,** *m.,* the Scythians, *a nomadic people of southeastern Europe;* **Scythīs,** *dat. with compound vbs.*
[5] **bellum īn-ferō (-ferre, -tulī, -lātus),** make war upon, + *dat.*
[6] **Hister, -trī,** the Danube
[7] **quā,** *rel. adv. instead of rel. pron.,* where, by which, *referring to* **pontem**
[8] **trā (= trāns)-dūcō.** *Why the subj. in the rel. cl.?*
[9] **ab-sum,** be away, be absent; **abesset,** *subj. of implied ind. state., the thought in his mind being:* "while I shall be away"
[10] as guards
[11] Ionia and Aeolis, *Greek sections of Asia Minor*
[12] **singulī, -ae, -a** (*pl.*), separate, one each
[13] **sē,** *acc., subject of* **retentūrum (esse)**
[14] the Greek-speaking peoples, *obj. of* **retentūrum**
[15] **incolō, -ere, -uī,** inhabit
[16] **retentūrum (esse); re-tineō**
[17] **oppidum, -ī,** town; *occasionally* city
[18] **tuenda,** (the towns) to be protected = the protection of the towns (**tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum,** look at, protect)
[19] *fut. more vivid condition in ind. state.:* **eōs retinēbō sī amīcīs oppida trādiderō.**
[20] **hōc** *modifies* **numerō.** *Note carefully that a characteristic of Nepos' style is the fondness for separating modifiers from the words which they modify. Be sure to match up such separated words accurately according to the rules of agreement.*
[21] **Miltiadēs, -is,** *m.,* Miltiades, *Athenian general, hero of Marathon, who many years before the Battle of Marathon had been sent by the Athenians to rule over the Thracian Chersonesus, a peninsula west of the Hellespont.*
[22] **crēber, -bra, -brum,** numerous
[23] **nūntius, -iī,** messenger
[24] **Fortūna** *is here regarded as a person (deity). Why is* **ā** *used?*
[25] **dī-mittō,** let go, lose
[26] **trānsportō** (1), transport, take across; **trānsportārat = trānsportāverat**

nōn sōlum Eurōpam fore[27] tūtam,[28] sed etiam eōs quī Asiam incolerent Graecī genere[29] līberōs ā Persārum futūrōs dominātiōne[30] et perīculō. Id facile efficī[31] posse[32]; ponte enim rescissō[33] rēgem vel[34] hostium ferrō vel ino-
15 piā[35] paucīs diēbus interitūrum. Ad hoc cōnsilium cum plērīque[36] accēderent, Histiaeus[37] Mīlēsius . . . [dīxit] adeō[38] sē abhorrēre[39] ā cēterōrum cōnsiliō ut nihil putet ipsīs ūtilius quam cōnfirmārī[40] rēgnum[41] Persārum. Huius cum sententiam plūrimī essent secūtī, Miltiadēs . . . Chersonēsum relīquit ac rūrsus[42] Athēnās dēmigrāvit.[43] Cuius[44] ratiō etsī nōn valuit, tamen
20 magnopere est laudanda cum amīcior omnium libertātī quam suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Dārēus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redīsset, hortantibus amicīs ut Graeciam redigeret[45] in suam potestātem, classem quīngentārum[46] nāvium comparāvit[47] eīque[48] Dātim praefēcit[49] et Artaphernem,[50] eīsque ducenta[51]
25 (mīlia) peditum,[52] decem equitum[53] mīlia dedit—causam interserēns[54] sē hostem esse Athēniēnsibus quod eōrum auxiliō Iōnes[55] Sardīs[56] expugnāssent[57] suaque[58] praesidia interfēcissent. Illī praefectī[59] rēgiī,[60] classe ad Euboeam[61] appulsā[62] celeriter Eretriam[63] cēpērunt, omnēsque eius gentis cīvēs abreptōs[64] in Asiam ad rēgem mīsērunt. Inde[65] ad Atticam[66] accessērunt ac
30 suās cōpiās in campum[67] Marathōna[68] dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō circiter[69] mīlia passuum[70] decem.

Hōc tumultū[71] Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō[72] tamque magnō permōtī[73]

[27] *ind. state. depending on the idea of saying in* **hortātus est** *of the preceding sent.; direct form:* **sī Dārēus interierit, Eurōpa erit tūta. inter-eō,** perish
[28] **tūtus, -a, -um**
[29] *abl. of specification* (*S.S.*), Greek in race *or* by race
[30] **dominātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* = *Eng.*
[31] **ef-ficiō,** accomplish
[32] *still ind. state.*
[33] **rescindō, -ere, rescidī, rescissum,** cut down
[34] **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or
[35] **inopia, -ae,** need, privation
[36] **plērīque, -ōrumque,** most people, very many (**plērusque, -aque, -umque,** the greater part, very many)
[37] **Histiaeus, -ī,** *tyrant of Miletus in Asia Minor*
[38] **adeō,** *adv.*, so, to such a degree
[39] **ab-horreō, -ēre, -uī,** shrink from, be averse to
[40] **cōnfīrmō** (1), strengthen
[41] *subject of* **cōnfīrmārī**
[42] **rūrsus,** *adv.*, again
[43] **dēmigrō** (1), depart (*cp.* migrate)
[44] *conjunctive use of rel.*
[45] **redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum,** reduce
[46] **quīngentī, -ae, -a,** 500
[47] **comparāvit** *here = strong form of* **parāvit**
[48] **eī** (= **classī**), *dat. with compounds*
[49] **prae-ficio,** + *dat.*, put in charge *or* command of
[50] **Dātis, -tidis,** *acc.* **Dātim,** Datis, *a general;* **Artaphernēs, -is,** Artaphernes, *nephew of Darius*
[51] **ducentī, -ae, -a,** 200
[52] **pedes, -itis,** *m.*, foot-soldier
[53] **eques, -itis,** *m.*, horseman
[54] **interserō, -ere,** allege
[55] **Iōnes, -um,** *m.*, the Ionians, *a Greek people inhabiting the central western coast of Asia Minor;* **-es,** *Greek ending*
[56] **Sardēs, -ium,** *acc.* **Sardīs,** Sardis, *capital of the Persian province of Lydia in western Asia Minor*
[57] **expugnō** (1), take by storm
[58] **sua,** *refers to Sardis*
[59] **praefectus, -ī,** commander, deputy
[60] **rēgius, -a, -um,** royal
[61] **Euboea, -ae,** Euboea, *a large island off the eastern shore of central Greece*
[62] **appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,** drive, bring to land
[63] **Eretria, -ae,** Eretria, *a city of the western central coast of Euboea*
[64] **ab-ripiō** = **ēripiō; abreptōs . . . mīsērunt,** they carried away and sent to
[65] **inde,** *adv.*, from that place
[66] **Attica, -ae,** Attica, *district in central Greece of which the capital was Athens* (*somewhat unusually called an* **oppidum** *in the next sentence*)
[67] **campus, -ī,** field, plain
[68] **Marathōn, -ōnis,** *acc.* **-ōna,** *f.*, Marathon
[69] **circiter,** *adv.*, about
[70] **passus, -ūs,** pace (ca. 5′); **mīlia passuum,** thousands of paces = miles
[71] **tumultus, -ūs,** disturbance, uprising
[72] **propinquus, -a, -um,** near, neighboring
[73] **per-moveō,** move thoroughly, trouble

auxilium nūsquam[74] nisi ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt Phīdippumque,[75] cursōrem eius generis quī hēmerodromoe[76] vocantur, Lacedaemonem[77] mīsērunt ut nūntiāret quam celerrimō opus esse[78] auxiliō. Domī autem creant[79] decem praetōrēs,[80] quī exercituī praeessent,[81] in eīs Miltiadem; inter quōs magna fuit contentiō[82] utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam[83] īrent hostibus aciēque[84] dēcernerent. Ūnus[85] Miltiadēs maximē nītēbātur[86] ut prīmō tempore castra fierent[87] . . .

Hōc tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō[88] fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs[89]; ea mīlle mīsit mīlitum.[90] Itaque hōrum adventū[91] decem mīlia armātōrum[92] complēta sunt,[93] quae manus mīrābilī[94] flagrābat[95] pugnandī cupiditāte; quō[96] factum est[97] ut plūs quam collēgae[98] Miltiadēs valēret.[99]

Eius ergō auctōritāte impulsī[100] Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxērunt locōque[101] idōneō castra fēcērunt. Dein[102] posterō[103] diē sub montis rādīcibus[104] aciē regiōne[105] īnstrūctā[106] nōn apertissimā[107]—namque[108] arborēs multīs locīs erant rārae[109]—proelium commīsērunt[110] hōc cōnsiliō ut et montium altitūdine[111] tegerentur[112] et arborum tractū[113] equitātus[114] hostium impedīrētur, nē multitūdine[115] clauderentur.[116] Dātis, etsī nōn aequum locum[117] vidēbat suīs, tamen frētus[118] numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnflīgere[119] cupiēbat, eōque[120] magis quod, priusquam[121] Lacedaemoniī subsidiō[122] venīrent, dīmi-

[74] **nūsquam,** *adv.*, nowhere

[75] **Phīdippus, -ī,** Phidippus, *an Athenian courier* (**cursor, -ōris,** *m.*, runner)

[76] **hēmerodromus, -ī (-dromoe,** *Gk. nom. pl.*), day runner (*Gk. word*), *professional runner. Herodotus says that Phidippus (or Phidippides) covered the 140 miles between Athens and Sparta in two days.* **Quī** *agrees with* **hēmerodromoe** *rather than* **generis** *since a rel. pron. agrees with a pred. noun rather than with the antecedent.*

[77] **Lacedaemōn, -onis,** *f.*, Lacedaemonia, Sparta

[78] **opus est** + *abl.* (*of means*), there is need of, *an impers. construction in which* **opus** *remains indecl.;* **opus esse,** *inf. in ind. state. with* **auxiliō** *in abl.*

[79] **creant,** *historical pres.*

[80] **praetor, -ōris,** *m.*, *called* **stratēgoi,** generals, *by the Athenians*

[81] **prae-sum** + *dat.*, be in charge of; *why subj.?*

[82] **contentiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, controversy

[83] **obviam** (*adv.*) **īre** + *dat.*, go to meet

[84] **aciēs, -ēī,** line of battle

[85] alone, *i.e., of the ten generals*

[86] **nītor, -ī, nīxus sum,** strive labor

[87] that a camp should be made = to take the field

[88] *dat. of purp.* (*S.S.*)

[89] **Plataeēnsēs, -ium,** *m. pl.*, the men of Plataea, *a city in Boeotia just over the border from Attica*

[90] **mīlle** *here = a noun with gen. of whole* **mīlitum.** *This is regular with* **mīlia** *but uncommon with* **mīlle.**

[91] **adventus, -ūs,** approach

[92] **armātī, -ōrum,** armed men

[93] **compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** fill out, complete

[94] **mīrābilis, -e,** wonderful, extraordinary; *modifies* **cupiditāte**

[95] **flagrō** (1), burn, be excited

[96] because of which = and because of this

[97] it happened that

[98] **collēga, -ae,** *m.*, colleague

[99] **plūs . . . valēret,** he had power more than = he had more power or influence than, he prevailed over. **valēret,** *why subj.?*

[100] **impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,** impel

[101] **locō,** *place where, no prep. necessary with* **locō**

[102] **dein = deinde**

[103] **posterus, -a, -um,** next following

[104] **rādīx, -īcis,** *f.*, root, base

[105] **regiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, region

[106] **īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum,** draw up (battle line)

[107] *interlocked word order:* **aciē īnstrūctā** (*in*) **regiōne nōn apertissimā; apertus, -a, -um,** open

[108] **namque,** *conj.*, *more emphatic form of* **nam**

[109] **rārus, -a, -um,** scattered: there were scattered trees

[110] **proelium committere,** join battle

[111] **altitūdō, -inis,** *f.*, height

[112] **tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum,** cover, protect

[113] **tractus, -ūs,** dragging

[114] **equitātus, -ūs,** cavalry

[115] **multitūdō, -inis,** *f.*, large number

[116] **claudō,** *here* enclose, surround

[117] **locum (esse) nōn aequum suīs**

[118] **frētus, -a, -um,** + *abl.*, relying on

[119] **cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum,** fight (*cp.* conflict)

[120] **eō,** *adv.*, on that account

[121] **priusquam** *and* **antequam,** before, + *indic. denote an actual fact;* + *subj. denote anticipation as here:* before they could come

[122] *dat.*

cāre ūtile arbitrābātur.

Itaque in aciem peditum centum (mīlia), equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit proeliumque commīsit. In quō[123] tantō[124] plūs[125] virtūte valuērunt Athēniēnsēs ut decemplicem[126] numerum hostium prōflīgārint,[127] adeōque eōs perterruērunt ut Persae nōn castra sed nāvēs petierint. Quā pugnā nihil adhūc[128] exsistit[129] nōbilius[130]; nūlla enim umquam tam exigua[131] manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit.[132] (**Nepos,** *Miltiadēs* 3–5, excerpts)

19. THEMISTOCLES AND THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS[1]

Themistoclēs[2] ad (bellum Corcȳraeum[3]) gerendum praetor ā populō factus, nōn sōlum praesentī[4] bellō sed etiam reliquō[5] tempore ferōciōrem reddidit cīvitātem. Nam cum pecūnia pūblica, quae ex metallīs[6] redībat, largītiōne[7] magistrātuum[8] quotannīs[9] interīret,[10] ille persuāsit populō ut eā pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur.[11] Quā[12] celeriter effectā, prīmum Corcȳraeōs frēgit,[13] deinde maritimōs praedōnēs[14] cōnsectandō[15] mare tūtum reddidit. In quō[16] . . . perītissimōs[17] bellī nāvālis[18] fēcit Athēniēnsēs. Id quantae salūtī[19] fuerit ūniversae[20] Graeciae, bellō cognitum est Persicō.[21] Nam cum Xerxēs[22] et marī et terrā[23] bellum ūniversae īnferret Eurōpae, cum tantīs cōpiīs eam invāsit[24] quantās neque ante nec posteā habuit quisquam. Huius enim classis mīlle et ducentārum nāvium longārum[25] fuit, quam duo mīlia onerāriārum[26] sequēbantur. Terrestris[27] autem exercitus sep-

[123] **in quō (proeliō)**
[124] *abl. of degree of difference* (*S.S.*)
[125] they were strong by so much more (strength) in respect to courage = they were so much more powerful in the matter of courage
[126] **decemplex,** *gen.* **-plicis,** tenfold
[127] **prōflīgō** (1), overthrow; **prōflīgārint** = **-gāverint.** *Why subj.?*
[128] **ad-hūc,** *adv.,* thus far, hitherto
[129] **exsistō, -ere, -stitī,** arise, exist, be
[130] **nōbilis, -e,** famous
[131] **exiguus, -a, -um,** small, scanty. "Never did so many owe so much to so few."
[132] **prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum,** overthrow, throw down

19

[1] *480* B.C. *The Battle of Salamis was the naval counterpart of Marathon, except that this time Athens had the help of Sparta.*
[2] **Themistoclēs, -is,** *or* **-ī,** Themistocles, *a talented Athenian politician.*
[3] **Corcȳraeus, -a, -um,** Corcyraen; *Corcyra, a large island off the northwest coast of Greece. Actually Nepos is in error about Themistocles' command in the Corcyraean affair but he is correct about the tremendous importance of Themistocles' big-navy policy.*
[4] **praesēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** present
[5] **reliquus, -a, -um,** remaining, rest of
[6] **metallum, -ī,** a mine, *silver mines at Laurium in Attica south of Athens*
[7] **largītiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* generosity, liberality
[8] **magistrātus, -ūs,** civil office; civil officer, magistrate
[9] **quotannīs,** *adv.,* annually
[10] **inter-eō,** be lost, perish (*cp.* **pereō**): **interīret,** *subj. introduced by* **cum;** the subject is **pecūnia.**
[11] **aedificō** (1), build (*cp.* edifice)
[12] **quā (classe)**
[13] **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break, overcome
[14] **maritimus (-a, -um** = *Eng.; cp.* **mare) praedō (-ōnis,** *m.,* robber) = pirate; *obj. of* **cōnsectandō**
[15] **cōnsector** (1), pursue, hound (*cp.* **cōnsequor**)
[16] in (doing) which
[17] **perītus, -a, -um,** + *gen.,* skilled in; *obj. complement*
[18] **nāvālis, -e;** *cp.* **nāvis**
[19] **quantae salūtī,** *dat. of purp. with a dat. of ref.,* **Graeciae** (*S.S.*)
[20] **ūniversus, -a, -um,** entire, whole, as a whole
[21] **Persicus, -a, -um,** Persian; *the Second Persian War*
[22] **Xerxēs, -is** *or* **-ī,** *m.,* Xerxes, *son of Darius and king of the Persians, 485–465* B.C.
[23] **marī et terrā** (*or* **terrā marīque**) *abl. of place where, without a prep., regular in this formula*
[24] **invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum,** move against, invade
[25] **nāvium longārum,** of 1,200 men-of-war; his fleet was of 1,200 ships = his fleet consisted of . . .
[26] **onerāria, -ae (nāvis),** transport
[27] **terrestris exercitus,** land army

tingenta[28] (mīlia) peditum, equitum quadringenta[29] mīlia fuērunt.[30]

Cuius dē adventū[31] cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta[32] et maximē
15 Athēniēnsēs petī dīcerentur propter pugnam Marathōniam, mīsērunt Delphōs[33] cōnsultum[34] quidnam[35] facerent[36] dē rēbus suīs. Dēlīberantibus[37] Pȳthia[38] respondit ut moenibus līgneīs[39] sē mūnīrent.[40] Id respōnsum[41] quō[42] valēret cum intellegeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit cōnsilium esse[43] Apollinis ut in nāvēs sē suaque[44] cōnferrent: eum[45] enim ā deō significārī[46] mūrum
20 ligneum. Tālī cōnsiliō probātō, addunt[47] ad superiōrēs (nāvēs) totidem[48] nāvēs trirēmēs,[49] suaque omnia quae moverī poterant partim[50] Salamīna,[51] partim Troezēna[52] dēportant.[53] Arcem[54] sacerdōtibus paucīsque maiōribus nātū[55] ad sacra[56] prōcūranda[57] trādunt; reliquum[5] oppidum relinquunt.

Huius[58] cōnsilium plērīsque cīvitātibus[59] displicēbat[60] et in terrā dīmi-
25 cārī[61] magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlēctī[62] cum Leōnidā,[63] Lacedaemoniōrum rēge, quī Thermopylās[64] occupārent[65] longiusque barbarōs[66] prōgredī nōn paterentur. Iī vim hostium nōn sustinuērunt,[67] eōque locō omnēs interiērunt.[10]

At classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum[68] nāvium, in quā ducentae[68]
30 erant Athēniēnsium,[69] prīmum apud Artemīsium[70] inter Euboeam continen-

[28] **septingentī, -ae, -a,** seven hundred
[29] **quadringentī, -ae, -a,** four hundred
[30] *Though the subject,* **exercitus,** *is sg.,* **fuērunt** *is pl. according to the idea of plurality which precedes it.*
[31] **adventus, -ūs,** approach, arrival
[32] **per-ferō**
[33] *acc. of place to which. At Delphi was the famous oracle of Apollo.*
[34] *acc. supine of* **cōnsulō** *to express purp.* = to consult
[35] **quisnam, quidnam,** who *or* what in the world
[36] *both ind. quest. and deliberative subj.*
[37] **dēlīberō** (1), deliberate; **(eīs) dēlīberantibus,** *dat.*
[38] **Pȳthia, -ae,** the Pythian priestess, *who gave the response of Apollo*
[39] **ligneus, -a, -um,** wooden
[40] **mūniō** (4), fortify, defend
[41] **respōnsum, -ī,** *the noun of* **respondeō,** *subject of* **valēret**
[42] **quō** (*adv.*) **valēret,** *lit.* in what direction this was strong or valid = in what way this applied *or* what this meant
[43] **esse.** *The inf. shows that this is ind. state. with* **persuādeō** *and not the more common jussive noun cl. introduced by* **ut:** he persuaded (them) that it was the advice of Apollo that they should betake . . .
[44] **sua,** their things = their possessions
[45] **eum mūrum ligneum,** that wooden wall (= the ships)
[46] **significō** (1), signify, mean; **significārī,** *ind. state, depending on a vb. of saying understood*
[47] **ad-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** add
[48] **totidem,** *indecl. adj.,* just as many
[49] **trirēmis, -e,** having three banks of oars
[50] **partim,** *adv.,* partly
[51] **Salamīs, -īnis,** *acc.* **Salamīna,** *f.,* Salamis, *island on west coast of Attica; acc. of place to which* (*islands as well as cities and towns*)
[52] **Troezēn, -ēnis,** *acc.* Troezēna, *f.,* Troezen, *southeastern part of Argolis, across the Saronic Gulf from Athens.*
[53] **dēportō** (1), carry off
[54] *the acropolis of the city of Athens.*
[55] **maiōrēs nātū,** those greater in respect to birth = old men, elders
[56] **sacer, -cra, -crum,** sacred; **sacra,** *n. pl.* sacred vessels, *or* rites
[57] **prōcūrō** (1), take care of
[58] *i.e.,* Themistocles'
[59] **plērīsque cīvitātibus,** *i.e., the allies of the Athenians; dat. with* **displicēbat**
[60] **dis-placeō**
[61] **dīmicārī,** *impers. pass., lit.* that it be fought, *but translate* that the war be fought. *The inf.* **dīmicārī** is subject of **placēbat.**
[62] **dēlēctus, -a, -um,** chosen, picked; chosen men
[63] **Leōnidās, -ae,** *m.,* Leonidas
[64] **Thermopylae, -ārum,** Thermopylae, *a mountain pass near the southern border of Thessaly*
[65] **occupō** (1), seize
[66] **barbarus, -a, -um,** foreign, uncivilized, barbarian (*commonly applied by a kind of ethnocentrism to those not of the Greek and Roman civilization*)
[67] **sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** sustain; *the subject is* **iī** (= **eī**).
[68] *See App. under Numerals* (*cardinals 200 and 300*); **ducentae (nāvēs)**
[69] *predicate gen. of possession:* were of the Athenians = belonged to the Athenians
[70] **apud Artemīsium,** near Artemisium, *promontory at northern tip of Euboea*

temque[71] terram cum classiāriīs[72] rēgiīs[73] cōnflīxit.[74] Angustiās[75] enim Themistoclēs quaerēbat, nē multitūdine[76] circumīrētur.[77] Hinc etsī parī proeliō[78] discesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat perīculum nē,[79] sī pars nāvium adversāriōrum[80] Euboeam superāsset,[81] ancipitī[82] pre-
35 merentur perīculō. Quō[83] factum est ut[84] ab Artemīsiō discēderent et exadversum[85] Athēnās apud Salamīna classem suam cōnstituerent.[86]

At Xerxēs, Thermopylīs expugnātīs, prōtinus accessit astū,[87] idque, nūllīs dēfendentibus, interfectīs sacerdōtibus quōs in arce invēnerat, incendiō[88] dēlēvit. Cuius flammā perterritī[89] classiāriī cum manēre nōn audērent
40 et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs[90] suās discēderent moenibusque sē dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit[91] et ūniversōs parēs esse posse[92] aiēbat,[93] dispersōs[94] testābātur[95] peritūrōs; idque Eurybiadī,[96] rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, quī tum summae[97] imperiī praeerat,[98] fore[99] adfīrmābat.[100]

Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū[101] dē servīs suīs[102] quem
45 habuit[103] fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsit ut eī nūntiāret suīs verbīs[104] adversāriōs eius[105] in fugā[106] esse; quī[107] sī discessissent,[108] maiōre cum labōre . . . (eum) bellum cōnfectūrum, cum singulōs[109] cōnsectārī cōgerētur; quōs sī statim aggrederētur,[110] brevī (tempore) ūniversōs oppressūrum . . . Hāc rē audītā barbarus, nihil dolī[111] subesse[112] crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō[113] sibi
50 locō, contrā[114] opportūnissimō[115] hostibus, adeō angusto marī[116] cōnflīxit ut eius multitūdō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit[117] . . . Victus ergō est magis

[71] **continēns terra, continentis terrae,** the mainland
[72] **classiārius, -iī,** a marine (*lit.* a soldier of the fleet)
[73] **rēgius, -a, -um,** royal
[74] **cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum,** to fight
[75] **angustiae, -ārum,** narrow place
[76] **multitūdō, -inis,** *f.*, large number, multitude
[77] **circum-eō,** surround
[78] **parī proeliō,** the battle was a draw
[79] **nē** = lest, *similar to the construction after verbs of fearing*
[80] **adversārius, -a, -um,** hostile; **adversārius, -iī,** opponent, enemy
[81] *a simple fut. condition in a* **nē**- cl. *The original thought was* **sī pars superāverit, . . . premēmur;** *the fut. perf. indic.* **superāverit** *becomes plupf. subj.* **superāsset.**
[82] **anceps,** *gen.* **ancipitis,** two-headed, double
[83] **quō** = **quārē**
[84] *result cl., subject of* **factum est:** = the result was that
[85] **exadversum,** *prep. + acc.,* opposite
[86] **cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** draw up, establish
[87] **astū,** *n. indecl.,* the city (= Athens), *obj. of* **accessit**
[88] **incendium, -iī,** burning, fire. *The marks of this fire can still be seen on some of the marble pieces later built into the wall of the Acropolis.*
[89] **per-terreō**
[90] *place to which without a prep. as in the sg.* **domum**
[91] **resistō, -ere, -stitī,** make a stand, resist
[92] **universōs . . . posse,** all together (united) they could be equal (*to the Persians*)
[93] *impf. of* **ait**
[94] **di-spergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum,** scatter
[95] **testor** (1), testify, declare
[96] **Eurybiadēs, -is,** *m.,* Eurybiades; **Eurybiadī** *depends on* **adfīrmābat.**
[97] **summa, -ae,** highest place
[98] **summae imperiī** (*gen. of whole*) **praeerat,** he was in charge of the highest part of the command = he was commander-in-chief
[99] *Subject of* **fore** (= **futūrum esse**) *is* **id.**
[100] **adfīrmō** (1), assert, declare
[101] **noctū,** *adv.,* at night
[102] **(illum) dē servīs suīs,** that one of his slaves
[103] considered
[104] in his (Themistocles') own words, *i.e.,* in his own name
[105] **adversāriōs** (= **hostēs**) **eius** (= **rēgis**)
[106] **fuga, -ae,** flight
[107] **quī** = **et eī**
[108] **sī discessissent . . . (eum) bellum cōnfectūrum (esse),** *another simple fut. condition in ind. state.:* **sī discesserint** (*fut. perf.*), **tū bellum cōnficiēs . . . ; cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** finish, accomplish.
[109] one at a time
[110] **aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum,** attack
[111] **dolus, -ī,** deceit, trick. *What kind of gen.* is **dolī**?
[112] **sub-sum,** be under, be concealed
[113] **aliēnus, -a, -um,** foreign, unfavorable
[114] **contrā,** *adv.,* on the contrary
[115] **opportūnus, -a, -um,** advantageous, *referring to* **locō**
[116] *abl. of place where without a prep.*
[117] *The perf. subj. is not uncommon in result cl. in historical sequence.*

etiam cōnsiliō Themistoclī quam armīs Graeciae . . . Sīc ūnīus virī prūdentiā[118] Graecia līberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit[119] Asia.

Haec (est) altera victōria quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tro-
55 paeō.[120] Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium maxima post hominum memoriam classis est dēvicta.[121] (**Nepos,** *Themistoclēs* 2–4, excerpts)

20. ARISTIDES THE JUST

Aristīdēs,[1] Lȳsimachī[2] fīlius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis[3] ferē fuit Themistoclī[4] atque cum eō dē prīncipātū[5] contendit . . . In hīs autem cognitum est quantō[6] antistāret[7] ēloquentia innocentiae.[8] Quamquam enim adeō excellēbat[9] Aristīdēs abstinentiā[10] ut ūnus post hominum memoriam . . . cog-
5 nōmine[11] "Iūstus" sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle collabefactus[12] testulā[13] illā[14] exsiliō[15] decem annōrum[16] multātus est.[17]

Quī quidem cum intellegeret reprimī[18] concitātam[19] multitūdinem nōn posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scrībentem ut patriā pellerētur,[20] quaesīsse ab eō[21] dīcitur quārē id faceret aut quid Aristīdēs commīsisset cūr[22]
10 tantā poenā dignus dūcerētur. Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāre[23] Aristīdēn, sed sibi nōn placēre[24] quod tam cupidē labōrāsset ut praeter cēterōs "Iūstus" appellārētur. Hic decem annōrum lēgitimam[25] poenam nōn pertulit. Nam postquam[26] Xerxēs in Graeciam dēscendit,[27] sextō ferē annō quam[28] erat expulsus, populī scītō[29] in patriam restitūtus est.[30]
15 Interfuit[31] autem pugnae nāvālī apud Salamīna quae facta est prius-

[118] **prūdentia, -ae,** foresight, discretion
[119] **succumbō, -ere, -cubuī,** submit, succumb
[120] **Marathōniō tropaeō,** trophy *or* victory at Marathon
[121] **dē-vincō,** conquer completely

20

[1] **Aristīdēs, -is,** *m.,* Aristides, *Athenian statesman and general*
[2] **Lȳsimachus, -ī,** Lysimachus
[3] **aequālis, -is,** *m.,* an equal in age, a contemporary
[4] **Themistoclī,** *here gen. of possession*
[5] **prīncipātus, -ūs,** first place, leadership
[6] *abl. of degree of difference (S.S.) depending on the idea of comparison in* **antistāret:** how much
[7] **anti-stō, -āre, -stetī,** stand before = excel
[8] **innocentia, -ae,** harmlessness; integrity. *Why dat.?*
[9] **excellō, -ere, -uī, -celsum,** excel; **excellēbat:** *note that* **quamquam** (although) *is used with the indic.*
[10] **abstinentia, -ae,** self-restraint, *especially in matters involving public funds,* uprightness; **abstinentiā,** *abl. of specification (S.S.).*
[11] **cognōmen, -minis,** *n., here* = epithet, apellative. *Of the three regular Roman names* (**praenōmen, nōmen, cognōmen**) *the* **cognōmen** (*cp.* **cognōscō**) *seems to have originated as a kind of nickname.*
[12] **collabefiō, -fierī, -factus sum,** be overthrown, be ruined
[13] **testula, -ae,** little potsherd; ostracism; **testulā** *abl. of accordance or perhaps means. Look up the interesting history of ostracism, a political safety valve against tyranny.*
[14] **illā,** *in the unusual position of following its noun* = that famous
[15] **exsiliō,** *abl. of penalty (= a form of abl. of means)*
[16] **decem annōrum,** *gen. of description*
[17] **multō** (1), punish
[18] **re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum,** press back, check
[19] **concitō** (1), arouse, excite
[20] *jussive noun cl.,* writing that he should be driven out
[21] **eō,** *i.e., the* **quendam** *above*
[22] (what he had committed) that
[23] **ignōrō** (1), not know, be unacquainted with
[24] **sibi nōn placēre** (*impers.*), it was not pleasing to him = he was displeased (because . . .)
[25] **lēgitimus, -a, -um,** fixed by law, legal
[26] **postquam,** *conj. + perf. ind.,* after
[27] **dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum,** descend, march on
[28] **quam = postquam; post** *sometimes omitted after an ordinal number in the abl. of time construction*
[29] **scītum, -ī,** decree (*cp. plebiscite*)
[30] **restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** restore
[31] **inter-sum** + *dat.,* be present at, take part in

quam[32] poenā līberārētur. Īdem[33] praetor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataeās[34] in proeliō quō fūsus[35] (est) barbarōrum exercitus Mardoniusque[36] interfectus est . . . Huius aequitāte[37] factum est,[38] cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausaniā[39] (quō duce[40] Mardonius erat fugātus[41]), ut summa im-
20 periī[42] maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs trānsferrētur ad Athēniēnsēs; namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā ducēs erant Lacedaemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantiā[43] Pausaniae et iūstitiā factum est Aristīdis ut omnēs ferē cīvitātēs Graeciae ad Athēniēnsium societātem[44] sē applicārent[45] et adversus barbarōs hōs ducēs dēligerent[46] sibi.

25 Quōs[47] quō[48] facilius repellerent,[49] sī forte[50] bellum renovāre[51] cōnārentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitūsque comparandōs[52] quantum pecūniae quaeque[53] cīvitās daret, Aristīdēs dēlēctus est quī cōnstitueret,[54] eiusque arbitriō[55] quadringēna[56] et sexāgēna talenta quotannīs Dēlum[57] sunt conlāta; id enim commūne aerārium[58] esse voluērunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō[59]
30 tempore Athēnās trānslāta est. Hic quā[60] fuerit[61] abstinentiā, nūllum est certius indicium[62] quam quod,[63] cum tantīs rēbus praefuisset,[64] in tantā paupertāte dēcessit,[65] ut quī[66] efferrētur vix relīquerit. Quō[67] factum est ut fīliae eius pūblicē[68] alerentur et dē commūnī aerāriō dōtibus[69] datīs collocārentur.[70] (**Nepos,** *Aristīdēs,* excerpts)

[32] **priusquam** + *subj.*
[33] the same man = he also
[34] **Plataeae, -ārum,** Plataea
[35] **fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum,** pour out, rout
[36] **Mardonius, -iī,** Mardonius, *Persian general under Xerxes in command of the "barbarians"*
[37] **aequitās, -tātis,** *f.*, equity, fairness; **aequitāte,** *abl. of cause* (*S.S.*)
[38] **factum est . . . ut summa imperiī trānsferrētur,** it happened that the chief command was transferred; **ut . . . trānsferrētur,** *noun cl. of result used as subject of* **factum est**
[39] **Pausaniās, -ae,** *m.*, Pausanias, *a Spartan, victor over the Persians at Plataea in 479* B.C. *but a person whose selfish ambition was too great to permit his continuing long as commander-in-chief of the united Greek forces*
[40] *abl. abs.*
[41] **fugō** (1), put to flight, rout; *not to be confused with* **fugiō**
[42] *L.I. 19 n. 97–98*
[43] **intemperantia, -ae,** intemperance, arrogance
[44] **societās, -tātis,** *f.*, confederacy, alliance
[45] **applicō** (1), attach
[46] **dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum = legō**
[47] = **barbarōs**
[48] *L.I. 14 n. 18*
[49] **re-pellō**
[50] **forte,** *adv.*, by chance
[51] *If* **novus** *is new, what must the vb.* **re-novō** (1) mean?
[52] *Both gerundive phrases belong in the* **quantum** *cl.*
[53] **quaeque cīvitās: quaeque,** *f. adj. form of* **quisque**
[54] **cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** establish, decide; **quī cōnstitueret,** *rel. cl. of purp., which has as its obj. the* **quantum . . . daret** *cl.*
[55] **arbitrium, -ī,** judgment, decision; **arbitriō,** *what kind of abl.?*
[56] **quadringēna et sexāgēna** (*distributive numerals*) **talenta quotannīs,** 460 talents each year
[57] **Dēlos, -ī,** *f.*, Delos, *small island in the center of the Cyclades in the Aegean*
[58] **aerārium, -iī,** treasury
[59] **posterus, -a, -um,** coming after (post), later
[60] **quā abstinentiā,** *abl. of description,* of what integrity he was = how great was his integrity
[61] *perf. subj., ind. quest. depending on* **indicium**
[62] **indicium, -iī,** indication, proof
[63] the fact that
[64] **prae-sum** + *dat.*, be in charge of
[65] **dē-cēdō,** depart, die
[66] **quī** = *old form of abl.: with* **efferētur** = by which he might be buried = enough to bury him
[67] **quō,** *adv.*, wherefore
[68] **pūblicē,** *adv.*, at public expense
[69] **dōs, dōtis,** *f.*, dowry
[70] **collocō** (1), place, settle in marriage

21. TIMOLEON[1]

Diōne[2] Syrācūsīs interfectō, Dionȳsius[3] rūrsus Syrācūsārum potītus est.[4] Cuius adversāriī opem ā Corinthiīs[5] petiērunt ducemque, quō in bellō ūterentur, postulārunt. Hūc Tīmoleōn[6] missus incrēdibilī[7] fēlīcitāte[8] Dionȳsium tōtā Siciliā dēpulit.[9] Cum (eum) interficere posset, nōluit, tūtōque[10] ut Co-
5 rinthum[11] pervenīret effēcit,[12] quod utrōrumque[13] Dionȳsiōrum opibus Corinthiī saepe adiūtī fuerant . . . eamque praeclāram victōriam dūcēbat in quā plūs esset clēmentiae quam crūdēlitātis[14] . . .

Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs,[15] cum propter diūturnitātem[16] bellī nōn sōlum regiōnēs[17] sed etiam urbēs dēsertās[18] vidēret, conquīsīvit[19] . . . colōnōs.[20]
10 Cīvibus veteribus sua[21] restituit, novīs[22] bellō vacuēfactās[23] possessiōnēs[24] dīvīsit[25]; urbium moenia disiecta[26] fānaque[27] dētēcta[28] refēcit[29]; cīvitātibus lēgēs lībertātemque reddidit . . . Cum tantīs esset opibus[30] ut etiam invītīs[31] imperāre posset, tantum[32] autem amōrem haberet omnium Siculōrum[33] ut nūllō recūsante rēgnum obtinēre[34] licēret, māluit sē dīligī quam metuī.
15 Itaque, cum prīmum[35] potuit, imperium dēposuit ac prīvātus[36] Syrācūsīs . . . vīxit. Neque vērō id imperītē[37] fēcit, nam quod cēterī rēgēs imperiō potuērunt, hic benevolentiā[38] tenuit . . .

Hic cum aetāte iam prōvectus esset,[39] sine ūllō morbō lūmina[40] oculōrum āmīsit. Quam calamitātem[41] ita moderātē[42] tulit ut . . . (nēmō) eum

21

[1] *Timoleon, who came from a noble family at Corinth, was a great champion of liberty against tyranny. By 334* B.C. *he was in Sicily fighting the Carthaginians, expelling tyrants, and establishing democracies.*

[2] **Diōn, Diōnis,** *m.*, Dion, *relative and friend of the tyrant Dionysius the Elder. With the aid of Plato he tried—but in vain—to give a noble pattern to the life of Dionysius the Younger, who followed his father in tyranny. After finally exiling Dionysius the Younger from Syracuse, he himself ruled tyrannically and was assassinated in 353* B.C.

[3] **Dionȳsius, -iī,** Dionysius the Younger

[4] **potior** + *gen. or abl.*

[5] **Corinthiī, -ōrum,** Corinthians

[6] **Tīmoleōn, -ontis,** *m.*, Timoleon

[7] **incrēdibilis, -e,** incredible

[8] **fēlīcitās, -tātis,** *f.*, happiness, good fortune

[9] **dē-pellō**

[10] **tūtō,** *adv.*, safely

[11] **Corinthus, -ī,** *f.*, Corinth, *on the Isthmus of Corinth*

[12] *L.A. 8 n. 20–21*

[13] **uterque, utraque, utrumque,** each; *here* = both

[14] **crūdēlitās, -tātis,** *f.*, cruelty

[15] *These words refer not only to the expulsion of Dionysius, but also to a great victory over the Carthaginians in Sicily as recounted in the omitted passages.*

[16] **diūturnitās, -tātis,** *f.*, long duration

[17] **regiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, region; *here* = country districts

[18] **dēsertus, -a, -um,** deserted

[19] **con-quīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum (quaerō),** seek out, gather together

[20] **colōnus, -ī,** settler, colonist

[21] **sua,** *n. pl.*

[22] **novīs (colōnīs)**

[23] **vacuē-faciō,** make empty

[24] **possessiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, possession, property

[25] **dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum,** divide, distribute

[26] **dis-iciō,** throw apart, scatter

[27] **fānum, -ī,** shrine, temple (*cp. profane, fanatic, fan = devotee*)

[28] **dē-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum,** unroof, uncover (*cp. detect*)

[29] **re-ficiō**

[30] **tantīs . . . opibus:** *abl. of description*

[31] **(Siculīs) etiam invītīs,** (the Sicilians) even against their will

[32] **tantum . . . licēret: cum,** although, *introduces this cl. as well as the preceding one.*

[33] **Siculī, -ōrum,** the Sicilians

[34] **obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** occupy, hold

[35] **cum prīmum,** as soon as

[36] **prīvātus, -ī,** private citizen; as a private citizen, he . . .

[37] **imperītē,** *adv.*, unskillfully, ignorantly

[38] **benevolentia, -ae,** good-will, kindness

[39] **prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum,** carry forward

[40] **lūmen, -minis,** *n.*, light; sight

[41] **calamitās, -tātis,** *f.*, misfortune

[42] **moderātē,** *adv.*, with moderation

20 querentem audierit[43] . . . Nihil umquam neque īnsolēns[44] neque glōriōsum[45] ex ōre eius exiit. Quī quidem, cum suās laudēs audīret praedicārī,[46] numquam aliud dīxit quam[47] sē in eā rē maximē dīs agere grātiās . . . quod, cum Siciliam recreāre cōnstituissent, tum sē potissimum[48] ducem esse voluissent. Nihil enim rērum hūmānārum sine deōrum nūmine[49] gerī putābat . . .

25 Proelia maxima nātālī[50] suō diē fēcit omnia; quō factum est ut[51] eius diem nātālem fēstum[52] habēret ūniversa Sicilia . . .

Cum quīdam Dēmaenetus[53] in cōntiōne[54] populī dē rēbus gestīs[55] eius dētrahere[56] coepisset ac nōnnūlla invehherētur[57] in Timoleonta, dīxit nunc dēmum[58] sē vōtī esse damnātum[59]; namque hoc ā dīs immortālibus semper
30 precātum[60] ut tālem lībertātem restitueret Syrācūsānīs in quā cuivīs[61] licēret dē quō vellet impūne[62] dīcere.[63]

Hic cum diem suprēmum obīsset, pūblicē[64] ā Syrācūsānīs in gymnasiō,[65] quod Tīmoleontēum[66] appellātur, tōtā celebrante[67] Siciliā, sepultus est.[68] (**Nepos,** *Tīmoleōn* 2–5, excerpts)

22. HORACE'S "CARPE DIEM"

Tū nē quaesierīs[1]—scīre nefās[2]—quem mihi, quem[3] tibi
fīnem dī dederint, Leuconoē,[4] nec Babylōniōs
temptārīs[5] numerōs.[6] Ut melius,[7] quidquid erit, patī.
. . .
Spem longam[8] resecēs.[9] Dum loquimur, fūgerit invida[10]

[43] *perf. subj. in historical sequence*
[44] **īnsolēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** arrogant, insolent
[45] **glōriōsus, -a, -um,** *here* = boastful
[46] **praedicō** (1), declare, relate
[47] **aliud quam,** other than
[48] **potissimum,** *adv.,* especially, above all
[49] **nūmen, -minis,** *n.,* divine power, command
[50] **nātālis diēs, nātālis diēī,** *m.,* birthday
[51] **quō . . . ut,** *L.I. 20 n. 38, 67*
[52] **fēstus, -a, -um,** festive
[53] **Dēmaenetus, -ī,** Demaenetus, *an enemy of Timoleon*
[54] **cōntiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* assembly
[55] **rēs gestae, rērum gestārum** (*lit.* things done), exploits, deeds
[56] **dē-trahō,** detract, disparage
[57] **nōnnūlla** *is n. acc. pl.*—**invehor, -ī, -vectus sum** (*deponent form of* **in-vehō**), + **in** + *acc.,* make an attack on, inveigh against: **nōnnūlla inveherētur in,** he made some attacks on
[58] **dēmum,** *adv.,* at last
[59] **damnō** (1) + *gen.,* condemn on the charge of; **vōtī damnārī,** to be condemned to pay a vow = to have a vow *or* prayer granted
[60] **precor** (1), beseech
[61] *dat. of* **quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quid-vīs (quod-vīs),** *indef.,* anyone at all, anything at all
[62] **impūne,** *adv.,* with impunity
[63] **dīcere,** *subject of* **licēret**
[64] **pūblicē,** *adv. of* **pūblicus**
[65] **gymnasium, -iī,** gymnasium, *which in Gk. had a much broader meaning than it does in Eng.*
[66] **Tīmoleontēum,** the Timoleonteum (gymnasium)
[67] **celebrō** (1), celebrate
[68] **sepeliō, -īre, -pelīvī, -pultum,** bury

22

METER: Greater Asclepiad.
[1] **nē quaesierīs** (= **quaesīverīs**): **nē** + *perf. subj. = a colloquial prohibition (negative command),* do not seek
[2] **nefās,** *n., indecl.,* wrong, sin; **nefās (est),** it is wrong
[3] **quem . . . quem,** *modifies* **fīnem**
[4] **Leuconoē, -es,** *f.,* Leuconoë, *a Gk. name*
[5] **temptō** (1), try; **temptārīs** = **temptāverīs,** *another neg. command*
[6] **numerōs,** *calculations employed by astrologers in casting horoscopes; "Babylonian" because astrology was associated with the East. With the decay of belief in the old-time religion in Rome during the first cen.* B.C., *astrology and superstitions prospered. Apparently Leuconoë had visited a fortune teller.*
[7] **ut melius (est),** how (much) better it is
[8] *i.e., projected too far into the future*
[9] **resecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectum,** cut off, prune back; **resecēs,** *poetic use of the pres. subj. (jussive) for the pres. imper.*
[10] **invidus, -a, -um,** envious

5 aetās. Carpe diem, quam minimum[11] crēdula[12] posterō.[13]

(**Horace**, *Odes* 1.11, excerpts)

23. INTEGER VĪTAE

Integer[1] vītae scelerisque pūrus[2]
nōn eget Maurīs[3] iaculīs[4] neque arcū[5]
nec venēnātīs[6] gravidā[7] sagittīs,[8]
Fusce,[9] pharetrā.[10]
. . .
5 Namque mē silvā lupus[11] in Sabīnā[12]
dum meam cantō[13] Lalagēn[14] et ultrā
terminum[15] cūrīs vagor[16] expedītīs[17]
fūgit[18] inermem.[19]
. . .
Pōne mē pigrīs[20] ubi nūlla campīs
10 arbor aestīvā[21] recreātur aurā,[22]
quod[23] latus mundī nebulae[24] malusque[25]
Iuppiter urget[26];
pōne sub currū[27] nimium propinquī
sōlis in terrā domibus negāta:
15 dulce[28] rīdentem Lalagēn amābō
dulce loquentem.

[11] **minimum,** *adv.* = **minimē**
[12] **crēdulus, -a, -um,** believing in, trusting + *dat.;* **crēdula,** *nom. f. sg. agreeing with the subject of* **carpe,** *i.e.* **Leuconoē**
[13] **posterō (diēī),** *dat.*

23

METER: Sapphic stanza.
[1] **integer, -gra, -grum,** untouched, blameless; **(vir) integer vītae** (*poetic gen. of specification*), the person blameless in his life
[2] **pūrus, -a, -um,** pure, free from; **sceleris,** *poetic gen. of separation or specification*
[3] **Maurus, -a, -um,** Moorish (= Mauritanian)
[4] **iaculum, -ī,** missile, javelin (*cp.* **iaciō**)
[5] **arcus, -ūs,** bow
[6] **venēnātus, -a, -um,** poisonous, dipped in poison
[7] **gravidus, -a, -um,** laden (with); *cp.* **gravis**
[8] **sagitta, -ae,** arrow
[9] **Fuscus, -ī,** Fuscus, *a literary man and a close, sometimes waggish, friend of Horace*
[10] **pharetra, -ae,** quiver
[11] **lupus, -ī,** wolf
[12] **Sabīnus, -a, -um,** Sabine; *cp. L.A. 10*
[13] **cantō** (1), sing about; **dum** + *historical pres. to denote continued action in past time:* while I was singing about
[14] **Lalagē, -ēs,** *acc.* **Lalagēn** (*Gk. noun*), *f.*, Lalage, *name of a girl—a most mellifluous name!*
[15] **terminus, -ī,** boundary (*cp. terminus, term, terminate*)
[16] **vagor** (1), wander, ramble (*cp. vagary, vagabond*)
[17] **expediō** (4), disentangle, set free; **cūrīs expedītīs,** *abl. abs.*
[18] *Note the interlocked word order of this stanza, which is so characteristic of Lat. poetry:* **mē** (*obj. of* **fūgit**) *at the beginning modified by* **inermem** *at the end;* **silvā in Sabīnā,** *place where phrase interrupted by* **lupus** *subject of* **fūgit;** *all this separated from the main vb. by a double* **dum** *cl.*
[19] **inermis, -e,** unarmed; *cp.* **integer vītae . . . nōn eget iaculīs.**
[20] **piger, -gra, -grum,** lazy, sluggish, torpid (*because frozen*), *modifying* **campīs** (**campus, -ī,** field) *in a place-where phrase without a prep.* (*the omission of a prep. is common in poetry*). *The order of the thought is:* **pōne mē (in) pigrīs campīs ubi . . .**
[21] **aestīvus, -a, -um,** summer (*cp.* **aestās**)
[22] **aura, -ae,** breeze
[23] = (or put me) **in eō latere mundī quod . . . ; latus, -eris,** *n.*, side, region
[24] **nebula, -ae,** mist, fog
[25] **malus** = inclement, *because Jupiter is here god of the weather*
[26] **urgeō, -ēre, ursī,** urge, press, oppress
[27] **currus, -ūs,** chariot
[28] **dulce,** *poetic for* **dulciter.** *These exquisitely mellifluous last lines somewhat onomatopoetically suggest the dulcet timbre of Lalage's voice and laugh.*

(**Horace,** *Odes* 1.22.1–4, 9–12, 17–24)

24. AUREA MEDIOCRITĀS—THE GOLDEN MEAN

Rēctius[1] vīvēs, Licinī,[2] neque altum[3]
semper urgendō[4] neque, dum procellās[5]
cautus[6] horrēscis,[7] nimium premendō
  lītus[8] inīquum.[9]
5 Auream[10] quisquis mediocritātem[11]
dīligit, tūtus[12] caret obsolētī[13]
sordibus[14] tēctī, caret invidendā[15]
  sōbrius[16] aulā.[17]
Saepius ventīs agitātur[18] ingēns
10 pīnus[19] et celsae[20] graviōre cāsū[21]
dēcidunt[22] turrēs[23] feriuntque[24] summōs
  fulgura[25] montēs.
Spērat[26] īnfestīs,[27] metuit secundīs[28]
alteram[29] sortem[30] bene praeparātum[31]
15 pectus.[32] Īnfōrmēs[33] hiemēs[34] redūcit
  Iuppiter[35]; īdem[36]
summovet.[37] Nōn, sī male[38] nunc, et ōlim[39]
sīc erit: quondam[40] citharā[41] tacentem

24

METER: Sapphic stanza.

[1] **rēctius,** *adv.,* rightly, well, suitably
[2] **Licinī,** *voc. of* **Licinius,** *a person who seems to have been wanting in the virtue of moderation*
[3] the deep (sea)
[4] *i.e.,* heading out to the deep
[5] **procella, -ae,** storm, gale
[6] **cautus, -a, -um,** cautious, circumspect; *with* **dum . . . horrēscis,** while you in your caution . . .
[7] **horrēscō, -ere, horruī,** begin to shudder at, begin to dread
[8] **altum** *and* **lītus** = *extremes*
[9] **inīquus, -a, -um,** unequal; *here* = treacherous
[10] **aureus, -a, -um,** golden
[11] **mediocritās, -tātis,** *f.,* moderation, the mean between extremes. *Note that Horace does not say that "mediocrity" is golden! The idea of* **(aurea) mediocritās** *was common in Gk. ethical thought, and Aristotle made it a cardinal virtue in his "Ethics."*
[12] **tūtus caret,** secure (*in his philosophy of the "golden mean"*) he is free from . . .
[13] **obsolētus, -a, -um,** worn out, dilapidated
[14] **sordēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* dirt, filth; **sordibus,** *what kind of abl.?*
[15] **invidendā,** sure to be envied
[16] **sōbrius, -a, -um,** sober-minded, moderate, in his so-
[17] **aula, -ae,** palace
[18] **agitō** (1), agitate, toss
[19] **pīnus, -ī,** *f.,* pine
[20] **celsus, -a, -um,** high, lofty
[21] **cāsus, -ūs,** fall, destruction
[22] **dēcidō, -ere, -cidī,** fall down (*cp.* **cadō**)
[23] **turris, -is,** *f.,* tower
[24] **feriō** (4), strike
[25] **fulgur, -uris,** *n.,* lightning, thunderbolt
[26] anticipates, expects
[27] **īnfestus, -a, -um,** unsafe, dangerous, adverse; **īnfestīs (rēbus)** *dat., lit.:* for his adverse circumstances (= in adversity) he anticipates the other (= the opposite) fortune **(sortem)**
[28] **secundīs (rēbus)** *balances* **īnfestīs:** for his favorable circumstances (= in prosperity) he apprehends the opposite fortune.
[29] **alter,** the other of two; *here* = the opposite
[30] **sors, sortis,** *f.,* lot, fortune; **sortem,** *obj. of* **spērat** *and* **metuit**
[31] **prae-parō** (1), make ready in advance, prepare: well prepared (*by the philosophy of life which Horace is here enunciating*)
[32] *subject of* **spērat** *and* **metuit**
[33] **īnfōrmis, -e,** shapeless, hideous, horrid
[34] **hiems, hiemis,** *f.,* stormy weather, winter
[35] Jupiter *as god of sky and weather*
[36] **īdem,** the same god = he also
[37] **sum-moveō,** remove, drive away, *sc.* **hiemēs**
[38] **male (est),** it is bad, things are bad
[39] **et ōlim,** also in the future
[40] *here* = sometimes
[41] **cithara, -ae,** lyre

suscitat[42] Mūsam,[43] neque semper arcum
20 tendit[44] Apollō.[45]
Rēbus angustīs[46] animōsus[47] atque
fortis appārē[48]; sapienter[49] īdem[50]
contrahēs[51] ventō nimium secundō
turgida[52] vēla.[53]
(**Horace**, *Odes* 2.10)

25. LĀBUNTUR ANNĪ

Ēheu![1] fugācēs,[2] Postume, Postume,
lābuntur[3] annī; nec pietās[4] moram
rūgīs[5] et īnstantī[6] senectae[7]
adferet indomitaeque[8] mortī.
. . .
5 Frūstrā[9] cruentō[10] Mārte[11] carēbimus
frāctīsque[12] raucī[13] flūctibus[14] Hadriae[15];
frūstrā[9] per autumnōs[16] nocentem
corporibus[17] metuēmus Austrum.[18]
Vīsendus[19] āter[20] flūmine languidō[21]
10 Cōcȳtos[22] errāns et Danaī genus[23]
īnfāme[24] damnātusque[25] longī

[42] **suscitō** (1), arouse; **suscitat,** *subject is* **Apollō**
[43] **Mūsa, -ae,** a Muse
[44] **tendō, -ere, tetendī, tēnsum,** stretch
[45] **Apollō, -inis,** *m.,* Apollo, *god of the sun, prophecy, poetry, and music; also god of archery, pestilence, and medicine. Apollo has two aspects: happy and constructive* (**Mūsam**); *unhappy and destructive* (**arcum**).
[46] **rēbus angustīs,** *abl. abs.,* when things are narrow (= **difficult**), *i.e.,* in adversity
[47] **anim-ōsus, -a, -um (-ōsus,** *suffix* = full of), spirited
[48] **appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** show one's self; **appārē,** *analyze the form carefully.*
[49] *here* = if you are wise
[50] *see n. 36 above*
[51] **con-trahō,** draw in, shorten
[52] **turgidus, -a, -um,** swollen
[53] **vēlum, -ī,** sail

25

METER: Alcaic stanza.
[1] **ēheu,** *cp.* **heu.** *This sigh is emphasized by the repetition of Postumus' name.*
[2] **fugāx,** *gen.* **-ācis,** fleeting
[3] **lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum,** slip, glide
[4] **pietās, -tātis,** *f.,* loyalty, devotion, piety
[5] **rūga, -ae,** wrinkle (*cp. corrugated*)
[6] **īnstāns,** *gen.* **-antis,** pressing, urgent
[7] **senecta, -ae** = **senectūs**
[8] **indomitus, -a, -um,** untamable, invincible
[9] **frūstrā,** *adv.,* in vain. *What is the significance of its emphatic position?*
[10] **cruentus, -a, -um,** bloody
[11] **Mārs, Mārtis,** *m.,* Mars, *god of war;* **Mārte,** *what abl.?*
[12] **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break
[13] **raucus, -a, -um,** hoarse, noisy
[14] **flūctus, -ūs,** wave; **frāctīs flūctibus,** broken waves = breakers
[15] **Hadria, -ae,** *m.,* Adriatic Sea
[16] **autumnus, -ī,** autumn, *unhealthy part of the year because of the Sirocco*
[17] *depends on* **nocentem**
[18] **auster, -trī,** the south wind, *the Sirocco blowing from the Sahara*
[19] **vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum,** visit; **vīsendus (est)**
[20] **āter, ātra, ātrum,** dark, *modifying* **Cōcȳtos**
[21] **languidus, -a, -um,** sluggish, weak
[22] **Cōcȳtos, -ī,** *m.,* Cocytus, the river of wailing, *one of the rivers surrounding Hades;* **Cōcȳtos,** *Gk. nom.*
[23] **Danaī genus,** *the offspring of* **Danaüs,** *whose 49 daughters murdered their husbands and in Hades were punished by having to pour water eternally into a sieve*
[24] **īnfāmis, -e,** infamous
[25] **damnō** (1) condemn

Sīsyphus[26] Aeolidēs[27] labōris.[28]
Linquenda[29] tellūs[30] et domus et placēns
uxor, neque hārum, quās colis, arborum
15 tē praeter invīsās[31] cupressōs[32]
ūlla[33] brevem dominum[34] sequētur.
(**Horace**, *Odes* 2.14.1–4, 13–24)

26. A SENSE OF BALANCE IN LIFE

Vīvitur[1] parvō bene cui[2] paternum[3]
splendet[4] in mēnsā tenuī[5] salīnum,
nec levēs[6] somnōs timor aut cupīdō
sordidus[7] aufert.[8]
5 Quid[9] brevī fortēs[10] iaculāmur[11] aevō
multa? Quid[12] terrās aliō calentēs
sōle mūtāmus? Patriae quis exsul[13]
sē quoque fūgit?[14]
Scandit[15] aerātās[16] vitiōsa nāvēs
10 cūra nec turmās[17] equitum relinquit,
ōcior[18] cervīs[19] et agente nimbōs[20]
ōcior Eurō.[21]
Laetus[22] in praesēns[23] animus quod ultrā est

[26] **Sīsyphus, -ī,** Sisyphus, *who was condemned eternally to roll up a hill a stone which rolled down again—an exquisite nightmare*
[27] **Aeolidēs, -ae,** *m.*, son of Aeolus
[28] *After vbs. of accusing, condemning, and acquitting the gen. can be used to express the charge or the penalty involved.*
[29] **linquenda (est),** *balancing* **vīsendus** in contrast; **linquō = relinquō**
[30] **tellūs, -ūris,** *f.*, earth, land
[31] **invīsus, -a, -um,** hated, hateful
[32] **cupressus, -ī,** *f.*, cypress (tree); **invīsās** *because they were used at funerals and were planted near tombs*
[33] **neque ūlla hārum arborum,** nor any = and none . . .
[34] **brevem dominum,** *in apposition with* **tē; brevem,** *implying that life is brief*

26

METER: Sapphic stanza.
[1] **vīvitur parvō bene (ab eō) cui,** it is lived on little well by him for whom: **vīvitur,** *impers. pass.* = he lives well on little (*i.e., not in abject poverty and not in the lap of luxury*).
[2] **cui,** *dat. of ref. but most easily translated by* whose
[3] **paternum salīnum (salīnum, -ī),** paternal salt-cellar; *the long list of words derived from* **sāl** *provides some idea of the importance of salt and the salt-cellar.*
[4] **splendeō, -ēre,** shine
[5] **tenuis, -e,** plain, simple
[6] **levis, -e,** *here* = gentle
[7] **sordidus, -a, -um,** sordid (*cp.* **sordēs** *L.I. 24 n. 14*); **cupīdō** *is m. in Horace.*
[8] **auferō (ab-ferō)**
[9] = **cūr**
[10] **fortēs (virī) brevī aevō (aevum, -ī,** time, life)
[11] **iaculor** (1), aim at
[12] **Quid . . . mūtāmus,** *lit.* why do we exchange lands warmed by another sun? *The expression is poetic and in part illogical but the sense is clear:* why do we exchange our lands for those warmed by another sun? "The pasture is always greener . . ."
[13] **exsul, exsulis,** *m.*, exile; *with* **patriae quis,** who an exile of (from) his native land
[14] **fūgit,** *perf.*, has ever fled
[15] **scandō, -ere, scandī, scānsum,** climb up
[16] **aerātus, -a, -um,** fitted with bronze, *probably referring to the bronze beaks of the men-of-war* (**longae nāvēs**), *which were faster than the ordinary ships—though even these cannot outstrip anxiety.*
[17] **turma, -ae,** a troop of cavalry (**equitum,** *L.I. 18 n. 53*). *A person cannot ride fast enough to escape care.*
[18] **ōcior, -ius,** *adj. in compar. degree,* swifter, *agreeing with* **cūra**
[19] **cervus, -ī,** stag
[20] **nimbus, -ī,** rain cloud
[21] **Eurus, -ī,** wind (from the southeast)
[22] **laetus, -a, -um,** happy, joyful
[23] **praesēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** present; **in praesēns (tempus)** for the present (*cp. the* **carpe diem** *philosophy*)

ōderit[24] cūrāre et amāra[25] lentō[26]
15 temperet[27] rīsū[28]: nihil est ab omnī
parte[29] beātum.
(**Horace,** *Odes* 2.16.13–28)

27. DIĒS FĒSTUS

Hic diēs[1] vērē mihi fēstus ātrās
eximet[2] cūrās: ego nec tumultum
nec morī per vim metuam tenente
Caesare[3] terrās.
5 Ī, pete unguentum,[4] puer,[5] et corōnās,[6]
et cadum[7] Mārsī[8] memorem[9] duellī,
Spartacum[10] sī quā[11] potuit vagantem
fallere[12] testa.[13]
(**Horace,** *Odes* 3.14.13–20)

28. A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius[1]
rēgālīque[2] sitū[3] pȳramidum[4] altius,[5]
quod nōn imber[6] edāx,[7] nōn Aquilō[8] impotēns[9]
possit dīruere[10] aut innumerābilis[11]
5 annōrum seriēs[12] et fuga temporum.
Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam[13] . . .
(**Horace,** *Odes* 3.30.1–7)

[24] **ōderit,** *perf. subj., jussive,* let (the **laetus animus**) refuse to (hate to) be anxious about (**cūrāre**)
[25] **amārus, -a, -um,** bitter, disagreeable; **amāra,** *n. pl.*
[26] **lentus, -a, -um,** pliant, tenacious, slow, lingering; *here* = tolerant, quiet
[27] **temperō** (1), control, temper
[28] **rīsus, -ūs,** laughter (*cp.* **rīdeō**)
[29] **ab omnī parte,** from every part = in every respect, completely

27

METER: Sapphic stanza.
[1] **Hic diēs,** *referring to Augustus' return from the campaign of 27–25* B.C. *in Spain*
[2] **eximō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum,** take away
[3] Caesar = Augustus. *When C. Octavius was adopted by his great-uncle, C. Iulius Caesar, his name became C. Iulius Caesar Octavianus, to which the senate added the title of Augustus in 27* B.C.
[4] **unguentum, -ī,** ointment, perfume
[5] **puer** = slave; *cp. Fr.* **garçon**
[6] **corōna, -ae,** crown, wreath
[7] **cadus, -ī,** wine jar
[8] **Mārsus, -a, -um,** Marsian; **duellum** = *old form of* **bellum: Marsī duellī,** *of the Marsian, or Social, War of 91–88* B.C., *by which the* **sociī** *(allies) of Rome in Italy gained full citizenship; i.e., a 65-year-old wine*
[9] **memor,** *gen.* **-oris,** mindful
[10] **Spartacus, -ī,** Spartacus, *the gladiator who led the slaves in revolt against Rome, 73–71* B.C.
[11] **quā,** *adv.,* anywhere *or* in any way
[12] **fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum,** deceive, escape the notice of
[13] **testa, -ae,** jug

28

METER: Lesser Asclepiad.
[1] **perennis, -e,** lasting (throughout the year)
[2] **rēgālis, -e,** royal
[3] **situs, -ūs,** site, situation; *here* = structure
[4] **pȳramis, -idis,** *f.,* pyramid
[5] **altus, -a, -um,** high; **altius** *agrees with* **monumentum.**
[6] **imber, -bris,** *m.,* storm
[7] **edāx,** *gen.* **edacis,** greedy, destructive
[8] **aquilō, -ōnis,** *m.,* north wind
[9] **impotēns,** *gen.* **-ntis,** powerless (*to injure my monument*)
[10] **dīruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum,** raze, destroy
[11] **in-numerābilis, -e** = *Eng.*
[12] **seriēs, -ēī,** succession
[13] **Libitīna, -ae,** Libitina, *goddess of funerals;* death

29. THE OTHER PERSON'S FAULTS AND OUR OWN

Pērās[1] imposuit[2] Iuppiter nōbīs duās:
propriīs[3] replētam[4] vitiīs post tergum[5] dedit,[6]
aliēnīs[7] ante pectus[8] suspendit[9] gravem.
Hāc rē vidēre nostra mala nōn possumus;
5 aliī simul[10] dēlinquunt,[11] cēnsōrēs[12] sumus.
(**Phaedrus,** *Fābulae* 4.10)

30. SOUR GRAPES

Famē[1] coācta vulpēs[2] altā in vīneā[3]
ūvam[4] appetēbat,[5] summīs saliēns[6] vīribus.
Quam[7] tangere ut nōn potuit, discēdēns ait:
"Nōndum mātūra[8] est; nōlō acerbam sūmere.[9]"
5 Quī facere[10] quae nōn possunt verbīs ēlevant,[11]
adscrībere[12] hoc dēbēbunt exemplum sibī.
(**Phaedrus,** *Fābulae* 4.3)

31. THE FOX AND THE TRAGIC MASK

Persōnam[1] tragicam[2] forte[3] vulpēs vīderat.
"Ō quanta speciēs,[4]" inquit, "cerebrum[5] nōn habet!"
Hoc illīs dictum est quibus honōrem et glōriam
Fortūna tribuit,[6] sēnsum commūnem abstulit.
(**Phaedrus,** *Fābulae* 1.7)

32. THE STAG AT THE SPRING

Ad fontem[1] cervus, cum bibisset, restitit,[2]

29

METER: Iambic trimeter.
Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.
[1] **pēra, -ae,** wallet
[2] **im-pōnō,** + *dat.,* put on
[3] **proprius, -a, -um,** one's own, *here* = our own
[4] **repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** fill; **(pēram) replētam**
[5] **tergum, -ī,** back
[6] **dedit,** *here* = put
[7] **aliēnus, -a, -um,** belonging to another; **aliēnīs (vitiīs),** *abl. with* **gravem**
[8] *sc.* **nostrum**
[9] **(alteram pēram) gravem . . . suspendit**
[10] **simul** = **simul ac,** as soon as
[11] **dēlinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum,** fail, commit a crime
[12] **cēnsor, -ōris,** *m.,* censor; censurer, severe judge

30

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] **famēs, -is,** *abl.* **-e,** appetite, hunger
[2] **vulpēs, -is,** *f.,* fox
[3] **vīnea, -ae,** vineyard
[4] **ūva, -ae,** bunch of grapes
[5] **ap-petō** (= **ad-petō**), reach toward, desire (*cp. appetite*); **appetēbat,** *note the force of the impf.*
[6] **saliō, -īre, -uī, saltum,** jump
[7] **quam** = **ūvam**
[8] **mātūrus, -a, -um,** ripe
[9] **sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,** take
[10] *compl. inf. with* **possunt**
[11] **ēlevō** (1), disparage, weaken
[12] **ad-scrībō,** assign

31

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] **persōna, -ae,** mask *worn by actors*
[2] **tragicus, -a, -um,** tragic
[3] **forte,** *adv.,* by chance
[4] **speciēs, -ēī,** appearance, form
[5] **cerebrum, -ī,** brain
[6] **tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum,** allot, assign, give

32

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] **fōns, fontis,** *m.,* spring
[2] **restō, -āre, restitī,** remain (standing)

et in liquōre[3] vīdit effigiem[4] suam.
Ibi dum rāmōsa[5] mīrāns[6] laudat cornua,
crūrumque[7] nimiam[8] tenuitātem[9] vituperat,[10]
5 vēnantum[11] subitō vōcibus conterritus,[12]
per campum fugere coepit, et cursū levī
canēs[13] ēlūsit.[14] Silva tum excēpit ferum,[15]
in quā retentīs[16] impedītus cornibus,
lacerārī[17] coepit morsibus[18] saevīs[19] canum.
10 Tunc moriēns vōcem hanc ēdidisse[20] dīcitur:
"Ō mē īnfēlīcem[21]! quī nunc dēmum[22] intellegō
ūtilia mihi quam[23] fuerint quae[24] dēspexeram,[25]
et quae laudāram,[26] quantum lūctūs[27] habuerint."
(**Phaedrus,** *Fābulae* 1.12)

33. THE FOX GETS THE RAVEN'S CHEESE

Quī sē laudārī gaudet verbīs subdolīs,[1]
ferē dat poenās turpī paenitentiā.[2]
Cum dē fenestrā corvus[3] raptum cāseum[4]
comēsse[5] vellet, celsā residēns[6] arbore,
5 hunc vīdit vulpēs; deinde sīc coepit loquī:
"Ō quī tuārum, corve, pennārum[7] est nitor[8]!
Quantum decōris[9] corpore et vultū geris![10]
Sī vōcem habērēs, nūlla prior[11] āles[12] foret."[13]
At ille stultus, dum vult vōcem ostendere,
10 ēmīsit[14] ōre cāseum, quem celeriter
dolōsa[15] vulpēs avidīs[16] rapuit dentibus.[17]
(**Phaedrus,** *Fābulae* 1.13.1–10)

[3] **liquor, -ōris,** *m.,* liquid
[4] **effigiēs, -ēī,** image, likeness
[5] **rāmōsus, -a, -um,** branching
[6] **mīror** (1), marvel at, wonder
[7] **crūs, crūris,** *n.,* leg
[8] **nimius, -a, -um,** excessive
[9] **tenuitās, -tātis,** *f.,* thinness
[10] **vituperō** (1), blame, find fault with
[11] **vēnor** (1), hunt; **vēnantum,** *gen. pl. of pres. part.*
[12] **con-territus**
[13] **canis, -is,** *m./f.,* dog
[14] **ēlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum,** evade
[15] **ferus, -ī,** wild animal
[16] **re-tentus, -a, -um,** held back, held fast
[17] **lacerō** (1), tear to pieces (*cp.* lacerate)
[18] **morsus, -ūs,** bite
[19] **saevus, -a, -um,** fierce, savage
[20] **ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** give out, utter
[21] **mē īnfēlīcem,** *acc. of exclamation.*
[22] **dēmum,** *adv.,* at last
[23] **ūtilia . . . quam = quam ūtilia**
[24] (ea, those things) **quae**
[25] **dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,** look down on, despise
[26] = **laudāveram**
[27] **lūctus, -ūs,** grief, sorrow

33

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] **subdolus, -a, -um,** deceitful
[2] **paenitentia, -ae,** repentance
[3] **corvus, -ī,** raven
[4] **cāseus, -ī,** cheese
[5] **comedō, comedere** *or* **comēsse, -ēdī, -ēsum,** eat up
[6] **resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,** sit, be sitting
[7] **penna, -ae,** feather
[8] **nitor, -ōris,** *m.,* brightness, beauty; **quī est nitor,** what (= how great) is the beauty
[9] **decor, decōris,** *m.,* grace, beauty
[10] you bear, *i.e.,* have in your body and face; **(in) corpore,** *preps. often omitted in poetry*
[11] **prior,** *predicate adj. after* **foret,** better, finer
[12] **āles, ālitis,** *f.,* bird
[13] **foret = esset**
[14] **ē-mittō**
[15] **dolōsus, -a, -um,** crafty, cunning
[16] **avidus, -a, -um,** greedy, eager
[17] **dēns, dentis,** *m.,* tooth

34. THE ASS AND THE OLD SHEPHERD

In prīncipātū[1] commūtandō[2] cīvium
nīl praeter dominī nōmen mūtant pauperēs.
Id esse vērum parva haec fābella[3] indicat.
Asellum[4] in prātō[5] timidus[6] pāscēbat[7] senex.
5 Is, hostium clamōre[8] subitō[9] territus,
suādēbat[10] asinō fugere nē possent capī.
At ille lentus:[11] "Quaesō,[12] num bīnās[13] mihī
clītellās[14] impositūrum[15] victōrem[16] putās?"
Senex negāvit. "Ergō quid rēfert meā[17]
10 cui serviam clītellās dum portem[18] meās?"

(**Phaedrus,** *Fābulae* 1.15)

35. THE TWO MULES AND THE ROBBERS

Mūlī[1] gravātī[2] sarcinīs[3] ībant duō.
Ūnus ferēbat fiscōs[4] cum pecūniā;
alter tumentēs[5] multō saccōs[6] hordeō.[7]
Ille onere[8] dīves, celsā cervīce[9] ēminēns[10]
5 clārumque collō[11] iactāns[12] tintinnābulum[13];
comes[14] quiētō[15] sequitur et placidō[16] gradū.[17]
Subitō latrōnēs[18] ex īnsidiīs advolant,[19]
interque caedem ferrō mūlum lancinant[20];
dīripiunt[21] nummōs,[22] neglegunt vīle[23] hordeum.
10 Spoliātus[24] igitur cāsūs[25] cum flēret suōs,

34

METER: Iambic trimeter.

[1] **prīncipātus, -ūs,** rule, dominion
[2] **com-mūtō** (1), change
[3] **fābella, -ae,** fable
[4] **asellus, -ī,** a little ass, *diminutive of* **asinus, -ī,** an ass (*verse 6*)
[5] **prātum, -ī,** meadow
[6] **timidus, -a, -um,** timid
[7] **pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum,** pasture
[8] **clāmor, -ōris,** *m.,* shouting
[9] **subitus, -a, -um,** sudden
[10] **suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum,** urge
[11] **lentus, -a, -um,** slow, motionless, apathetic
[12] **quaesō, -ere,** beg, beseech, = **quaerō**
[13] **bīnās clītellās,** two pairs of panniers (*i.e., instead of the present single pair*); **bīnī, -ae, -a,** *distributive numeral used with a regularly pl. noun*
[14] **clītellae, -ārum,** a pair of panniers, baskets
[15] **im-pōnō** = **in** + **pōnō**
[16] **victor, -ōris** = *Eng.*
[17] what difference does it make to me, *highly idiomatic*
[18] **portō** (1), bear, carry

35

METER: Iambic trimeter.

[1] **mūlus, -ī,** mule
[2] **gravō** (1), load, burden
[3] **sarcina, -ae,** bundle, pack
[4] **fiscus, -ī,** basket
[5] **tumeō, -ēre,** swell, be swollen
[6] **saccus, -ī,** sack
[7] **hordeum, -ī,** barley
[8] **onus, -eris,** *n.,* burden, load
[9] **cervīx, -vīcis,** *f.,* neck
[10] **ēmineō, -ēre, -minuī,** stand out, be conspicuous
[11] **collum, -ī,** neck
[12] **iactō** (1), toss
[13] **tintinnābulum, -ī,** bell, *a delightfully onomatopoetic word*
[14] **comes, comitis,** *m./f.,* companion
[15] **quiētus, -a, -um,** quiet
[16] **placidus, -a, -um,** placid, gentle
[17] **gradus, -ūs,** step
[18] **latrō, -ōnis,** *m.,* bandit, robber
[19] **advolō** (1), fly, hasten
[20] **lancinō** (1), mangle
[21] **dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum,** plunder
[22] **nummus, -ī,** currency, money
[23] **vīlis, -e,** cheap
[24] **spoliō** (1), rob
[25] **cāsus, -ūs,** accident

"Equidem," inquit alter, "mē contemptum gaudeō.
Nam nihil āmīsī, nec sum laesus[26] vulnere."
Hōc argūmentō tūta est hominum tenuitās[27];
magnae perīclō[28] sunt opēs obnoxiae.[29]
(Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 2.7)

36. DELIGHTS OF THE COUNTRY

C.[1] PLĪNIUS CALPURNIŌ MACRŌ[2] SUŌ S.[1]

Bene est[3] mihi quia[4] tibi est bene. Habēs uxōrem tēcum, habēs fīlium; frueris[5] marī, fontibus, viridibus,[6] agrō, vīllā amoenissimā.[7] Neque enim dubitō esse amoenissimam,[8] in quā sē composuerat[9] homō[10] fēlīcior antequam[11] "fēlīcissimus" fieret. Ego in Tuscīs[12] et vēnor[13] et studeō, quae[14] interdum[15] alternīs,[16] interdum simul[17] faciō; nec tamen adhūc[18] possum prōnūntiāre utrum sit difficilius capere aliquid an scrībere. Valē. **(Pliny,** *Epistulae* 5.18)

37. C. PLĪNIUS CANĪNIŌ[1] SUŌ S.

Studēs an[2] piscāris[3] an vēnāris an simul omnia? Possunt enim omnia simul fierī ad Lārium[4] nostrum. Nam lacus[5] piscem,[6] ferās[7] silvae quibus lacus cingitur,[8] studia altissimus iste sēcessus[9] adfatim[10] suggerunt.[11] Sed sīve[12] omnia simul sīve aliquid facis, nōn possum dīcere "invideō"; angor[13] tamen . . . Numquamne hōs artissimōs laqueōs[14] . . . abrumpam?[15] Numquam, putō. Nam veteribus negōtiīs[16] nova accrēscunt,[17] nec tamen priōra

[26] **laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum,** injure
[27] **tenuitās, -tātis,** *f.,* poverty
[28] **perīclum, -ī,** *early Lat. form, used instead of* **perīculum** *in classical Lat. poetry whenever it was metrically convenient*
[29] **obnoxius, -a, -um,** subject to, exposed to

36
[1] *L.A. 11 n. 1 and 3*
[2] **Calpurnius Macer**
[3] it is
[4] **quia,** *conj.,* because
[5] **fruor, -ī, frūctus sum** + *abl.,* enjoy (*cp.* **frūctus, -ūs**)
[6] **viridis, -e,** green; **viridia,** *gen.* **viridium,** *n. pl. as a noun,* green things, greenery
[7] **amoenus, -a, -um,** pleasant
[8] **amoenissimam,** *agreeing with* **vīllam** *understood as subject of* **esse**
[9] **sē compōnere,** to compose oneself, to rest
[10] the man, *apparently referring to a former owner who had been happier* (**fēlīcior**) *on this estate as an ordinary person* (**homō**) *before he could realize his ambition of becoming* "most happy" (**fēlīcissimus**), *i.e., before he could achieve some very high position which did not give him supreme happiness after all.*
[11] **antequam** + *subj.*
[12] *lit.* in the Tuscans = on my Tuscan estate
[13] **vēnor** (1), hunt
[14] **quae,** *n. pl. referring to* **vēnor** *and* **studeō** *as antecedents*
[15] **interdum,** *adv.,* sometimes, at times
[16] **alternīs,** *adv.,* alternately, by turns
[17] **simul,** *adv.,* at the same time, simultaneously. *In another letter (1.6), Pliny tells how he combined hunting and studying in one operation.*
[18] **adhūc,** *adv.,* thus far, till now

37
[1] *Pliny and Caninius were fellow townsmen from Comum (Como) at the south end of beautiful Lake Larius (Como) in northern Italy.*
[2] **an** *in questions,* or
[3] **piscor** (1), to fish
[4] **Lārius, -iī,** Lake Larius (now Lake Como)
[5] **lacus, -ūs,** lake
[6] **piscis, -is,** *m.,* fish
[7] **fera** (*sc.* **bēstia**), **-ae,** wild animal
[8] **cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum,** surround, gird
[9] **sēcessus, -ūs,** retreat, summer place
[10] **adfatim,** *adv.,* sufficiently, abundantly
[11] **sug-gerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum,** furnish, afford, supply
[12] **sīve . . . sīve,** (**sī-ve**), if . . . or if, whether . . . or
[13] **angō, -ere,** torment
[14] **artus, -a, -um,** close, narrow; **laqueus, -ī,** noose, cord
[15] **ab-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** break off, sever. *Pliny is tied up in Rome.*
[16] **negōtium, -iī,** business; duty
[17] **accrēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum,** increase; **nova (negōtia) accrēscunt (veteribus negōtiīs)** new duties increase by . . . *or* are added to . . .

peraguntur[18]; tot nexibus,[19] tot quasi catēnīs[20] maius in diēs[21] occupātiōnum[22] agmen[23] extenditur.[24] Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 2.8, excerpts)

38. HAPPY MARRIED LIFE

C. PLĪNIUS GEMINŌ SUŌ S.

Grave vulnus Macrinus noster accēpit: āmīsit[1] uxōrem singulāris[2] exemplī . . . Vīxit cum hāc trīgintā novem annīs[3] sine iūrgiō,[4] sine offēnsā.[5] Quam illa reverentiam[6] marītō[7] suō praestitit, cum ipsa summam merērētur![8] Quot quantāsque virtūtēs ex dīversīs[9] aetātibus sūmptās collēgit et miscuit! Habet quidem Macrinus grande[10] sōlācium, quod tantum bonum tam diū tenuit; sed hinc[11] magis exacerbātur[12] quod āmīsit. Nam fruendīs voluptātibus crēscit carendī dolor. Erō ergō suspēnsus[13] prō homine amīcissimō dum[14] admittere[15] āvocāmenta[16] et cicātrīcem[17] patī possit, quam nihil aequē ac[18] necessitās[19] ipsa et diēs[20] longa et satietās[21] dolōris indūcit.[22] Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 8.5, excerpts)

39. FAITHFUL IN SICKNESS AND IN DEATH

C. PLĪNIUS NEPŌTĪ SUŌ S.

(. . . Fannia[1]) neptis[2] Arriae[3] illīus[4] quae marītō[5] et sōlācium mortis et exemplum fuit. Multa referēbat[6] aviae[7] suae nōn minōra hōc,[8] sed obscūriōra,[9] quae tibi exīstimō tam mīrābilia legentī[10] fore[11] quam mihi audientī fuērunt.

[18] **per-agō,** complete
[19] **nexus, -ūs,** coils, obligations
[20] **catēna, -ae,** chain
[21] **in diēs,** from day to day
[22] **occupātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* occupation, employment
[23] **agmen, -minis,** *n.,* line of march, column
[24] **ex-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum,** extend, increase

38

[1] he lost (*not* sent away)
[2] **singulāris, -e,** extraordinary
[3] *The abl. is sometimes used instead of the acc. to express the idea of extent of time.*
[4] **iūrgium, -iī,** quarrel
[5] **offēnsa, -ae,** hatred, affront
[6] **reverentia, -ae,** respect
[7] **marītus, -ī,** husband
[8] **mereor, -ērī, meritus sum,** deserve
[9] **dīversus, -a, -um,** diverse, different
[10] **grandis, -e,** great
[11] **hinc** *here* = from this cause
[12] **exacerbō** (1), exasperate; embitter
[13] **suspēnsus, -a, -um,** in suspense, anxious
[14] **dum,** *conj.,* until, *used with the subj. to imply intention or expectancy*
[15] **ad-mittō,** admit, receive
[16] **āvocāmentum, -ī,** diversion
[17] **cicātrīx, -trīcis,** *f.,* scar, *which implies healing*
[18] **aequē ac,** equally as, quite so well as
[19] **necessitās (-tātis,** *f.*) **ipsa,** necessity itself, sheer necessity
[20] *here* = time
[21] **satietās, -tātis,** *f.,* satiety
[22] **in-dūcō,** bring on, induce

39

[1] **Fannia (est)**
[2] **neptis, -is,** *f.,* granddaughter
[3] **Arria, -ae,** Arria (Maior), *brave wife of Caecina Paetus. When, because of his part in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius, he had to commit suicide in 42* A.D., *Arria committed suicide with him, actually setting him an example as indicated at the end of the letter.* (*Cp.* **"Paete, Nōn Dolet,"** *ch. 39*).
[4] **ille,** the famous, *when immediately following its noun*
[5] **marītō,** *dat.*
[6] **referēbat,** *subject = Fannia, who related these episodes during a conversation with Pliny on the preceding day.*
[7] **avia, -ae,** grandmother; **aviae,** *gen. case*
[8] **hōc,** *abl. of comparison, referring to the rel. cl. of the preceding sent.*
[9] **obscūrus, -a, -um,** obscure, unknown
[10] **legentī,** to be construed with **tibi**
[11] **fore** = **futūra esse,** *fut. inf. in ind. state. depending on* **exīstimō** (1), think

5 Aegrōtābat[12] Caecīna Paetus, marītus eius, aegrōtābat et fīlius, uterque mortiferē,[13] ut vidēbātur. Fīlius dēcessit[14] eximiā[15] pulchritūdine,[16] parī verēcundiā,[17] et parentibus nōn minus ob[18] alia cārus quam quod fīlius erat. Huic illa ita fūnus[19] parāvit . . . ut ignōrāret marītus. Quīn immō,[20] quotiēns[21] cubiculum[22] eius intrāret,[23] vīvere fīlium atque etiam commodiōrem[24] 10 esse simulābat[25]; ac persaepe[26] interrogantī[27] quid ageret puer respondēbat, "Bene quiēvit,[28] libenter cibum[29] sūmpsit." Deinde, cum diū cohibitae[30] lacrimae vincerent prōrumperentque,[31] ēgrediēbātur; tunc sē dolōrī dabat. Satiāta, siccīs[32] oculīs, compositō vultū redībat, tamquam orbitātem[33] forīs relīquisset.[34] Praeclārum quidem illud[35] eiusdem: ferrum stringere,[36] 15 perfodere[37] pectus, extrahere[38] pugiōnem,[39] porrigere[40] marītō, addere[41] vōcem immortālem ac paene[42] dīvīnam,[43] "Paete, nōn dolet." . . . Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 3.16, excerpts)

40. A SWEET, BRAVE GIRL

C. PLĪNIUS MARCELLĪNŌ SUŌ S.

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī fīliā minōre defūnctā,[1] quā puellā[2] nihil umquam fēstīvius,[3] amābilius,[4] nec longiōre vītā . . . dignius vīdī. Nōndum annōs trēdecim implēverat,[5] et iam illī[6] anīlis[7] prūdentia, mātrōnālis[8] gravitās[9] erat, et tamen suāvitās[10] puellāris[11] . . . Ut[12] illa patris cer-

[12] **aegrōtō** (1), be sick
[13] **mortiferē,** *adv.* (**mors-ferō**), fatally
[14] **dē-cēdō,** go away, die (*cp.* deceased)
[15] **eximius, -a, -um,** extraordinary
[16] **pulchritūdō, -dinis,** *f.,* beauty; **eximiā pulchritūdine,** *abl.* describing **fīlius** *but more easily translated if we supply a word like* **puer: fīlius dēcessit—(puer) eximiā pulchritūdine,** *etc.*
[17] **verecūndia, -ae,** modesty
[18] **ob,** *prep.* + *acc.,* on account of; toward
[19] **fūnus, -eris,** *n.,* funeral
[20] **quīn immō,** why, on the contrary
[21] **quotiēns,** *adv.,* as often as
[22] **cubiculum, -ī,** bedroom
[23] **intrō** (1), enter; **intrāret:** *in Silver Lat. the impf. subj. of customary action is often found in place of the indic.*
[24] **commodus, -a, -um,** suitable, satisfactory; *here* = better
[25] **simulō** (1) pretend
[26] **per-saepe,** *adv.,* very often
[27] **interrogō** (1), ask, inquire (*cp.* **rogō**); **(marītō) interrogantī**
[28] **quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus,** rest, be quiet
[29] **cibus, -ī,** food
[30] **cohibeō, -ere, -uī, -itum,** hold together, hold back, restrain
[31] **prōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** burst forth
[32] **siccus, -a, -um,** dry; **siccīs oculīs** *abl. abs.*
[33] **orbitās, -tātis,** *f.,* bereavement, loss
[34] *What kind of condition in the* **tamquam** *cl.?*
[35] that deed; *sc.* **fuit**
[36] **stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, strictus,** draw; **stringere,** *inf. in apposition with* **illud**
[37] **perfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum,** pierce (*lit.* dig through)
[38] **ex-trahō**
[39] **pugiō, -ōnis,** *m.,* dagger
[40] **porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum,** hold out, extend
[41] **ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** add
[42] **paene,** *adv.,* almost
[43] **dīvīnus, -a, -um** = *Eng.*

40

[1] **dēfungor, -ī, -fūnctus sum,** finish *or* complete life, die. *The family tomb was discovered near Rome in 1880 and in it a cinerary urn with the inscription:* **Dīs mānibus Miniciae Mārcellae, Fundānī fīliae. Vīxit annīs XII, mēnsibus XI, diēbus VII:** To the divine shades of Minicia Marcella . . . (*The abbreviations in the inscription have been expanded.*)
[2] **puellā,** *abl. of comparison*
[3] **fēstīvus, -a, -um,** pleasant, agreeable
[4] **amābilis, -e,** lovable, lovely
[5] **impleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** fill up, complete
[6] *dat. of possession* (*S.S.*)
[7] **anīlis, -e,** of an old woman
[8] **mātrōnālis, -e,** of a matron, matronly
[9] **gravitās, -tātis,** *f.,* seriousness, dignity
[10] **suāvitās, -tātis,** *f.,* sweetness
[11] **puellāris, -e,** girlish
[12] how

5 vīcibus[13] inhaerēbat[14]! Ut nōs, amīcōs paternōs,[15] et amanter[16] et modestē[17] complectēbātur![18] Ut nūtrīcēs,[19] ut paedagōgōs,[20] ut praeceptōrēs[21] prō suō quemque officiō dīligēbat! Quam studiōsē,[22] quam intelligenter[23] lēctitābat[24]! . . .

Quā illa temperantiā,[25] quā patientiā, quā etiam cōnstantiā[26] novissi-
10 mam valētūdinem[27] tulit! Medicīs obsequēbātur;[28] sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur[29]; ipsamque sē dēstitūtam[30] corporis vīribus vigōre[31] animī sustinēbat.[32] Dūrāvit[33] hic[34] illī ūsque ad extrēmum,[35] nec aut spatiō[36] valētūdinis aut metū mortis īnfrāctus est[37] . . . Ō trīste plānē[38] acerbumque fūnus[39] . . . Iam dēstināta erat[40] ēgregiō[41] iuvenī,[42] iam ēlēctus[43] nūptiārum[44] diēs, iam
15 nōs vocātī. Quod gaudium quō maerōre[45] mūtātum est!

Nōn possum exprimere[46] verbīs quantum animō vulnus accēperim cum audīvī Fundānum ipsum praecipientem,[47] quod[48] in vestēs,[49] margarīta,[50] gemmās[51] fuerat ērogātūrus,[52] hoc in tūs[53] et unguenta et odōrēs[54] impenderētur[55] . . . Sī quās ad eum dē dolōre tam iūstō litterās mittēs, mementō[56]
20 adhibēre[57] sōlācium . . . molle[58] et hūmānum. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 5.16, excerpts)

41. PLINY'S CONCERN ABOUT A SICK FREEDMAN

C. PLĪNIUS VALERIŌ PAULĪNŌ SUŌ S.

Videō quam molliter[1] tuōs[2] habeās[3]; quō simplicius[4] tibi cōnfitēbor quā

[13] **cervīx, -īcis,** *f., usually pl.* **(cervīcēs)** *as here,* neck
[14] **inhaereō, -ēre, -haesī, -haesum,** cling
[15] **paternus, -a, -um,** paternal, of a father
[16] **amanter,** *adv. of* **amāns**
[17] **modestē,** *adv.,* modestly
[18] **complector, -ī, -plexus sum,** hold in the arms, embrace
[19] **nūtrīx, -īcis,** *f.,* nurse
[20] **paedagōgus, -ī,** tutor (*slave who escorted children*)
[21] **praeceptor, -ōris,** *m.,* teacher (*in a school, not a private tutor*)
[22] **studiōsē,** *adv. of* **studiōsus,** full of **studium**
[23] **intellegenter,** *adv. of* **intelligēns**
[24] **lēctitō** (1), read (eagerly)
[25] **temperantia, -ae,** self-control
[26] **cōnstantia, -ae,** firmness
[27] **valētūdō, -dinis,** *f., here* = bad health, illness
[28] **ob + sequor,** obey
[29] **adhortor** = **hortor**
[30] **dēstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** desert, abandon
[31] **vigor, -ōris,** *m.,* vigor; **vigōre,** *abl. of means with* **sustinēbat**
[32] **(puella) sustinēbat sē ipsam**
[33] **dūrō** (1), endure
[34] **hic (vigor animī)**
[35] **extrēmum, -ī** = **fīnis**
[36] **spatium, -iī,** space, duration
[37] **īnfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum,** break
[38] **plānē,** *adv.,* clearly
[39] *here* = **mors**
[40] **dēstinō** (1), bind, engage
[41] **ēgregius, -a, -um,** excellent, distinguished
[42] **iuvenis, -is,** *m.,* young man
[43] **ē-ligō** = **legō**
[44] **nūptiae, -ārum,** wedding
[45] **maeror, -ōris,** *m.,* grief
[46] **ex-primō** (= **premō**), express
[47] **praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** direct
[48] *The antecedent is* **hoc** *in the following line.*
[49] **vestis, -is,** *f.,* garment, clothes
[50] **margarītum, -ī,** pearl
[51] **gemma, -ae,** jewel
[52] **ērogō** (1), *pay out, spend;* **fuerat ērogātūrus** (*act. periphrastic*), he had been about to spend, had intended to spend (*on clothes, jewels, etc., for the wedding*)
[53] **tūs, tūris,** *n.,* incense
[54] **odor, -ōris,** *m.,* perfume
[55] **impendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsum,** expend; **impenderētur,** *subj. in a jussive noun cl.*
[56] **meminī, meminisse,** *defective vb.,* remember; **mementō,** *fut. imper.,* remember
[57] **adhibeō, -ere, -hibuī, -hibitum,** use, furnish
[58] **mollis, -e,** soft, gentle

41

[1] **molliter,** *adv. of* **mollis**
[2] **tuōs (servōs et lībertōs)**; *so* **meōs** *below*
[3] treat
[4] **simpliciter,** *adv.,* frankly, candidly; **quō simplicius** by which (*degree of difference*) more frankly = the more frankly

indulgentiā[5] meōs tractem.[6] Quod sī essem nātūrā asperior et dūrior, frangeret mē tamen īnfīrmitās[7] lībertī[8] meī Zōsimī,[9] cui tantō maior hūmānitās[10] exhibenda[11] est, quantō nunc illā magis eget. Homō probus,[12] officiōsus,[13]
5 litterātus[14]; et ars quidem eius et quasi īnscrīptiō[15]—cōmoedus . . . Ūtitur et citharā perītē.[16] Īdem tam commodē[17] ōrātiōnēs et historiās[18] et carmina legit ut hoc sōlum didicisse videātur.

Haec tibi sēdulō[19] exposuī quō magis scīrēs quam multa ūnus mihi et quam iūcunda ministeria[20] praestāret. Accēdit longa iam cāritās[21] hominis,
10 quam ipsa perīcula auxērunt[22] . . . Ante aliquot[23] annōs,[24] dum intentē instanterque[25] prōnūntiat, sanguinem[26] reiēcit[27]; atque ob hoc in Aegyptum[28] missus ā mē, post longam peregrīnātiōnem[29] cōnfīrmātus[30] rediit nūper. Deinde . . . veteris īnfīrmitātis[31] tussiculā[32] admonitus,[33] rūrsus sanguinem reddidit.[34]

15 Quā ex causā dēstināvī[35] eum mittere in praedia[36] tua quae Forō Iūliī[37] possidēs.[38] Audīvī enim tē referentem esse ibi āera[39] salūbrem[40] et lac[41] eius modī cūrātiōnibus[42] accommodātissimum.[43] Rogō ergō scrībās[44] tuīs[45] ut illī vīlla, ut domus[46] pateat . . . Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 5.19, excerpts)

ON BEHALF OF A PENITENT FREEDMAN (42–43)

[5] **indulgentia, -ae,** kindness
[6] **tractō** (1), handle, treat
[7] **īnfīrmitās, -tātis,** *f.,* illness, weakness
[8] **lībertus, -ī,** freedman (*a slave who had somehow secured his freedom) in contrast to a* **līber vir** (*one who was born free*). *A freedman commonly remained closely attached to his former master.*
[9] **Zōsimus, -ī,** Zosimus, apparently a Greek
[10] **hūmānitās, -tātis,** *f.,* kindness
[11] **ex-hibeō,** show, exhibit
[12] **probus, -a, -um,** honorable, fine
[13] **officiōsus, -a, -um,** obliging, courteous
[14] **litterātus, -a, -um,** well-educated; *Greek slaves especially were often well educated.*
[15] **īnscrīptiō, -ōnis,** *f., here* = label, *a placard hung around a slave's neck in the slave market to indicate his special abilities.*—**cōmoedus, -ī,** comic actor, *often a slave trained to read at dinners scenes from famous comedies. Although this was Zosimus' specialty, we find him in the next two sents. surprisingly versatile and talented.*
[16] **perītē,** *adv.,* skillfully
[17] **commodē,** *adv.,* fitly, satisfactorily
[18] **historia, -ae** = *Eng.*
[19] **sēdulō,** *adv.,* carefully
[20] **ministerium, -iī,** service
[21] **cāritās, -tātis,** *f.,* dearness, affection (*cp.* **cārus**)
[22] **augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum,** increase
[23] **aliquot,** *indecl. adj.,* several, some
[24] **ante . . . annōs,** several years ago
[25] earnestly and emphatically
[26] **sanguis, -inis,** *m.,* blood
[27] **re-iciō,** reject, spit out
[28] **Aegyptus, -ī,** *f.,* Egypt
[29] **peregrīnātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* travel *or* sojourn abroad
[30] **cōnfīrmō** (1), strengthen
[31] **īnfīrmitās, -tātis,** *f.,* weakness, sickness
[32] **tussicula, -ae,** slight cough
[33] **ad-monitus** = **monitus**
[34] **reddidit** = **reiēcit**
[35] **dēstinō** (1), intend, resolve
[36] **praedium, -iī,** country seat
[37] **Forum Iūliī, Forī Iūliī,** Forum of Julius, *modern* Fréjus, *a coastal town of southern France;* **Forō,** *place where*
[38] **possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,** possess, own
[39] **āēr, āeris,** *m.,* air; **āera** = *Gk. acc. sg.*
[40] **salūbris, -e,** healthful; *still so regarded*
[41] **lac, lactis,** *n.,* milk; *i.e., for the milk cure*
[42] **cūrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* cure
[43] **accommodātus, -a, -um,** suited
[44] **(ut) scrībās: ut** *is sometimes omitted in such cls.*
[45] **tuīs,** your servants
[46] **ut vīlla (pateat), ut domus pateat:** *i.e., he is to have access to the great house itself as well as to the estate.*

42. C. PLĪNIUS SABĪNIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Lībertus tuus, cui suscēnsēre[1] tē dīxerās, vēnit ad mē . . . Flēvit multum, multum rogāvit, multum etiam tacuit; in summā,[2] fēcit mihi fidem paenitentiae.[3] Vērē crēdō ēmendātum[4] quia dēlīquisse[5] sē sentit. Īrāsceris, sciō; et īrāsceris meritō,[6] id quoque sciō; sed tunc praecipua[7] mānsuētūdinis[8] laus
5 cum īrae causa iūstissima est. Amāstī[9] hominem et, spērō, amābis; interim[10] sufficit[11] ut exōrārī[12] tē sinās[13] . . . Nē torserīs[14] illum, nē torserīs etiam tē; torquēris[15] enim, cum tam lēnis[16] īrāsceris. Vereor nē videar nōn rogāre sed cōgere, sī precibus[17] eius meās iūnxerō. Iungam tamen tantō plēnius[18] et effūsius,[19] quantō[20] ipsum[21] ācrius sevēriusque[22] corripuī[23] . . . Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 9.21, excerpts)

43. C. PLĪNIUS SABĪNIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Bene fēcistī[1] quod lībertum[2] aliquandō[3] tibi cārum redūcentibus[4] epistulīs[5] meīs in domum,[6] in animum recēpistī. Iuvābit hoc tē, mē certē iuvat; prīmum,[7] quod tē tam tractābilem[8] videō ut in īrā regī possīs; deinde, quod tantum mihi tribuis[9] ut vel[10] auctōritātī meae pāreās vel precibus indulgeās.[11]
5 Igitur laudō et grātiās agō . . . Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 9.24, excerpts)

44. SELECTION OF A TEACHER

C. PLĪNIUS MAURICŌ SUŌ S.

Quid ā tē mihi iūcundius potuit iniungī[1] quam ut praeceptōrem frātris tuī līberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō[2] tuō in scholam[3] redeō et illam dulcis-

42

[1] **suscēnseō, -ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum,** + *dat.*, be angry with
[2] **summa, -ae,** sum
[3] **paenitentia, -ae,** repentance
[4] **ēmendō** (1), correct; **(eum) ēmendātum (esse)**
[5] **dēlinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum,** fail (in duty), commit a crime
[6] **meritō,** *adv.*, rightly (with merit)
[7] **praecipuus, -a, -um,** special; *sc.* **est**
[8] **mānsuētūdō, -inis,** *f.*, gentleness, mildness
[9] *contracted form* = **amāvistī**
[10] **interim,** *adv.*, meanwhile (*cp.* **intereā**)
[11] **sufficit,** *subject* = **ut-*cl.***
[12] **ex-ōrō,** *stronger form of* **ōrō**
[13] **sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm,** allow, permit
[14] **torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum,** twist, torture; **nē torserīs,** *L.I. 22 n. 1*
[15] **torquēris,** you are tormented = you torment yourself (*reflexive use of the pass.*)
[16] **lēnis, -e,** gentle, kind; *agreeing with subject of* **īrāsceris:** you, such a gentle person
[17] **prex, precis,** *f.*, prayer
[18] **plēnē,** *adv. of* **plēnus**
[19] **effūsē,** *adv.*, profusely, unrestrainedly
[20] **tantō . . . quantō,** the more . . . the more, *abl. of degree of difference* (*S.S.*)
[21] **(lībertum) ipsum**
[22] **sevērē,** *adv.*, seriously, severely
[23] **cor-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum,** seize, accuse, blame

43

[1] you did well because = thank you for
[2] **lībertum,** *in thought, the obj. of both* **redūcentibus** *and* **recēpistī**
[3] **aliquandō,** *adv.*, once
[4] **re-dūcō**
[5] **epistulīs,** *here pl. of a single letter* (*the preceding one*) *on the analogy of* **litterae, -ārum**
[6] *Both prepositional phrases, connected by* **et** *understood, depend on* **recēpistī**
[7] **prīmum,** *adv.*, first
[8] **tractābilis, -ē,** tractable, compliant
[9] **tribuō, -ere, -buī, -būtum,** attribute, ascribe
[10] **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or
[11] **indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum,** yield to, gratify

44

[1] **in-iungō,** enjoin, impose
[2] **beneficiō tuō,** thanks to you
[3] **schola, -ae,** school

simam aetātem quasi resūmō.[4] Sedeō inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam experior quantum apud illōs auctōritātis[5] ex studiīs habeam. Nam proximē[6] frequentī[7] audītōriō[8] inter sē cōram[9] multīs ōrdinis[10] nostrī clārē[11] loquēbantur: intrāvī, conticuērunt[12]; quod[13] nōn referrem, nisi ad illōrum magis laudem quam ad meam pertinēret[14] . . . Cum omnēs quī profitentur[15] audierō, quid dē quōque sentiam scrībam efficiamque,[16] quantum tamen epistulā cōnsequī[17] poterō, ut ipse omnēs audīsse videāris. Dēbeō enim tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tuī hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim[18] super[19] tantā rē. Nam quid magis interest vestrā[20] quam ut līberī . . . dignī illō patre, tē patruō[21] reperiantur? . . . Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 2.8 excerpts)

45. THE OLD BOY DYED HIS HAIR

Mentīris[1] iuvenem tīnctīs,[2] Laetīne,[3] capillīs,[4]
tam subitō corvus quī modo cycnus[5] erās.
Nōn omnēs fallis[6]; scit tē Prōserpina[7] cānum[8]:
persōnam capitī dētrahet[9] illa[10] tuō.
(**Martial** 3.43)

46. WHAT'S IN A NAME?

Cinnam,[1] Cinname,[2] tē iubēs vocārī.
Nōn est hic, rogo, Cinna, barbarismus[3]?
Tū sī Fūrius[4] ante dictus essēs,
Fūr[5] istā ratiōne dīcerēris.
(**Martial** 6.17)

[4] **re-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum,** resume
[5] *gen.* with **quantum**
[6] **proximē,** *adv.,* very recently
[7] **frequēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** crowded
[8] **audītōrium, -iī,** lecture room, school; **audītōriō,** *place where without a prep.*
[9] **cōram,** *prep.* + *abl.,* in the presence of
[10] *i.e., the senatorial order*
[11] **clārē** (*adv. of* **clārus**), *here* = loudly
[12] **conticēscō, -ere, -ticuī,** become silent
[13] **quod,** *having as antecedent the whole preceding idea*
[14] **pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum,** pertain to
[15] **profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum,** teach, *a late meaning of the word*
[16] **efficiō . . . ut,** *L.A. 8 n. 20–21*
[17] **cōn-sequor,** accomplish
[18] **praesertim,** *adv.,* especially
[19] **super,** *prep.* + *abl.,* about
[20] **interest vestrā,** interests you (*highly idiomatic*)
[21] **patruus, -ī,** (paternal) uncle; **tē patruō** *is in the same construction as* **illō patre.**

45

METER: Elegiac couplet.
[1] **mentior, -īrī, -ītus sum,** lie, declare falsely, *here* = imitate
[2] **tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus,** wet, dye
[3] **Laetīnus, -ī,** Laetinus
[4] **capillī, -ōrum,** hair
[5] **cycnus, -ī,** swan
[6] **nōn ōmnēs (fallis)** *seems to imply that the hair dyes were good enough to deceive at least some people.*
[7] **Prōserpina, -ae,** Proserpina, *goddess of the underworld, and so of death*
[8] **cānus, -a, -um,** gray; **tē (esse) cānum**
[9] **dē-trahō**
[10] **illa** = Proserpina

46

METER: Hendecasyllabic.
[1] **Cinna, -ae,** *m.,* Cinna, *a famous Roman name*
[2] **Cinnamus, -ī,** Cinnamus, *a slave name meaning "cinnamon." The Romans often gave such names to slaves. Cinnamus, now a freedman, wanted to change his name to a Roman one for obvious reasons.*
[3] **barbarismus, -ī,** a barbarism, an impropriety of speech
[4] **Fūrius, -ī,** Furius, *an old Roman name*
[5] **Fūr,** *from* **fūr, fūris,** *m.,* thief; *cp.* **fūrtīvus**

47. FAKE TEARS

Āmissum[1] nōn flet cum sōla est Gellia[2] patrem;
sī quis adest, iussae[3] prōsiliunt[4] lacrimae.
Nōn lūget[5] quisquis laudārī, Gellia, quaerit;
ille dolet vērē quī sine teste[6] dolet.
(**Martial** 1.33)

48. EVEN THOUGH YOU DO INVITE ME—I'LL COME!

Quod convīvāris[1] sine mē tam saepe, Luperce,[2]
invēnī noceam quā ratiōne tibi.
Īrāscor: licet[3] ūsque vocēs mittāsque[4] rogēsque—
"Quid faciēs?" inquis. Quid faciam? Veniam!
(**Martial** 6.51)

49. PRO-*CRAS*-TINATION

Crās tē vīctūrum,[1] crās dīcis, Postume,[2] semper.
Dīc mihi, crās istud,[3] Postume, quando venit?
Quam longē est crās istud? ubi est? aut unde petendum[4]?
Numquid[5] apud Parthōs Armeniōsque[6] latet[7]?
5 Iam crās istud habet Priamī[8] vel Nestoris[9] annōs.
Crās istud quantī[10] dīc mihi possit emī[11]?
Crās vīvēs? Hodiē iam vīvere, Postume, sērum[12] est.
Ille sapit quisquis, Postume, vīxit herī.
(**Martial** 5.58)

50. ISSA

Issa[1] est passere[2] nēquior[3] Catullī:

47

METER: Elegiac couplet.
[1] **āmissum patrem**
[2] **Gellia, -ae,** Gellia
[3] at her bidding; *how literally?*
[4] **prōsiliō** (4), leap forth
[5] **lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum,** mourn
[6] **testis, -is,** *m.,* witness

48

METER: Elegiac couplet.
[1] **convīvor** (1), to feast
[2] **Lupercus, -ī,** Lupercus
[3] **licet ūsque (ut) vocēs** (it is even permitted that you call), you may even invite me, *or* even though you invite me
[4] *i.e., send a slave as a special messenger*

49

METER: Elegiac couplet.
[1] **vīctūrum,** *sc.* **esse**
[2] *No doubt Martial intended to have us think of Horace's Postumus in L.I. 25 above.*
[3] **crās istud,** that "tomorrow" of yours, *subj. of* **venit**
[4] **petendum (est)**
[5] **numquid latet,** it does not lie hidden, does it?
[6] among the Parthians and Armenians, *i.e., at land's end in the East*
[7] **lateō, -ēre, -uī,** lie hidden
[8] **Priamus, -ī,** Priam, *aged king of Troy*
[9] **Nestōr, -oris,** Nestor, *Greek leader famed for his years and wisdom*
[10] **quantī,** *gen. of indef. value:* at what price, for how much can that tomorrow be bought
[11] **emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum,** buy
[12] **sērus, -a, -um,** late; **sērum,** *pred. adj. in n.* to agree with **hodiē vīvere,** *which is subject of* **est**

50

METER: Hendecasyllabic.
[1] **Issa,** *colloquial and affectionate form for* **Ipsa** *and here used as the name of a pet dog*
[2] **passer Catullī,** *see L.I. 3*
[3] **nēquam,** *indecl. adj.; compar.* **nēquior, -ius,** worthless, good for nothing, mischievous

Issa est pūrior ōsculō columbae;[4]
Issa est blandior[5] omnibus puellīs;
Issa est cārior Indicīs[6] lapillīs[7];
5 Issa est dēliciae[8] catella[9] Pūblī.[10]

Hanc tū, sī queritur,[11] loquī putābis.
Sentit trīstitiamque[12] gaudiumque.
. . .
Hanc nē lūx rapiat suprēma[13] tōtam,
pictā[14] Pūblius exprimit[15] tabellā
10 in quā tam similem vidēbis Issam[16]
ut sit tam similis sibī nec[17] ipsa.
Issam dēnique pōne cum tabellā:
aut utramque putābis esse vēram
aut utramque putābis esse pictam.

(**Martial** 1.109)

[4] **columba, -ae,** dove
[5] **blandus, -a, -um,** flattering, caressing, coaxing
[6] **Indicus, -a, -um,** of India
[7] **lapillus, -ī,** precious stone, gem
[8] *see L.I. 3*
[9] **catella, -ae,** little dog
[10] **Pūblī** = **Pūbliī,** *gen. sg. of* **Pūblius**
[11] *here* = whimper
[12] **trīstitia, -ae,** sadness
[13] **lūx (diēs) suprēma** = **mors**
[14] **pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictum,** paint; **pictā tabellā,** by a painted tablet = in a painting
[15] **exprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum,** express, portray
[16] **tam similem . . . Issam:** an Issa (*of the painting*) so similar (*to the real Issa*)
[17] **nec** *here* = not even

自测练习[1]

这些自测练习旨在针对不同的读者增强本书的效用。

1. **重复是记忆之母 Repetītiō māter memoriae**。在语言学习中，重复的价值是毋庸置疑的。这些练习为正文的内容又增加了不少重复训练的机会。其中的短语和句子有意编写得比较简单，以突出形式和句法的要点。其中出现的单词仅限于正文的词汇表，在做这些自测练习之前，当然应当记住这些词汇。由于只是为了巩固所学的内容，这些句子当然不够有文采。对于有价值的阅读材料，读者可以在"古文选编"和古代阅读段落中找到提示。但是如果希望通过更多的反复练习来建立起语言反射，就可以做做这些自测练习。我们曾经建议，一定要把每一个拉丁词句大声朗读出来，因为这样一种训练可以使我们借助耳朵和眼睛进行学习，从而提供语言实验室状态下所能带来的多种好处。

2. 对于那些参加拉丁语班的学生来说，这些练习和答案有利于复习和自我测验，对备考也有帮助。

3. 对于自学或复习拉丁语的个人来说，这些练习当然也是有价值的，因为可以用它们来检验自己的水平，错误可以通过答案来纠正。利用答案完成这些练习，也可以增强完成本书正文练习的信心。

4. 每一位学生都可以通过把答案中的英语句子翻回到拉丁语，并且根据练习中相应的拉丁语句子来检验自己写作简单拉丁语的能力。

5. 在翻译时，通常只用到词汇表中给出的单词的各种含义中的一种。如果

[1] 在原书中，"自测练习"和"练习答案"是彼此分开的两个部分。为了方便读者查对，这里将每一课的练习和答案组合在了一起。——译者注

有的翻译显得有些形式化，那是因为用这种方式可以更好地符合拉丁语。当然，这些句子都旨在帮助我们理解拉丁语，而不是训练我们的文学表达。能够在翻译中使用优雅的文学表达是再理想不过的，应当连同本书中的其他练习一起去尝试。

6. 答案放在练习的后面，以方便学生进行自测，所以如果指导教师愿意，练习可以在课堂上做。不用说，检验自己的最保险的方式是先给出回答，再看答案。

7. 最后，我们再次强调，为了达到最佳效果，我们必须大声朗读所有拉丁语词、短语和句子，在做这些练习之前，必须已经通过词汇表认真学过每一课的课文。

第一课练习

1. 下列拉丁语人称词尾分别对应于什么英语代词：(1) –t, (2) –mus, (3) –ō, (4) –nt, (5) –s, (6) –tis。
2. 说出下列形式的名称并翻译：(1) monēre, (2) vidēre, (3) valēre, (4) dēbēre。
3. 说出下列形式的名称并翻译：(1) vocāre, (2) servāre, (3) dare, (4) cōgitāre, (5) laudāre, (6) amāre, (7) errāre。
4. 说出下列形式的名称并翻译：(1) vocā, (2) servā, (3) dā, (4) cōgitā, (5) laudā, (6) amā, (7) monē, (8) vidē, (9) valē。
5. 说出下列形式的名称并翻译：(1) vocāte, (2) servāte, (3) date, (4) cōgitāte, (5) laudāte, (6) amāte, (7) monēte, (8) vidēte, (9) valēte。
6. 翻译下列词：(1) vocat, (2) cōgitāmus, (3) amant, (4) dēbēs, (5) videt, (6) vident, (7) dēbēmus, (8) valēs, (9) errātis, (10) vidēmus, (11) amat, (12) vidētis, (13) errās, (14) dant, (15) servāmus, (16) dat, (17) amant, (18) vidēs。

7. Monent mē sī errō. 8. Monet mē sī errant. 9. Monēte mē sī errat. 10. Dēbēs monēre mē. 11. Dēbētis servāre mē. 12. Nōn dēbent laudāre mē. 13. "Quid dat?" "Saepe nihil dat." 14. Mē saepe vocant et (*and*) monent. 15. Nihil videō. Quid vidēs? 16. Mē laudā sī nōn errō, amābō tē. 17. Sī valētis, valēmus. 18. Sī valet, valeō. 19. Sī mē amat, dēbet mē laudāre. 20. Cōnservāte mē. 21. Nōn dēbeō errāre. 22. Quid dēbēmus laudāre? 23. Videt; cōgitat; monet.

答案

1. (1) he, she, it; (2) we; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.)。
2. 第二变位法动词的现在时主动态不定式。(1) to advise/warn; (2) to see; (3) to be strong; (4) to owe。
3. 第一变位法动词的现在时主动态不定式。(1) to call; (2) to save; (3) to give; (4) to think; (5) to praise; (6) to love; (7) to err。
4. 第一或第二变位法动词的第二人称单数现在时主动态命令式。(1) call;

(2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye。

5. 第一或第二变位法动词的第二人称复数现在时主动态命令式。(1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye。

6. (1) he/she/it calls, is calling, does call; (2) we think; (3) they love; (4) you (sg.) owe/ought; (5) he sees; (6) they see; (7) we owe/ought; (8) you (sg.) are strong; (9) you (pl.) err/are mistaken; (10) we see; (11) he/she/it loves; (12) you (pl.) see; (13) you (sg.) err; (14) they give; (15) we save; (16) he gives; (17) they love; (18) you (sg.) see.

7. They warn me if I err. 8. He warns me if they err. 9. Warn me if he errs. 10. You (sg.) ought to warn me. 11. You (pl.) ought to save me. 12. They ought not to praise me. 13. "What does he give?" "He often gives nothing." 14. They often call me and advise me. 15. I see nothing. What do you see? 16. Praise me, please, if I do not make a mistake. 17. If you (pl.) are well, we are well. 18. If he is well, I am well. 19. If he (she) loves me, he (she) ought to praise me. 20. Save me. 21. I ought not to err. 22. What ought we to praise? 23. He sees; he ponders; he advises.

第二课练习

1. 给出表示定冠词"the"和不定冠词"a"的拉丁词。
2. 在拉丁语中,表示下列结构或概念的分别是哪种格:(1) 动词的直接宾语; (2) 属有; (3) 动词主语; (4) 手段; (5) 直接称呼; (6) 动词的间接宾语。
3. 下列第一变格法词尾分别指示什么格、数和句法使用:(1) –ās; (2) –a; (3) –am; (4) – ae (pl.)。
4. 说出下列词尾所指示的格和数，如果可能，请给出与它们相联系的英语介词:(1) –ārum; (2) –ā; (3) –ae; (4) –īs。
5. 翻译下列名词，并说出每个词的词尾各指示什么句法使用:(1) puellam; (2) puella; (3) puellās; (4) puellae (plural form); (5) patriās; (6) patriam; (7) patria; (8) patriae (pl.); (9) pecūniam; (10) pecūnia; (11) poenās; (12) poenam。
6. 根据格词尾翻译下列名词:(1) puellae (sg.); (2) puellārum; (3)ō patria; (4) patriae (sg.); (5) pecūniā; (6) pecūniae (sg.); (7) poenīs; (8) poenā; (9) poenārum。
7. 根据下列单数主格形式,写出所要求的拉丁语形式:(1) **multa pecūnia** in the genitive and the accusative singular; (2) **magna fāma** in dat. and abl. sg.; (3) **vīta mea** in gen. sg. and nom. pl.; (4) **fortūna tua** in acc. sg. and pl.; (5) **magna patria** in gen. sg. and pl.; (6) **fortūna mea** in abl. sg. and pl.; (7) **magna poena** in dat. sg. and pl.; (8) **multa philosophia** in dat. and abl. pl.。

8. 根据英语介词所指示的格将下列短语翻译成拉丁语：(1) by much money; (2) of many girls; (3) to/for my country; (4) great life (动词的直接宾语); (5) by your penalties; (6) many countries (动词的主语); (7) to/for many girls; (8) of my life; (9) O fortune; (10) girl's; (11) girls'; (12) girls (直接称呼); (13) the girls (动词的直接宾语); (14) the girls (动词的主语)。

9. Valē, patria mea. 10. Fortūna puellae est magna. 11. Puella fortūnam patriae tuae laudat. 12. Ō puella, patriam tuam servā. 13. Multae puellae pecūniam amant. 14. Puellae nihil datis. 15. Pecūniam puellae videt. 16. Pecūniam puellārum nōn vidēs. 17. Monēre puellās dēbēmus. 18. Laudāre puellam dēbent. 19. Vīta multīs puellīs fortūnam dat. 20. Vītam meam pecūniā tuā cōnservās. 21. Fāma est nihil sine fortūnā. 22. Vītam sine pecūniā nōn amātis. 23. Sine fāmā et fortūnā patria nōn valet. 24. Īram puellārum laudāre nōn dēbēs. 25. Vītam sine poenīs amāmus. 26. Sine philosophiā nōn valēmus. 27. Quid est vīta sine philosophiā?

答案

1. 古典拉丁语中没有特定的定冠词或不定冠词。在英语翻译中，必须根据拉丁语的相应含义加上 *the* 或 *a*。比如根据语境，**puella** 可以指 *the girl* 或 *a girl*，**puellae** 可以指 *the girls* 或 *girls*。在孤立的一句话中，*the* 和 *a* 往往可以换用，也可以不用任何冠词。
2. (1) acc. case; (2) gen. case; (3) nom. case; (4) abl.; (5) voc.; (6) dat.
3. (1) acc. pl. as direct object of a verb; (2) nom. sg. as subject of a verb or voc. sg. for direct address; (3) acc. sg. as direct object; (4) nom. pl. subject, or voc. for direct address.
4. (1) gen. pl., of; (2) abl. sg., by/with/from, etc.; (3) gen. sg., of; dat. sg., to/for; nom. pl.; voc. pl.; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with/from, etc.
5. (1) girl, direct obj. of verb; (2) girl, subject or vocative; (3) girls, object; (4) girls, subj. or voc.; (5) countries, obj.; (6) country, obj.; (7) country, subj. or voc.; (8) countries, subj. or voc.; (9) money, obj.; (10) money, subj. or voc.; (11) penalties, obj.; (12) penalty, obj.
6. (1) of the girl, girl's, or to/for the girl; (2) of the girls, girls'; (3) O fatherland; (4) of or to/for the fatherland; (5) by/with, etc., money; (6) of or to/for money; (7) to/for or by/with, etc., penalties; (8) by/with etc., a penalty; (9) of penalties.
7. (1) multae pecūniae, multam pecūniam; (2) magnae fāmae, magnā fāmā; (3) vītae meae, vītae meae; (4) fortūnam tuam, fortūnās tuās; (5) magnae patriae, magnārum patriārum; (6) fortūnā meā, fortūnīs meīs; (7) magnae poenae, magnīs poenīs; (8) multīs philosophiīs, multīs philosophiīs.
8. (1) multā pecūniā; (2) multārum puellārum; (3) meae patriae; (4) magnam vītam; (5) tuīs poenīs; (6) multae patriae; (7) multīs puellīs; (8) meae vītae; (9) Ō fortūna; (10) puellae; (11) puellārum; (12) puellae; (13) puellās; (14) puellae.

9. Farewell (goodbye), my native land. 10. The fortune of the girl (the girl's fortune) is great. 11. The girl is praising the fortune of your (sg.) country. 12. O girl, save

your country. 13. Many girls love money. 14. You (pl.) are giving nothing to the girl, *or* you give nothing to a girl. 15. He sees the money of the girl, *or* the girl's money. 16. You (sg.) do not see the girls' money. 17. We ought to warn the girls. 18. They ought to praise the girl. 19. Life gives (good) fortune to many girls. 20. You (sg.) are saving my life by *or* with your money. 21. Fame is nothing without fortune. 22. You (pl.) do not like life without money. 23. A country is not strong without fame and fortune. 24. You (sg.) ought not to praise the anger of the girls. 25. We like a life without punishments. 26. We are not strong without philosophy. 27. What is life without philosophy?

第三课练习

1. 说出下列第二变格法阳性名词的词尾所指示的格和数以及句法使用：(1) –um; (2) –ī (pl.); (3) –us; (4) –ōs; (5) –e。
2. 说出下列词尾所指示的格和数，并给出与之相联系的英语介词：(1) –ō; (2) –ōrum; (3) –ī (sg.); (4) –īs。
3. 翻译下列名词，说出其词尾所指示的句法使用：(1) fīliōs; (2) fīlī (pl.); (3) fīlium; (4) populum; (5) popule; (6) populus; (7) vir; (8) virōs; (9) virī (pl.); (10) virum; (11) amīce; (12) amīcī (pl.); (13) amīcōs; (14) amīcum。
4. 根据格词尾翻译下列词或短语：(1) fīliōrum meōrum; (2) fīliō meō; (3) populī Rōmānī (sg.); (4) populō Rōmānō; (5) virīs; (6) virī (sg.); (7) virōrum; (8) amīcōrum paucōrum; (9) amīcīs paucīs; (10) amīcō meō; (11) amīcī meī (sg.); (12) multīs puerīs。
5. 根据下列单数主格形式，写出相应的拉丁语形式：(1) **populus Rōmānus** in gen. and abl. sg.; (2) **magnus vir** in acc. and abl. pl.; (3) **puer meus** in dat. and abl. pl.; (4) **magnus numerus** in dat. and abl. sg.; (5) **magnus vir** in voc. sg. and pl.; (6) **fīlius meus** in gen. sg. and pl。
6. 根据所要求的格或英语介词所指示的格，将下列短语翻译成拉丁语：(1) of many boys; (2) to/for the Roman people; (3) my sons (object of verb); (4) O my sons; (5) a great number (obj. of verb); (6) by the great number; (7) O great man; (8) to/for many boys; (9) the great man (subj. of verb); (10) of the Roman people。

7. Valē, mī amīce. 8. Populus Rōmānus sapientiam fīliī tuī laudat. 9. Ō vir magne, populum Rōmānum servā. 10. Numerus populī Rōmānī est magnus. 11. Multī puerī puellās amant. 12. Fīliō meō nihil datis. 13. Virōs in agrō videō. 14. Amīcum fīliī meī vidēs. 15. Amīcum fīliōrum tuōrum nōn videt. 16. Dēbēmus fīliōs meōs monēre. 17. Dēbent fīlium tuum laudāre. 18. Vīta paucīs virīs fāmam dat. 19. Mē in numerō amīcōrum tuōrum habēs. 20. Virī magnī paucōs amīcōs saepe habent. 21. Amīcus meus semper cōgitat. 22. Fīlius magnī virī nōn semper est magnus vir. 23. Sapi-

entiam magnōrum virōrum nōn semper vidēmus. 24. Philosophiam, sapientiam magnōrum virōrum, laudāre dēbētis.

答案

1. (1) acc. sg., obj.; (2) nom. pl. as subj., voc. pl. for direct address; (3) nom. sg., subj.; (4) acc. pl. obj.; (5) voc. sg., direct address.
2. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.
3. (1) sons, obj.; (2) sons, subj. or direct address; (3) son, obj.; (4) people, obj.; (5) people, direct address; (6) people, subj.; (7) man, subj. or direct address; (8) men, obj.; (9) men, subj. or direct address; (10) man, obj.; (11) friend, direct address; (12) friends, subj. or direct address; (13) friends, obj.; (14) friend, obj.
4. (1) of my sons; (2) to/for my son, by/with, etc., my son; (3) of the Roman people; (4) to/for the Roman people, by/with, etc., the Roman people; (5) to/for the men, by/with, etc., the men; (6) of the man; (7) of the men; (8) of a few friends; (9) to/for or by/with, etc., a few friends; (10) to/for or by/with, etc., my friend; (11) of my friend; (12) to/for or by/with, etc., many boys.
5. (1) populī Rōmānī, populō Rōmānō; (2) magnōs virōs, magnīs virīs; (3) puerīs meīs, puerīs meīs; (4) magnō numerō, magnō numerō; (5) magne vir, magnī virī; (6) fīliī meī, fīliōrum meōrum.
6. (1) multōrum puerōrum; (2) populō Rōmānō; (3) fīliōs meōs; (4) Ō fīliī meī; (5) magnum numerum; (6) magnō numerō; (7) Ō vir magne; (8) multīs puerīs; (9) vir magnus; (10) populī Rōmānī.

7. Good-bye, my friend. 8. The Roman people praise your (sg.) son's wisdom. 9. O great man, save the Roman people. 10. The number of the Roman people is great. 11. Many boys love girls. 12. You (pl.) are giving nothing to my son. 13. I see men in the field. 14. You (sg.) see the friend of my son. 15. He does not see your (sg.) sons' friend. 16. We ought to warn my sons. 17. They ought to praise your (sg.) son. 18. Life gives fame to few men. 19. You (sg.) consider me in the number (circle) of your friends. 20. Great men often have few friends. 21. My friend is always thinking. 22. The son of a great man is not always a great man. 23. We do not always see (understand) the wisdom of great men. 24. You (pl.) ought to praise philosophy, the wisdom of great men.

第四课练习

1. 第二变格法的中性和阳性形式仅在三种情况下不同，列举这三种情况并给出相应的中性词尾。
2. 说出下列第二变格法中性名词的词尾所指示的格和数以及句法使用：(1) -a; (2) -um。
3. 说出下列第二变格法中性词尾的格和数以及与之相联系的英语介词：(1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -ī; (4) -īs。
4. 翻译下列中性名词，说出其词尾所指示的句法使用：(1) bella; (2) bellum; (3) officium; (4) officia; (5) perīcula。
5. 根据格词尾翻译下列短语：(1) bellōrum malōrum; (2) bellō malō; (3) bellī malī;

(4) bellīs malīs; (5) officiī magnī; (6) officiīs magnīs; (7) perīculō parvō。

6. 根据下列单数主格形式,写出相应的拉丁语形式:(1) **bellum parvum** in nom. and acc. pl.; (2) **ōtium bonum** in acc. sg. and pl.; (3) **perīculum magnum** in gen. sg. and pl.; (4) **officium vērum** in acc. and abl. sg.。
7. 根据所要求的格或英语介词所指示的格，将下列短语翻译成拉丁语:(1) O evil war; (2) to/for great duty; (3) by the great danger; (4) good leisure (object of verb); (5) by many wars; (6) of good leisure; (7) by the dangers of many wars; (8) small wars (subject of verb); (9) small wars (obj. of verb); (10) O foolish wars; (11) the small war (subj.)。

8. Ōtium est bonum. 9. Multa bella ōtium nōn cōnservant. 10. Perīculum est magnum. 11. In magnō perīculō sumus. 12. Et ōtium perīcula saepe habet. 13. Vīta nōn est sine multīs perīculīs. 14. Bonī virī ōtium amant. 15. Stultus vir perīcula bellī laudat. 16. Ōtium bellō saepe nōn cōnservāmus. 17. Populus Rōmānus ōtium bonum nōn semper habet. 18. Patriam et ōtium bellīs parvīs saepe servant. 19. Multae puellae sunt bellae. 20. Vērī amīcī sunt paucī. 21. Amīcus meus est vir magnī officiī. 22. Officia magistrī sunt multa et magna. 23. Vir parvī ōtiī es. 24. Virī magnae cūrae estis. 25. Sine morā cūram officiō dare dēbēmus. 26. Sine oculīs vīta est nihil.

答案

1. 单数主格,以**-um**结尾;复数主格和复数宾格,以**-a**结尾。事实上,这里还应加上呼格;不过由于除了以**-us**结尾的第二变格法阳性,呼格与主格的形式完全相同,所以今后将不再提及呼格。
2. (1) nom. pl. as subject; acc. pl. as obj.; (2) nom. sg. as subj.; acc. sg. as obj.
3. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.
4. (1) wars, subj. or obj.; (2) war, subj. or obj.; (3) duty, subj. or obj.; (4) duties, subj. or obj.; (5) dangers, subj. or obj. Of course any of these forms could also be vocative.
5. (1) of evil wars; (2) to/for evil war, by/with, etc., evil war; (3) of evil war; (4) to/for evil wars, by/with, etc., evil wars; (5) of great duty or service; (6) to/for great duties, by/with, etc., great duties; (7) to/for small danger, by/with, etc., small danger.
6. (1) bella parva, bella parva; (2) ōtium bonum, ōtia bona; (3) perīculī magnī, perīculōrum magnōrum; (4) officium vērum, officiō vērō.
7. (1) Ō bellum malum; (2) officiō magnō; (3) perīculō magnō; (4) ōtium bonum; (5) multīs bellīs; (6) ōtiī bonī; (7) perīculīs multōrum bellōrum; (8) bella parva; (9) bella parva; (10) Ō bella stulta; (11) bellum parvum.

8. Peace (leisure) is good. 9. Many wars do not preserve peace. 10. The danger is great. 11. We are in great danger. 12. And leisure often has dangers. 13. Life is not without many dangers. 14. Good men love peace. 15. The foolish man praises

the dangers of war. 16. Often we do not preserve the peace by war. 17. The Roman people do not always have good peace. 18. They often save the fatherland and peace by small wars. 19. Many girls are pretty. 20. True friends are few. 21. My friend is a man of great service. 22. The duties of a teacher are many and great. 23. You (sg.) are a man of little leisure. 24. You (pl.) are men of great care. 25. We ought to give attention to duty without delay. 26. Life is nothing without eyes.

第五课练习

1. 说出第一、第二变位法将来时和未完成时的人称词尾。
2. 它们与现在时的词尾相同吗？如果不同，请说出有哪些差别。
3. 说出第一、第二变位法将来时和未完成时的时态标志。
4. 如何翻译下列动词词尾：(1) –bāmus; (2) –bit; (3) –bitis; (4) –bō; (5) –bunt; (6) –bat?
5. 当第一、第二变格法形容词有阳性词尾**–er** 时，如何判断在其他形式中 **e** 是否保留？
6. 如何通过 *liberty, pulchritude, nostrum* 等英语词来帮助记忆拉丁语形容词的变格？
7. 翻译下列形式：(1) manēbant; (2) manēbit; (3) manēbimus; (4) dabam; (5) dabitis; (6) dabit; (7) vidēbis; (8) vidēbimus; (9) vocābant; (10) vocābis; (11) habēbis; (12) habēbant。
8. 翻译成拉丁语：(1) we shall give; (2) you (sg.) were remaining; (3) they will see; (4) we shall call; (5) he was calling; (6) you (pl.) will see; (7) I shall see; (8) they were saving; (9) we shall have; (10) we were having; (11) he will have; (12) he has。

9. Magister noster mē laudat et tē crās laudābit. 10. Līberī virī perīcula nostra superābant. 11. Fīliī nostrī puellās pulchrās amant. 12. Amīcus noster in numerō stultōrum nōn remanēbit. 13. Culpās multās habēbāmus et semper habēbimus. 14. Perīcula magna animōs nostrōs nōn superant. 15. Pulchra patria nostra est lībera. 16. Līberī virī estis; patriam pulchram habēbitis. 17. Magistrī līberī officiō cūram dabant. 18. Malōs igitur in patriā nostrā superābimus. 19. Sī īram tuam superābis, tē superābis. 20. Propter nostrōs animōs multī sunt līberī. 21. Tē, Ō patria lībera, semper amābāmus et semper amābimus. 22. Sapientiam pecūniā nōn cōnservābitis. 23. Habetne animus tuus satis sapientiae?

答案

1. 将来时：**–ō, –s, –t, –mus, –tis, –nt**；未完成时：**–m, –s, –t, –mus, –tis, –nt**。
2. 将来时的词尾与现在时相同，但未完成时的第一人称单数词尾是**–m** 而不是**–ō**。
3. 将来时：**–bi–**（第一人称单数为**–b–**；第三人称复数为**–bu–**）；未完成时：**–bā–**（**–m, –t** 和**–nt** 之前是短音**–a–**）。

4. (1) we were; (2) he will; (3) you (pl.) will; (4) I shall; (5) they will; (6) he was。
5. 通过记忆形容词的词形来判断：**līber**, **lībera**, **līberum**, **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**; 往往也可以通过英语派生词来判断。
6. 它们能够显示出以-**er** 结尾的阳性形容词中的 **e** 在其他形式中是否保留：liberty, **līber**, **lībera**, **līberum**; pulchritude, **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**。
7. (1) they were remaining, remained; (2) he will remain; (3) we shall remain; (4) I was giving, I gave; (5) you (pl.) will give; (6) he will give; (7) you (sg.) will see; (8) we shall see; (9) they were calling, called; (10) you (sg.) will call; (11) you (sg.) will have; (12) they were having, had.
8. (1) dabimus; (2) manēbās; (3) vidēbunt; (4) vocābimus; (5) vocābat; (6) vidēbitis; (7) vidēbō; (8) servābant; (9) habēbimus; (10) habēbāmus; (11) habēbit; (12) habet.

9. Our teacher praises me and he will praise you tomorrow (sg.). 10. Free men were overcoming our dangers. 11. Our sons love pretty girls. 12. Our friend will not stay in the company (number) of fools. 13. We used to have many faults and always shall have. 14. Great dangers do not overcome our courage. 15. Our beautiful country is free. 16. You (pl.) are free men; you will have a beautiful country. 17. Free teachers were giving attention to duty. 18. Therefore, we shall overcome evil men in our country. 19. If you (sg.) overcome (lit., will overcome) your anger, you will overcome yourself. 20. Because of our courage many men are free. 21. Free fatherland, we always used to love you and we always shall love (you). 22. You (pl.) will not preserve wisdom by means of money. 23. Does your (sg.) soul possess enough wisdom?

第六课练习

1. "补充不定式"中"补充"(*complementary*)一词的拼写与句法规则是否有什么联系？
2. 在动词 **sum** 及其复合词中，下列人称词尾的含义分别是什么：(1) -mus; (2) -nt; (3) -s; (4) -t; (5) -ō ; (6) -m; (7) -tis?
3. 如果说动词 **possum** 由 **pot** + **sum** 构成，那么在哪些形式中 **t** 变成了 **s**，哪些不变？
4. 翻译下列形式：(1) erat; (2) poterat; (3) erit; (4) poterit; (5) sumus; (6) possumus; (7) poterāmus; (8) poterimus; (9) poteram; (10) eram; (11) erō; (12) poterō; (13) erunt; (14) poterunt; (15) poterant; (16) esse; (17) posse。
5. 翻译成拉丁语：(1) we are; (2) we were; (3) we shall be; (4) we shall be able; (5) he is able; (6) he will be able; (7) he was able; (8) to be able; (9) they were able; (10) they are able; (11) they will be able; (12) they are; (13) to be; (14) I was able。

6. Patria vestra erat lībera. 7. Poteram esse tyrannus. 8. Amīcus vester erit tyrannus. 9. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi virī nōn possunt esse līberī. 10. In patriā nostrā herī nōn poterat remanēre. 11. Tyrannī multa vitia semper habē-

bunt. 12. Tyrannōs superāre nōn poterāmus. 13. Tyrannum nostrum superāre dēbēmus. 14. Tyrannus bonōs superāre poterat; sed ibi remanēre nōn poterit. 15. Poteritis perīcula tyrannī vidēre. 16. Vitia tyrannōrum tolerāre nōn possumus. 17. Īnsidiās tyrannī nōn tolerābās. 18. Ōtium in patriā vestrā nōn potest esse perpetuum. 19. Dēbēs virōs līberōs dē tyrannīs monēre. 20. Magister vester librōs pulchrōs semper amābat. 21. Librī bonī vērīque poterant patriam cōnservāre. 22. Librīs bonīs patriam vestram cōnservāre poteritis. 23. Tyrannī sapientiam bonōrum librōrum superāre nōn poterunt. 24. Malī librōs bonōs nōn possunt tolerāre.

答案

1. 参见第六课的"补充不定式"一节。
2. (1) we; (2) they; (3) you (sg.); (4) he, she, it; (5) I; (6) I; (7) you (pl.)。
3. 参见 p. 35。
4. (1) he, she, it was; (2) he, etc., was able; (3) he will be; (4) he will be able; (5) we are; (6) we are able; (7) we were able; (8) we shall be able; (9) I was able; (10) I was; (11) I shall be; (12) I shall be able; (13) they will be; (14) they will be able; (15) they were able; (16) to be; (17) to be able.
5. (1) sumus; (2) erāmus; (3) erimus; (4) poterimus; (5) potest; (6) poterit; (7) poterat; (8) posse; (9) poterant; (10) possunt; (11) poterunt; (12) sunt; (13) esse; (14) poteram.

6. Your (pl.) country was free. 7. I was able to be a tyrant. 8. Your friend will be a tyrant. 9. Where (there) is a tyrant, there men cannot be free. 10. He could not remain in our country yesterday. 11. Tyrants will always have many faults. 12. We were not able to overcome the tyrants. 13. We ought to overcome our tyrant. 14. The tyrant was able to overcome (the) good men; but he will not be able to remain there. 15. You (pl.) will be able to see the dangers of a tyrant. 16. We cannot tolerate the faults of tyrants. 17. You (sg.) were not tolerating (did not tolerate) the treachery of the tyrant. 18. The peace in your (pl.) country cannot be perpetual. 19. You (sg.) ought to warn free men about tyrants. 20. Your (pl.) teacher always used to like (liked) fine books. 21. Good and true books were able to save the country. 22. You (pl.) will be able to save your country with good books. 23. Tyrants will not be able to overcome the wisdom of good books. 24. Bad men cannot tolerate good books.

第七课练习

1. 第三变格法阴性名词和阳性名词的格词尾与第一、第二变格法相同吗?
2. 第三变格法中性名词是否有与第二变格法中性名词相同的格词尾? 如果有，请指出。
3. 说出下列第三变格法词尾的性、数、格:(1) –ēs; (2) –a; (3) –em。
4. 说出下列第三变格法词尾的性、数、格:(1) –ibus; (2) –ī; (3) –e; (4) –em; (5) –um; (6) –is; (7) –ēs。
5. 根据下列名词的性，分别为其配上 **magnus, –a, –um** 的恰当的单数主格形

式：(1) tempus; (2) virtūs; (3) labor; (4) cīvitās; (5) mōs; (6) pāx; (7) rēx; (8) corpus; (9) vēritās; (10) amor。

6. 根据格词尾翻译下列短语，凡有主格、宾格的情况请标示出来：(1) labōre multō; (2) labōrī multō; (3) labōris multī; (4) labōrēs multī; (5) pācis perpetuae; (6) pāce perpetuā; (7) pācī perpetuae; (8) cīvitātum parvārum; (9) cīvitātem parvam; (10) cīvitātēs parvās; (11) cīvitātēs parvae; (12) cīvitāte parvā; (13) tempora mala; (14) tempus malum; (15) temporī malō; (16) temporum malōrum; (17) temporis malī; (18) mōrī tuō; (19) mōre tuō; (20) mōris tuī; (21) mōrēs tuī; (22) mōrēs tuōs; (23) mōrum tuōrum。
7. 根据所要求的格或英语介词所指示的格，将下列短语翻译成拉丁语：(1) to/for great virtue; (2) great virtue (subject); (3) great virtues (object of verb); (4) of great virtues; (5) with great courage; (6) our time (obj. of verb); (7) our times (subj.); (8) our times (obj.); (9) to/for our times; (10) to/for our time; (11) of our time; (12) of our times; (13) my love (obj.); (14) my loves (obj.); (15) to/for my love; (16) by my love; (17) of my love; (18) of my loves.

8. Meum tempus ōtiō est parvum. 9. Virtūs tua est magna. 10. Pecūnia est nihil sine mōribus bonīs. 11. Virtūtēs hominum multōrum sunt magnae. 12. Mōrēs hominis bonī erunt bonī. 13. Hominī litterās dabunt. 14. Hominēs multōs in cīvitāte magnā vidēre poterāmus. 15. Magnum amōrem pecūniae in multīs hominibus vīdēbāmus. 16. Paucī hominēs virtūtī cūram dant. 17. Cīvitās nostra pācem hominibus multīs dabit. 18. Pāx nōn potest esse perpetua. 19. Sine bonā pāce cīvitātēs temporum nostrōrum nōn valēbunt. 20. Post multa bella tempora sunt mala. 21. In multīs cīvitātibus terrīsque pāx nōn poterat valēre. 22. Sine magnō labōre homō nihil habēbit. 23. Virgō pulchra amīcōs mōrum bonōrum amat. 24. Hominēs magnae virtūtis tyrannōs superāre audēbant. 25. Amor patriae in cīvitāte nostrā valēbat.

答案

1. 不同。
2. 有：复数主格和复数宾格。
3. (1) nom. and acc. pl. of masc. and fem.; (2) nom. and acc. pl. neut.; (3) acc. sg. masc. and fem.
4. (1) dat. and abl. pl.; (2) dat. sg.; (3) abl. sg.; (4) acc. sg. masc. and fem.; (5) gen. pl.; (6) gen. sg.; (7) nom. and acc. pl. masc. and fem.
5. (1) magnum tempus; (2) magna virtūs; (3) magnus labor; (4) magna cīvitās; (5) magnus mōs; (6) magna pāx; (7) magnus rēx; (8) magnum corpus; (9) magna vēritās; (10) magnus amor.
6. (1) by/with much labor; (2) to/for much labor; (3) of much labor; (4) many labors (nom.); (5) of perpetual peace; (6) by/with perpetual peace; (7) to/for perpetual

peace; (8) of small states; (9) a small state (acc.); (10) small states (acc.); (11) small states (nom.); (12) by a small state; (13) bad times (nom. or acc. pl.); (14) bad time (nom. or acc. sg.); (15) to/for a bad time; (16) of bad times; (17) of a bad time; (18) to/for your habit; (19) by your habit; (20) of your habit; (21) your character (nom.); (22) your character (acc.); (23) of your character.

7. (1) magnae virtūtī; (2) magna virtūs; (3) magnās virtūtēs; (4) magnārum virtūtum; (5) magnā virtūte; (6) tempus nostrum; (7) tempora nostra; (8) tempora nostra; (9) temporibus nostrīs; (10) temporī nostrō; (11) temporis nostrī; (12) temporum nostrōrum; (13) amōrem meum; (14) amōrēs meōs; (15) amōrī meō; (16) amōre meō; (17) amōris meī; (18) amōrum meōrum.

8. My time for leisure is small. 9. Your (sg.) courage is great. 10. Money is nothing without good character. 11. The virtues of many human beings are great. 12. The character of a good man will be good. 13. They will give a letter to the man. 14. We were able to see many men in the great state. 15. We used to see (saw, were seeing) a great love of money in many men. 16. Few men give attention to excellence. 17. Our state will give peace to many men. 18. Peace cannot be perpetual. 19. Without good peace the states of our times will not be strong. 20. Times are bad after many wars. 21. In many states and lands peace could not be strong. 22. Without great labor the man will have nothing. 23. The beautiful maiden loves friends of good character. 24. Men of great courage were daring to overcome tyrants. 25. Love of country was strong in our state.

第八课练习

1. (1) 在第三变位法中，词干元音 **e** 指示哪种时态？
   (2) 你能想出什么方法来帮助记忆这一点吗？
2. (1) 在第三变位法中，元音 **i, ō, u** 指示哪种时态？
   (2) 这里有什么记忆方法？
3. 说出下列第三变位法词尾所指示的人称、数和格：(1) –imus; (2) –ēs; (3) –unt; (4) –et; (5) –itis; (6) –ēmus; (7) –ō; (8) –ent; (9) –it; (10) –ētis; (11) –is; (12) –am; (13) –ēbant。
4. 词尾(1) –e; (2) –ere; (3) –ite 分别指示哪种动词形式？
5. 根据动词 **mittō, mittere,** *send*; **agō, agere,** *do*; **scrībō, scrībere,** *write*，依照相应词尾翻译下列形式：(1) mittēbant; (2) mittit; (3) mittunt; (4) mittam; (5) mitte; (6) mittimus; (7) mittēbātis; (8) mittis; (9) mittite; (10) mittitis; (11) mittet; (12) mittēmus; (13) agit; (14) agent; (15) agunt; (16) agētis; (17) agēbāmus; (18) agam; (19) agēmus; (20) agis; (21) agitis; (22) scrībet; (23) scrībunt; (24) scrībam; (25) scrībēbam; (26) scrībitis; (27) scrībēmus; (28) scrībit; (29) scrībis; (30) scrībent; (31) scrībe。
6. 根据动词 **pōnō, pōnere,** *put*，将下列短语翻译成拉丁语：(1) they were putting; (2) we shall put; (3) put (imperative sg.); (4) he puts; (5) they will put; (6) I shall put; (7) you (sg.) were putting; (8) you (pl.) will put; (9) put (imper. pl.); (10) we

put; (11) you (pl.) are putting; (12) he will put。

7. Quid agunt? Quid agētis? 8. Hominem ad mē dūcēbant. 9. Dūc hominem ad mē, et hominī grātiās agam. 10. Dum tyrannus cōpiās dūcit, possumus nihil agere. 11. Litterās ad virginem scrībit. 12. Librum magnum scrībēbās. 13. Librōs bonōs scrībēs. 14. Librōs dē pāce scrībēmus. 15. Cōpiamne librōrum bonōrum habētis? 16. Magister multōs puerōs docet. 17. Puerī magistrō grātiās nōn agunt. 18. Paucī cīvitātī nostrae grātiās agēbant. 19. Tyrannus magnās cōpiās ex cīvitāte nostrā dūcet. 20. Magna cōpia pecūniae hominēs ad sapientiam nōn dūcit. 21. Librīne bonī multōs ad ratiōnem dūcent? 22. Dūcimusne saepe hominēs ad ratiōnem? 23. Ratiō hominēs ad bonam vītam dūcere potest. 24. Agitisne bonam vītam? 25. Amīcō bonō grātiās semper agite.

答案

1. (1) 将来时；(2) 参见第八课。有一个不错的记忆方法是，表示将来的“future”以**–e** 结尾：futur/e。在六种将来时形式中，**dūcam** 中的**–a–**是唯一的特例。
2. (1) 现在时；(2) 参见第八课。
3. (1) 1st pers. pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 3d pl. pres.; (4) 3d sg. fut.; (5) 2nd pl. pres.; (6) 1st pl. fut.; (7) 1st sg. pres.; (8) 3d pl. fut.; (9) 3d sg. pres.; (10) 2nd pl. fut.; (11) 2nd sg. pres.; (12) 1st sg. fut.; (13) 3d pl. impf.
4. (1) imper. sg.; (2) pres. inf.; (3) imper. pl.
5. (1) they were sending; (2) he is sending; (3) they are sending; (4) I shall send; (5) send (sg.); (6) we are sending; (7) you (pl.) were sending; (8) you (sg.) are sending; (9) send (pl.); (10) you (pl.) send; (11) he will send; (12) we shall send; (13) he does; (14) they will do; (15) they are doing; (16) you (pl.) will do; (17) we were doing; (18) I shall do; (19) we shall do; (20) you (sg.) are doing; (21) you (pl.) are doing; (22) he will write; (23) they are writing; (24) I shall write; (25) I was writing; (26) you (pl.) are writing; (27) we shall write; (28) he is writing; (29) you (sg.) are writing; (30) they will write; (31) write!
6. (1) pōnēbant; (2) pōnēmus; (3) pōne; (4) pōnit; (5) pōnent; (6) pōnam; (7) pōnēbās; (8) pōnētis; (9) pōnite; (10) pōnimus; (11) pōnitis; (12) pōnet.

7. What are they doing? What will you (pl.) do? 8. They were leading the man to me. 9. Lead (sg.) the man to me, and I shall thank the man. 10. While the tyrant leads the troops, we can do nothing. 11. He is writing a letter to the maiden. 12. You (sg.) were writing a great book. 13. You (sg.) will write good books. 14. We shall write books about peace. 15. Do you (pl.) have an abundance of good books? 16. The teacher teaches many boys. 17. The boys do not thank the teacher. 18. Few men were thanking our state. 19. The tyrant will lead great forces out of our state. 20. A great abundance of money does not lead men to wisdom. 21. Will good books lead many men to reason? 22. Do we often lead men to reason? 23. Reason can lead men to a good life. 24. Are you (pl.) leading a good life? 25. Always thank (pl.) a good friend.

第九课练习

1. 解释什么是“指示代词”和“指示形容词”。

2. 根据格和数翻译下列词，并给出相应的性：

(1) illī	(10) illīs	(19) huius	(28) ūnā
(2) illa	(11) illō	(20) hunc	(29) tōtī
(3) illīus	(12) illārum	(21) hōs	(30) tōtīus
(4) ille	(13) hōc	(22) huic	(31) tōta
(5) illā	(14) hoc	(23) hōrum	(32) tōtum
(6) illud	(15) haec	(24) hās	(33) nūllīus
(7) illōrum	(16) hae	(25) hīs	(34) nūllī
(8) illae	(17) hāc	(26) ūnīus	(35) nūlla
(9) illōs	(18) hanc	(27) ūnī	(36) nūllōs

3. 如何通过名词来确定修饰它的指示词的形式?

4. 根据所指示的变格形式将下列短语翻译成拉丁语：

(1) this girl (nom.)
(2) these girls (nom.)
(3) these times (acc. pl.)
(4) to/for this time
(5) to/for this boy
(6) of this time
(7) of that time
(8) by this book
(9) by that book
(10) that girl (nom.)
(11) those times (nom.)
(12) those times (acc.)
(13) that time (nom.)
(14) to/for this state alone
(15) of this state alone
(16) to/for that boy alone
(17) to/for that girl alone
(18) of that girl alone
(19) of tyrants alone
(20) the whole state (acc.)
(21) of the whole country
(22) to/for the whole country
(23) of no reason
(24) no reason (acc.)
(25) no girls (nom.)
(26) to/for no book
(27) no books (acc.)
(28) to/for one state
(29) to/for one girl
(30) of one time
(31) of one war
(32) to/for the other book
(33) by another book

5. Hī tōtam cīvitātem dūcent (dūcunt, dūcēbant). 6. Ille haec in illā terrā vidēbit (videt, vidēbat). 7. In illō librō illa dē hōc homine scrībet (scrībam, scrībēbam). 8. Ūnus vir istās cōpiās in hanc terram dūcit (dūcet). 9. Magister haec alterī puerō dat. 10. Hunc librum dē aliō bellō scrībimus (scrībēmus). 11. Tōta patria huic sōlī grātiās agit (aget, agēbat). 12. Tōtam cūram illī cōnsiliō nunc dant. 13. Amīcus huius hanc cīvitātem illō cōnsiliō cōnservābit. 14. Alter amīcus tōtam vītam in aliā terrā aget. 15. Hic vir sōlus mē dē vitiīs huius tyrannī monēre poterat. 16. Nūllās cōpiās in alterā terrā habēbātis. 17. Illī sōlī nūlla perīcula in hōc cōnsiliō vident. 18. Nōn sōlum mōrēs sed etiam īnsidiās illīus laudāre audēs. 19. Propter īnsidiās enim ūnīus hominis haec cīvitās nōn valēbat.

答案

1. 参见 p. 54。

2. (1) to/for that (m., f., n.); those (nom. m.)
(2) that (nom. f.); those (nom./acc. n.)
(3) of that (m., f., n.)
(4) that (nom. m.)
(5) by that (f.)
(6) that (nom./acc. n.)
(7) of those (m., n.)
(8) those (nom. f.)
(9) those (acc. m.)
(10) to/for by/w./fr. those (m., f., n.)
(11) by that (m., n.)
(12) of those (f.)
(13) by this (m., n.)
(14) this (nom./acc. n.)
(15) this (nom. f.); these (nom./acc. n.)
(16) these (nom. f.)
(17) by this (f.)
(18) this (acc. f.)
(19) of this (m., f., n.)
(20) this (acc. m.)
(21) these (acc. m.)
(22) to this (m., f., n.)
(23) of these (m., n.)
(24) these (acc. f.)
(25) to/for these; by these (m., f., n.)
(26) of one (m., f., n.)
(27) to/for one (m., f., n.)
(28) by one (f.)
(29) to/for the whole (m., f., n.); whole (nom. pl. m.)
(30) of the whole (m., f., n.)
(31) the whole (nom. f.); whole (nom./acc. pl. n.)
(32) the whole (acc. m.; nom./acc. n.)
(33) of no (sg. m., f., n.)
(34) to/for no (sg. m., f., n.); no (nom. pl. m.)
(35) no (nom. sg. f.; nom./acc. pl. n.)
(36) no (acc. pl. m.)

3. 参见 p. 54 的正文和例子。

4. (1) haec puella
(2) hae puellae
(3) haec tempora
(4) huic temporī
(5) huic puerō
(6) huius temporis
(7) illīus temporis
(8) hōc librō
(9) illō librō
(10) illa puella
(11) illa tempora
(12) illa tempora
(13) illud tempus
(14) huic cīvitātī sōlī
(15) huius cīvitātis sōlīus
(16) illī puerō sōlī
(17) illī puellae sōlī
(18) illīus puellae sōlīus
(19) tyrannōrum sōlōrum
(20) tōtam cīvitātem
(21) tōtīus patriae
(22) tōtī patriae
(23) nūllīus ratiōnis
(24) nūllam ratiōnem
(25) nūllae puellae
(26) nūllī librō
(27) nūllōs librōs
(28) ūnī cīvitātī
(29) ūnī puellae
(30) ūnīus temporis
(31) ūnīus bellī
(32) alterī librō
(33) aliō librō

5. These men will lead (lead, were leading) the whole state. 6. That man will see (sees, was seeing/saw) these things in that land. 7. In that book he will write (I shall write, I was writing) those things about this man. 8. One man is leading (will lead) those forces into this land. 9. The teacher gives these things to the other boy. 10. We are writing (shall write) this book about another war. 11. The whole country thanks (will thank, was thanking) this man alone. 12. They are now giving their entire attention to that plan. 13. This man's friend will save this state by that plan. 14. The other friend will lead (his) entire life in another land. 15. This man alone was able to warn me about the faults of this tyrant. 16. You (pl.) had no forces in the other land. 17. Those men alone see no dangers in this plan. 18. You (sg.) dare to praise not only the character but also the treachery of that man. 19. In fact, on account of the treachery of one man this state was not strong.

第十课练习

1. 说出下列词尾所指示的变位法：(1) –ere; (2) –ēre; (3) –īre; (4) –āre。

2. 说出下列第四变位法和第三变位法的**–iō** 动词词尾所指示的人称、数和时态：

(1) –iunt; (2) –iēs; (3) –īs; (4) –iēbāmus; (5) –īmus; (6) –ī; (7) –iētis; (8) –īte; (9) –ītis; (10) –iō; (11) –it; (12) –e; (13) –iēbās。

3. 第三变位法的**–iō** 动词在哪三个方面与第四变位法动词不同?

4. 翻译下列形式：

(1) veniet (2) venit (3) veniunt (4) venient (5) audīs (6) audiētis (7) audītis (8) venīte (9) veniēs (10) venī (11) venīre (12) facit (13) faciet (14) faciēmus (15) facimus (16) faciunt (17) facis (18) faciam (19) faciēs (20) facere

5. 根据 **sentiō, sentīre,** *feel* 和 **iaciō, iacere,** *throw*，将下列短语翻译成拉丁语：

(1) I shall feel (2) we shall feel (3) he feels (4) you (pl.) feel (5) they will feel (6) they do feel (7) to feel (8) feel (imper. sg.) (9) he will feel (10) we feel (11) he is throwing (12) he will throw (13) I shall throw (14) we are throwing (15) throw (imper. sg.) (16) you (pl.) are throwing (17) we shall throw (18) throw (imper. pl.) (19) to throw (20) you (sg.) are throwing

6. Ex hāc terrā fugiēbāmus. 7. Cum fīliā tuā fuge. 8. In illum locum fugient. 9. Tempus fugit; hōrae fugiunt; senectūs venit. 10. Venīte cum amīcīs vestrīs. 11. In patriam vestram veniēbant. 12. Ō vir magne, in cīvitātem nostram venī. 13. Fīliam tuam in illā cīvitāte inveniēs. 14. Parvam pecūniam in viīs invenīre possunt. 15. Tyrannus viam in hanc cīvitātem invenit. 16. Illōs cum amīcīs ibi capiētis. 17. Ad tē cum magnīs cōpiīs venīmus. 18. Invenietne multam fāmam glōriamque ibi? 19. Iste bellum semper faciēbat. 20. Istī hominēs pācem nōn facient. 21. Multī hominēs illa faciunt sed haec nōn faciunt. 22. Officium nostrum facimus et faciēmus. 23. Magnam cōpiam librōrum faciam. 24. Puerī cum illō virō bonō vīvēbant. 25. In librīs virōrum antīquōrum multam philosophiam et sapientiam inveniētis.

答案

1. (1) 3d; (2) 2nd; (3) 4th; (4) 1st。

2. (1) 3d pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 2nd sg. pres.; (4) 1st pl. impf.; (5) 1st pl. pres.; (6) imper. sg.; (7) 2nd pl. fut.; (8) imper. pl.; (9) 2nd pl. pres.; (10) 1st sg. pres.; (11) 3d sg. pres.; (12) imper. sg.;(13) 2nd sg. impf.。注意：第 3, 5, 6, 8, 9 只是第四变位法，第 12 只是第三变位法。主要区别是第四变位法的**–ī–**和第三变位法的**–i–**。参见 p. 61。

3. (1) pres. inf.; (2) imper. sg.; (3) short stem vowels in 2nd sg. and 1st and 2nd pl. of pres. ind. and in the imper. pl.。

4. (1) he will come
(2) he is coming
(3) they are coming
(4) they will come
(5) you (sg.) hear
(6) you (pl.) will hear
(7) you (pl.) hear
(8) come (pl.)
(9) you (sg.) will come
(10) come (sg.)
(11) to come
(12) he makes/does
(13) he will make/do
(14) we shall make
(15) we are making
(16) they make
(17) you (sg.) make
(18) I shall make
(19) you (sg.) will make
(20) to make

5. (1) sentiam
(2) sentiēmus
(3) sentit
(4) sentītis
(5) sentient
(6) sentiunt
(7) sentīre
(8) sentī
(9) sentiet
(10) sentīmus
(11) iacit
(12) iaciet
(13) iaciam
(14) iacimus
(15) iace
(16) iacitis
(17) iaciēmus
(18) iacite
(19) iacere
(20) iacis

6. We were fleeing from this land. 7. Flee (sg.) with your daughter. 8. They will flee into that place. 9. Time flees; the hours flee; old age is coming. 10. Come (pl.) with your friends. 11. They were coming into your country. 12. O great man, come into our state. 13. You (sg.) will find your daughter in that state. 14. They can find little money in the streets. 15. The tyrant is finding a way into this state. 16. You (pl.) will capture those men there with (their) friends. 17. We are coming to you with great forces. 18. Will he find much fame and glory there? 19. That man was always making war. 20. Those men (of yours *or* such men) will not make peace. 21. Many men do those things but do not do these things. 22. We are doing and will do our duty. 23. I shall make a great supply of books. 24. The boys were living with that good man. 25. In the books of ancient men you (pl.) will find much philosophy and wisdom.

第十一课练习

1. 说出下列形式的单数主格和复数主格：(1) 第三人称代词；(2) 第一人称代词；(3) 第二人称代词。

2. 根据格和数翻译下列代词；主格或宾格的情况请标明：

(1) vōbīs; (2) nōbīs; (3) nōs; (4) vōs; (5) tuī; (6) meī; (7) mihi; (8) tibi; (9) tē; (10) mē。

3. 根据性、数、格翻译下列第三人称代词：(1) eōs; (2) eās; (3) eōrum; (4) eārum; (5) eius; (6) eā; (7) ea; (8) eō; (9) eī; (10) eīs; (11) eae; (12) id。

4. 翻译成拉丁语：

(1) his
(2) her (possess.)
(3) their (masc.)
(4) their (fem.)
(5) them (fem.)
(6) them (masc.)
(7) them (neut.)
(8) its
(10) to her
(11) by/w./fr. her
(12) by/w.fr. him
(13) to/for you (pl.)
(14) to/for you (sg.)
(15) they (masc.)
(16) they (neut.)
(17) they (fem.)
(19) it (neut. acc.)
(20) you (emphatic nom. pl.)
(21) you (emphatic nom. sg.)
(22) you (acc. pl.)
(23) us
(24) we
(25) to/for us
(26) I (emphatic form)

(9) to him (18) to/for it (27) to/for me

5. Hī tibi id dabunt. 6. Ego vōbīs id dabam. 7. Vōs eīs id dōnum dabitis. 8. Eī idem dabō. 9. Nōs eī ea dabimus. 10. Ille mihi id dabit. 11. Vōbīs librōs eius dabimus. 12. Nōbīs librōs eōrum dabis. 13. Pecūniam eōrum tibi dabimus. 14. Pecūniam eius mihi dabunt. 15. Eōs librōs ad eam mittēmus. 16. Librum eius ad tē mittam. 17. Ille autem pecūniam eōrum ad nōs mittēbat. 18. Eās cum eā mittimus. 19. Eum cum eīs mittō. 20. Eōs cum amīcīs eius mittēmus. 21. Tū mē cum amīcō eōrum mittēs. 22. Vōs mēcum ad amīcum eius mittēbant. 23. Nōs tēcum in terram eōrum mittit. 24. Eās nōbīscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittent. 25. Eum vōbīscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittam. 26. Tē cum eō ad mē mittent.

答案

1. (1) **is, ea, id** and **eī, eae, ea;** (2) **ego** and **nōs;** (3) **tū** and **vōs.**
2. (1) to/for you (pl.); by/w./fr. you; (2) to/for us; by/w/fr. us; (3) we (nom.); us (acc.); (4) you (nom. pl.); you (acc. pl.); (5) of you (sg.); (6) of me; (7) to/for me; (8) to/for you (sg.); (9) you (acc. sg.); by/w/fr. you; (10) me (acc.); by/w/fr. me.
3. (1) them (masc.); (2) them (fem.); (3) their (masc., neut.); (4) their (fem.); (5) his, her, its; (6) by/w./fr. her; (7) she (nom.); they (nom. and acc. pl. neut.); (8) by/w./fr. him, it; (9) to/for him, her, it; they (masc. nom.); (10) to/for them (masc., fem., neut.); by/w./fr. them; (11) they (nom. fem.); (12) it (nom. or acc. sg.). N.B. in 请注意，在单数情况下，如果代词的先行词在英语中是中性的，那么 **is, ea, id** 中的任何一个都可以译为 *it*。例如，假定在前面的句子中出现的是 **pāx** 一词，即 **Sine eā nūlla cīvitās valet**，那么阴性拉丁语 **eā** 就变成了英语词 *it*，因为在英语中，*peace* 被认为是中性的。
4. (1) eius (2) eius (3) eōrum (4) eārum (5) eās (6) eōs (7) ea (8) eius (9) eī (10) eī (11) eā (12) eō (13) vōbīs (14) tibi (15) eī (16) ea (17) eae (18) eī (19) id (20) vōs (21) tū (22) vōs (23) nōs (24) nōs (25) nōbīs (26) ego (27) mihi

5. These men will give it to you (sg.). 6. *I* was giving it to you (pl.). 7. *You* (pl.) will give this gift to them. 8. I shall give the same thing to him (her, it). 9. *We* shall give them (= those things) to him (her). 10. That man will give it to me. 11. We shall give you (pl.) his books. 12. You (sg.) will give us their (masc.) books. 13. We shall give their money to you (sg.). 14. They will give his (her) money to me. 15. We shall send these/those books to her. 16. I shall send his (her) book to you (sg.). 17. That man, however, was sending their money to us. 18. We are sending them (fem.) with her. 19. I am sending him with them. 20. We shall send them with his (her) friends. 21. *You* (sg.) will send me with their friend. 22. They were sending you (pl.) with me to his friend. 23. He is sending us with you (sg.) into their land. 24. They will send them (fem.) with us to their friends. 25. I shall send him with you (pl.) to their friends. 26. They will send you (sg.) with him to me.

第十二课练习

1. 按照一般顺序说出拉丁语动词的各个主要部分。
2. 说出 **mittō** 的主要部分并翻译。
3. 完成时与未完成时的主要区别是什么？
4. 能够辨识特定的动词形式来源于哪个动词是必须要做到的。请说出下列动词的第一个主要部分。

(1) mīsērunt	(6) āctum	(11) remānserant	(16) dīxērunt
(2) laudāveram	(7) est	(12) scrīpsimus	(17) erat
(3) vincēbāmus	(8) dedimus	(13) fuit	(18) vīxī
(4) dictum	(9) futūrum	(14) fēcit	(19) faciēbās
(5) fēcistī	(10) ēgimus	(15) fugere	(20) vīsum

5. 依照**–ī** = I (perfect) . . . ; **–eram** = I had . . . ; **–erō** = I shall have . . . 的惯例，根据人称、数和时态翻译下列完成时系统的词尾：

   (1) –istis; (2) –it; (3) –ērunt; (4) –istī; (5) –imus; (6) –erat; (7) –erimus; (8) –erāmus; (9) –erās; (10) –erint; (11) –erant; (12) –erit; (13) –erātis。

6. 根据人称、数和时态翻译下列形式：

(1) vidēbant	(10) vīxistī	(19) fugit	(28) remānsimus
(2) vīderant	(11) vīxērunt	(20) fūgit	(29) remānserāmus
(3) vīdistī	(12) vincet	(21) fugiunt	(30) vēnit
(4) fēcit	(13) vīcit	(22) fūgērunt	(31) venit
(5) faciēbat	(14) vīcimus	(23) servāvit	(32) veniēbātis
(6) fēcerāmus	(15) vincimus	(24) servāvērunt	(33) vēnistis
(7) fēcimus	(16) dedistī	(25) servāvistis	(34) vēnērunt
(8) faciēmus	(17) dederātis	(26) servāverat	(35) veniunt
(9) fēcērunt	(18) dedimus	(27) servāverit	(36) vēnerant

7. Illī fūgerant (fugient; fugiunt; fugiēbant; fūgērunt). 8. Hī remānsērunt (remanent; remanēbunt; remanēbant; remānserant). 9. Rēx Asiam vīcerat (vincit; vīcit; vincet). 10. Rēgēs Asiam vīcērunt (vincent; vincunt; vīcerant). 11. Rēgēs Asiam habuērunt (habent; habēbunt; habuerant). 12. Caesar in eandem terram vēnerat (vēnit; venit; veniet). 13. Caesar eadem dīxit (dīcit; dīxerat; dīcet). 14. Vōs nōbīs pācem dedistis (dabitis; dabātis; dederātis). 15. Tū litterās ad eam mīsistī (mittēs; mittis; mīserās). 16. Eōs in eādem viā vīdimus (vidēmus; vīderāmus). 17. Diū vīxerat (vīxit; vīvet). 18. Id bene fēcerās (faciēs; fēcistī; facis). 19. Cīvitātem eōrum (eius) servāvī (servābō; servābam; servāveram). 20. Eum in eōdem locō invēnērunt (invēnerant; invenient). 21. Deus hominibus lībertātem dederat (dedit; dat; dabit). 22. Mihi grātiās ēgērunt (agent; agēbant; ēgerant; agunt). 23. Vōs fuistis (erātis; estis; eritis; fuerātis) virī līberī.

答案

1. (1) 现在时主动态直陈式;(2) 现在时主动态不定式;(3) 完成时主动态直陈式;(4) 完成时被动态分词。

2. (1) **mittō**, 现在时主动态直陈式,*I send*;
   (2) **mittere**, 现在时主动态不定式,*to send*;
   (3) **mīsī**, 完成时主动态直陈式,*I sent*;
   (4) **missum**, 完成时被动态分词,*having been sent, sent*。

3. 完成时像是对过去完成了的动作的一个快照;未完成时则像看一段影像那样看过去连续的或正在进行的动作。

4. (1) mittō (2) laudō (3) vincō (4) dīcō (5) faciō (6) agō (7) sum (8) dō (9) sum (10) agō (11) remaneō (12) scrībō (13) sum (14) faciō (15) fugiō (16) dīcō (17) sum (18) vīvō (19) faciō (20) videō

5. (1) you (pl. perf.) . . . ; (2) he (perf.) . . . ; (3) they (perf.) . . . ; (4) you (sg. perf.) . . . ; (5) we (perf.) . . . ; (6) he had . . . ; (7) we shall have . . . ; (8) we had . . . ; (9) you (sg.) had . . . ; (10) they will have . . . ; (11) they had . . . ; (12) he will have . . . ; (13) you (pl.) had. . . .

6. (1) they saw, were seeing
(2) they had seen
(3) you (sg.) saw
(4) he did
(5) he was doing
(6) we had done
(7) we did
(8) we shall do
(9) they did
(10) you (sg.) lived
(11) they lived
(12) he will conquer
(13) he conquered
(14) we conquered
(15) we conquer
(16) you (sg.) gave
(17) you (pl.) had given
(18) we gave
(19) he flees
(20) he fled
(21) they flee
(22) they fled
(23) he saved
(24) they saved
(25) you (pl.) saved
(26) he had saved
(27) he will have saved
(28) we remained
(29) we had remained
(30) he came
(31) he comes
(32) you (pl.) were coming
(33) you (pl.) came
(34) they came
(35) they come
(36) they had come

7. Those men had fled (will flee; are fleeing; were fleeing; fled). 8. These men remained (remain; will remain; were remaining; had remained). 9. The king had conquered (is conquering; conquered; will conquer) Asia. 10. The kings conquered (will conquer; are conquering; had conquered) Asia. 11. Kings possessed (possess; will possess; had possessed) Asia. 12. Caesar had come (came; is coming; will come) into the same land. 13. Caesar said (says; had said; will say) the same things. 14. *You* (pl.) gave (will give; were giving; had given) us peace. 15. *You* (sg.) sent (will send; are sending; had sent) a letter to her. 16. We saw (see; had seen) them

in the same street. 17. He had lived (lived; will live) a long time. 18. You (sg.) had done (will do; did; are doing) it well. 19. I saved (shall save; was saving; had saved) their (his) state. 20. They found (had found; will find) him in the same place. 21. God had given (gave; gives; will give) liberty to men. 22. They thanked (will thank; were thanking; had thanked; thank) me. 23. *You* (pl.) were (were; are; will be; had been) free men.

第十三课练习

1. 反身代词有哪些本质特征？它们与其他代词有何不同？
2. 为什么反身代词的变格以属格而不是以主格开始？
3. 哪些反身代词的拼写与相应的简单代词相同？
4. 根据格和数翻译下列反身形式：(1) mihi; (2) tē; (3) nōbīs; (4) sibi; (5) vōs; (6) sē; (7) vōbīs。
5. 为什么单数形式的 **suus** 既可以指 *their own*，也可以指 *his own*？为什么复数形式既可以指 *his own*，也可以指 *their own*？
6. 为什么不论所依赖的名词是单数还是复数，**eōrum** 总是指 *their*，**eius** 总是指 *his* (*her, its*)?
7. **Sē** 和 **ipse** 都可以借助 *himself* 翻译成英语，它们有何基本区别？

8. Caesar eōs servāvit. 9. Caesar eum servābat. 10. Caesar sē servāvit. 11. Rōmānī sē servāvērunt. 12. Rōmānī eōs servāvērunt. 13. Rōmānī eum servāvērunt. 14. Caesar amīcum suum servāvit. 15. Caesar amīcōs suōs servāvit. 16. Caesar amīcum eius servāvit. 17. Caesar amīcōs eius servāvit. 18. Caesar amīcum eōrum servāvit. 19. Caesar amīcōs eōrum servāvit. 20. Rōmānī amīcum suum servāvērunt. 21. Rōmānī amīcōs suōs servāvērunt. 22. Rōmānī amīcum eōrum servāvērunt. 23. Rōmānī amīcōs eōrum servāvērunt. 24. Rōmānī amīcum eius servāvērunt. 25. Rōmānī amīcōs eius servāvērunt. 26. Caesar ipse eum servāvit. 27. Caesar ipse sē servāvit. 28. Caesarem ipsum servāvērunt. 29. Amīcum Caesaris ipsīus servābant. 30. Amīcum Rōmānōrum ipsōrum servāvērunt. 31. Amīcus Caesaris ipsīus sē servāvit. 32. Amīcī Caesaris ipsīus sē servāvērunt. 33. Amīcus Caesaris ipsīus eum servāvit. 34. Ipsī amīcī Caesaris eum servāvērunt. 35. Nōs nōn servāvērunt. 36. Nōs servāvimus. 37. Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvimus. 38. Rōmānī ipsī tē nōn servāvērunt. 39. Tū tē servāvistī. 40. Tū Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvistī. 41. Mihi nihil dabat. 42. Mihi nihil dedī. 43. Sibi nihil dedit. 44. Sibi nihil dedērunt. 45. Eīs nihil dedērunt. 46. Eī nihil dedērunt. 47. Mē vīcī. 48. Mē vīcērunt. 49. Īram eōrum vīcērunt. 50. Īram suam vīcērunt. 51. Īram suam vīcit. 52. Fīliōs suōs vīcit. 53. Fīliōs suōs vīcērunt.

答案

1. 参见 p. 80 的“反身代词”一节。

2. 参见 p. 80 的“反身代词的变格”一节。
3. 第一和第二人称的代词。
4. (1) to/for myself.
   (2) yourself (sg. acc.); by/w./fr. yourself.
   (3) to/for ourselves; by/w./fr. ourselves.
   (4) to/for himself (herself, itself); to/for themselves.
   (5) yourselves (acc.).
   (6) himself (acc.); by/w./fr. himself; themselves (acc.); by/w./fr. themselves.
   (7) to/for yourselves; by/w./fr. yourselves.
5. 这是因为 **suus, -a, -um** 是一个形容词，它必须在数上与所修饰名词保持一致。由于 **suus** 是反身的，所以根据动词主语的单复数，它也相应地指 *his own* 或 *their own*。例如下面的第 15 句和第 20 句。
6. **Eōrum** 和 **eius** 是固定的物主代词的属格；因此，与 **suus** 不同，它们不必与所依赖的名词保持一致。例如下面的第 16—19 句。
7. 参见 p. 82 的“强势代词”一节。反身的 **sē** 用于谓语，指涉主语。**Ipse** 可以用来强调句中任何一个名词或代词。比如下面的第 27, 28, 31 句。

8. Caesar saved them. 9. Caesar was saving him (= another person). 10. Caesar saved himself. 11. The Romans saved themselves. 12. The Romans saved them (= others). 13. The Romans saved him. 14. Caesar saved his own friend. 15. Caesar saved his own friends. 16. Caesar saved his (= another's) friend. 17. Caesar saved his (= another's) friends. 18. Caesar saved their friend. 19. Caesar saved their friends. 20. The Romans saved their (own) friend. 21. The Romans saved their (own) friends. 22. The Romans saved their (= others') friend. 23. The Romans saved their (= others') friends. 24. The Romans saved his friend. 25. The Romans saved his friends. 26. Caesar himself saved him. 27. Caesar himself saved himself. 28. They saved Caesar himself. 29. They were saving the friend of Caesar himself. 30. They saved the friend of the Romans themselves. 31. The friend of Caesar himself saved himself. 32. The friends of Caesar himself saved themselves. 33. The friend of Caesar himself saved him. 34. Caesar's friends themselves saved him. 35. They did not save us. 36. We saved ourselves. 37. We saved the Romans themselves. 38. The Romans themselves did not save you. 39. *You* (sg.) saved yourself. 40. *You* (sg.) saved the Romans themselves. 41. He was giving nothing to me. 42. I gave nothing to myself. 43. He gave nothing to himself. 44. They gave nothing to themselves. 45. They gave nothing to them (= others). 46. They gave nothing to him. 47. I conquered myself. 48. They conquered me. 49. They conquered their (= others') anger. 50. They conquered their own anger. 51. He conquered his own anger. 52. He conquered his own sons. 53. They conquered their own sons.

第十四课练习

1. 特征元音 **i** 出现在 **i-**词干名词的哪一个格词尾中？
2. 以**-e, -al** 和**-ar** 结尾的中性名词还有哪些 **i-**词干特征？

3. 根据格和数翻译下列形式；主格或宾格的情况请标明。

(1) arte (2) artium (3) artēs (4) marī (5) maribus (6) mare (7) maria (8) corpora (9) corporum (10) partis (11) partibus (12) partium (13) urbe (14) urbī (15) urbium (16) urbēs (17) rēgum (18) rēgī (19) nōmina (20) animālia (21) animālī (22) animālis (23) animālium (24) vīrium (25) virōs (26) virī (27) vīrēs (28) virīs (29) vīs (30) vim (31) vīribus (32) vī

4. 在第 3 题的各种形式中，列出那些 **i–**词干形式。

5. 将下列短语翻译成拉丁语：

(1) by/w./fr. great force (2) great man (acc.) (3) of great strength (4) to/for great force (5) of many citizens (6) by/w./fr. a good citizen (7) to/for many citizens (8) many seas (nom.) (9) by/w./fr. a great sea (10) a great sea (acc.) (11) great force (acc.) (12) of many men (vir) (13) by/w./fr. great strength (14) great strength (acc.)

6. 下列夺格形式分别表达什么观念？

(1) cum rēge; (2) oculīs meīs; (3) cum cūrā; (4) labōre meō。

7. 翻译下列动词形式，说出它们分别源于什么动词：(1) cucurrērunt; (2) currēbāmus; (3) cucurristī; (4) trāxerāmus; (5) trahet; (6) trahunt; (7) gerēbat; (8) gerit; (9) gerunt; (10) gerēmus; (11) tenent; (12) tenēbunt; (13) tenuērunt; (14) tenuimus。

8. Multa bella cum Rōmānīs gessit. 9. Cīvitātem magnā cum sapientiā gerēbant. 10. Ipse cīvitātem vī cōpiārum tenuit. 11. Illa animālia multōs hominēs in mare trāxērunt. 12. Hoc magnā cum arte dīxistī. 13. Cum cūrā trāns urbem cucurrimus. 14. Magnā cum parte cīvium ad nōs veniēbat. 15. Iūra cīvium vī vincet. 16. Eum ad mortem trāns terram eius trāxistis. 17. Nōs cum cīvibus multārum urbium iungēmus. 18. Rēgī ipsī hās litterās cum virtūte scrīpsit. 19. Vīs illōrum marium erat magna. 20. Artem Graecōrum oculīs meīs vīdī. 21. Sententiās multās pulchrāsque ex virīs antīquīs trāximus.

22. 说出第 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 20 句中的夺格类型。

答案

1. 复数属格。

2. 单数夺格中的**–ī**；复数主格和复数宾格中的**–ia**。

3. (1) by/w./fr. art
(2) of the arts
(3) arts (nom. or acc.)
(4) to/for the sea; by/w./fr. the sea
(17) of the kings
(18) to/for the king
(19) names (nom. or acc.)
(20) animals (nom. or acc.)

(5) to/for the seas; by/w./fr. the seas
(6) the sea (nom. or acc.)
(7) the seas (nom. or acc.)
(8) bodies (nom. or acc.)
(9) of bodies
(10) of a part
(11) to/for parts; by/w./fr. parts
(12) of parts
(13) by/w./fr./the city
(14) to/for the city
(15) of cities
(16) cities (nom. or acc.)
(21) to/for an animal; by/w./fr. an animal
(22) of an animal
(23) of animals
(24) of strength
(25) men (acc.)
(26) of the man; men (nom.)
(27) strength (nom. or acc. pl.)
(28) to/for men; by/w./fr. men
(29) force (nom.); of force
(30) force (acc.)
(31) to/for strength; by/w./fr. strength
(32) to/for force; by/w./fr. force

4. (2); (4) as abl.; (7); (12); (15); (20); (21) as abl; (23); (24); (30); (32) as abl.

5. (1) vī magnā
(2) virum magnum
(3) vīrium magnārum
(4) vī magnae
(5) cīvium multōrum
(6) cīve bonō
(7) cīvibus multīs
(8) maria multa
(9) marī magnō
(10) mare magnum
(11) vim magnam
(12) virōrum multōrum
(13) vīribus magnīs
(14) vīrēs magnās

6. (1)伴随; (2) 手段; (3) 方式; (4) 手段。

7. (1) they ran (currō); (2) we were running (currō); (3) you (sg.) ran (currō); (4) we had dragged (trahō); (5) he will drag (trahō); (6) they are dragging (trahō); (7) he was managing (gerō); (8) he manages (gerō); (9) they manage (gerō); (10) we shall manage (gerō); (11) they hold (teneō); (12) they will hold (teneō); (13) they held (teneō); (14) we held (teneō).

8. He waged many wars with the Romans. 9. They were managing the state with great wisdom. 10. He himself held the state by the power of troops. 11. Those animals dragged many men into the sea. 12. You (sg.) said this with great skill. 13. We ran with care (carefully) across the city. 14. He was coming to us with a large part of the citizens. 15. He will conquer the rights of the citizens by force. 16. You (pl.) dragged him to death across his land. 17. We shall join ourselves with the citizens of many cities. 18. He wrote this letter to the king himself with courage (courageously). 19. The violence of those seas was great. 20. I have seen the art of the Greeks with my own eyes. 21. We have drawn many beautiful thoughts from the ancients.

22. 8, 伴随; 9, 方式; 10, 手段; 12, 方式; 13, 方式; 14, 伴随; 15, 手段; 17, 伴随; 18, 方式; 20, 手段。

第十五课练习

1. 基数词和序数词的区别是什么?
2. 基数词如何变格?
3. 序数词如何变格?
4. 说出下列词形分别是或可能是什么形式:(1) duōbus; (2) mīlle; (3) tria; (4) duo; (5) quīnque; (6) mīlia; (7) decem; (8) duābus; (9) centum; (10) trium; (11) vīgintī; (12) octō。

5. “整体属格”这一名称缘何而来？
6. 罗马人在基数词后面使用什么结构？
7. 翻译下列短语：

(1) ūnus cīvis
(2) decem cīvēs
(3) pars cīvium
(4) trēs cīvēs
(5) trēs ex sex cīvibus
(6) quīnque ex cīvibus
(7) quīnque cīvēs
(8) centum cīvēs
(9) centum ex cīvibus
(10) mīlle cīvēs
(11) tria mīlia cīvium
(12) quid novī
(13) multum laudis
(14) satis pecūniae
(15) nihil aquae

8. 罗马人在把一个表示时间的词写成无介词夺格的形式时，是想表达什么观念？
9. 考察以下句子中的夺格形式。翻译句子并说出它们分别属于哪种夺格类型。

(1) Cum amīcīs veniēbat.
(2) Ūnā hōrā veniet.
(3) Eōdem tempore vēnit.
(4) Paucīs hōrīs librum scrīpsit.
(5) Illō tempore librum scrīpsit.
(6) Cum cūrā librum scrībēbat.

10. Illō tempore sōlō illa tria perīcula timuit; sed mortem semper timēbat. 11. Istī duo rēgēs pecūniam inter mīlia cīvium iaciēbant. 12. Iste ūnus tyrannus sē semper laudābat. 13. Cīvēs illārum quīnque urbium lībertātem exspectābant. 14. Urbem duābus hōrīs sapientiā suā cōnservāvērunt. 15. In urbem cum tribus ex amīcīs meīs veniēbam. 16. Bella magna cum virtūte gerēbātis. 17. Itaque centum Rōmānī mīlle Graecōs vīcērunt. 18. Patrēs fīliōs suōs saepe timēbant—et nunc multum timōris habent. 19. Vīdistīne duōs patrēs nostrōs eō tempore? 20. Ubi satis lībertātis invēnistis? 21. Tribus hōrīs vēnērunt, et idem nōbīs dīcēbat. 22. Parvum argūmentī intellegēbam. 23. Nūllam partem vītārum nostrārum mūtāvimus. 24. Cīvitās nostra lībertātem et iūra cīvium cōnservābat. 25. Rōmānī mōrēs temporum antīquōrum laudābant. 26. Duo patrēs quattuor ex fīliīs mīsērunt. 27. Decem virī satis sapientiae et multum virtūtis habuērunt. 28. Quid novī, mī amīce?

答案

1. 参见 p. 95。
2. 参见 p. 95—96。
3. 参见 p. 96。
4. (1) dat./abl. pl. m. and n.; (2) indecl. adj. agreeing with noun in any case; (3) nom./acc. pl. n.; (4) nom. pl. m. and n., acc. pl. n.; (5) any form in pl.; (6) nom./acc. pl. n.; (7) any form in pl.; (8) dat./abl. pl. f.; (9) any form in pl.; (10) gen. pl. any gender; (11) any form in pl.; (12) any form in pl.

5. 之所以有“整体属格”这一名称，是因为某个部分所从出的总体数目或数量通常被置于属格形式。参见 p. 96“整体属格”一节。

6. **Ex** 或 **dē** + 夺格。

7. (1) one citizen
(2) ten citizens
(3) part of the citizens
(4) three citizens
(5) 3 of the 6 citizens
(6) 5 of the citizens
(7) 5 citizens
(8) 100 citizens
(9) 100 of the citizens
(10) 1000 citizens
(11) 3000 citizens
(12) what (is) new?
(13) much praise
(14) enough money
(15) no water

8. 何时或期间。

9. (1) He used to come (was coming, kept coming) with his friends. 伴随夺格
(2) He will come in one hour. 夺格表期间
(3) He came at the same time. 夺格表何时
(4) He wrote the book in a few hours. 夺格表期间
(5) At that time he wrote a book. 夺格表何时
(6) He was writing the book with care. 方式夺格

10. At that time alone he feared those three dangers; but he always used to fear (was afraid of) death. 11. Those two kings used to throw money among the thousands of citizens. 12. That one tyrant (of yours) always used to praise himself. 13. The citizens of those five cities kept expecting liberty. 14. They saved the city in two hours by their own wisdom. 15. I used to come into the city with three of my friends. 16. You (pl.) used to wage great wars with courage (= courageously). 17. Therefore a hundred Romans conquered a thousand Greeks. 18. Fathers often used to fear their own sons—and now they have much (of) fear. 19. Did you (sg.) see our two fathers at that time? 20. Where did you (pl.) find enough freedom? 21. They came in three hours, and he kept saying the same thing to us. 22. I understood little of the argument. 23. We have changed no part of our lives. 24. Our state used to preserve the liberty and rights of the citizens. 25. The Romans used to praise the customs of ancient times. 26. The two fathers sent four of their sons. 27. The ten men had enough wisdom and much virtue. 28. What's new, my friend?

第十六课练习

1. 如果我们掌握了 **cīvis** 和 **mare** 的变格，那么除了一个例外形式，很容易对第三变格法形容词 **fortis, forte** 进行变格。这个例外形式是什么？

2. (1) 第三变格法形容词可以分为三尾、二尾和一尾形容词，其中最常见的是哪种类型？
(2) 一尾、三尾形容词的哪种格与二尾形容词不同？

3. 列举第三变格法形容词显示为 **i**-词干形式的三种词尾，并将其归类。

4. 在第三变格法形容词的各个词尾中，也许单数夺格是最不容易辨识的。在所有性中，单数夺格的词尾一般是什么？

5. 第三变格法形容词可以与第一、第二变格法名词连用吗？

6. 根据格和数翻译下列形式；主格或宾格的情况请标明。

(1) dulcī puellae
(2) dulcī puellā
(3) dulcī mātre
(4) dulcī mātrī
(5) beātae mātrī
(6) beātā mātre
(7) omnia bella
(8) omnia nōmina
(9) omnia maria
(10) omnī parte
(11) omnium partium
(12) omnium rēgum
(13) omnium bellōrum
(14) beātō homine
(15) beātō hominī
(16) omnī marī
(17) omnī bonae artī
(18) omnī bonā arte
(19) omnis bonae artis
(20) vī celerī

7. Aetās longa saepe est difficilis. 8. Aetās difficilis potest esse beāta. 9. Quam brevis erat dulcis vīta eius! 10. Memoria dulcis aetātis mīlia hominum adiuvat. 11. Librum brevem centum hōrīs scrīpsistī. 12. In omnī marī haec duo animālia potentia inveniēbāmus. 13. In omnī terrā multa mīlia virōrum fortium vidēbitis. 14. Celer rūmor (celeris fāma) per omnem terram cucurrit. 15. Illud bellum breve erat difficile. 16. Omnia perīcula sex hōrīs superāvimus. 17. Tyrannus potēns patriam eōrum vī celerī vincet. 18. Brevī tempore omnia iūra cīvium mūtābit. 19. Difficilem artem lībertātis dulcis nōn intellēxērunt, nam parvum sapientiae habuērunt. 20. Hominēs officia difficilia in omnibus terrīs timent.

答案

1. 阳性和阴性的单数夺格：**cīve**，然而 **fortī**。

2. (1) 二尾形容词。

(2) 阳性和阴性的单数主格：fortis, fortis; ācer, ācris; potēns, potēns。

3. **-ī**，所有性的单数夺格；**-ium**，所有性的复数属格；**-ia**，中性的复数主格和复数宾格；参见 p. 103 脚注 2。

4. **-ī**；参见 p. 103 脚注 2。

5. 可以。

6. (1) to/for a sweet girl
(2) by/w./fr. a sweet girl
(3) by/w./fr. a sweet mother
(4) to/for a sweet mother
(5) to/for a happy mother
(6) by/w./fr. a happy mother
(7) all wars, nom. or acc. pl.
(8) all names, nom. or acc. pl.
(9) all seas, nom. or acc. pl.
(10) by/w./fr. every part
(11) of all parts
(12) of all kings
(13) of all wars
(14) by/w./fr. a happy man
(15) to/for a happy man
(16) to/for or by/w./fr. every sea
(17) to/for every good art
(18) by/w./fr. every good art
(19) of every good art
(20) to/for, by/w./fr. swift force

7. A long life is often difficult. 8. A difficult life can be happy. 9. How brief was his sweet life! 10. The memory of a sweet period of life helps thousands of men. 11. You (sg.) wrote a short book in a hundred hours. 12. In every sea we kept finding these two powerful animals. 13. In every land you (pl.) will see many thousands of brave men. 14. Swift rumor ran through every land. 15. That short war was difficult. 16. We overcame all dangers in six hours. 17. The powerful tyrant will

conquer their country with swift violence. 18. In a short time he will change all the rights of the citizens. 19. They did not understand the difficult art of sweet liberty, for they had little wisdom. 20. Men fear difficult duties in all lands.

第十七课练习

1. “先行词”和“关系代词”是如何定义的?
2. (1) 是什么决定了拉丁语关系代词的格?
   (2) 是什么决定了关系代词的性和数?
3. 关系代词应当在哪些方面与先行词保持一致?
4. (1) 哪些英语关系代词指人?
   (2) 哪些英语关系代词指物?
   (3) 既然在拉丁语中,一个关系代词可以服务于两种目的,那么它具有哪两种英语含义?
5. 根据格和数翻译下列形式;主格或宾格的情况请标明。

(1) cui	(4) cuius	(7) quā	(10) quās
(2) quōs	(5) quibus	(8) quī	(11) quōrum
(3) quae	(6) quod	(9) quem	(12) quam

6. Cīvem laudāvērunt quem mīserātis. 7. Decem cīvēs laudāvērunt quōs mīserātis. 8. Cīvem laudāvērunt quī patriam servāverat. 9. Centum cīvēs laudāvērunt quī patriam servāverant. 10. Cīvem laudāvērunt cuius fīlius patriam servāverat. 11. Cīvēs laudāvērunt quōrum septem fīliī patriam servāverant. 12. Cīvem laudāvērunt cui patriam commīserant. 13. Multōs ex cīvibus laudāvērunt quibus patriam commīserant. 14. Cīvem laudāvērunt quōcum vēnerant. 15. Cīvēs laudāvērunt quibuscum vēnerant. 16. Cum cīve vēnit cui vītam suam commīserat. 17. Tyrannī iūra cīvium dēlent quōs capiunt. 18. Tyrannus urbem dēlēvit ex quā mīlia cīvium fūgerant. 19. Tyrannus urbem dēlēvit in quam illī novem cīvēs fūgerant. 20. Tyrannus urbēs dēlēvit ex quibus cīvēs fūgerant. 21. Tyrannus urbēs dēlēvit in quās cīvēs fūgerant. 22. Perīculum superāvit quod timuimus. 23. Perīcula superāvit quae timuimus. 24. Puellīs quās laudābat librōs dedit. 25. Vir cuius fīliam amās in urbem veniēbat. 26. Virō cuius fīliam amās vītam suam commīsit. 27. Mātrem adiuvābat, quae multum virtūtis habuit. 28. Mātribus quae multōs fīliōs habuērunt rēx pecūniam dabat.

答案

1. 参见第十七课,p. 108—109 的“用法和一致”一节。
2. (1) 它在其自身子句中的使用;(2) 先行词。
3. 在性和数方面。
4. (1) who. (2) which. (3) who, which.
5. (1) to/for whom or which, masc. sg.

(2) whom or which, masc. pl.
(3) who/which, nom. sg. fem.
who/which, nom. pl. fem.
which, nom. or acc. pl. neut.
(4) of whom/which, whose, sg.
(5) to/for or by/w./fr. whom/which, pl.
(6) which, nom. or acc. neut. sg.
(7) by/w./fr. whom/which, fem. sg.
(8) who/which, masc. sg. and pl.
(9) whom/which, masc. sg.
(10) whom/which, fem. pl.
(11) of whom/which, whose, masc. pl.
(12) whom/which, fem. sg.

6. They praised the citizen whom you (pl.) had sent. 7. They praised the ten citizens whom you (pl.) had sent. 8. They praised the citizen who had saved the country. 9. They praised the hundred citizens who had saved the country. 10. They praised the citizen whose son had saved the country. 11. They praised the citizens whose seven sons had saved the country. 12. They praised the citizen to whom they had entrusted the country. 13. They praised many of the citizens to whom they had entrusted the country. 14. They praised the citizen with whom they had come. 15. They praised the citizens with whom they had come. 16. He came with the citizen to whom he had entrusted his own life. 17. Tyrants destroy the rights of the citizens whom they capture. 18. The tyrant destroyed the city from which thousands of citizens had fled. 19. The tyrant destroyed the city into which those nine citizens had fled. 20. The tyrant destroyed the cities from which the citizens had fled. 21. The tyrant destroyed the cities into which the citizens had fled. 22. He overcame the danger which we feared. 23. He overcame the dangers which we feared. 24. He gave books to the girls whom he was praising. 25. The man whose daughter you (sg.) love kept coming into the city. 26. He entrusted his own life to the man whose daughter you (sg.) love. 27. He used to help the mother, who had much courage. 28. The king used to give money to the mothers who had many sons.

第十八课练习

1. 通过解释“被动”(passive)一词的词源,说明什么是“被动态”。
2. 手段夺格与施事夺格在含义和结构上有何不同?
3. (1) 在6个人称词尾中,有哪个字母在其中5个之中出现,从而可以看作被动态的特殊标记?
(2) 这个表示被动态的特征字母是否出现于相应的主动态人称词尾中?
4. 给出能够用来翻译下列被动态词尾的英语代词:(1) -mur; (2) -tur; (3) -r; (4) -ntur; (5) -ris; (6) -minī。
5. (1) 说出第一、第二变位法被动态未完成时和将来时的时态标志。
(2) 它们与主动态的时态标志相同吗?
6. 如果**-bar** 可以译成“I was being . . .”,**-bor** 可以译成“I shall be . . . ”,请翻

译下列形式：(1) –bimur; (2) –bāminī; (3) –bātur; (4) –beris; (5) –buntur; (6) –bāmur; (7) –bitur; (8) –bāris; (9) –biminī; (10) –bantur。

7. Mē terrent; ab eīs terreor; vī eōrum terreor. 8. Tyrannus hanc urbem dēlēbat. 9. Haec urbs ā tyrannō dēlēbātur; īnsidiīs dēlēbitur. 10. Ab amīcīs movēbātur; cōnsiliīs eōrum movēbātur. 11. Vīribus hominum nōn dēlēmur, sed possumus īnsidiīs dēlērī. 12. Nōn bellō dēlēbiminī, sed amōre ōtiī et cōnsiliīs hominum malōrum. 13. Tū ipse nōn mūtāris, sed nōmen tuum mūtātur. 14. Mīlia hominum amōre pecūniae tenentur. 15. Aliī ab tyrannīs tenēbantur. 16. Paucī amōre vēritātis amīcitiaeque tenēbuntur. 17. Puer ab amīcīs cōnservābitur. 18. Librī huius generis puerīs ā magistrō dabantur. 19. Lībertās populō ab rēge tertiō brevī tempore dabitur. 20. Patria nostra ā cīvibus fortibus etiam nunc servārī potest. 21. Fortūnā aliōrum monērī dēbēmus. 22. Cōnsiliīs istīus tyrannī quī trāns mare vīvit terrēmur; sed lībertātem amāmus et bellum magnā cum virtūte gerēmus. 23. Ab amīcīs potentibus adiuvābimur. 24. Omnēs virōs nostrōs laudāmus, quī virtūte et vēritāte moventur, nōn amōre suī.

答案

1. 参见 p. 115—116 的“被动态”一节。
2. 参见 p. 116 的“施事夺格”一节。注意“施动者”是人，“手段”则是某种非人的东西。
3. (1) 字母 **r**。
   (2) 不出现。
4. (1) we; (2) he; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.).
5. (1) **–bā–**，未完成时；**–bi–** (**–bō–**, **–be–**, **–bu–**)，将来时。
   (2) 相同，只有第二人称单数的**–be–**属于例外。
6. (1) we shall be . . . ; (2) you (pl.) were being . . . ; (3) he was being . . . ; (4) you (sg.) will be . . . ; (5) they will be . . . ; (6) we were being . . . ; (7) he will be . . . ; (8) you (sg.) were being . . . ; (9) you (pl.) will be . . . ; (10) they were being. . . .

7. They terrify me; I am terrified by them; I am terrified by their violence. 8. The tyrant was destroying this city. 9. This city was being destroyed by the tyrant; it will be destroyed by a plot. 10. He used to be aroused (moved) by his friends; he used to be aroused by their plans. 11. We are not being destroyed by the strength of men, but we can be destroyed by a plot. 12. You (pl.) will be destroyed not by war but by love of leisure and by the plans of evil men. 13. You yourself (sg.) are not being changed, but your name is being changed. 14. Thousands of men are possessed by the love of money. 15. Others used to be held by tyrants. 16. A few will be possessed by love of truth and friendship. 17. The boy will be saved by his friends. 18. Books of this sort used to be given to the boys by the teacher. 19. Liberty will be given to the people by the third king in a short time. 20. Our country can even now be saved by brave citizens. 21. We ought to be warned by the fortune of other men (others). 22. We are terrified by the plans of that tyrant who lives across the sea; but we love liberty, and we shall wage war with great courage.

23. We shall be helped by powerful friends. 24. We praise all our men, who are moved by courage and truth, not by love of themselves.

第十九课练习

1. (1) 所有动词的完成时被动态直陈式的两个基本构词要素是什么?
   (2) 所有动词的过去完成时被动态直陈式的两个基本构词要素是什么?
2. (1) 如何在翻译中区别 **vir missus est** 和 **vir mittitur**?
   (2) 如何在翻译中区别 **vir missus erat** 和 **vir mittēbātur**?
3. 疑问代词的用法是什么?
4. 在哪些形式中,疑问代词的拼写与关系代词有显著不同?
5. 疑问代词可以通过哪两种句法标准与关系代词相区别,即使拼写相同?
6. 翻译下列形式:

(1) movētur	(6) dēlēbantur	(11) tenēbāmur
(2) mōtus est	(7) dēlētī sunt	(12) mūtātus erat
(3) mōtum erat	(8) tenēmur	(13) mūtātus est
(4) movēbātur	(9) tentī sumus	(14) mūtātur
(5) dēlētī erant	(10) tentī erāmus	(15) mūtābātur

7. 翻译下列疑问代词形式:(1) cuius?; (2) quem?; (3) quī?; (4) quid?; (5) quōrum?; (6) cui?; (7) quās?; (8) quis?; (9) quae?

8. Ā quō liber parātus est (parātus erat, parābātur)? 9. Magister ā quō liber parātus est labōre superātur. 10. Cui liber datus est (dabātur, datus erat)? 11. Quī puer servātus est? 12. Puerum quī servātus est ego ipse vīdī. 13. Cuius duo fīliī servātī sunt? 14. Senem cuius fīliī servātī sunt numquam vīdī. 15. Quis missus est? 16. Ā cīve quī missus erat pāx et lībertās laudātae sunt. 17. Quī missī sunt? 18. Ā decem cīvibus quī missī erant amīcitia laudāta est. 19. Quōs in urbe vīdistī? 20. Ubi sunt trēs novī amīcī quōs in urbe vīdistī? 21. Quae ā tē ibi inventa sunt? 22. Ubi sunt tria corpora quae ā tē ibi inventa sunt? 23. Ā quibus hoc dictum est? 24. Quibus hoc dictum est? 25. Octō hominēs miserī quibus haec dicta sunt ex urbe fūgērunt. 26. Quōrum fīliī ab eō laudātī sunt? 27. Patrēs quōrum fīliī laudātī sunt eī grātiās agent. 28. Quid vōs terret? 29. Quod perīculum vōs terret? 30. At perīculum quod vōs terret ā cīvibus fortibus victum est.

答案

1. (1) 完成时被动态分词加 **sum** 的现在时。
   (2) 完成时被动态分词加 **sum** 的未完成时。
2. (1) **Vir missus est** = *a man was (has been) sent*; **vir mittitur** = *a man is (is being) sent.*
   (2) **Vir missus erat** = *a man had been sent*; **vir mittēbātur** = *a man was being*

(used to be) sent.

3. 疑问代词引出一个问题。

4. **quis** (nom. sg. m. and f.); **quid** (nom. and acc. sg. n.).

5. 参见 p. 121—122。

6. (1) he is (is being) moved
(2) he was (has been) moved
(3) it had been moved
(4) he was being moved
(5) they had been destroyed
(6) they were being destroyed
(7) they were destroyed
(8) we are held
(9) we were held
(10) we had been held
(11) we were being held
(12) he had been changed
(13) he was (has been) changed
(14) he is (is being) changed
(15) he was being changed

7. (1) whose (sg.)?
(2) whom (sg.)?
(3) who (pl.)?
(4) what (nom. and acc. sg.)?
(5) whose (pl.)?
(6) to whom (sg.)?
(7) whom (fem. pl.)?
(8) who (sg.)?
(9) who (fem. pl.)?; what (neut. nom. and acc. pl.)?

8. By whom was the book prepared (had been prepared; was being prepared)? 9. The teacher by whom the book was prepared is overcome with work. 10. To whom was the book given (was being given, had been given)? 11. What boy was saved? 12. I myself saw the boy who was saved. 13. Whose (sg.) two sons were saved? 14. I never saw the old man whose sons were saved. 15. Who (sg.) was sent? 16. Peace and liberty were praised by the citizen who had been sent. 17. Who (pl.) were sent? 18. Friendship was praised by the ten citizens who had been sent. 19. Whom (pl.) did you (sg.) see in the city? 20. Where are the three new friends whom you (sg.) saw in the city? 21. What things were found by you (sg.) there? 22. Where are the three bodies which were found there by you (sg.)? 23. By whom was this (thing) said? 24. To whom was this said? 25. The eight wretched men to whom these things were said fled from the city. 26. Whose sons were praised by him? 27. The fathers whose sons were praised will thank him. 28. What terrifies you? 29. What danger terrifies you? 30. But the danger which terrifies you has been conquered by brave citizens.

第二十课练习

1. 说出下列第四变格法阳性和阴性词尾的确切含义：(1) -um; (2) -uum; (3) -ū; (4) -us; (5) -ūs; (6) -uī。

2. 根据格的形式翻译下列名词：

(1) manuī
(2) manus
(3) manuum
(4) manū
(5) manūs
(6) frūctibus
(7) frūctum
(8) frūctūs
(9) frūctuum
(10) frūctū
(11) senātūs (sg.)
(12) senātuī
(13) senātus
(14) senātū

3. (1) 第四变格法主要是什么性？

(2) 关于这一规则的最常见例外是哪个名词?

4. (1) 解释地点夺格(从何处)与分离夺格的区别。

(2) 表示"释放"、"缺乏"、"剥夺"等含义的动词通常跟哪种夺格?

(3) 表示运动的动词通常跟哪种夺格?

5. 比较地点夺格(从何处)与分离夺格的结构差异。

6. Quis ad nōs eō tempore vēnit? 7. Senex magnae fāmae ex patriā suā ad senātum nostrum fūgit. 8. Quid novī ab eō dictum est? 9. Hoc ab illō virō dictum est: "Lībertāte carēmus." 10. Nōs servitūte et gravī metū līberāte. 11. Cōpiae nostrae bellum longum contrā ācrēs manūs tyrannī gessērunt. 12. Illae manūs ācrēs quās tyrannus contrā nōs illā ex terrā mīsit ā nōbīs victae sunt. 13. Post haec cīvēs quī tyrannum timuērunt ex patriā suā in cīvitātem nostram ductī sunt. 14. Eōs sceleribus istīus tyrannī līberāvimus. 15. Nunc omnī metū carent. 16. Fīliī eōrum bonōs librōs in lūdīs nostrīs cum studiō legunt. 17. Itaque mīlle versūs manibus suīs scrīpsērunt. 18. Hī centum versūs nōbīs grātiās magnās agunt. 19. In hīs versibus senātus populusque Rōmānus laudantur. 20. Nam illī miserī nunc frūctūs pācis et multum lībertātis sine metū habent. 21. Quoniam aliōs adiūvimus, etiam nōs ipsī frūctum magnum habēmus. 22. Virī bonī cōpiā hōrum frūctuum numquam carēbunt. 23. Aetāte nostrā multī hominēs vītam in metū et servitūte agunt. 24. Dēbēmus illōs miserōs metū līberāre. 25. Nam quis potest beātus esse sī aliī hominēs frūctibus pācis lībertātisque carent?

26. 下列夺格分别表达什么观念?(数字指前面的句子序号)tempore (6), patriā (7), eō (8), virō (9), metū (10), nōbīs (12), patriā (13), sceleribus (14), metū (15), studiō (16), manibus (17), cōpiā (22), aetāte (23), metū (24)

答案

1. (1) object, acc. sg.; (2) of, pl.; (3) by/w./fr., sg.; (4) subject, sg.; (5) of (sg.); subject or object (pl.); (6) to/for, sg..

2. (1) to/for a hand (band)
(2) a hand (subj.)
(3) of hands
(4) by/w./fr. a hand
(5) of a hand; hands (subj./obj.)
(8) of fruit; fruits (subj./obj.)
(9) of fruits
(10) by/w./fr. fruit
(11) of the senate
(12) to/for the senate

3. (1) 阳性;(2) **manus**。

4. (1) 地点夺格(从何处)= motion apart;分离夺格 = distance apart;

(2) 分离夺格;

(3) 地点夺格(从何处);

5. 地点夺格(从何处)一般有介词(**ab, dē, ex**);关于分离夺格,参见 p. 128。

6. Who came to us at that time? 7. An old man of great fame fled from his country to our senate. 8. What new was said by him? 9. This (thing) was said by that man:

"We lack liberty." 10. Free us from slavery and heavy fear. 11. Our forces waged long war against the tyrant's fierce bands. 12. Those fierce bands which the tyrant sent against us from that land were conquered by us. 13. After this (*lit.* these things) the citizens who feared the tyrant were led from their own country into our state. 14. We freed them from the crimes of that tyrant. 15. Now they lack (are free from) every fear (anxiety). 16. Their sons eagerly (with zeal) read good books in our schools. 17. And so they have written a thousand verses with their own hands. 18. These one hundred verses give great thanks to us. 19. In these verses the senate and the Roman people are praised. 20. For those unfortunate men now have the fruits of peace and much liberty without fear. 21. Since we have helped others, even we ourselves have great enjoyment. 22. Good men will never lack an abundance of these fruits. 23. In our age many human beings pass their life in fear and slavery. 24. We ought to free those unfortunate men from fear. 25. For who can be happy if other human beings lack the enjoyments of peace and liberty?

26. (6) 何时; (7) 从何处; (8) 施事; (9) 施事; (10) 分离; (12) 施事; (13) 从何处; (14) 分离; (15) 分离; (16) 方式; (17) 手段; (22) 分离; (23) 何时; (24) 分离。

第二十一课练习

1. 给出现在时和将来时的被动态人称词尾。
2. 反复朗读例词 **agō, audiō** 和 **capiō** 的现在时被动态和将来时被动态形式。
3. 第一、第二、第四变位法的现在时被动态不定式如何与主动态不定式相区别？将下列主动态不定式变为被动态不定式并翻译：(1) sentīre; (2) movēre; (3) servāre; (4) scīre; (5) tenēre。
4. 第三变位法的现在时被动态不定式形式有何特别之处？将下列主动态不定式变为被动态不定式并翻译：(1) mittere; (2) iacere; (3) tangere; (4) trahere。
5. 翻译下列形式：

(1) mittar	(7) rapitur	(13) raperis	(19) tangēminī
(2) mitteris	(8) rapiētur	(14) rapiēris	(20) sciēris
(3) mittēris	(9) rapī	(15) tanguntur	(21) scīris
(4) mittī	(10) rapimur	(16) tangentur	(22) sciētur
(5) mittuntur	(11) rapientur	(17) tangī	(23) scītur
(6) mittor	(12) rapiuntur	(18) tangeris	(24) scīrī

6. Quis mittitur (mittētur, mittēbātur, missus est)? 7. A quō hae litterae mittentur (missae sunt, mittuntur)? 8. Cuius manū illae litterae scrīptae sunt (scrībentur)? 9. Quid dictum est (dīcēbātur, dīcētur, dīcitur)? 10. "Quis rapiētur?" "Tū rapiēris." 11. "Quī rapientur?" "Vōs rapiēminī." 12. Diū neglegēris/neglegēminī (neglēctus es/neglēctī estis). 13. Post multās hōrās līberātī sumus (līberābimur). 14. Cīvitātis causā eum rapī iussērunt. 15. Lībertātis causā cīvitās nostra ab alterō virō gerī dēbet. 16. Animus eius pecūniā tangī nōn poterat. 17. Amor patriae in omnī animō sentiēbātur (sentiētur, sentītur, sēnsus est). 18. Amōre patriae cum aliīs cīvibus iungimur (iungēbāmur, iungēmur). 19. Amīcitia nōn semper intellegitur, sed

sentītur. 20. Sapientia et vēritās in illīs duōbus hominibus nōn invenientur (inveniuntur, inventae sunt). 21. Sapientia etiam multā pecūniā nōn parātur (parābitur, parāta est). 22. Vēritās saepe nōn scītur (sciētur, scīta est), quod studium eius est difficile. 23. Nōn sine magnō labōre vēritās inveniētur (inventa est, potest invenīrī). 24. Aliī studiō pecūniae atque laudis trahuntur; nōs dēbēmus amōre vēritātis sapientiaeque trahī.

答案

1. 参见 p. 114—115。
2. 核对 p. 133—134 的词形变化表，反复朗读直至能够脱口而出。
3. 主动态不定式词尾的-e 在被动态不定式中变成了-ī：(1) **sentīrī**, *to be felt*; (2) **movērī**, *to be moved*; (3) **servārī**, *to be saved*; (4) **scīrī**, *to be known*; (5) **tenērī**, *to be held*。
4. 主动态不定式的整个词尾-ere 变成了-ī：(1) **mittī**, *to be sent*; (2) **iacī**, *to be thrown*; (3) **tangī**, *to be touched*; **trahī**, *to be drawn*。
5. (1) I shall be sent
   (2) you (sg.) are sent
   (3) you (sg.) will be sent
   (4) to be sent
   (5) they are sent
   (6) I am sent
   (7) he is seized
   (8) he will be seized
   (9) to be seized
   (10) we are seized
   (11) they will be seized
   (12) they are seized
   (13) you (sg.) are seized
   (14) you (sg.) will be seized
   (15) they are touched
   (16) they will be touched
   (17) to be touched
   (18) you (sg.) are touched
   (19) you (pl.) will be touched
   (20) you (sg.) will be known
   (21) you (sg.) are known
   (22) he will be known
   (23) he is known
   (24) to be known

6. Who is being sent (will be sent, used to be sent, was sent)? 7. By whom will this letter be sent (was sent, is sent)? 8. By whose hand was that letter written (will be written)? 9. What was said (was being said, will be said, is said)? 10. "Who (sg.) will be seized?" "You (sg.) will be seized." 11. "Who (pl.) will be seized?" "You (pl.) will be seized." 12. For a long time you (sg./pl.) will be neglected (were neglected). 13. After many hours we were freed (shall be freed). 14. For the sake of the state they ordered him to be seized. 15. For the sake of liberty our state ought to be managed by the other man. 16. His soul could not be touched by money. 17. In every soul the love of country used to be felt (will be felt, is felt, was felt). 18. We are joined (used to be joined, will be joined) to (*lit.*, with) other citizens by love of country. 19. Friendship is not always understood, but it is felt. 20. Wisdom and truth will not be found (are not found, were not found) in those two men. 21. Wisdom is not obtained (will not be obtained, was not obtained) by even a great deal of (= much) money. 22. Truth often is not known (will not be known, was not known), because the study of it is difficult. 23. Not without great labor will truth be found (was found, can be found). 24. Others are drawn by eagerness for (*lit.*, of) money and fame; we ought to be drawn by love of truth and wisdom.

第二十二课练习

1. 如果说 **u** 是第四变格法的特征元音，那么第五变格法的特征元音是什么？
2. 第五变格法有哪些格词尾与相应的第三变格法词尾比较相像，从而使之能够被轻易地辨识出来？
3. (1) 大多数第五变格法名词都是什么性？
   (2) 哪个词是主要例外？
4. 根据格和数翻译下列形式；主格或宾格的情况请标明。

(1) speī	(6) fidē	(11) diēbus	(16) reī
(2) spērum	(7) fidem	(12) rem	(17) ignium
(3) spem	(8) fideī	(13) rērum	(18) ignem
(4) spēbus	(9) diērum	(14) rē	(19) ignibus
(5) spēs	(10) diēs	(15) rēbus	(20) ignēs

5. 说出下列句中的状语各表达哪一类观念，并翻译整句话。

(1) In urbe remānsit.	(4) Cum eīs vēnit.	(7) Illud igne factum est.
(2) Ūnā hōrā veniet.	(5) Ex urbe vēnit.	(8) Id ab eīs factum est.
(3) Eō tempore vēnit.	(6) Igne carent.	(9) Id cum fidē factum est.

6. 根据所学的拉丁语规则，指出要想表达下列状语观念，是应当单用夺格，还是将夺格与介词连用，还是有时用介词、有时不用：(1)施事；(2)伴随；(3)分离；(4)在何处；(5)手段；(6)方式；(7)从何处；(8)何时或期间。

7. Eō tempore lībertātem illōrum decem cīvium cum fidē cōnservāvit. 8. Rem pūblicam magnā cum cūrā gessit. 9. Rēs pūblica magnā cūrā ab eō gesta est. 10. Multae rēs bonae in mediā urbe vīsae sunt. 11. Eō diē multās rēs cum spē parāvērunt. 12. Ignem ex manibus puerī ēripuimus. 13. Quīnque diēbus Cicerō rem pūblicam ē perīculō ēripiet. 14. Duās rēs pūblicās metū līberāvistī. 15. Terra hominēs frūctibus bonīs alit. 16. Incertās spēs eōrum virtūte suā aluit. 17. Hāc aetāte spēs nostrae ā hīs tribus tyrannīs tolluntur. 18. Septem ex amīcīs nostrīs ex illā rē pūblicā magnō cum metū vēnērunt. 19. Tōta gēns in fīnēs huius reī pūblicae magnā cum manū amīcōrum ūnō diē vēnit. 20. Nōn omnēs virī līberī audent sē cum hāc rē pūblicā iungere. 21. Sī illī fidē carent, nūlla spēs est amīcitiae et pācis. 22. Bona fidēs et amor huius reī pūblicae possunt nōs cōnservāre. 23. Tōtam vītam huic reī pūblicae dedistī.

24. 下列夺格各表达什么观念？(7) tempore, fidē; (8) cūrā; (9) cūrā; (10) urbe; (11) diē, spē; (13) diēbus, perīculō; (14) metū; (15) frūctibus; (16) virtūte; (17) aetāte, tyrannīs; (18) rē pūblicā, metū; (19) manū, diē; (21) fidē.

答案

1. **ē**.

2. **–em, –ē; –ēs, –ēbus, –ēs, –ēbus** (以及与格**–eī** 和属格**–ērum**)。

3. (1) 阴性;(2) **Diēs**。

4. (1) of hope; to/for hope
(2) of hopes
(3) hope (acc.)
(4) to/for or by/w./fr. hopes
(5) hope (nom.); hopes (nom., acc.)
(6) by/w./fr. faith
(7) faith (acc.)
(8) of or to/for faith
(9) of days
(10) day (nom.); days (nom., acc.)
(11) to/for or by/w./fr. days
(12) thing (acc.)
(13) of things
(14) by/w./fr. a thing
(15) to/for or by/w./fr. things
(16) of or to/for a thing
(17) of fires
(18) fire (acc.)
(19) to/for or by/w./fr. fires
(20) fires (nom., acc.)

5. (1) 在何处; he remained in the city.
(2) 期间; he will come in one hour.
(3) 何时; he came at that time.
(4) 伴随; he came with them.
(5) 从何处; he came from the city.
(6) 分离; they lack fire.
(7) 手段; that was done by fire.
(8) 施事; it was done by them.
(9) 方式; it was done faithfully (with faith).

6. (1) **ab** + 夺格。
(2) **cum** + 夺格。
(3) 跟表示"释放"、"缺乏"、"剥夺"等含义的动词时单用夺格;跟其他动词时通常用 **ab, dē, ex**。
(4) **in** + 夺格。
(5) 单用夺格。
(6) **cum** + 夺格;如果名词被形容词修饰,**cum** 可以省去。
(7) **ab, dē, ex** + 夺格。
(8) 单用夺格。

7. At that time he faithfully preserved the liberty of those ten citizens. 8. He managed the state with great care (= very carefully). 9. The state was managed by him with great care. 10. Many good things were seen in the middle of the city. 11. On that day they prepared many things hopefully. 12. We snatched the fire from the hands of the boy. 13. In five days Cicero will rescue the republic from danger. 14. You (sg.) freed the two republics from fear. 15. The earth nourishes human beings with good fruits. 16. He nourished their uncertain hopes by his own courage. 17. In this age our hopes are being destroyed by these three tyrants. 18. Seven of our friends came from that state with great fear. 19. The whole clan came into the territory of this state with a large band of friends in one day. 20. Not all free men dare to join themselves with this republic. 21. If those men lack faith,

there is no hope of friendship and peace. 22. Good faith and the love of this republic can save us. 23. You (sg.) have given (your) whole life to this state.

24. (7) 何时; 方式; (8) 方式; (9) 方式; (10) 在何处; (11) 何时; 方式; (13) 期间; 分离; (14) 分离; (15) 手段; (16) 手段; (17) 何时; 施事; (18) 从何处; 方式; (19) 伴随; 期间; (21) 分离。

第二十三课练习

1. 说出下列词尾分别指示什么拉丁语分词，并给出相应的英语后缀或短语：(1) –tus; (2) –ns; (3) –sūrus; (4) –ntem; (5) –tūrus; (6) –ndus; (7) –sus; (8) –ntēs; (9) –sī; (10) –tīs。这些形式应当大声朗读出来，直到对它们形成语言反射。这种反射可以通过下面的练习来检验。

2. 根据时态和语态翻译下列分词。

(1) futūrus	(7) versus	(13) faciendus	(19) datī
(2) pressūrus	(8) versūrus	(14) rapientēs	(20) datūrōs
(3) premēns	(9) dictus	(15) raptūrōs	(21) dantem
(4) pressus	(10) dīcēns	(16) cupīta	(22) mōtus
(5) premendus	(11) dictūrus	(17) cupientēs	(23) moventem
(6) vertēns	(12) factus	(18) dandum	(24) mōtūrī

3. 将下列分词或分词短语翻译成阳性单数主格形式的拉丁语。

(1) (having been) seen	(10) (having been) conquered
(2) seeing	(11) about to conquer
(3) about to see	(12) conquering
(4) to be written	(13) about to join
(5) about to write	(14) joining
(6) (having been) written	(15) (having been) dragged
(7) sending	(16) dragging
(8) (having been) sent	(17) about to throw
(9) about to send	(18) (having been) thrown

4. Captus nihil dīxit. 5. Servitūte līberātus, vītam iūcundam aget. 6. Dōna dantibus grātiās ēgit. 7. Aliquem dōna petentem nōn amō. 8. Hominī multam pecūniam cupientī pauca dōna sōla dabat. 9. Ad lūdum tuum fīlium meum docendum mīsī. 10. Iste, aliam gentem victūrus, magistrōs librōsque dēlēre cupiēbat. 11. Hīs īnsidiīs territī, vītam miseram vīvēmus. 12. Diū oppressī, sē contrā opprimentem tyrannum vertere coepērunt. 13. Illī quattuor virī miserī, ā tyrannō vīsī, trāns fīnem cucurrērunt. 14. Ōrātor, tyrannum timēns, iūcunda semper dīcēbat. 15. Aliquem nōs timentem timēmus. 16. Hī vincentēs omnia iūra cīvium victōrum tollent. 17. Ille miser fugitūrus cōnsilium trium amīcōrum petēbat. 18. Senex, ab duōbus ex amīcīs monitus, ad nōs fūgit. 19. Ipse, ā sene secundō adiūtus, pecūniā carentibus multās rēs dabat. 20. Quis, hīs perīculīs līberātus, deīs grātiās nōn dabit? 21. Iūnctī vōbīscum, rem pūblicam cōnservābimus. 22. Fidem ha-

bentibus nihil est incertum.

答案

1. (1) 完成时被动态分词 = having been . . . 或英语中的完成时分词
   (2) 现在时主动态分词 = –ing
   (3) 将来时主动态分词 = about to . . .
   (4) 现在时主动态分词= –ing
   (5) 将来时主动态分词 = about to . . .
   (6) 将来时被动态分词 = (about) to be . . .
   (7) 完成时被动态分词 = having been . . .
   (8) 现在时主动态分词 = –ing
   (9) 完成时被动态分词 = having been (例如复数主格)
   (10) 完成时被动态分词 = having been (复数与格或复数夺格)

2. (1) about to be
   (2) about to press
   (3) pressing
   (4) (having been) pressed
   (5) (about) to be pressed
   (6) turning
   (7) (having been) turned
   (8) about to turn
   (9) (having been) said
   (10) saying
   (11) about to say
   (12) (having been) done
   (13) (about) to be done
   (14) seizing
   (15) about to seize
   (16) (having been) desired
   (17) desiring
   (18) (about) to be given
   (19) (having been) given
   (20) about to give
   (21) giving
   (22) (having been) moved
   (23) moving
   (24) about to move

3. (1) vīsus
   (2) vidēns
   (3) vīsūrus
   (4) scrībendus
   (5) scrīptūrus
   (6) scrīptus
   (7) mittēns
   (8) missus
   (9) missūrus
   (10) victus
   (11) victūrus
   (12) vincēns
   (13) iūnctūrus
   (14) iungēns
   (15) tractus
   (16) trahēns
   (17) iactūrus
   (18) iactus

4. When captured (*lit.*, having been captured) he said nothing. 5. Freed from slavery he will lead a pleasant life. 6. He thanked those giving the gifts. 7. I do not like someone seeking gifts. 8. To a man desiring much money he used to give only a few gifts. 9. I sent my son to your school to be taught. 10. That man, when about to conquer another people, kept wishing to destroy (their) teachers and books. 11. Terrified by this plot we shall live a wretched life. 12. Long oppressed, they began to turn themselves against the oppressing tyrant. 13. Those four unfortunate men, when seen by the tyrant, ran across the border. 14. The orator, because he feared the tyrant, always used to say pleasing things. 15. We fear someone fearing us. (= who fears us). 16. These men, if they conquer, will take away all the rights of the conquered citizens. 17. That wretched man on the point of fleeing kept seeking the advice of his three friends. 18. The old man, warned by two of his friends, fled to us. 19. Having himself been helped by the second old man, he kept giving many things to those lacking money. 20. Who, when freed from these dangers, will

not thank the gods? 21. Joined with you (pl.), we shall save the republic. 22. To those having faith nothing is uncertain.

第二十四课练习

1. (1) 在拉丁语中,独立夺格一般包含哪两个关键部分?
   (2) 独立夺格的名词可以作动词的主语或宾语吗?
2. (1) 解释"独立"(absolute)一词。
   (2) 根据第二十四课 p. 153—154 的例子,通常用什么标点符号来指示独立夺格? 这如何与"独立"一词相协调?
3. 独立夺格一般应当直译吗? 为什么?
4. 给出五个可以用来(根据语境的要求)翻译独立夺格的英语从句连词。
5. 罗马人会认为下列句子正确吗? 为什么?(可以借助第二十四课中的例子)
   (1) Urbe captā, Caesar eam dēlēvit.
   (2) Caesar, urbem captus, eam dēlēvit.
   (3) Caesar urbem captam dēlēvit.
   (4) Urbe captā, Caesar multās gentēs dēlēvit.
6. (1) **-ndus** 分词(动形词)+ **sum** 表达什么观念?
   (2) 解释**-ndus, -nda, -ndum** 分词的一致关系。
   (3) 哪个拉丁语动词 + 不定式表达类似的观念?
7. (1) 解释下面这句话中 **mihi** 的句法:Cīvitās mihi cōnservanda est。
   (2) 用表示"by me"的拉丁语补充下面这句话,并说明其结构:Cīvitās ——— cōnservāta est。

8. Hīs duōbus virīs imperium tenentibus, rēs pūblica valēbit. 9. Hāc fāmā narrātā, dux urbem sine morā relīquit. 10. Omnī cupiditāte pecūniae glōriaeque ex animō expulsā, ille dux sē vīcit. 11. Omnis cupiditās rērum malārum nōbīs vincenda est sī bonam vītam agere cupimus. 12. Cīvibus patriam amantibus, possumus habēre magnās spēs. 13. Omnēs cīvēs istum tyrannum timēbant, quī expellendus erat. 14. Tyrannō superātō, cīvēs lībertātem et iūra recēpērunt. 15. At tyrannō expulsō, alius tyrannus imperium saepe accipit. 16. Quis imperium accipiēns adiuvāre cīvitātem sōlam, nōn sē, cupit? 17. Multīs gentibus victīs, tōtum mundum tenēre cupīvistī. 18. Servitūs omnis generis per tōtum mundum opprimenda est. 19. Sī rēs pūblica nostra valet, nihil tibi timendum est. 20. Patria nostra cuique adiuvanda est quī nostrum modum vītae amat. 21. Omnia igitur iūra cīvibus magnā cūrā cōnservanda sunt. 22. Officiīs ā cīvibus relictīs, rēs pūblica in magnō perīculō erit. 23. Hīs rēbus gravibus dictīs, ōrātor ā nōbīs laudātus est. 24. Vēritās et virtūs omnibus virīs semper quaerendae sunt. 25. Vēritāte et virtūte quaesītīs, rēs pūblica cōnservāta est.

26. 从上面这些句子中,举出:

A. 10 个独立夺格的例子。

B. 7 个**-ndus sum** 结构(被动迂说法)的例子。

C. 5 个施事与格的例子。

D. 2 个施事夺格的例子。

答案

1. (1) 名词(代词)+ 夺格形式的分词。

   (2) 不可以。(参见 p. 153)

2. (1) 参见 p. 153.

   (2) 通常用逗号将独立夺格与句子的其余部分隔开。这使它在一定程度上与句子的其余部分分离。

3. 不是。由于这种"独立"结构在英语中并不常用,所以直译会导致非常蹩脚的英语。

4. When, since, after, although, if. (参见 p. 154.)

5. (1) 不正确,因为独立夺格名词(**urbe**)被用作宾语(通过其代词 **eam**)。

   (2) 不正确,因为 **captus** 意为 *having been* captured,而不是 *having* captured。

   (3) 正确,因为 **urbem captam** (*the captured city*)作 **dēlēvit** 的自然宾语。

   (4) 正确,因为 **urbe captā** 是正常的独立夺格,其名词也没有在其他地方充当主语或宾语。

6. (1) 强制或必须。

   (2) 它实际上是一个谓语形容词,所以它自然与 **sum** 的主语一致。

   (3) **Dēbeō** + 不定式,不过 **dēbeō** 更多地表达一种道德上的义务。

7. (1) **Mihi** 是施事与格。

   (2)**Ā mē**;施事夺格。

8. If (since, etc.) these two men hold the power, the republic will be strong. 9. When (since, etc.) this rumor had been reported, the leader left the city without delay. 10. When every desire for (*lit.,* of) money and glory had been banished from his soul, that leader conquered himself. 11. Every desire for evil things ought to be conquered by us (= we ought to conquer . . .) if we wish to lead a good life. 12. If (since, etc.) the citizens love (their) country, we can have great hopes. 13. All citizens kept fearing that tyrant (of yours), who had to be banished. 14. When the tyrant had been overcome, the citizens regained their liberty and rights. 15. But after a tyrant has been expelled, another tyrant often gets the power. 16. Who in taking the power desires to help the state alone, not himself? 17. When many peoples had been conquered, you (sg.) desired to possess the whole world. 18. Slavery of every sort must be checked throughout the whole world. 19. If our republic is strong, nothing is to be feared by you (sg.). 20. Our country ought to be helped by each one who likes our mode of life. 21. All rights, therefore, ought to be preserved by the citizens with great care. 22. When duties have been deserted by the citizens, the state will be in great danger. 23. When these important things had

been said, the orator was praised by us. 24. Truth and virtue ought always to be sought by all men. 25. When (since) truth and virtue had been sought, the republic was saved.

26. A. (8) virīs tenentibus; (9) fāmā narrātā; (10) cupiditāte expulsā; (12) cīvibus amantibus; (14) tyrannō superātō; (15) tyrannō expulsō; (17) gentibus victīs; (22) officiīs relictīs; (23) rēbus dictīs; (25) vēritāte . . . quaesītīs.
B. (11) vincenda est; (13) expellendus erat; (18) opprimenda est; (19) timendum est; (20) adiuvanda est; (21) cōnservanda sunt; (24) quaerendae sunt.
C. (11) nōbīs; (19) tibi; (20) cuique; (21) cīvibus; (24) virīs.
D. (22) ā cīvibus; (23) ā nōbīs.

第二十五课练习

1. 复习所有四种变位法的现在时主动态和被动态不定式。
2. 如果说**–tūrus(–sūrus)**标志着将来时主动态分词，那么从逻辑上讲，**–tūrus (–sūrus) esse** 是什么形式？
3. 如果说**–tus (–sus)** 标志着完成时被动态分词，那么从逻辑上讲，**–tus (–sus) esse** 是什么形式？
4. 以上不定式的分词部分(**–tūrus, –tūra, –tūrum** 以及**–tus, –a, –um**)与什么相一致？
5. 拉丁语词尾**–isse** 对应于什么英语短语？反复朗读它，直到你一看到**–isse**，就能够立即反应出不定式所固有的时态和语态。
6. 根据时态和语态翻译下列形式，以检验你的语言反射。

(1) mōvisse	(11) sustulisse	(21) quaesītum esse
(2) mōtus esse	(12) trāxisse	(22) expulsum esse
(3) mōtūrus esse	(13) tetigisse	(23) relictōs esse
(4) movērī	(14) amāvisse	(24) data esse
(5) dīcī	(15) vīcisse	(25) datūra esse
(6) scīrī	(16) vīxisse	(26) versūrum esse
(7) servārī	(17) trāctōs esse	(27) pressūrōs esse
(8) rapī	(18) vīsam esse	(28) raptūrōs esse
(9) mittī	(19) raptum esse	(29) iussūrum esse
(10) crēdidisse	(20) missōs esse	(30) tāctūrōs esse

7. 解释直接陈述与间接陈述之间的区别。
8. 下列哪些动词可以引导间接陈述？其含义分别是什么？

(1) mittō	(7) videō	(13) audiō	(19) ostendō
(2) nūntiō	(8) nesciō	(14) sentiō	(20) spērō
(3) rīdeō	(9) parō	(15) agō	(21) iungō
(4) intellegō	(10) crēdō	(16) scrībō	(22) putō
(5) accipiō	(11) terreō	(17) audeō	(23) amō
(6) cupiō	(12) neglegō	(18) gerō	(24) negō

9. 大多数引导间接陈述的动词都可以分成哪四类?

10. 在英语中,间接陈述往往以"that"从句出现,尽管有时用不定式加宾格主语来表示 ("I believe that he is brave"; "I believe him to be brave")。在古典拉丁语中,间接陈述的形式是什么?

11. 罗马人将不定式主语置于哪个格?

12. 在拉丁语的间接陈述中,不定式的时态是否依赖于主要动词的时态? 换句话说,现在时不定式是否只能与现在时主要动词连用,完成时不定式是否只能与完成时主要动词连用?……

13. 下列不定式时态分别表示与主要动词有怎样的时间关系:(1) 完成时;(2) 将来时; (3) 现在时。

14. Sciō tē hoc fēcisse (factūrum esse, facere). 15. Scīvī tē hoc fēcisse (factūrum esse, facere). 16. Crēdidimus eōs ventūrōs esse (vēnisse, venīre). 17. Crēdimus eōs ventūrōs esse (vēnisse, venīre). 18. Crās audiet (A) eōs venīre (i.e., crās); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., herī); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (e.g., paucīs diēbus). 19. Hodiē audit (A) eōs venīre (hodiē); (B) eōs vēnisse (herī); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (mox, *soon*). 20. Herī audīvit (A) eōs venīre (herī); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., prīdiē, *the day before yesterday*); (C) eōs ventūrōs (paucīs diēbus). 21. Spērant vōs eum vīsūrōs esse. 22. Sciō hoc ā tē factum esse. 23. Nescīvī illa ab eō facta esse. 24. Negāvērunt urbem ab hostibus capī (captam esse). 25. Scītis illōs esse (futūrōs esse, fuisse) semper fidēlēs. 26. Scīvistis illōs esse (futūros esse, fuisse) semper fidēlēs. 27. Putābant tyrannum sibi expellendum esse. 28. Crēdimus pācem omnibus ducibus quaerendam esse. 29. Dīcit pācem ab decem ducibus quaerī (quaesītam esse). 30. Dīxit duōs ducēs pācem quaesītūrōs esse (quaerere, quaesīvisse). 31. Hostēs spērant sē omnēs rēs pūblicās victūros esse. 32. Bene sciō mē multa nescīre; nēmō enim potest omnia scīre.

33. 在上面各句中,只有哪一句不是间接陈述中的不定式?

34. 解释下列词的句法, 分别说明其形式和具有该形式的理由:(14) tē; fēcisse; (16) eōs; (17) ventūrōs esse; (21) eum; (22) hoc; (23) eō; (24) hostibus; (25) fidēlēs; (27) sibi; (28) pācem; ducibus; (29) ducibus; (30) pācem; (31) rēs pūblicās。

答案

1. 参见 p. 115, 133—134, 160。
2. 将来时主动态不定式。
3. 完成时被动态不定式。
4. 它们与不定式的主语相一致。参见 p. 161,脚注 1。
5. 由于是完成时主动态不定式的词尾,所以**-isse** 实际上意为"to have. . . ."。

6. (1) to have moved
(2) to have been moved
(3) to be about to move
(4) to be moved
(5) to be said
(6) to be known
(7) to be saved
(8) to be seized
(9) to be sent
(10) to have believed
(11) to have destroyed
(12) to have drawn
(13) to have touched
(14) to have loved
(15) to have conquered
(16) to have lived
(17) to have been drawn
(18) to have been seen
(19) to have been seized
(20) to have been sent
(21) to have been sought
(22) to have been expelled
(23) to have been left
(24) to have been given
(25) to be about to give
(26) to be about to turn
(27) to be about to press
(28) to be about to seize
(29) to be about to order
(30) to be about to touch

7. 参见 p. 161—162。

8. (2) nūntiō, I announce
(4) intellegō, I understand
(7) videō, I see
(8) nesciō, I do not know
(10) crēdō, I believe
(13) audiō, I hear
(14) sentiō, I feel, think
(16) scrībō, I write
(19) ostendō, I show
(20) spērō, I hope
(22) putō, I think
(24) negō, I say that . . . not, deny

9. 言语、认知、思想、感觉感受。参见 p. 164。

10. 不定式加宾格主语；不是"that"从句。

11. 宾格。

12. 不是。

13. (1) 完成时不定式 = 在主要动词之前发生；
(2) 将来时不定式 = 在主要动词之后发生；
(3) 现在时不定式 = 与主要动词同时发生。参见 p. 163。

14. I know that you did (will do, are doing) this (thing). 15. I knew that you had done (would do, were doing) this. 16. We believed that they would come (had come, were coming). 17. We believe that they will come (came, are coming). 18. Tomorrow he will hear (A) that they are coming (i.e., tomorrow); (B) that they came (e.g., yesterday) *or* that they have come; (C) that they will come (e.g., in a few days). 19. Today he hears (A) that they are coming (today); (B) that they came (yesterday); (C) that they will come (soon). 20. Yesterday he heard (A) that they were coming (yesterday); (B) that they had come (e.g., the day before yesterday); (C) that they would come (in a few days). 21. They hope that you (pl.) will see him. 22. I know that this was done by you. 23. I did not know that those things had been done by him. 24. They said that the city was not being captured by the enemy (had not been captured). 25. You (pl.) know that those men are (will be, were/have been) always faithful. 26. You (pl.) knew that those men were (would be, had been) always faithful. 27. They kept thinking that the tyrant ought to be driven out by them (by themselves). 28. We believe that peace ought to be sought by all leaders. 29. He says that peace is being sought (was sought) by the ten leaders. 30. He said that the two leaders would seek (were seeking, had sought) peace. 31. The enemy

hope that they will conquer all states. 32. I well know that I do not know many things, for no one can know all things.

33. **Scīre**（第 32 句）是一个依赖于 **potest** 的补充不定式。

34.

词	形式	理由
(14) tē	宾格	不定式(fēcisse)的主语
(14) fēcisse	完成时主动态不定式	间接陈述
(16) eōs	宾格	不定式(ventūrōs esse)的主语
(17) ventūrōs esse	将来时主动态不定式	间接陈述
(21) eum	宾格	不定式(vīsūrōs esse)的宾语
(22) hoc	宾格	不定式(factum esse)的主语
(23) eō	夺格	施事
(24) hostibus	夺格	施事
(25) fidēlēs	宾格	谓语形容词，与 illōs 一致
(27) sibi	与格	施事，跟被动迂说法
(28) pācem	宾格	不定式(quaerendam esse)的主语
(28) ducibus	与格	施事，跟被动迂说法
(29) ducibus	夺格	施事
(30) pācem	宾格	不定式(quaesitūrōs esse)的宾语
(31) rēs pūblicās	宾格	不定式的宾语

第二十六课练习

1. (1) 在形容词的比较等级中，拉丁语 **–ior** 对应着什么英语词尾？
   (2) 它们有什么表面上的相似性可以帮助记忆？
2. (1) **–issimus** 对应着什么英语形容词词尾？
   (2) 这里有没有什么记忆窍门？
3. (1) **–ior** 和 **–issimus** 通常加到形容词的哪个部分？
   (2) 分别把这些词尾加到下列形容词上：**turpis**; **vēlōx**, gen. **vēlōcis**, *swift*; **prūdēns**, gen. **prūdentis**, *prudent*。
4. 如果 **acerbus** 意为 *harsh*，请给出：(1)比较级 **acerbior** 的三种可能含义；(2)最高级 **acerbissimus** 的两种可能含义。
5. 给出 **quam**：(1)与比较级连用（如 hic erat acerbior quam ille）的含义；(2)与最高级连用（如 hic erat quam acerbissimus）的含义。
6. **Quam**, *than* 后面跟什么格？
7. (1) 大多数第三变格法形容词都有辅音词干或 **i–**词干吗？
   (2) 比较级有辅音词干或 **i–**词干吗？

8. Nūntiāvērunt ducem quam fortissimum vēnisse. 9. Lūce clārissimā ab

quattuor virīs vīsā, cōpiae fortissimae contrā hostēs missae sunt. 10. Istō homine turpissimō expulsō, senātus cīvibus fidēliōribus dōna dedit. 11. Beātiōrēs cīvēs prō cīvibus miseriōribus haec dulcia faciēbant. 12. Hic auctor est clārior quam ille. 13. Quīdam dīxērunt hunc auctōrem esse clāriōrem quam illum. 14. Librōs sapientiōrum auctōrum legite, sī vītam sapientissimam agere cupitis. 15. Sex auctōrēs quōrum librōs lēgī sunt acerbiōrēs. 16. Quibusdam librīs sapientissimīs lēctīs, illa vitia turpiōra vītāvimus. 17. Hic vir, quī turpia vitia sua superāvit, fortior est quam dux fortissimus. 18. Quis est vir fēlīcissimus? Is quī vītam sapientissimam agit fēlīcior est quam tyrannus potentissimus. 19. Remedium vitiōrum vestrōrum vidētur difficilius. 20. Ille dux putāvit patriam esse sibi cāriōrem quam vītam. 21. Manus adulēscentium quam fidēlissimōrum senātuī quaerenda est.

答案

1. (1) 拉丁语**-ior** 对应着英语中的*-er*。
   (2) 它们的发音有一定的相似性，而且都以比较级的标志**-r** 结尾。
2. (1) 拉丁语**-issimus** 对应着英语中的*-est*。
   (2) 它们所共有的 **s** 暗示 **s** 是最高级的标志。
3. (1)它们通常加到形容词的词根上(参见 p. 169—170)。
   (2) turpior, turpissimus; vēlōcior, vēlōcissimus; prūdentior, prūdentissimus
4. (1) **Acerbior** = harsher, rather harsh, too harsh.
   (2) **Acerbissimus** = harshest, very harsh.
5. (1) **Quam** 与比较级连用 = *than* (this man was harsher than that one).
   (2) **Quam** 与最高级连用 = *as . . . as possible, -st possible*(this man was as harsh as possible, the harshest possible).
6. **Quam** 是一个副词或比较连词，其后没有固定的格。在相互比较的两个词中，**quam** 之后的词应与前面的词处于同样的格(参见 p. 171)。
7. (1) 大多数都有 **i-**词干。
   (2) 比较级有辅音词干(顺便指出，*comparative* 和 *consonant* 的起始发音相同)。

8. They announced that the bravest possible leader had come. 9. After a very clear light had been seen by the four men, the bravest troops were sent against the enemy. 10. When that very base man had been banished, the senate gave gifts to the more faithful citizens. 11. The more fortunate citizens used to do these pleasant things on behalf of the more unfortunate citizens. 12. This author is more famous than that one. 13. Certain men said that this author was more famous than that one. 14. Read the books of wiser authors if you wish to lead the wisest (a very wise) life. 15. The six authors whose books I have read are too (rather) harsh. 16. After certain very wise books had been read, we avoided those baser faults. 17. This man, who has overcome his base faults, is braver than the very brave leader. 18. Who is the happiest man? He who leads the wisest life is happier than the most powerful tyrant. 19. The cure of your vices seems rather (too) difficult. 20. That leader thought that his country was dearer to him than life. 21. A band of the most faithful young men possible ought to be sought by the senate.

第二十七课练习

1. (1)原级阳性以-**er** 结尾的形容词的比较等级有何特别之处?

   (2) 这一点适用于任何变格法的形容词,还是只适用于第一、第二变格法的形容词?

2. (1) **facilis** 的比较等级有何特别之处?

   (2) 所有以-**lis** 结尾的形容词都遵循这一规则吗? 请具体说明。

3. 某些最常见形容词的比较等级是最不规则的。在学习这些不规则形式的过程中,英语可以提供很大帮助。为了说明这一点,请分别写出下列拉丁词的各种形式:parvus, malus, bonus, (prō), magnus, superus, multus;再从下列词中选出能够暗示其比较级和最高级的英语单词:pessimist, prime, minus, ameliorate, summit, maximum, supreme, optimist, plus, superior, pejorative, prior, major, minimum。

4. 翻译下列短语:

(1) bellum minus
(2) bellum pessimum
(3) bellum maius
(4) bella priōra
(5) liber simillimus
(6) liber difficilior
(7) puer minimus
(8) puer melior
(9) puella pulcherrima
(10) puella pulchrior
(11) puellae plūrimae
(12) fidēs maior
(13) fidēs minima
(14) mare minus
(15) in marī minōre
(16) maria maiōra
(17) frūctūs optimī
(18) frūctus peior
(19) hominēs ācerrimī
(20) hominēs ācriōrēs
(21) hominēs plūrēs
(22) labor difficillimus
(23) labor suprēmus
(24) plūs labōris
(25) plūrēs labōrēs
(26) ducēs optimī
(27) ducēs maiōrēs
(28) ducēs meliōrēs
(29) dōna minima
(30) dōna plūra
(31) dōna prīma
(32) plūs laudis
(33) plūrēs laudēs
(34) cīvēs pessimī
(35) cīvēs meliōrēs
(36) cīvēs līberrimī

5. Facillima saepe nōn sunt optima. 6. Difficilia saepe sunt maxima. 7. Meliōra studia sunt difficiliōra. 8. Pessimī auctōrēs librōs plūrimōs scrībunt. 9. Hī librī peiōrēs sunt quam librī auctōrum meliōrum. 10. Puer minor maius dōnum accēpit. 11. Illa rēs pūblica minima maximās spēs habuit. 12. Plūrēs virī crēdunt hoc bellum esse peius quam prīmum bellum. 13. Dux melior cum cōpiīs maiōribus veniet. 14. Ācrēs ducēs ācriōrēs cōpiās ācerrimōrum hostium saepe laudābant. 15. Tyrannō pessimō expulsō, cīvēs ducem meliōrem et sapientiōrem quaesivērunt. 16. Meliōrī ducī maius imperium et plūs pecūniae dedērunt. 17. Cīvēs urbium minōrum nōn sunt meliōrēs quam eī urbium maximārum. 18. Nōs nōn meliōrēs sumus quam plūrimī virī priōrum aetātum. 19. Maiōrēs nostrī Apollinem (Apollō, acc.) deum sōlis appellābant.

答案

1. (1)和(2)——参见 p. 177,第二组形容词。

2. (1)和(2)——参见 p. 177,第一组形容词。

3.

原级	比较级	最高级
parvus	minus (minor, minus)	minimum (minimus)
malus	pejorative (peior)	pessimist (pessimus)
bonus	ameliorate (melior)	optimist (optimus)
(prō)	prior (prior)	prime (prīmus)
magnus	major (maior)	maximum (maximus)
superus	superior (superior)	supreme (suprēmus)
multus	plus (plūs)	summit (summus)

4. (1) a smaller war
(2) the worst (very bad) war
(3) a greater war
(4) former wars
(5) a very similar book
(6) a more difficult book
(7) the smallest boy
(8) the better boy
(9) a very (most) beautiful girl
(10) a more beautiful girl
(11) very many girls
(12) greater faith
(13) very small faith
(14) a smaller sea
(15) in a smaller sea
(16) larger seas
(17) the best fruits
(18) worse fruit
(19) the fiercest (very fier
(20) fiercer men
(21) more men
(22) most (very) difficult labor
(23) the last (supreme) labor
(24) more labor
(25) more labors
(26) the best leaders
(27) greater leaders
(28) better leaders
(29) the smallest gifts
(30) more gifts
(31) the first gifts
(32) more praise
(33) more praises
(34) the worst citizens
(35) better citizens
(36) very free citizens

5. The easiest things often are not the best. 6. The difficult things are often the greatest. 7. The better pursuits are more (rather) difficult. 8. The worst authors write very many books. 9. These books are worse than the books of better authors. 10. The smaller boy received a larger gift. 11. That very small republic had the greatest hopes. 12. More men believe that this war is worse than the first war. 13. A better leader will come with greater forces. 14. Fierce leaders often used to praise the fiercer forces of the fiercest enemy. 15. When the very evil tyrant had been banished, the citizens sought a better and a wiser leader. 16. They gave the better leader greater power and more money. 17. Citizens of the smaller cities are not better than those of the largest cities. 18. We are not better than very many men of former ages. 19. Our ancestors used to call Apollo the god of the sun.

第二十八课练习

1. 虚拟式在拉丁语中通常指事实还是非事实?
2. 虚拟式在拉丁语中比在英语中更常见吗?
3. (1) 在第一变位法中,什么元音是现在时虚拟式的标志?
   (2) 在其他变位法中,什么元音是现在时虚拟式的标志?
4. 当主句动词是虚拟式时,这一虚拟式的确切含义是什么?
5. 由 **ut** 或 **nē** 引出的从句中的虚拟式表达什么观念?

7. 古典时期的罗马散文作家是否用不定式来表达目的，就像在英语中那样？
8. 将下列单词中的虚拟式进行归类，说出它的人称和数。直陈式则要根据其人称、数和时态翻译出来。

(1) mittet	(11) audiēmur	(21) līberēminī
(2) mittat	(12) audiāmur	(22) līberābiminī
(3) mittit	(13) audīmur	(23) dēlentur
(4) det	(14) ēripiās	(24) dēleantur
(5) dat	(15) ēripis	(25) vincēris
(6) crēdant	(16) ēripiēs	(26) vinceris
(7) crēdunt	(17) sciuntur	(27) vincāris
(8) crēdent	(18) scientur	(28) dīcimus
(9) movent	(19) sciantur	(29) dīcēmus
(10) moveant	(20) līberāminī	(30) dīcāmus

9. Ille dux veniat. Eum exspectāmus. 10. Cīvēs turpēs ex rē pūblicā discēdant ut in pāce vīvāmus. 11. Sī illī duo amīcōs cupiunt, vēra beneficia faciant. 12. Beneficia aliīs praestat ut amētur. 13. Haec verba fēlīcia vōbīs dīcō nē discēdātis. 14. Patriae causā haec difficillima faciāmus. 15. Illīs miserīs plūs pecūniae date nē armīs contrā hostēs careant. 16. Putat eōs id factūrōs esse ut īram meam vītent. 17. Arma parēmus nē lībertās nostra tollātur. 18. Armīsne sōlīs lībertās nostra ē perīculō ēripiētur? 19. Nē sapientēs librōs difficiliōrēs scrībant. 20. Satis sapientiae enim ā librīs difficiliōribus nōn accipiēmus. 21. Meliōra et maiōra faciat nē vītam miserrimam agat. 22. Haec illī auctōrī clārissimō nārrā ut in librō eius scrībantur. 23. Vēritātem semper quaerāmus, sine quā maximī animī nōn possunt esse fēlīcēs.

24. 解释下列词的句法（把这些词分行列出，说明其形式，并给出这种形式的理由）：(9) veniat; (10) discēdant, vīvāmus; (11) faciant; (12) praestat, amētur; (13) discēdātis; (14) faciāmus; (15) date, armīs, careant; (16) eōs, factūrōs esse, vītent; (17) parēmus, tollātur; (18) armīs, ēripiētur; (19) scrībant; (20) accipiēmus; (21) faciat, agat; (22) nārrā, scrībantur; (23) quaerāmus。

答案

1. 非事实；比如本课学的祈愿句和目的从句。参见 p. 186。
2. 参见 p. 184。
3. (1) **ē**; (2) **ā**（只是在第三、第四变位法中，**dūcam** 和 **audiam** 既是将来时直陈式，也是现在时虚拟式）。
4. 命令，称为"祈愿虚拟式"。
5. 目的。
6. 祈愿虚拟式。
7. 不。（参见 p. 186）

8. (1) he will send
(2) subj., 3rd sg.
(3) he is sending
(4) subj., 3rd sg.
(5) he gives
(6) subj., 3rd pl.
(7) they believe
(8) they will believe
(9) they move
(10) subj., 3rd pl.
(11) we shall be heard
(12) subj., 1st pl. pass.
(13) we are heard
(14) subj., 2nd sg.
(15) you (sg.) are seizing
(16) you (sg.) will seize
(17) they are known
(18) they will be known
(19) subj., 3rd pl. pass.
(20) you (pl.) are freed
(21) subj., 2d. pl. pass.
(22) you (pl.) will be freed
(23) they are destroyed
(24) subj., 3rd pl. pass.
(25) you (sg.) will be conquered
(26) you (sg.) are conquered
(27) subj., 2nd sg.
(28) we say
(29) we shall say
(30) subj., 1st pl.

9. Let that leader come. We are awaiting him. 10. Let the base citizens depart from (our) republic so that we may live in peace. 11. If those two men desire friends, let them do real kindnesses. 12. He shows kindnesses to others in order to be loved (so that he may be loved). 13. I say these happy words to you so that you may not depart. 14. Let us do these very difficult things for the sake of our country. 15. Give more money to those unfortunate people so that they may not lack arms against the enemy. 16. He thinks that they will do it to avoid my anger. 17. Let us prepare arms so that our liberty may not be taken away. 18. Will our freedom be rescued from danger by arms alone? 19. Let philosophers not write too difficult books. 20. For (= the truth is) we shall not receive enough wisdom from too difficult books. 21. Let him do better and greater things so that he may not lead a most wretched life. 22. Tell these things to that very famous author so that they may be written in his book. 23. Let us always seek the truth, without which the greatest souls cannot be happy.

24.

词	形式	理由
(9) veniat	现在时虚拟式	命令(祈愿)
(10) discēdant	现在时虚拟式	命令
vīvāmus	现在时虚拟式	目的
(11) faciant	现在时虚拟式	命令
(12) praestat	现在时直陈式	陈述事实
amētur	现在时虚拟式	目的
(13) discēdātis	现在时虚拟式	目的
(14) faciāmus	现在时虚拟式	命令
(15) date	命令式	第二人称命令
armīs	夺格	分离
careant	现在时虚拟式	目的
(16) eōs	宾格	不定式的主语
factūrōs esse	将来时主动态不定式	间接陈述
vītent	现在时虚拟式	目的
(17) parēmus	现在时虚拟式	命令

tollātur	现在时虚拟式	目的
(18) armīs	夺格	手段
ēripiētur	将来时直陈式	事实
(19) scrībant	现在时虚拟式	命令
(20) accipiēmus	将来时直陈式	事实
(21) faciat	现在时虚拟式	命令
agat	现在时虚拟式	目的
(22) nārrā	命令式	第二人称命令
scrībantur	现在时虚拟式	目的
(23) quaerāmus	现在时虚拟式	命令

第二十九课练习

1. 未完成时虚拟式的主动态和被动态结构有何简单规则?
2. 这一规则是否适用于像 **sum** 和 **possum** 这样的不规则动词?
3. 翻译下列词中的直陈式,并对其中的虚拟式进行归类,说出它们的时态、人称和数。

(1) vocāret	(11) dīcat	(21) possīmus
(2) invenīrent	(12) dīcet	(22) essent
(3) vidērēmus	(13) dīcit	(23) accipiās
(4) dīcerem	(14) sint	(24) accipiēs
(5) ēriperēs	(15) posset	(25) acciperēs
(6) servet	(16) possit	(26) expellēminī
(7) servārētis	(17) discēderent	(27) expellerēminī
(8) videat	(18) discēdent	(28) expellāminī
(9) inveniēs	(19) discēdant	(29) movērentur
(10) inveniās	(20) dēmus	(30) moventur

4. 如何在拉丁语中表示结果?
5. 如何区别结果从句与目的从句?
6. 未完成时虚拟式用在何时何处?

7. Optimōs librōs tantā cum cūrā lēgērunt ut multum sapientiae discerent. 8. Bonōs librōs cum cūrā legēbāmus ut sapientiam discerēmus. 9. Optimī librī discipulīs legendī sunt ut vēritātem et mōrēs bonōs discant. 10. Sapientissimī auctōrēs plūrēs librōs scrībant ut omnēs gentēs adiuvāre possint. 11. Animī plūrimōrum hominum tam stultī sunt ut discere nōn cupiant. 12. At multae mentēs ita ācrēs sunt ut bene discere possint. 13. Quīdam magistrī discipulōs tantā cum arte docēbant ut ipsī discipulī quidem discere cuperent. 14. Imperium istīus tyrannī tantum erat ut senātus eum expellere nōn posset. 15. Omnēs cīvēs sē patriae dent nē hostēs lībertātem tollant. 16. Caesar tam ācer dux erat ut hostēs mīlitēs Rōmānōs nōn vincerent. 17. Dūcimusne aliās gentēs tantā cum sapientiā et virtūte ut lībertās cōnservētur? 18. Tanta beneficia faciēbātis ut omnēs vōs amārent. 19. Tam

dūrus erat ut nēmō eum amāret. 20. Mīlia cīvium ex eā terrā fugiēbant nē ā tyrannō opprimerentur. 21. Lībertātem sīc amāvērunt ut numquam ab hostibus vincerentur.

22. 解释下列词的句法:(7) discerent; (8) discerēmus; (9) discant; (10) scrībant, possint; (11) cupiant; (12) possint; (13) cuperent; (14) posset; (15) dent, tollant; (16) vincerent; (17) cōnservētur; (18) amārent; (19) amāret; (20) opprimerentur; (21) vincerentur。

答案

1. 现在时主动态不定式 + 人称词尾。参见 p. 192。
2. 适用。
3. (1) impf. subj., 3 sg.
(2) impf. subj., 3 pl.
(3) impf. subj., 1 pl.
(4) impf. subj., 1 sg.
(5) impf. subj., 2 sg.
(6) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(7) impf. subj., 2 pl.
(8) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(9) you (sg.) will find
(10) pres. subj., 2 sg.
(11) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(12) he will say
(13) he says
(14) pres. subj., 3 pl.
(15) impf. subj., 3 sg.
(16) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(17) impf. subj., 3 pl.
(18) they will depart
(19) pres. subj., 3 pl.
(20) pres. subj., 1 pl.
(21) pres. subj., 1 pl.
(22) impf. subj., 3 pl.
(23) pres. subj., 2 sg.
(24) you will receive
(25) impf. subj., 2 sg.
(26) you (pl.) will be banished
(27) impf. subj., 2 pl.
(28) pres. subj., 2 pl.
(29) impf. subj., 3 pl.
(30) they are moved
4. **Ut** 或 **ut nōn** + 虚拟式。
5. 参见 p. 193。
6. 参见 p. 193。

7. They read the best books with such great care that they learned much wisdom. 8. We used to read good books with care so that we might learn wisdom. 9. The best books ought to be read by students in order that they may learn the truth and good character. 10. Let the wisest authors write more books so that they may be able to help all peoples. 11. The souls of very many men are so foolish that they do not wish to learn. 12. But many minds are so keen that they can learn well. 13. Some teachers used to teach their pupils so skillfully (with such great skill) that even the pupils themselves wanted to learn. 14. The power of that tyrant was so great that the senate could not drive him out. 15. Let all citizens dedicate (give) themselves to the country so that the enemy may not take away their liberty. 16. Caesar was such a keen leader that the enemy did not conquer the Roman soldiers. 17. Are we leading other peoples with such great wisdom and courage that liberty is being preserved? 18. You (pl.) used to do such great kindnesses that all loved you. 19. He was so harsh that no one loved him. 20. Thousands of citizens kept fleeing from that land in order not to be oppressed by the tyrant. 21. They so loved liberty that they were never conquered by the enemy.

22.

词	形式	理由
(7) discerent	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(8) discerēmus	未完成时虚拟式	目的从句
(9) discant	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
(10) scrībant	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
possint	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
(11) cupiant	现在时虚拟式	结果从句
(12) possint	现在时虚拟式	结果从句
(13) cuperent	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(14) posset	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(15) dent	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
tollant	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
(16) vincerent	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(17) cōnservētur	现在时虚拟式	结果从句
(18) amārent	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(19) amāret	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(20) opprimerentur	未完成时虚拟式	目的从句
(21) vincerentur	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句

第三十课练习

1. 既然未完成时虚拟式主动态的形式是现在时主动态不定式加人称词尾，那么过去完成时虚拟式主动态的形式是什么？
2. 既然过去完成时直陈式被动态的形式是完成时被动态分词 + **eram**（即 **sum** 的未完成时直陈式），那么过去完成时虚拟式被动态有没有什么类似的规则？
3. 如果 **positus est** 是完成时直陈式被动态，那么 **positus sit** 最可能是什么？
4. 在大多数情况下，完成时虚拟式主动态与什么形式的直陈式主动态最为相似？
5. 说出下列虚拟式的时态、语态、人称和数：

(1) ponerētur	(5) posuerint	(9) darent	(13) dedissēs
(2) posuissem	(6) ponerēmus	(10) datī essēmus	(14) darētur
(3) positī sint	(7) posuissētis	(11) det	(15) dederīmus
(4) ponāmur	(8) positus esset	(12) datus sīs	(16) dedissent

6. (1) 直陈式的基本时态有哪些？
   (2) 虚拟式的基本时态有哪些？
   (3) 直陈式的历史时态有哪些？
   (4) 虚拟式的历史时态有哪些？
7. (1) 相对于基本时态的主要动词，现在时虚拟式指示什么时间？

(2) 相对于历史时态的主要动词,未完成时虚拟式指示什么时间?

(3) 相对于基本时态的主要动词,完成时虚拟式指示什么时间?

(4) 相对于派生时态的主要动词,过去完成时虚拟式指示什么时间?

8. Ubi dux est (fuit)? 9. Rogant ubi dux sit (fuerit). 10. Rogābant ubi dux esset (fuisset). 11. Rogābunt ubi dux sit (fuerit). 12. Nesciō ubi pecūnia posita sit. 13. Scīsne ubi pecūnia ponātur? 14. Scīvērunt ubi pecūnia ponerētur. 15. Nescīvit ubi pecūnia posita esset. 16. Vōbīs dīcēmus cūr mīles hoc fēcerit (faciat). 17. Mihi dīxērunt cūr mīles hoc fēcisset (faceret). 18. Dīc mihi quis vēnerit (veniat). 19. Ōrātor rogāvit cūr cēterī cīvēs haec cōnsilia nōn cognōvissent. 20. Ducī nūntiāvimus cēterōs mīlitēs in illam terram fugere (fūgisse). 21. Ducī nūntiāvimus in quam terram cēterī mīlitēs fugerent (fūgissent). 22. Audīvimus cīvēs tam fidēlēs esse ut rem pūblicam cōnservārent. 23. Audīvimus quid cīvēs fēcissent ut rem pūblicam cōnservārent. 24. Quaerēbant quōrum in rē pūblicā pāx invenīrī posset. 25. Cognōvimus pācem in patriā eōrum nōn inventam esse. 26. Illī stultī semper rogant quid sit melius quam imperium aut pecūnia. 27. Nōs quidem putāmus pecūniam ipsam nōn esse malam; sed crēdimus vēritātem et lībertātem et amīcitiam esse meliōrēs et maiōrēs. 28. Haec cupimus ut vītam pulchriōrem agāmus; nam pecūnia sōla et imperium possunt hominēs dūrōs facere, ut fēlicēs nōn sint. 29. Dēnique omnia expōnat ut iam comprehendātis quanta scelera contrā rem pūblicam commissa sint.

30. 解释下列词的句法:(15) posita esset; (16) fēcerit; (17) fēcisset; (18) vēnerit; (20) fugere; (21) fugerent; (22) esse, cōnservārent; (23) fēcissent, cōnservārent; (24) posset; (25) inventam esse; (26) sit; (27) esse; (28) agāmus, sint; (29) expōnat, comprehendātis, commissa sint。

答案

1. 完成时主动态不定式(**-isse**) + 人称词尾;例如 **pōnere-m** 和 **posuisse-m**。
2. 完成时被动态分词 + **essem**(**sum** 的未完成时虚拟式);例如 **positus eram** 和 **positus essem**。
3. **Positus sit** 是完成时虚拟式被动态。
4. 将来完成时直陈式。
5. (1) impf. pass., 3 sg.
   (2) plupf. act., 1 sg.
   (3) perf. pass., 3 pl.
   (4) pres. pass., 1 pl.
   (5) perf. act., 3 pl.
   (6) impf. act., 1 pl.
   (7) plupf. act., 2 pl.
   (8) plupf. pass., 3 sg.
   (9) impf. act., 3 pl.
   (10) plupf. pass., 1 pl.
   (11) pres. act., 3 sg.
   (12) perf. pass., 2 sg.
   (13) plupf. act., 2 sg.
   (14) impf. pass., 3 sg.
   (15) perf. act., 1 pl.
   (16) plupf. act., 3 pl.
6. (1) 现在时和将来时。参见 p. 201。

(2) 现在时和完成时。

(3) 过去时诸时态。

(4) 未完成时和过去完成时。

7. (1) 同时或之后。参见 p. 201。

(2) 同时或之后。

(3) 之前。

(4) 之前。

8. Where is (was) the leader? 9. They ask where the leader is (was). 10. They kept asking where the leader was (had been). 11. They will ask where the leader is (was). 12. I do not know where the money was put. 13. Do you (sg.) know where the money is being put? 14. They knew where the money was being put. 15. He did not know where the money had been put. 16. We shall tell you (pl.) why the soldier did (does) this. 17. They told me why the soldier had done (was doing) this. 18. Tell me who came (is coming). 19. The orator asked why the other citizens had not learned these plans. 20. We announced to the leader that the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled) into that land. 21. We announced to the leader into what land the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled). 22. We heard that the citizens were so faithful that they preserved the state. 23. We heard what the citizens had done to preserve the state. 24. They kept inquiring in whose state peace could be found. 25. We learned that peace had not been found in their country. 26. Those foolish men always ask what is better than power or money. 27. We certainly think that money itself is not bad; but we believe that truth and liberty and friendship are better and greater. 28. These things we desire so that we may live a finer life; for money alone and power can make men harsh, so that they are not happy. 29. Finally, let him explain all things so that you (pl.) may now understand what great crimes have been committed against the republic.

30.

词	形式	理由
(15) posita esset	过去完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(16) fēcerit	完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(17) fēcisset	过去完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(18) vēnerit	完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(20) fugere	现在时不定式	间接陈述
(21) fugerent	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(22) esse	现在时不定式	间接陈述
cōnservārent	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(23) fēcissent	过去完成时虚拟式	间接问句
cōnservārent	未完成时虚拟式	目的从句
(24) posset	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(25) inventam esse	完成时不定式	间接陈述
(26) sit	现在时虚拟式	间接问句

(27) esse	现在时不定式	间接陈述
(28) agāmus	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
sint	现在时虚拟式	结果从句
(29) expōnat	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
comprehendātis	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
commissa sint	现在时虚拟式	间接问句

第三十一课练习

1. 说出 **cum** + 虚拟式的三种可能含义。
2. 当一个 **cum** 从句后面跟着 **tamen** 时，**cum** 一般是什么含义？
3. (1) **ferō** 属于什么变位法？

   (2) **ferō** 的下列形式有哪些共同的不规则性：ferre, fers, fert, fertis, ferris, fertur?
4. 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类，并翻译其余的形式。

(1) ferat	(6) ferunt	(11) fertis	(16) tulisse
(2) fert	(7) ferent	(12) ferēris	(17) lātūrus esse
(3) ferret	(8) ferant	(13) ferris	(18) ferendus
(4) feret	(9) fertur	(14) fer	(19) lātus esse
(5) ferre	(10) ferte	(15) ferrī	(20) tulisset

5. Cum hoc dīxissēmus, illī vīgintī respondērunt sē pācem aequam oblātūrōs esse. 6. Cum sē in aliam terram contulisset, tamen amīcōs novōs invēnit. 7. Cum amīcitiam nōbīs offerant, eīs auxilium offerēmus. 8. Cum perīculum magnum esset, omnēs cōpiās et arma brevī tempore contulērunt. 9. Quid tū fers? Quid ille fert? Dīc mihi cūr haec dōna offerantur. 10. Cum exposuisset quid peteret, negāvistī tantum auxilium posse offerrī. 11. Cum dōna iūcunda tulissent, potuī tamen īnsidiās eōrum cognōscere. 12. Cum cōnsilia tua nunc comprehendāmus, īnsidiās tuās nōn ferēmus. 13. Tanta mala nōn ferenda sunt. Cōnfer tē in exsilium. 14. Dēnique hī centum cīvēs reī pūblicae auxilium ferant. 15. Putābam eōs vīnum nāvibus lātūrōs esse. 16. Cum mīlitēs nostrī hostēs vicissent, tamen eīs multa beneficia obtulērunt. 17. Cum cognōvisset quanta beneficia cēterī trēs offerrent, ipse aequa beneficia obtulit. 18. Cīvibus miserīs gentium parvārum satis auxiliī dēbēmus offerre. 19. Cum cōnsul haec verba dīxisset, senātus respondit pecūniam ad hanc rem collātam esse.

20. 解释下列词的句法：(5) dīxissēmus, oblātūrōs esse; (6) contulisset; (7) offerant; (8) esset; (9) offerantur; (10) exposuisset, peteret; (11) tulissent; (12) comprehendāmus; (13) cōnfer; (14) ferant; (15) nāvibus, lātūrōs esse; (16) vīcissent; (17) offerrent; (19) dīxisset。

答案

1. When (状况从句，应与 **cum** 时间从句区分开), since, although.

2. 虽然、尽管。

3. (1) 第三变位法。

(2) 它们都没有起连接作用的元音 **e/i**(该元音可见于 **dūcō** 的相应形式,参见 p. 210)。

4. (1) pres. subj. act., 3 sg.
(2) he bears
(3) impf. subj. act., 3 sg.
(4) he will bear
(5) to bear
(6) they bear
(7) they will bear
(8) pres. subj. act., 3 pl.
(9) he is borne
(10) bear (2 pl.)
(11) you (pl.) bear
(12) you (sg.) will be borne
(13) you (sg.) are borne
(14) bear (2 sg.)
(15) to be borne
(16) to have borne
(17) to be about to bear
(18) to be borne (gerundive)
(19) to have been borne
(20) plupf. subj. act., 3 sg.

5. When we had said this, those twenty men replied that they would offer a just peace. 6. Although he had gone into another country, nevertheless he found new friends. 7. Since they offer us friendship, we shall offer them aid. 8. Since the danger was great, they brought all their troops and arms together in a short time. 9. What do *you* (sg.) bring? What does he bring? Tell me why these gifts are offered. 10. When he had explained what he was seeking, you (sg.) said that such great aid could not be offered. 11. Although they had brought pleasing gifts, I was able nevertheless to recognize their treachery. 12. Since we now understand your plans, we will not endure your treachery. 13. Such great evils are not to be endured. Go (betake yourself) into exile. 14. Finally, let these hundred citizens bear aid to the republic. 15. I kept thinking that they would bring the wine in ships (*lit.,* by ships). 16. Although our soldiers had conquered the enemy, nevertheless they offered them many kindnesses. 17. When he had learned what great benefits the other three men were offering, he himself offered equal benefits. 18. We ought to offer sufficient aid to the unfortunate citizens of small nations. 19. When the consul had spoken these words, the senate replied that money had been brought together for this purpose.

20.

词	形式	理由
(5) dīxissēmus	过去完成时虚拟式	**cum** 状况从句
oblātūrōs esse	将来时不定式	间接陈述
(6) contulisset	过去完成时虚拟式	**cum** 转折从句
(7) offerant	现在时虚拟式	**cum** 原因从句
(8) esset	未完成时虚拟式	**cum** 原因从句
(9) offerantur	现在时虚拟式	间接问句
(10) exposuisset	过去完成时虚拟式	**cum** 状况从句
peteret	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(11) tulissent	过去完成时虚拟式	**cum** 转折从句
(12) comprehendāmus	现在时虚拟式	**cum** 原因从句
(13) cōnfer	未完成时第二人称单数	命令句

(14) ferant	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句(命令)
(15) nāvibus	复数夺格	手段
lātūrōs esse	将来时不定式	间接陈述
(16) vīcissent	过去完成时虚拟式	**cum** 转折从句
(17) offerrent	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(19) dīxisset	过去完成时虚拟式	**cum** 状况从句

第三十二课练习

1. (1) 对于源自第一、第二变格法形容词的副词,其规则的原级词尾是什么?
   (2) 对于源自第三变格法形容词的副词,其规则的原级词尾是什么?
2. 哪一个英语副词词尾对应于拉丁语副词词尾**-ē** 或**-iter**?
3. 所有拉丁语副词的原级词尾都是**-ē** 或**-iter** 吗?
4. (1) 拉丁语副词的比较级词尾是什么?
   (2) 它与形容词的什么形式相同?
   (3) 英语副词的比较级通常如何构成?
5. 拉丁语副词的最高级词根与相应的形容词最高级词根有何关系?
6. 以两种方式翻译下列副词:(1) līberius; (2) līberrimē。
7. 翻译下列副词形式。

(1) iūcundē	(6) breviter	(11) minimē	(16) minus
(2) iūcundius	(7) celerrimē	(12) magis	(17) facile
(3) iūcundissimē	(8) peius	(13) diūtius	(18) maximē
(4) melius	(9) fidēlius	(14) male	(19) gravissimē
(5) fidēlissimē	(10) facilius	(15) miserius	(20) celerius

8. (1) **volō** 的直陈式词干是什么?
   (2) **volō** 的现在时虚拟式和未完成时虚拟式的词干是什么?
9. **volō** 的现在时虚拟式类似于哪个不规则动词的现在时虚拟式?
10. 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类,并翻译其他形式。

(1) volēs	(7) māllēmus	(13) voluisse	(19) voluistī
(2) velīs	(8) voluissēs	(14) volunt	(20) vellet
(3) vīs	(9) volam	(15) voluimus	(21) nōlunt
(4) vellēs	(10) volēbant	(16) velle	(22) nōllet
(5) māvult	(11) volet	(17) voluerat	(23) mālit
(6) velīmus	(12) vultis	(18) voluērunt	(24) nōlet

11. Quīdam mālunt crēdere omnēs esse parēs. 12. Quīdam negant mentēs quidem omnium hominum esse parēs. 13. Hī dīvitiās celerrimē invēnērunt; illī diūtissimē erunt pauperēs. 14. Hic plūrimōs honōrēs quam facillimē accipere vult. 15. Nōlīte hanc scientiam āmittere. 16. Cīvēs ipsī rem publicam melius gessērunt quam ille dux. 17. Ibi terra est aequior et plūs patet.

18. Nōs ā scientiā prohibēre nōlent virī līberī; sed tyrannī maximē sīc volunt. 19. Tyrannus cīvēs suōs ita male opprimēbat ut semper līberī esse vellent. 20. Plūrima dōna līberrimē offeret ut exercitus istum tyrannum adiuvāre velit. 21. Cum auxilium offerre minimē vellent, nōluimus eīs beneficia multa praestāre. 22. Cum hostēs contrā nōs celeriter veniant, volumus nostrōs ad arma quam celerrimē vocāre. 23. Cum lībertātem lēgēsque cōnservāre vērē vellent, tamen scelera tyrannī diūtissimē ferenda erant. 24. Māvult haec sapientius facere nē hanc quidem occasiōnem āmittat. 25. Nōlī discēdere, mī amīce.

答案

1. (1) **–ē**; (2) **–iter**(例如 līberē, celeriter)。
2. 词尾*-ly*(例如 freely, quickly)。
3. 不是。例如参见 p. 218。
4. (1) **–ius**(例如 līberius, celerius)。
   (2) 它与形容词中性的单数主格和单数宾格相同。
   (3) 通常由 *more*(*too, rather*)加副词原级构成(例如 more/too freely, more quickly)。
5. 两者的词根是相同的。
6. (1) **līberius** = more/too/rather freely.
   (2) **līberrimē** = most/very freely.
7. (1) pleasantly
   (2) more/too pleasantly
   (3) most/very pleasantly
   (4) better
   (5) very faithfully
   (6) briefly
   (7) very quickly
   (8) worse
   (9) more faithfully
   (10) more easily
   (11) very little, least of all
   (12) more, rather
   (13) longer
   (14) badly
   (15) more wretchedly
   (16) less
   (17) easily
   (18) especially, most of all
   (19) very seriously
   (20) more swiftly
8. (1) **vol–**; (2) **vel–**。参见 p. 219。
9. 与 **sum** 类似。参见 p. 219。
10. (1) you (sg.) will wish
   (2) pres. subj., 2 sg.
   (3) you (sg.) wish
   (4) impf. subj., 2 sg.
   (5) he prefers
   (6) pres. subj., 1 pl.
   (7) impf. subj., 1 pl.
   (8) plupf. subj., 2 sg.
   (9) I shall wish
   (10) they kept wishing
   (11) he will wish
   (12) you (pl.) wish
   (13) to have wished
   (14) they wish
   (15) we wished
   (16) to wish
   (17) he had wished
   (18) they wished
   (19) you (sg.) wished
   (20) impf. subj., 3 sg.
   (21) they do not wish
   (22) impf. subj., 3 sg.
   (23) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (24) he will not wish

11. Certain men prefer to believe that all men are equal. 12. Certain men say that all men's minds at least are not equal. 13. These men obtained wealth very quickly; those will be poor for a very long time. 14. This man wishes to get very many honors as easily as possible. 15. Do not lose this knowledge. 16. The citizens themselves managed the state better than the leader. 17. There the land is more level and is more open. 18. Free men will not wish to keep us from knowledge; but tyrants especially so wish. 19. The tyrant used to oppress his citizens so badly that they always wished to be free. 20. He will offer very many gifts very freely so that the army may be willing to help that tyrant. 21. Since they had very little wish to offer aid, we were unwilling to show them many favors. 22. Since the enemy are coming swiftly against us, we want to call our men to arms as quickly as possible. 23. Although they truly wanted to preserve their liberty and laws, nevertheless the crimes of the tyrant had to be endured very long. 24. He prefers to do these things more wisely so that he may not lose this occasion at least. 25. Do not leave, my friend.

第三十三课练习

1. (1) 在“可能性小的将来”条件从句中，两个子句中的动词是什么形式？

   (2) 为什么与将来的简单事实（或“可能性大的将来”）相比，这一结构称为“可能性小的将来”？

2. (1) A，说出两个子句中有未完成时虚拟式的条件从句类型；B，说出两个子句中有过去完成时虚拟式的条件从句类型。

   (2) 在这些条件从句中，句子的哪个部分在拉丁语和英语中本质上相同？

3. 拉丁语条件从句的否定词一般是什么？

4. 什么类型的拉丁语条件从句可以用“should…would”来翻译，从而可以称为“should-would 条件从句”？

5. 位于 **sī, nisi, nē** 和 **num** 之后的 **quis, quid** 的含义是什么？

6. Sī ratiō dūcit, fēlīx es. 7. Sī ratiō dūcet, fēlīx eris. 8. Sī ratiō dūcat, fēlīx sīs. 9. Sī ratiō dūceret, fēlīx essēs. 10. Sī ratiō dūxisset, fēlīx fuissēs. 11. Sī pecūniam amās, sapientiā carēs. 12. Sī pecūniam amābis, sapientiā carēbis. 13. Sī pecūniam amēs, sapientiā careās. 14. Sī pecūniam amārēs, sapientiā carērēs. 15. Sī pecūniam amāvissēs, sapientiā caruissēs. 16. Sī vēritātem quaerimus, scientiam invenīmus. 17. Sī vēritātem quaerēmus, scientiam inveniēmus. 18. Sī vēritātem quaerāmus, scientiam inveniāmus. 19. Sī vēritātem quaererēmus, scientiam invenīrēmus. 20. Sī vēritātem quaesīvissēmus, scientiam invēnissēmus. 21. Nisi īram vītābitis, duōs amīcōs āmittētis. 22. Nisi īram vītāvissētis, quīnque amīcōs āmīsissētis. 23. Nisi īram vītētis, multōs amīcōs āmittātis. 24. Nisi īram vītārētis, multōs amīcōs āmitterētis. 25. Nisi īram vītātis, multōs amīcōs āmittitis. 26. Nisi īram vītāvistis, multōs amīcōs āmīsistis. 27. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habet, eum laudāmus. 28. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habuisset, eum laudāvissēmus. 29. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habeat, eum laudēmus. 30. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habuit, eum laudāvimus (laudābāmus). 31. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habēret, eum laudārē-

mus. 32. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habēbit, eum laudābimus. 33. Sī istī vincent, discēdēmus. 34. Sī istī vincant, discēdāmus. 35. Sī istī vīcissent, discessissēmus. 36. Sī librōs bene lēgissēs, melius scrīpsissēs. 37. Sī librōs bene legēs, melius scrībēs. 38. Sī librōs bene legās, melius scrībās.

39. 按照顺序说出第 6—10 句和第 21—26 句中的条件从句类型。

答案

1. (1) 现在时虚拟式; (2) 参见 p. 227。
2. (1) A,与现在事实相反;B,与过去事实相反。

   (2) 条件从句。参见 p. 227。
3. **Nisi**.
4. “可能性小的将来”条件从句。
5. 参见 p. 228 的词汇表。

6. If reason leads, you (sg.) are happy. 7. If reason leads, you will be happy. 8. If reason should lead, you would be happy. 9. If reason were leading, you would be happy. 10. If reason had led, you would have been happy. 11. If you (sg.) love money, you lack wisdom. 12. If you love money, you will lack wisdom. 13. If you should love money, you would lack wisdom. 14. If you were in love with money, you would lack wisdom. 15. If you had loved money, you would have lacked wisdom. 16. If we seek the truth, we find knowledge. 17. If we seek the truth, we shall find knowledge. 18. If we should seek the truth, we would find knowledge. 19. If we were seeking the truth, we would find knowledge. 20. If we had sought the truth, we would have found knowledge. 21. If you do not avoid anger, you will lose your two friends. 22. If you had not avoided anger, you would have lost your five friends. 23. If you should not avoid anger (if you should fail to avoid anger), you would lose many friends. 24. If you were not avoiding anger, you would be losing many friends. 25. If you do not avoid anger, you are losing many friends. 26. If you did not avoid anger, you lost many friends. 27. If anyone has a good character, we praise him. 28. If anyone had had a good character, we would have praised him. 29. If anyone should have a good character, we would praise him. 30. If anyone had a good character, we praised (used to praise) him. 31. If anyone were in possession of a good character, we would praise him. 32. If anyone has a good character, we shall praise him. 33. If those men win, we shall depart. 34. If those men should win, we would depart. 35. If those men had won, we would have departed. 36. If you had read books well, you would have written better. 37. If you read books well, you will write better. 38. If you should read books well, you would write better.

39. (6) simple present
(7) simple fut.
(8) fut. less vivid
(9) pres. contr. to fact
(10) past contr. to fact
(21) simple fut.
(22) past contr. to fact
(23) fut. less vivid
(24) pres. contr. to fact
(25) simple present
(26) simple past

第三十四课练习

1. 异态动词主要有哪些特殊之处?
2. 按照直陈式的六种时态和虚拟式的四种时态写出下列动词的动词变位表:
   (1) **cōnor** 的第一人称复数;
   (2) **loquor** 的第三人称单数。
3. (1) 写出 **patior** 的所有分词,并进行归类和翻译。
   (2) 写出 **patior** 的所有不定式,并进行归类和翻译。
4. 用 **illud cōnsilium** 的恰当形式填写下列空白,完成英语句子所表达的观念。
   (1) He will not follow that plan: nōn sequētur _______.
   (2) He will not use that plan: nōn utētur _______.
   (3) He will not permit that plan: nōn patiētur _______.
5. 解释上题第(2)句中 **illud cōnsilium** 的固有形式。
6. 异态动词中出现的主动态形式有哪些?
7. 给出(1) **cōnor** 和 (2) **loquor** 的命令式形式,并翻译。
8. 翻译下列分词:(1) locūtus; (2) mortuus; (3) cōnātus; (4) passus; (5) secūtus; (6) ēgressus; (7) profectus。
9. 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类,并翻译其他形式。

(1) ūtētur	(6) ūsus esset	(11) patī	(16) patitur
(2) ūtātur	(7) ūsūrum esse	(12) passī sunt	(17) patiēmur
(3) ūtitur	(8) patiēris	(13) passum esse	(18) arbitrētur
(4) ūterētur	(9) pateris	(14) patientēs	(19) arbitrārētur
(5) ūsus	(10) patere	(15) patiātur	(20) patiendum est

10. Arbitrātur haec mala patienda esse. 11. Cōnābimur haec mala patī. 12. Nisi morī vīs, patere haec mala. 13. Maxima mala passus, homō miser mortuus est. 14. Tyrannus arbitrātus est eōs duōs haec mala diū passūrōs esse. 15. Cum tria bella passī essent, istum tyrannum in exsilium expellere ausī sunt. 16. Sī hunc ducem novum sequēminī, lībertāte et ōtiō ūtēminī. 17. Hīs verbīs dictīs, eum sequī ausī sumus. 18. Haec verba locūtī, profectī sumus nē in eō locō miserō morerēmur. 19. Cum vōs cōnsiliō malō ūsōs esse arbitrārētur, tamen vōbīscum līberē locūtus est. 20. Sī quis vīnō eius generis ūtī audeat, celeriter moriātur. 21. Eōdem diē fīlius eius nātus est et mortuus est. 22. Omnibus opibus nostrīs ūtāmur ut patria nostra servētur. 23. Cum in aliam terram proficīscī cōnārētur, ā mīlitibus captus est. 24. Arbitrābar eum ex urbe cum decem amīcīs ēgressūrum esse. 25. Eā nocte profectus, Caesar ad quandam īnsulam clārissimam vēnit. 26. Sī meliōribus librīs ūsī essent, plūra didicissent. 27. Sī multōs amīcōs habēre vīs, nōlī esse superbus.

28. 第 12, 16, 20, 26 句分别是哪种类型的条件从句?

29. 解释下列词的句法：(14) passūrōs esse; (17) verbīs; (18) locūtī, morerēmur; (19) cōnsiliō, arbitrārētur; (21) diē; (22) ūtāmur; (25) nocte; (26) librīs。

答案

1. 参见 p. 232。

2.

	直陈式	
现在时	cōnāmur	loquitur
未完成时	cōnābāmur	loquēbātur
将来时	cōnābimur	loquētur
完成时	cōnātī sumus	locūtus est
过去完成时	cōnātī erāmus	locūtus erat
将来完成时	cōnātī erimus	locūtus erit
	直陈式	
现在时	cōnēmur	loquātur
未完成时	cōnārēmur	loquerētur
完成时	cōnātī sīmus	locūtus sit
过去完成时	cōnātī essēmus	locūtus esset

3. (1) 分词

现在时	patiēns, *suffering*
完成时	passus, *having suffered*
将来时	passūrus, *about to suffer*
动形词	patiendus, *to be endured*

(2) 不定式

现在时	patī, *to suffer*
完成时	passus esse, *to have suffered*
将来时	passūrus esse, *to be about to suffer*

4. (1) illud cōnsilium; (2) illō cōnsiliō; (3) illud cōnsilium。

5. 特殊异态动词加(手段)夺格。参见 p. 235—236。

6. 现在时分词；将来时分词；将来时不定式；比如前面问题 3 中的 **patiēns, passūrus, passūrus esse**。

7. (1) cōnor
   2 sg. cōnāre, *try*
   2 pl. cōnāminī, *try*

   (2) loquor
   loquere, *speak*
   loquiminī, *speak*

8. (1) locūtus, *having said*
   (2) mortuus, *having died*
   (3) cōnātus, *having tried*
   (4) passus, *having suffered*
   (5) secūtus, *having followed*
   (6) ēgresssus, *having gone out*
   (7) profectus, *having set out*

9. (1) he will use
   (2) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (3) he uses
   (4) impf. subj., 3 sg.
   (5) having used
   (6) plupf. subj., 3 sg.
   (7) to be about to use
   (11) to endure
   (12) they endured
   (13) to have endured
   (14) enduring
   (15) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (16) he endures
   (17) we shall endure

(8) you (sg.) will endure
(9) you (sg.) are enduring
(10) endure (imper.)
(18) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(19) impf. subj., 3 sg.
(20) it must be endured

10. He thinks that these evils ought to be endured. 11. We shall try to endure these evils. 12. If you do not wish to die, endure these evils. 13. Having endured the greatest evils, the poor man died. 14. The tyrant thought that those two men would endure these evils a long time. 15. When they had endured three wars, they dared to force that tyrant into exile. 16. If you follow this new leader, you will enjoy liberty and leisure. 17. When these words had been said, we dared to follow him. 18. Having spoken these words, we set out so that we might not die in that miserable place. 19. Although he thought that you had used a bad plan, nevertheless he spoke with you freely. 20. If anyone should dare to use wine of that sort, he would quickly die. 21. His son was born and died on the same day. 22. Let us use all our resources so that our country may be saved. 23. When he tried to set out into another land, he was captured by soldiers. 24. I kept thinking that he would go out of the city with his ten friends. 25. Having set out that night, Caesar came to a certain very famous island. 26. If they had used better books, they would have learned more. 27. If you wish to have many friends, do not be arrogant.

28. (12) 现在的简单事实; (16) 将来的简单事实; (20) 可能性小的将来; (26) 与过去事实相反。

29.

词	形式	理由
(14) passūrōs esse	将来时不定式	间接陈述
(17) verbīs	夺格	独立夺格
(18) locūtī	完成时分词的复数	与动词主语一致
morerēmur	未完成时虚拟式	目的
(19) cōnsiliō	夺格	特殊异态动词
arbitrārētur	未完成时虚拟式	**cum** 转折从句
(21) diē	夺格	何时
(22) ūtāmur	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
(25) nocte	夺格	何时
(26) librīs	夺格	特殊异态动词

第三十五课练习

1. 英语中有一些显然跟直接宾语的动词，在拉丁语中却跟与格。有没有什么好的规则能够涵盖这些动词？
2. 还有一些动词，如果与特定的介词组成复合词，就可以跟与格。
   (1) 在这个结论背后潜藏着什么概念？
   (2) 所有复合动词都跟与格吗？
3. 将下列动词分行列出，在它后面按照动词所要求的格写下 **eī, eum, eō** 中的一种形式，然后翻译整个短语。如果需要，可以用代词来表示“他”和“它”。

(1) cognōscunt	(7) patiuntur	(13) superant	(19) persuādent
(2) ignōscunt	(8) invenient	(14) crēdunt	(20) ūtuntur
(3) serviunt	(9) nocent	(15) carent	(21) pellunt
(4) servant	(10) iuvant	(16) student	(22) parcunt
(5) parāvī	(11) placent	(17) hortantur	(23) imperant
(6) pāruī	(12) iaciunt	(18) sequuntur	(24) iubent

4. Ducem servāvit. 5. Ducī servīvit. 6. Servī aliīs hominibus serviunt. 7. Virī fortēs aliōs servant. 8. Ille servus fīliō meō servīvit et eum servāvit. 9. Sī quis sibi sōlī serviet, rem publicam numquam servābit. 10. Sī quis hunc labōrem suscēpisset, mīlle virōs servāvisset. 11. Deī mihi ignōscent; vōs, ō cīvēs, tōtī exercituī ignōscite. 12. Sī Deum nōbīs ignōscere volumus, nōs dēbēmus aliīs hominibus ignōscere. 13. Mihi nunc nōn crēdunt, neque umquam duōbus fīliīs meīs crēdere volent. 14. Illī amīcī sunt mihi cārissimī. 15. Cum bonā fidē carērēs, tibi crēdere nōn poterant. 16. Huic ducī pāreāmus ut nōbīs parcat et urbem servet. 17. Nisi Caesar cīvibus placēbit, vītae eius nōn parcent. 18. Litterīs Latīnīs studeō, quae mihi placent etiam sī amīcīs meīs persuadēre nōn possum. 19. Vēritātī et sapientiae semper studeāmus et pāreāmus. 20. Optimīs rēbus semper studēte sī vērē esse fēlīcēs vultis. 21. Hīs rēbus studentēs, et librīs et vītā ūtāmur. 22. Vir bonus nēminī nocēre vult: omnibus parcit, omnēs iuvat. 23. Praemia mea sunt simillima tuīs.

24. 解释下列词的句法：(5) ducī; (8) eum; (9) sibi; (11) exercituī; (12) hominibus; (13) fīliīs; (14) mihi; (15) fidē; (16) ducī, pāreāmus, servet; (17) cīvibus, vītae; (18) litterīs, amīcīs; (21) rēbus, librīs, ūtāmur; (22) omnibus; (23) tuīs.

答案

1. 参见 p. 244。
2. 参见p. 245。
3.

(1) eum; they recognize him.	(13) eum; they overcome him.
(2) eī; they forgive him.	(14) eī; they trust him.
(3) eī; they serve him.	(15) eō; they lack it.
(4) eum; they save him.	(16) eī; they study it.
(5) eum; I prepared him.	(17) eum; they urge him.
(6) eī; I obeyed him.	(18) eum; they follow him.
(7) eum; they endure him.	(19) eī; they persuade him.
(8) eum; they will find him.	(20) eō; they use it (him).
(9) eī; they injure him.	(21) eum; they strike him.
(10) eum; they help him.	(22) eī; they spare him.
(11) eī; they please him.	(23) eī; they command him.
(12) eum; they throw him.	(24) eum; they order him.

4. He saved the leader. 5. He served the leader. 6. Slaves serve other men. 7. Brave men save others. 8. That slave served my son and saved him. 9. If anyone serves himself alone, he will never save the republic. 10. If someone had undertaken this work, he would have saved a thousand men. 11. The gods will pardon

me; you, O citizens, pardon the whole army. 12. If we want God to forgive us, we ought to forgive other men. 13. They do not trust me now, and they will never be willing to trust my two sons. 14. Those friends are very dear to me. 15. Since you lacked good faith, they could not trust you. 16. Let us obey this leader so that he may spare us and save the city. 17. If Caesar does not please the citizens, they will not spare his life. 18. I am studying Latin literature, which I like (pleases me) even if I cannot persuade my friends. 19. Let us always study and obey truth and wisdom. 20. Always study the best subjects if you wish to be truly happy. 21. As we study these subjects, let us enjoy both books and life. 22. A good man wishes to harm nobody; he spares all, he helps all. 23. My rewards are very similar to yours.

24.

词	形式	理由
(5) ducī	与格	特殊动词
(8) eum	宾格	**servāvit** 的宾语
(9) sibi	与格	特殊动词
(11) exercituī	与格	特殊动词
(12) hominibus	与格	特殊动词
(13) fīliīs	与格	特殊动词
(14) mihi	与格	形容词加与格
(15) fidē	夺格	分离
(16) ducī	与格	特殊动词
pāreāmus	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
servet	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
(17) cīvibus	与格	特殊动词
vītae	与格	特殊动词
(18) litterīs	与格	特殊动词
amīcīs	与格	特殊动词
(21) rēbus	与格	特殊动词
librīs	夺格	特殊异态动词
ūtāmur	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
(22) omnibus	与格	特殊动词
(23) tuīs	与格	形容词加与格

第三十六课练习

1. 我们已经学过罗马人表达间接陈述(第二十五课)和间接问句(第三十课)的方法了。那么,在一个有着命令涵义的动词之后,罗马人如何来表达间接命令?
2. 举出一些能够引出间接命令的常见的拉丁语动词。
3. 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类,并翻译其他形式。

(1) fīet	(6) fīunt	(10) fierent	(14) fierem
(2) fit	(7) fīēbant	(11) fīmus	(15) fīant
(3) fīat	(8) fīēs	(12) fīent	(16) faciendus
(4) fieret	(9) factus esse	(13) fīs	(17) fīāmus
(5) fierī			

4. Dīxit eōs litterīs Latīnīs studēre. 5. Dīxit cūr litterīs Latīnīs studērent. 6. Dīxit ut litterīs Latīnīs studērent. 7. Ab eīs quaesīvimus cūr philosophiae Graecae studērent. 8. Quaerisne ut nātūram omnium rērum cognōscāmus? 9. Tē moneō ut hīs sapientibus parcās. 10. Mīlitēs monuit nē eīs pācem petentibus nocērent. 11. Nōbīs imperābit nē hostibus crēdāmus. 12. Tibi imperāvit ut ducī pārērēs. 13. Tē rogō cūr hoc fēcerīs. 14. Tē rogō ut hoc faciās. 15. Ā tē petō ut pāx fīat. 16. Ā mē petēbant nē bellum facerem. 17. Eum ōrāvī nē rēgī turpī pārēret. 18. Vōs ōrāmus ut discipulī ācerrimī fīatis. 19. Nōlī esse similis istī tyrannō dūrō. 20. Caesar cūrāvit ut imperium suum maximum in cīvitāte fieret. 21. Ōrātor nōs hortātus est ut līberae patriae nostrae cum studiō servīrēmus. 22. Nōbīs persuāsit ut aequīs lēgibus semper ūterēmur. 23. Cōnāmur ducī persuādēre nē artibus et lēgibus patriae noceat. 24. Tyrannus imperat ut pecūnia fīat; et pecūnia fit. At ille stultus nōn sentit hanc pecūniam sine bonā fidē futūram esse nihil. 25. Plūrēs quidem discipulōs hortēmur ut linguae Latīnae studeant.

26. 解释下列词的句法：(4) studēre; (5) studērent; (6) studērent; (7) studērent; (8) cognōscāmus; (9) parcās; (10) eīs, pācem; (11) hostibus; (13) fēcerīs; (14) faciās; (16) facerem; (18) fīātis; (22) lēgibus; (23) lēgibus; (24) futūram esse; (25) hortēmur。

答案

1. 间接命令句 = **ut (nē)** + 虚拟式。参见 p. 251。
2. 例如 imperō, dīcō, cūrō, moneō, hortor, persuādeō, petō, quaerō, ōrō, rogō。参见 p. 252。
3. (1) it will be made/done, he will become
   (2) it is made/done, he becomes
   (3) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (4) impf. subj., 3 sg.
   (5) to be made/done, to become
   (6) they are made/done, they become
   (7) they were being made/done, they were becoming
   (8) you (sg.) will be made, become
   (9) to have been made/done, become
   (10) impf. subj., 3 pl.
   (11) we are made, become
   (12) they will be made, become
   (13) you (sg.) are made, become
   (14) impf. subj., 1 sg.
   (15) pres. subj., 3 pl.
   (16) gerundive, to be made/done
   (17) pres. subj., 1 pl.

4. He said that they were studying Latin literature. 5. He told why they were studying Latin literature. 6. He said that they should study Latin literature (he told them to study . . .). 7. We asked them why they were studying Greek philosophy. 8. Do you ask that we learn (= ask us to learn) the nature of all things? 9. I warn you to spare these wise men. 10. He warned the soldiers not to injure those seeking peace.

11. He will command us not to trust the enemy. 12. He commanded you to obey the leader. 13. I ask you why you did this. 14. I ask you to do this. 15. I beg of you that peace be made. 16. They kept begging me not to make war. 17. I begged him not to obey the disgraceful king. 18. We beg you to become very keen pupils. 19. Do not be like that harsh tyrant. 20. Caesar took care that his power be made greatest in the state. 21. The speaker urged us to serve our free country eagerly. 22. He persuaded us that we should always use just laws. 23. We are trying to persuade the leader not to harm the arts and laws of the country. 24. A tyrant commands that money be made; and money is made. But that fool does not perceive that this money will be nothing without good faith. 25. Let us urge more students certainly to study the Latin language.

26.

词	形式	理由
(4) studēre	现在时不定式	间接陈述
(5) studērent	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(6) studērent	未完成时虚拟式	间接命令句
(7) studērent	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(8) cognōscāmus	现在时虚拟式	间接命令句
(9) parcās	现在时虚拟式	间接命令句
(10) eīs	与格	特殊动词.
pācem	宾格	**petentibus** 的宾语
(11) hostibus	与格	特殊动词
(13) fēcerīs	完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(14) faciās	现在时虚拟式	间接命令句
(16) facerem	未完成时虚拟式	间接命令句
(18) fīātis	现在时虚拟式	间接命令句
(22) lēgibus	夺格	特殊异态动词
(23) lēgibus	与格	特殊动词.
(24) futūram esse	将来时不定式	间接陈述
(25) hortēmur	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句

第三十七课练习

1. (1) 在什么时态和语气中,**īre** 的词干在 **a, o, u** 之前要变成 **e**?
   (2) 在其他情况下,**eō** 在直陈式、虚拟式、命令式和不定式中的词干是什么?
2. 说出 **eō** 的现在时分词的单数主格和复数主格。
3. 写出 **eō** 的主动态第二人称单数和第三人称复数的直陈式和虚拟式动词变位表。
4. 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类,并翻译其他形式。

(1) iimus	(7) itūrus esse	(13) iī	(19) euntēs
(2) īmus	(8) euntem	(14) ībat	(20) ībō
(3) īrēmus	(9) iērunt	(15) ierant	(21) iit
(4) ībimus	(10) eunt	(16) ierim	(22) ībāmus
(5) īssēmus	(11) eant	(17) īret	(23) īsset
(6) eāmus	(12) ībunt	(18) īsse	(24) eat

5. 说说罗马人一般是如何表达下列地点概念的，并把英语例子翻译成拉丁语：

(1) 从何处: from (out of) that land.

(2) 在何处: in that land; on that island.

(3) 到何处: into (to) that land.

6. 在涉及城市名称的时候，这些地点结构一般是怎样的？

7. 什么是位置格？说说位置格形式的特征。

8. 说说罗马人一般是如何表达下列时间概念的，并把英语例子翻译成拉丁语：

(1) 何时: on the same day.

(2) 延续时间: for many days.

(3) 期间: in one day.

9. **Licet** 的主要部分有何特殊之处？试作出说明，并把“You may go.”翻译成拉丁语。

10. 根据本课内容翻译下列词或短语。

(1) ūnum diem	(7) paucīs diēbus	(13) domum
(2) ūnō diē	(8) eādem nocte	(14) Athēnīs
(3) illō diē	(9) multōs diēs	(15) domī
(4) Rōmā	(10) in nāvem	(16) Athēnās
(5) Rōmae	(11) in nāve	(17) domō
(6) Rōmam	(12) ex nāve	(18) paucās hōrās

11. Paucīs hōrīs Rōmam ībimus. 12. Nōs ad urbem īmus; illī domum eunt. 13. Ut saepe fassī sumus, tibi nōn licet Rōmā Athēnās īre. 14. Cūr domō tam celeriter abīstī? 15. Rōmam veniunt ut cum frātre meō Athēnās eant. 16. Nōlīte abīre Rōmā. 17. Frātre tuō Rōmae interfectō, hortābāmur tē ut Athēnās redīrēs. 18. Sī in fīnēs hostium hōc tempore eat, paucīs hōrīs pereat. 19. Negāvit sē velle in istā terrā multōs diēs remanēre. 20. Dīxistī tē domum Athēnīs ūnā hōrā reditūrum esse. 21. Ā tē petō ut ex nāve ad īnsulam brevī tempore redeās. 22. Eīs diēbus solitī sumus Athēnīs esse. 23. Sī amīcīs eius Rōmae nocuissent, Rōmam brevissimō tempore redīsset. 24. Cum frāter meus domī remanēret, ego tamen in novās terrās domō abiī. 25. Rōmānī, sī quid malī loquī volebant, saepe dīcēbant: “Abī in malam rem.” 26. Eīs persuādet ut Latīnae studeant.

27. 解释下列词的句法：(11) hōrīs, Rōmam; (12) domum; (13) Rōmā, Athēnās, īre; (14) domō; (15) Rōmam; (17) frātre; (18) tempore, eat, hōrīs; (19) velle, diēs;

(20)domum, Athēnīs, hōrā, reditūrum esse; (21) tempore, redeās; (22) diēbus, Athēnīs; (23) amīcīs, Rōmae, redīsset; (24) domī, terrās, domō; (26) studeant。

答案

1. (1) 现在时直陈式和现在时虚拟式。

   (2) **ī-**。

2. 单数主格 = **iēns**; 复数主格 = **euntēs**。

3. 在写动词变位表时，应当遵循第三十四课第 2 题答案中给出的直陈式和虚拟式时态序列。如果做到这一点，就不需要标出时态了。

   Eō 的第二人称单数：直陈式——īs, ībās, ībis, īstī, ierās, ieris.

   虚拟式——eās, īrēs, ierīs, īssēs.

   Eō 的第三人称复数：直陈式——eunt, ībant, ībunt, iērunt, ierant, ierint.

   虚拟式——eant, īrent, ierint, īssent.

4. (1) we went
   (2) we are going
   (3) impf. subj., 1 pl.
   (4) we shall go
   (5) plupf. subj., 1 pl.
   (6) pres. subj., 1 pl.
   (7) to be about to go
   (8) going (acc. sg.)
   (9) they went
   (10) they are going
   (11) pres. subj., 3 pl.
   (12) they will go
   (13) I went
   (14) he was going
   (15) they had gone
   (16) perf. subj., 1 sg.
   (17) impf. subj., 3 sg.
   (18) to have gone
   (19) going (nom./acc. pl.)
   (20) I shall go
   (21) he went
   (22) we were going
   (23) plupf. subj., 3 sg.
   (24) pres. subj., 3 sg.

5. (1) **ab, dē, ex** + 夺格; ab (ex) eā terrā.

   (2) **in** + 夺格: in eā terrā; in eā īnsulā.

   (3) **in** 或 **ad** + 宾格: in (ad) eam terram.

6. (1) 从何处 = 无介词夺格

   (2) 在何处 = 无介词位置格

   (3) 到何处 = 无介词宾格

7. 位置格是在用到 **domus** 或城市的名称时表示“在何处”的格。参见 p. 262。

8. (1) 何时 = 无介词夺格: eōdem diē.

   (2) 延续时间 = 通常是无介词宾格: multōs diēs.

   (3) 期间 = 无介词夺格: ūnō diē.

9. 由于无人称动词没有第一和第二人称的单复数形式，所以它的第一个和第三个主要部分给出的是第三人称单数。参见 p. 264 词汇表中的 **licet** 和注释 1 中的 **licet tibi īre**。

10. (1) (for) one day
(2) in one day
(3) on that day
(4) from Rome
(5) at Rome
(6) to Rome
(7) in a few days
(8) on the same night
(9) (for) many days
(10) into the ship
(11) in the ship
(12) out of the ship
(13) home (= to home)
(14) at/from Athens
(15) at home
(16) to Athens
(17) from home
(18) (for) a few hours

11. In a few hours we shall go to Rome. 12. We are going to the city; they are going home. 13. As we have often admitted, you may not (are not permitted to) go from Rome to Athens (*lit.*, to go is not permitted to you). 14. Why did you leave home (go away from home) so quickly? 15. They are coming to Rome in order to go to Athens with my brother. 16. Do not go away from Rome. 17. When your brother had been killed at Rome, we kept urging you to return to Athens. 18. If he should go into the territory of the enemy at this time, he would perish in a few hours. 19. He said that he did not want to stay in that country of yours many days. 20. You said that you would return home from Athens in one hour. 21. I beg of you to return from the ship to the island in a short time. 22. In those days we were accustomed to be at Athens. 23. If they had injured his friends at Rome, he would have returned to Rome in a very short time. 24. Although my brother stayed at home, I nevertheless went away from home into new lands. 25. The Romans, if they wanted to say something bad, often used to say: "Go to the devil." 26. He is persuading them to study Latin.

27. (11) **hōrīs** = 夺格: 期间; **Rōmam** = 宾格: 到何处; (12) **domum** = 宾格: 到何处; (13) **Rōmā** = 夺格: 从何处; **Athēnās** = 宾格: 到何处; **īre** = 现在时不定式: **licet** 的主语; (14) **domō** = 夺格: 从何处; (15) **Rōmam** = 宾格: 到何处; (18) **frātre** = 夺格: 独立夺格; (18) **tempore** = 夺格: 何时; **eat** = 现在时虚拟式: 可能性小的将来; **hōrīs** = 夺格: 期间; (19) **velle** = 现在时不定式: 间接陈述; **diēs** = 宾格: 延续时间; (20) **domum** = 宾格: 到何处; **Athēnīs** = 夺格: 从何处; **hōrā** = 夺格: 期间; **reditūrum esse** = 将来时不定式: 间接陈述; (21) **tempore** = 夺格: 期间; **redeās** = 现在时虚拟式: 间接命令句; (22) **diēbus** = 夺格: 何时; **Athēnīs** = 位置格: 在何处; (23) **amīcīs** = 与格: 特殊动词; **Rōmae** = 位置格: 在何处; **redīsset** = 过去完成时虚拟式: 与过去事实相反条件从句; (24) **domī** = 位置格: 在何处; **terrās** = 宾格: 到何处; **domō** = 夺格: 从何处; (26) **studeant** = 现在时虚拟式: 间接命令句。

第三十八课练习

1. 直陈式的关系从句关于先行词说了什么?
2. 虚拟式的关系从句关于先行词说了什么? 先行词有什么特征?
3. 间接宾语的与格和关系与格之间有何根本区别?
4. 目的动名词如何构成? 其功能是什么?

5. Amīcus meus quī cōnsulem dēfendit ipse erat vir clārissimus. 6. At nēmō erat quī istum hominem turpem dēfenderet. 7. Quid est quod virī plūs metuant quam tyrannum? 8. Quis est quī inter lībertātem et imperium tyrannī dubitet? 9. Rōmae antiquae erant quī pecūniam plūs quam rem pūblicam

amārent. 10. Abeat ā patriā iste homō malus quī odium omnium cīvium bonōrum passus est. 11. Catilīna (= Catiline), quī tantās īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcerat, ex urbe ā Cicerōne expulsus est. 12. Istī ducī in exsilium abeuntī quae vīta potest esse iūcunda? 13. Quis est quī tantum dolōrem ferre possit? 14. Nisi quis iūcundus bonusque erit, vītam vērē fēlīcem mihi nōn vīvet. 15. Cōnsulī nōn crēdent quī opera turpia faciat. 16. Nōlī crēdere eī quī sit acerbus amīcīs. 17. Cicerō erat cōnsul quī rem pūblicam salūtī suae antepōneret. 18. Scīvērunt quārē cōnsulem tam fortem sequī vellēmus. 19. Nihil sciō quod mihi facilius esse possit. 20. Ducem quaerō quem omnēs laudent. 21. Rōmam ībant rogātum lībertātem. 22. Rōmānī, quī decem rēs pūblicās Graecās exercitibus suīs cēperant, ipsī—mīrābile dictū—Graecīs artibus captī sunt! 23. Virīs antīquīs nihil erat quod melius esset quam virtūs et sapientia. 24. Nihil metuendum est quod animō nocēre nōn possit.

25. 分析第 5 句和第 6 句中的关系从句,说明其确切含义有何不同。

26. 解释下列词的句法:(7) metuant; (8) dubitet; (9) Rōmae, amārent; (10) abeat, passus est; (11) fēcerat; (12) ducī, potest; (13) possit; (14) erit, mihi; (15) cōnsulī; (16) amīcīs; (17) salūtī, antepōneret; (18) vellēmus; (19) mihi, possit; (21) rogātum; (22) cēperant, dictū; (23) virīs; (24) animō, possit.

答案

1. 直陈式关系从句说的是关于先行词的事实。
2. 虚拟式关系从句说的是先行词的特征,指这个人或事物属于什么种类,有什么特点。参见 p. 267。
3. 参见 p. 268。
4. 参见 p. 268—269。

5. My friend who defended the consul was himself a very famous man. 6. But there was no one who would defend that base fellow. 7. What is there which men fear more than a tyrant? 8. Who is there who would hesitate between liberty and the command of a tyrant? 9. At ancient Rome there were those who loved money more than the state. 10. Let that evil man depart from his country—he who has endured the hatred of all good citizens. 11. Catiline, who had made such a great plot against the state, was driven from the city by Cicero. 12. What life can be pleasant for that leader as he goes off into exile? 13. Who is there who would be able to bear such pain? 14. If a person is not agreeable and good, he will not live a truly happy life, it seems to me. 15. They will not trust a consul who would do base deeds. 16. Do not trust a man who is harsh to his friends. 17. Cicero was a consul who would place the state before his own safety. 18. They knew why we wanted to follow such a brave consul. 19. I know nothing which could be easier for me. 20. I am seeking a leader whom all men would praise. 21. They were going to Rome to ask for freedom. 22. The Romans, who had captured ten Greek republics with their own armies, were themselves—amazing to say—taken captive by the Greek arts! 23. For the ancient men there was nothing which was better than courage and wisdom. 24. Nothing is to be feared which cannot injure the soul.

25. 第 5 句中的 **quī . . . dēfendit** 陈述了一个关于 **amīcus** 的事实,而不是描述他的特征。第 6 句中的虚拟从句说明了想象中的 **nēmō** 可能是什么种类的人。

26. 句法:(7) **metuat** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (8) **dubitet** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (9) **Rōmae** = 位置格: 在何处; **amārent** = 未完成时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (10) **abeat** = 现在时虚拟式: 祈愿句; **passus est** = 完成时直陈式: 事实关系从句; (11) **fēcerat** = 完成时直陈式: 事实关系从句; (12) **ducī** = 与格: 关系与格; **potest** = 现在时直陈式: 直接问句中的主要动词; (13) **possit** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (14) **erit** = 将来时直陈式: 将来的简单事实条件从句; **mihi** = 与格: 关系与格; (15) **cōnsulī** = 与格: 特殊动词; (16) **amīcīs** = 与格: 形容词加与格; (17) **salūtī** = 与格: 复合动词; **antepōneret** = 未完成时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (18) **vellēmus** = 未完成时虚拟式: 间接问句; (19) **mihi** = 与格: 关系与格; **possit** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (21) **rogātum** = 宾格目的动名词: 目的; (22) **cēperant** = 过去完成时直陈式: 事实关系从句; **dictū** = 夺格目的动名词: 方面; (23) **virīs** = 与格: 关系与格; (24) **animō** = 与格: 特殊动词; **possit** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句。

第三十九课练习

1. (1) 什么是动名词?
   (2) 英语动名词的词尾是什么?
   (3) 拉丁语动名词如何变格?
   (4) 作为名词,拉丁语动名词的句法是什么?
   (5) 什么替代了拉丁语动名词的主格?
2. (1) 拉丁语动形词属于什么词类?
   (2) 有什么窍门可以帮助记忆这一点?
   (3) 作为形容词,动形词的句法是什么?
   (4) 动形词如何变格?
   (5) 在拉丁语用法中(而不是在英语翻译中),如何区分动形词和动名词?
3. (1) 拉丁语动名词如何翻译?
   (2) 与名词一致的动形词如何翻译?
   (3) 根据以上规则,将下面两个句子翻译成英语:
   (A) Discimus legendō cum cūrā (动名词).
   (B) Discimus librīs legendīs cum cūrā (动形词).

4. Experiendō discimus. 5. Ad discendum vēnērunt. 6. Sē discendō dedit. 7. Discendī causā ad lūdum tuum vēnērunt. 8. Puer cupidus discendī ad lūdum iit. 9. Metus moriendī eum terrēbat. 10. Spēs vīvendī post mortem multōs hortātur. 11. Cōgitandō eōs superāvit. 12. Sē dedit—

(1) glōriae quaerendae.
(2) bellō gerendō.
(3) pecūniae faciendae.
(4) imperiō accipiendō.
(5) cīvitātibus delendīs.
(6) huic ducī sequendō.
(7) patriae servandae.
(8) pācī petendae.
(9) iniūriīs oppugnandīs.
(10) librīs scrībendīs.
(11) librīs legendīs.
(12) philosophiae discendae.
(13) litterīs Latīnīs discendīs.
(14) vēritātī intellegendae.
(15) sapientiae quaerendae.
(16) hominibus adiuvandīs.

13. Rōmam vēnit—

(1) ad hoc opus suscipiendum.
(2) ad lūdōs Rōmānōs videndōs.
(3) ad aedificia vetera videnda.
(4) ad pācem petendam.
(5) huius operis suscipiendī causā.
(6) philosophiae discendae causā.
(7) novōrum librōrum legendōrum causā.
(8) lūdōs vīsum.

14. Librum scrīpsit—

(1) dē dolōre ferendō.
(2) dē metū superandō.
(3) dē bonā vītā vīvendā.
(4) dē rē pūblicā gerendā.
(5) dē bellō gerendō.
(6) dē lībertāte dēfendendā.
(7) dē hostibus vincendīs.
(8) dē dōnīs dandīs.

15. Sapientiōrēs fīmus—

(1) Latīnīs litterīs legendīs.
(2) philosophiā discendā.
(3) vītā experiendā.
(4) metū vincendō.
(5) vēritāte sequendā.

16. Nōs ipsōs adiuvāmus—

(1) bonīs librīs semper legendīs.
(2) virīs miserīs metū liberandīs.
(3) auxiliō offerendō.
(4) aliīs adiuvandīs.

17. Multum tempus cōnsūmpsit—

(1) in cōgitandō (loquendō, currendō).
(2) in hīs operibus faciendīs.
(3) in viā inveniendā.
(4) in exercitū parandō.
(5) in cōpiīs parandīs.

18. Tempus huic librō sōlī scrībendō habuit.

答案

1. (1) 参见 p. 274“动名词”一节。
   (2) 参见 p. 274。
   (3) 参见 p. 274—275。
   (4) 它只有四种格的形式,和名词一样使用。参见 p. 275。
   (5) 不定式; 参见 p. 275。

2. (1) 参见 p. 274“动形词”一节。
   (2) 动形词(gerund*ive*)是形容词(adject*ive*)。
   (3) 作为形容词,它修饰名词或代词,并在性、数、格上与该名词或代词保持一致。
   (4) 动形词(例如 **laudandus, -a, -um**)与 **magnus, -a, -um** 具有同样的变格方式。参见 p. 274。
   (5) 由于动名词只有**-ī, -ō, -um, -ō** 这几个词尾,所以加在词根**-nd-**上的任何阴性词尾或复数词尾都必定指示动形词;此外,如果某种**-nd-**形式与作为形容词修饰语的名词一致,那么它必定是将来被动动形词。
3. (1) 拉丁语动名词通常用以*-ing*结尾的英语动名词加上名词结构或状语修饰语来翻译。
   (2) 在翻译动形词的时候,要把它当成就好像是带有宾语和状语修饰语的动名词。换句话说,对动名词和动形词的翻译方式是相同的。
   (3) (A) We learn by reading with care.
   (B) We learn by reading books with care.

4. We learn by experiencing. 5. They came to learn (for learning). 6. He gave (devoted) himself to learning. 7. They came to your school to learn (for the sake of learning). 8. The boy went to the school desirous of learning (eager to learn). 9. The fear of dying kept terrifying him. 10. The hope of living after death encourages many people. 11. By thinking (= by using his head) he overcame them.

12. He devoted (gave) himself—(1) to seeking glory. (2) to waging war. (3) to making money. (4) to getting power. (5) to destroying states. (6) to following this leader. (7) to saving his country. (8) to seeking peace. (9) to attacking wrongs. (10) to writing books. (11) to reading books. (12) to learning philosophy. (13) to learning Latin literature. (14) to understanding the truth. (15) to seeking wisdom. (16) to helping human beings.
13. He came to Rome—(1) to undertake this work. (2) to see the Roman games. (3) to see the old buildings. (4) to seek peace. (5) for the sake of undertaking this work (to undertake . . .). (6) for the sake of learning philosophy (to learn . . .). (7) for the sake of reading new books (to read . . .). (8) to see the games.
14. He wrote a book—(1) about enduring pain. (2) about overcoming fear. (3) about living a good life. (4) about managing the state. (5) about waging war. (6) about defending liberty. (7) about conquering the enemy. (8) about giving gifts.
15. We become wiser—(1) by reading Latin literature. (2) by learning philosophy. (3) by experiencing life. (4) by conquering fear. (5) by following truth.
16. We help our very selves—(1) by always reading good books. (2) by freeing unfortunate men from fear. (3) by offering aid. (4) by helping others.
17. He consumed much time—(1) in thinking (speaking, running). (2) in doing these tasks. (3) in finding the way. (4) in preparing an army. (5) in preparing supplies (troops).
18. He had time for writing this book only.

第四十课练习

1. 由**–ne, nōnne** 和 **num** 引出的问句之间有何本质区别？
2. 肯定的疑虑从句由什么词来引导？否定的由什么词来引导？为什么它与所期待的结论正相反？
3. 要使一个名词起描述属格或描述夺格的作用，必须满足什么条件？

4. Magnopere vereor ut imperātor nōbīs satis auxiliī mittat. 5. Fuit fēmina maximā virtūte et fidē atque simillima mātrī. 6. Nōlī timēre nē omnēs virī et fēminae magnōrum animōrum Rōmā discēdant. 7. Id quidem est facile dictū sed difficile factū! 8. Parentibus placitum domum vēnērunt. 9. Nōnne vīs audīre aliquid bonī? 10. Vīsne habēre multum sapientiae? Studē Latīnae! 11. Imperāvit tribus mīlitibus ut pācem petītum Rōmam adīrent. 12. Num dubitās hoc dīcere, mī amīce? 13. Tū mē hortāris ut sim animō magnō et spem salūtis habeam, sed timeō nē sim īnfīrmior. 14. Ego dīvitiās sapientiae antepōnō. Nōn enim arbitror hominēs vītam fēlīcem sine cōpiā pecūniae reperīre posse. 15. Plūrimī autem virī dīvitēs multum metūs sentiunt. 16. Pauperēs saepe sunt fēlīciōrēs et minus metūs habent. 17. Pecūnia ipsa nōn est mala: sed rēs mentis animīque plūs opis ad fēliciter vīvendum offerunt. 18. Novem ex ducibus nōs hortātī sunt ut plūs auxiliī praestārēmus. 19. Quīnque ex custōdiīs interfectīs, pater meus cum duōbus ex fīliīs et cum magnō numerō amīcōrum in illam terram līberam fūgit. 20. Numquam satis ōtiī habēbit; at aliquid ōtiī melius est quam nihil. 21. Nostrīs temporibus omnēs plūs metūs et minus speī habēmus. 22. Magna fidēs et virtūs omnibus virīs reperiendae sunt.

答案

1. 参见 p. 282.。
2. 肯定的疑虑从句由 **nē** 来引导；否定的疑虑从句由 **ut** 来引导。
3. 该名词必须由形容词来修饰。

4. I greatly fear that the general may not send us enough help. 5. She was a woman of the greatest courage and loyalty and in fact very like her mother. 6. Do not fear that all the men and women of great courage will depart from Rome. 7. This is, indeed, easy to say but difficult to do! 8. They came home to please their parents. 9. You do wish to hear something good, don't you? 10. Do you wish to have much wisdom? Study Latin! 11. He ordered the three soldiers to go to Rome to seek peace. 12. You do not hesitate to say this, do you, my friend? 13. You urge me to be of great courage and to have hope of safety, but I fear that I may be too weak. 14. For my part I place wealth ahead of wisdom. For I do not think that human beings can find a happy life without a great deal of money. 15. However, very many rich men experience much fear. 16. Poor men are often happier and have less fear. 17. Money itself is not bad; but the things of the mind and the soul offer more help for living happily. 18. Nine of the leaders urged us to supply more aid. 19. When five of the guards had been killed, my father fled into that free land with two of his sons and with a large number of friends. 20. Never will he have enough leisure; yet some leisure is better than nothing. 21. In our times we all have too much of fear and too little of hope. 22. Great faith and courage must be found by all men.

附　录

词源帮助

两条语音变化规则

"语音的"(Phonetic)一词源于希腊词 **phōnē**, *sound, voice, speech*(与 phonograph, phonology, symphony, telephone 比较)。因此,语音变化就意味着由于某种原因,原始语音发生了变化。在拉丁语中有许多语音变化规则,对于初学者来说,也许下面两条最为重要。

A. 复合词的中间音节往往根据下列规则发生元音弱化。

1. 在单辅音之前和 **ng** 之前 **ă > ĭ**。

   在双辅音之前 **ă > ĭ**。

   c**ă**piō, c**ă**ptum: ac–c**ĭ**piō, ac–c**ĕ**ptum

   f**ă**ciō, f**ă**ctum: per–f**ĭ**ciō, per–f**ĕ**ctum

   f**ă**cilis: dif–f**ĭ**cilis

   c**ă**dō, c**ā**sum: oc–c**ĭ**dō, oc–c**ā**sum(注意长元音 **ā** 并不发生变化)

   t**ă**ngō, t**ă**ctum: con–t**ĭ**ngō, con–t**ă**ctum

2. 在单辅音之前 **ĕ > ĭ**。

   t**ĕ**neō : con–t**ĭ**neō (但 contentum)

   pr**ĕ**mō : com–pr**ĭ**mō (但 compressum)

3. **ae > ī.**

   qu**ae**rō, qu**ae**sītum: re–qu**ī**rō, re–qu**ī**sītum

laedō, **lae**sum: col–**ī**dō, col–**ī**sum

caedō, **cae**sum: in–c**ī**dō, in–c**ī**sum; oc–c**ī**dō, oc–c**ī**sum

aestimō: ex–**ī**stimō

4. **au > ū.**

cl**au**dō : in–cl**ū**dō, ex–cl**ū**dō

c**au**sor: ex–c**ū**sō

B. 前缀的尾辅音往往同化于基本词的首辅音。

a**d**–capiō > a**c**–cipiō   i**n**–mortālis > i**m**–mortālis

dis–facilis > di**f**–ficilis   i**n**–ruō > i**r**–ruō

前缀

下面列出的是一些重要前缀，它们可以帮助我们分析拉丁词和英语派生词。除非特别指明，这些拉丁语前缀都原封不动地进入了英语。顺便提及，大多数拉丁语前缀都被罗马人用作介词；但极少数标有"不可分"的前缀只能作为前缀出现。

ā–, **ab–**, *away, from.*

ā–vocō, *call away* (avocation)

ā–vertō, *turn away* (avert)

ā–mittō, *send away, let go, lose*

ab–sum, *be away* (absent)

ab–eō, *go away*

ab–dūcō, *lead away* (abduct)

ad–（经过同化可以变为 **ac–**, **af–**, **ag–**, **al–**, **an–**, **ap–**, **ar–**, **as–**, **at–**）, *to, towards, in addition.*

ad–vocō, *call to, call* (advocate)

ad–dūcō, *lead to* (adduce)

ad–mittō, *send to, admit*

ac–cēdō, *go to, approach* (accede)

ac–cipiō (ad–capiō), *get, accept*

ap–pōnō, *put to* (apposition)

as–sentiō, *feel towards, agree to, assent*

ante–, *before.*

ante–pōnō, *put before, prefer*

ante–cēdō, *go before, precede, excel* (antecedent)

circum–, *around.*

circum–dūcō, *lead around*

circum–veniō, *come around, surround* (circumvent)

circum–stō, *stand around* (circumstance)

com– (com = cum; 亦为 con–, cor–, col–, co–), *with, together;*加强词义: *completely, very, greatly, deeply, forcibly.*

con–vocō, *call together* (convoke)

con–dūcō, *lead together* (conduct)

com–pōnō, *put together, compose* (component)

com–mittō, *send together, bring together, entrust* (commit)

cōn–sentiō, *feel together, agree* (consent)

cō–gō (co–agō), *drive together, force* (cogent)

com–pleō, *fill completely, fill up* (complete)

cōn–servō, *save completely, preserve* (conserve)

con–cēdō, *go completely, go away, yield, grant* (concede)

con–tendō, *stretch greatly, strive, hurry* (contend)

col–laudō, *praise greatly* or *highly*

cor–rōborō, *strengthen greatly* (corroborate)

contrā–, *against, opposite.* (作为前缀,在拉丁语中并不常见,但在英语中却相当普遍,特别是在 *counter–*的形式中。)

contrā–dicō, *speak against* or *opposite, oppose, rely* (contradict)

contrā–veniō (late Latin), *come against, oppose* (contravene)

dē–, *down, away, aside, out, off;* 加强词义: *utterly, completely.*

dē–dūcō, *lead down* or *away, drawn down* (deduce, deduct)

dē–pōnō, *put aside, lay aside, entrust* (deponent, deposit)

dē–mittō, *send down, throw down, let fall* (demit)

dē–veniō, *come from, arrive at, reach*

dē–vocō, *call away* or *off*

dē–cēdō, *go away* (decease)

dē–mēns, *out of one's mind, demented*

dē–certō, *fight it out, fight to the finish*

dis– (dif–, dī–; 不可分), *apart, away, not.*

dis–pōnō, *put apart in different places, arrange* (disposition)

dis–cēdō, *go away, depart*

dī–mittō, *send away in different directions, let go* (dismiss)

dif–ferō, dī–lātus, *bear apart, scatter, put off, differ* (different, dilate)

dis–similis, *not similar, unlike, dissimilar*

dif–ficilis, *not easy, difficult*

ē–, ex– (ef–), *from out, forth;* 加强词义: *exceedingly, up.*

ē–dūcō, *lead out* (educe)

ex–cēdō, *go out, from, away; go beyond* (exceed)

ē–mittō, *send out, forth* (emit)

ē–vocō, *call out, forth* (evoke)

ex–pōnō, *put out, set forth, explain* (exponent, exposition)

ē–veniō, *come out, forth; turn out, happen* (event)

ef–ficiō, (ex–faciō), *produce, accomplish, perform* (efficient, effect)

ex–pleō, *fill up, complete*

ex–asperō, *roughen exceedingly, irritate* (exasperate)

in– (im–, il–, ir–; 在英语中有时是 *en–*或 *em–*), *in, into, on, upon, against.* (参见下面的 **in–**)

in–vocō, *call in, call upon* (invoke)

in–dūcō, *lead in* or *into, introduce, impel* (induce)

im–mittō, *send into, send against, let loose against*

im–pōnō, *put in, lay upon* (impose)

in–veniō, *come upon, find* (invent)

in–clūdō, *shut in, shut* (include, enclose)

in–vādō, *go into, move against* (invade)

ir–ruō, *rush into* or *upon*

il–līdō (in–laedō), *strike* or *dash against*

in–genium (in + gen–, from **gignō,** *beget, give birth to*), *inborn nature, natural capacity,talent, character* (engine, ingenious)

in– (im–, il–, ir–; 不可分前缀; 与英语中的 *un–*同源), *not, un–.*

in–certus, *not certain, uncertain*

in–iūstus, *not just, unjust* (cp. injustice)

īn–fīnītus, *not limited, unlimited* (infinite)

īn–firmus, *not firm, weak* (infirm)

im–mortālis, *not mortal, deathless* (immortal)

il–litterātus, *unlearned, ignorant* (illiterate)

ir–revocābilis, *not–call–back–able, unalterable* (irrevocable)

inter–, *between, among.*

inter–veniō, *come between; interrupt* (intervene)

inter–cēdō, *go between* (intercede)

inter–mittō, *place between, leave off* (intermittent)

inter–pōnō, *put between, bring forward* (interpose)

inter–rēgnum, *period between two reigns* (interregnum)

intrō–, *within, in.* (也用作副词)

intrō–dūcō, *lead in* (introduce)

intrō–mittō, *send in*

intrō–spiciō, *look within* (introspect)

ob– (oc–, of–, op–), *towards, to, opposite, against, over.*

ob–dūcō, *lead toward* or *against*

ob–veniō, *come opposite, meet*

oc–currō, *run to meet, meet* (occur)

of–ferō, *bear towards, furnish* (offer)

op–pōnō, *put opposite, set against, oppose* (opposition)

per– (pel–), *through*; 加强词义: *thoroughly, very, completely.*

per–dūcō, *lead through* or *along*

per–veniō, *come through to, arrive at, reach*

per–ferō, *carry through, bear thoroughly, endure*

per–mittō, *let go through, entrust, allow* (permit)

per–ficiō (–faciō), *do thoroughly, accomplish, finish* (perfect)

per–facilis, *very easy*

per–paucus, *very small*

pel–lūcidus, *shining through, transparent*

post–, *after.*

post–pōnō, *put after, esteem less, disregard* (postpone)

post–ferō, *put after, esteem less, disregard* (postpone)

post–scrībō, *write after, add* (postscript)

prae–, *before, in front, forth;* 加强词义: *very.* (在英语中也拼写为 *pre–.*)

prae–moneō, *warn before, forewarn* (premonition)

prae–cēdō, *go before, excel* (precede)

prae–pōnō, *put before, place in command of, prefer* (preposition)

prae–mittō, *send before* or *forth, set before* (premise)

prae–scrībō, *write before, order* (prescribe, prescription)

prae–ferō, *bear before, set before, prefer*

prae–clārus, *very noble, very famous, excellent*

prō–, *before, in front, forth, out, away, instead of, for.* (在英语中有时写作 *pur–*)

prō–vocō, *call forth* or *out, challenge, excite* (provoke)

prō–videō, *see ahead, foresee, care for* (provide, provision, purvey)

prō–dūcō, *lead before* or *out, bring forth, prolong* (produce)

prō–cēdō, *go forward, advance* (proceed)

prō–pōnō, *put in front, set forth, declare* (proponent, purpose)

prō–mittō, *send forth, assure* (promise)

prō–cōnsul, *one who served in place of a consul* (proconsul)

re– (red–; 不可分), *back again.*

re–vocō, *call back, recall* (revoke)

re–dūcō, *lead back* (reduce)

re–cēdō, *go back, retire* (recede)

re–pōnō, *put back, replace, restore* (repository)

re–mittō, *send back, give up* (remit)

red–dō, *give back, restore, return*

red–eō, *go back, return*

sē– (不可分), *apart, aside, without.*

sē–dūcō, *lead aside, separate* (seduce)

sē–cēdō, *go apart, withdraw, retire* (secede)

sē–pōnō, *put aside, select*

sē–moveō, *move aside, separate*

sē–cūrus, *without care, untroubled, serene* (secure)

sub– (suc–, suf–, sug–, sup–, sur–, sus–), *under, up (from beneath); rather, somewhat, a little, secretly.*

sub–dūcō, *draw from under, withdraw secretly*

suc–cēdō, *go under, go up, approach, prosper* (succeed)

sup–pōnō, *put under; substitute* (supposition, supposititious)

sub–veniō, *come under, help* (subvene, subvention)

sus–tineō (–teneō), *hold up, support, endure* (sustain)

super– (在英语中也写作 *sur–*), *over, above.*

super–pōnō, *place over* or *upon, set over* (superposition)

super–sedeō, *sit above* or *upon, be superior to, be above, refrain from, desist* (supersede)

super–sum, *be over and above, be left, survive*

superō, *be above, surpass, conquer* (insuperable)

superbus, *above others, haughty, proud* (superb)

super–vīvō, *survive*

super–ficiēs, *surface*

trāns– (trā–), *across, over.*

trāns–mittō, *send across, cross over* (transmit)

trā–dūcō, *lead across* (traduce)

trāns–eō, *go across* (transition)

trā–dō, *give over, surrender, hand down* (tradition)

后缀

拉丁语后缀为数众多，以下只列出了其中比较重要的几个，相应的英语后缀也一并列出。

1. 所指为 the *agent*, the *doer*, the *one who* 的后缀 (**–tor** or **–sor**, m.; **–trīx**, f.).

–tor 或 **–sor** (cp. Eng. *–er*)

victor (vincō, victum, *conquer), conqueror, victor*

scrīptor (scrībō, scrīptum, *write), writer*

lēctor, lēctrīx (legō, lēctum, *read), reader*

ōrātor (ōrō, ōrātum, *[speak], plead), speaker, orator*

repertor, repertrīx (reperiō, repertum, *discover), discoverer*

auctor (augeō, auctum, *increase), increaser, author*

līberātor (līberō, līberātum, *free), liberator*

tōnsor (tondeō, tōnsum, *shave, clip), barber*

amātor (amō, amātum, *love), lover*

这些名词与完成时分词有相同的词根。

2. 所指为 *action* 或 *result of action* 的后缀 (**–or, –ium, –tiō**)。

–or (Eng. *–or*)

amor (amō, *love), love, amour*

timor (timeō, *fear), fear*

dolor (doleō, *suffer pain), pain, suffering, grief*

error (errō, *go astray, err), error*

terror (terreō, *frighten, terrify), fright, terror*

–ium (Eng. *–y;* **–ium** 之前是 **c** 或 **t** 时是*–ce*)

studium (studeō, *be eager), eagerness, study*

colloquium (colloquor, *talk with), talk, conference, colloquy*

imperium (imperō, *command), command, power*

odium (ōdī, *hate), hate*

aedificium (aedificō, *build) building, edifice*

silentium (silēns, silentis, *silent), silence*

–tiō, –tiōnis, *or* **–siō, –siōnis** (Eng. *–tion* or *–sion*)

admonitiō (admoneō, admonitum, *admonish) admonition*

ratiō (reor, ratum, *reckon, think), reckoning, plan, reason (ration)*

ōrātiō (ōrō, ōrātum, [*speak*], *plead), oration*

nātiō (nāscor, nātum, *be born), birth, nation*

occāsiō (occidō, occāsum, *fall down) a befalling, occasion, opportunity*

3. 所指为 *quality, state*或 *condition* 的后缀 **(–ia, –tia, –tās, –tūdō).**

–ia (Eng. *–y*)

miseria (miser, *miserable), misery*

īnsānia (īnsānus, *insane), insanity*

victōria (victor, *victor), victory*

invidia (invidus, *envious), envy*

iniūria (iniūrus, *wrong, unjust), injustice, injury*

–tia (Eng. *–ce*)

amīcitia (amīcus, *friendly), friendship*

sapientia (sapiēns, *wise), wisdom, sapience*

scientia (sciēns, *knowing), knowledge, science*

iūstitia (iūstus, *just), justice*

dīligentia (dīligēns, *diligent), diligence*

–tās, –tātis (Eng. *–ty*)

lībertās (liber, *free), freedom, liberty*

vēritās (vērus, *true), truth, verity*

paupertās (pauper, *poor), poverty*

cupiditās (cupidus, *desirous, greedy), greed, cupidity*

gravitās (gravis, *heavy, grave), weight, seriousness, gravity*

celeritās (celer, *swift), swiftness, celerity*

–tūdō, –tūdinis (Eng. *–tude*)

multitūdō (multus, *much, many), multitude*

magnitūdō (magnus, *large, great), magnitude*

pulchritūdō (pulcher, *beautiful), beauty, pulchritude*

sōlitūdō (sōlus, *alone*), *solitude*

sollicitūdō (sollicitus, *agitated, solicitous*), *solicitude*

4. 意为 *full of* 的形容词后缀 **(–ōsus).**

–ōsus, –ōsa, –ōsum (Eng. *–ous* or *–ose*)

studiōsus (studium, *zeal*), *full of zeal, eager (studious)*

imperiōsus (imperium, *command*), *full of command, imperious*

perīculōsus (perīculum, *danger*), *full of danger, dangerous*

vitiōsus (vitium, *fault, vice*), *faulty, vicious*

verbōsus (verbum, *word*), *wordy, verbose*

5. 意为 *able to be, worthy to be*、有时还表示 *able to* 的形容词后缀 **(–bilis).**

–bilis, –bile (Eng. *–able, –ible, –ble*)

laudābilis (laudō, *praise*), *worthy to be praised, laudable*

amābilis (amō, *love*), *worthy to be loved, lovable, amiable*

incrēdibilis (crēdō, *believe*), *not worthy to be believed, incredible*

mōbilis (moveō, *move*), *able to be moved, movable, mobile*

inexpugnābilis (expugnō, *conquer*), *unconquerable*

stabilis (stō, *stand*), *able to stand, stable*

6. 意为 *pertaining to* 的形容词后缀 **(–ālis** or **–āris, –ānus, –icus).**

–ālis, –āle, or **–āris, –āre** (Eng. *–al* or *–ar*)

mortālis (mors, *death*), *pertaining to death, mortal*

vītālis (vīta, *life*), *pertaining to life, vital*

fātālis (fātum, *fate*), *fatal*

populāris (populus, *people*), *popular*

vulgāris (vulgus, *the common people*), *common, vulgar*

–ānus, –āna, –ānum (Eng. *–an* or *–ane*)

Rōmānus (Rōma, *Rome*), *pertaining to Rome, Roman*

hūmānus (homō, *man*), *pertaining to man, human, humane*

urbānus (urbs, *city*), *urban, urbane*

mundānus (mundus, *world*), *worldly, mundane*

–icus, –ica, –icum (Eng. *–ic*)

domesticus (domus, *house*), *pertaining to the house, domestic*

pūblicus (populus, *people*), *pertaining to the people, public*

rūsticus (rūs, *country*), *rustic*

cīvicus (cīvis, *citizen*), *civic*

classicus (classis, *class), pertaining to the classes, of the highest class; classic*

句法补充

以下结构是为那些准备继续学习拉丁语的学生准备的。在本书的四十课正文中，我们已经见过其中的一些结构。虽然即使不借助句法归类就可以翻译，但这里最好还是将它们连同其他更困难的条目进行整理，这样做或许有所裨益。

材料属格

材料属格指一件事物由以构成的材料。

pōculum **aurī,** *a goblet of gold*

Numerus **hostium** crēscit, *the number of the enemy is increasing.*

Mōns **aquae** secūtus est et tempestās trēs nāvēs cīnxit aggere **harēnae,** *a mountain of water followed and the storm surrounded three ships with a mound of sand.*

宾语属格

宾语属格依赖于一个有动词含义的名词作这个动词观念的宾语。它有时用 *for* 来翻译。

amor **laudis,** *love of praise* (= amat laudem, *he loves praise.)*

cupiditās **pecūniae,** *greed for money* (= cupit pecūniam, *he longs for money.)*

metus **mortis,** *fear of death* (= metuit mortem, *he fears death.)*

spēs **salūtis,** *hope for safety* (= spērat salūtem, *he hopes for safety.)*

Fēmina erat dux **factī,** *a woman was the leader of the enterprise* (= dūxit factum.)

laudātor **temporis** āctī, *a praiser of the past* (= laudat tempus āctum.)

目的与格

目的与格可以表示人或事物所服务的目的。关系与格(第三十八课)经常和目的与格连用,这一组合被称为“双与格”结构。

Petītiō mea **tibi** (关系与格) summae **cūrae** (目的与格) est, *my candidacy is (for) the greatest concern to you.*

Ea rēs **mihi** (关系与格) summae **voluptātī** (目的与格) erat, *that matter was for the greatest pleasure to me = gave me the greatest pleasure.*

Illī **nōbīs** (关系与格) **auxiliō** (目的与格) vēnērunt, *they came as an aid to us.*

Hōs librōs **dōnō** (目的与格) mīsit, *he sent these books as a gift.*

Hoc mē iuvat et **mihi** (关系与格) **mellī** (目的与格) est, *this gratifies me and is (as) honey to me.*

Optant locum **tēctō** (目的与格), *they desire a place for a roof (building).*

物主与格

物主与格与 **sum** 连用,表示属有。

Liber est **mihi,** *a book is to me = I have a book.*

(对比: liber est **meus,** *the book is mine.*)

Illī maior turba clientium est, *that man has a greater throng of retainers.*

Sunt **tibi** animus et mōrēs, *you have a soul and character.*

Haec **eīs** semper erunt, *they will always have these things.*

Prūdentia est illī **puellae,** *that girl has prudence.*

Ō virgō, nōn **tibi** est vultus mortālis, *O maiden, you do not have the face of a mortal.*

Sī umquam **mihi** fīlius erit . . ., *if I ever have a son. . . .*

指定夺格

指定夺格可以用来说明动词或形容词适用于哪个特定方面。

Hī omnēs **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus** inter sē differunt, *these all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws.*

Illī **virtūte** omnibus (与格) praestābant, *those men used to excel all in courage.*

Id genus erat intractābile **bellō,** *that race was unmanageable in war.*

Quis est praestantior aut **nōbilitāte** aut **probitāte** aut **studiō** optimārum artium? *Who is more outstanding in nobility or integrity or the pursuit of the finest arts?*

Ager bene cultus est ūber **ūsū** et ōrnātus **speciē**, *a field well cultivated is rich in usefulness and beautiful in appearance.*

Asia omnibus terrīs (dat.) antecellit **ūbertāte** agrōrum et **varietāte** frūctuum et **multitūdine** eārum quae exportantur, *Asia excels all lands in richness of fields and variety of fruits and large number of those things which are exported.*

原因夺格

原因夺格可以用来指原因或理由。

Miser **timōre** dēlīrat, *the wretched man is insane with fear.*

Corpora eōrum **metū** dēbilia sunt, *their bodies are weak from fear.*

Aper **dentibus** timētur, *the boar is feared because of his teeth.*

Nihil arduum mortālibus est; caelum ipsum **stultitiā** petimus, *nothing is (too) arduous for mortals; we seek the sky itself in our folly.*

Odiō tyrannī in exsilium fūgit, *because of his hatred of the tyrant he fled into exile.*

Bonī **amōre** virtūtis peccāre ōdērunt, *good men because of their love of virtue hate to sin.*

差异夺格

差异夺格与比较级和表示比较的副词连用,指示比较中的差别程度。

Tantō melius, *the better by so much = so much the better.*

Senex nōn facit ea quae iuvenis, at **multō** maiōra et meliōra facit, *an old man does not do the things which a young man does, but he does much greater and better things (greater by much).*

Multō ācrius iam vigilābō, *I shall now watch much more keenly.*

Rōmam **paucīs** post **diēbus** vēnistī, *you came to Rome a few days afterwards (afterwards by a few days).*

Aberat ab eā urbe **tribus mīlibus** passuum, *he was three miles from that city (was away by three miles).*

Bonae Athēnae **paulō** plūs artis adiēcērunt, *good Athens added a little more skill (more by a little).*

间接引语中的从句

在间接引语中,从句动词通常用虚拟式,即使它们在直接引语中是直陈式。

Lēgit librōs quōs mīserās, *he read the books which you had sent.*
Dīxit sē lēgisse librōs quōs **mīsissēs,** *he said that he had read the books which you had sent.*

Eī malī quī in urbe manent īnfīrmī erunt sine duce, *those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*
Putō eōs malōs quī in urbe **maneant** īnfīrmōs futūrōs esse sine duce, *I think that those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*

Sī id crēdet, errābit. *If he believes this, he will be wrong.*
Dīcō sī id **crēdat** eum errātūrum esse. *I say that if he believes this he will be wrong.*

宾语不定式

补充不定式没有宾格主语(参见第六课),但是在把带有宾格主语的不定式

用作动词宾语时，它被称为宾语不定式。

Volunt venīre, *they wish to come.* (补充不定式)

Iussit eōs venīre, *he ordered them to come.* (宾语不定式)

Nōn possum loquī, *I cannot speak.* (补充不定式)

Nōn patitur mē loquī, *he does not permit me to speak.* (宾语不定式)

Nōn audet īre, *he does not dare to go.* (补充不定式)

Coēgērunt eum īre, *they forced him to go.* (宾语不定式)

词形总结

名词变格

第一变格法	第二变格法				第三变格法	
porta, -ae f., *gate*	amīcus, -ī m., *friend*	puer, -ī m., *boy*	ager, -grī m., *field*	dōnum, -ī n., *gift*	rēx, rēgis m., *king*	corpus, -oris n., *body*
单数						
主格 port-a	amīc-us[1]	puer	ager	dōn-um	rēx	corpus
属格 port-ae	amīc-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	dōn-ī	rēg-is	corpor-is
与格 port-ae	amīc-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	dōn-ō	rēg-ī	corpor-ī
宾格 port-am	amīc-um	puer-um	agr-um	dōn-um	rēg-em	corpus
夺格 port-ā	amīc-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	dōn-ō	rēg-e	corpor-e
复数						
主格 port-ae	amīc-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	dōn-a	rēg-ēs	corpor-a
属格 port-ārum	amīc-ōrum	puer-ōrum	agr-ōrum	dōn-ōrum	rēg-um	corpor-um
与格 port-īs	amīc-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	dōn-īs	rēg-ibus	corpor-ibus
宾格 port-ās	amīc-ōs	puer-ōs	agr-ōs	dōn-a	rēg-ēs	corpor-a
夺格 port-īs	amīc-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	dōn-īs	rēg-ibus	corpor-ibus

第三变格法(I-词干)			第四变格法		第五变格法
cīvis, -is m., *citizen*	urbs, -is f., *city*	mare, -is n., *sea*	frūctus, -ūs m., *fruit*	cornū,-ūs n., *horn*	diēs, -ēī m., *day*
单数					
主格 cīv-is	urb-s	mar-e	frūct-us	corn-ū	di-ēs
属格 cīv-is	urb-is	mar-is	frūct-ūs	corn-ūs	di-ēī
与格 cīv-ī	urb-ī	mar-ī	frūct-uī	corn-ū	di-ēī
宾格 cīv-em	urb-em	mar-e	frūct-um	corn-ū	di-em
夺格 cīv-e	urb-e	mar-ī	frūct-ū	corn-ū	di-ē
复数					
主格 cīv-ēs	urb-ēs	mar-ia	frūct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs
属格 cīv-ium	urb-ium	mar-ium	frūct-uum	corn-uum	di-ērum
与格 cīv-ibus	urb-ibus	mar-ibus	frūct-ibus	corn-ibus	di-ēbus
宾格 cīv-ēs	urb-ēs	mar-ia	frūct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs
夺格 cīv-ibus	urb-ibus	mar-ibus	frūct-ibus	corn-ibus	di-ēbus

*Vīs*是不规则的: Sg , N., vīs, G. (vīs), D. (vī), A. vim. Ab. vī; Pl. N. vīrēs, G. vīrium, D. vīribus, A. vīrēs, Ab. vīribus.

[1] 像 **amīcus** 这样的名词以及像 **magnus** 这样的阳性形容词的单数呼格以–**e** 结尾。**fīlius** 和以–**ius** 结尾的名称的单数呼格以–**ī** 结尾(**fīlī, Vergilī**);阳性形容词 **meus** 的单数呼格是 **mī**;以–**ius** 结尾的阳性形容词的单数呼格以–**ie** 结尾(**ēgregius; ēgregie**)。在其他情况下,所有变格法的呼格都与主格形式相同。

形容词变格

第一和第二变格法

	-us, -a, -um			-er, -era, -erum; -er, -ra, -rum		
	阳性	阴性	中性	阳性	阴性	中性
		单数			单数[2]	
主格	magnus	magna	magnum	līber	lībera	līberum
属格	magnī	magnae	magnī	līberī	līberae	līberī
与格	magnō	magnae	magnō	līberō	līberae	līberō
宾格	magnum	magnam	magnum	līberum	līberam	līberum
夺格	magnō	magnā	magnō	līberō	līberā	līberō
		复数			单数[2]	
主格	magnī	magnae	magna	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
属格	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
与格	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
宾格	magnōs	magnās	magna	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
夺格	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

第三变格法

	二尾		三尾		一尾		比较级[5]	
	fortis, forte		ācer, ācris, ācre		potēns[3]		fortior, fortius	
	brave		*keen, severe*		*powerful*		*braver*	
	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性
单数								
主格	fortis	forte	ācer ācris	ācre	potēns	potēns	fortior	fortius
属格	fortis		ācris		potentis		fortiōris	
与格	fortī		ācrī		potentī		fortiōrī	
宾格	fortem	forte	ācrem	ācre	potentem	potēns	fortiōrem	fortius
夺格	fortī		ācrī		potentī		fortiōre	
复数								
主格	fortēs	fortia	ācrēs	ācria	potentēs	potentia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
属格	fortium		ācrium		potentium		fortiōrum	
与格	fortibus		ācribus		potentibus		fortiōribus	
宾格	fortēs[4]	fortia	ācres[4]	ācria	potentēs[4]	potentia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
夺格	fortibus		ācribus		potentibus		fortiōribus	

---

[2] 复数形式遵循着单数的模式，只是要换成复数词尾。

[3] 现在时分词遵循着 **potēns** 的变格方式，只是在句中作分词用时，其单数夺格以**-e** 结尾。

[4] 关于**-īs** (复数宾格)，参见第十六课。

[5] 关于不规则的 **plūs**，参见第二十七课。

代词

指示词

	hic, *this*			ille, *that*		
	阳性	**阴性**	**中性**	**阳性**	**阴性**	**中性**
单数						
主格	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
属格	huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus
与格	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
宾格	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
夺格	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
复数						
主格	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
属格	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
与格	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
宾格	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
夺格	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

	关系代词 qui, *who, which*			**疑问词**[6] quis, *who?*		**强势代词** ipse, *himself,* etc.		
	阳性	**阴性**	**中性**	**阳性和阴性**	**中性**	**阳性**	**阴性**	**中性**
单数								
主格	quī	quae	quod	quis	quid	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
属格	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
与格	cui	cui	cui	cui	cui	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
宾格	quem	quam	quod	quem	quid	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
夺格	quō	quā	quō	quō	quō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
复数								
主格	quī	quae	quae	（复数与关系代词同）		ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
属格	quōrum	quārum	quōrum			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
与格	quibus	quibus	quibus			ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
宾格	quōs	quās	quae			ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
夺格	quibus	quibus	quibus			ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

[6] 疑问形容词 **quī? quae? quod?**意为 *what? which? what kind of?*，它们与关系代词的变格相同。

代词

指示词

	is, *this, that, he, she, it*			idem, *the same*		
	阳性	**阴性**	**中性**	**阳性**	**阴性**	**中性**
单数						
主格	is	ea	id	īdem	eadem	idem
属格	eius	eius	eius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
与格	eī	eī	eī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
宾格	eum	eam	id	eundem	eandem	idem
夺格	eō	eā	eō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
复数						
主格	eī, iī	eae	ea	eīdem, īdem	eaedem	eadem
属格	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
与格	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīsdem[7]	eīsdem	eīsdem
宾格	eōs	eās	ea	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
夺格	eīs	eīs	eīs	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

	不规则形容词[8] sōlus, *alone, only*			**人称代词**[9]		**反身代词**[9]
	阳性	**阴性**	**中性**	ego, *I*	tū, *you*	suī, *himself, herself, itself*
单数						
主格	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	ego	tū	——
属格	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	meī	tuī	suī[10]
与格	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	mihi	tibi	sibi
宾格	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	mē	tē	sē[11]
夺格	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	mē	tē	sē[11]
复数						
主格	sōlī	sōlae	sōla	nōs	vōs	——
属格	sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum	nostrum / nostrī	vestrum / vestrī	suī
与格	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
宾格	sōlōs	sōlās	sōla	nōs	vōs	sē[11]
夺格	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē[11]

[7] 也写作 **īsdem**。

[8] 类似的还有 **ūnus, tōtus, ūllus, nūllus, alius, alter, uter, neuter** (参见第九课)。

[9] 除单数主格和复数主格以外,第一、第二人称代词的所有形式都可以用作反身代词。

[10] 这些都只是反身形式。第三人称的非反身形式由 **is, ea, id** 提供(参见第十一课和第十三课)。

[11] **sēsē** 这一形式也很常见。

形容词的比较

原级	比较级	最高级
规则		
longus, -a, -um (*long*)	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e (*brave*)	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis, (*happy*)	fēlīcior, -ius	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um
sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis (*wise*)	sapientior, -ius	sapientissimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e (*easy*)	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
līber, -era, -erum (*free*)	līberior, -ius	līberrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, -chra, -chrum (*beautiful*)	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre (*keen*)	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
不规则		
bonus, -a, -um (*good*)	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um (*large*)	maior, -ius	maximus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um (*bad*)	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um (*much*)	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um (*small*)	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
(prae, prō)	prior, -ius (*former*)	prīmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um (*that above*)	superior, -ius	summus (suprēmus), -a, -um

副词的比较

原级	比较级	最高级
规则		
longē (*far*)	longius	longissimē
fortiter (*bravely*)	fortius	fortissimē
fēlīciter (*happily*)	fēlīcius	fēlīcissimē
sapienter (*wisely*)	sapientius	sapientissimē
facile (*easily*)	facilius	facillimē
līberē (*freely*)	līberius	līberrimē
pulchrē (*beautifully*)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
ācriter (*keenly*)	ācrius	ācerrimē
不规则		
bene (*well*)	melius	optimē
magnopere (*greatly*)	magis	maximē
male (*badly*)	peius	pessimē
multum (*much*)	plūs	plūrimum
parum (*little*)	minus	minimē
(prae, prō)	prius (*before*)	prīmum; prīmō
diū (*a long time*)	diūtius	diūtissimē

数词

基数词	序数词	罗马数字
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	I
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus, alter	II
3. trēs, tria	tertius	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	IIII; IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIIII; IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIIII; XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus	XVIII
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	XVIIII; XIX
20. vīgintī	vīcēsimus	XX
21. vīgintī ūnus, ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus	XXI
30. trīgintā	trīcēsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	XXXX, XL
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	LXXXX; XC
100. centum	centēsimus	C
101. centum ūnus	centēsimus prīmus	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	duocentēsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēsimus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	D
600. sescentī	sescentēsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	DCCCC
1000. mīlle	mīllēsimus	M
2000. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	MM

数词的变格

Ūnus 的变格见第九课或前面的 **sōlus**。

Duo,trēs 和 **mīlle** 的变格见第十五课。

从 **trecentī** 到 **nōngentī**的变格同 **ducentī,–ae,–a**。

序数词的变格同 **prīmus,–a,–um**。

其他形式不变格。

第一到第四变位法

主要部分

1*st:* laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātum
2*nd:* moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
3*rd:* agō	agere	ēgī	āctum
4*th:* audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum
3*rd* (-iō): capiō	capere	cēpī	captum

直陈式主动态

现在时

laudō	moneō	agō	audiō	capiō
laudās	monēs	agis	audīs	capis
laudat	monet	agit	audit	capit
laudāmus	monēmus	agimus	audīmus	capimus
laudātis	monētis	agitis	audītis	capitis
laudant	monent	agunt	audiunt	capiunt

未完成时

laudābam	monēbam	agēbam	audiēbam	capiēbam
laudābās	monēbās	agēbās	audiēbās	capiēbās
laudābat	monēbat	agēbat	audiēbat	capiēbat
laudābāmus	monēbāmus	agēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus
laudābātis	monēbātis	agēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbātis
laudābant	monēbant	agēbant	audiēbant	capiēbant

将来时

laudābō	monēbō	agam	audiam	capiam
laudābis	monēbis	agēs	audiēs	capiēs
laudābit	monēbit	aget	audiet	capiet
laudābimus	monēbimus	agēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus
laudābitis	monēbitis	agētis	audiētis	capiētis
laudābunt	monēbunt	agent	audient	capient

完成时

laudāvī	monuī	ēgī	audīvī	cēpī
laudāvistī	monuistī	ēgistī	audīvistī	cēpistī
laudāvit	monuit	ēgit	audīvit	cēpit
laudāvimus	monuimus	ēgimus	audīvimus	cēpimus
laudāvistis	monuistis	ēgistis	audīvistis	cēpistis
laudāvērunt	monuērunt	ēgērunt	audīvērunt	cēpērunt

过去完成时

laudāveram	monueram	ēgeram	audīveram	cēperam
laudāverās	monuerās	ēgerās	audīverās	cēperās
laudāverat	monuerat	ēgerat	audīverat	cēperat
laudāverāmus	monuerāmus	ēgerāmus	audīverāmus	cēperāmus
laudāverātis	monuerātis	ēgerātis	audīverātis	cēperātis
laudāverant	monuerant	ēgerant	audīverant	cēperant

将来完成时

laudāverō	monuerō	ēgerō	audīverō	cēperō
laudāveris	monueris	ēgeris	audīveris	cēperis
laudāverit	monuerit	ēgerit	audīverit	cēperit
laudāverimus	monuerimus	ēgerimus	audīverimus	cēperimus
laudāveritis	monueritis	ēgeritis	audīveritis	cēperitis
laudāverint	monuerint	ēgerint	audīverint	cēperint

虚拟式主动态

现在时

laudem	moneam	agam	audiam	capiam
laudēs	moneās	agās	audiās	capiās
laudet	moneat	agat	audiat	capiat
laudēmus	moneāmus	agāmus	audiāmus	capiāmus
laudētis	moneātis	agātis	audiātis	capiātis
laudent	moneant	agant	audiant	capiant

未完成时

laudārem	monērem	agerem	audīrem	caperem
laudārēs	monērēs	agerēs	audīrēs	caperēs
laudāret	monēret	ageret	audīret	caperet
laudārēmus	monērēmus	agerēmus	audīrēmus	caperēmus
laudārētis	monērētis	agerētis	audīrētis	caperētis
laudārent	monērent	agerent	audīrent	caperent

完成时

laudāverim	monuerim	ēgerim	audīverim	cēperim
laudāverīs	monuerīs	ēgerīs	audīverīs	cēperīs
laudāverit	monuerit	ēgerit	audīverit	cēperit
laudāverīmus	monuerīmus	ēgerīmus	audīverīmus	cēperīmus
laudāverītis	monuerītis	ēgerītis	audīverītis	cēperītis
laudāverint	monuerint	ēgerint	audīverint	cēperint

过去完成时

laudāvissem	monuissem	ēgissem	audīvissem	cēpissem
laudāvissēs	monuissēs	ēgissēs	audīvissēs	cēpissēs
laudāvisset	monuisset	ēgisset	audīvisset	cēpisset
laudāvissēmus	monuissēmus	ēgissēmus	audīvissēmus	cēpissēmus
laudāvissētis	monuissētis	ēgissētis	audīvissētis	cēpissētis
laudāvissent	monuissent	ēgissent	audīvissent	cēpissent

现在时命令式主动态

laudā	monē	age	audī	cape
laudāte	monēte	agite	audīte	capite

直陈式被动态

现在时

laudor	moneor	agor	audior	capior
laudāris(-re)	monēris(-re)	ageris(-re)	audīris(-re)	caperis(-re)
laudātur	monētur	agitur	audītur	capitur
laudāmur	monēmur	agimur	audīmur	capimur
laudāminī	monēminī	agiminī	audīminī	capiminī
laudantur	monentur	aguntur	audiuntur	capiuntur

未完成时

laudābar	monēbar	agēbar	audiēbar	capiēbar
laudābāris(-re)	monēbāris(-re)	agēbāris(-re)	audiēbāris(-re)	capiēbāris(-re)
laudābātur	monēbātur	agēbātur	audiēbātur	capiēbātur
laudābāmur	monēbāmur	agēbāmur	audiēbāmur	capiēbāmur
laudābāminī	monēbāminī	agēbāminī	audiēbāminī	capiēbāminī
laudābantur	monēbantur	agēbantur	audiēbantur	capiēbantur

将来时

laudābor	monēbor	agar	audiar	capiar
laudāberis(-re)	monēberis(-re)	agēris(-re)	audiēris(-re)	capiēris(-re)
laudābitur	monēbitur	agētur	audiētur	capiētur
laudābimur	monēbimur	agēmur	audiēmur	capiēmur
laudābiminī	monēbiminī	agēminī	audiēminī	capiēminī
laudābuntur	monēbuntur	agentur	audientur	capientur

完成时

laudātus[12] sum	monitus sum	āctus sum	audītus sum	captus sum
laudātus es	monitus es	āctus es	audītus es	captus es
laudātus est	monitus est	āctus est	audītus est	captus est
laudātī sumus	monitī sumus	āctī sumus	audītī sumus	captī sumus
laudātī estis	monitī estis	āctī estis	audītī estis	captī estis
laudātī sunt	monitī sunt	āctī sunt	audītī sunt	captī sunt

过去完成时

laudātus eram	monitus eram	āctus eram	audītus eram	captus eram
laudātus erās	monitus erās	āctus erās	audītus erās	captus erās
laudātus erat	monitus erat	āctus erat	audītus erat	captus erat
laudātī erāmus	monitī erāmus	āctī erāmus	audītī erāmus	captī erāmus
laudātī erātis	monitī erātis	āctī erātis	audītī erātis	captī erātis
laudātī erant	monitī erant	āctī erant	audītī erant	captī erant

将来完成时

laudātus erō	monitus erō	āctus erō	audītus erō	captus erō
laudātus eris	monitus eris	āctus eris	audītus eris	captus eris
laudātus erit	monitus erit	āctus erit	audītus erit	captus erit
laudātī erimus	monitī erimus	āctī erimus	audītī erimus	captī erimus
laudātī eritis	monitī eritis	āctī eritis	audītī eritis	captī eritis
laudātī erunt	monitī erunt	āctī erunt	audītī erunt	captī erunt

虚拟式被动态

现在时

lauder	monear	agar	audiar	capiar
laudēris(-re)	moneāris(-re)	agāris(-re)	audiāris(-re)	capiāris(-re)
laudētur	moneātur	agātur	audiātur	capiātur
laudēmur	moneāmur	agāmur	audiāmur	capiāmur
laudēminī	moneāminī	agāminī	audiāminī	capiāminī
laudentur	moneantur	agantur	audiantur	capiantur

未完成时

laudārer	monērer	agerer	audīrer	caperer
laudārēris(-re)	monērēris(-re)	agerēris(-re)	audīrēris(-re)	caperēris(-re)
laudārētur	monērētur	agerētur	audīrētur	caperētur
laudārēmur	monērēmur	agerēmur	audīrēmur	caperēmur
laudārēminī	monērēminī	agerēminī	audīrēminī	caperēminī
laudārentur	monērentur	agerentur	audīrentur	caperentur

[12] 分词 **laudātus (–a, –um), monitus (–a, –um)**等等被用作谓语形容词，所以它们的词尾要发生变化，以同主语保持一致。

完成时

laudātus sim	monitus sim	āctus sim	audītus sim	captus sim
laudātus sīs	monitus sīs	āctus sīs	audītus sīs	captus sīs
laudātus sit	monitus sit	āctus sit	audītus sit	captus sit
laudātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	āctī sīmus	audītī sīmus	captī sīmus
laudātī sītis	monitī sītis	āctī sītis	audītī sītis	captī sītis
laudātī sint	monitī sint	āctī sint	audītī sint	captī sint

过去完成时

laudātus essem	monitus essem	āctus essem	audītus essem	captus essem
laudātus essēs	monitus essēs	āctus essēs	audītus essēs	captus essēs
laudātus esset	monitus esset	āctus esset	audītus esset	captus esset
laudātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	āctī essēmus	audītī essēmus	captī essēmus
laudātī essētis	monitī essētis	āctī essētis	audītī essētis	captī essētis
laudātī essent	monitī essent	āctī essent	audītī essent	captī essent

现在时命令式被动态

在古典拉丁语中,被动形式的命令式主要见于异态动词(形式见第三十四课)。

分词

主动态

现在时	laudāns	monēns	agēns	audiēns	capiēns
将来时	laudātūrus	monitūrus	āctūrus	audītūrus	captūrus

被动态

完成时	laudātus	monitus	āctus	audītus	captus
将来时	laudandus	monendus	agendus	audiendus	capiendus

不定式

主动态

现在时	laudāre	monēre	agere	audīre	capere
完成时	laudāvisse	monuisse	ēgisse	audīvisse	cēpisse
将来时	laudātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	āctūrus esse	audītūrus esse	captūrus esse

被动态

现在时	laudārī	monērī	agī	audīrī	capī
完成时	laudātus esse	monitus esse	āctus esse	audītus esse	captus esse
将来时	laudātum īrī	monitum īrī	āctum īrī	audītum īrī	captum īrī

异态动词

主要部分

第一变位法	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum (*urge*)
第二变位法	fateor	fatērī	fassus sum (*confess*)
第三变位法	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum (*follow*)
第四变位法	mōlior	mōlīrī	mōlītus sum (*work at*)
第三变位法 (–iō)	patior	patī	passus sum (*suffer*)

直陈式

现在时

hortor	fateor	sequor	mōlior	patior
hortāris(-re)	fatēris(-re)	sequeris(-re)	mōlīris(-re)	pateris(-re)
hortātur	fatētur	sequitur	mōlītur	patitur
hortāmur	fatēmur	sequimur	mōlīmur	patimur
hortāminī	fatēminī	sequiminī	mōlīminī	patiminī
hortantur	fatentur	sequuntur	mōliuntur	patiuntur

未完成时

hortābar	fatēbar	sequēbar	mōliēbar	patiēbar
hortābāris(-re)	fatēbāris(-re)	sequēbāris(-re)	mōliēbāris(-re)	patiēbāris(-re)
hortābātur	fatēbātur	sequēbātur	mōliēbātur	patiēbātur
hortābāmur	fatēbāmur	sequēbāmur	mōliēbāmur	patiēbāmur
hortābāminī	fatēbāminī	sequēbāminī	mōliēbāminī	patiēbāminī
hortābantur	fatēbantur	sequēbantur	mōliēbantur	patiēbantur

将来时

hortābor	fatēbor	sequar	mōliar	patiar
hortāberis(-re)	fatēberis(-re)	sequēris(-re)	mōliēris(-re)	patiēris(-re)
hortābitur	fatēbitur	sequētur	mōliētur	patiētur
hortābimur	fatēbimur	sequēmur	mōliēmur	patiēmur
hortābiminī	fatēbiminī	sequēminī	mōliēminī	patiēminī
hortābuntur	fatēbuntur	sequentur	mōlientur	patientur

完成时

hortātus sum	fassus sum	secūtus sum	mōlītus sum	passus sum
hortātus es	fassus es	secūtus es	mōlītus es	passus es
hortātus est	fassus est	secūtus est	mōlītus est	passus est
hortātī sumus	fassī sumus	secūtī sumus	mōlītī sumus	passī sumus
hortātī estis	fassī estis	secūtī estis	mōlītī estis	passī estis
hortātī sunt	fassī sunt	secūtī sunt	mōlītī sunt	passī sunt

过去完成时

hortātus eram	fassus eram	secūtus eram	mōlītus eram	passus eram
hortātus erās	fassus erās	secūtus erās	mōlītus erās	passus erās
hortātus erat	fassus erat	secūtus erat	mōlītus erat	passus erat
hortātī erāmus	fassī erāmus	secūtī erāmus	mōlītī erāmus	passī erāmus
hortātī erātis	fassī erātis	secūtī erātis	mōlītī erātis	passī erātis
hortātī erant	fassī erant	secūtī erant	mōlītī erant	passī erant

将来完成时

hortātus erō	fassus erō	secūtus erō	mōlītus erō	passus erō
hortātus eris	fassus eris	secūtus eris	mōlītus eris	passus eris
hortātus erit	fassus erit	secūtus erit	mōlītus erit	passus erit
hortātī erimus	fassī erimus	secūtī erimus	mōlītī erimus	passī erimus
hortātī eritis	fassī eritis	secūtī eritis	mōlītī eritis	passī eritis
hortātī erunt	fassī erunt	secūtī erunt	mōlītī erunt	passī erunt

虚拟式

现在时

horter	fatear	sequar	mōliar	patiar
hortēris(-re)	fateāris(-re)	sequāris(-re)	mōliāris(-re)	patiāris(-re)
hortētur	fateātur	sequātur	mōliātur	patiātur
hortēmur	fateāmur	sequāmur	mōliāmur	patiāmur
hortēminī	fateāminī	sequāminī	mōliāminī	patiāminī
hortentur	fateantur	sequantur	mōliantur	patiantur

未完成时

hortārer	fatērer	sequerer	mōlīrer	paterer
hortārēris(-re)	fatērēris(-re)	sequerēris(-re)	mōlīrēris(-re)	paterēris(-re)
hortārētur	fatērētur	sequerētur	mōlīrētur	paterētur
hortārēmur	fatērēmur	sequerēmur	mōlīrēmur	paterēmur
hortārēminī	fatērēminī	sequerēminī	mōlīrēminī	paterēminī
hortārentur	fatērentur	sequerentur	mōlīrentur	paterentur

完成时

hortātus sim	fassus sim	secūtus sim	mōlītus sim	passus sim
hortātus sīs	fassus sīs	secūtus sīs	mōlītus sīs	passus sīs
hortātus sit	fassus sit	secūtus sit	mōlītus sit	passus sit
hortātī sīmus	fassī sīmus	secūtī sīmus	mōlītī sīmus	passī sīmus
hortātī sītis	fassī sītis	secūtī sītis	mōlītī sītis	passī sītis
hortātī sint	fassī sint	secūtī sint	mōlītī sint	passī sint

过去完成时

hortātus essem	fassus essem	secūtus essem	mōlītus essem	passus essem
hortātus essēs	fassus essēs	secūtus essēs	mōlītus essēs	passus essēs
hortātus esset	fassus esset	secūtus esset	mōlītus esset	passus esset
hortātī essēmus	fassī essēmus	secūtī essēmus	mōlītī essēmus	passī essēmus
hortātī essētis	fassī essētis	secūtī essētis	mōlītī essētis	passī essētis
hortātī essent	fassī essent	secūtī essent	mōlītī essent	passī essent

现在时命令式

hortāre	fatēre	sequere	mōlīre	patere
hortāminī	fatēminī	sequiminī	mōlīminī	patiminī

分词

现在时	fatēns	sequēns	mōliēns	patiēns
完成时	fassus	secūtus	mōlītus	passus
将来时	fassūrus	secūtūrus	mōlītūrus	passūrus
将来时被动态(动形词)	fatendus	sequendus	mōliendus	patiendus

不定式

现在时	fatērī	sequī	mōlīrī	patī
完成时	fassus esse	secūtus esse	mōlītus esse	passus esse
将来时	fassūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	mōlītūrus esse	passūrus esse

不规则动词

主要部分

sum	esse	fuī	futūrum	(*be*)
possum	posse	potuī		(*be able, can*)
volō	velle	voluī		(*wish, be willing*)
nōlō	nōlle	nōluī		(*not to wish, be unwilling*)
mālō	mālle	māluī		(*prefer*)
eō	īre	iī	itum	(*go*)

直陈式[13]

现在时

sum	possum	volō	nōlō	mālō	eō
es	potes	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	īs
est	potest	vult	nōn vult	māvult	it
sumus	possumus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	īmus
estis	potestis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	ītis
sunt	possunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	eunt

未完成时

eram	poteram	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	ībam
erās	poterās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	ībās
erat	poterat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	ībat
erāmus	poterāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	ībāmus
erātis	poterātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	ībātis
erant	poterant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	ībant

将来时

erō	poterō	volam	nōlam	mālam	ībō
eris	poteris	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs	ībis
erit	poterit	volet	nōlet	mālet	ībit
erimus	poterimus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus	ībimus
eritis	poteritis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis	ībitis
erunt	poterunt	volent	nōlent	mālent	ībunt

完成时

fuī	potuī	voluī	nōluī	māluī	iī
fuistī	potuistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī	īstī
fuit	potuit	voluit	nōluit	māluit	iit
fuimus	potuimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus	iimus
fuistis	potuistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis	īstis
fuērunt	potuērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt	iērunt

过去完成时

fueram	potueram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	ieram
fuerās	potuerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās	ierās
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

将来完成时

fuerō	potuerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō	ierō
fueris	potueris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris	ieris
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

虚拟式

现在时

sim	possim	velim	nōlim	mālim	eam
sīs	possīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs	eās
sit	possit	velit	nōlit	mālit	eat
sīmus	possīmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus	eāmus
sītis	possītis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis	eātis
sint	possint	velint	nōlint	mālint	eant

[13] 注意，这种列表中的动词都没有被动态（只有 **eō** 有独特的非人称被动态，不过本书中没有用到）。

未完成时					
essem	possem	vellem	nōllem	māllem	īrem
essēs	possēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs	īrēs
esset	posset	vellet	nōllet	māllet	īret
essēmus	possēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus	īrēmus
essētis	possētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis	īrētis
essent	possent	vellent	nōllent	māllent	īrent
完成时					
fuerim	potuerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	ierim
fuerīs	potuerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs	ierīs
fuerit	potuerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit	ierit
fuerīmus	potuerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus	ierīmus
fuerītis	potuerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis	ierītis
fuerint	potuerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint	ierint
过去完成时					
fuissem	potuissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	īssem
fuissēs	potuissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs	īssēs
fuisset	potuisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset	īsset
fuissēmus	potuissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus	īssēmus
fuissētis	potuissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis	īssētis
fuissent	potuissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent	īssent
现在时命令式					
es	———	———	nōlī	———	ī
este	———	———	nōlīte	———	īte

分词

现在时———	potēns	volēns	nōlēns	———	iēns (*gen.* euntis)
完成时———	———	———	———	———	itum
将来时utūrus	———	———	———	———	itūrus
动形词———	———	———	———	———	eundus

不定式

现在时 esse	posse	velle	nōlle	mālle	īre
完成时 fuisse	potuisse	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	īsse
将来时 futūrus esse *or* fore	———	———	———	———	itūrus esse

不规则: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to bear, carry*

直陈式

现在时		未完成时		将来时	
主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
ferō	feror	ferēbam	ferēbar	feram	ferar
fers	ferris(-re)	ferēbās	ferēbāris(-re)	ferēs	ferēris(-re)
fert	fertur	ferēbat	ferēbātur	feret	ferētur
ferimus	ferimur	ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur	ferēmus	ferēmur
fertis	feriminī	ferēbātis	ferēbāminī	ferētis	ferēminī
ferunt	feruntur	ferēbant	ferēbantur	ferent	ferentur

完成时		过去完成时		将来完成时	
主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
tulī	lātus sum	tuleram	lātus eram	tulerō	lātus erō
tulistī	lātus es	tulerās	lātus erās	tuleris	lātus eris
tulit	lātus est	tulerat	lātus erat	tulerit	lātus erit
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

虚拟式

现在时		未完成时		完成时	
主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
feram	ferar	ferrem	ferrer	tulerim	lātus sim
ferās	ferāris(-re)	ferrēs	ferrēris(-re)	tulerīs	lātus sīs
ferat	ferātur	ferret	ferrētur	tulerit	lātus sit
ferāmus	ferāmur	ferrēmus	ferrēmur	etc.	etc.
ferātis	ferāminī	ferrētis	ferrēminī		
ferant	ferantur	ferrent	ferrentur		
				过去完成时	
				tulissem	lātus essem
				tulissēs	lātus essēs
				tulisset	lātus esset
				etc.	etc.

现在时命令式		分词		不定式	
主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
fer	———	现在时 ferēns	———	ferre	ferrī
ferte	———	完成时———	lātus	tulisse	lātus esse
		将来时 lātūrus	ferendus	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

不规则: fīō, fierī, factus sum *to happen, become; be made, be done*

直陈式

现在时	未完成时	将来时	完成时	过去完成时	将来完成时
fīō	fīēbam	fīam	factus sum	factus eram	factus erō
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs	factus es	factus erās	factus eris
fit	fīēbat	fīet	factus est	factus erat	factus erit
fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus	factī sumus	factī erāmus	factī erimus
fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis	factī estis	factī erātis	factī eritis
fīunt	fīēbant	fīent	factī sunt	factī erant	factī erunt

虚拟式

现在时	未完成时	完成时	过去完成时
fīam	fierem	factus sim	factus essem
fīās	fierēs	factus sīs	factus essēs
fīat	fieret	factus sit	factus esset
fīāmus	fierēmus	factī sīmus	factī essēmus
fīātis	fierētis	factī sītis	factī essētis
fīant	fierent	factī sint	factī essent

分词	不定式
现在时———	fierī
完成时factus	factus esse
将来时faciendus	factum īrī
命令式:	fī, fīte

英拉词汇表

动词后带括号的阿拉伯数字(1)表示,这是一个规则的第一变位法动词,主要部分的词尾依次为**-āre, -āvī, -ātum**。关于前缀和后缀,参见附录中的列表。关于拉丁词更完整的含义,参见拉英词汇表。

A

abandon, relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum
able (be), possum, posse, potuī
about (concerning), dē + *abl.*
absolute ruler, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
accomplish, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be accomplished,** fīo, fierī, factus sum
across, trāns + *acc.*
advice, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
affect, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum
afraid (be), metuō, -ere, -uī
after, post + *acc.*
afterwards, posteā
after all, postrēmum
again, iterum
against, contrā + *acc.*
age, aetās, -tātis, *f.*
alas, heu, vae
all, omnis, -e
alone, sōlus, -a, -um
also, quoque
although, cum + *subj.*
always, semper
among, inter + *acc.*
ancestors, maiōrēs, maiōrum, *m. pl.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um
and, et, -que, ac, atque
anger, īra, -ae, *f.*
angry, īrātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, -mālis, *n.*
announce, nūntiō (1)
another, alius, -a, -ud
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum
any, ūllus, -a, -um
any (anyone, anything, *after* sī, nisi, nē, num), quis, quid
argument, argūmentum, -ī, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsum
arrogant, superbus, -a, -um
art, ars, artis, *f.*

as, ut + *indic.*
as . . . as possible, quam + *superlative*
Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*
ask, rogō (1)
assure (I assure you, you may be assured), *use personal pron. in dat. case* (*dat. of reference, e.g.,* tibi)
at (= *time*), *abl. of time;* (= *place*), *loc. of names of cities*
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, oppugnō (1)
author, auctor, -tōris, *m.*
avert, āvertō, -ere, -ī, -versum
away from, ab + *abl.*

B

bad, malus, -a, -um
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum
base, turpis, -e
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrum
beard, barba, -ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum; bellus, -a, -um
beauty, fōrma, -ae, *f.*
because, quod
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum
before, ante + *acc.*
beg, ōrō (1)
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptum (*pres. system supplied by* incipiō)
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*see* **began** *above*)
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum
benefit, beneficium, -iī, *n.*
best, optimus, -a, -um
better, melior, -ius
blind, caecus, -a, -um
body, corpus, -poris, *n.*
(be) born, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
both . . . and, et . . . et
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e
brief, brevis, -e.
bright, clārus, -a, -um
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
bring (back), referō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātum
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
bull, bōs, bovis, *m./f.*
but, sed, at
by (= *agent*), ā *or* ab + *abl.*;
(= *means*), *simple abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -saris, *m.*
call, vocō (1); appellō (1)
can, possum, posse, potuī
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
certain (definite, sure), certus, -a, -um; (*indef.*) quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (*pron.*) *or* quoddam (*adj.*)
certainly, certē
change, mūtō (1)
character, mōrēs, mōrum, *m. pl.*
cheer, recreō (1)
Cicero, Cicerō, -rōnis, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m./f.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum
come back, reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum
comfort, sōlācium, -iī, *n.*
command (*noun*), imperium, -iī, *n.;*
(*vb.*), imperō (1)
common, commūnis, -e
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
compare, comparō (1)
complain, queror, -ī, questus sum
concerning, dē + *abl.*
confess, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum
conquer, superō (1); vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum
conspirators, coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
constellation, sīdus, -deris, *n.*
consul, cōnsul, -sulis, *m.*
country, patria, -ae, *f.;* terra, -ae, *f.*
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
create, creō (1)
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
crime, scelus, -leris, *n.*

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl.* fīliābus)
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um

death, mors, mortis, *f.*
dedicate, dēdicō (1)
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -ī, -fēnsum
delay, mora, -ae, *f.*
delight, dēlectō (1)
deny, negō (1)
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
deprived of (be), careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
descendant, nepōs, -pōtis, *m.*
desire (*vb.*), cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; dēsīderō (1); (*noun*), voluptās, -tātis, *f.*
despise, contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
destruction, exitium, -ī, *n.*
die, morior, -ī, mortuus sum
difficult, difficilis, -e
dignity, dignitās, -tātis, *f.*
dine, cēnō (1)
dinner, cēna, -ae, *f.*
discover, reperiō, -īre, -pperī, -pertum
disgraceful, turpis, -e
dissimilar, dissimilis, -e
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be done,** fīō, fierī, factus sum
doctor, medica, -ae, *f.;* medicus, -ī, *m.*
drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum
dread (*vb.*), metuō, -ere, -uī; (*noun*), metus, -ūs, *m.*
drive out, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum

E

eagerness, studium, -iī, *n.*
ear, auris, -is, *f.*
easy, facilis, -e
eight, octō
either, uter, utra, utrum
either . . . or, aut . . . aut
eleven, ūndecim
emperor, imperātor, -tōris, *m.*
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; patior, -ī, passus sum
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.* (*usually pl.*)
enjoy, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.*
enjoyment, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
enough, satis
entire, tōtus, -a, -um
entrust, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum
envy, (be) envious, invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum + *dat.*
err, errō (1)
esteem, dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum
even, etiam; **not even,** nē . . . quidem
ever, umquam
every(one), omnis, -e
evil (*adj.*), malus, -a, -um; (*noun*), malum, -ī, *n.*
exhibit, ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum
expect, exspectō (1)
expel, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

F

face, vultus, -ūs, *m.*
faith, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
faithful, fidēlis, -e
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, casūrum
false, falsus, -a, -um
fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*
family, familia, -ae, *f.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fault, culpa, -ae, *f.;* vitium, -iī, *n.*
fear (*vb.*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; (*noun*), metus, -ūs, *m.*; timor, -mōris, *m.*
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum
feeling, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
ferocious, ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis
few, paucī, -ae, -a (*pl.*)
fidelity, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um
finally, dēnique
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum
first (*adj.*), prīmus, -a, -um; (*adv.*) prīmum, prīmō
five, quīnque
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum
foolish, stultus, -a, -um
for (*conj.*), nam, enim; (= **since, because**), quod, quoniam; (*prep.*), prō + *abl.; often simply the dat. case.*
force, vīs, vīs, *f.*
forces (troops), cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
forgive, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + *dat.*
former, prior, prius
fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um

fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
forum, forum -ī, *n.*
four, quattuor
free (*vb.*), līberō (1); (*adj.*), līber, -era, -erum
freedom, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
freely, līberē
friend, amīca, -ae, *f.;* amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
from (away), ab; **(out)** ex; **(down)** dē: *all* + *abl.*
fruit, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um

G

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.;* imperātor, -tōris, *m.*
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum
(be) glad, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
go, eō, īre, iī, itum
go astray, errō (1)
go away, abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
god, deus, -ī, *m.* (*voc. sg.* deus, *nom. pl.* deī *or* dī, *dat. and abl. pl.* dīs)
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl.* deābus)
good, bonus, -a, -um
gratitude, grātia, -ae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um
greedy, avārus, -a, -um
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um; **a Greek,** Graecus, -ī, *m.*
grieve, doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
ground, humus, -ī, *f.;* terra, -ae, *f.*
guard, custōdia, -ae, *f.*

H

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis
harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*
harsh, dūrus, -a, -um; acerbus, -a, -um
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
he, is; *often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.*
head, caput, -pitis, *n.*
healthy, sānus, -a, -um
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
heart (in one's), *use personal pron. in dat. case* (*dat. of reference, e.g.,* mihi, tibi)
heavy, gravis, -e
help (*vb.*), adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum; (*noun*), auxilium, -iī, *n.*
her (*possessive*) eius (*not reflexive*); suus, -a, -um (*reflexive*)
herself, suī (*reflexive*); ipsa (*intensive*)
hesitate, dubitō (1)
high, altus, -a, -um
higher, altior, -ius; superior, -ius
himself, suī (*reflexive*); ipse (*intensive*)
his, eius (*not reflexive*); suus, -a, -um (*reflexive*)
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at home,** domī; **(to) home,** domum; **from home,** domō
honor, honor, -nōris, *m.*
hope (*noun*), spēs, -eī, *f.*; (*vb.*), spērō (1)
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, casa, -ae, *f.*
however, autem (*postpositive*)
how great, quantus, -a, -um
how many, quot
human, hūmānus, -a, -um
human being, homō, -minis, *m.*
humane, hūmānus, -a, -um
humble, humilis, -e
hundred, centum
hurt, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*

I

I, ego, meī; *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
if, sī; **if . . . not,** nisi
ill, malum, -ī, *n.*
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um
immortal, immortālis, -e
in, in + *abl.*
infancy, īnfantia, -ae, *f.*
injustice, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
into, in + *acc.*
invite, invītō (1)
iron, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
it, is, ea, id; *often indicated only by personal ending of vb.*

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
itself, suī (*reflexive*); ipsum (*intensive*)

J

join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum
judge, iūdex, -dicis, *m.*
judgment, iūdicium, -iī, *n.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre
keenly, ācriter
kindness, beneficium, -iī, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kiss, bāsium, -iī, *n.*
knee, genū, -ūs, *n.*
know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; **not know,** nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*

L

labor, labor, -bōris, *m.*
lack, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum + *abl.*
land, patria, -ae, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
learn (*in the academic sense*), discō, -ere, didicī; (*get information*), cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum
leave, abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
leisure, ōtium, -iī, *n.*
let (someone do something), *express this with jussive subj.*
letter (**epistle**), litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
listen (to), audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
little, parvus, -a, -um; **little book,** libellus, -ī, *m.*
live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum; **live one's life,** vītam agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
long (**for a long time**), diū
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum
love (*vb.*), amō (1); (*noun*), amor, amōris, *m.*
loyal, fidēlis, -e
luck, fortūna, -ae, *f.*

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, -minis, *m.*; *often expressed by masc. of an adj.*
many, multī, -ae, -a
master, magister, -trī, *m.*; dominus, -ī, *m.*
may (*indicating permission to do something*), licet + *dat.* + *inf.*
me. *See* **I.**
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
mercy, clēmentia, -ae, *f.*
method, modus, -ī, *m.*
middle, medius, -a, -um
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*
mix, misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtum
mob, vulgus, -ī, *n.* *(sometimes m.)*
modest, pudīcus, -a, -um
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
monument, monumentum, -ī, *n.*
more, plūs, plūris; *comp. of adj. or adv.*
most, plūrimus, -a, -um; *superl. of adj. or adv.*
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
much, multus, -a, -um
murder, necō (1)
must, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; *or, for passive, use passive periphrastic*
my, meus, -a, -um (*m. voc. sg.* mī)
myself (*reflexive*), meī, mihi, *etc.*; (*intensive*) ipse, ipsa

N

name, nōmen, -minis, *n.*
narrate, narrō (1)
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
neglect, neglegō, -ere, -glēxī, -glēctum
neighbor, vīcīna, -ae, *f.*; vīcīnus, -ī, *m.*
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
never, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um

night, nox, noctis, *f.*
nine, novem
no, nūllus, -a, -um
nobody, no one, nēmō, *m./f.*; *for decl. see Lat.-Eng. Vocab.*
not, nōn; nē *with jussive, jussive noun, and purp- clauses;* ut *with fear clauses*
nothing, nihil (*indecl.*), *n.*
now, nunc
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.*
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum
office, officium, -iī, *n.*
often, saepe
old, antīquus, -a, -um; senex, senis
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
on (= *place*), in + *abl.*; (= *time*), *simple abl.*
on account of, propter + *acc.*
once, semel
one, ūnus, -a, -um
only (*adv.*), tantum; (*adj.*), sōlus, -a, -um
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*; **(in one's) opinion,** *use personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g.,* mihi, tibi)
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
or, aut
oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
orator, ōrātor, -tōris, *m.*
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum; imperō (1) + *dat.*
(in) order to, ut (+ *subj.*); **in order not to,** nē (+ *subj.*)
other, another, alius, alia, aliud;
  the other (of two), alter, -era, -erum;
  (all) the other, cēterī, -ae, -a
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; *or, for passive, use passive periphrastic*
our, noster, -tra, -trum
out of, ex + *abl.*
overcome, superō (1)
overpower, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum
own, his own, suus, -a, -um; **my own,** meus, -a, -um

P

pain, dolor, -lōris, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
passage, locus, -ī, *m.*
passion, cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*
patience, patientia, -ae, *f.*
pay. *See* **penalty.**
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*; **pay the penalty,** poenās dare
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
perceive, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum
perhaps, fortasse
period (of time), aetās, -tātis, *f.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum
permit, patior, -ī, passus sum;
  it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit (*impers.*)
perpetual, perpetuus, -a, -um
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum + *dat.*
philosopher, sapiēns, -entis, *m.*; philosopha, -ae, *f.*; philosophus, -ī, *m.*
philosophy, philosophia, -ae, *f.*
place, locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.,* loca, -ōrum, *n.*
plan, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*; *with a request,* amābō tē
pleasure, voluptās, -tātis, *f.*
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
plot, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
poem, carmen, -minis, *n.*
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
(as . . . as) possible (*or* **greatest possible, brightest possible,** *etc.*), quam + *superl. of adj. or adv.*
power (command), imperium, -iī, *n.*
powerful, potēns, *gen.* potentis
praise (*vb.*), laudō (1); (*noun*), laus, laudis, *f.*
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī
prepare, parō (1)
preserve, cōnservō (1)
press, premō, -ere, pressī, pressum
pretty, bellus, -a, -um; pulcher, -chra, -chrum
priest, sacerdōs, -dōtis, *m.*
prohibit, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
promise, prōmitto, -ere, mīsī, -missum
provided that, dummodo + *subj.*
pupil, discipula, -ae, *f.*; discipulus, -ī, *m.*
pursuit, studium, -iī, *n.*
put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
quick, celer, -eris, -ere
quickly, celeriter, cito

R

raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum
rather: *express this with comp. degree of adj. or adv.*
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum
real, vērus, -a, -um
reason, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
recite, recitō (1)
recognize, recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum
refuse, recūsō (1)
regain, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
region, loca, -ōrum, *n.*
remain, remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum
report, nūntiō (1)
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*
rescue, ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum
rest, the rest, cēterī, -ae, -a
restrain, teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
return (go back), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
return (in return for), prō + *abl.*
riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
right (*noun*), iūs, iūris, *n.*; (*adj.*), dexter, -tra, -trum
road, via, -ae, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rule (*noun*), regnum, -ī, *n.*; (*vb.*), regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum
rumor, rūmor, -mōris, *m.*
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum

S

sad, tristis, -e
safe, salvus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -lūtis, *f.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake (for the sake of), *gen.* + causā
salt, sāl, salis, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem
satisfy, satiō (1)
save, servō (1); cōnservō (1)
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
school, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um; alter, -era, -erum
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum
seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum
seize, rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptum
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum
serious, gravis, -e
serve, serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum + *dat.*
service, officium, -iī, *n.*
seven, septem
she, ea; *often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
short, brevis, -e
show, ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum
shun, vītō (1); fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum
sign, signum, -ī, *n.*
similar, similis, -e
since, quoniam + *indic.*; cum + *subj.*; *abl. abs.*
sister, soror, -rōris, *f.*
six, sex
skill, ars, artis, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*; **slavegirl,** serva, -ae, *f.*
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, *f.*
sleep (*vb.*), dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum; (*noun*), somnus, -ī, *m.*
slender, gracilis, -e
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, ita, sīc (*usually with vbs.*), tam (*usually with adjs. and advs.*); **so great,** tantus, -a, -um
soldier, mīles, -litis, *m.*
some, a certain one (*indef.*), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; (*more emphatic pron.*), aliquis, aliquid
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī
son, fīlius, -iī, *m.*
soon, mox
sort, genus, -neris, *n.*
soul, animus, -ī, *m.*
sound, sānus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrum + *dat.*
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; loquor, -ī, locūtus sum
spirit, spīritus, -ūs, *m.*
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum
start, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum
state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vīrēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
strong, fortis, -e; **be strong,** valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
student, discipula, -ae, *f.*; discipulus, -ī, *m.*

study (*noun*), studium, -iī, *n.*; (*vb.*), studeō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.*
suddenly, subitō
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
support, alō, -ere, -uī, altum
suppose, opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; putō (1)
suppress, opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum
supreme power, imperium, -iī, *n.*
sure, certus, -a, -um
surrender, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum
sweet, dulcis, -e
swift, celer, -eris, -ere
sword, ferrum, -ī, *n.*; gladius, -iī, *m.*
Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

T

talk, loquor, -ī, -cūtus sum
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.;* magistra, -ae, *f.*
tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
ten, decem
terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
than, quam; *or simple abl.*
thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum + *dat.*
that (*demonstrative*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id;
  that (of yours), iste, ista, istud
that (*subord. conj.*), *not expressed in ind. state.*; ut (*purp. and result*); nē (*fear*)
  that . . . not, nē (*purp.*), ut . . . nōn (*result*); ut (*fear*)
that (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod
their, suus, -a, -um (*reflexive*); eōrum, eārum (*not reflexive*)
them. *See* **he, she, it.**
then, tum, deinde
there, ibi
therefore, igitur (*postpositive*)
these. *See* **this,** *demonstrative.*
they. *See* **he, she, it;** *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; *often merely the neut. of an adj.*
think, putō (1); arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
those. *See* **that,** *demonstrative.*
thousand, mīlle (*indecl. adj. sg.*), mīlia, -ium, *n.* (*noun in pl.*)
three, trēs, tria
through, per + *acc.*
throughout, per + *acc.*
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum
thus, sīc
time, tempus, -poris, *n.;* **(period of) time,** aetās, -tātis, *f.*
to (*place to which*), ad + *acc.*; (*ind. obj.*), *dat.;* (*purp.*), ut + *subj.*, ad + *gerund or gerundive*
today, hodiē
tolerate, tolerō (1)
tomorrow, crās
too, nimis, nimium; *or use comp. degree of adj. or adv.*
touch, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum
travel (abroad), peregrīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum
trivial, levis, -e
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
Troy, Trōia, -ae, *f.*
true, vērus, -a, -um
truly, vērē
trust, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum + *dat.*
truth, vēritās, -tātis, *f.*
try, experior, -īrī, expertus sum
turn, vertō, -ere, -ī, versum
twenty, vīgintī
two, duo, duae, duo
type, genus, -neris, *n.*
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*

U

unable (be) nōn possum
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um
under, sub + *abl.* (= *place where*), + *acc.* (= *place to which*)
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum; comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsum
unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum
unless, nisi
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī
urban, urbane, urbānus, -a, -um
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum
use, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.*

V

verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
very, *express this by the superl. degree of adj. or adv.*
vice, vitium, -iī, *n.*

Virgil, Vergilius, -iī, *m.*
virtue, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
walls, moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*
want, volō, velle, voluī
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
we. *See* **I;** *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
well, bene
what (*pron.*), quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod
whatever, quisquis, quidquid
when, *participial phrase; abl. abs.*; cum + *subj.*; (*interrogative*), quandō; (*rel.*), ubi
whence, unde, *adv.*
where, ubi
wherefore, quārē
which (*rel. pron. and interrogative adj.*), quī, quae, quod
while, dum
who (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis, quid
whole, tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*
willing (be), volō, velle, voluī
window, fenestra, -ae, *f.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*
wise, sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis
wisely, sapienter
wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, voluī
with, cum + *abl.; abl. of means* (*no prep.*)
without, sine + *abl.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.; often expressed by fem. of an adj.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, labor, -bōris, *m.;* opus, operis, *n.*
world, mundus, -ī, *m.*
worse, peior, -ius
worst, pessimus, -a, -um
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum
writer, scrīptor, -tōris, *m.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yesterday, herī
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum
you, tū, tuī; *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
young man, adulēscēns, -centis, *m.*
your (*sg.*), tuus, -a, -um; (*pl.*), vester, -tra, -trum
yourself (*reflexive*), tuī, tibi, *etc.*; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa
youth, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

拉英词汇表

词条后面的阿拉伯数字指示这个词第一次作为要求掌握的词项出现的课程单元。动词后带括号的阿拉伯数字(1)表示,这是一个规则的第一变位法动词,主要部分的词尾依次为**–āre, –āvī, –ātum**。关于前缀和后缀,参见附录中的列表。

A

ā *or* **ab,** *prep.* + *abl.,* from, away from; by (*agent*). 14
abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go away, depart, leave. 37
absconditus, -a, -um, hidden, secret
absēns, *gen.* **-sentis,** *adj.,* absent, away. 37
absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrum, be away, be absent
abundantia, -ae, *f.,* abundance
ac. *See* **atque.**
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, come near, approach. 36
accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take, receive, accept. 24
accommodō (1), adjust, adapt
accūsātor, -tōris, *m.,* accuser
accūsō (1), accuse
ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager, severe, fierce. 16
acerbitās, -tātis, *f.,* harshness
acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, bitter, grievous. 12
Achillēs, -is, *m.,* Achilles, Greek hero, chief character in the *Iliad*
aciēs, -ēī, *f.,* sharp edge, keenness, line of battle
acquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, acquire, gain
ācriter, *adv.,* keenly, fiercely. 32
ad, *prep.* + *acc.,* to, up to, near to. 8
addiscō, -ere, -didicī, learn in addition
addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, induce
adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go to, approach. 37
adferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, bring to. 31
adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, affect, afflict, weaken
adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, add
adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, help, aid, assist; please. 4
admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire
admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, admit, receive, let in. 17
admoneō = **moneō**
adnuō, -ere, -nuī, nod assent
adoptō (1), wish for oneself, select, adopt
adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum, be near, be present, assist
adūlātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* fawning, flattery
adulēscēns, -centis, *m. and f.,* young man or woman. 12
adulēscentia, -ae, *f.,* youth, young manhood; youthfulness. 5
adultus, -a, -um, grown up, mature, adult

adūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, set fire to, burn, singe
adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come (to), arrive
adversus, -a, -um, facing, opposite, adverse. 34
adversus, *prep.* + *acc.*, toward, facing; against
advesperāscit, advesperāscere, advesperāvit, *impers.*, evening is coming on, it is growing dark
aedificium, -iī, *n.*, building, structure. 39
aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely
aequitās, -tātis, *f.*, justice, fairness, equity
aequus, -a, -um, level, even, calm, equal, just, favorable. 22
aes, aeris, *n.*, bronze. 40
aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. 35
aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat, tide
aetās, -tātis, *f.*, period of life, life, age, an age, time. 16
aeternus, -a, -um, eternal
Agamemnon, -nonis, *m.*, Agamemnon, commander-in-chief of the Greek forces at Troy
ager, agrī, *m.*, field, farm. 3
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, lead, do, act; *of time or life,* pass, spend;
grātiās agere + *dat.*, thank. 8
agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer. 3
agrīcultūra, -ae, *f.*, agriculture
āit, āiunt, he says, they say, assert. 25
Alexander, -drī, *m.*, Alexander the Great, renowned Macedonian general and king, 4th cen., B.C.
aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another (*cp.* **alius**), foreign, strange, alien
aliōquī, *adv.*, otherwise
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, *indef. pronominal adj.*, some
aliquis, aliquid (*gen.* **alicuius;** *dat.* **alicui**), *indef. pron.*, someone, somebody, something. 23
aliter, *adv.*, otherwise
alius, alia, aliud, other, another;
aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others. 9
alō, -ere, aluī, altum, nourish, support, sustain, increase; cherish. 13
alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), second. 9
altus, -a, -um, high, deep
ambitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a canvassing for votes; ambition; flattery
ambulō (1), walk. 39
āmēn, *adv. from Hebrew,* truly, verily, so be it
amīca, -ae, *f.*, (female) friend. 3
amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship. 10
amiculum, -ī, *n.*, cloak
amīcus, -a, -um, friendly. 11
amīcus, -ī, *m.*, (male) friend. 3
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, lose, let go. 12
amō (1), love, like; **amābō tē,** please. 1
amor, amōris, *m.*, love. 7
āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove
an, *adv. and conj. introducing the second part of a double question* (*see* **utrum**), or; *used alone,* or, can it be that
ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant
angelus, -ī, *m.*, angel
angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner
angustus, -a, -um, narrow, limited
anima, -ae, *f.*, soul, spirit. 34
animal, -mālis, *n.*, a living creature, animal. 14
animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit, mind; **animī, -ōrum,** high spirits, pride, courage. 5
annus, -ī, *m.*, year. 12
ante, *prep.* + *acc.*, before (*in place or time*), in front of; *adv.*, before, previously. 13
anteā, *adv.*, before, formerly
antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put before, prefer + *dat.* 35
antīquus, -a, -um, ancient, old-time. 2
Apollō, -linis, *m.*, Phoebus Apollo, god of sun, prophecy, poetry, etc.
apparātus, -ūs, *m.*, equipment, splendor
appellō (1), speak to, address (as), call, name. 14
approbō (1), approve
appropinquō (1) + *dat.*, approach, draw near to
aptus, -a, -um, fit, suitable
apud, *prep.* + *acc.*, among, in the presence of, at the house of. 31
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. 14
āra, -ae, *f.*, altar
arānea, -ae, *f.*, spider's web
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, judge, think. 34
arbor, -boris, *f.*, tree. 38
arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow
argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver, money
argūmentum, -ī, *n.*, proof, evidence, argument. 19
arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms, weapons. 28
arō (1), plow
ars, artis, *f.*, art, skill. 14
arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, stronghold. 23
as, assis, *m.*, an as (a small copper coin roughly equivalent to a cent). 31
Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia, commonly the Roman province in Asia Minor. 12
asper, -era, -erum, rough, harsh. 21
aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look at, behold

assentātor, -tōris, *m.*, yes-man, flatterer
astrum, -ī, *n.*, star, constellation
at, *conj.*, but; but, mind you; but, you say; *a more emotional adversative than* **sed.** 19
āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, gloomy
Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens. 37
Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian; **Athēniēnsēs, -ium,** the Athenians
atque *or* **ac,** *conj.*, and, and also, and even. 21
atquī, *conj.*, and yet, still
auctor, -tōris, *m.*, increaser; author, originator. 19
auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, authority
audācia, -ae, *f.*, daring, boldness, audacity
audāx, *gen.* **audācis,** daring, bold
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare. 7
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear, listen to. 10
audītor, -tōris, *m.*, hearer, listener, member of an audience. 16
auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, bear away, carry off
Augustus, -ī, *m.*, Augustus, the first Roman emperor
aureus, -a, -um, golden
auris, -is, *f.*, ear. 14
aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold
aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or. 17
autem, *postpositive conj.*, however; moreover. 11
auxilium, -iī, *n.*, aid, help. 31
avāritia, -ae, *f.*, greed, avarice
avārus, -a, -um, greedy, avaricious. 3
āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry away
āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn away, avert. 23
āvocō (1), call away, divert

B

balbus, -a, -um, stammering, stuttering
barba, -ae, *f.*, beard
bāsium, -iī, *n.*, kiss. 4
beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate, blessed. 10
bellicus, -a, -um, relating to war, military
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. 4
bellus, -a, -um, pretty, handsome, charming. 4
bene, *adv. of* **bonus,** well, satisfactorily, quite. 11 (*comp.* **melius;** *superl.* **optimē.** 32)
beneficium, -iī, *n.*, benefit, kindness, favor. 19
benevolentia, -ae, *f.*, good will, kindness
bēstia, -ae, *f.*, animal, beast
bibō, -ere, bibī, drink. 30
bis, *adv.*, twice
bonus, -a, -um, good, kind. 4 (*comp.* **melior;** *superl.* **optimus.** 27)
bōs, bovis, *m./f.*, bull, ox, cow
brevis, -e, short, small, brief. 16
brevitās, -tātis, *f.*, shortness, brevity
breviter, *adv.*, briefly
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain
Brundisium, -iī, *n.*, important seaport in S. Italy
Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, famous Roman name: L. Junius Brutus, who helped establish the Roman republic; M. Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Julius Caesar

C

C., abbreviation for the common name **Gāius**
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrum, fall. 12
caecus, -a, -um, blind. 17
caelestis, -e, heavenly, celestial
caelum, -ī, *n.*, sky, heaven. 5
Caesar, -saris, *m.*, Caesar, especially Gaius Julius Caesar. 12
calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster
calculus, -ī, *m.*, pebble
campana, -ae, *f.*, bell (*late Lat.*)
candidus, -a, -um, shining, bright, white; beautiful. 33
canis, -is (*gen. pl.* **canum**), *m./f.*, dog
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, to sing about
cantō (1), sing
capillus, -ī, *m.*, hair (*of head or beard*)
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture, seize, get. 10
captō (1), grab, seek to get, hunt for (legacies, etc.)
caput, -pitis, *n.*, head; leader; beginning; life; heading, chapter. 11
carbō, -bōnis, *m.*, coal, charcoal
careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum + *abl. of separation,* be without, be deprived of, want, lack, be free from. 20
cāritās, -tātis, *f.*, dearness, affection
carmen, -minis, *n.*, song, poem. 7
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum, harvest, pluck; seize. 36
Carthāgō, -ginis, *f.*, Carthage (city in N. Africa). 24
cārus, -a, -um, dear. 11
casa, -ae, *f.*, house, cottage, hut. 21
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, accident, chance

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain
Catilīna, -ae, *m.*, L. Sergius Catiline, leader of the conspiracy against the Roman state in 63 B.C.
Catullus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Catullus, 1st cen. B.C. lyric poet
cattus, -ī, *m.*, cat (*late word for classical* **fēlēs, -is**)
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; case, situation; **causā** *with a preceding gen.*, for the sake of, on account of. 21
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, beware, avoid
cavus, -ī, *m.*, hole
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, go, withdraw; yield to, submit, grant. 28
celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick, rapid. 16
celeritās, -tātis, *f.*, speed, swiftness
celeriter, swiftly, quickly
cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner. 26
cēnō (1), dine. 5
centum, *indecl. adj.*, a hundred. 15
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, distinguish, discern, perceive. 22
certē, *adv.*, certainly
certus, -a, -um, definite, sure, certain, reliable. 19
cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag, deer
cēterī, -ae, -a, the remaining, the rest, the other. 30
Cicerō, -rōnis, *m.*, Marcus Tullius Cicero. 8
cicūta, -ae, *f.*, hemlock (*poison*)
cinis, -neris, *m.*, ashes
circēnsēs, -ium, *m. pl.* (*sc.* **lūdī**), games in the Circus
cito, *adv.*, quickly. 17
cīvīlis, -e, civil, civic
cīvis, -is, *m./f.*, citizen. 14
cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*, state, citizenship. 7
clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious. 18
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close
clēmentia, -ae, *f.*, mildness, gentleness, mercy. 16
coepī, coepisse, coeptum (*defective vb.; pres. system supplied by* **incipiō**), began. 17
coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, curb, check, repress
cōgitō (1), think, ponder, consider, plan. 1
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, become acquainted with, learn, recognize; *in perf. tenses,* know. 30
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, drive *or* bring together, force, compel. 36
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, gather together, collect
collocō (1), place, put, arrange
collum, -ī, *n.*, neck
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate; cherish
color, -ōris, *m.*, color
commemorō (1), remind, relate, mention
commisceō, -ēre, -uī, -mixtum, intermingle, join
committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust, commit. 15
commūnis, -e, common, general, of/for the community. 20
comparō (1), compare
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put together, compose
comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand. 30
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, yield, grant, concede
concilium, -iī, *n.*, council
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put together or into, store; build, found, establish. 29
cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum, bring together, compare; **sē cōnferre,** betake oneself, go. 31
cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, have confidence in, believe confidently, be confident
cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, confess
congregō (1), gather together, assemble
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw, hurl, put with force; put together, conjecture
coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy
coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, conspirators. 20
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt. 34
cōnscientia, -ae, *f.*, consciousness, knowledge; conscience
cōnscius, -a, -um, conscious, aware of
cōnservō (1), preserve, conserve, maintain. 1
cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*, counsel, advice, plan, purpose; judgment, wisdom. 4
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī + in, depend on
cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrum + ex, consist of
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed
cōnsul, -sulis, *m.*, consul. 11
cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, look out for, have regard for
cōnsultum, -ī, *n.*, decree
cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, use up, consume. 30
contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum, despise, scorn. 36
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, strive, struggle, contend, hasten. 29
contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold together, keep, enclose, restrain, contain. 21

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, touch closely, befall, fall to one's lot
contrā, *prep.* + *acc.,* against. 19
contundō, -tundere, -tudī, -tūsum, beat, crush, bruise, destroy. 36
conturbō (1), throw into confusion
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn around, cause to turn
convocō (1), call together, convene
cōpia, -ae, *f.,* abundance, supply; **cōpiae, -ārum,** supplies, troops, forces. 8
cōpiōsē, *adv.,* fully, at length, copiously
Corinthus, -ī, *f.,* Corinth
cornū, -ūs, *n.,* horn. 20
corōna, -ae, *f.,* crown
corpus, -poris, *n.,* body. 7
corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, make right, correct
corrōborō (1), strengthen
corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, ruin, corrupt
cōtīdiē, *adv.,* daily, every day. 36
crās, *adv.,* tomorrow. 5
creātor, -tōris, *m.,* creator
creātūra, -ae, *f.,* creature (*late Lat.*)
crēber, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent, numerous
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe, trust. 25; + *dat.* 35
creō (1), create. 12
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, increase. 34
crūdēlis, -e, cruel
crūstulum, -ī, *n.,* pastry, cookie
cubiculum, -ī, *n.,* bedroom, room
culpa, -ae, *f.,* fault, blame. 5
culpō (1), blame, censure. 5
cultūra, -ae, *f.,* cultivation
cum, *conj., with subj.,* when, since, although; *with ind.,* when. 31
cum, *prep.* + *abl.,* with. 10
cūnctātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* delay
cūnctātor, -tōris, *m.,* delayer
cūnctor (1), delay
cupiditās, -tātis, *f.,* desire, longing, passion; cupidity, avarice. 10
cupīdō, -dinis, *f.,* desire, passion. 36
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager, fond; + *gen.,* desirous of, eager for. 39
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, desire, wish, long for. 17
cūr, *adv.,* why. 18
cūra, -ae, *f.,* care, attention, caution, anxiety. 4
cūrō (1), care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care. 36
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run, rush, move quickly. 14
cursus, -ūs, *m.,* running, race; course. 28
curvus, -a, -um, curved, crooked, wrong
custōdia, -ae, *f.,* protection, custody; *pl.,* guards. 32
custōs, -tōdis, *m.,* guardian, guard

D

damnō (1), condemn
Dāmoclēs, -is, *m.,* Damocles, an attendant of Dionysius
dē, *prep.* + *abl.,* down from, from; concerning, about. 3
dea, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl.* **deābus**), goddess. 6
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe, ought, must. 1
dēbilitō (1), weaken
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide, settle, decree. 36
dēcertō (1), fight it out, fight to the finish, contend
decimus, -a, -um, tenth. 15
dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, deceive
decor, -cōris, *m.,* beauty, grace
dēcrētum, -ī, *n.,* decree
dēdicō (1), dedicate. 28
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, ward off, defend, protect. 20
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail
dēgustō (1), taste
dehinc, *adv.,* then, next. 25
deinde, *adv.,* thereupon, next, then. 18
dēlectātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* delight, pleasure, enjoyment. 27
dēlectō (1), delight, charm, please. 19
dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, destroy, wipe out, erase. 17
dēlīberō (1), consider, deliberate
dēmēns, *gen.* **-mentis,** *adj.,* out of one's mind, insane, foolish
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let down, lower
dēmōnstrō (1), point out, show, demonstrate. 8
Dēmosthenēs, -is, *m.,* Demosthenes, the most famous Greek orator, 4th cen. B.C.
dēnique, *adv.,* at last, finally. 29
dēns, dentis, *m.,* tooth
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put down, lay aside
dēportō (1), carry off
dēsīderō (1), desire, long for, miss. 17
dēsidiōsus, -a, -um, lazy
dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm, cease, leave off. 34
dēsipiō, -ere, act foolishly

dēstinātus, -a, -um, resolved, resolute, firm
dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*, loss, detriment
deus, -ī, *m.* (*voc. sg.* **deus,** *nom. pl.* **deī** *or* **dī,** *dat. and abl. pl.* **dīs**), god. 6
dēvocō (1), call down *or* away
dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand. 20
diabolus, -ī, *m.*, devil
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell, speak; call, name. 10
dictāta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, things dictated, lessons, precepts
dictātor, -tōris, *m.*, dictator
dictō (1), say repeatedly, dictate
diēs, -ēī, *m.*, day. 22
difficilis, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome. 16
digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger, toe. 31
dignitās, -tātis, *f.*, merit, prestige, dignity. 38
dignus, -a, -um + *abl.*, worthy, worthy of. 29
dīligēns, *gen.* **-gentis,** *adj.*, diligent, careful. 27
dīligenter, *adv.*, diligently
dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, diligence
dīligō, -ere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum, esteem, love. 13
dīmidium, -iī, *n.*, half
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, dismiss
Dionȳsius, -iī, *m.*, Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, depart. 20
discipula, -ae, *f.*, and **discipulus, -ī,** *m.*, learner, pupil, disciple. 6
discō, -ere, didicī, learn. 8
disputātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, discussion
disputō (1), discuss
dissimilis, -e, unlike, different. 27
dissimulō (1), conceal
distinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, distinguish
diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time. 12
dīves, *gen.* **dīvitis** *or* **dītis,** *adj.*, rich. 32
dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine, sacred
dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, riches, wealth. 13
dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, offer. 1
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach. 8
doctrīna, -ae, *f.*, teaching, instruction, learning
doctus, -a, -um, taught, learned, skilled. 13
doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain. 31
dolor, -lōris, *m.*, pain, grief. 38
domesticus, -a, -um, domestic; civil
domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress, lady. 40
dominātus, -ūs, *m.*, rule, mastery, tyranny
dominicus, -a, -um, belonging to a master; the Lord's
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, lord. 40
domus, -ūs (-ī), *f.*, house, home; **domī,** at home; **domum,** (to) home; **domō,** from home. 37
dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift, present. 4
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep. 31
dubitō (1), doubt, hesitate. 30
dubium, -iī, *n.*, doubt
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead; consider, regard; prolong. 8
dulcis, -e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable. 16
dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; at the same time that; until. 8
dummodo, *conj.*, *with subj.*, provided that, so long as. 32
duo, duae, duo, two. 15
dūrō (1), harden, last, endure
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, tough, difficult. 29
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, guide, commander, general. 23

E

ē. *See* **ex.**
ecclēsia, -ae, *f.*, church (*ecclesiastical Lat.*)
ēducō (1), bring up, educate. 23
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry out; bury; lift up, exalt
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, perform, bring about, cause
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrum, flee from, flee away, escape
egeō, -ēre, eguī + *abl. or gen.*, need, lack, want. 28
ego, meī, I. 11
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go out, depart. 34
ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw out, drive out. 15
elementum, -ī, *n.*, element, first principle
elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant. 31
ēloquēns, *gen.* **-quentis,** *adj.*, eloquent
ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*, eloquence
ēmendō (1), correct, emend
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy
ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove
enim, *postpositive conj.*, for, in fact, truly. 9
Ennius, -iī, *m.*, Quintus Ennius, early Roman writer
ēnumerō (1), count up, enumerate
eō, īre, iī (*or* **īvī**), **itum,** go. 37
epigramma, -matis, *n.*, inscription, epigram
epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle
eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman

equidem, *adv. especially common with 1st pers.,* indeed, truly, for my part
equitātus, -ūs, *m.,* cavalry
equus, -ī, *m.,* horse. 23
ergā, *prep.* + *acc.,* toward. 38
ergō, *adv.,* therefore
ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, snatch away, take away, rescue. 22
errō (1), wander; err, go astray, make a mistake, be mistaken. 1
error, -rōris, *m.,* a going astray, error, mistake
et, *conj.,* and; even (= **etiam**); **et . . . et,** both . . . and. 2
etiam, *adv.,* even, also. 11
etsī, *conj.,* even if (**et-sī**), although. 38
ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come out, turn out, happen
ēventus, -ūs, *m.,* outcome, result
ex *or* **ē,** *prep* + *abl.,* out of, from within, from; by reason of, on account of; *following cardinal numerals,* of. **Ex** *can be used before consonants or vowels;* **ē,** *before consonants only.* 8
excellentia, -ae, *f.,* excellence, merit
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take out, except; take, receive, capture. 24
exclāmō (1), cry out, call out
exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut out, exclude
excruciō (1), torture, torment
excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* excuse
exemplar, -plāris, *n.,* model, pattern, original. 14
exemplum, -ī, *n.,* example, model
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go out, exit. 37
exercitus, -ūs, *m.,* army. 32
exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (*ex* + *agō*), drive out, force out, extract, drive through, complete, perfect. 36
eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary, excellent
exitium, -iī, *n.,* destruction, ruin. 4
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out, expel, banish. 24
experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, try, test; experience. 39
expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill, fill up, complete. 28
explicō (1), unfold; explain; spread out, deploy. 40
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, explain, expose. 30
exquīsītus, -a, -um, sought-out, exquisite, excellent
exsilium, -iī, *n.,* exile, banishment. 31
exspectō (1), look for, expect, await. 15
exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, extinguish
externus, -a, -um, foreign
extorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, twist away, extort
extrā, *prep.* + *acc.,* beyond, outside
extrēmus, -a, -um, outermost, last, extreme

F

Fabius, -iī, *m.,* Roman name; especially Quintus Fabius Maximus Cunctator (the Delayer), celebrated for his delaying tactics (Fabian tactics) against Hannibal
fābula, -ae, *f.,* story, tale; play. 24
facile, *adv.,* easily. 32
facilis, -e, easy; agreeable, affable. 16
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do, accomplish, 10; *passive:* **fīō, fierī, factus sum.** 36
factum, -ī, *n.,* deed, act, achievement. 13
facultās, -tātis, *f.,* ability, skill, opportunity, means
falsus, -a, -um, false, deceptive
fāma, -ae, *f.,* rumor, report; fame, reputation. 2
familia, -ae, *f.,* household, family. 19
fās (*indecl.*), *n.,* right, sacred duty; **fās est,** it is right, fitting, lawful
fateor, -ērī, fassus sum, confess, admit. 34
fatīgō (1), weary, tire out. 40
fātum, -ī, *n.,* fate; death; *often pl.,* the Fates. 29
faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.,* jaws; narrow passage.
fēlīciter, *adv.,* happily. 32
fēlīx, *gen.* **-līcis,** *adj.,* lucky, fortunate, happy. 22
fēmina, -ae, *f.,* woman. 3
fenestra, -ae, *f.,* window. 21
ferē, *adv.,* almost, nearly, generally
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report. 31
ferōx, gen. **-rōcis,** fierce, savage. 25
ferrum, -ī, *n.,* iron, sword. 22
ferus, -a, -um, wild, uncivilized, fierce
festīnātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* haste
festīnō (1), hasten, hurry
fīcus, -ī *and* **-ūs,** *f.,* fig tree
fidēlis, -e, faithful, loyal. 25
fidēs, -eī, *f.,* faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection. 22
fīlia, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl.* **fīliābus**), daughter. 3
fīlius, -iī, *m.,* son. 3
fīnis, -is, *m.,* end, limit, boundary; purpose; **fīnēs, -ium** (boundaries) territory. 21
fīō, fierī, factus sum, occur, happen; become, be made, be done. 36
fīrmus, -a, -um, firm, strong; reliable. 38
flamma, -ae, *f.,* flame, fire
fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep

flūctus, -ūs, *m.*, billow, wave
flūmen, -minis, *n.*, river. 18
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow. 18
for, fārī, fātus sum, speak (prophetically), talk, foretell. 40
forīs, *adv.*, out of doors, outside. 37
fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, beauty. 2
formīca, -ae, *f.*, ant
fōrmō (1), form, shape, fashion
fors, fortis, *f.*, chance, fortune
forsan, *adv.*, perhaps
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps. 36
fortis, -e, strong, brave. 16
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely. 32
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, luck. 2
fortūnātē, *adv.*, fortunately
fortūnātus, -a, -um, lucky, fortunate, happy. 13
forum, -ī, *n.*, market place, forum. 26
foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtum, comfort, nurture, support. 35
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. 8
frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead, brow, front
frūctus, -ūs, *m.*, fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment. 20
frūgālitās, -tātis, *f.*, frugality
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum, flee, hurry away; escape; go into exile; avoid, shun. 10
fugitīvus, -ī, *m.*, fugitive, deserter, runaway slave
fugō (1), put to flight, rout
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, flash, shine
furor, -rōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness
fūrtificus, -a, -um, thievish
fūrtim, *adv.*, stealthily, secretly. 30

G

Gāius, -iī, *m.*, Gaius, a common praenomen (first name); usually abbreviated to **C.** in writing
Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul. The Gauls were a Celtic people who inhabited the district which we know as France.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, be glad, rejoice. 23
gaudium, -iī, *n.*, joy, delight
geminus, -a, -um, twin. 25
gēns, gentis, *f.*, clan, race, nation, people. 21
genū, genūs, *n.*, knee. 20
genus, generis, *n.*, origin; kind, type, sort, class. 18
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, carry; carry on, manage, conduct, wage, accomplish, perform. 8
gladius, -iī, *m.*, sword
glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame. 5
gracilis, -e, slender, thin. 27
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece. 19
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; **Graecus, -ī,** *m.*, a Greek. 6
grātia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, favor; **grātiās agere** + *dat.*, to thank. 8
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable; grateful. 37
gravis, -e, heavy, weighty; serious, important; severe, grievous. 19
gravitās, -tātis, *f.*, weight, seriousness, importance, dignity
graviter, *adv.*, heavily, seriously
gustō (1), taste

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. 3
hāmus, -ī, *m.*, hook
Hannibal, -balis, *m.*, Hannibal, celebrated Carthaginian general in the 2nd Punic War, 218–201 B.C.
hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear. 23
haud, *adv.*, not, not at all (*strong negative*)
herī, *adv.*, yesterday. 5
heu, *interjection,* ah!, alas! (*a sound of grief or pain*). 33
hic, haec, hoc, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, this, the latter; *at times weakened to* he, she, it, they. 9
hīc, *adv.*, here. 25
hinc, *adv.*, from this place, hence
hodiē, *adv.*, today. 3
Homērus, -ī, *m.*, Homer, the Greek epic poet
homō, hominis, *m.*, human being, man. 7
honor, -nōris, *m.*, honor, esteem; public office. 30
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour, time. 10
horrendus, -a, -um, horrible, dreadful
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge, encourage. 34
hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden
hospes, -pitis, *m.*, stranger, guest; host
hostis, -is, *m.*, an enemy (of the state); **hostēs, -ium,** the enemy. 18
hui, *interj.*, *sound of surprise or approbation not unlike our* "whee"
hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.*, kindness, refinement
hūmānus, -a, -um, pertaining to man, human; humane, kind; refined, cultivated. 4
humilis, -e, lowly, humble. 27
humus, -ī, *f.*, ground, earth; soil. 37
hypocrita, -ae, *m.*, hypocrite (*ecclesiastical Lat.*)

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie; lie prostrate; lie dead. 25
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw, hurl. 15
iaculum, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin
iam, *adv.*, now, already, soon. 19
iānua, -ae, *f.*, door. 35
ibi, *adv.*, there. 6
īdem, eadem, idem, the same. 11
identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly, again and again
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate. 37
igitur, *postpositive conj.*, therefore, consequently. 5
ignārus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. 22
ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + *dat.*, grant pardon to, forgive, overlook. 35
illacrimō (1) + *dat.*, weep over
ille, illa, illud, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, that, the former; the famous; *at times weakened to* he, she, it, they. 9
illūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, mock, ridicule
imāgō, -ginis, *m.*, image, likeness
imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, imitate
immineō, -ēre, overhang, threaten
immodicus, -a, -um, beyond measure, moderate, excessive
immortālis, -e, not subject to death, immortal. 19
immōtus, -a, -um, unmoved; unchanged; unrelenting. 37
impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*, hindrance, impediment
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, impede, hinder, prevent. 38
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, urge on, impel
impendeō, -ēre, hang over, threaten, be imminent
imperātor, -tōris, *m.*, general, commander-in-chief, emperor. 24
imperiōsus, -a, -um, powerful, domineering, imperious
imperium, -iī, *n.*, power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control. 24
imperō (1), give orders to, command + *dat.* + **ut.** 35
impleō, -ēre, implēvī, implētum, fill up, complete
imprīmīs, *adv.*, especially, particularly
imprōvidus, -a, -um, improvident
impudēns, *gen.* **-dentis,** *adj.*, shameless, impudent
impudenter, *adv.*, shamelessly, impudently
impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished, unrestrained, safe
in, *prep.* + *abl.*, in, on, 3; + *acc.*, into, toward, against. 9
inānis, -e, empty, vain
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain, unsure, doubtful
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin, commence. 17
inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut in, inclose
incorruptus, -a, -um, uncorrupted, genuine, pure
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible
indicō (1), indicate, expose, accuse
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy
indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in, introduce, induce
industria, -ae, *f.*, industry, diligence
industrius, -a, -um, industrious, diligent
ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go in, enter. 37
ineptiō, -īre, play the fool, trifle
inexpugnābilis, -e, impregnable, unconquerable
īnfantia, -ae, *f.*, infancy
īnferī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, those below, the dead
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, bring in, bring upon, inflict
īnfīnītus, -a, -um, unlimited, infinite
īnfirmus, -a, -um, not strong, weak, feeble. 38
īnflammō (1), set on fire, inflame
īnfōrmis, -e, formless, deformed, hideous
īnfortūnātus, -a, -um, unfortunate
ingenium, -iī, *n.*, nature, innate talent. 29
ingēns, *gen.* **-gentis,** *adj.*, huge. 16
ingrātus, -a, -um, unpleasant, ungrateful
iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw on *or* into, put on; inspire
inimīcus, -ī, *m.*, (personal) enemy
inīquus, -a, -um, unequal, unfair, unjust
initium, -iī, *n.*, beginning, commencement. 33
iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injustice, injury, wrong. 39
iniūstus, -a, -um, unjust. 10
inops, *gen.* **-opis,** *adj.*, poor, needy
inquam. *See* **inquit.**
inquit, *defective verb*, he says, *placed after one or more words of a direct quotation; other forms:* **inquam,** I say, **inquis,** you say. 22
īnsānia, -ae, *f.*, insanity, folly
īnsciēns, *gen.* **-entis,** unknowing, unaware
īnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, inscribe, entitle
īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, ambush, plot, treachery. 6
īnsōns, *gen.* **-sontis,** guiltless, innocent
īnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, establish, institute
īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island. 23
īnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole, unhurt
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand. 11
intempestīvus, -a, -um, untimely
inter, *prep.* + *acc.*, between, among. 15

interciplō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, intercept
interdum, *adv.*, at times, sometimes
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill, murder. 37
interrogātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, interrogation, inquiry
intrō (1), walk into, enter
intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in, introduce
intus, *adv.*, within
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, enter on, move against, assail
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find. 10
inventor, -tōris, *m.*, inventor
invēstīgō (1), track out, investigate
invictus, -a, -um, unconquered; unconquerable
invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, be envious; + *dat.*, look at with envy, envy, be jealous of. 31
invidia, -ae, *f.*, envy, jealousy, hatred. 31
invīsus, -a, -um, hated; hateful
invītō (1), entertain; invite, summon. 26
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, against one's will
iocus, -ī, *m.*, joke, jest
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive pron.*, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, *etc.;* the very, the actual. 13
īra, -ae, *f.*, ire, anger. 2
īrāscor, -ī, īrātus sum, be angry
īrātus, -a, -um, angered, angry. 35
irrītō (1), excite, exasperate, irritate
is, ea, id, *demonstrative pron. and adj.*, this, that; *personal pron.*, he, she, it. 11
iste, ista, istud, *demonstrative pron. and adj.*, that of yours, that; such; *sometimes with contemptuous force.* 9
ita, *adv. used with adjs., vbs., and advs.*, so, thus. 29
Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy. 15
itaque, *adv.*, and so, therefore. 15
iter, itineris, *n.*, journey; route, road. 37
iterō (1), repeat
iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time. 21
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, bid, order, command. 21
iūcunditās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure, charm
iūcundus, -a, -um, agreeable, pleasant, gratifying. 16
iūdex, -dicis, *m.*, judge, juror. 19
iūdicium, -iī, *n.*, judgment, decision, opinion; trial. 19
iūdicō (1), judge, consider
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, join. 13
Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter, Jove
iūrō (1), swear
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law. 14; **iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** *n.*, oath
iussū, *defective noun, abl. sg. only, m.*, at the command of
iūstus, -a, -um, just, right. 40
iuvenis, -is (*gen. pl.* **iuvenum**), *m./f.*, a youth, young person
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, aid, assist; please. 4

L

lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum, slip, glide
labor, -bōris, *m.*, labor, work, toil. 7
labōrō (1), labor; be in distress. 21
labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip
lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, harass, attack
lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. 40
lacūnar, -nāris, *n.*, paneled ceiling
laetāns, *gen.* **-tantis,** *adj.*, rejoicing
laetus, -a, -um, happy, joyful
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin. 22
laudātor, -tōris, *m.*, praiser
laudō (1), praise. 1
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory, fame. 8
lēctor, -tōris, *m.*, **lēctrīx, -trīcis,** *f.*, reader. 36
lectus, -ī, *m.*, bed
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, ambassador, deputy
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, pick out, choose; read. 18
lēnis, -e, smooth, gentle, kind
lentē, *adv.*, slowly
Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura, chief conspirator under Catiline, left in charge of the conspiracy when Catiline was forced to flee from Rome
Lesbia, -ae, *f.*, Lesbia, the name which Catullus gave to his sweetheart
levis, -e, light; easy, slight, trivial. 17
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, statute. 26
libellus, -ī, *m.*, little book. 17
libenter, *adv.*, with pleasure, gladly. 38
līber, -era, -erum, free. 5
liber, -brī, *m.*, book. 6
līberālis, -e, of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal, generous. 39
līberālitās, -tātis, *f.*, generosity, liberality
līberātor, -tōris, *m.*, liberator
līberē, *adv.*, freely. 32
līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, (one's) children
līberō (1), free, liberate. 19
lībertās, -tātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom. 8

libō (1), pour a libation of, on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently. 39
licet, licēre, licuit, *impers. + dat. and inf.,* it is permitted, one may. 37
ligō (1), bind, tie
līmen, -minis, *n.,* threshold. 26
lingua, -ae, *f.,* tongue; language. 25
linteum, -ī, *n.,* linen, napkin
littera, -ae, *f.,* a letter of the alphabet; **litterae, -ārum,** a letter (epistle); literature. 7
lītus, -toris, *n.,* shore, coast. 23
locō (1), place, put
locuplētō (1), enrich
locus, -ī, *m.,* place; passage in literature; *pl.,* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.,* places, region; **locī, -ōrum,** *m.,* passages in literature. 9
longē, *adv.,* far. 32
longinquitās, -tātis, *f.,* distance, remoteness
longus, -a, -um, long. 16
loquāx, *gen.* **-quācis,** *adj.,* talkative, loquacious
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, say, speak, tell, talk. 34
lucrum, -ī, *n.,* gain, profit
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play
lūdus, -ī, *m.,* game, sport; school. 18
lūna, -ae, *f.,* moon. 28
lupus, -ī, *m.,* wolf
lūx, lūcis, *f.,* light. 26
luxuria, -ae, *f.,* luxury, extravagance

M

Maecēnās, -ātis, *m.,* Maecenas, unofficial "prime minister" of Augustus, and patron and friend of Horace
magis, *adv.,* more, rather
magister, -trī, *m.,* master, schoolmaster, teacher. 4
magistra, -ae, *f.,* mistress, schoolmistress. 4
magnanimus, -a, -um, great-hearted, brave, magnanimous. 23
magnopere, *adv.,* greatly, exceedingly (*comp.* **magis;** *superl.* **maximē**). 32
magnus, -a, -um, large, great; important. 2 (*comp.* **maior;** *superl.* **maximus.** 27); **maiōrēs, -um,** *m. pl.,* ancestors. 27
maiestās, -tātis, *f.,* greatness, dignity, majesty
maior. *See* **magnus.**
maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.,* ancestors. 27
male, *adv.,* badly, ill, wrongly (*comp.* **peius;** *superl.* **pessimē**). 32
mālō, mālle, māluī, to want (something) more, instead; prefer. 32
malum, -ī, *n.,* evil, misfortune, hurt, injury. 30
malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked, evil. 4 (*comp.* **peior;** *superl.* **pessimus.** 27)
mandātum, -ī, *n.,* order, command, instruction
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain, stay, abide, continue. 5
manus, -ūs, *f.,* hand; handwriting; band. 20
Mārcellus, -ī, *m.,* Marcellus, Roman general who captured Syracuse in 212 B.C.
Mārcus, -ī, *m.,* Marcus, a common Roman first name, usually abbreviated to **M.** in writing
mare, -is, *n.,* sea. 14
marītus, -ī, *m.,* husband
māter, -tris, *f.,* mother. 12
māteria, -ae, *f.,* material, matter
mātrimōnium, -iī, *n.,* marriage
maximus. *See* **magnus.**
medicus, -ī, *m.,* **medica, -ae,** *f.,* doctor, physician. 12
mediocris, -e, ordinary, moderate, mediocre. 31
meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, reflect upon, practice
medius, -a, -um, middle; *used partitively,* the middle of. 22
mel, mellis, *n.,* honey
melior. *See* **bonus.**
meminī, meminisse, *defective,* remember
memor, *gen.* **-moris,** *adj.,* mindful
memoria, -ae, *f.,* memory, recollection. 15
mendōsus, -a, -um, full of faults, faulty
mēns, mentis, *f.,* mind, thought, intention. 16
mēnsa, -ae, *f.,* table; dining; dish, course; **mēnsa secunda,** dessert. 26
mēnsis, -is, *m.,* month
merces, -cēdis, *f.,* pay, reward, recompense
merīdiānus, -a, -um, of midday, noon; southern
merus, -a, -um, pure, undiluted. 33
mēta, -ae, *f.,* turning point, goal, limit, boundary. 40
metuō, -ere, metuī, fear, dread; be afraid for + *dat.* 38
metus, -ūs, *m.,* fear, dread, anxiety. 20
meus, -a, -um (*m. voc.* **mī**), my. 2
mīles, mīlitis, *m.,* soldier. 23
mīlitāris, -e, military
mīlle, *indecl. adj. in sg.,* thousand; **mīlia, -ium,** *n., pl. noun,* thousands. 15
minimus. *See* **parvus.**
minor. *See* **parvus.**
minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, lessen, diminish. 30
mīrābilis, -e, amazing, wondrous, remarkable. 38

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, marvel at, admire, wonder. 35
mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, surprising, extraordinary
misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtum, mix, stir up, disturb. 18
miser, -era, -erum, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 15
miserē, *adv.*, wretchedly
misericordia, -ae, *f.*, pity, mercy
mītēscō, -ere, become *or* grow mild
mītis, -e, mild, gentle; ripe
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send, let go. 11
modo, *adv.*, now, just now, only; **modo . . . modo,** at one time . . . at another
modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way. 22
moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, walls of a city. 29
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, disagreeable, annoying
mōlior, -īrī, mōlītus sum, work at, build, undertake, plan. 34
molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, soften; make calm *or* less hostile. 29
mollis, -e, soft, mild, weak
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, remind, warn, advise, 1; **moneō eum ut** + *subj.* 36
monitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, admonition, warning
mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain. 20
mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, portent; monster
monumentum, -ī, *n.*, monument. 40
mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. 4
morbus, -ī, *m.*, disease, sickness. 9
morior, -ī, mortuus sum, die. 34
mors, mortis, *f.*, death. 14
mortālis, -e, mortal. 18
mortuus, -a, -um, dead. 28
mōs, mōris, *m.*, habit, custom, manner; **mōrēs, mōrum,** habits, morals, character. 7
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; arouse, affect. 18
mox, *adv.*, soon. 30
mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman. 39
multō (1), punish, fine
multum, *adv.*, much (*comp.* **plūs;** *superl.* **plūrimum**). 32
multus, -a, -um, much, many, 2 (*comp.* **plūs;** *superl.* **plūrimus.** 27)
mundus, -ī, *m.*, world, universe. 21
mūnīmentum, -ī, *n.*, fortification, protection
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify, defend; build (a road)
mūnus, -neris, *n.*, service, office, function, duty; gift
mūs, mūris, *m./f.*, mouse
Mūsa, -ae, *f.*, a Muse (one of the goddesses of poetry, music, etc.)
mūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change
mūtō (1), change, alter; exchange. 14

N

nam, *conj.*, for. 13
nārrō (1), tell, narrate, report. 24
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, be born, spring forth, arise. 34
nāsus, -ī, *m.*, nose. 40
nāta, -ae, *f.*, daughter. 29
nātālis, -is (*sc.* **diēs**), *m.*, birthday
nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation, people
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature. 10
nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor. 2
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, voyage, navigation
nāvigō (1), sail, navigate. 17
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship. 21
nē, *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, in order that . . . not, in order not to, 28, 36; that, 40; *adv. in* **nē . . . quidem,** not . . . even. 29
-ne, *enclitic added to the emphatic word at the beginning of a question the answer to which may be either "yes" or "no." It can be used in both direct and indirect questions.* 5
nec. *See* **neque.**
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary
necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, inevitable. 39
necō (1), murder, kill. 7
nefās (*indecl.*), *n.*, *wrong, sin*
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, neglect, disregard. 17
negō (1), deny, say that . . . not. 25
nēmō, (nullīus), nēminī, nēminem, (nūllō, -ā), *m./f.*, no one, nobody. 11
nepōs, -pōtis, *m.*, grandson, descendant. 27
neque *or* **nec,** *conj.*, and not, nor; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor. 11
nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, not to know, be ignorant. 25
neuter, -tra, -trum, not either, neither. 9
nēve, and not, nor (*used to continue* **ut** *or* **nē** + *subj.*)
niger, -gra, -grum, black
nihil (*indecl.*), *n.*, nothing. 1, 4
nihilum, -ī, *n.*, nothing
nimis *or* **nimium,** *adv.*, too, too much, excessively. 9
nisi, if . . . not, unless, except. 19
niveus, -a, -um, snowy, white

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitum + *dat.*, do harm to, harm, injure. 35
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, not . . . wish, be unwilling. 32
nōmen, nōminis, *n.*, name. 7
nōn, *adv.*, not. 1
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet
nōnne, *interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer "yes."* 40
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some, several
nōnnumquam, sometimes
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth
nōs. *See* **ego.**
nōscō. *See* **cognōscō.**
noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours. 5
notārius, -iī, *m.*, writer of shorthand, stenographer
novem, *indecl. adj.*, nine. 15
novus, -a, -um, new, strange. 7
nox, noctis, *f.*, night. 26
nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud. 14
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, cover, veil; + dat. (*of a bride*) be married to, marry. 35
nūllus, -a, -um, not any, no, none. 9
num, *interrogative adv.*: (1) *introduces direct questions which expect the answer "no"*; (2) *introduces indirect questions and means* whether. 40
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number. 3
numquam, *adv.*, never. 8
nunc, *adv.*, now, at present. 6
nūntiō (1), announce, report, relate. 25
nūntius, -iī, *m.*, messenger, message
nūper, *adv.*, recently. 12
nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, nourish, rear

O

Ō, *interjection,* O!, oh! 2
obdūrō (1), be hard, persist, endure
obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go up against, meet; die. 37
obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, offer; cite (*as grounds for condemnation*)
oblectō (1), please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly. 36
obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, overwhelm, destroy
obsequium, -iī, *n.*, compliance
obstinātus, -a, -um, firm, resolved
occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, occasion, opportunity. 28
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum (cadō, fall), fall down; die; set (*of the sun*). 31
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (caedō, cut), cut down; kill, slay
occultē, *adv.*, secretly
occupō (1), seize
oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. 4
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrum (*defective vb.*), hate. 20
odium, -ī, *n.*, hatred. 38
Oedipūs, -podis, *m.*, Oedipus, Greek mythical figure said to have murdered his father and married his mother
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, offer. 31
officium, -iī, *n.*, duty, service. 4
ōlim, *adv.*, at that time, once, formerly; in the future. 13
omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let go, omit
omnīnō, *adv.*, wholly, entirely, altogether. 40
omnipotēns, *gen.* **-tentis,** *adj.*, all-powerful, omnipotent
omnis, -e, every, all. 16
onerō (1), burden, load
onus, oneris, *n.*, burden, load
opera, -ae, *f.*, work, pains, help
opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suppose. 40
oportet, -ēre, oportuit (*impers.*), it is necessary, proper, right. 39
oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set against, oppose
opportūnē, *adv.*, opportunely
opportūnus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, advantageous, opportune
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check. 23
opprobrium, -iī, *n.*, reproach, taunt, disgrace
oppugnō (1), fight against, attack, assault, assail. 39
ops, opis, *f.*, help, aid; **opēs, opum,** power, resources, wealth. 33
optimus. *See* **bonus.**
optō (1), wish for, desire
opus, operis, *n.*, a work, task; deed, accomplishment. 38
ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech. 38
ōrātor, -tōris, *m.*, orator, speaker. 23
orbis, -is, *m.*, circle, orb; **orbis terrārum,** the world, the earth
ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, rank, class, order
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise, begin, proceed, originate
ōrnō (1), equip, furnish, adorn. 39
ōrō (1), speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray. 36
ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, face. 14
ōsculum, -ī, *n.*, kiss. 29
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, exhibit, show, display. 23
ōstium, -iī, *n.*, entrance, door

ōtium, -iī, *n.*, leisure, peace. 4
ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep

P

paedagōgus, -ī, *m.*, slave who attended children (*particularly at school*)
pāgānus, -ī, *m.*, a countryman, peasant; pagan
palam, *adv.*, openly, plainly
palma, -ae, *f.*, palm
pānis, -is, *m.*, bread
pār, *gen.* **paris,** *adj.*, equal, like. 32
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrum + *dat.*, be lenient to, spare. 35
parēns, -rentis, *m./f.*, parent. 28
pāreō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.*, be obedient to, obey. 35
pariēs, -ietis, *m.*, wall
pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, beget, produce
parmula, -ae, *f.*, little shield
parō (1), prepare, provide; get, obtain. 19
pars, partis, *f.*, part, share; direction. 14
parum, *adv.*, little, too little, not very (much) (*comp.* **minus;** *superl.* **minimē**). 32
parvus, -a, -um, small, little, 4 (*comp.* **minor;** *superl.* **minimus.** 27)
passer, -seris, *m.*, sparrow
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, make open, open; disclose, expose. 25
pateō, -ēre, -uī, be open, lie open; be accessible; be evident. 32
pater, -tris, *m.*, father. 12
patiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.*, patient; + *gen.*, capable of enduring
patientia, -ae, *f.*, suffering; patience, endurance. 12
patior, -ī, passus sum, suffer, endure; permit. 34
patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native land, (one's) country. 2
patrōnus, -ī, *m.*, patron, protector
paucī, -ae, -a, *usually pl.*, few, a few. 3
pauper, *gen.* **-peris,** *adj.*, of small means, poor. 32
paupertās, -tātis, *f.*, poverty, humble circumstances. 32
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace. 7
peccō (1), sin, do wrong
pectus, -toris, *n.*, breast, heart. 35
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money. 2
peior. *See* **malus.**
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, strike, push; drive out, banish. 24
per, *prep.* + *acc.*, through; *with reflex. pron.*, by. 13
percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, gain, learn, perceive
perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum, destroy, ruin, lose
pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, pass away, be destroyed, perish. 37
peregrīnor, peregrīnārī, peregrīnātus sum, travel abroad, wander. 37
perfectus, -a, -um, complete, perfect
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear, endure, suffer
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, do thoroughly, accomplish, bring about
perfugium, -iī, *n.*, refuge, shelter. 24
perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous
perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, risk. 4
perimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, destroy
perītus, -a, -um, skilled, expert
permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, permit, allow
perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive, pernicious
pernoctō (1), spend *or* occupy the night. 39
perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, lasting, uninterrupted, continuous. 6
perscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, write out, place on record
persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, take vengeance on
Persicus, -a, -um, Persian
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, succeed in urging, persuade, convince
perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten thoroughly, terrify
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, pertain to, relate to, concern
perturbō (1), throw into confusion, trouble, disturb, perturb
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum + **ad,** come through to, arrive at, reach
pēs, pedis, *m.*, lower leg, foot. 38
pessimus. *See* **malus.**
pestis, -is, *f.*, plague, pestilence, curse, destruction
petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, seek, aim at, beg, beseech, 23; **petō ab eō ut** + *subj.* 36
philosophia, -ae, *f.*, philosophy, love of wisdom. 2
philosophus, -ī, *m.*, **philosopha, -ae,** *f.*, philosopher. 33
piger, -gra, -grum, lazy, slow, dull
pīpiō (1), chirp, pipe
piscātor, -tōris, *m.*, fisherman
piscis, -is, *m.*, fish
placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*, be pleasing to, please. 35
plācō (1), placate, appease

plānē, *adv.,* plainly, clearly
platea, -ae, *f.,* broad way, street
Platō, -tōnis, *m.,* Plato, the renowned Greek philosopher
plēbs, plēbis, *f.,* the common people, populace, plebeians. 33
plēnus, -a, -um, full, abundant, generous. 6
plūrimus. *See* **multus.**
plūs. *See* **multus.**
poēma, -matis, *n.,* poem
poena, -ae, *f.,* penalty, punishment; **poenās dare,** pay the penalty. 2
poēta, -ae, *m.,* poet. 2
pōmum, -ī, *n.,* fruit, apple
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, put, place, set. 27
pōns, pontis, *m.,* bridge
populus, -ī, *m.,* the people, a people, nation. 3
porta, -ae, *f.,* gate, entrance. 2
possessiō, -ōnis, *f.,* possession, property
possum, posse, potuī, be able, can, have power. 6
post, *prep.* + *acc.,* after, behind. 7
posteā, *adv.,* afterwards. 24
postpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put after, consider secondary
postquam, *conj.,* after
postrēmum, *adv.,* after all, finally; for the last time. 40
potēns, *gen.* **-tentis,** *pres. part. of* **possum** *as adj.,* able, powerful, mighty, strong. 16
potestās, -tātis, *f.,* power, ability, opportunity
potior, -īrī, potītus sum + *gen.* or *abl.,* get possession of, possess, hold
potius, *adv.,* rather, preferably
prae, *prep.* + *abl.,* in front of, before. 26
praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, offer, provide. 32
praeceptum, -ī, *n.,* precept
praeclārus, -a, -um, noble, distinguished, famous, remarkable
praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear before, display; place before, prefer
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, put in charge of
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send ahead *or* forward
praemium, -iī, *n.,* reward, prize. 35
praesidium, -iī, *n.,* guard, detachment, protection
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum, excel (+ *dat.*); exhibit, show, offer, supply. 28
praesum, -esse, -fuī, be at the head of, be in charge of
praeter, *prep.* + *acc.,* besides, except; beyond, past. 40
praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go by, pass, omit
praeteritus, -a, -um, *perf. part. of* **praetereō** *as adj.,* past
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press; press hard, pursue. 23
pretium, -iī, *n.,* price, value, reward
prex, precis, *f.,* prayer
prīmō, *adv.,* at first, first, at the beginning. 30
prīmum, *adv.,* first, in the first place; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible
prīmus. *See* **prior.** 27
prīnceps, *gen.* **-cipis,** chief; *m./f. noun,* leader, prince, emperor. 28
prīncipium, -iī, *n.,* beginning. 12
prior, prius, *comp. adj.,* former, prior; **prīmus, -a, -um,** first, foremost, chief, principal. 27
prīstinus, -a, -um, ancient, former, previous. 38
prius, *adv.,* before, previously
prīvātus, -ī, *m.,* private citizen
prīvō (1), deprive
prō, *prep.* + *abl.,* in front of, before, on behalf of, in return for, instead of, for, as. 12
probitās, -tātis, *f.,* uprightness, honesty, probity. 18
probō (1), approve; recommend; test. 27
prōcōnsul, -sulis, *m.,* proconsul, governor of a province
prōditor, -tōris, *m.,* betrayer, traitor
proelium, -iī, *n.,* battle
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring forward, produce, make known, extend
proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, set out, start. 34
profor, -ārī, -ātus sum, speak out
prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour forth
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit. 20
prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw forward *or* out
prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send forth, promise. 32
prōnūntiō (1), proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce. 20
prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put forward, propose
proprius, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar, proper, personal, characteristic
propter, *prep.* + *acc.,* on account of, because of. 5
prōtinus, *adv.,* immediately. 22
prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, foresee, provide, make provision
proximus, -a, -um (*superl. of* **propior**), nearest, next
prūdēns, *gen.* **-dentis,** *adj.,* wise, prudent
prūdenter, *adv.,* wisely, discreetly

prūdentia, -ae, *f.,* foresight, wisdom, discretion
pūblicus, -a, -um, of the people, public;
  rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.,* the state
pudīcus, -a, -um, modest, chaste. 26
pudor, -dōris, *m.,* modesty, bashfulness
puella, -ae, *f.,* girl. 2
puer, puerī, *m.,* boy; *pl.* boys, children. 3
puerīliter, *adv.,* childishly, foolishly
pugna, -ae, *f.,* fight, battle
pugnō (1), fight. 29
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, handsome; fine. 5
pulchrē, *adv.,* beautifully, finely. 32
pulchritūdō, -dinis, *f.,* beauty
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, punish
pūrgō (1), cleanse
pūrus, -a, -um, pure, free from
putō (1), reckon, suppose, judge, think, imagine. 25
Pȳthagorās, -ae, *m.,* Pythagoras, Greek philosopher and mathematician of 6th cen. B.C.

Q

quā, *adv.,* by which route, where
quadrāgintā, *indecl. adj.,* forty
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, seek, look for, strive for; ask, inquire, inquire into. 24
quam, *adv.,* how, 16; *conj.,* than, 26; as . . . as possible (*with superl.*), 26
quamvīs, *adv. and conj.,* however much, however; although
quandō, *interrogative and rel. adv. and conj.,* when; **sī quandō,** if ever. 5
quantus, -a, -um, how large, how great, how much. 30
quārē, *adv.,* because of which thing, therefore, wherefore, why. 6
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth. 15
quasi, *adv. or conj.,* as if, as it were. 39
quattuor, *indecl. adj.,* four. 15
-que, *enclitic conj.,* and. *It is appended to the second of two words to be joined.* 6
quemadmodum, *adv.,* in what manner, how
queror, -ī, questus sum, complain, lament. 38
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.,* who, which, what, that. 17
quī? quae? quod?, *interrog. adj.,* what? which? what kind of? 19
quia, *conj.,* since, because
quid, what, why. *See* **quis.**

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (*pron.*) *or* **quoddam** (*adj.*), *indef. pron. and adj.: as pron.,* a certain one *or* thing, someone, something; *as adj.,* a certain. 26
quidem, *postpositive adv.,* indeed, certainly, at least, even; **nē . . . quidem,** not even. 29
quiēs, -ētis, *f.,* quiet, rest, peace
quīn, *adv.,* indeed, in fact. 40
quīn etiam, *adv.,* why even, in fact, moreover
Quīntus, -ī, *m.,* Quintus, a Roman praenomen, abbreviated to **Q.** in writing
quis? quid?, *interrogative pron.,* who? what? which? 19
quis, quid, *indef. pron., after* **sī, nisi, nē,** *and* **num,** anyone, anything, someone, something. 33
quisquam, quidquam (*or* **quicquam**), *indef. pron. and adj.,* anyone, anything
quisque, quidque, *indef. pron.,* each one, each person, each thing. 13
quisquis, quidquid, *indef. pron.,* whoever, whatever. 23
quō, *adv.,* to which *or* what place, whither, where
quod, *conj.,* because. 11
quōmodo, *adv.,* in what way, how
quondam, *adv.,* formerly, once. 22
quoniam, *conj.,* since, inasmuch as. 10
quoque, *adv.,* also, too. 17
quot, *indecl. adj.,* how many, as many. 27
quotiēnscumque, *adv.,* however often, whenever

R

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, seize, snatch, carry away. 21
rārus, -a, -um, rare
ratiō, -ōnis, *f.,* reckoning, account; reason, judgment, consideration; system, manner, method. 8
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go back, retire, recede
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back, regain; admit, receive. 24
recitō (1), read aloud, recite. 17
recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, recognize, recollect. 38
recordātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* recollection
recreō (1), restore, revive; refresh, cheer. 36
rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right; **rēctum, -ī,** *n.,* the right, virtue
recuperātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* recovery
recuperō (1), regain
recūsō (1), refuse. 33

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give back, return
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return. 37
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back
referō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātum, carry back, bring back; repeat, answer, report. 31
rēgīna, -ae, *f.,* queen. 7
rēgius, -a, -um, royal
rēgnum, -ī, *n.,* rule, authority, kingdom
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, rule, guide, direct. 16
relegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, read again, reread
relevō (1), relieve, alleviate, diminish
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, leave behind, leave, abandon. 21
remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, stay behind, abide, continue. 5
remedium, -iī, *n.,* cure, remedy. 4
remissiō, -ōnis, *f.,* letting go, release; relaxation. 34
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, remove
repente, *adv.,* suddenly. 30
reperiō, -īre, -pperī, -pertum, find, discover, learn; get. 40
repetītiō, -ōnis, *f.,* repetition
repetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, seek again, repeat
rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum, creep, crawl
repugnō (1) + *dat.,* fight against, be incompatible with
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, rest. 37
requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -sītum, seek, ask for; miss, need, require. 36
rēs, reī, *f.,* thing, matter, business, affair; **rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,** state, commonwealth. 22
resistō, -ere, -stitī, make a stand, resist, oppose
respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer. 29
restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, restore
retrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, drag *or* draw back
reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come back, return
revertor, -ī, -vertī (*perf. is act.*), **-versum,** return
revocō (1), call back, recall
rēx, rēgis, *m.,* king. 7
rhētoricus, -a, -um, of rhetoric, rhetorical
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh, laugh at. 24
rīdiculus, -a, -um, laughable, ridiculous. 30
rogō (1), ask, ask for. 30; **rogō eum ut** + *subj.,* 36
Rōma, -ae, *f.,* Rome. 14
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. 3
rosa, -ae, *f.,* rose. 2
rōstrum, -ī, *n.,* beak of a ship; **Rōstra, -ōrum,** the Rostra, speaker's platform
rota, -ae, *f.,* wheel
rotundus, -a, -um, wheel-shaped, round
rūmor, -mōris, *m.,* rumor, gossip. 31
ruō, -ere, ruī, rutum, rush, fall, be ruined
rūs, rūris, *n.,* the country, countryside. 37
rūsticor, -ārī, -ātus sum, live in the country. 34
rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, rural

S

sabbatum, -ī, *n.,* the Sabbath
sacculus, -ī, *n.,* little bag, purse
sacrificium, -iī, *n.,* sacrifice
sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, *m.,* priest. 23
sacrilegus, -a, -um, sacrilegious, impious
saepe, *adv.,* often. 1
saeta equīna, -ae -ae, *f.,* horse-hair
sagitta, -ae, *f.,* arrow
sāl, salis, *m.,* salt; wit. 33
salsus, -a, -um, salty, witty
salūbris, -e, healthy, salubrious
salūs, salūtis, *f.,* health, safety; greeting. 21
salūtō (1), greet
salveō, -ēre, be well, be in good health. 1
salvus, -a, -um, safe, sound. 6
sānctificō (1), sanctify, treat as holy
sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, holy
sānitās, -tātis, *f.,* health, soundness of mind, sanity
sānō (1), heal
sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy, sane. 5
sapiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.,* wise, judicious; *as a noun, m.,* a wise man, philosopher. 25
sapienter, *adv.,* wisely, sensibly. 32
sapientia, -ae, *f.,* wisdom. 3
sapiō, -ere, sapīvī, have good taste; have good sense, be wise. 35
satiō (1), satisfy, sate. 3
satis, *indecl. noun, adj., and adv.,* enough, sufficient(ly). 5
sator, -tōris, *m.,* sower, planter; begetter, father. 38
satura, -ae, *f.,* satire. 16
saxum, -ī, *n.,* rock, stone. 40
scabiēs, -ēī, *f.,* the itch, mange
scelerātus, -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accursed
scelestus, -a, -um, wicked, accursed, infamous
scelus, -leris, *n.,* evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness. 19
schola, -ae, *f.,* school
scientia, -ae, *f.,* knowledge, science, skill. 18
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, know. 21
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write, compose. 8
scrīptor, -tōris, *m.,* writer, author. 8
sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, separate

secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable. 6
sēcūrus, -a, -um, free from care, untroubled, safe
sed, *conj.,* but. 2
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit. 34
sēductor, -tōris, *m.* (*ecclesiastical Lat.*), seducer
semel, *adv.,* a single time, once, once and for all, simultaneously. 31
semper, *adv.,* always. 3
senātor, -tōris, *m.,* senator
senātus, -ūs, *m.,* senate. 20
senectūs, -tūtis, *f.,* old age. 10
senex, senis, *adj. and n.,* old, aged; old man. 16
sēnsus, -ūs, *m.,* feeling, sense. 20
sententia, -ae, *f.,* feeling, thought, opinion, vote; sentence. 2
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, perceive, think, experience. 11
septem, *indecl. adj.,* seven. 15
sepulchrum, -ī, *n.,* grave, tomb
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, follow. 34
serēnō (1), make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe. 36
sēriō, *adv.,* seriously
sērius, -a, -um, serious, grave
sermō, -mōnis, *m.,* conversation, talk
serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, sow
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum + *dat.,* be a slave to, serve. 35
servitūs, -tūtis, *f.,* servitude, slavery. 20
servō (1), preserve, keep, save, guard. 1
servus, -ī, *m., and* **serva, -ae,** *f.,* slave. 24
sevēritās, -tātis, *f.,* severity, sternness, strictness
sī, *conj.,* if. 1
sīc, *adv.* (*most commonly with verbs*), so, thus. 29
sīcut, *adv. and conj.,* as, just as, as it were
sīdus, -deris, *n.,* constellation, star. 29
signum, -ī, *n.,* sign, signal, indication; seal. 13
silentium, -iī, *n.,* silence
silva, -ae, *f.,* forest, wood
similis, -e, similar to, like, resembling. 27
simplex, *gen.* **-plicis,** *adj.,* simple, unaffected
simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* pretense
sine, *prep.* + *abl.,* without. 2
singulī, -ae, -a, *pl.,* one each, single, separate
singultim, *adv.,* stammeringly
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened. 20
sitiō, -īre, -īvī, be thirsty
socius, -iī, *m.,* companion, ally
Sōcratēs, -is, *m.,* Socrates
sōl, sōlis, *m.,* sun. 27
sōlācium, -iī, *n.,* comfort, relief. 24
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed. 37
sōlitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* solitude, loneliness
sollicitō (1), stir up, arouse, incite
sollicitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* anxiety, concern, solicitude
sollicitus, -a, -um, troubled, anxious, disturbed
Solōn, -lōnis, *m.,* Solon, Athenian sage and statesman of the 7th-6th cen. B.C.
sōlum, *adv.,* only, merely; **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also. 9
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, the only. 9
somnus, -ī, *m.,* sleep. 26
Sophoclēs, -is, *m.,* Sophocles, one of the three greatest writers of Greek tragedy
sopor, -pōris, *m.,* deep sleep
sordēs, -dium, *f. pl.,* filth; meanness, stinginess
soror, -rōris, *f.,* sister. 8
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum, scatter, spread, strew
spectāculum, -ī, *n.,* spectacle, show
spectō (1), look at, see. 34
speculum, -ī, *n.,* mirror. 33
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, scorn, despise, spurn
spērō (1), hope for, hope. 25
spēs, -eī, *f.,* hope. 22
spīritus, -ūs, *m.,* breath, breathing; spirit, soul. 20
stabilis, -e, stable, steadfast
stadium, -iī, *n.,* stadium
statim, *adv.,* immediately, at once
statua, -ae, *f.,* statue
stēlla, -ae, *f.,* star, planet. 28
stilus, -ī, *m.,* stilus (*for writing*)
stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand, stand still *or* firm. 13
studeō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.,* direct one's zeal to, be eager for, study. 35
studiōsus, -a, -um, full of zeal, eager, fond of
studium, -iī, *n.,* eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study. 9
stultus, -a, -um, foolish; **stultus, -ī,** *m.,* a fool. 4
suāvis, -e, sweet. 33
sub, *prep.* + *abl. with verbs of rest,* + *acc. with verbs of motion,* under, up under, close to. 7
subitō, *adv.,* suddenly. 33
subitus, -a, -um, sudden
subiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, subject, subdue
sublīmis, sublīme, elevated, lofty; heroic, noble. 38
subrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, smile (down) upon. 35
succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, run up under, help
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, be sufficient, suffice

suī (sibi, sē, sē), *reflex. pron. of 3rd pers.,* himself, herself, itself, themselves. 13
sum, esse, fuī, futūrum, be, exist. 4; **est, sunt** *may mean* there is, there are. 1
summa, -ae, *f.,* highest part, sum, whole
summus, -a, -um. *See* **superus.**
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, take up, assume
sūmptus, -ūs, *m.,* expense, cost
supellex, -lectilis, *f.,* furniture, apparatus
superbus, -a, -um, arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud. 26
superior. *See* **superus.**
superō (1), be above, have the upper hand, surpass, overcome, conquer. 5
superus, -a, -um, above, upper; **superī, -ōrum,** *m.,* the gods (*comp.* **superior, -ius,** higher; *superl.* **suprēmus, -a, -um,** last, *or* **summus, -a, -um,** highest). 27
supplicium, -iī, *n.,* punishment
suprā, *adv. and prep.* + *acc.,* above
suprēmus. *See* **superus.**
surculus, -ī, *m.,* shoot, sprout
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, get up, arise. 29
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake. 25
suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsum, hang up, suspend; interrupt. 38
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold up, sustain, endure
suus, -a, -um, *reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers.,* his own, her own, its own, their own. 13
synagōga, -ae, *f.,* synagogue
Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* Syracuse. 37

T

tabella, -ae, *f.,* writing tablet; **tabellae, -ārum,** letter, document
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, be silent, leave unmentioned. 28
tālis, -e, such, of such a sort. 34
tam, *adv. used with adjs. and advs.,* so, to such a degree; **tam . . . quam,** so . . . as. 29
tamen, *adv.,* nevertheless, still. 8
tamquam, *adv.,* as it were, as if, so to speak. 29
tandem, *adv.,* at last, finally
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch. 21
tantum, *adv.,* only. 26
tantus, -a, -um, so large, so great, of such size. 29
tardus, -a, -um, slow, tardy
tēctum, -ī, *n.,* roof, house
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, hide, protect
temeritās, -tātis, *f.,* rashness, temerity
temperantia, -ae, *f.,* moderation, temperance, self-control
tempestās, -tātis, *f.,* period of time, season; weather, storm. 15
templum, -ī, *n.,* sacred area, temple
temptātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* trial, temptation
tempus, -poris, *n.,* time; occasion, opportunity. 7
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum *or* **tēnsum,** stretch, extend; go
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold, keep, possess, restrain. 14
terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum, rub, wear out
terra, -ae, *f.,* earth, ground, land, country. 7
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten, terrify. 1
tertius, -a, -um, third. 15
thema, -matis, *n.,* theme
Themistoclēs, -is, *m.,* Themistocles, celebrated Athenian statesman and military leader who advocated a powerful navy at the time of the Persian Wars
timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear, be afraid of, be afraid. 15
timor, -mōris, *m.,* fear. 10
titulus, -ī, *m.,* label, title; placard
toga, -ae, *f.,* toga, the garb of peace
tolerō (1), bear, endure, tolerate. 6
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy. 22
tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsum, shear, clip
tōnsor, -sōris, *m.,* barber
tōnsōrius, -a, -um, of *or* pertaining to a barber, barber's
tot, *indecl. adj.,* that number of, so many. 40
tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire. 9
tractō (1), drag about; handle, treat, discuss
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give over, surrender, hand down, transmit, teach. 33
tragoedia, -ae, *f.,* tragedy
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, draw, drag; derive, acquire. 8
trāns, *prep.* + *acc.,* across. 14
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go across, cross; pass over, ignore. 39
trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear across, transfer, convey
trānsitus, -ūs, *m.,* passing over, transit; transition. 39
trēdecim, *indecl. adj.,* thirteen. 15
tremō, -ere, tremuī, tremble
trepidē, *adv.,* with trepidation, in confusion

trēs, tria, three. 15
trīgintā, *indecl. adj.,* thirty
trīstis, -e, sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe. 26
triumphus, -ī, *m.,* triumphal procession, triumph
Trōia, -ae, *f.,* Troy. 23
Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan
tū, tuī, you. 11
Tullius, -iī, *m.,* Cicero's family name
tum, *adv.,* then, at that time; thereupon, in the next place. 5
tumultus, -ūs, *m.,* uprising, disturbance
tumulus, -ī, *m.,* mound, tomb
tunc, *adv.,* then, at that time
turba, -ae, *f.,* uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd, multitude. 14
turpis, -e, ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful. 26
tūtus, -a, -um, protected, safe, secure
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*sg.*). 2
tyrannus, -ī, *m.,* absolute ruler, tyrant. 6

U

ubi, *rel. adv. and conj.,* where; when; *interrogative,* where? 6
ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, avenge, punish for wrong done
ūllus, -a, -um, any. 9
ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, extreme; last, final. 25
ultrā, *adv. and prep.* + *acc.,* on the other side of, beyond. 22
umbra, -ae, *f.,* shade; ghost
umerus, -ī, *m.,* shoulder, upper arm
umquam, *adv.,* ever, at any time. 23
unde, *adv.,* whence, from what *or* which place; from which, from whom. 30
ūnus, -a, -um, one, single, alone. 9
urbānus, -a, -um, of the city, urban, urbane, elegant. 26
urbs, urbis, *f.,* city. 14
ūsque, *adv.,* all the way, up (to), even (to), continuously, always. 31
ūsus, -ūs, *m.,* use, experience, skill, advantage
ut, *conj.; A. with subj., introducing* (1) *purpose,* in order that, that, to (28); (2) *result,* so that, that (29); (3) *jussive noun clauses,* to, that (36); (4) *fear clauses,* that . . . not (40); *B. with indic.,* just as, as, when. 24
uter, utra, utrum, either, which (of two). 9
ūtilis, -e, useful, advantageous. 27
ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.,* usefulness, advantage
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.,* use; enjoy, experience. 34
utrum . . . an, *conj.,* whether . . . or. 30
uxor, -ōris, *f.,* wife. 7

V

vacō (1), be free from, be unoccupied
vacuus, -a, -um, empty, devoid (of), free (from)
vae, *interjection,* alas, woe to. 34
valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, be strong, have power; be well, fare well; **valē (valēte),** good-bye. 1
valētūdō, -dinis, *f.,* health, good health, bad health
varius, -a, -um, various, varied, different
-ve, *conj.,* or 33
vehemēns, *gen.* **-mentis,** *adj.,* violent, vehement, emphatic, vigorous
vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry, convey
vel, *conj.,* or (*an optional alternative*)
vēlōx, *gen.* **-lōcis,** *adj.,* swift
vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēnditum, sell. 38
venia, -ae, *f.,* kindness, favor, pardon
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come. 10
ventitō (1), come often
ventus, -ī, *m.,* wind. 39
Venus, -neris, *f.,* Venus, goddess of grace, charm, and love
verbera, -rum, *n. pl.,* blows, a beating
verbum, -ī, *n.,* word. 5
vērē, *adv.,* truly, really, actually, rightly
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, show reverence for, respect; be afraid of, fear. 40
Vergilius, -iī, *m.,* Virgil, the Roman epic poet
vēritās, -tātis, *f.,* truth. 10
vērō, *adv.,* in truth, indeed, to be sure, however. 29
versus, -ūs, *m.,* line, verse. 20
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn, change. 23
vērus, -a, -um, true, real, proper. 4
vesper, -peris *or* **-perī,** *m.,* evening; evening star. 28
vespillō, -lōnis, *m.,* undertaker
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*pl.*). 6
vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, clothe
vetus, *gen.* **-teris,** *adj.,* old. 34
via, -ae, *f.,* road, street, way. 10
vīcīnus, -ī, *m.,* **vīcīna, -ae,** *f.,* neighbor. 21
vicissitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* change, vicissitude
victor, -tōris, *m.,* victor
victōria, -ae, *f.,* victory. 8
vīctus, -ūs, *m.,* living, mode of life
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see, observe; understand, 1; **videor, -ērī, vīsus sum,** be seen, seem, appear. 18

vigilō (1), be awake, watch, be vigilant
vigor, -gōris, *m.,* vigor, liveliness
vīlla, -ae, *f.,* villa, country house
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, overcome. 8
vinculum, -ī, *n.,* bond, chain. 36
vīnum, -ī, *n.,* wine. 31
vir, virī, *m.,* man, hero. 3
virgō, -ginis, *f.,* maiden, virgin. 7
virtūs, -tūtis, *f.,* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue, character, worth. 7
vīs, vīs, *f.,* force, power, violence; **vīrēs, vīrium,** strength. 14
vīta, -ae, *f.,* life, mode of life. 2
vitiōsus, -a, -um, full of vice, vicious. 34
vitium, -iī, *n.,* fault, vice, crime. 6
vītō (1), avoid, shun. 14
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live. 10
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living. 30
vix, *adv.,* hardly, scarcely, with difficulty
vocō (1), call, summon. 1
volō, velle, voluī, wish, want, be willing, will. 32
volō (1), fly
voluntārius, -a, -um, voluntary
voluntās, -tātis, *f.,* will, wish
voluptās, -tātis, *f.,* pleasure. 10
vōs. *See* **tū.**
vōx, vōcis, *f.,* voice, word. 34
vulgus, -ī, *n.* (*sometimes m.*), the common people, mob, rabble. 21
vulnus, -neris, *n.,* wound. 24
vultus, -ūs, *m.,* countenance, face, 40.

X

Xenophōn, -phontis, *m.,* Xenophon, Greek general and author

缩　写

作者和所引著作

Aug., St. Augustine (Confessions)
Caes., Caesar
  B.C., Bellum Civile
  B.G., Bellum Gallicum
Catull., Catullus (Poems)
Cic., Cicero
  Am., De Amicitia
  Arch., Oratio pro Archia
  Att., Epistulae ad Atticum
  Cat., Orationes in Catilinam
  De Or., De Oratore
  Div., De Divinatione
  Fam., Epistulae ad Familiares
  Fin., De Finibus
  Inv., De Inventione Rhetorica
  Leg., De Legibus
  Marcell, Oratio pro Marcello
  Off., De Officiis
  Or., Orator
  Phil., Orationes Philippicae in M. Antonium
  Pis., Oratio in Pisonem
  Planc., Oratio pro Plancio
  Q. Fr., Epistulae ad Q. Fratrem
  Rep., De Re Publica
  Sen., De Senectute
  Sex. Rosc., Oratio pro Sex. Roscio
  Sull., Oratio pro Sulla
  Tusc., Tusculanae Disputationes
  Verr., Actio in Verrem
Enn., Ennius (Poems)
Hor., Horace
  A.P., Ars Poetica (Ep. 2.3)
  Ep., Epistulae
  Epod., Epodes
  Od., Odes (Carmina)
  Sat., Satires (Sermones)
Juv., Juvenal (Satires)
Liv., Livy (Ab Urbe Condita)
Lucr., Lucretius (De Natura Rerum)
Mart., Martial (Epigrams)
Macr., Macrobius (Saturnalia)
Nep., Nepos
  Att., Atticus
  Cim., Cimon
  Milt., Miltiades
Ov., Ovid

A.A., Ars Amatoria
Am., Amores
Her., Heroides
Met., Metamorphoses
Pers., Persius (Satires)
Petron., Petronius (Satyricon)
Phaedr., Phaedrus (Fables)
Plaut., Plautus
Aul., Aulularia
Mil., Miles Gloriosus
Most., Mostellaria
Stich., Stichus
Plin., Pliny the Elder
H.N., Historia Naturalis
Plin., Pliny the Younger
Ep., Epistulae
Prop., Propertius (Elegies)
Publil. Syr., Publilius Syrus (Sententiae)
Quint., Quintilian
Inst., Institutiones Oratoriae
Sall., Sallust
Cat., Catilina
Sen., Seneca the Elder
Contr., Controversiae
Sen., Seneca the Younger
Brev. Vit., De Brevitate Vitae
Clem., De Clementia
Cons. Polyb., Ad Polybium de Consolatione
Ep., Epistulae
Suet., Suetonius
Aug., Augustus Caesar
Caes., Julius Caesar
Tac., Tacitus
Ann., Annales
Dial., Dialogus de Oratoribus
Ter., Terence
Ad., Adelphi
And., Andria
Heaut., Heauton Timoroumenos
Hec., Hecyra
Phorm., Phormio
Veg., Vegetius Renatus
Mil., De Re Militari
Vell., Velleius Paterculus (Histories)
Virg., Virgil
Aen., Aeneid
Ecl., Eclogues
Geor., Georgics
Vulg., Vulgate
Eccles., Ecclesiastes
Exod., Exodus
Gen., Genesis

其他缩写

abl.	ablative case
abs.	absolute
acc.	accusative case
act.	active voice
A.D.	after Christ (Lat. *annō dominī*, lit., *in the year of the Lord*)
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
App.	Appendix
B.C.	before Christ
ca.	about (Lat. *circā*)
cen(s).	century(ies)
Ch(s).	Chapter(s)
cl(s).	clause(s)
comp.	comparative (degree)
compl.	complementary
conj.	conjunction
contr. to fact	contrary to fact
cp.	compare (Lat. *comparā*)
dat.	dative case
decl.	declension
dep.	deponent
e.g.	for example (Lat. *exemplī grātiā*)
Eng.	English
etc.	and others (Lat. *et cētera*)
f./F./fem.	feminine gender
ff.	and the following (lines, pages)
Fr.	French
fr.	from
fut.	future tense
fut. perf.	future perfect tense
gen.	genitive case

Ger.	German	pass.	passive voice
Gk.	Greek	perf.	perfect (present perfect) tense
ibid.	in the same place (Lat. *ibidem*)	pers.	person
id.	the same (Lat. *idem*)	pl.	plural
i.e.	that is (Lat. *id est*)	plupf.	pluperfect (past perfect) tense
imper.	imperative mood	P.R.	Practice and Review (sentences)
impers.	impersonal	prep.	preposition
impf.	imperfect tense	pres.	present tense
ind. quest.	indirect question	pron.	pronoun
ind. state.	indirect statement	purp.	purpose
indecl.	indeclinable	ref.	reference
indef.	indefinite	rel.	relative
indic.	indicative mood	Russ.	Russian
inf.	infinitive	sc.	supply, namely (Lat. *scīlicet*)
interj.	interjection	sent.	sentence
Introd.	Introduction	sg.	singular
irreg.	irregular	Sp.	Spanish
It.	Italian	spec.	special
L.A.	*Locī Antīquī*	S.A.	*Sententiae Antīquae*
Lat.	Latin	S.S.	Supplementary Syntax (p. 442–45)
L.I.	*Locī Immūtātī*		
lit.	literally	subj.	subjunctive mood
loc.	locative case	superl.	superlative
m./M./masc.	masculine gender	s.v.	under the word (Lat. *sub verbō*)
mid.	middle	vb(s).	verb(s)
n./N./neut.	note *or* neuter gender	voc.	vocative case
no(s).	number(s)	Vocab.	Vocabulary
nom.	nominative case	vs.	as opposed to, in comparison with (Lat. *versus*)
obj.	object *or* objective		
p.	page(s)	w.	with
part.	participle		

古代名言出处

1. (1) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (2) Plaut., Most. 1.3.30. (3) Suet., Aug. 25 (4) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11. (5) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2. (6) Cic., Sest. 67.141. (7) Cic., Cat. 4.3. (8) Virg., Aen. 3.121 and 4.173 and 184. (9) Ter., Heaut. 190 et passim. (10) Cic., Fam. 2.16.4. (11) Hor., Sat. 1.9.78. (12) Hor., Sat. 1.10.81–83. (13) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (14) Cic., Inv. 1.1.1. (15) Publil. Syr. 321.
2. (1) Plaut., Stich. 5.2.2. (2) Virg., Aen. 3.121. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937. (4) Cic., Marcell. 4.12. (5) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–24. (7) Sen., Ep. 8.1. (8) Sen., Ep. 17.5. (9) Cic., Fin. 3.1.2. (10) Sen., Ep. 8.5. (11) Sen., Ep. 18.14, De Ira 1.1.2; cp. Ch. 16 S.A.8. (12). Sen., Ep. 18.15. (13) Sen., Ep. 115.16. (14) Hor., Od. 3.11.45. (15) Cic., Pis. 10.22.
3. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.1. (2) Hor., Sat. 2.6.41. (3) Phaedr., Fab. I. Prologus 4. (4) Cic., Tusc. 5.3.9. (5) Hor., Sat. 2.7.84 and 88. (6) Nep., Cim. 4. (7) Hor., Ep. 1.2.56. (8) Sen., Ep. 94.43. (9) Publil. Syr., 56. (10) Publil. Syr. 697. (11) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2.
4. (1) Cic., Am. 15.54. (2) Ter., Heaut. 2.3.295–296. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.9.961. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.4.114. (5) Proverbial; cp. Cic., Phil. 12.2.5. (6) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28. (7) Sen., De Ira II 18ff. and III init.; cp. Ter., Phor. 1.4.185. (8) Virg., Ecl. 5.61. (9) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25. (10) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701–702. (11) Catull. 5.7. (12) Vulg., Eccles. 1.15. (13) Cic., Am. 21.79. (14) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (15) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9.
5. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.31. (3) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (4) Ov., Her. 3.85. (5) Cic., Fam. 14.3.1 (6) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937. (7) Ter., Ad. 5.9.992–993. (8) Cic., Att. 2.2. (9) Sen., Cons. Polyb. 9.6. (10) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937. (11) Sen., Ep. 17.5. (12) Virg., Ecl. 5.78. (13) Hor., Ep. 2.3.445–446 (Ars Poetica).
6. (1) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.57. (2) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.61. (3) Cic., Cat. 3.1.3. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29. (5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Liv. 21.1.2. (7) Cic., Arch. 3.5. (8) Sen., Ep. 73.16. (9) Publil. Syr. 302. (10) Publil. Syr. 282.
7. (1) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (2) Vulg., Eccles. 1.10. (3) Hor., Od. 3.1.2–4. (4) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–23. (5) Hor., Ep. 1.16.52. (6) Mart. 12.6.11–12. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.6.15–16. (8) Cic.; cp. graffiti. (9) Sen., Ep. 82.2. (10) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (11) Hor., Sat. 1.9.59–60. (12) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29. (13) Vulg., Luke 2.14.
8. (1) Ter., Ad. 5.4.863. (2) Ter., Heaut. 3.1.432. (3) Laberius; see Macr. 2.7. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.1.3. (5) Publil. Syr. 507; also Macr. 2.7. (6) Sen., Ep. 8.3. (7) Catull. 49. (8) Liv. 26.50.1. (9) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.98. (10) Cic., Arch. 11.26. (11) Cic., Marcell. 5.15. (12) Hor., Ep. 2.2.65–66. (13) Hor., Ep. 1.2.1–2. (14) Sen., Ep. 106.12. (15) Sen., Ep. 7.8. (16) Liv. 22.39.21.
9. (1) Ter., Phor. 4.5.727. (2) Ter., Phor. 4.3.670. (3) Ter., Heaut. 4.3.709. (4) Cic., Am. 27.102. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.3.539. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.13.31. (7) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (8) Mart. 10.72.4. (9) Liv. 22.39.10.
10. (1) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (2) Ter., Ad. 4.3.593. (3) Ter., Ad. 3.2.340. (4) Mart. 6.70.15. (5) Cic., Clu. 18.51. (6) Lucr. 6.93–95. (7) Pers. 5.153. (8) Hor., Epod. 13.3–4. (9) Cic., Sen. 19.67. (10) Virg., Georg. 3.284. (11) Virg., Aen. 3.395. (12) Publil. Syr. 764. (13) Cic., Am. 24.89.
11. (1) Hor., Sat. 2.5.33. (2) Ter., Ad. 1.1.49. (3) Plin., Ep. 1.11.1. (4) Plin., Ep. 5.18.1. (5) Ter., Hec. 1.2.197. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.8.20. (7) Cic., Marcell. 11.33. (8) Cic., Fam. 1.5.b.2. (9) Liv. 120. (10) Hor., Ep. 2.2.58. (11) Mart. 12.47. (12) Cic., Am. 21.80.
12. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.1 and 27. (2) Suet., Caes. 37. (3) Ter., Hec. 3.5.461. (4) Cic., Sen. 19.68. (5) Sen., Brev. Vit.; see Duff, Silver Age p. 216. (6) Ter., Phor. 2.1.302. (7) Cic., Sen. 7.22. (8) Cic., Off. 1.24.84. (9) Tac., Ann. 1.1.1. (10) Laber. in Macr. 2.7.
13. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.21. (2) Cic., Sull. 24.67. (3) Cic. Cat. 3.10. (4) Cic., Am. 21.80. (5) Publil. Syr. 206. (6) Sen., Ep. 7.8. (7) Sen., Ep. 80.3. (8) Phaedr. 4.21.1.
14. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.10. (2) Lucr. 5.822–823. (3) Virg., Ecl. 2.33. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.33–

34. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.2.506. (6) Hor., Od. 3.1.13. (7) Enn. in Cic., Rep. 3.3.6. (8) Sall., Cat. 3.4. (9) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7. (10) Hor., Ep. 2.3.268–269. (11) Cic., Sen. 6.17. (12) Hor., Ep. 1.11.27.

15. (1) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421–422. (2) Cic., Fam. 16.9.2. (3) Cic., Arch. 3.5. (4) Tac., Ann. 12.32. (5) Cic., Cat. 3.2.3. (6) Cic., Verr. 2.5.62. (7) Catull. 3.5 and 10. (8) Ter., Ad. 5.4 passim. (9) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.58.

16. (1) Phaedr., 3.7.1. (2) Virg., Geor. 1.145. (3) Ter., Phor. 1.4.203. (4) Cic., Or. 59.200. (5) Virg., Aen. 3.657–658. (6) Virg., Aen. 4.569–570. (7) Mart. 7.85.3–4. (8) Hor., Ep. 1.2.62; cp. Ch. 2 S.A. 11. (9) Servius on Aen. 1.683. (10) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28. (11) Phaedr., Fab. 1. Prologus 3–4. (12) Cic., Leg. 1.22.58. (13) Sen., Clem. 1.19.6. (14) Sen. Brev. Vit. (15) Cic., Sen. 19.70. (16) Vell. 2.66.3 (cp. Duff., Silver Age p. 91).

17. (1) Ter., Phor. 2.1.287–288. (2) Cic., N.D. 3.34.83. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (4) Publil. Syr. 321. (5) Hor., Ep. 1.2.40–41. (6) Publil. Syr. 353. (7) Publil. Syr. 232. (8) Cic., Am. 15.54. (9) Publil. Syr. 86. (10) Cic., Am. 25.92. (11) Cic., Am. 27.102. (12) Sen., Ep. 7.1 and 8.

18. (1) Virg., Aen. 5.231. (2) Tac., Ann. 15.59. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.3.6. (4) Publil. Syr. 393. (5) Ov., Met. 4.428. (6) Plin., Ep. 9.6.1. (7) Cic., Fam. 9.20.3. (8) Lucr. 3.830–831. (9) Publil. Syr. 37. (10) Cic., Marcell. 2.7. (11) Enn. (See Duff, Golden Age p. 148.) (12) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11. (13) Juv. 1.74.

19. (1) Lucr. 1.112. (2) Cic., Cat. 3.5.13. (3) Cic., Sest. 67.141. (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132. (5) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (6) Cic., Planc. 33.80. (7) Cic., Am. 15.55.

20. (1) Mart. 13.94.1. (2) Cic., Fin. 5.29.87. (3) Cic., Am. 12.42. (4) Cic., De Or. 1.61.261. (5) Hor., Od. 1.38.1. (6) Hor., Sat. 1.3.66. (7) Cic., Sen. 5.15. (8) Sen., Clem. 1.6.2–3. (9) Cic., Off. 1.2.4. (10) Quint., Inst. 8.3.41. (11) Hor., Od. 1.22.1–2. (12) Cic., Fam. 16.9.3. (13) Cic., Cat. 3.5.10.

21. (1) Publil. Syr. 507. (2) Mart. 1.86.1–2. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.11.27. (4) Hor., Epod. 16.1–2. (5) Cic., Am. 6.22. (6) Cic., Sen. 19.69. (7) Cic., N.D. 2.62.154. (8) Cic., Sen. 17.59. (9) Phaedr., App. 27. (10) Vulg., Job 28.12. (11) Liv., 22.39.19.

22. (1) Cic., Att. 9.10.3. (2) Hor., Od. 2.3.1–2. (3) Cic., Rep. 3.31. (4) Cic., Cat. 1.1.3. (5) Cic., Marcell. 10.32. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (7) Cic., Cat. 3.1.1. (8) Liv. 32.33.10. (9) Plaut., Aul. 4.10.772. (10) Cic., Am. 17.64. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.3.148–149. (12) Virg., Georg. 2.490 and 493. (13) Sen., Ep. 17.12. (14) Hor., Ep. 1.1.19. (15) Hor., Sat. 1.1.106–107. (16) Mart. 10.76.1

23. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.2.6. (2) Liv. 44.42.4. (3) Hor., Sat. 1.1.68–69. (4) Cic., N.D. 2.4.12. (5) Hor., Ep. 2.1.156. (6) Nep., Att. 4. (7) Quint., Inst. Praef. 5. (8) Hor., Sat. 1.10.72. (9) Quint., Inst. 11.3.157. (10) Cic., N.D. 3.33.82. (11) Cic., Sen. 3.9. (12) Hor., Ep. 1.16.66. (13) Sen., Ep. 61.3. (14) Hor., Ep. 1.18.71.

24. (1) Cp. Plutarch, Cato ad fin. (2) Plin., H.N. 33.148. (3) Caes., B.C. 2.43. (4) Cic., Sex. Rosc. 1.3. (5) Cic., Marcell. 8.24. (6) Hor., Od. 3.14.14–16. (7) Cic., Rep. 2.30. (8) Tac., Dial. 5.

25. (1) Ter., Heaut. Prolog. 18. (2) Cic., 1.11.27. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.11.27. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.2.4. (5) Cic., Cat. 4.10.22. (6) Cic., Off. 1.1.1. (7) Ter., Phor. 4.1.581–582. (8) Cic., Sen. 16.56. (9) Enn. in Cic., Div. 2.56.116. (10) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.101. (11) Cic., Tusc. 5.37.108. (12) Cic., quoted in Dumesnil's Lat. Synonyms s.v. abnuere. (13) Cic., Tusc., 5.40.118. (14) Cic., Sen. 21.77. (15) Cic., Sen. 19.68. (16) Plin., Ep. 7.9.15.

26. (1) Cic., Sen. 16.55. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.3.6. (3) Sen., Contr. 6.7.2; Publil. Syr. 253. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.1.5. (5) Sen., Ep. 61.3. (6) Ov., Her. 17.71–72. (7) Hor., Epod. 2.1,7,8. (8) Cic., Am. 26.99. (9) Cic., Sen. 19.68. (10) Mart. 1.107.1–2. (11) Mart. 14.208. (12) Cic., Off. 1.22.74. (13) Catull. 12.

27. (1) Ov., Met. 7.21–22. (2) Mart. 1.16.1. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.5.884, 5.7.922. (4) Plin., Ep. 10.88. (5) Cic., Sen. 6.19. (6) Cic., Off. 1.22.78. (7) Cic., Off. 1.22.77. (8) Cic., Sen. 2.5. (9) Sen., Ep. 17.9. (10) See Ch. 4 S.A.7. (11) Cic., Marcell. 3.8. (12) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.57–5.21.62. (13) Virg., Aen. 7.312.

28. (1) Liv. 22.39.21. (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.77. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18. (4) Ter., Phor. 5.5.831. (5) Hor., Epod. 13.3–4. (6) Sen., Ep. 80.3. (7) Sen. (8) Diog. Laert.: a Latin translation from his Greek. (9) Quint., Inst. 2.2.5. (10) Cic., Am. 24.89. (11) Ov., A.A. 1.97. (12) Virg., Aen. 1.1–2.

29. (1) Virg., Ecl. 10.69. (2) Virg., Aen. 4.653, 655 (3) Ter., Phor. 3.2.497–498. (4) Hor., Ep. 1.1.40. (5) Juv. 1.30. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.1.3.

(7) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (8) Cic., Phil. 4.5.9. (9) Nep., Milt. 5. (10) Cic., De Or. 1.61.260. (11) Hor., A.P. (Ep. 2.3) 335–336. (12) Ter., Heaut. 4.2.675. (13) Cic., Off. 1.23.80. (14) Cic., Am. 9.29.

30. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.3.6. (2) Phaedr. 3.7.1. (3) Hor., Sat. 1.5.67–68. (4) Virg., Ecl. 8.43. (5) Hor., Sat. 1.4.16. (6) Cic., Marcell. 10.30. (7) Lucr. 1.55–56. (8) Lucr. 2.4. (9) Hor., Ep. 1.2.1–4. (10) Hor., Ep. 1.18.96–97, 100–101. (11) Sen., Ep. 115.14. (12) Prop. 2.15.29–30. (13) Cic., Tusc. 1.41.99.

31. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.6.15. (2) Cic., Am. 12.42. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10 and 1.9.23. (4) Hor., Od. 1.14.1–2. (5) Cic., Marcell. 7.22. (6) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.2.4.14. (7) Cic., Cat. 3.5.12. (8) Cic., Sen. 10.33. (9) Liv. 45.8. (10) Ter., Ad. 2.1.155. (11) Ter., Phor. 1.2.137–138. 12. Cic., Cluent. 53.146.

32. (1) Publil. Syr. 512. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10. (3) Hor., Ep. 1.6.29. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.9.996. (5) Ter., Heaut. 4.1.622. (6) Cic., Sen. 3.7. (7) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701. (8) Caes., B.G. 3.18. (9) Plaut., Trin. 2.2.361. (10) Publil. Syr. 129. (11) Sall., Cat. 8. (12) Cic., Fin. 3.7.26. (13) See Ch. 18 S.A. 11. (14) Sen., Ep. 80.6. (15) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25–26. 16. Hor., Ep. 2.3.102–103 (Ars Poetica).

33. (1) Veg., Mil. Prolog. 3. (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.76. (3) Cic., Sull. 31.87. (4) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.3.5. (5) Phaedr. App. 18. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–24. (7) Publil. Syr. 412. (8) Hor., Od. 4.10.6. (9) Juv. 3.152–153.

34. (1) Virg., Aen. 3.188. (2) Hor., Sat. 1.3.68–69. (3) Cic., N.D. 2.62.154. (4) Cp. Sen., De Ira 2.9.1 and Cic., Tusc. 3.9.19. (5) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10. (6) Hor., Od. 3.16.7. (7) Cic., Fam. 7.10.1. (8) Publil. Syr. 350. (9) Mart. Bk. I Praef. 1–2. (10) Cic., Sen. 19.69. (11) Ter., Heaut. 1.2.239–240. (12) Cic., Am. 6.22. (13) Cic., De Or. 2.67.274. (14) Virg., Aen. 1.199.

35. (1) Sen., cp. Ep. 8.7; and Hor., Sat. 2.7.83 ff. and Ep. 1.16.66. (2) Publil. Syr. 290. (3) Publil. Syr. 99. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.86–87. (5) Cic., Fin. 1.18.60, 4.24.65; De Or. 1.3.10 et passim. (6) Publil. Syr. 767 and 493. (7) Vulg., Gen. 1.26. (8) Cic., Rep. 2.24.59. (9) Caes., B.G. 4.23 and 5.45. (10) Quint., Inst. 10.1.112. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.41–42. (12) Publil. Syr. 687. (13) Hor., Sat. 2.2.135–136. (14) Virg., Aen. 1.630. (15) Publil. Syr. 288.

36. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.3. (2) Lucr. 1.205. (3) Ter., Heaut. 2.3.314. (4) Caes., B.C. 2.43. (5) Ter., Ad. 3.4.505. (6) Ter., Heaut. 5.5.1049 and 1067. (7) Hor., Od. 1.11.7–8. (8) Pers. 5.151–152. (9) Sen., Ep. 61.2. (10) Cic., Sen. 8.26. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.206–211. (12) Hor., Od. 1.24.19–20. (13) Ov., Am. 1.2.10. (14) Cic., Am. 5.7. (15) Cic., Arch. 2.3.

37. (1) Hor., Ep. 2.3.68. (2) Virg., Aen. 6.127. (3) Ov., A.A. 3.62–65. (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132; Ad. 1.1.26. (5) Ter., Ad. 5.5.882. (6) Ter., Ad. 4.1.517, 4.2.556. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.9.1. (8) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.62. (9) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54.120. (10) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421 and 423. (11) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (12) Nep., Att. 8; Cic., Phil. 2.12.28, Tusc. 5.37.109 (names changed). (13) Cic., Att. 12.50. (14) Cic., Sen. 7.24. (15) Prop., 2.15.23–24.

38. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.31. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (3) Cat., 4.7.16. (4) Cic., Am. 7.23. (5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Cic., Am. 15.53. (7) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18. (8) Cic., Cat. 4.11.24. (9) Virg., Ecl. 1.7. (10) Cic., Fam. 4.5.6. (11) Sen., Ep. 17.11. (12) Cic., Marcell. 4.11. (13) Plin., Ep. 5.16.4–5. (14) Hor., Od. 1.37.1–2.

39. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.32. (3) Cic., Off. 1.22.74. (4) Publil. Syr. 762. (5) Cic., Off. 1.25.89. (6) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54. (7) Cic., Off. 3.32.113. (8) Cic., Sest. 2.5 (9) Cic., Sen. 5.15. (10) Cic., Att. 2.23.1. (11) Publil. Syr. 704. (12) Cic., Leg. 1.23.60. (13) Virg., Aen. 4.175. (14) Cic., Fam. 5.12.4.

40. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.7.14. (2) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7. (3) Cic., Tusc. 1.41.97. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.4.856. (5) Sen., Ep. 7.7. (6) Plin., Ep. 9.6.2. (7) Lucr. 4.1286–87. (8) Cic., Fam. 14.12. (9) Liv.: see Loci Immutati #17. (10) Cic., Marcell. 10.32. (11) Catull. 43.1–3. (12) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (13) Cic., Am. 21.81. (14) Vulg., Exod. 20.11. (15) Caes., B.G. 1.47. (16) Cic., Cat. 1.4.8. (17) Cic., Planc. 42.101.

汉英术语对照表*

(按汉语拼音顺序排列)

i-词干名词 i-stem noun
半异态动词 semideponent
伴随夺格 ablative of accompaniment
被动(语)态 passive voice
比较(等级) comparison
比较夺格 ablative of comparison
比较级 comparative degree
变格(法) declension
变位(法) conjugation
宾格 accusative (case); objective (case)
宾语 object
宾语不定式 objective infinitive
宾语属格 objective genitive
补充不定式 complementary infinitive
不定冠词 indefinite article
不定式 infinitive
不规则动词 irregular verb
不及物动词 intransitive verb
材料属格 genitive of material
差异夺格 ablative of degree of difference
词干 stem
词根 base, root
词汇(表) vocabulary
词类 parts of speech
词尾 ending
词形变化表 paradigm
词源(学) etymology
从句 subordinate clause
代词 pronoun
单数 single
地点夺格(从何处) ablative of place from which
地点夺格(在何处) ablative of place where
地点结构 place construction
第二变格(法) second declension
第二变位(法) second conjugation
第三变格(法) third declension
第三变位(法) third conjugation
第四变格(法) fourth declension
第四变位(法) fourth conjugation
第五变格(法) fifth declension
第一变格(法) first declension
第一变位(法) first conjugation
定冠词 definite article
动词 verb
动词变位缩写式 synopsis
动词性名词 verbal noun
动词性形容词 verbal adjective
动名词 gerund
动形词(将来时被动态分词) gerundive (future passive participle)
独立夺格 ablative absolute
独立句 independent clause
短语(习语、惯用语) phrase
夺格 ablative (case)
反身代词 possessive pronoun
反身物主代词 reflexive possessive

* 本对照表为译者整理添加。——编者注

方式夺格 ablative of manner
分词 participles
分词短语 participial phrase
分离夺格 ablative of separation
辅音 consonant
附带条件从句 proviso clause
复合词 compound
复合动词 compound verb
复数 plural
副词 adverb
感叹词 interjection
格 case
关系代词 relative pronoun
关系与格(兴趣与格) dative of reference (dative of interest)
冠词 article
过去完成时 pluperfect tense (past perfect)
后置词 postpositive word
后缀 suffix
呼格 vocative (case)
基本时态 primary tense
基数词 cardinal numeral
及物动词 transitive verb
间接宾语 indirect object
间接陈述 indirect statement
间接命令句 jussive noun clause
间接问句 indirect question
间接引语 indirect quotation
将来时 future tense
将来时被动态不定式 future passive infinitive
将来时被动态分词（动形词)future passive participle (gerundive)
将来时不定式 future infinitive
将来时不定式主动态 future active infinitive
将来时主动态分词 future active participle
将来完成时 future perfect
结果从句 result clause
介词 preposition
句法 syntax
可能性大的将来 future more vivid
可能性小的将来 future less vivid
历史时态 historical tense
连词 conjunction
流音 liquid
罗曼语(罗曼诸语言) Romance languages
描述夺格 ablative of description
描述属格 genitive of description
名词 substantive; noun
命令句 imperative sentence
命令式 imperative
目的从句 purpose clause
目的动名词 supine
派生词 derivative
派生时态 secondary tense
派生语 derivative language
祈愿句 jussive clause
祈愿式 jussive
祈愿虚拟式 jussive subjunctive
前缀 prefix
强势代词 intensive pronoun
屈折变化 inflection
屈折形式 inflected form
屈折语 inflected language
人称 person
人称词尾 personal ending
人称代词 personal pronoun
塞音 stop
施事(者)agent
施事夺格 ablative of (personal) agent
施事与格 dative of agent

时间夺格（何时/期间）ablative of time when or within which
时间结构 time construction
时态 tense
时态序列 sequence of tenses
式(语气)Mood
手段夺格（工具夺格)ablative of means or instrument
数 number
数词 numeral
双元音 diphthong
属格 genitive (case)
属有 possession
缩约 contraction
所有格 possessive case
特殊动词 special verb
特征关系从句 relative clause of characteristic
条件(从)句 conditional sentences; condition
同化 assimilation
同位语 apposition
同源词 cognate (word)
同源语 cognate language
完成时 perfect tense
完成时被动态分词 perfect passive participle
完成时不定式 perfect infinitive
完成时不定式被动态 perfect passive infinitive
完成时不定式主动态 perfect active infinitive
完成时系统 perfect system
未完成时 imperfect tense
位置格 locative case
谓语 predicate
谓语形容词 predicate adjective
谓语性名词 predicate substantive
无人称动词 impersonal verb
物主代词 possessive pronoun
物主与格 dative of possession
现在时 present tense
现在时不定式 present infinitive
现在时不定式被动态 present passive infinitive
现在时不定式主动态 present active infinitive
现在时分词 present particle
现在时系统 present system
现在时主动态分词 present active participle
现在完成时 present perfect
限定动词 finite verb
限定形式 finite forms
项 item
形容词 adjective
形式 form
性 gender
修饰语 modifier
虚拟句 subjunctive clause
虚拟式 subjunctive
虚拟条件句 subjunctive condition
序数词 ordinal
阳性 masculine
一致 agreement
疑虑从句 fear clause
疑问代词 interrogative pronoun
疑问形容词 interrogative adjective
异干互补 suppletion
异态动词 deponent verb
阴性 feminine
音节 syllable
音节划分 syllabification
音量 quantity
迂说法 periphrasis
与格 dative (case)
语境 context
语音变化 phonetic change

元音 vowel
原级 positive degree
原因夺格 ablative of cause
整体属格（部分属格）genitive of the whole (partitive genitive)
直陈式 indicative
直陈条件句 indicative condition
直接宾语 direct object
直接陈述 direct statement
直接问句 direct question
直接引语 direct discourse
指定夺格 ablative of specification
指示词 demonstrative
指小词 diminutive
中性 neuter
重音 accent
主动(语)态 active voice
主动迂说法 active periphrastic
主格 nominative (case)
主句 main clause
主要部分 principal part
主要动词 main verb
主语 subject
主重音 stress accent
助动词 auxiliary
转折从句 adversative clause
状语 adverbial (modifier)
子句(从句)clause
字母表 alphabet
最高级 superlative degree

译后记

对于任何一个认真研究西方文化的人来说，拉丁语的重要性是不言而喻的。在所有古典语言中，希腊语和拉丁语对西方的语言、文学、历史、宗教、哲学、科学产生了最为深远的影响，现存的拉丁语文献浩如烟海。语言是文化的载体，要想真正深入理解一种文化，就必须学习它的语言。这就好比要想深入研究中国的历史和文化，就不能没有扎实的古汉语功底。

拉丁语起源于意大利台伯河下游附近的拉丁姆(Latium)地区，是两千年前古罗马人的方言之一，后逐渐取代其他方言而成为罗马帝国的通用语言。罗马帝国崩溃后，拉丁语成为罗马天主教会的官方语言，从而从一种方言变成了一种世界性的语言。中世纪的知识分子用拉丁语保存和传承着文明的火种，虽然语言本身发生了不小的变化，[1]但在这一时期，几乎所有的书籍都是用拉丁语写成的，通俗拉丁语《圣经》是当时世界上最通行的译本，拉丁语成为最接近世界性的语言，欧洲各国的本土语言反而难登大雅之堂。尽管在中世纪以后，拉丁语已不在欧洲通用，但它却成为法语、意大利语、西班牙语、葡萄牙语、罗马尼亚语等现代罗曼语的母语，这些语言中的大量词汇都来自拉丁语。可以说，所有这些民族实际上都在说一种现代形式的拉丁语。英语中也有超过一半的词汇直接或间接来源于拉丁语。从这个意义上讲，拉丁语的确是一门活着的死语言(living *dead language*)。[2]*如果首先学了拉丁语，再学欧洲其他语言就会容易得多。到了*近代，哥白尼、培根、开普勒、笛卡尔、斯宾诺莎、牛顿等近代哲学家和科学家的主要著作都是用拉丁语写成的。直到20世纪初，拉丁语还是每一个欧美儿童必修的基础课程。今天，虽然除一些宗教仪式等少数场合外，拉丁语已经不再作为日常语言使用，但拉丁语语法还是制定世界通用的科学名词的依据，从而广泛

[1] 关于拉丁语的演变，参见本书导言部分。

[2] 世界著名语言学家、《剑桥语言百科全书》(*The Cambridge Encyclopaedia of Language*)等书的作者克里斯托尔(David Crystal)教授认为，说希腊语和拉丁语都是“死语言”是不恰当的，它们都是“活着的死语言”。

应用于生物、医学、药学、法学、农学等领域。

对西方文化的研究者而言，学习拉丁语当然主要是为了阅读现存的大量拉丁语文献。考虑到拉丁语在历史上的演变，学习拉丁语的最好方法还是学习两千年前罗马文学所使用的古典拉丁语。因为这是拉丁语的鼎盛时期，学好了它，后来的拉丁语就很容易掌握了。拉丁语朴实无华，简洁有力，精确清晰，为其他语言所不及，但语法比较烦琐，掌握起来并不容易。国内已经出版过的拉丁语教材可谓少之又少。目前市面上较为多见的是各种医药拉丁文和植物拉丁文教材，但其内容过于专业和实用，并不能使读者真正系统地掌握拉丁语。国内比较有影响的系统拉丁语教材首推商务印书馆 1983 年出版的肖原先生的《拉丁语基础》，类似的拉丁语教材还有商务印书馆 1959 年出版的谢大任编著的《拉丁语语法》，农业出版社 1984 年出版的朱奇武著的《基础拉丁语》，上海外语教育出版社 1989 年出版的谢大任、张廷琚编著的《拉丁语自学读本》等等。它们对中国的拉丁语教育事业起了巨大的推动作用，功不可没。然而，这些著作对语法的讲解过于简洁，术语翻译不太符合当代人的习惯；更重要的是，这些书早已绝版，市面上极难见到，使得想学习拉丁语的人求学无门，以致渐渐地许多人竟不知道拉丁语到底是何种语言。

由于专业的原因，译者在学习期间经常会接触到拉丁语，于是学习拉丁语就成为十分迫切的事情。幸运的是，我在北大哲学系求学期间有机会学习了拉丁语，使我打下了一定的基础，但课堂上使用的是一本德语教材，读起来毕竟不像汉语和英语那样轻松，而且内容有些简略，如果没有讲解，学起来还是比较困难。这让我深切体会到一本好的拉丁语教材的重要性和必要性。

在学习过程中，我接触到了学习古典拉丁语的人都知道的《韦洛克拉丁语教程》，立即被其系统的组织编排、清晰的语法讲解以及所选取的古典作家原汁原味的作品所吸引。难怪《韦洛克拉丁语教程》堪称目前英语世界最经典的古典拉丁语教材，已经风行了半个世纪，如今已是第六版。我想，既然国内迟迟看不到用中文编写的系统拉丁语教材，为何不翻译出版国外的同类经典著作呢?况且西方人写教材一向有更为周到的考虑，讲解更加透彻，用与拉丁文关系密切的西文讲授拉丁语也必定更为直观和清楚。于是我便萌生了翻译这本教材的念头。

也许有人会问，既然用西文讲授拉丁语更加清楚，何必还要翻译呢?影印出版岂不更原汁原味?这么说不无道理，但翻译自有其独特的价值和意义，这主要是出于以下几点考虑：

首先，对于中国读者来说，学习拉丁语这样一门精密而古老的西方语言需要莫大的毅力和耐心。面对这样一部对读者的英语水平有较高要求的专业教材，中文的协助和引导不可或缺。如果书中满是不甚熟悉的术语，那么势必很容

易让读者失去信心，半途而废，拉丁语学习的普及更是无从谈起。

其次，翻译这本经典的拉丁语教材有助于规范术语译名，促进语言交流。在以往出过的拉丁语教材中，各种术语的译法比较混乱，有时同一本书中同一个术语竟会有好几个译法，比如“deponent”的译法有“异态动词”、“异相动词”、“冒被动词”，“genitive”的译法有“属格”、“所有格”、“生格”，“gerundive”的译法有“动形词”、“形动词”、“将来被动形动词”等等。在许多情况下，各种译法都有道理，很难做出取舍。译者综合多方意见，给出了一种自认为比较合适的译法，并且必要时在脚注中提到了已有的其他译法。随着我国了解拉丁语的人越来越多，对这些重要术语的译名进行规范既是必需，也是文化自信的表现。既然梵文、巴利文的佛经都已融入汉语，相信拉丁文术语亦能为汉语所驾驭。

最后，考虑到英文和拉丁语在语法和字形上的紧密关系，许多单词和语法用英文讲解的确更为直观清楚，因此译者只把讲解语法的主干内容译成中文，许多例句、图表和段落原封未动，而且在必要的地方加注了原文，以尽可能地避免因翻译而导致的误解。

当然，这也就要求译者在翻译过程中必须加倍尽职尽责，尤其是对这样一部教材，更需要小心谨慎，不能有丝毫马虎。在翻译过程中，我查阅了国内已经出版的所有拉丁文教材和各种工具书词典，了解了重要术语已有的各种译法，以期把译名定得尽可能确当。译者学识有限，独立翻译这本经典教材，其中的困难和压力可想而知。至于翻译质量如何，使用起来是否顺畅，则当由读者来评判。

感谢吴兴元先生欣然将这本“长销书”纳入出版计划；感谢霍振舟先生为本书题写书名；中国人民大学的雷立柏先生对本书的出版予以热情支持，并欣然作序；网友小蜜蜂 ismhs_bee 和 Varro 回答了译者在翻译过程中碰到的不少问题，尤其是 ismhs_bee，对译者的支持和帮助甚多；特别要感谢好友杨维宇和罗逍然阅读了全部译文，提出了许多很好的意见和建议。

最后，还有几点需要交代一下：

（1）每一课的“练习与复习”、“古代名言”和各种阅读材料原书并未给出英文翻译，而参考译文对许多读者来说也许是相当重要的。好在网友 Benissimus 已经给出了他的参考译文，即“Benissimus' Wheelock's Answers”，而且可以免费下载，网址是 http://www.textkit.com/learn/ID/162/author_id/76。但由于篇幅和版权的原因，中译本无法把这些译文附上，而且其中的有些地方并不十分准确，这一点需请读者自行判断。

（2）《韦洛克拉丁语教程》虽然看起来内容很多，但其实有近一半的内容是原始阅读材料，真正讲语法的部分还是非常简练，作为初学者读起来还是要花一番精力的。好在北卡罗莱纳的格罗特（Dale A. Grote）教授编写了一本《〈韦洛

克拉丁语教程〉学习指南》(*Comprehensive Study Guide for Wheelock's Latin*),从读者的实际考虑出发,更详细地解释了《韦洛克拉丁语教程》讨论的种种语法现象,解答了读者在阅读它时可能遇到的问题,对我们学习这本书很有帮助。找不到原书的读者可以参见它的网络版 http://humanum.arts.cuhk.edu.hk/Lexis/Wheelock-Latin,包含了对《韦洛克拉丁语教程》前三十五课内容的讲解,作者免费提供使用;还可参见爱好拉丁语的热心网友"乾城梦幻"对这本学习指南的粗略翻译。当然,他的术语译名与本书所采用的有一些出入,读者可自行参考。

(3)www.wheelockslatin.com 是《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的官方网站,里面有关于这本书的各种资料信息、辅助读物、相关网站和论坛,还有每一课的发音示例。需要指出的是,拉丁语的发音随时间和地域的不同而有所不同,目前并无定准,本书所介绍的以及网站音频文件上的拉丁语发音是比较特别的,据说比较符合古罗马人的发音,相关背景请参见此网站。此外还有不少很好的古典语言网站可以参考,常见的有 http://www.textkit.com 等等。

(4)关于拉丁语词典,的确是个问题。国内已出版的比较重要的词典有:商务印书馆 1988 年出版的谢大任主编的《拉丁语汉语词典》,主要由《拉俄词典》编译而成;贵州人民出版社 1986 年出版的彭泰尧主编的《拉汉词典》;光启出版社 1983 年出版的吴金瑞神父编写的《拉丁汉文辞典》等等。但这些书现已很难买到。在国内偶尔也能买到一些优秀的原版拉丁语词典,比如 *The Bantam New College Latin and English Dictionary*,*Collins Latin Dictionary & Grammar* 等等。另外,网络上也有一些很好用的软件和词典可供使用。译者热切希望国内的出版社能够尽快组织编写、重印或引进一些好的拉丁语词典,以飨广大热爱拉丁语、热爱古典文学的中国读者。

随着我国对外交流的不断深入,归国人员日益增多,日语、法语、德语、韩语等许多小语种渐渐都成了大语种,许多更冷僻的语言也有不少专业人才。然而,像拉丁语和希腊语这样重要的古典语言却远远没有受到应有的重视,这实在是一件令人扼腕的事情。目前国内懂拉丁语的人还不多,懂希腊语的就更少了。作为对塑造西方文化起了最大作用的两门语言,在中国遭遇这种状况是很不正常的。在一个国家,古典语言是否受到足够的重视,是其综合实力的重要标志。在德国等发达国家,每一个文科博士生都必须修一门古典语言才能毕业,这充分体现了他们对世界各国文化传统的重视和传承。随着我国综合国力的增强,拉丁语、希腊语、梵语等古典语言越来越受人重视,必定是大势所趋。毕竟,要想真正深入地了解西方,仅仅学习处于文明最外层的科学技术是远远不够的,还必须从它的文化、哲学、宗教等路径切入,追溯其历史,探求其根源,这时古典语言就成了必不可少的工具。好在目前北京大学、北京师范大学、中国人民大学、北

京外国语大学、复旦大学、浙江大学、中山大学等国内著名高校均已开设相关的课程(不少拉丁语课程正是以《韦洛克拉丁语教程》作为教材),愿意学习这些语言的人也越来越多,这表明情况正在逐渐得到改善。希望本书的出版能够助我国的古典拉丁语教学一臂之力,更希望国内能够渐渐形成重视古典语言的氛围,多出好的著作,这的确是纯正的学术所不可或缺的。

最后,译者诚恳地希望读者多提宝贵意见,以使本书修订时能够有所改进。

译者

2008年9月4日

出版后记

被视为至美至纯的拉丁语，尽管一度被认为是死语言而为人们所忽视或摒弃，但现在据各种迹象显示，它又回来了。以美国为例，拉丁语曾经是许多公立和教区学校的必修课目，然而在20世纪60年代的青少年反叛文化大潮中被弃之不理。但在过去这几年里，拉丁语被视为一门秘密的影响流行文化的语言而受到重视；参加全国拉丁语考试的人数，已经从1998年的101,000人和2003年的124,000人，稳步增长到了2007年的134,000人。据美国外语教学委员会预测，拉丁语极有可能将德语挤出全美最受学生欢迎的外语三甲之列（排名前两位的分别是西班牙语和法语）。越来越多的高中已经认识到拉丁语的好处。拉丁语能为更高的SAT分数提供单词和语法上的基础，同时也可以向知名高校展示一种他们所感兴趣的批判思维，并培养一种真正的学术热情。

而哈利·波特系列的风靡则使拉丁语前所未有地吸引了孩子们的注意。在J.K.罗琳女士的家乡英国，近一两年来也同样出现了拉丁语的复兴。英国提供拉丁语课程的学校在过去八年里增长了三倍。

同样的事情也发生在德国。学习拉丁语的学生人数在以5%的年均增长率不断增长；现在，几乎每一位文科高中三年级的学生都在学拉丁语。在2008年9月26日“欧洲语言日”这一天，德国柏林的Kiss FM电台甚至打算在当天上午改用拉丁语播报。

回到中国，我们发现，越来越多的人们出于各种理由而爱上拉丁语。越来越多的高校也开始开设拉丁语课程。北京大学、复旦大学、北京师范大学、中国人民大学、中国政法大学等名校的拉丁语选修课常常人满为患。来自全国各地的热爱拉丁语的年轻人济济一堂，共同分享语言的美妙，感受历史的传承，这实在算得上是中国高等教育的一件幸事。

拉丁语的复兴，一方面催生出更多新鲜、有趣的拉丁语教材，另一方面也让一些经典教材于大浪淘沙中更添魅力。眼下的这部《韦洛克拉丁语教程》便是这样一部作品。作为一部适用于初学者的拉丁语教材，《韦洛克拉丁语教程》在西方世界的经典地位毋庸赘言。本书自1956年初版以来，一直是诸多大学古典学专业的必选教材，也是最受拉丁语爱好者欢迎的自学教程。在问世半个多世纪以后，本书终于迎来了它的首个中译本，对广大中国读者来说实在是一件好事。

感谢我们的朋友张卜天向我们推荐了这部杰出的经典读物。本书的顺利出版还有赖于多位学者同仁的支持与帮助。在选题论证过程中,我们得到了北京大学英语系沈弘教授(现已转任浙江大学)、北京大学历史系彭小瑜教授有效的建议和指导;在本书的编校和审阅过程中,我们又得到了中国人民大学文学院雷立柏教授和复旦大学历史系张巍教授的热情支持,特此向这几位先生表示感谢。而本书的封面设计则要多谢我们的好朋友、现在美国科罗拉多州任教的汉学家 Lewis Eden,他的美妙想法使本书得到了这个优雅的封面。另外需要说明的是,本次中译本得到了国内外很多读者学人的关心,篇幅所限,我们无法一一鸣谢,只能在此感谢所有拉丁语爱好者对本书的期待和支持。

本书从翻译到出版历时三年,其间我们的译者对译文反复斟酌,其精益求精的追问精神令人感佩。编校制作人员也是不敢懈怠,在有限的条件下用最大的努力来减少差错。需要说明的是,因本书涉及大量拉丁、英以及法、意、西等语汇,因此我们在编排过程中凡遇此种性质的内文,一律采用从原书英文 PDF 文件中剪切图片复制的形式,以在最大程度上与原书保持一致。尽管如此,本书一定还有一些不尽完美的地方,这一点请读者谅解,并请将发现的问题反馈给我们,以便在重印时及时更正。"大学堂"编辑部是一个年轻的出版团队,《韦洛克拉丁语教程》是我们对高端学术题材的首次尝试,这部作品本身的学术地位令我们在整个编辑出版过程满怀热情而又诚惶诚恐,怀着这种心情,我们与中译本一起等待着读者的检验。

无论出于何种目的学习拉丁语,都会深深爱上这门语言,这是被古往今来无数人的经验所验证的。读者在学习的过程中所学到的绝对不止是几个能帮助你在某些场合 show off 的字句,甚至不止是阅读拉丁语文献的能力,你获得的更重要的东西,或许是与先人穿越时空的智力交流,以及和一种臻于至美至纯的事物的亲密接触,这种事物在我们生活的世界上可能已经不多见了。

欢迎采用本书做教材的老师与我们联系,以便得到我们为您提供的教学资料和相关服务。

世界图书出版公司北京公司

服务热线:teacher@hinabook.com　139-1140-1220

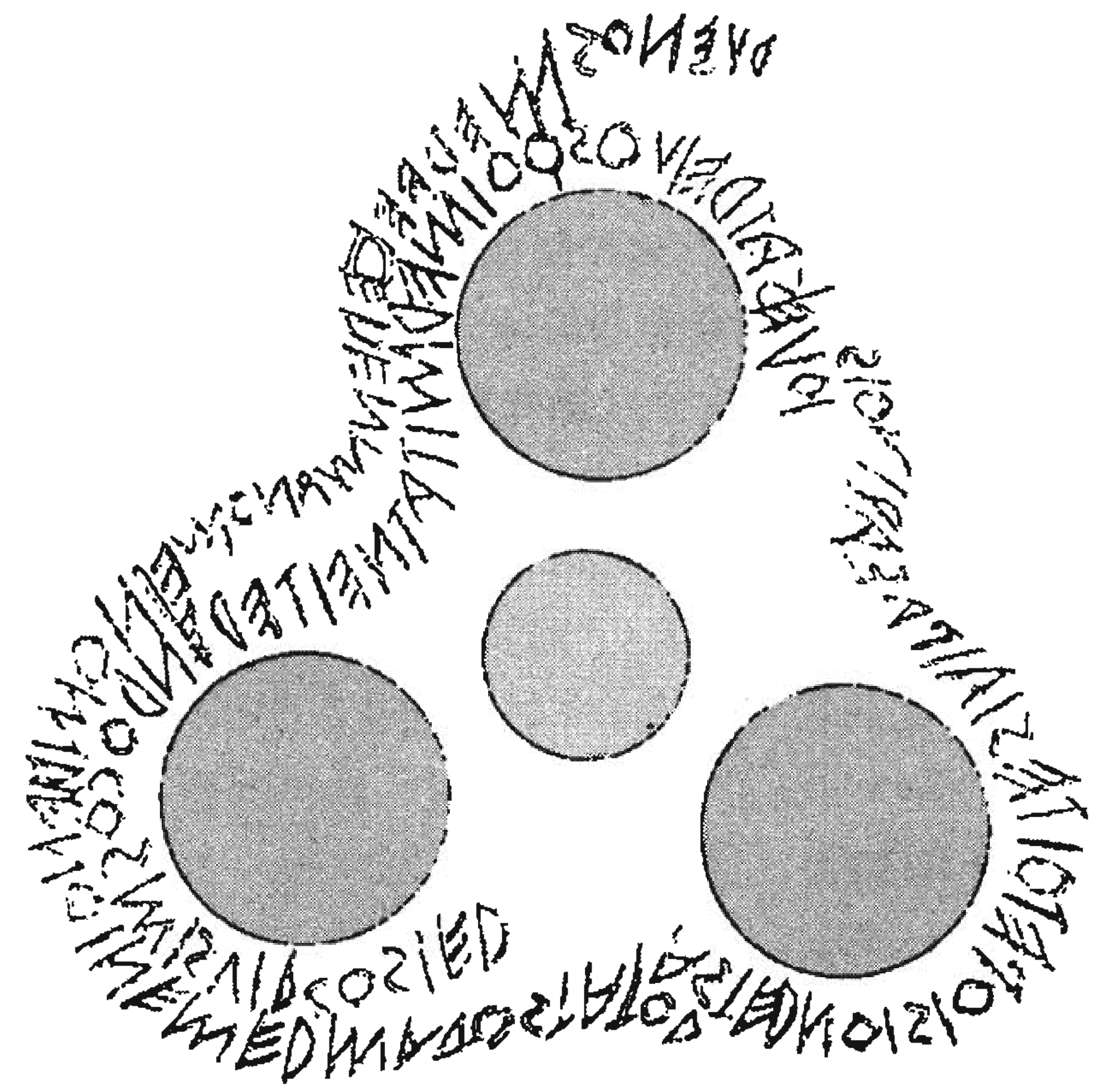
服务信箱:onebook@263.net　133-6631-2326

世图北京公司"大学堂"编辑部

2009 年 4 月

封面图注

出现在正封上的是作为酒神(Dionysos)的安提诺乌斯(Antinous)像,大理石雕,公元2世纪,现存梵蒂冈博物馆(Vaticano Museo)Museo Pio-Clementino展馆内圆厅(Sala Rotonda),Inv 256。



封底上的则是“好运刻辞(Duenos)”三联陶瓶,公元前6世纪,1880年由Heinrich Dressel在罗马附近的Quirinal山上发现,现存德国柏林国立美术馆(Staatliche Museen zu Berlin)。好运刻辞三联陶瓶上的铭文是已知的最早的拉丁文。铭文一共有三句,都是从右往左写,而且单词之间没有空格,加上有几个字母漶漫不清,使得这三句古奥的铭文非常难以译解。

铭文第一行:IOUESATDEIUOSQOIMEDMITATNEITEDENDOCOSMISUIRCOSIED

第二行:ASTEDNOISIOPETOITESIAIPACARIUOIS

第三行:DUENOSMEDFECEDEN MANOMEINOMDUENOINEMEDMALOSTATOD

所谓好运刻辞的Duenos一词就出现在铭文第三行起首,Duenos是古拉丁文,其对应的古典拉丁文单词是bonus,它的意思是“好(对应于英文中的good)”。铭文的大意是:我向神的名字起誓,请相信我的承诺:假如女孩子不喜欢你,那么请向她献上这馥郁琼浆,美好的事情就会发生在你和我的身上。

By Lewis Eden

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

韦洛克拉丁语教程:插图修订第6版/(美)韦洛克著;张卜天译. –北京:世界图书出版公司北京公司,2009.2
(大学堂)
书名原文:Wheelock's Latin, 6th edition revised
ISBN 978-7-5062-9310-5/G·323
Ⅰ.韦… Ⅱ.①韦… ②张… Ⅲ.拉丁语–教材 Ⅳ.H771
中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2008)第189311号

韦洛克拉丁语教程(插图修订第6版)

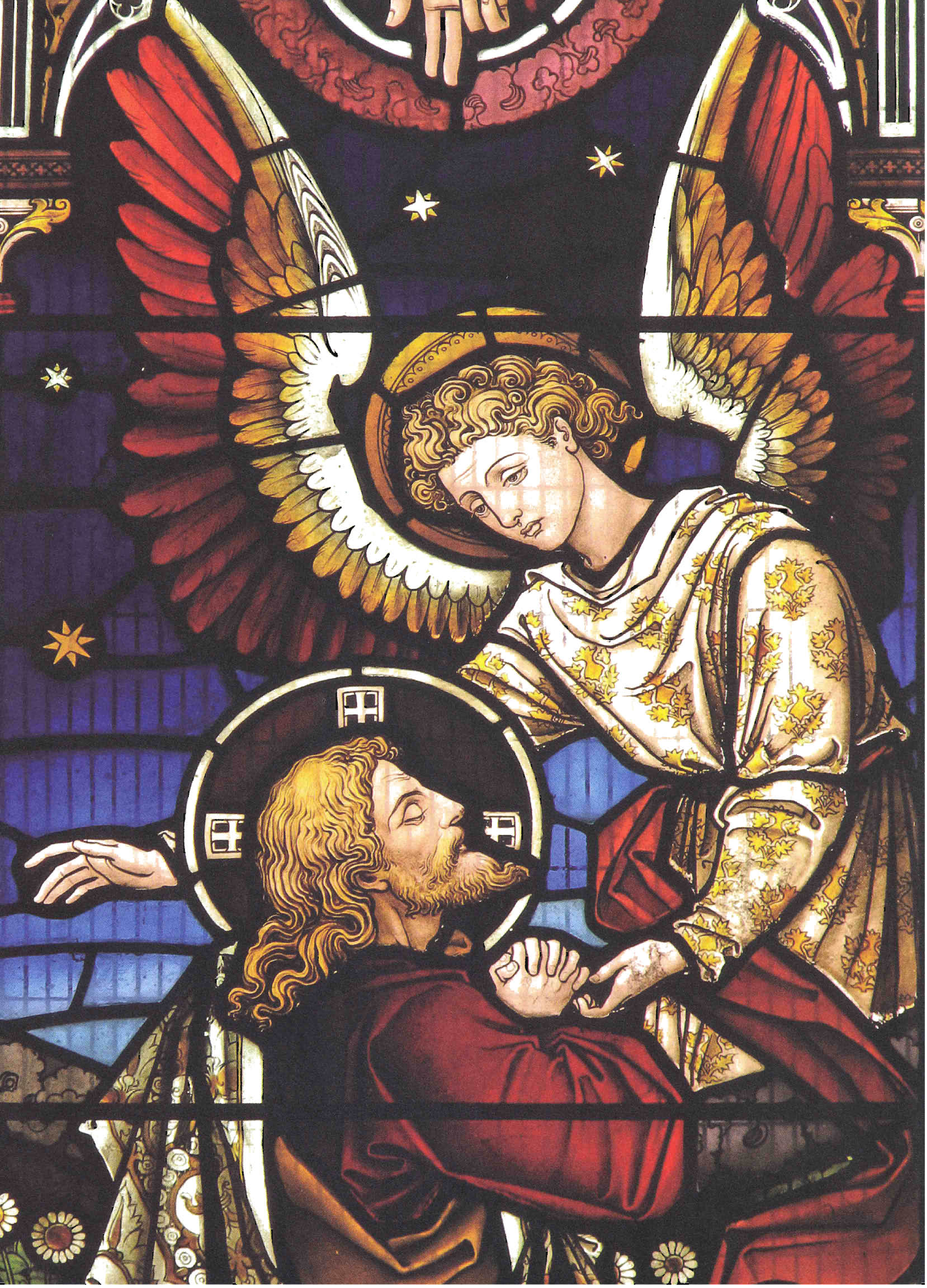
著　　者:(美)弗雷德里克·韦洛克　**译　　者:**张卜天　**审 阅 者:**雷立柏
丛 书 名:大学堂　**丛书策划:**吴兴元　**责任编辑:**杨　宁

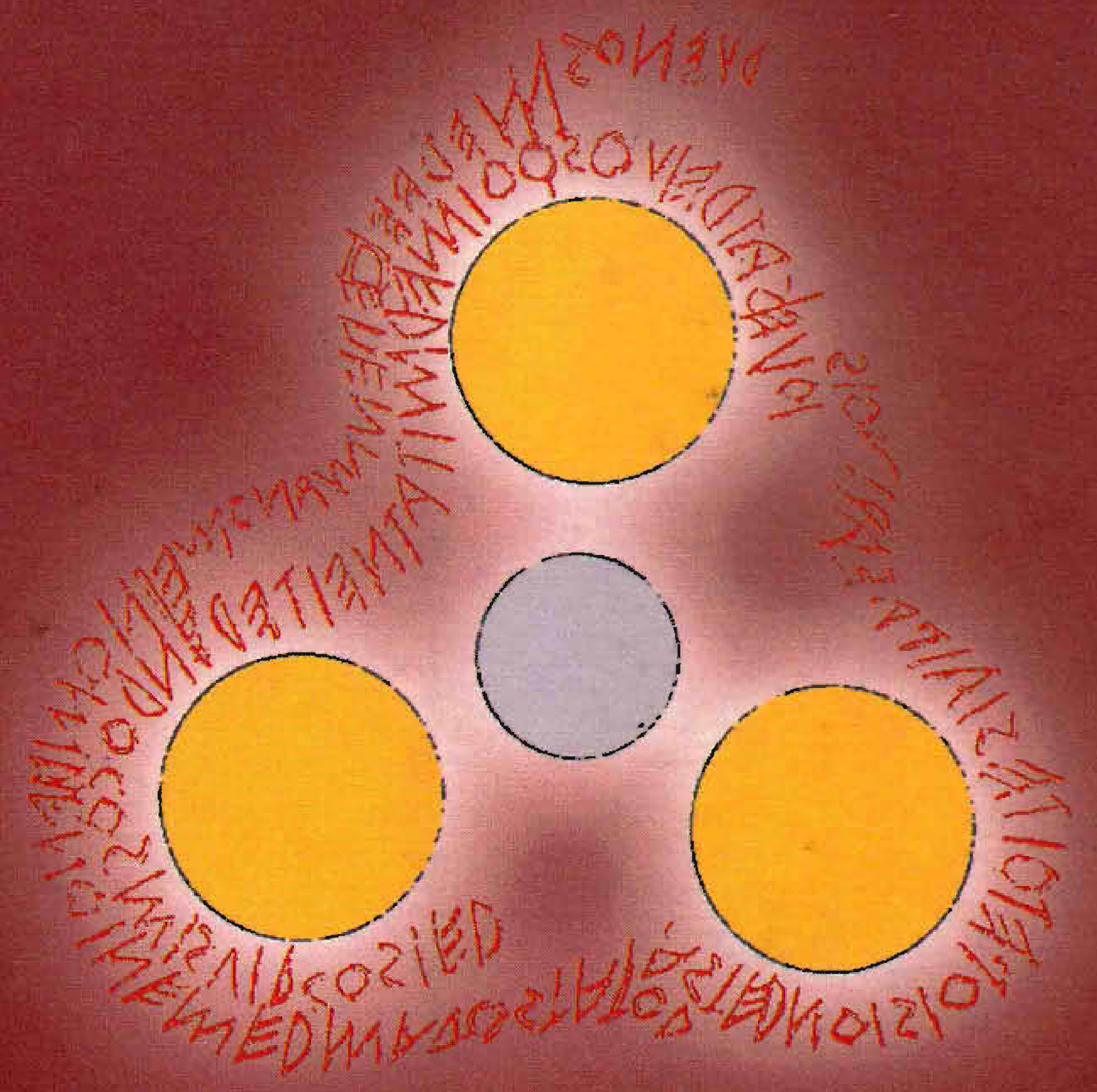
出　　版:世界图书出版公司北京公司
发　　行:世界图书出版公司北京公司(北京朝内大街137号 邮编100010)
销　　售:各地新华书店
印　　刷:北京盛兰兄弟印刷装订有限公司

开　　本:787×1092毫米 1/16
印　　张:35 插页4
字　　数:540千
版　　次:2009年6月第1版
印　　次:2009年6月第1次印刷　**印　　数:**1—1500册

教师服务:139-1140-1220 teacher@hinabook.com
读者咨询:onebook@263.net
营销咨询:133-6657-3072 010-8161-6534
编辑咨询:133-6631-2326

ISBN 978-7-5062-9310-5/G·323　**定　价:**99.00元





学习拉丁语，人必称“韦洛克”

在 F. M. 韦洛克任拉丁语教授的 45 年中，他以幽默而谦逊的方式，从语言和文学两方面培养了学生们对拉丁语的热爱。他对教学工作怀有深深的眷恋，因为他对自己所教授的东西充满热忱。他非常尊重自己的学生，总是以高标准去要求他们。他希望学生们能够像他本人一样热爱和学习拉丁语，把它当作世代相传的火炬，照亮我们今天的路途。

——玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒

听说韦洛克（Wheelock）的著名拉丁语教程将要在中国出版，我感到非常兴奋与欣慰。2002 年以来，我在北京教授拉丁语和古希腊语，但始终没有找到令我满意的拉丁语语法教材、文选和拉汉词典。《韦洛克拉丁语教程》终于能满足这个迫切需要。对学习西方哲学、文学、法律、历史或宗教的大学生和学者来说，这部教科书的出版是一件重大的事，因为拉丁语是一切西方知识的“大门”，而韦洛克也算是自学拉丁语的最好资料之一…… 我很高兴可以推荐它，希望它成为很多大学生的读物。

——雷立柏，奥地利古典学家，中国人民大学文学院教授

陈列建议：语言学、大学通识教材、人文社科

ISBN 978-7-5062-9310-5

后浪出版咨询(北京)有限公司
POST WAVE PUBLISHING CONSULTING (BEIJING) LTD. CO
www.hinabook.com

● 欢迎采用本书作教材的老师与编辑部联系索要教学配件。

ISBN 978-7-5062-9310-5/G·323

定价：99.00 元